ESSENTIALS OF PHYSIOLOGY FOR NURSE ANESTHETISTS (GOPALAN)



Chaya Gopalan

LibreTexts™

Essentials of Physiology for Nurse Anesthetists I

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden borne from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and were supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

The LibreTexts name, logo, and book covers are trademarked by LibreTexts, Inc. (a 501(c)(3) not-for-profit organization) and protected against unauthorized use.

This text was compiled on 10/22/2026

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

1: Cell Physiology

1.1: Objectives

1.2: The Cell Membrane

1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane

1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids

1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins

1.3: Membrane Transport

1.3.1: Passive Transport

1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport

1.3.3: Vesicular Transport

1.4: Electrical Activity of the Cell Membrane

1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential

1.5: The Cytoplasm and Cellular Organelles

1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum

1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus

1.5.3: Lysosomes

1.5.4: Mitochondria

1.5.5: Peroxisome

1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton

1.5.7: The Nucleus

1.5.8: Cell Junctions

1.6: Cellular Metabolism

1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions

1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism

1.6.3: Protein Metabolism

1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism

1.7: References

2: Neurophysiology

2.1: Objectives

2.2: Introduction

2.3: Nervous Tissue

2.3.1: Neurons

2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS

2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS

2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential

2.3.5: Voltage-gated Sodium and Potassium Ion Channels
2.3.6: Action Potential
2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types
2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission
2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential
2.3.10: Neurotransmitters
2.4: References

3: The Central Nervous System

3.1: Objectives
3.2: Introduction
3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord
3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord
3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal
3.6: Cerebrospinal Fluid
3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain
3.8: The Brain
3.9: Memory
3.10: Sleep
3.11: The Spinal Cord
3.12: Nerves
3.13: Reflexes
3.14: References

4: Sensory Physiology

4.1: Objectives
4.2: Introduction
4.3: Sensory Receptors
4.4: Physiology of Pain
4.5: References

5: The Autonomic Nervous System

5.1: Objectives
5.2: Introduction
5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems
5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System
5.7: Short and Long Reflexes
5.8: Dual Innervation
5.9: Autonomic Tone
5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS

5.11: References

6: Physiology of Muscle and Bone Tissues

6.1: Objectives
6.2: Introduction
6.3: Muscle Tissue
6.4: Skeletal Muscle
6.5: Smooth Muscle
6.6: Bone Tissue
6.7: References

7: Endocrine Physiology

7.1: Objectives
7.2: Introduction
7.3: Chemical Signaling
7.4: Endocrine Glands
7.5: Types of Hormones
7.6: Hormone Transportation
7.7: Mechanisms of Hormone Action
7.8: Target Cell Response
7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion
7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion
7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
7.12: The Thyroid Gland
7.13: The Parathyroid Glands
7.14: Vitamin D (1,25-Dihydrocholecalciferol)
7.15: Adrenal Glands
7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas
7.17: References

8: The Blood

8.1: Objectives
8.2: Introduction
8.3: Functions of Blood
8.4: Composition of Blood
8.5: Characteristics of Blood
8.6: Blood Plasma
8.7: Hematopoiesis
8.8: Erythrocytes
8.9: Leukocytes
8.10: Platelets
8.11: Hemostasis
8.12: References

9: The Heart

9.1: Objectives

9.2: Introduction

9.3: Location of the Heart

9.4: The Pericardium

9.5: Layers of the Heart Wall

9.6: External Anatomy of the Heart

9.7: Internal Anatomy of the Heart

9.8: Blood Supply to the Heart

9.9: Cardiac Muscle

9.10: Conduction System of the Heart

9.11: Electrophysiology of Cardiac Pacemaker Cells

9.12: Electrophysiology of Cardiac Contractile Cells

9.13: Electrocardiogram (ECG)

9.14: Cardiac Cycle

9.15: Heart Rate, Stroke Volume, and Cardiac Output

9.16: Cardiac Reserve

9.17: References

10: Blood Vessels and Circulation

10.1: Objectives

10.2: Introduction

10.3: Systemic and Pulmonary Circuits

10.4: Vascular Network

10.5: Blood Flow, Blood Pressure, and Resistance

10.6: Measurement of Blood Pressure

10.7: Factors Affecting Blood Flow

10.8: Relationships among Vessels in the Systemic Circuit

10.9: Capillary Exchange

10.10: Venous Return

10.11: Neural Regulation of the Vascular System

10.12: References

11: Renal Physiology

11.1: Objectives

11.2: Introduction

11.3: External Anatomy of the Kidney

11.4: Internal Anatomy of the Kidney

11.5: Blood Supply to the Kidneys

11.6: Nephrons

11.7: Renal Innervation

11.8: Filtration, Reabsorption, and Secretion

11.9: Endocrine and Paracrine Regulation of Kidney Function
11.10: Renal Electrolyte Regulation
11.11: Renal Regulation of Nitrogenous Wastes
11.12: Elimination of Drugs and Hormones by the Kidneys
11.13: Diuretics
11.14: Physical Characteristics of Urine
11.15: Measurement of Renal Plasma Flow
11.16: Renal Clearance
11.17: References

12: Respiratory Physiology

12.1: Objectives
12.2: Introduction
12.3: Respiratory Anatomy
12.4: Mechanics of Breathing
12.5: Ventilation and Perfusion
12.6: Gas Exchange
12.7: Transport of Gases
12.8: Control of Breathing
12.9: References

13: Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Balance

13.1: Objectives
13.2: Introduction
13.3: Water Content Within the Body
13.4: Fluid Compartments in the Body
13.5: Composition of Body Fluids
13.6: Water Balance
13.7: Electrolyte Balance
13.8: Acid-Base Balance
13.9: References

14: Physiology of the Immune System

14.1: Objectives
14.2: Introduction
14.3: Lymphocytes
14.4: Primary (Central) Lymphoid Organs and Lymphocyte Development
14.5: Secondary (Peripheral) Lymphoid Organs
14.6: Barrier Defenses and Innate Immune Responses
14.7: The Adaptive Immune Response
14.8: References

15: Physiology of the Digestive System

15.1: Objectives

15.2: Introduction

15.3: Digestive Processes

15.4: Histology of the Alimentary Canal

15.5: Chemical Mediators of Digestion

15.6: Types of Movements in the Digestive Tract

15.7: The Mouth, Pharynx, and Esophagus

15.8: The Stomach

15.9: The Liver, Pancreas, and Gallbladder

15.10: The Small Intestine

15.11: The Large Intestine

15.12: Summary of Digestion and Absorption in the Alimentary Canal

15.13: References

16: Physiology of the Male and Female Reproductive Systems

16.1: Objectives

16.2: Introduction

16.3: Sexual Differentiation

16.4: Puberty

16.5: Overview of the Male Reproductive System

16.6: Overview of the Female Reproductive System

16.7: References

17: Physiology of Pregnancy

17.1: Objectives

17.2: Introduction

17.3: Fertilization

17.4: Transit of Sperm

17.5: Contact between Sperm and Oocyte

17.6: Zygote

17.7: Pre-implantation Embryonic Development

17.8: Implantation

17.9: Embryonic Membranes

17.10: Embryogenesis

17.11: Development of the Placenta

17.12: Organogenesis

17.13: The Fetal Circulatory System

17.14: Maternal Changes During Pregnancy

17.15: Autotransfusion

17.16: Physiology of Labor

17.17: Adjustments of the Infant at Birth and Postnatal Stages

17.18: Lactation
17.19: References

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

Detailed Licensing

This page titled Essentials of Physiology for Nurse Anesthetists (Gopalan) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

Licensing

A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in ***Back Matter/Detailed Licensing***.

This page titled Licensing is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1: CELL PHYSIOLOGY

1.1: Objectives

1.2: The Cell Membrane

1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane

1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids

1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins

1.3: Membrane Transport

1.3.1: Passive Transport

1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport

1.3.3: Vesicular Transport

1.4: Electrical Activity of the Cell Membrane

1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential

1.5: The Cytoplasm and Cellular Organelles

1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum

1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus

1.5.3: Lysosomes

1.5.4: Mitochondria

1.5.5: Peroxisome

1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton

1.5.7: The Nucleus

1.5.8: Cell Junctions

1.6: Cellular Metabolism

1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions

1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism

1.6.3: Protein Metabolism

1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism

1.7: References

This page titled 1: Cell Physiology is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- Identify the separation of two specific fluids by the cell membrane.
- Illustrate the cell membrane's structure using the fluid mosaic model, emphasizing its components and arrangement.
- Outline the distinct roles of lipids, proteins, and carbohydrates in shaping the structural integrity and functions of the cell membrane.
- Discriminate between integral and peripheral proteins.
- Define open and closed-channel protein types. Identify factors that regulate the opening or closing of membrane protein channels.
- Differentiate between passive and active membrane transport mechanisms, emphasizing their fundamental differences in energy usage and directionality.
- Identify the factors and forces governing the direction and rate of substance diffusion across cell membranes.
- Determine the directional movement of water between solutions with varying osmotic pressures.
- Contrast the concepts of tonicity and osmolarity in solutions.
- Describe diverse protein-mediated transport processes that occur at the cell membrane.
- Compare facilitated diffusion across membranes to simple diffusion, emphasizing the similarities in their fundamental principles.
- Break down the sequential alterations in the sodium-potassium exchange pump's action, emphasizing its role in ion transport.
- Compare primary active transport with secondary active transport.
- Contrast vesicular transport with carrier-mediated transport.
- Enumerate the types of endocytosis.
- Distinguish the extracellular and intracellular concentrations of sodium and potassium ions across a cell membrane.
- Identify the cause for negative charge within the cell.
- Explain changes that occur while generating Nernst and resting membrane potential.
- Define Nernst equation.
- Dissect the composition of cytoplasm, distinguishing between cytosol and organelles, and outline their typical components.
- Categorize organelles into membranous and nonmembranous types, highlighting the advantages of organelle compartmentalization.
- Discriminate between the functions of smooth and rough endoplasmic reticulum in cellular processes and protein synthesis.
- Describe the structure of a mitochondrion and its role within the cell.
- Explain the role of the Golgi apparatus in the process of exocytosis.
- Differentiate between peroxisomes and lysosomes based on their structural and functional characteristics.
- Justify the role of the nucleus as the central control center in cellular activities.
- Explain the organization of the DNA molecule within the nucleus.
- Determine the locations of genes within the cell.
- List the types of cell junctions and elucidate their significance in cell communication and tissue integrity.
- Define metabolism and its two aspects.
- Discuss the role of ATP in metabolism.
- List the names of primary macromolecules.
- Name the subtypes of carbohydrates and give examples for each type.
- Distinguish between saturated and unsaturated fatty acids.
- List the different types of lipids.
- Summarize catabolic and anabolic forms of nutrients.
- Define glycolysis, identify its occurrence site, and quantify the net output of the reaction.
- Examine the factors triggering the conversion of glucose to lactic acid during metabolism.
- Compare aerobic and anaerobic reactions.
- Summarize the steps involved in aerobic respiration.
- Explain the formation of acetyl coenzyme A from pyruvate.
- List the products obtained from each Krebs cycle.

- Summarize the role of the electron transport system in generating ATP.
- Define chemiosmosis.
- Summarize the process by which ATP is generated during carbohydrate metabolism.
- Differentiate between peptides, polypeptides, and proteins.
- Identify the levels of structural organizations of proteins.
- Define essential and nonessential amino acids.
- Identify the significance of deamination and transamination.
- Spot the location and the significance of the urea cycle.
- Describe how lipids are processed in the production of ATP.
- Define beta-oxidation and its significance in the body.
- Compare the situations that trigger lipogenesis versus lipolysis.
- Define ketone bodies and summarize the importance of these substances in the body.
- Distinguish between the terms ketogenesis, ketosis, and ketoacidosis.

In 1665, Robert Hook unveiled the concept of cells by examining deceased cork tissue under a microscope[1]. Ten years later, Antoni van Leeuwenhoek achieved the remarkable feat of observing moving cells under his microscope[2]. As time progressed, a variety of cell types came to light. Our understanding encompasses approximately 200 distinct cell types within the human body, contributing to about 30 trillion cells.

Every cell is a structural and functional unit within all living beings. As organisms develop, undifferentiated cells, known as **stem cells**, undergo specialization in both form and function. These small, fluid-filled structures contain many components, facilitating innumerable biochemical reactions essential for the growth and survival of living creatures. A pivotal role of each cell involves contributing to **homeostasis**—an ever-shifting equilibrium crucial for sustaining life. This chapter elucidates the principal cellular structures and their functions within the human body by categorizing them into three segments: the **cell membrane**, the **cytoplasm**, and the **nucleus**

This page titled 1.1: Objectives is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.2: THE CELL MEMBRANE

The cell membrane, also called the **plasma membrane** or **plasmalemma**, is a barrier between the cell's internal contents and the surrounding external environment, comprising **interstitial fluid** or **tissue fluid**. In addition to its protective function, the cell membrane regulates the passage of substances across its surface; hence, it is called **semipermeable** or **selectively permeable**. Membrane permeability determines how induction agents cross the blood-brain barrier and how local anesthetic agents diffuse across the cell membrane.

1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane

1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids

1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins

This page titled 1.2: The Cell Membrane is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.2.1: STRUCTURE AND COMPOSITION OF CELL MEMBRANE

The cell membrane is approximately 5-10 nm thick and highly flexible. It is made of **lipids**, **proteins**, and **carbohydrates,** where lipids constitute the most abundant component, while carbohydrates are the least prevalent. Among lipids, **phospholipids** are the most abundant type of lipids. Another lipid variety in the cell membrane is **cholesterol**, which contributes to the fluidity of the membrane. The assortment and positioning of proteins within the cell membrane varies depending on the quantity and nature of substances to be transported across the membrane (Figure 1). Carbohydrates attach either to phospholipids—referred to as **glycolipids**—or to protein molecules, known as **glycoproteins**, facing the extracellular surface of the cell membrane. Lipids and proteins exist in a state of constant motion rather than rigid confinement. This arrangement grants the cell membrane its alternate characterization as the *fluid mosaic model*.

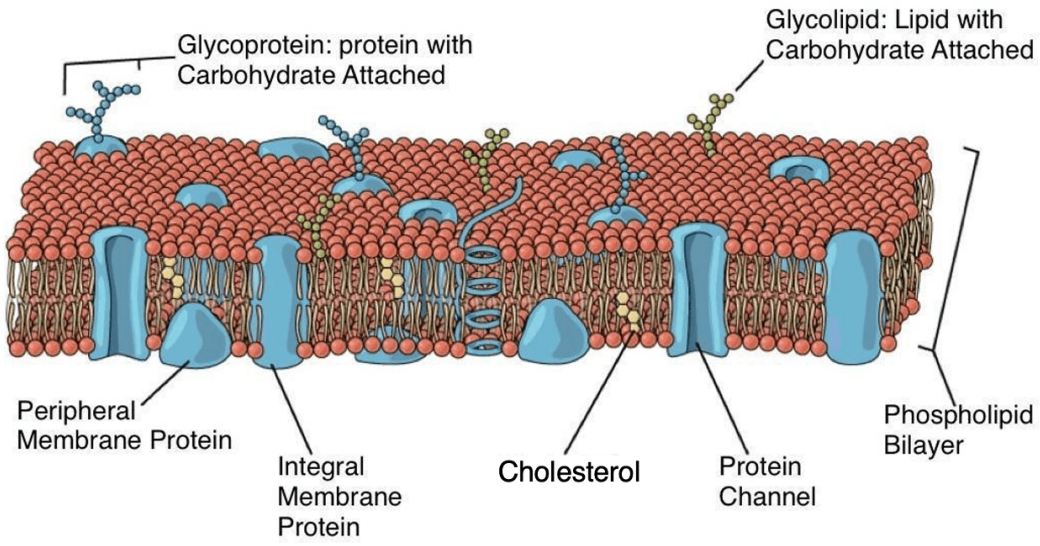


Figure 1 | The schematic representation illustrates the intricate architecture of a cell membrane | [3] The schematic representation illustrates the intricate architecture of a cell membrane. The main constituents of the membrane include phospholipids forming the lipid bilayer. Integral membrane proteins (illustrated in blue) traverse this lipid bilayer. Peripheral proteins (depicted in blue) bind transiently to the surface of the cell membrane. Cholesterol molecules (depicted in yellow) and extracellular carbohydrate chains (depicted in green) further contribute to the membrane's composition.

1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids

1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins

This page titled 1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids

Each phospholipid molecule exhibits a phosphate group at one end, referred to as the "head," while two chains of fatty acids mimic the "tails" attached to a glycerol molecule (Figure 2). The phosphate group carries an anionic charge and, therefore, displays an affinity for water molecules in both extracellular and intracellular compartments, rendering it **hydrophilic** or water-attracting. Conversely, the lipid tails lack charge and are nonpolar, yielding a **hydrophobic** or water-repelling nature. Phospholipids are described as **amphipathic** entities, since they possess both a hydrophilic and a hydrophobic segment. The amphipathic nature allows phospholipids to configure themselves within water, positioning their hydrophilic heads toward the aqueous compartments while their hydrophobic tails orient away from these fluid zones. Consequently, this distinctive phospholipid arrangement forms a bi-layered structure called the *bilipid layer* and is impermeable to charged particles (Figure 3.)

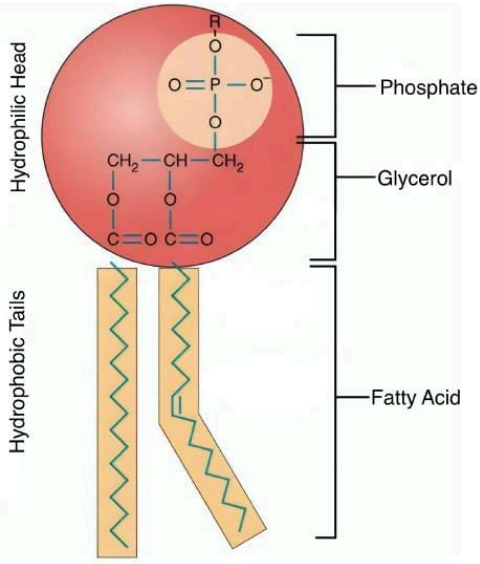


Figure 2 | The Structure of a Phospholipid | [4] A phospholipid is made up of a hydrophilic polar phosphate "head" and a hydrophobic non-polar lipid "tail."

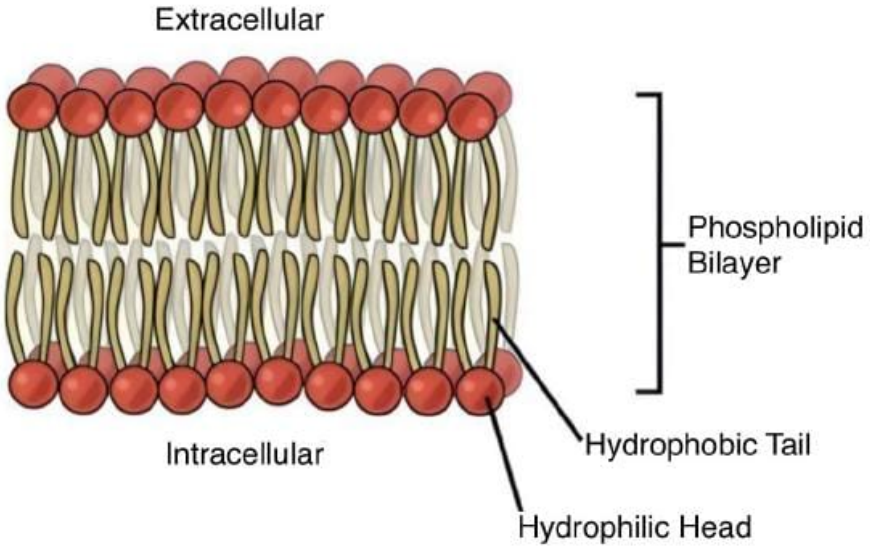


Figure 3 | The Phospholipid Bilayer | [5] The hydrophobic tails create the membrane's interior, while the polar heads come in contact with the fluid inside and outside of the cell.

This page titled 1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins

The positions of the proteins within the membrane lead to their classification as **integral protein**s and **peripheral proteins** (Figure 1). Integral proteins commonly feature domains of alpha-helical segments that span the membrane and assume many roles[6]. One such example is **channel proteins**, which exert selective control over the passage of materials into or out of the cell (Figure 4). Integral proteins also play a crucial role in cellular function by serving as **pores**, specific openings within the cell membrane that facilitate the controlled movement of substances in and out of the cell. Furthermore, integral proteins act as **ion pumps** such as the sodium-potassium exchange pump. Their selective permeability and controlled gating mechanisms ensure that the cell maintains an appropriate internal environment while allowing for the exchange of essential molecules with the outside. Integral proteins also serve as **cell recognition markers** and **receptors**. Some integral proteins undertake a dual role, acting as both receptors and ion channels. Additionally, integral proteins may serve as **enzymes**. Adenylyl cyclase is an example of an enzyme within the cell membrane. In contrast, peripheral proteins occupy positions on the inner or outer lipid bilayer surface. These proteins typically fulfill specialized functions, including participation in intracellular signaling and contribution to the submembranous cytoskeleton. Peripheral proteins on the surface of intestinal epithelial cells, for example, act as digestive enzymes.

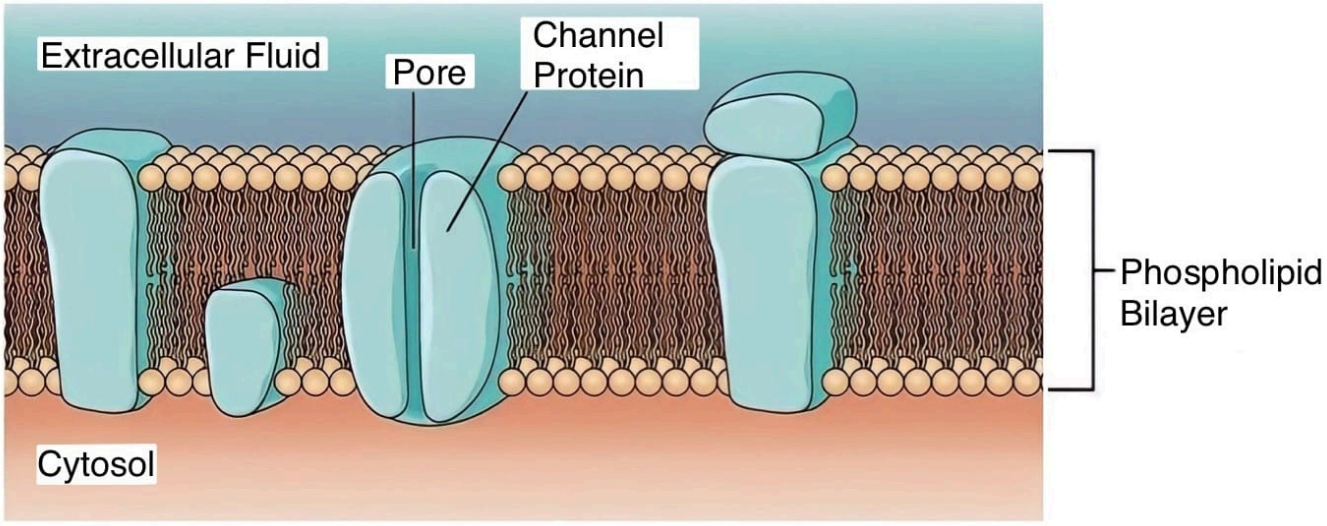


Figure 4 | A Phospholipid Bilayer along with Membrane Proteins | [7] Integral proteins span the lipid bilayer and may serve as pores or ion channels. Peripheral proteins occupy positions on the inner or outer lipid bilayer surface.

Due to the closely packed arrangement of phospholipid molecules in the membrane, only small nonpolar molecules like oxygen and carbon dioxide can swiftly traverse it. Transport of charged particles, such as ions, occurs via specific membrane proteins functioning as channels. Water, a small polar molecule, moves through membrane pores. Large polar molecules, such as glucose, necessitate specific transport mechanisms and cannot permeate the cell membrane.

Carbohydrates associated with integral proteins extend into the extracellular matrix, aiding in cell recognition. Together with those linked to membrane proteins and phospholipids, these carbohydrates create the **glycocalyx**[8], a thin coating that envelops the cell, enabling it to bind to other cells and carry receptors or enzymes.

Channels

Channel proteins can be differentiated into open and closed types based on whether their conformation creates a passage for ions or molecules (open) or obstructs it (closed) in response to specific triggers. Their functionality and responses to stimuli play a crucial role in cellular processes such as signaling, neurotransmission, and maintaining ion gradients [9]. Channel proteins with open pores are in a conformation that allows them to create a pathway through the cell membrane that permits the passage of ions or molecules where the movement typically occurs down their concentration gradient. Closed channel proteins may transition to an open state in response to specific triggers, such as voltage changes, ligand binding, or mechanical stimuli. A leakage

channel, on the other hand, exhibits a random pattern of opening and closing, lacking any specific triggering event as it switches between its open and closed states at an intrinsic rate.

Ion Channels

As the name suggests, ion channels are membrane channel proteins that facilitate the passage of specific ions. The pore within the channel is tailored to the charge it accommodates. Proteins spanning the cell membrane, including its hydrophobic core, can interact with ion charges. Channels designed for cations possess negatively charged side chains in their pores, whereas those for anions have positively charged side chains.

Pore diameter differs among various channel types. Larger pore sizes are less favorable for smaller ions due to enhanced interaction between water molecules and amino acid side chains. Certain ion channels are charge-selective rather than size-selective, making them nonspecific channels. These nonspecific channels permit cations, including sodium, potassium, and calcium ions, to traverse the membrane while excluding anions.

Ligand-gated Channels

Ligand-gated channels are specialized membrane protein channels that respond to the binding of specific signaling molecules, known as ligands. These channels play a critical role in cell communication and the transmission of signals across the cell membrane. When a ligand, such as a neurotransmitter, hormone, or other signaling molecule, binds to the receptor site on the ligand-gated channel, the channel undergoes a conformational change. This change in shape leads to the opening of the channel, allowing the passage of ions or other molecules across the membrane (Figure 5). It is crucial for various physiological processes, including nerve impulse transmission, muscle contraction, and cell-to-cell communication. Ligand-gated channels provide a rapid and specific response to extracellular signals, allowing cells to communicate with each other and coordinate various physiological activities efficiently. The binding of the ligand is reversible, meaning that once the ligand dissociates from the receptor site, the channel undergoes another conformational change, leading to channel closure.

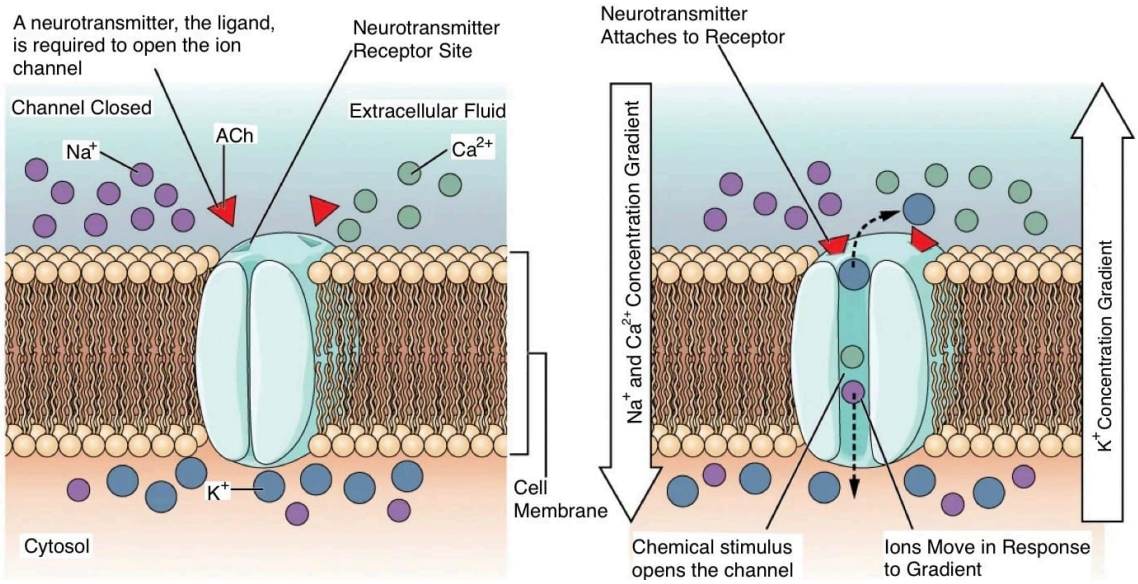


Figure 5 | Ligand-gated Channels | [10] When the ligand, such as the neurotransmitter acetylcholine (ACh), attaches to a designated site on the outer surface of the channel protein, it triggers the opening of the pore, facilitating the passage of specific ions. In this scenario, the ions include sodium (Na^+), calcium (Ca^{++}), and potassium (K^+).

Mechanically-gated Channels

When a protein channel reacts to physical changes in the membrane, such as pressure or touch, it is known as a mechanically-gated channel**.** These channels permit ion entry when an external force is applied, such as when pressure is exerted on the skin (Figure 6). Thermoreceptors are equipped with mechanically-gated channels that respond to alterations in tissue temperature by opening their ion channels.

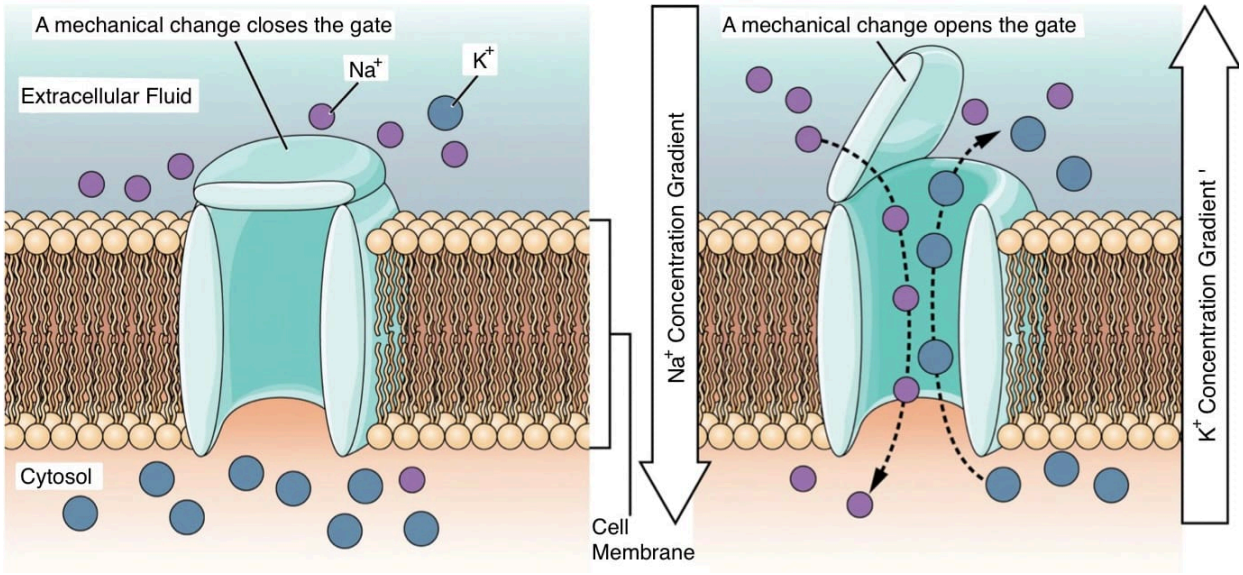


Figure 6 | Mechanically-gated Channels | [11] When a mechanical change occurs in the surrounding tissue, such as pressure or touch, the channel is opened. Calcium ion (Ca^{++}); Sodium ion (Na^{+})

Voltage-gated Channels

A voltage-gated channel responds to alterations in the membrane's electrical characteristics at its location. For instance, specific voltage-gated channels might open in a cell with a membrane potential of -70 mV if the voltage becomes less negative, thus allowing ions to flow into the cell (Figure 7).

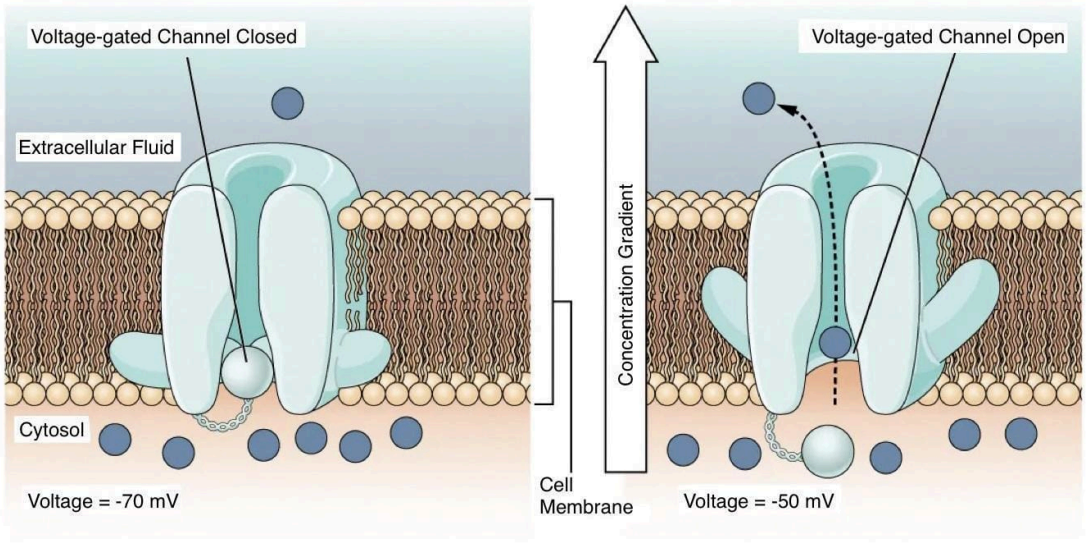


Figure 7 | Voltage-gated Channels | [12] In this illustration, a voltage-gated channel remains closed at a membrane voltage of -70 mV (Left) and opens when the transmembrane voltage reaches -50 mV (Right).

Leakage Channels

A leakage channel is the simplest type of channel, opening and closing randomly without any specific trigger, and operates at an inherent rate. Leakage channels are linked to the resting membrane potential (Figure 8).

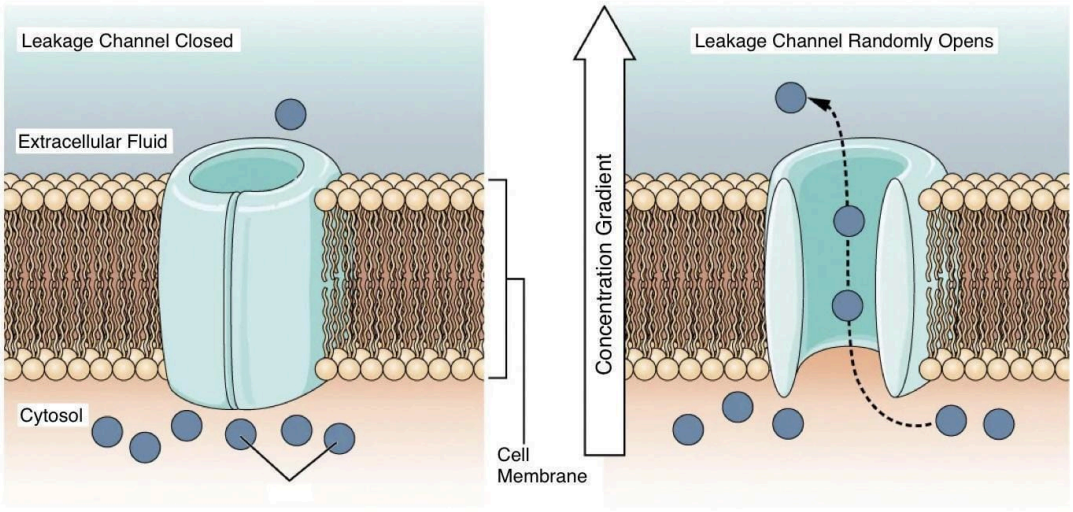


Figure 8 | Leakage Channel | [13] Opening and closing of the leakage channel occurs randomly allowing passage of ions when it is open.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.3: MEMBRANE TRANSPORT

By being selectively permeable, the cell membrane plays a crucial role in regulating the concentrations of materials within the cell, including ions, nutrients, and waste products. Smaller nonpolar substances, like oxygen, carbon dioxide, and steroid hormones, can easily traverse the lipid bilayer due to the nonpolar nature of the lipid tails in the membrane. Conversely, water-soluble materials such as glucose, amino acids, and electrolytes necessitate transporter molecules like carrier proteins to cross the membrane, as the hydrophobic tails of the phospholipid bilayer repel them. Several mechanisms facilitate substance transport across the cell membrane. **Passive transport** involves the movement of substances without expending energy. In contrast, **active transport** utilizes energy from ATP to move substances across the membrane. We will examine membrane proteins more closely before delving into the specifics of transport mechanisms.

1.3.1: Passive Transport

1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport

1.3.3: Vesicular Transport

This page titled 1.3: Membrane Transport is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.3.1: Passive Transport

The occurrence of passive transport for a substance relies on its membrane permeability and a concentration gradient that enables molecules to diffuse from regions of higher concentration to lower concentration. Specific molecules, such as gasses, lipids, and water (which employ specialized water channels called **aquaporins** within the membrane), swiftly traverse the cell membrane. On the other hand, molecules such as glucose, amino acids, and ions, particularly those with polar characteristics, do not move as rapidly through the membrane. Passive transport mechanisms include diffusion, facilitated diffusion, filtration, and osmosis.

Simple Diffusion

Molecules or ions diffuse from regions of higher concentration to those of lower concentration until equilibrium is reached across the space. Diffusion denotes the transfer of substances from high to low concentration areas. The diffusion of ions, in particular, hinges on their concentration gradient and electrical gradient, called **electrochemical gradient**, demanding no metabolic energy.

When a substance is more concentrated on one side of a semipermeable membrane, it will move along its concentration gradient through the membrane, given that it can permeate. Substances such as oxygen and carbon dioxide, which can quickly diffuse through the lipid bilayer of the cell membrane, illustrate this phenomenon. Cells rapidly consume oxygen during metabolism, leading to a lower intracellular oxygen concentration compared to the outside. As a result, oxygen diffuses through the lipid bilayer directly into the cell from the interstitial fluid. Conversely, cells generate carbon dioxide as a metabolic byproduct. With its concentration increasing within the cytoplasm, carbon dioxide moves from the cell into the interstitial fluid through the lipid bilayer, where its concentration is lower. This mechanism, characterized by molecules spreading from higher to regions of lower concentrations, constitutes a form of passive transport known as **simple diffusion**[14] (Figure 9).

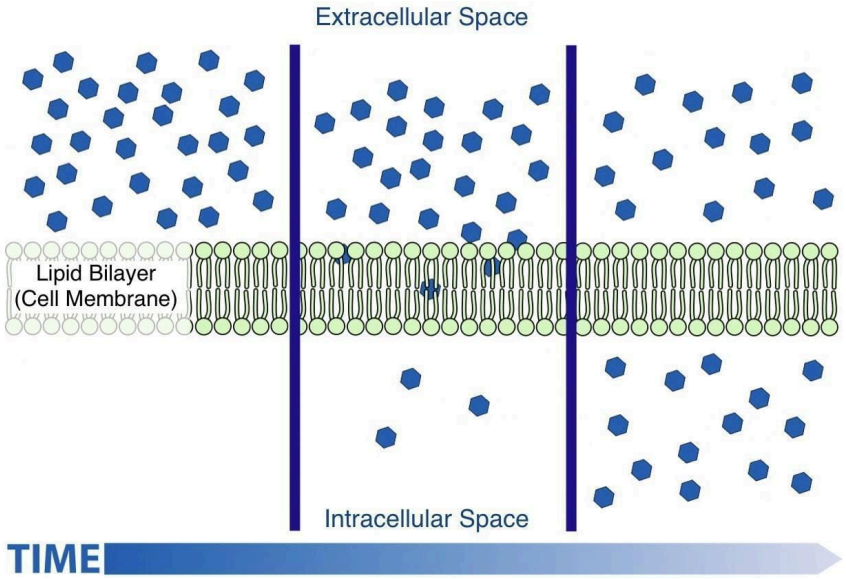


Figure 9 | Simple Diffusion across the Cell Membrane | [15] A substance with a higher concentration outside the cell begins to move through the cell membrane toward an area of lower concentration across a semipermeable membrane. Over time, equilibrium is established between the external and internal compartments.

The movement of substances across a membrane is termed **flux**. Numerous factors influence the rate of diffusion. **Fick's law** of diffusion establishes that the speed of diffusion correlates directly with its concentration gradient, permeability, and the surface area of the membrane for diffusion. The diffusion rate is inversely related to the thickness of the membrane and the size of the substance. For example, smaller substances exhibit higher diffusion rates compared to larger ones. The diffusion rate escalates with temperature elevation as molecules disperse more swiftly in higher temperatures than cooler ones.

Osmosis

The movement of water is unique in that it can traverse the cell membrane unhindered across all cell types, facilitated either by protein channels called aquaporins or by permeating between the lipid tails of the membrane.

The solute concentration around cells is regulated by membrane transport mechanisms to match that of the same within the cytoplasm. One such mechanism is osmosis, a passive transport process where water movement transpires across a semipermeable membrane from a solution with a lower solute concentration to a solution with a higher solute concentration (Figure 10).

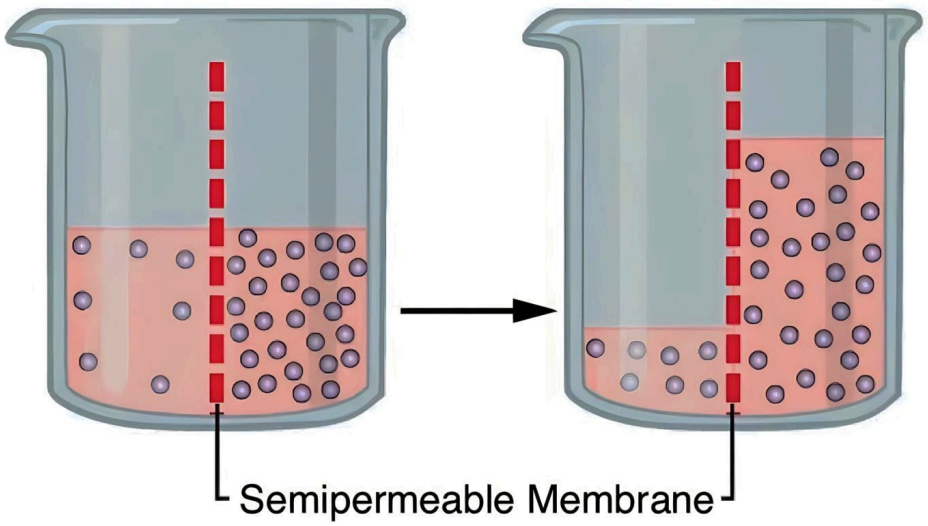


Figure 10 | Osmosis | [16] Osmosis is the movement of water across a semipermeable membrane, following its concentration gradient. When a membrane permits water passage but not the solute, water will naturally move towards the side with lower water concentration (and higher solute concentration) to achieve equilibrium. In this illustration, the solution on the right side of the membrane is hypertonic, as shown in the beaker on the left. The movement of water to the right side of the membrane to reach equilibrium is shown in the beaker on the right side.

Tonicity refers to the relative concentration of solutes in two solutions separated by a semipermeable membrane. It determines the direction and extent of water movement across the membrane, affecting the volume and shape of the cell. The three main categories of tonicity are isotonic, hypotonic, and hypertonic. **Isotonic** condition is when the solute concentrations inside and outside the cell are equal across the semipermeable membrane. In isotonic conditions, water molecules have identical concentrations on both sides of the cell, maintaining the normal structure and function of a cell. In cases where one solution holds a higher solute concentration than the other, the condition is **hypertonic**, leading to the diffusion of water molecules into the hypertonic solution (Figure 11). Red blood cells in a hypertonic solution, for example, shrink as water exits through osmosis and die, which is referred to as **crenation**. Conversely, if a solution holds a lower solute concentration than another, it is **hypotonic**, prompting water molecules to diffuse out of the hypotonic solution into the hypertonic compartment. Cells immersed in a hypotonic solution absorb excessive water, causing them to swell, potentially bursting. The loss of red blood cells because of swelling and ultimately bursting in a hypotonic condition is called **hemolysis**.

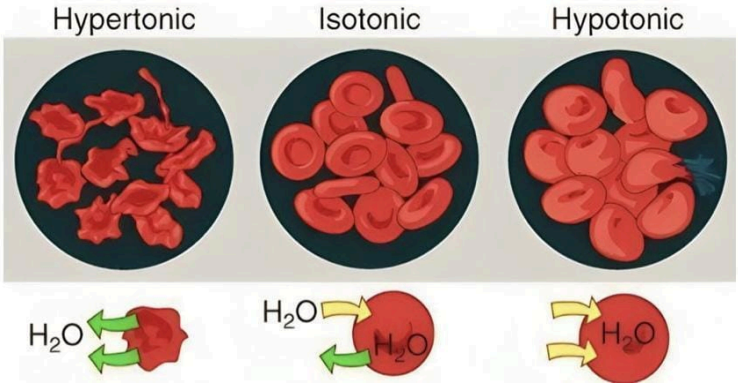


Figure 11 | Tonicity | [17] In isotonic conditions, water molecules have identical concentrations on both sides of the cell, maintaining the cell's normal structure and function (Center.) Placing cells in a hypertonic solution makes them shrink as water exits through osmosis (Left.) If a solution holds a lower solute concentration than another, it is hypotonic, prompting water molecules to diffuse from the hypotonic solution into the hypertonic compartment (Right.)

Osmolarity signifies the concentration of osmotically active particles in a solution. **Osmolality** indicates moles of solute per kilogram of solvent, while osmolarity refers to moles of solute per liter of solution. These terms are interchangeable because the solvent being referred to is water, and 1 liter of pure water at 4 °C equals 1 kilogram. It is quantified as **osmoles** per liter (Osm/L), denoting the moles of solute particles within 1 liter of solution. As an example, the osmolarity of a 1 M sodium chloride (NaCl) solution equates to 2 Osm/L. Two solutions sharing the same osmolarity are termed **isosmotic**. Solutions with varying osmolarities are designated **hyperosmotic** for higher osmolarity and **hypoosmotic** for lower osmolarity.

The inclusion of solute in a solution generates osmotic pressure. This pressure difference across a membrane prompts water to migrate from a region of lower solute concentration to a higher solute concentration. Over time, the volume of the solution with higher solute concentration increases, while the volume with lower osmotic concentration decreases (Figure 10). For instance, a 1 M calcium chloride ($\mathrm{CaCl_2}$) solution exhibits greater osmotic pressure than a 1 M NaCl solution. Despite potential solute composition differences, the major body fluid compartments maintain nearly equivalent osmolality, hovering around 300 mOsm. Fluids with osmolarity similar to that of body fluids, such as 0.9 percent saline and 5 percent dextrose, are commonly employed for rehydration purposes in cases of dehydration. These solutions are chosen due to their compatibility with the osmotic environment of bodily fluids, facilitating a more effective restoration of fluid balance during dehydration. Understanding fluid movement between intracellular and extracellular compartments is important in intraoperative fluid and cerebral edema management during anesthesia.

This page titled 1.3.1: Passive Transport is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport

Carrier proteins in the cell membrane assist in two types of transport: facilitated diffusion and active transport. Carrier-mediated transport is characterized by distinctive attributes, which include **stereospecificity**, **saturation**, and **competition**.

Stereospecificity: Each carrier protein exhibits a specific affinity for binding particular solutes. An instance is the facilitated diffusion of D-glucose, the natural isomer, whereas L-glucose is not transported. Simple diffusion, conversely, would not differentiate between these isomers.

Saturation: The extent of transportation hinges on the quantity of available carrier molecules. The term **transport maximum** (Tmax) denotes the maximum solute amount transportable across a biological membrane at a given time, regardless of the solute's concentration gradient. As an illustration, Tm for glucose at the kidney tubule is 375 mg/dL.

Competition: Similar solutes compete for binding sites on carrier molecules. For example, galactose is a competitive inhibitor in transporting glucose across the wall of the small intestine.

Facilitated Diffusion

Facilitated diffusion is a passive process requiring no cellular energy expenditure. It is a mechanism employed for substances that cannot traverse the lipid bilayer due to their dimensions or polarity. This process might necessitate specialized channels for particular solutes like electrolytes to cross the membrane. For instance, despite the high extracellular concentration of sodium ions, these polarized electrolytes cannot penetrate the nonpolar lipid bilayer. Therefore, membrane proteins form sodium ion channels, enabling sodium ions to move along their concentration gradient from the extracellular space into the cells. Various other solutes, including amino acids, phosphate, and bicarbonate ions, rely on facilitated diffusion for cellular entry or exit.

The process of facilitated diffusion involves specific steps in the carrier protein to facilitate the movement of molecules across the cell membrane (see Figure 12).

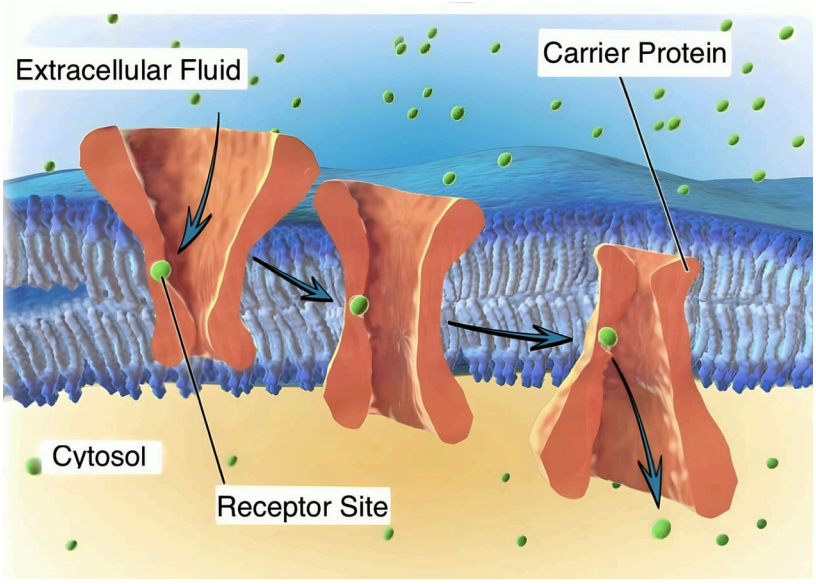


Figure 12 | Facilitated Diffusion | [18] First, the carrier protein recognizes and binds to the specific molecule that needs to be transported. Upon binding, the carrier protein undergoes a conformational change in its structure, allowing it to encapsulate the bound molecule within its structure and shield it from the hydrophobic environment of the lipid bilayer. The protein-molecule complex enables the movement of the molecule from one side of the membrane to the other, where it undergoes another conformational change that releases the transported molecule into the intracellular environment.

The facilitation by carrier proteins allows for a higher molecular transport rate than simple diffusion, especially when the concentration gradient is steep. However, as the concentration gradient decreases and approaches equilibrium, the rate of

facilitated diffusion may reach a plateau as the carriers become saturated or all available binding sites on the proteins are occupied. **Vmax** (maximum velocity) is the maximum rate of transport achieved when all the carrier proteins (transporters) are saturated with the substrate. At this point, increasing the substrate concentration further does not increase the rate of transport because all available carriers are already engaged [19]. Vmax depends on factors like the number of available carrier proteins, their activity, and the physiological conditions. Therefore, Tmax is equivalent to Vmax in the context of carrier-mediated transport. At Tmax, the transport rate becomes constant, and further increases in concentration do not result in a corresponding rise in the rate of facilitated diffusion. In the example of glucose transport, its size and polarity prohibit simple diffusion across the lipid bilayer. A carrier protein, known as the **glucose transporter** (**GLUT**), facilitates the entry of glucose molecules by transporting them into the cell. The number of GLUT molecules influences the amount of transported glucose.

While both simple and facilitated diffusion are passive processes that do not require energy input, facilitated diffusion involves specific carrier proteins or channels to enable the movement of certain molecules that cannot freely cross the membrane. In contrast to simple diffusion, where the rate escalates proportionally with the concentration of diffusing substances, facilitated diffusion demonstrates a Vmax (Figure 13, Table 1).

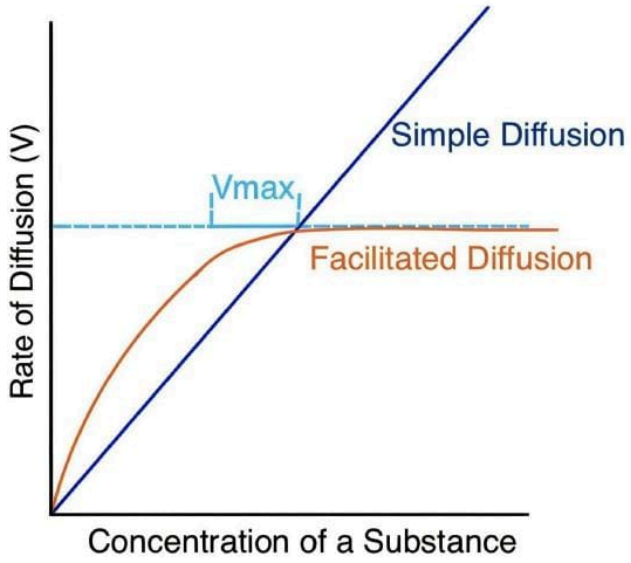


Figure 13 | Comparison of Simple Diffusion and Facilitated Diffusion | The graph illustrates that facilitated diffusion attains a maximum rate, referred to as Vmax, while simple diffusion persists as long as a concentration gradient exists.

Table 1: Comparison of Simple and Facilitated Diffusion

	Simple Diffusion	Facilitated Diffusion
Carrier proteins	Molecules move directly through the lipid bilayer of the cell membrane. No carrier proteins required.	Molecules move through specific protein channels or carrier proteins embedded in the cell membrane.
Direction of transport based on concentration gradient	High to low concentration	High to low concentration
Examples	Oxygen, carbon dioxide, and lipids (nonpolar substances)	Glucose, amino acids, and ions (polar molecules)

	Simple Diffusion	Facilitated Diffusion
Energy Requirement	No energy input required	No energy input required
Diffusion Rate	Diffusion rate depends on concentration gradient, permeability, temperature, and molecular size.	Diffusion rate depends on the number of available carrier proteins. May reach a saturation point.
Specificity	Not highly specific	Often highly specific. Carrier proteins have selective binding sites.
Vmax	None	Represents the maximum rate of transport when carrier proteins are saturated.

Active Transport

Active transport, also called **primary active transport**, refers to a cellular transport process necessitating ATP to move a substance across a membrane against its concentration gradient, aided by protein carriers. In this mechanism, specific integral membrane proteins called pumps move molecules across the membrane. These pumps use energy from the hydrolysis of ATP to transfer ions or other molecules against their concentration gradient. One prominent example is the **sodium-potassium pump** or **sodium-potassium ATPase**, which actively transports three sodium ions out of the cell while simultaneously bringing two potassium ions into the cell (Figure 14). **Calcium ATPase** or **calcium pump** within the sarcoplasmic reticulum of muscle fibers, the **hydrogen ATPase** located in the plasma membrane, and the **hydrogen-potassium ATPase** (proton pump) within the parietal cells of the stomach are also examples of primary active transporters. Primary active transport is integral to maintaining proper cellular functions and generating the electrochemical gradients necessary for **secondary active transport** and other physiological processes.

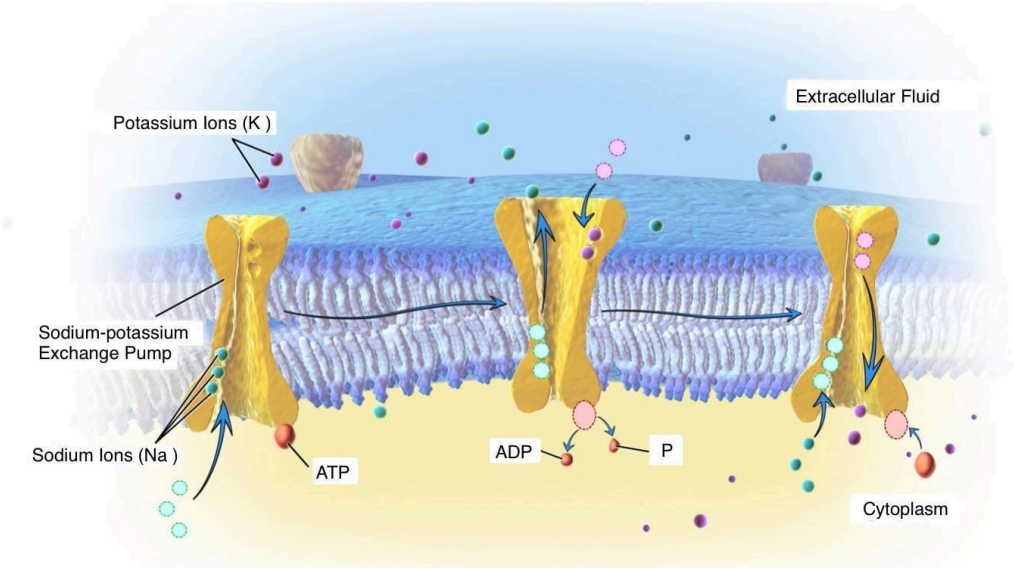


Figure 14 | Sodium-Potassium Pump | [20] The pump starts in an open conformation with three sodium ions binding to the pump's cytoplasmic side. The binding of sodium ions stimulates the phosphorylation of the pump by transferring a phosphate group from ATP to the pump. The pump undergoes a conformational change upon phosphorylation, exposing sodium ions to the extracellular side. Sodium ions are released into the extracellular fluid. Two potassium ions from the extracellular fluid bind to the pump with the phosphorylated pump in its new conformation. The pump is dephosphorylated, reverting to its original conformation, which triggers the release of potassium ions into the cytoplasm, and the cycle repeats

Ouabain, also referred to as **digitalis**, is a plant-derived glycoside. It is often discussed in the context of the sodium-potassium pump due to its significant impact on the pump's function and the physiological processes it influences. It functions as an irreversible inhibitor of sodium-potassium pumps [21]. When the sodium-potassium pump ceases its operation, an increase in intracellular sodium levels and a subsequent rise in intracellular calcium levels occur. Elevated intracellular calcium levels, in turn, can lead to enhanced contractility of cardiac muscle fibers. Hence ouabain and its derivatives were used in treating certain heart conditions, such as congestive heart failure and atrial fibrillation. The use of ouabain as a therapeutic agent has diminished over time, however, due to potential side effects and the development of more targeted treatments.

Secondary active transport permits the movement of multiple solutes, with one solute (typically sodium ion) transported downhill, furnishing the energy needed for the uphill transport of other solutes. This energy is not supplied directly through metabolic means but is indirectly from the sodium ion gradient upheld across cell membranes by the sodium-potassium ATPase (Figure 15).

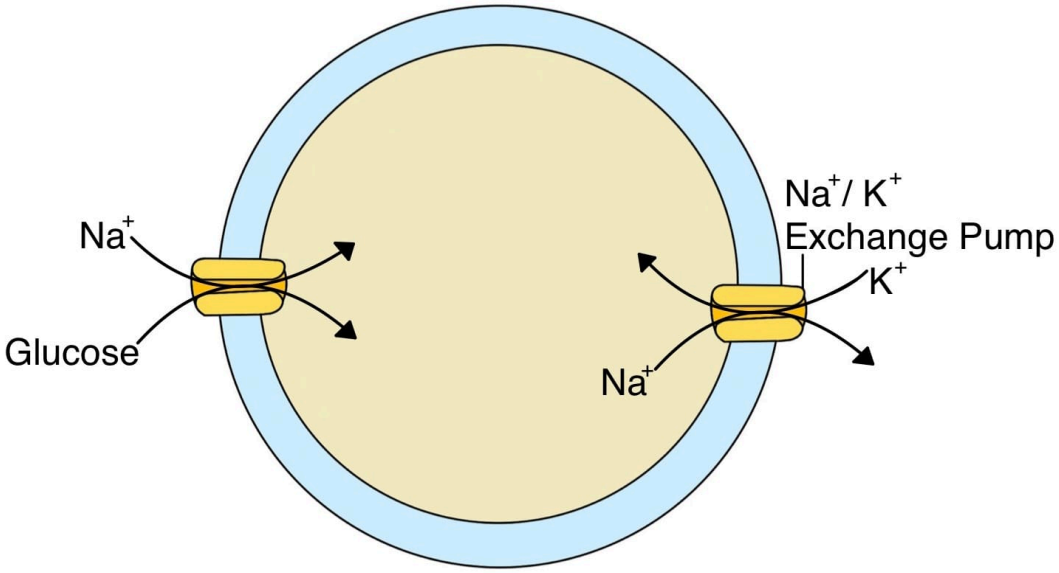


Figure 15 | Cotransport | On the left side of the illustration, the cotransport mechanism involves the simultaneous movement of sodium ions (Na+) and glucose molecules across the cell membrane. The arrows indicate the direction of movement, highlighting the coordinated influx of sodium ions and glucose. The sodium and potassium exchange mechanism is portrayed on the right side. (Na+) are actively transported out of the cell, while potassium ions (K+) are transported into the cell.

Symport is a secondary active transport mechanism in which two or more substances are moved across a biological membrane in the same direction simultaneously through a carrier protein known as a symporter. This process relies directly on the electrochemical gradient established by the primary active transport of the sodium-potassium exchange pump. By utilizing cellular ATP, the sodium-potassium exchange pump actively pumps three sodium ions out of the cell and two potassium ions into the cell, maintaining a steep, low intracellular concentration of sodium. As sodium ions naturally flow back down their strong concentration gradient into the cell, the symporter couples this downhill movement to drive the transport of another molecule up its concentration gradient. A classic example is the **sodium-glucose cotransporter-1** (SGLT-1) in intestinal epithelial cells, where the influx of sodium ion drives glucose accumulation inside the cell against its gradient. A similar mechanism operates in the thick ascending limb of the renal tubule via the **sodium-potassium-chloride cotransporter** (NKCC2).

Conversely, the movement of two or more solutes in opposing directions across membranes is called **countertransport** or **antiport**. One example is the **sodium-calcium exchanger**, also known as NCX, found in many types of cells, including cardiac muscle fibers and neurons. **Sodium-hydrogen exchanger,** also known as **NHE**, is yet another example and is found in the cell membranes of many cells, including kidneys, gastrointestinal tract, and neurons regulating pH (Figure 16).

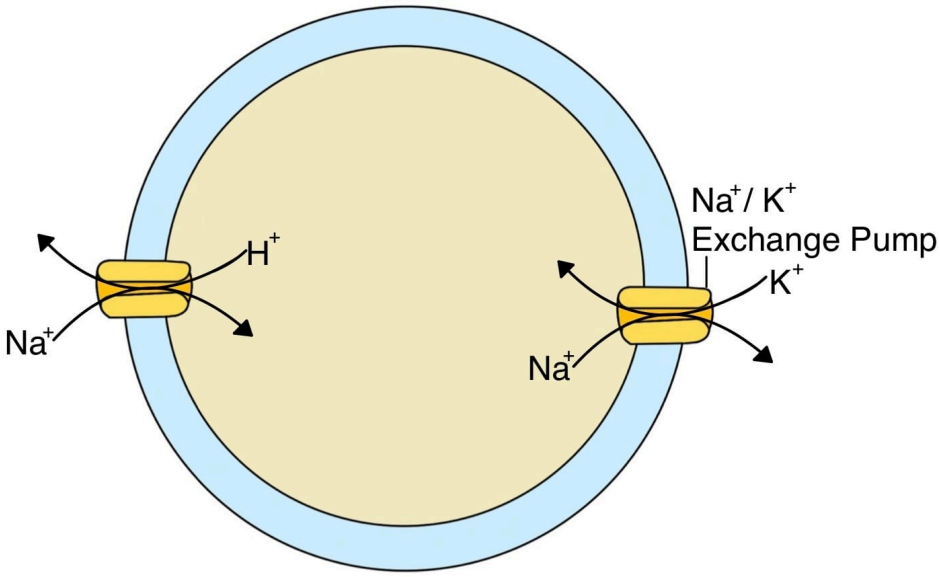


Figure 16 | Countertransport | Schematic diagram illustrating two transmembrane transport proteins operating across a cell membrane:

Left: A sodium-proton exchanger (NHE), showing antiport movement of Na+ and H+ ions in opposite directions across the bilayer.

Right: A sodium-potassium exchange pump (Na+/K+-ATPase), facilitating the reciprocal exchange of Na+ and K+.

Table 2: Characteristics of Transport Across the Membrane

Transportation Type	Electrochemical Gradient	Carrier-mediated Transport	Metabolic Energy	Sodium Ion Gradient
Simple Diffusion	Downhill	No	No	No
Facilitated diffusion	Downhill	Yes	No	No
Primary active transport	Uphill	Yes	Yes	
Cotransport	Uphill for the solute (not sodium ion) to be transported	Yes	Indirect	Yes, same direction
Countertransport	Uphill for the solute (not sodium ion) to be transported	Yes	Indirect	Yes, opposite direction

This page titled 1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.3.3: Vesicular Transport

Endocytosis denotes the process of internalizing substances into a cell by enclosing them within a segment of the cell membrane, subsequently separating this membrane section (Figure 17). Following this separation, the cell membrane segment and its enclosed contents form an autonomous, intracellular vesicle or membranous sac. Endocytosis is frequently employed when the particle size renders transport through the membrane unfeasible.

Phagocytosis ("cell eating") involves engulfing solid particles, such as pathogens, which are digested and recycled within the cell. On the other hand, **pinocytosis** ("cell drinking") pertains to the intake of interstitial fluid containing dissolved substances into the cell through membranous vesicles. While phagocytosis and pinocytosis are generally less selective in the substances they internalize, **receptor-mediated endocytosis** operates as a mechanism through which cells precisely regulate the internalization of particular substances. This process involves binding the substance intended for transport (known as the ligand) to surface receptors. Through a recognition mechanism, the cell then initiates the endocytosis of the **receptor-ligand complex**, which also incorporates a portion of the cell membrane. This process is exemplified by the way red blood cells internalize iron. In this example, iron is transported within the bloodstream by a protein called **transferrin**. Specific transferrin receptors on the surface of red blood cells form bonds with iron-transferrin molecules, subsequently prompting the cell to undergo endocytosis of these receptor-ligand complexes.

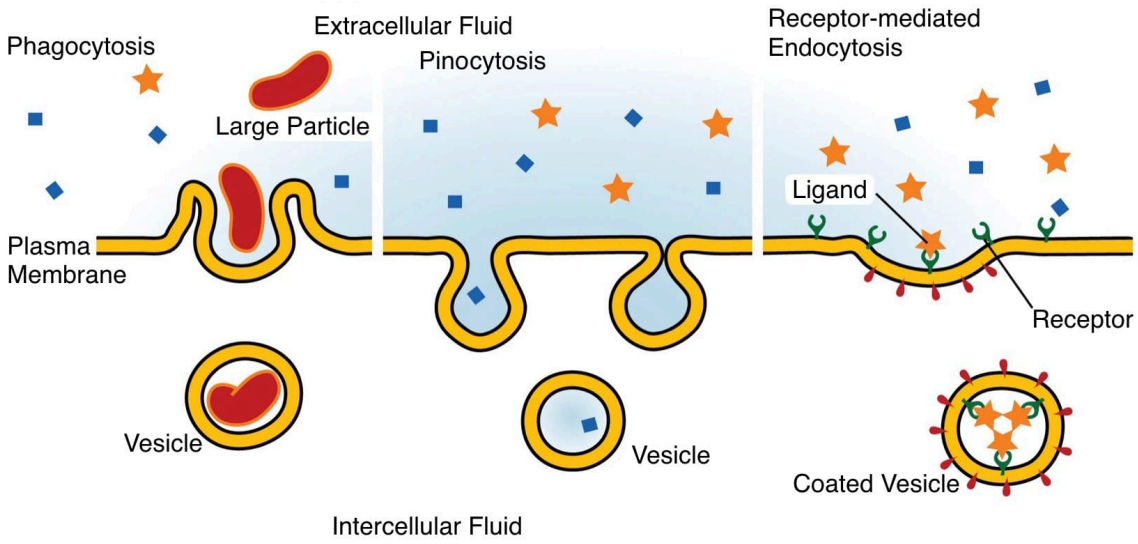


Figure 17 | Endocytosis | [22] Endocytosis is a vesicular transport process wherein a cell encloses extracellular materials through its cell membrane, forming structures known as vesicles. Three distinct types of endocytosis exist. (a) Phagocytosis involves the nonselective uptake of large particles by the cell. (b) Pinocytosis entails the cell engulfing small particles in the fluid. (c) Receptor-mediated endocytosis is a highly selective process. In this case, when external receptors bind to a specific ligand, the cell responds by internalizing the ligand through endocytosis.

Exocytosis denotes the mechanism by which substances are released from the cell as vesicles (Figure 18). Certain cells engage in the synthesis of substances that necessitate secretion. These substances are wrapped by membrane-bound vesicles within the cell. Upon fusion of the vesicle with the cell membrane, its contents are released outside the cell. The membranous covering of the vesicle becomes integrated into the cell membrane. Cells within the stomach and pancreas, for example, are involved in the production and secretion of digestive enzymes through exocytosis (Figure 19). Similarly, endocrine cells follow this process to generate and release hormones, while specific immune cells utilize exocytosis to secrete histamine, an important chemical for immune responses.

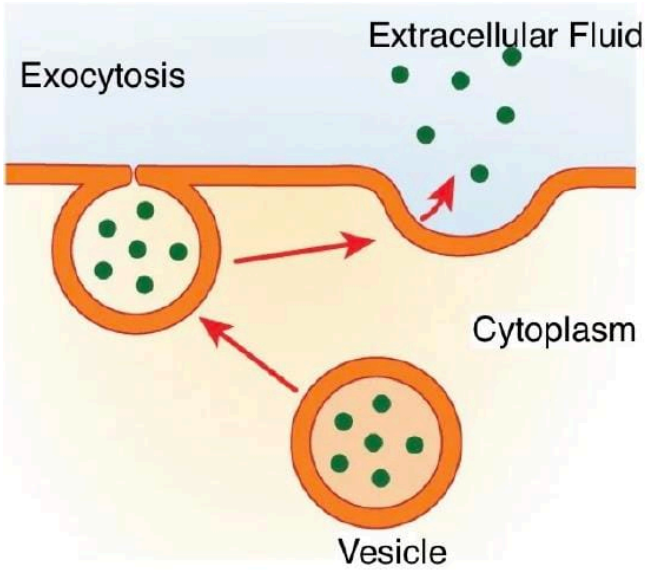


Figure 18 | Exocytosis | [23] Exocytosis is the cellular process responsible for releasing substances outside the cell. Materials earmarked for export are enclosed within a vesicle inside the cell. The membrane of the vesicle merges with the cell membrane, facilitating the discharge of its contents into the extracellular space

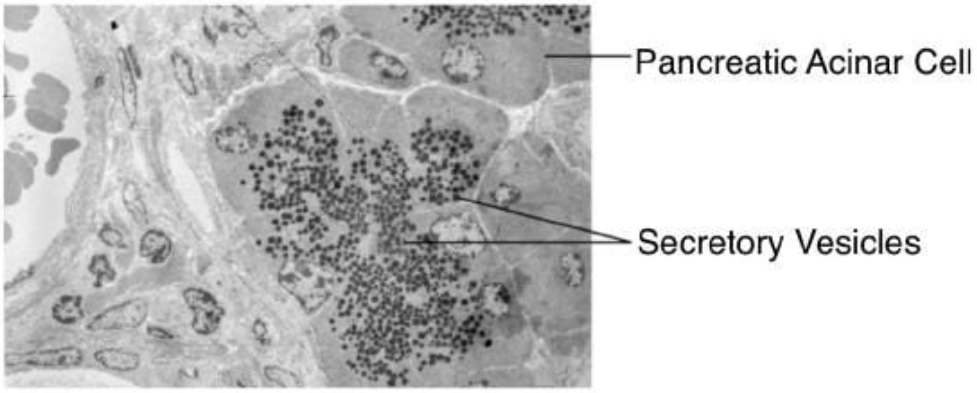


Figure 19 | Enzyme Products of Pancreatic Cells | [24] Pancreatic acinar cells play a crucial role in producing and secreting numerous enzymes responsible for digesting food. The small black granules in the figure represent secretory vesicles filled with enzymes. These enzymes are destined for export from the cells through the process of exocytosis. LM × 2900. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of University of Michigan Medical School © 2012)

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 1.3.3: Vesicular Transport is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.4: ELECTRICAL ACTIVITY OF THE CELL MEMBRANE

A charge exists at the membrane surface due to the difference in the distribution of ions between the intracellular and extracellular compartments. This distinct charge variation enables the generation of electrical signals, including action potentials in specific cell types such as neurons and muscle fibers. To establish a transmembrane potential and trigger an action potential, various channels and specialized ion pumps requiring energy play a crucial role.

1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential

This page titled 1.4: Electrical Activity of the Cell Membrane is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential

The membrane potential, measured in millivolts (mV), signifies the distribution of charge along the cell membrane. This potential value depicts the charge on the intracellular side of the membrane relative to the external environment (Figure 20). During the resting state of a cell, ions are dispersed across the membrane through random openings of leakage channels. For instance, in muscle cells, the concentration of sodium ions outside the cell substantially exceeds that of the inside (145 mM compared to 12 mM). Similarly, the concentration of potassium ions within the cell surpasses its concentration outside the cell membrane (155 mM compared to 4.5 mM) [25].

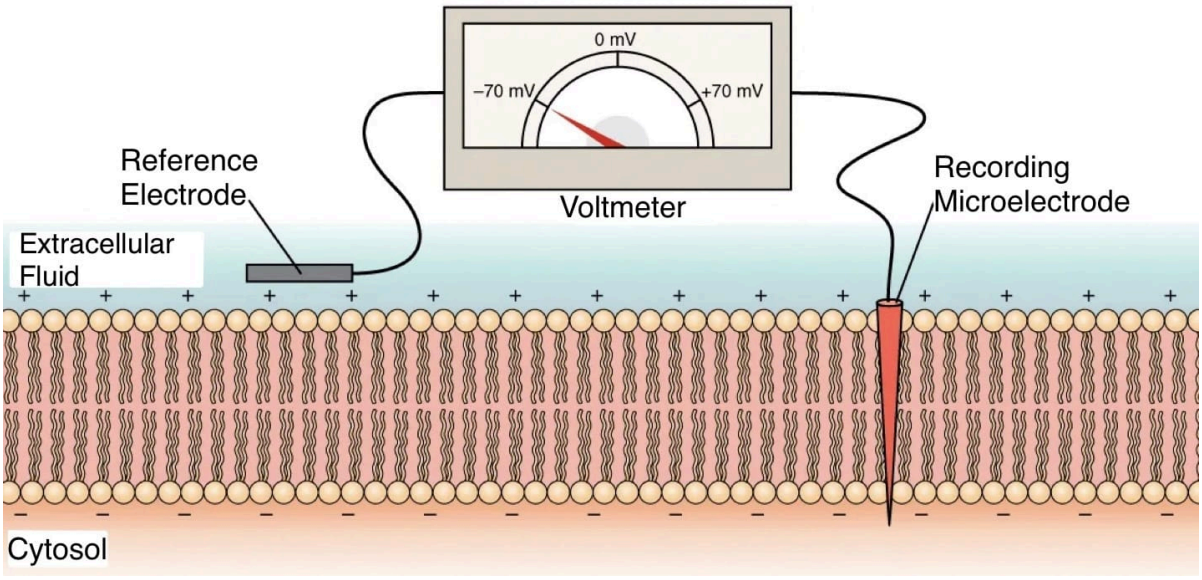


Figure 20 | Measurement of Electrical Charge Across a Membrane Using a Voltmeter | [26] This diagram depicts how the resting membrane potential of an axon is measured using electrodes and a voltmeter.

Table 3: Concentrations of Sodium (Na^+) and Potassium Ions (K^+) across a Muscle Cell Membrane

Ion	Extracellular Concentration	Intracellular Concentration	Eion
Na+	145 mM	12 mM	+ 65 mV
K+	4.5 mM	155 mM	- 95 mV

Diffusion potential refers to the potential difference across the membrane arising from the concentration difference of a specific ion and its gradient. Each ion that can permeate the membrane strives to drive the membrane potential closer to its **equilibrium potential,** also known as the **Nernst potential**. It is the electric potential difference across a cell membrane when the system is at equilibrium with respect to a particular ion. It is the membrane potential at which there is no net movement of a specific ion across the membrane due to the balance between the concentration gradient and the electrical gradient (created by the charge difference across the membrane)[27].

The Nernst equation, named after the German physicist Walther Nernst, helps to predict the voltage across a membrane based on the concentration of ions on either side. [28]

$$E_{ion} = \frac{61}{z} \log \frac{[ion]_{out}}{[ion]_{in}}$$

Equation 1 | Nernst Equation |

E_{ion} = Equilibrium potential for a particular ion, in mV

Z = the valence of the ion

The equilibrium potential for potassium ion is -95 mV while that for sodium ion is +65 mV, considering the ionic concentrations provided in Table 3. Based on these ion concentrations, the resulting charge difference is observed as -70 mV, representing the resting membrane potential. The specific value of the resting membrane potential can vary across different cells, although -70 mV is a frequently encountered number. This voltage discrepancy arises due to several factors. Negatively charged anions within the cell hinder potassium ion diffusion, while leakage channels permit slow movement of sodium ions into the cell or potassium ions out of the cell. Additionally, the sodium-potassium exchange pump contributes to the restoration of these ion gradients.

The sodium-potassium exchange pump, however, acts to lower the concentration of sodium ions to 12 mM within the cell while maintaining a higher concentration outside of the cell. On the other hand, the cytosol harbors many anions and negatively charged proteins. Substantial anions are integral to the inner cell membrane, encompassing specialized phospholipids and proteins affiliated with the inner leaflet of the membrane (the term "leaflet" signifies one side of the lipid bilayer membrane). The negative charge resides predominantly in these larger anions. Consequently, many intracellular anions, which cannot diffuse through the membrane due to their large sizes, remain unbalanced by positive ions, culminating in the internal negative charge of the cell. Systemic disturbances such as **hyperkalemia** or **hypokalemia** could alter homeostasis and affect anesthetic management.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.5: THE CYTOPLASM AND CELLULAR ORGANELLES

Cells comprise an internal cytoplasmic compartment housing many structures. Within the enclosure is **cytosol**, a fluid matrix enveloping organelles and facilitating biochemical reactions. Its composition varies across cell types, containing organic and inorganic substances.

Human cells feature diverse cellular organelles. These membranous or nonmembranous organelles fulfill distinct functions within the cytoplasm. The entirety of organelles and cytosol is referred to as the **cytoplasm**. The nucleus, containing a significant portion of the deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), operates as the cellular control center (Figure 21).

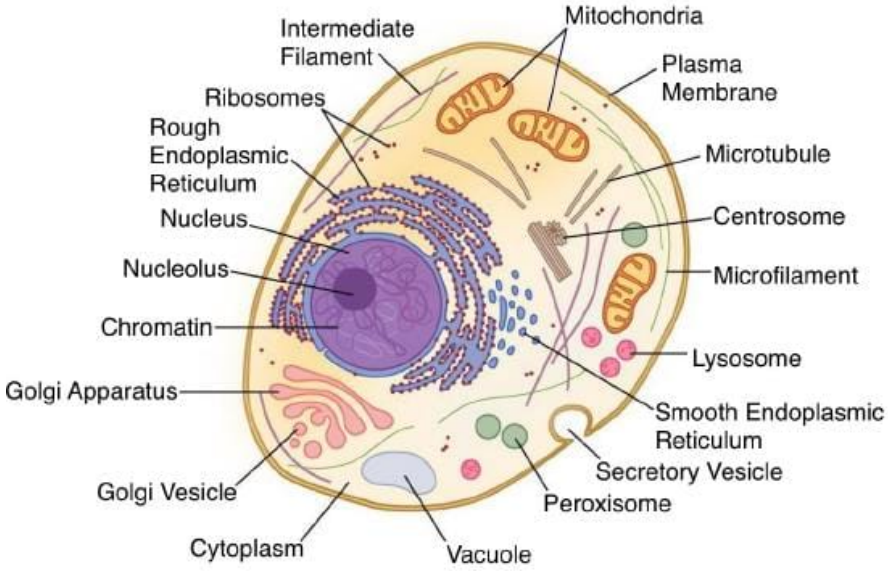


Figure 21 | A Human Cell Model | [29] This figure illustrates a schematic representation of a human cell, highlighting primary organelles crucial for cellular functions. Key structures such as the nucleus, endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi apparatus, mitochondria, lysosomes, and peroxisomes are depicted to provide an overview of the cellular architecture and organelle organization in human cells.

1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum

1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus

1.5.3: Lysosomes

1.5.4: Mitochondria

1.5.5: Peroxisome

1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton

1.5.7: The Nucleus

1.5.8: Cell Junctions

This page titled 1.5: The Cytoplasm and Cellular Organelles is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum

The endoplasmic reticulum constitutes a membranous structure in direct continuity with the nuclear envelope. Its expansive network creates passages that facilitate the transport, synthesis, and storage of cellular materials (Figure 22).

There are two distinct forms of endoplasmic reticulum: **rough** and **smooth**. These variants serve different functions and manifest in varying proportions contingent upon cell type. The rough endoplasmic reticulum is given this name due to its studded surface housing ribosomes. Conversely, the endoplasmic reticulum devoid of ribosomes is referred to as smooth endoplasmic reticulum. This form encompasses various pivotal roles. The smooth endoplasmic reticulum orchestrates the production of lipids, including phospholipids and steroids. Hence, organs such as ovaries and testes, contributing substantially to steroid hormone production, boast abundant smooth endoplasmic reticulum. It is also responsible for sequestering and regulating cellular calcium ion concentrations, a mission particularly critical in neurons where calcium ions trigger neurotransmitter release. Smooth endoplasmic reticulum plays a significant role in muscle contraction with its stored calcium ions. It also participates in carbohydrate metabolism and **detoxification** by breaking down specific toxins.

Ribosomes, composed of small and large subunits, are nonmembranous structures present freely in the cytoplasm or congregate on the rough endoplasmic reticulum and function as hubs for protein synthesis. The primary role of the rough endoplasmic reticulum revolves around the assembly and modification of proteins intended for cell membranes or extracellular export. Post-ribosomal synthesis, proteins traverse through the channel of the rough endoplasmic reticulum, where additional alterations, such as glycosylation, occur. Subsequently, processed proteins are encased within vesicles for onward conveyance in the packaging and transit process involving the Golgi apparatus.

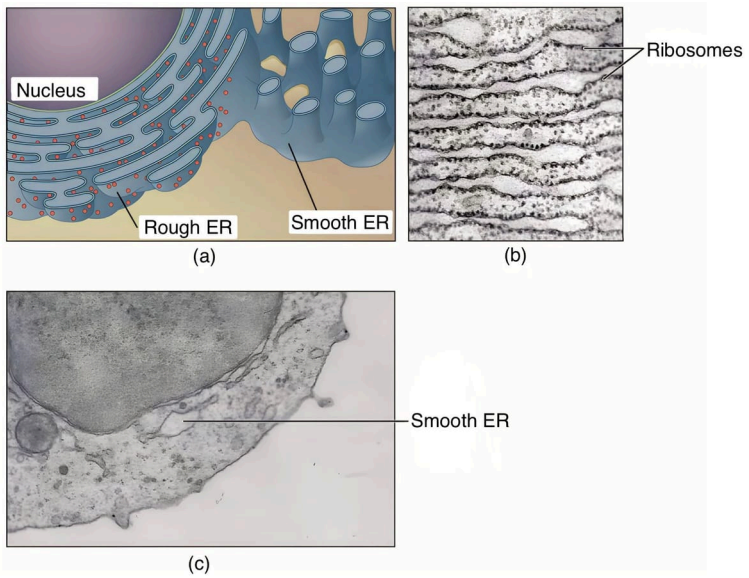


Figure 22 | Endoplasmic Reticulum (ER) | [30] (a) The ER is a winding network of thin membranous sacs closely associated with the nucleus. (source: mouse tissue). (b) Rough ER is studded with numerous ribosomes, which are sites of protein synthesis (source: mouse tissue). EM × 110,000. (c) The smooth ER lacks ribosomes

This page titled 1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus

The Golgi apparatus, also called Golgi bodies, is a cellular organelle of stacked, flattened membranous discs or **cisternae**. It is pivotal in modifying, sorting, and transporting proteins and lipids within the cell. Characterized by dual sides, each assigned distinct roles, the Golgi apparatus is integral to cellular processes. The *cis face* of the Golgi apparatus is closer to the endoplasmic reticulum, where incoming vesicles (transport vesicles) from the endoplasmic reticulum fuse with the Golgi. These vesicles carry materials, such as newly synthesized proteins and lipids, from the endoplasmic reticulum to the Golgi bodies for further processing. The *trans face* is the opposite side of the Golgi apparatus, farther away from the endoplasmic reticulum. The *trans face* is where the processed and modified products from the *cis face* are sorted, packaged, and prepared for transport to their final destinations. The *trans face* is responsible for packaging these materials into vesicles (secretory vesicles) that are either sent to other cellular compartments or transported outside the cell (Figure 23).

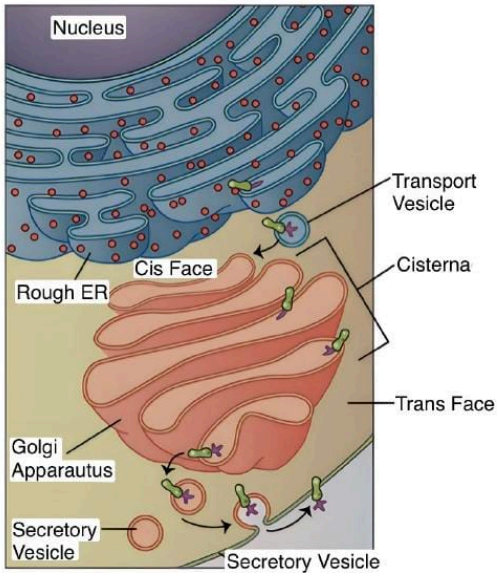


Figure 23 | Golgi Apparatus | [31] This figure details the Golgi apparatus, emphasizing its structural organization into cis and trans portions. The cis-face, positioned near the rough endoplasmic reticulum (ER), receives and modifies vesicles. Subsequently, these vesicles move through the Golgi cisternae to the trans-Golgi network, located at the opposite end, where further processing and sorting of cellular products occur.

This page titled 1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.5.3: Lysosomes

A lysosome is a membranous organelle encompassing enzymes, predominantly hydrolytic enzymes, responsible for breaking down and decomposing cellular components that are no longer needed or have become damaged (Figure 24). The Golgi apparatus packages protein products, including digestive enzymes, which are then encapsulated in vesicles. These vesicles, laden with enzymes, are either used to create new lysosomes or merge with existing ones. A distinctive cellular attribute known as **autophagy**, or self-eating, involves cells dismantling their structures, with lysosomes pivotal in this process. Lysosomes are also instrumental in the breakdown of foreign substances. For instance, during the phagocytosis of bacteria by white blood cells, lysosomes come into contact with the engulfed bacteria, initiating their digestion. Furthermore, lysosomes can be prompted to discharge their hydrolytic enzymes into the cell's cytoplasm, eliminating a damaged or compromised cell within the body. This mechanism, termed **autolysis**, regulates the process of cell death, a controlled phenomenon known as **apoptosis**.

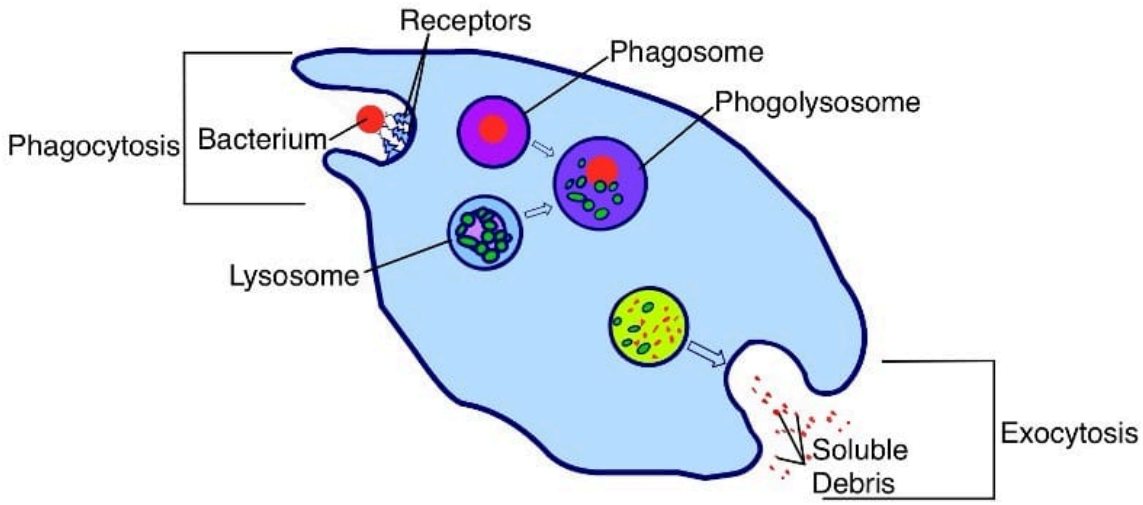


Figure 24 | Lysosome | [32] This figure illustrates the role of lysosomes in cellular function, with a specific focus on the process of phagocytosis. Lysosomes, depicted as membrane-bound organelles, are responsible for cellular waste disposal and degradation of engulfed materials. The image highlights the phagocytosis mechanism, where the cell membrane engulfs extracellular particles to form a phagosome. The lysosome then fuses with the phagosome and becomes a phagolysosome, facilitating the enzymatic breakdown of the ingested material and subsequent recycling of essential components.

This page titled 1.5.3: Lysosomes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.5.4: Mitochondria

A mitochondrion (plural = mitochondria) is an oval membranous structure that generates the majority of ATP within the cell. It consists of an outer and an inner lipid bilayer membrane (Figure 25). The outer membrane serves as a barrier and maintains structural integrity. The space between the outer and inner membranes is where various metabolic processes occur, facilitating communication between the cytoplasm and the mitochondrial matrix. The inner membrane is folded to form structures called **cristae**, which harbor an array of proteins, enzymes, and molecules that orchestrate the biochemical reactions of cellular respiration, such as the **citric acid cycle** (**Krebs cycle**) and **oxidative phosphorylation**. These reactions convert the potential energy contained in nutrient molecules like glucose into ATP, a form of cellular energy that can be readily utilized. High-energy demand cells, such as muscle cells, necessitate copious amounts of ATP for sustaining muscle contractions. Hence, they house a considerable quantity of mitochondria. Similarly, neurons require substantial ATP to power the activity of their sodium-potassium exchange pumps, prompting their possession of over a thousand mitochondria per cell. In contrast, a bone cell might possess only a few hundred mitochondria, as its metabolic activity is comparably lower [33] , [34] . Mitochondria have their own genetic material—specifically circular DNA and bacterial-like ribosomes—reflecting their evolutionary origin from an ancient aerobic bacterium that was engulfed by a precursor eukaryotic cell.[35]

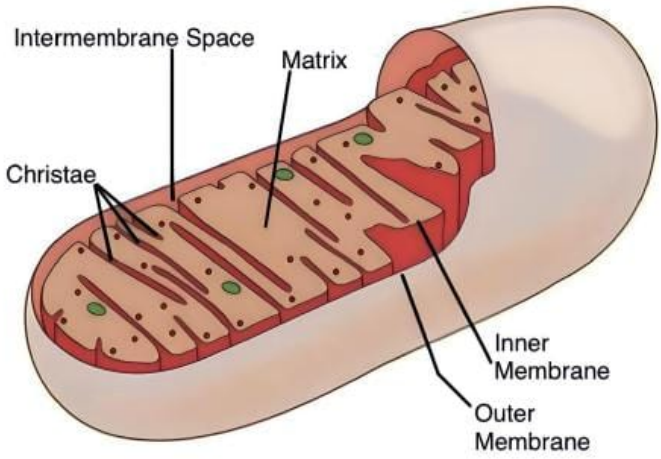


Figure 25 | The Structure of a Mitochondrion | [36] The figure illustrates the intricate structure of a mitochondrion, the powerhouse of the cell. Mitochondria are double-membraned organelles with distinct compartments that play a crucial role in cellular energy production. The outermost layer acts as a protective barrier, maintaining the structural integrity of the mitochondrion. The space between the outer and inner membranes is where various metabolic processes take place, facilitating communication between the cytoplasm and the mitochondrial matrix. Highly folded to form cristae, the inner membrane houses the electron transport chain and ATP synthase, essential components of oxidative phosphorylation. The central aqueous compartment enclosed by the inner membrane contains enzymes responsible for the citric acid cycle (Krebs cycle) and serves as the site for numerous metabolic reactions.

This page titled 1.5.4: Mitochondria is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.5.5: Peroxisome

A peroxisome is a membrane-bound cellular organelle (Figure 26) resembling lysosomes in its containment of enzymes; however, the enzyme assortment within peroxisomes differs from that in lysosomes. The enzymes in peroxisome are oxidases that aid the movement of hydrogen atoms from various molecules to oxygen, resulting in the formation of hydrogen peroxide. Further, enzymes within the peroxisome convert hydrogen peroxide into safer byproducts, specifically water and oxygen. Peroxisomes are involved in lipid metabolism and detoxification processes. This accounts for their greater abundance in the liver, where these functions hold substantial significance. Unlike lysosomes, which are formed from the Golgi apparatus, peroxisomes are thought to originate via self-replication or by budding from the smooth endoplasmic reticulum.

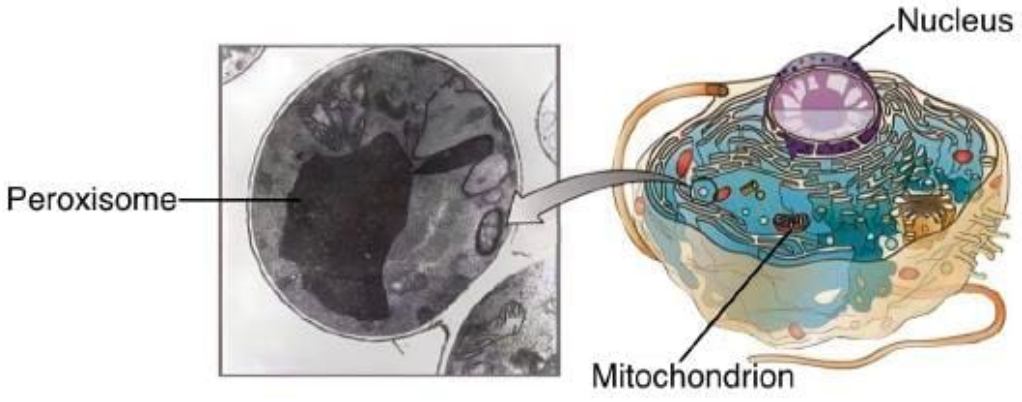


Figure 26 | Peroxisome | [37] *Left:* Transmission electron micrograph capturing a cell containing a peroxisome. *Right:* Illustration depicting the cellular localization of peroxisomes. Peroxisomes contribute to lipid biosynthesis and the breakdown of diverse molecules. Their functions may further specialize based on the cell type.(Credit for "micrograph": Modification of work by the American Society for Microbiology)

This page titled 1.5.5: Peroxisome is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton

The cytoskeleton is a complex assembly of proteins that intricately weaves together to provide cellular structural support, similar to how bones uphold the framework of the body. Cytoskeletal formations are essential for cell mobility, cell division, and intracellular transportation. The key protein components within the cytoskeleton are **microfilaments**, **intermediate filaments**, and **microtubules** (Figure 27). Microtubules are the most robust and are composed of subunits referred to as **tubulin** (Figure 27a). They preserve cell contour and integrity by withstanding compression and anchoring organelles in position within the cell. Microtubules also form integral parts of **the cilia** and **flagellum**, vital for cellular movement. Cilia are prevalent on numerous cell types throughout the body, their rhythmic motion propelling substances—like in the respiratory tract, aiding movement. In contrast, a flagellum is a more prominent appendage designed for cell locomotion. Among humans, the sperm cell is the sole example of a flagellated cell. Additionally, microtubules contribute to the structure of **centrioles**, two short identical entities found adjacent to the nucleus in most cells. During cell division, centrioles segregate sister chromatids, ensuring each new daughter cell inherits the accurate set of chromosomes.

Microfilaments are notably slimmer proteins compared to microtubules (Figure 27b). **Actin**, a specific type of microfilament, constitutes a component of **thin filaments** within muscle cells.

Among the cytoskeletal components, the intermediate filament stands as another essential entity. Its name implies that it occupies an intermediate width between microtubules and microfilaments (Figure 27c). Comprising elongated fibrous subunits of **keratin**, the intermediate filament forms a twisted, rope-like structure. Its role, in tandem with microtubules, is to preserve cell structure and form. They help anchor organelles within cells and forge connections between cells by establishing specific cell-to-cell junctions.

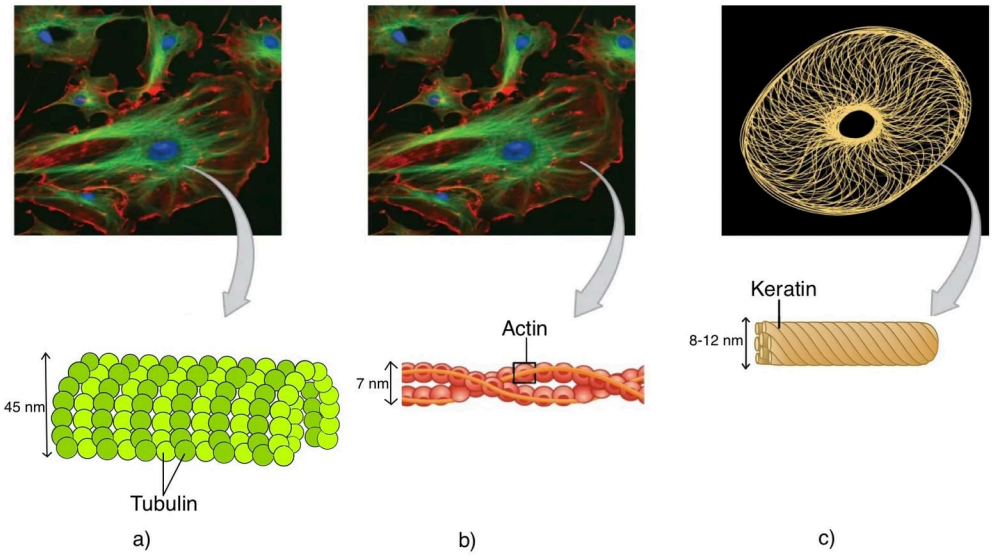


Figure 27 | Components of the Cytoskeleton | [38] (a) Microtubules; (b) Microfilaments; (c) Intermediate Filaments *Top Row:* Widefield fluorescent images unveiling intracellular filaments (green = Microtubules, red = Actin, yellow = Intermediate filaments, blue = nucleus; scale bar = 25 µm). *Lower Row:* Simplified schematic diagrams illustrating the structure of (a. green) Microtubules, (b, red) Actin, and (c, yellow) Intermediate Filaments.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.5.7: The Nucleus

Serving as the command center of the cell, the nucleus houses the genetic blueprints required for protein synthesis. Certain cells possess multiple nuclei in specific instances, as with muscle fibers, leading to their designation as **multinucleated** cells. Conversely, distinct cell types, like mature red blood cells, have forgone nuclei to create room for an abundance of hemoglobin.

Encircled by the **nuclear envelope**, a dual-layered lipid membrane, the nucleus boasts two adjoining bilayers (Figure 28). Within this setup, nuclear pores traverse these bilayers, providing conduits for transferring substances between the nucleus and the cytoplasm. A gel-like **nucleoplasm**, full of solutes, including nucleic acid building blocks, fills the nucleus. The **nucleolus,** a densely stained body (**nucleoli** in plural), is pivotal in synthesizing the ribonucleic acid (RNA) essential for ribosome construction. Upon completion, freshly crafted ribosomal subunits exit the nucleus by traversing the nuclear pores.

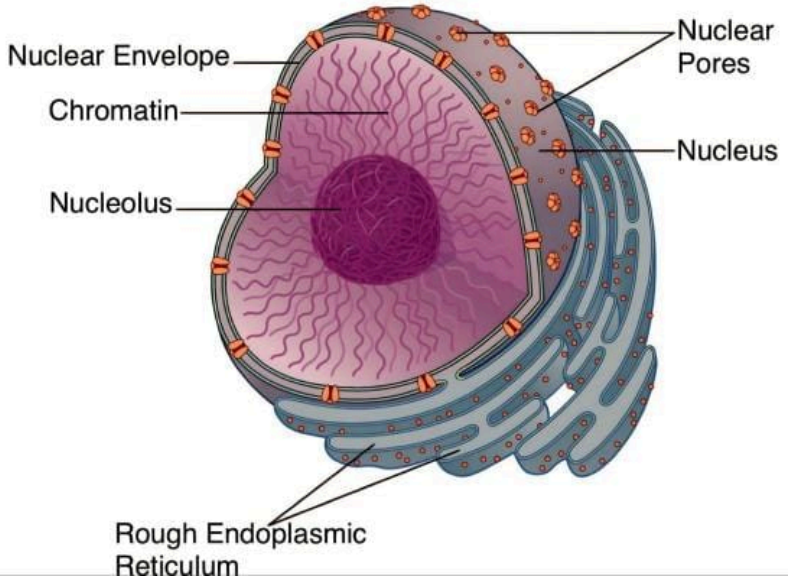


Figure 28 | The Nucleus | [39] The nucleus is a highly organized organelle with a double-membrane structure, nuclear pores for selective transport, chromatin as the genetic material, and a nucleolus for ribosome assembly.

Contained within the nucleus are strands of **chromatin**, composed of DNA interlaced with associated proteins (Figures 28 & 29). These chromatin threads encase DNA by coiling it around a set of proteins called **histones**. A **nucleosome** signifies a single DNA-histone complex wrapped together. Multiple nucleosomes appear as a beaded necklace along the entire DNA molecule, with DNA acting as the string and histones as the beads. During cell division, chromatin condenses into chromosomes. An estimated 22,000 genes are dispersed over 46 chromosomes in humans [40].

A **gene** is a functional segment of DNA that contains the specific nucleotide sequence required to build a functional molecule, most often a protein. As a cell prepares to undergo cell division, chromosomes are replicated to ensure each new cell receives a complete chromosome set. Arranged systematically within DNA strands, genetic instructions for constructing and sustaining an organism are encoded in these individual genes. This blueprint resides within DNA. By employing messenger RNA and other molecular mechanisms, the nucleus communicates with the cell, using information transcribed from specific genes in the DNA to transmit signals and direct protein synthesis.

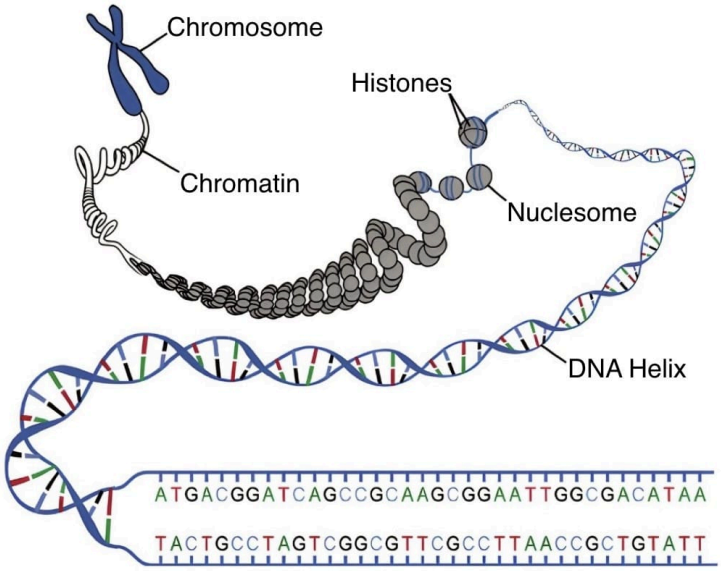


Figure 29 **|** DNA Macrostructure | [41] The macrostructure of DNA involves its strands being intricately wound around supportive histones—these histones, serving as structural proteins, progressively aggregate and condense to form chromatin. As the cell approaches the division phase, chromatin undergoes further compaction, tightly packaging into visible chromosomes.

This page titled 1.5.7: The Nucleus is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.5.8: Cell Junctions

Cells frequently connect at specialized contact sites to form intercellular junctions. These cell-to-cell junctions are categorized mainly as **gap junctions**, **desmosomes**, and **tight junctions** based on their distinctive characteristics and functions.

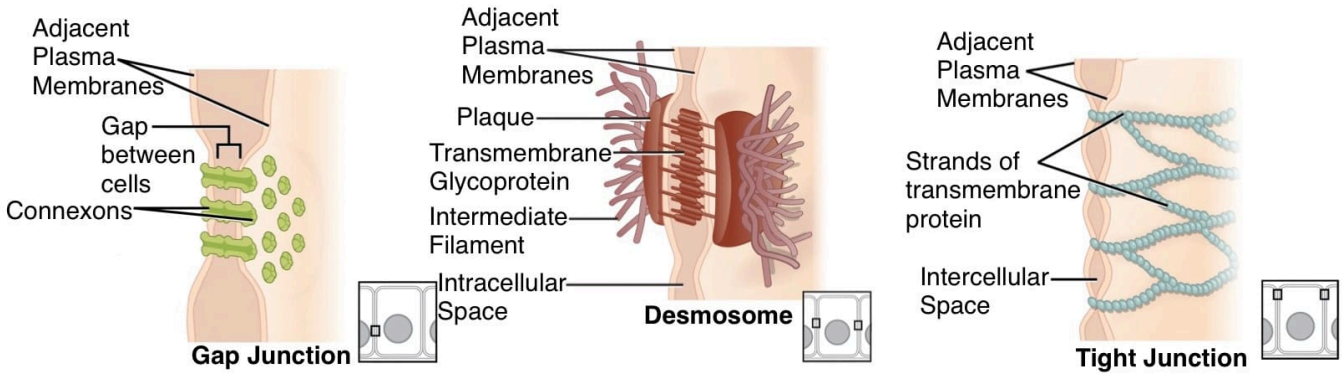


Figure 30 | Types of Cell Junctions | [42] Gap junctions (depicted in green) connect adjacent cells through specialized membrane proteins called connexons to allow passage of small molecules between neighboring cells. Desmosomes (depicted in red) provide mechanical strength by forming plaques and anchoring intermediate filaments between adjacent cells. Tight junctions (depicted in blue) form a continuous barrier between adjacent cells, regulating paracellular transport.

Gap junctions are structural features formed within the cell membrane, connecting adjacent cells through specialized membrane proteins called **connexons** [43] (Figure 30). Connexons establish protein channels that bridge the cytosols of neighboring cells, facilitating intercellular communication. These channels function as tiny conduits, enabling the passage of smaller particles, including ions, between the cells. Gap junctions are commonly found in tissues such as cardiac and single-unit smooth muscle fibers.

Desmosomes are characterized by dense protein accumulations (termed thick plaques) lining the cytoplasmic surface of the plasma membrane (Figure 30). These plaques securely bind two neighboring cells via intermediate filaments, contributing to structural cohesion [44]. Desmosomes offer essential stability in regions prone to significant stretching, like the skin. A comparable configuration, a **hemidesmosome**, with protein accumulation on only one surface, anchors the epithelial lining above the underlying connective tissue [45]. This arrangement is particularly evident in the attachment of the epidermis to the underlying dermis.

Tight junctions establish connections between the cell membranes of neighboring cells using a branching network of proteins, forming barriers to prevent leakage of water and solutes [46] (Figure 30). These junctions allow the passage of ions and water to varying extents, however, implying their function as discerning gates. Tight junctions are found in the lining of the stomach and renal tubules.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 1.5.8: Cell Junctions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.6: CELLULAR METABOLISM

About two-thirds of the body's composition comprises water, with the remaining encompassing proteins, lipids, carbohydrates, nucleic acids, minerals, and vitamins. All these constituents are derived from food. The acquisition of nutrients from food, their transformation into various states, and the subsequent acquisition of energy to enable these processes are facilitated by multiple chemical reactions. Metabolism refers to the collective chemical reactions occurring within the body, categorized into **catabolism** (cata = downward) and **anabolism** (ana = upward). For instance, catabolic reactions govern the breakdown of food to acquire energy, while anabolic reactions involve constructing larger molecules from smaller ones, utilizing energy sourced from catabolic reactions. Thus, these two types of reactions—catabolic and anabolic—are interlinked. The body's normal functioning hinges on continuous metabolic processes. Catabolic reactions yield energy, whereas anabolic reactions necessitate energy. A net positive energy change implies that catabolic reactions release more energy than anabolic reactions consume, leading to the storage of surplus energy by creating glycogen and lipid molecules. Conversely, a net negative energy change indicates that catabolic reactions release less energy than anabolic reactions utilize. In this scenario, the body taps into stored energy reserves, breaking down lipid and glycogen molecules to compensate for the energy deficit stemming from catabolism.

The metabolic rate fluctuates due to age, gender, activity level, food intake, and lean body mass. Men with lean body mass exhibit a higher basal metabolic rate than women, whereas aging diminishes the metabolic rate. Moreover, inherent metabolic rate of an individual is influenced by genetic makeup, dictating the expression of specific proteins and lipids and impacting the concentration of particular lipoproteins. Additionally, dietary habits and exercise routines can modulate metabolic processes.

1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions

1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism

1.6.3: Protein Metabolism

1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism

This page titled 1.6: Cellular Metabolism is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions

Catabolic reactions involve the disintegration of substantial molecules like glucose into smaller components—carbon dioxide and water—resulting in energy liberation. This energy release, however, is not wholly efficient, as the released energy is slightly less than the original content of a molecule. Roughly 40 percent of this liberated energy is promptly transferred to **adenosine triphosphate** (**ATP**), a high-energy compound acting as a vital energy currency within the body. This ATP can be promptly harnessed to support cellular functions or, if in excess, saved to meet future energy demands. The residual 60 percent of released energy from catabolic reactions is dissipated as heat, a form that tissues and body fluids absorb, contributing to preserving normal body temperature.

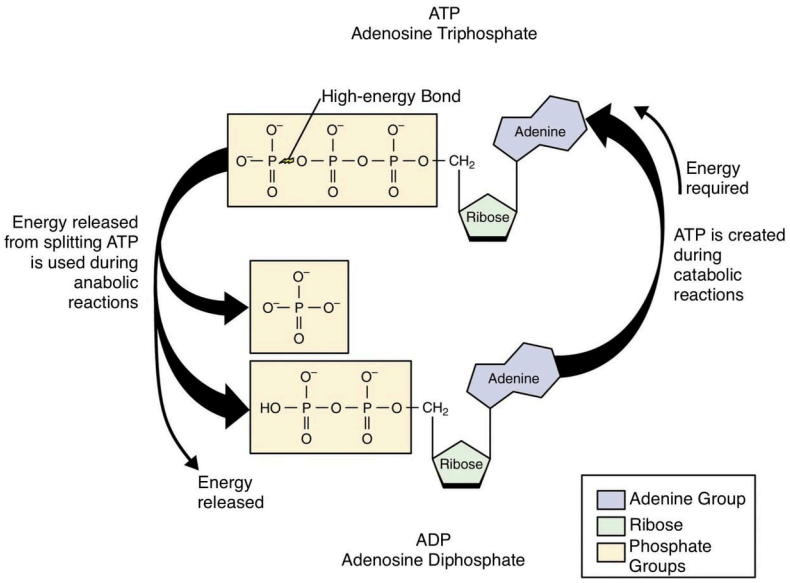


Figure 31 | Structure of an Adenosine Triphosphate (ATP) and an Adenosine Diphosphate (ADP) Molecule | [47] ATP is a high-energy compound in the cell created during catabolic reactions and stored until needed during anabolic reactions. During energy-demanding cellular activities, the initial bond is broken by a process known as dephosphorylation, which leads to the generation of ADP and a phosphate group (P). ATP, ADP, and P are in a perpetual cycle of interchange between reactions.

The structure of an ATP molecule is composed of **adenine**, a nitrogenous base, **ribose**—a monosaccharide with five carbon atoms—and three phosphate groups. The chemical linkage between the second and third phosphate groups forms a high-energy bond that harbors the most significant energy reservoir within the ATP molecule. Catabolic enzymes frequently break the initial bond during energy-demanding cellular activities, a process known as **dephosphorylation**, which leads to the generation of **adenosine diphosphate** (**ADP**) and a phosphate group (P). ATP, ADP, and P are in a perpetual cycle of interchange between reactions. The construction of ATP through a reaction is called **phosphorylation**, a method employed in energy storage, whereas reactions dismantling ATP release energy (Figure 31). The energy furnished by ATP propels all bodily functions such as muscle contraction, respiration, and nutrient absorption in the gastrointestinal tract.

Anabolic processes involve the synthesis of complex molecules. For instance, the combination of multiple glucose molecules results in the formation of polysaccharides. Similarly, the attachment of three fatty acids to glycerol forms triglycerides, the bonding of amino acids gives rise to proteins, and the assembly of nucleotides constructs nucleic acids. As a result, anabolic reactions play a crucial role in the formation of larger molecules that serve as essential structural components within cells.

Four primary macromolecules constitute the foundation of biological molecules: carbohydrates, lipids, proteins, and nucleic acids. Carbohydrates, the predominant energy source for fueling the body, are divided into **monosaccharides**, **disaccharides**, and **polysaccharides**. Monosaccharides encompass simple sugars such as **glucose** (Figure 31), **galactose**, and **fructose**—where glucose is the most common fuel for cellular ATP production (Figure 34). Galactose and fructose undergo conversion into glucose within the liver. These three monosaccharides are hexoses consisting of six carbons. Monosaccharide ribose in RNA and deoxyribose in DNA are examples of pentoses consisting of five carbons. Disaccharides include **sucrose** (table sugar, formed from glucose and fructose), **lactose** (milk sugar, comprising glucose and galactose), and **maltose** (malt sugar, consisting of two glucose molecules). Polysaccharides include **glycogen** (Figure 33) and **starch**—lengthy chains of glucose units. **Cellulose**

is another polysaccharide; however, humans lack the enzymes required to digest it. While indigestible polysaccharides lack nutritional value, they provide dietary fiber that aids in moving food through the digestive tract. Several hormones regulate glucose levels in the bloodstream. Excess glucose is stored as glycogen—an energy reserve in the liver and muscles—or transformed into **triglycerides** in the liver or adipose tissue.

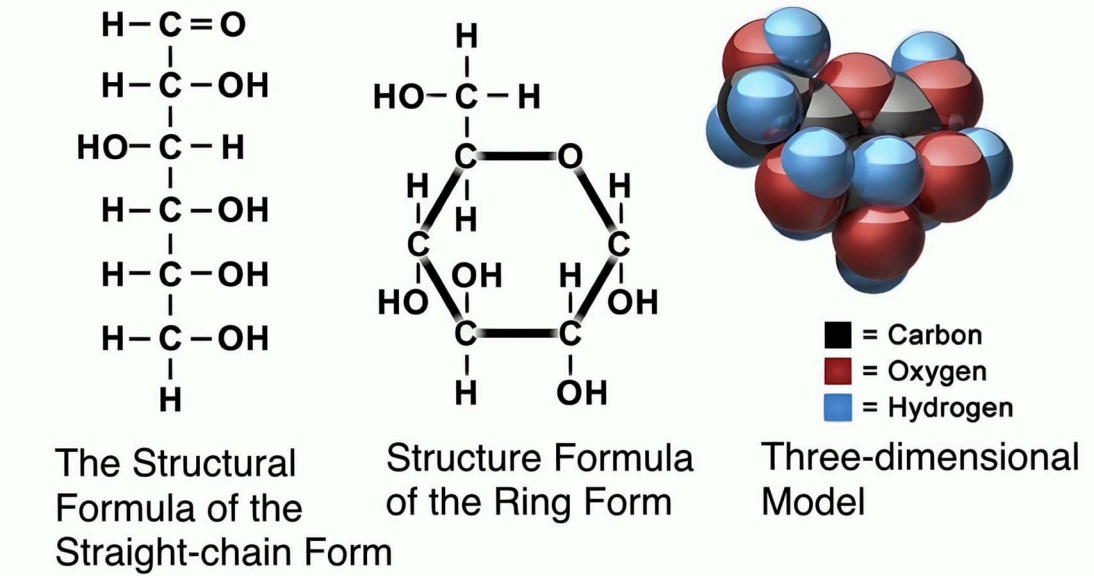


Figure 32 | The Structure of Glucose | [48] Glucose is a six-carbon sugar (hexose) with a ring structure. The illustration provides insight into the arrangement of atoms and bonds that constitute glucose, emphasizing its significance as a central component in cellular energy processes and metabolic pathways.

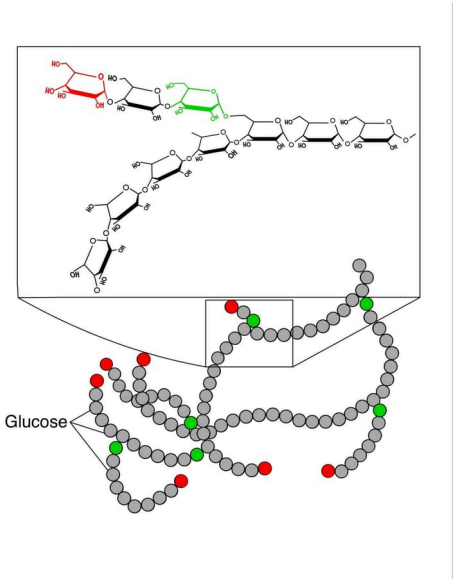


Figure 33 | The Structure of Glycogen | [49] The figure illustrates a partial structure of glycogen, showcasing both a straight chain of glucose residues (lower) and a branched chain (upper). This representation highlights the characteristic organization of glucose units within glycogen, emphasizing its role as a highly branched polysaccharide and a crucial storage form of energy in cells.

Dietary lipids, commonly referred to as fats, manifest in two distinct categories: **saturated** and **unsaturated**. Saturated fats are set apart from unsaturated fats by the presence of solely single covalent bonds within their fatty acid hydrocarbon chains. In contrast, unsaturated fats can encompass one or more double covalent bonds. Additionally, saturated fats remain solid at room temperature, whereas unsaturated fats maintain a liquid state. Sources rich in saturated fats include red meat, egg yolk, butter, and certain plant products like coconut and palm oil. In contrast, unsaturated fats are prevalent in sunflower, corn, canola, soybean, and flaxseed oils, and foods like walnuts and fish.

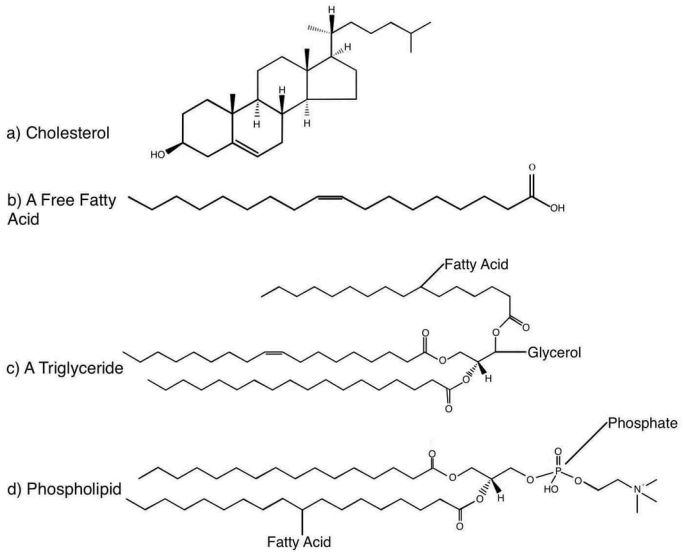


Figure 34 | Structure of Different Types of Lipids | [50] This figure depicts molecular structures characterizing different lipid types, each playing a pivotal role in cellular functions. a) Cholesterol: A steroid consisting of four interconnected hydrocarbon rings. b) Fatty Acid: The basic structure of a fatty acid is displayed here, showcasing its hydrocarbon chain with a carboxyl group at one end. The varying lengths and degrees of saturation in these chains contribute to the diversity of fatty acids in biological systems. The fatty acid shown here contains one double bond, which is called monounsaturated fatty acid. c) Triglyceride: The structure of a triglyceride consists of three fatty acid chains attached to a glycerol backbone. d) Phospholipid: The phospholipid structure features a hydrophilic phosphate head and hydrophobic fatty acid tails.

Lipids can be categorized into three distinct groups based on their structures. **Triglycerides** are the most prevalent lipid type. They consist of three fatty acids attached to a glycerol backbone (Figure 34). They are stored within adipose tissue, serving as a significant energy reservoir (Figure 35). Roughly half of the excess fat accumulates in adipocytes beneath the skin in subcutaneous tissue, while the remainder lines internal organs. **Phospholipids**, on the other hand, play a vital role in membrane composition, constructing lipid bilayers and regulating transport of substances across membranes. The cell membrane serves as an excellent example (see Figure 1). Similar arrangements can be found in other membranous structures such as the nuclear envelope and endoplasmic reticulum. **Steroids** represent another lipid class important in hormone and bile salt synthesis. **Cholesterol** is a member of the steroid family (Figure 34). It is made of four interconnected hydrocarbon rings. It is essential for the synthesis of steroid hormones, bile acids, and vitamin D. Cholesterol molecules are amphipathic, allowing them to integrate into cell membranes and influence membrane fluidity. While excess cholesterol can contribute to health issues, maintaining a balance is vital.

Proteins are formed through the linkage of **amino acids** by **peptide bonds**. Protein digestion releases amino acids that can serve as the basic units for constructing new proteins or be further broken down to generate ATP (Figure 35). Roughly 14 percent of the body's composition comprises proteins, manifesting in diverse roles like forming collagen fibers, serving as clotting agents, facilitating muscular contraction, catalyzing enzymatic reactions, and functioning as receptors. In prolonged starvation, when resources are scarce, amino acids are utilized for energy production through protein breakdown, potentially leading to the deterioration of bodily structures.

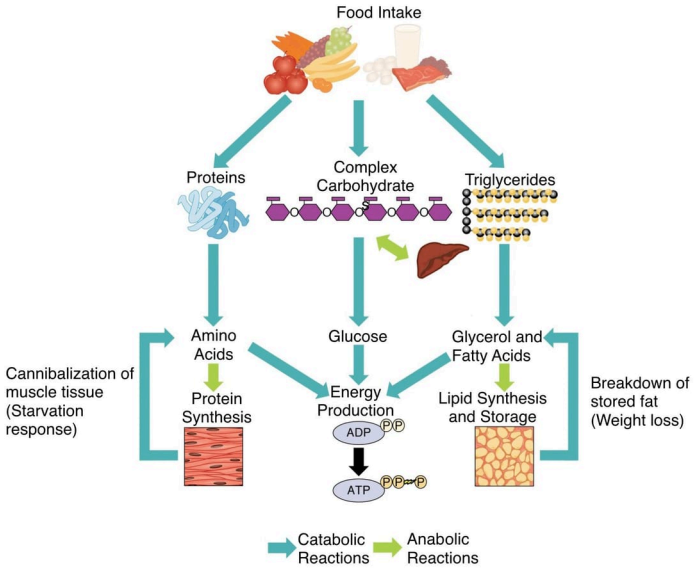


Figure 35 | Sources of ATP during catabolic reaction | [51] During catabolic reactions, macromolecules undergo breakdown processes. Proteins are enzymatically dismantled into their constituent amino acids, lipids are broken down into individual fatty acids, and polysaccharides undergo degradation into monosaccharides. These building blocks subsequently serve as precursors for the synthesis of complex molecules in anabolic reactions.

Nucleic acids, DNA and RNA, are obtained through the diet as they are present in most of the foods. Through digestion, nucleic acids like DNA and RNA are disassembled into their elemental constituents known as **nucleotides**. Each nucleotide comprises a nitrogenous base such as adenine, guanine, cytosine, thymine, or uracil, a monosaccharide, ribose or deoxyribose, and a phosphate group. These nucleotides are readily assimilated and transported throughout the body for utilization by individual cells.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism

Carbohydrates serve as the primary energy source. Glucose is found in dietary sources or formed through the digestion of di- and polysaccharides. During resting states, the body accumulates glucose as glycogen in muscle and liver tissues, ready to be accessed when blood glucose levels dip too low.

Metabolic processes frequently encompass **oxidation** and **reduction reactions**. The loss of an electron characterizes oxidation reaction, while reduction reaction involves electron acquisition. When a molecule releases a hydrogen atom (H), it discharges a hydrogen ion (H+), a proton, and an electron. Enzymes catalyze oxidation-reduction reactions, and coenzymes can enhance their efficiency. The two primary coenzymes in oxidation-reduction reactions are **nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide** (**NAD**) and **flavin adenine dinucleotide** (**FAD**). Reduced forms of these coenzymes are **NADH** and **$FADH_2$**, which serve as energy-rich molecules involved in energy transfer during ATP synthesis.

Glycolysis

Glycolysis, the enzymatic breakdown of glucose, represents a pivotal pathway comprising a series of sequential stages. Cells uptake circulating glucose (with insulin influence in some cases) and, during its degradation, channel a portion of the resultant energy to transform ADP into ATP. Two ATP molecules are expended in the initial stages of glycolysis. However, as the process unfolds, four ATP molecules are synthesized. Consequently, the net ATP yield per glucose molecule from glycolysis is two ATPs (Figure 36).

The onset of glycolysis involves the phosphorylation of glucose within the cytoplasm, yielding **glucose-6-phosphate** (**G6P**) and expending ATP. This conversion, generating G6P, holds crucial significance—it curbs the escape of glucose across the plasma membrane, thus ensuring the continuation of glycolysis. Additionally, it maintains a concentration gradient with higher glucose levels in the bloodstream than in the cell. This gradient causes blood glucose to move from regions of greater concentration (blood) into areas of lower concentration (cells) for utilization or storage. Hepatocytes possess the enzyme **phosphatase**, responsible for removing phosphate from G6P, thus averting glucose entrapment within these cells.

Glycerol, a metabolite from lipid digestion, and certain amino acids can enter the glycolytic pathway after removing their amino groups at this intermediate stage. Ultimately, each glucose molecule, comprising six carbons, undergoes glycolysis to yield two 3-carbon structures—**pyruvate** or **pyruvic acid** (Figure 36).[52]

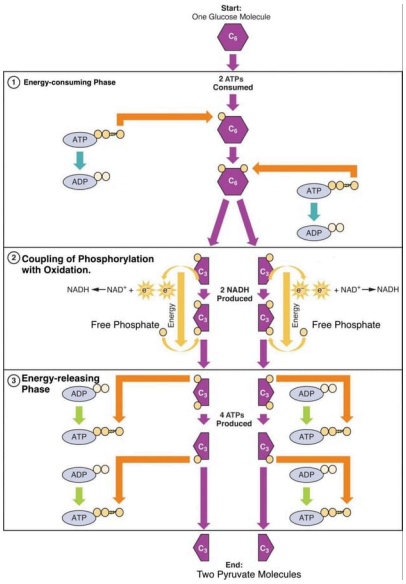


Figure 36 | Glycolysis Overview | [53] In the initial energy-consuming stage of glycolysis, two ATP molecules are utilized to transfer two phosphates to the glucose molecule. Subsequently, the glucose molecule undergoes a division, yielding two three-carbon compounds, each carrying a phosphate group. In the subsequent phase, an extra phosphate is added to each of these three-carbon compounds (phosphorylation). The energy required for this process stems from the removal (oxidation) of two electrons from each three-carbon compound. In the energy-releasing phase, the phosphates are extracted from both three-carbon compounds, contributing to the generation of four ATP molecules.

Glycolysis is an anaerobic reaction occurring independently of oxygen availability. In this chemical equation representing glycolysis, one molecule of glucose reacts with two molecules of ATP, two molecules of NAD^+, two molecules of ADP, and two inorganic phosphate groups (Pi). This reaction produces two molecules of pyruvate, four molecules of ATP, two molecules of reduced NADH, two H^+, and two molecules of water (H^2O).

Glucose + 2 ATP + 2 NAD + 2 ADP + 2 P → 2 Pyruvates + 4 ATP + 2 NADH + 2 H+ + 2 H^2O.

The NADH thus produced will contribute to ATP generation within mitochondria through oxidative phosphorylation, a distinct process.

Fate of Pyruvate

In the presence of oxygen, pyruvate undergoes subsequent processing within the mitochondria, converting it into **acetyl coenzyme A** (**acetyl CoA**). Conversely, when oxygen is lacking, pyruvate is transformed into **lactic acid**. Moreover, pyruvate can be a component for synthesizing fresh glucose through **gluconeogenesis**, producing glucose from noncarbohydrate sources (Figure 37). Any excess glucose that is not utilized by the cells for energy purposes may be stored as glycogen within muscle cells and hepatocytes, known as **glycogenesis**. Conversely, glycogen can be converted to glucose through **glycogenolysis** when blood glucose levels are below the norm (Figure 37). Hormones and neural signals play a crucial role in regulating these processes. For instance, glycogenolysis is initiated by hormones such as glucagon and epinephrine, while insulin promotes glycogen synthesis. The occurrence of glycogenesis is influenced by the necessity for blood glucose levels and ATP. When both factors are adequately available, excess glucose is converted into glycogen.

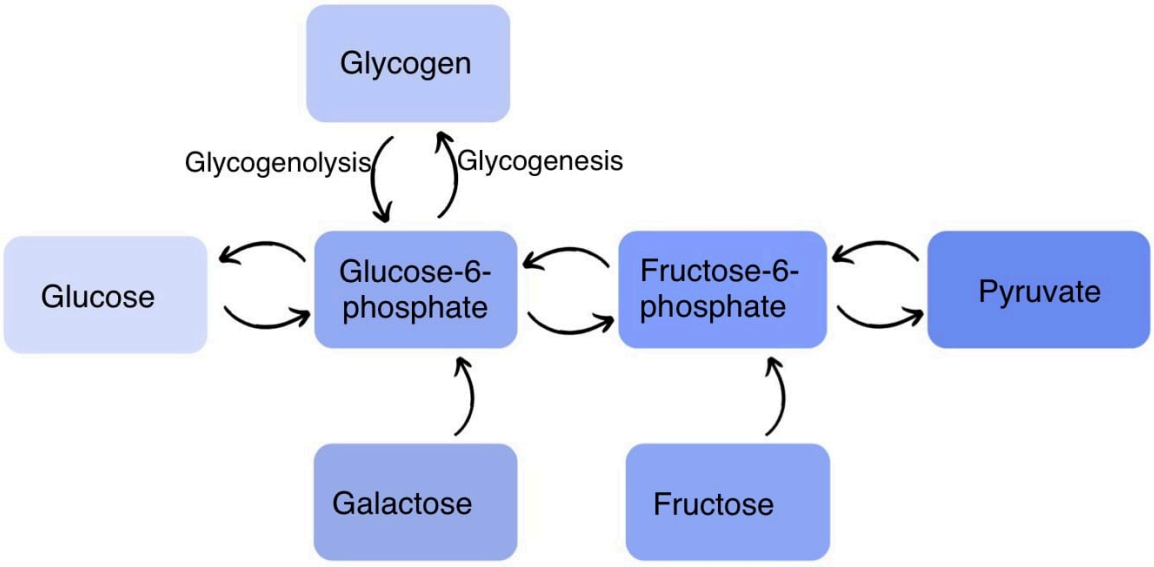


Figure 37 | Carbohydrate metabolism | [54] This figure depicts several processes of carbohydrate metabolism, including glycolysis, glycogenesis, and glycogenolysis.

Gluconeogenesis

Gluconeogenesis is the process of obtaining glucose molecules from non-carbohydrate sources like lactate, pyruvate, fatty acids, and amino acids (Figure 38). Numerous essential organs, including the brain, rely entirely on glucose for energy. Consequently, the body must uphold a minimum blood glucose level. Gluconeogenesis mainly transpires in the liver, particularly during instances of diminished blood glucose levels, such as fasting, starvation, and low-carbohydrate diets.

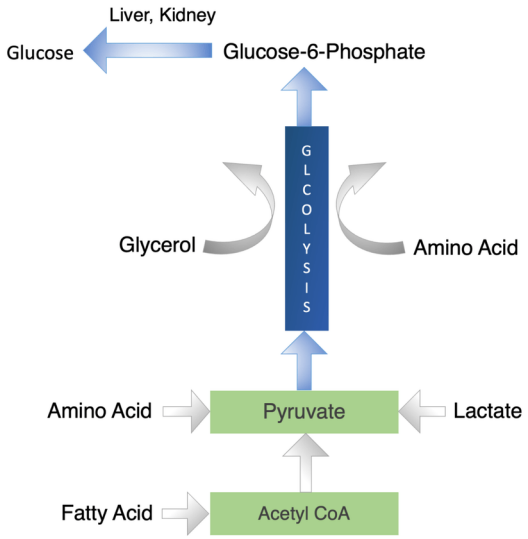


Figure 38 | Gluconeogenesis | This diagram illustrates the gluconeogenesis pathway, a metabolic process crucial for the synthesis of glucose from noncarbohydrate precursors. Gluconeogenesis involves a series of enzymatic reactions that ultimately lead to the formation of glucose from noncarbohydrate molecules such as pyruvate, lactate, glycerol, or certain amino acids.

Anaerobic Respiration

In situations of limited oxygen availability, such as during exercise, muscles experience an increased demand for ATP, while oxygen delivery might be constrained. Consequently, they use anaerobic respiration to generate ATP (Figure 39). In this scenario, the availability of NAD becomes inadequate, posing a risk of halting glycolysis and ATP production. To circumvent this, pyruvate

takes an alternate route, leading to its conversion into lactic acid, which facilitates the conversion of NADH back to NAD, an essential requirement for sustaining glycolysis[55]. Anaerobic respiration is prevalent in numerous cells when oxygen availability is limited or mitochondria are absent. For instance, red blood cells, which lack mitochondria, solely rely on anaerobic respiration for ATP production. The lactic acid generated through anaerobic respiration is eventually transformed into pyruvate within the liver, a process known as the **Cori cycle**[56].

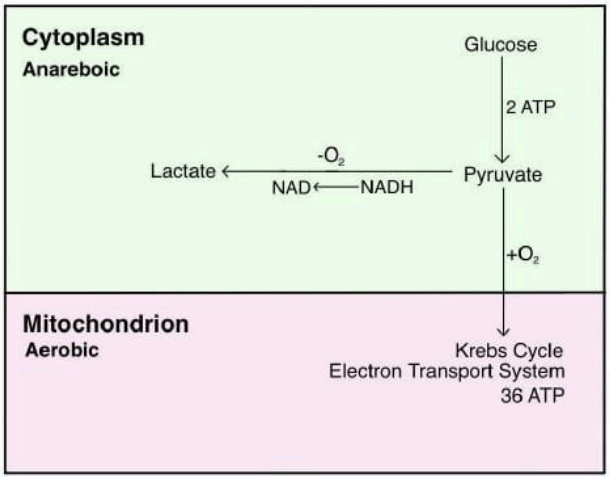


Figure 39 | Aerobic versus Anaerobic Respiration | This diagram illustrates major distinctions between aerobic and anaerobic respiration processes. In aerobic respiration, occurring in the presence of oxygen, glucose undergoes glycolysis followed by the citric acid cycle and electron transport chain, yielding 36 to 38 ATP molecules. Conversely, anaerobic respiration, occurring in the absence of oxygen, involves glycolysis and subsequent fermentation processes, leading to a lower ATP yield.

Aerobic Respiration

Production of Acetyl CoA

When oxygen is available, the three-carbon pyruvate molecule relocates from the cytoplasm to the mitochondria. Inside the mitochondria, it transforms into a two-carbon acetyl CoA molecule by pyruvate decarboxylation. This conversion leads to the release of one carbon dioxide and the transfer of two electrons to NAD, resulting in its conversion to NADH + H^+ (Figure 40).

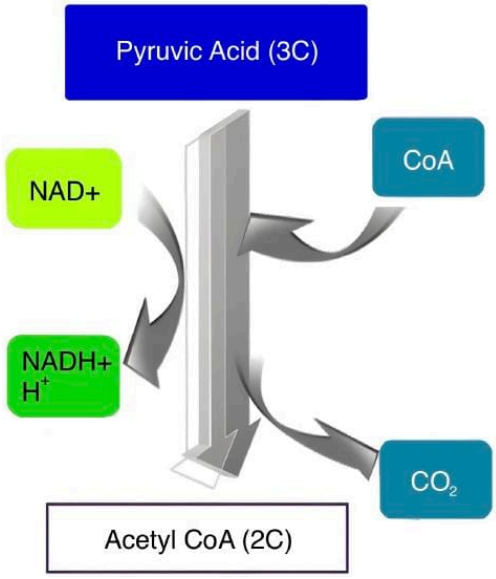


Figure 40 | Formation of Acetyl CoA from Pyruvic acid | This schematic representation illustrates the conversion of pyruvic acid, a three-carbon structure, to acetyl CoA, a two-carbon compound. Through pyruvate decarboxylation, a carbon dioxide molecule is released, and the transfer of two electrons to NAD results in its conversion to NADH + H^+. The remaining two-carbon fragment combines with coenzyme A to form Acetyl CoA.

Krebs Cycle/Citric Acid Cycle/Tricarboxylic Acid Cycle

The Krebs cycle, also known as the **citric acid cycle** or **tricarboxylic acid** (**TCA**) **cycle**, is a central component of cellular respiration. It takes place in the mitochondria of eukaryotic cells and is an essential part of extracting energy from carbohydrates, fatty acids, and amino acids. The cycle begins with the entry of Acetyl CoA. It combines with a four-carbon compound, **oxaloacetate**, to form **citrate**, a six-carbon molecule. This cycle derives its name from the creation of citric acid. Subsequently, the citrate molecule undergoes systematic transformations, producing a five-carbon molecule and a four-carbon molecule, eventually returning to oxaloacetate (Figure 41). The two carbons initially present in citrate are released as two carbon dioxide molecules during this process. With each citrate molecule processed, one ATP, one **$FADH_2$**, and three NADH coenzymes are generated along the course[57].

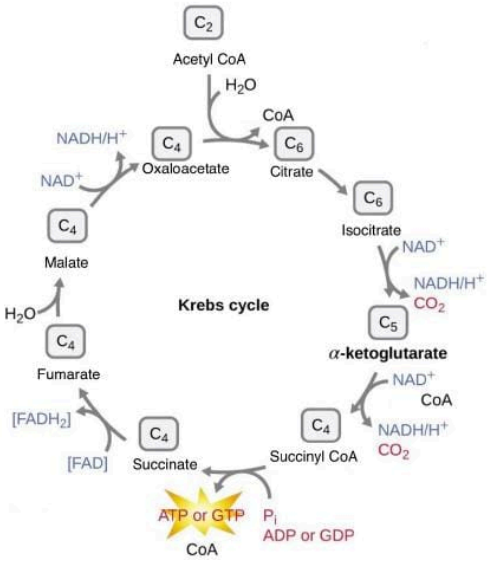


Figure 41 | Krebs Cycle (Citric Acid Cycle or Tricarboxylic Acid Cycle) | [58] Krebs cycle begins with the addition of acetyl CoA. Acetyl CoA combines with oxaloacetate to form citrate (6-carbon compound). Citrate is converted to isocitrate, which loses a carbon dioxide molecule, forming alpha-ketoglutarate and generating NADH. It releases another carbon dioxide molecule, leading to the creation of succinyl-CoA, forming NADH. Succinyl-CoA yields succinate while producing GTP (or ATP). Succinate gets converted to form fumarate, generating **$FADH_2$**. Fumarate becomes malate, which loses a carbon dioxide molecule to regenerate oxaloacetate and NADH.

Electron Transport System and Oxidative Phosphorylation

Embedded within the inner mitochondrial membrane, the electron transport chain (ETC) consists of four enzyme complexes (Complexes I–IV) and two mobile electron carriers, coenzyme Q and cytochrome c (Figure 42). Operating through a sequence of redox reactions, these components accept high-energy electrons from the NADH and FADH2, passing them down a series of progressively lower energy levels. As electrons traverse the chain—alternately reducing and oxidizing each carrier—the released energy is harnessed to pump hydrogen ions (protons) into the intermembrane space, creating the electrochemical gradient required to generate ATP through the membrane-embedded mitochondrial enzyme **ATP synthase** [60]. This enzyme marks the final protein embedded in the inner mitochondrial membrane.

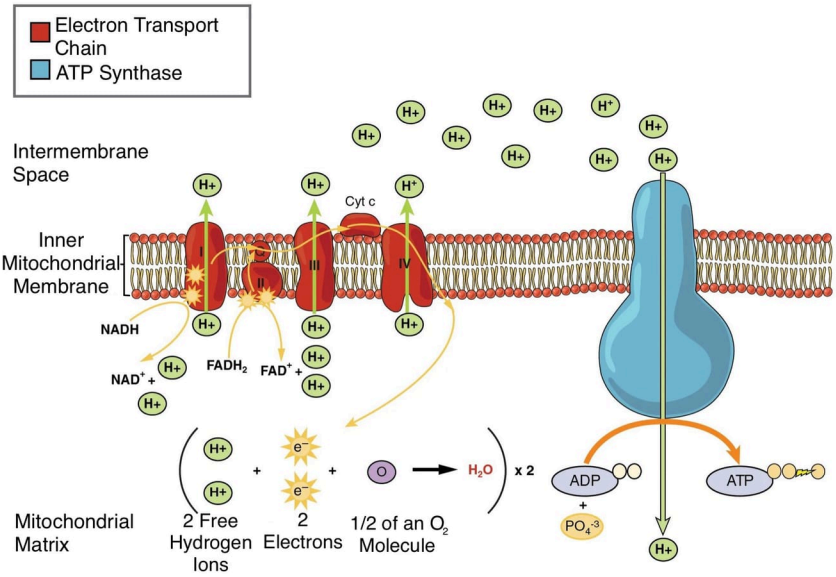


Figure 42 | Electron Transport Chain | [59] The electron transport chain comprises a sequence of electron carriers and ion pumps designed to expel (H+) from the inner mitochondrial matrix. This process is essential for the effective generation of ATP, as the energy liberated during electron transfer is utilized to drive proton pumping, establishing an electron motive force. Subsequently, this force fuels ATP synthesis via chemiosmosis.

Chemiosmosis is a process that involves the movement of ions across a selectively permeable membrane and is coupled with the synthesis of ATP, a crucial energy currency in cells. It occurs during the final stage of the ETC. As electrons move through the ETC, protons are pumped across the inner mitochondrial membrane, creating a concentration gradient and an electrochemical gradient. The potential energy stored in this gradient is then harnessed to drive the enzymatic synthesis of ATP. Protons flow back into the mitochondrial matrix through ATP synthase. The flow of protons through ATP synthase provides the mechanical energy needed for the enzyme to synthesize ATP from ADP and inorganic phosphate.

The electrons must exit the chain after completing their journey through the entire ETC. Oxygen, transported to the cell via respiratory mechanisms, assumes the crucial role of the terminal electron acceptor. Within this role, each oxygen atom captures two electrons and two protons from the matrix, forming a new water molecule that makes oxygen the ultimate electron acceptor and underlies inhaling oxygen. In the absence of oxygen, the flow of electrons through the ETC halts, consequently interrupting energy production. Thus, the ETC establishes a linkage between electron transfer from a donor molecule (e.g., NADH) to an electron acceptor and the movement of protons across the inner mitochondrial membrane. This intricate interplay fuels oxidative phosphorylation, culminating in the synthesis of ATP molecules.

Every NADH enables the generation of 3 ATP molecules, while **$FADH_2$** results in the synthesis of 2 ATP molecules. Consequently, 10 NADH contributes to 30 ATP molecules, and 2 **$FADH_2$** leads to an additional 4 ATP molecules via the ETC, culminating in a combined 34 ATP molecules derived from NADH and **$FADH_2$** utilization. As a result of releasing protons and electrons, NADH and **$FADH_2$** are back into their original forms, NAD and FAD, which are recycled to assist glycolysis, the Krebs Cycle, and other metabolic processes within the cell.

The overall ATP production from aerobic respiration per glucose molecule can be outlined as follows:

1. A net gain of 2 ATP molecules from glycolysis.
2. Each Krebs cycle yields 1 ATP. With two pyruvates, each glucose can trigger 2 Krebs cycles and, therefore, two ATP molecules.
3. In the ETC, ATP synthase contributes 32 to 34 ATP molecules for each glucose molecule processed (10 NADH and 2 **$FADH_2$**). As a pair of electrons released by NADH navigates the ETC, approximately 3 ATPs are synthesized, resulting in 30 ATPs from NADH. The electrons stemming from **$FADH_2$** foster fewer ATPs (2 ATPs per **$FADH_2$**, totaling 4 ATPs) as they commence their journey in the ETC at a lower point (Complex II) compared to NADH-derived electrons (Complex I). In specific cells, two electrons from NADs enter the electron transport chain at Complex II instead of Complex I, yielding 28 ATPs instead of 30. Each glucose molecule subjected to aerobic respiration thus generates an approximate net sum of 36 to 38 ATP molecules (Figure 43).

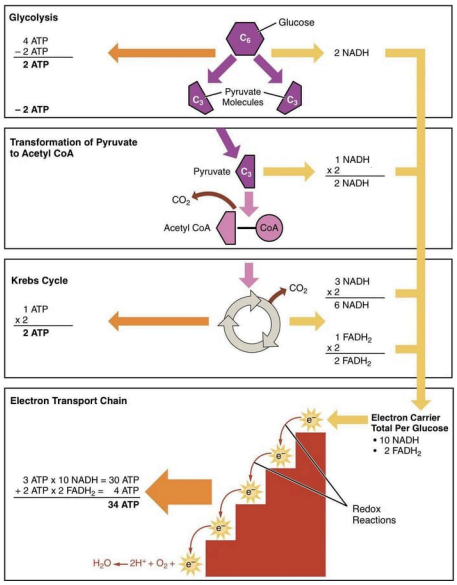


Figure 43 | The Overall ATP Production per Glucose Molecule | [61] Carbohydrate metabolism involves major steps which include glycolysis, transformation of pyruvate to acetyl coA, the Krebs cycle, and the electron transport chain. Two ATP molecules are released from glycolysis. Each glucose can trigger 2 Krebs cycles and, therefore, two ATP molecules. Two NADH molecules are from glycolysis, two are from the conversion of pyruvate to acetyl CoA, and six are from two Krebs cycles. Two **$FADH_2$** are from two Krebs cycles. In the ETC, ATP synthase contributes 32 to 34 ATP molecules for each glucose molecule.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.6.3: Protein Metabolism

Proteins exhibit a diverse array of roles, including serving as receptors, signaling molecules, structural elements, enzymes, components for intracellular transport, frameworks for the extracellular matrix, ion transporters, ion channels, and even facilitators of oxygen and carbon dioxide transport such as hemoglobin. Moreover, proteins contribute to essential bodily structures such as collagen fibers in bones, tendons, and cartilage, and muscle proteins within muscle fibers. In addition to these critical functions, proteins can also be harnessed as a source of metabolic energy. Around 10 to 15 percent of the total energy supply is derived from the breakdown of amino acids, considerably less than lipids (20 to 35 percent) and carbohydrates (45 to 65 percent).

Proteins are made up of long chains of amino acids. The terminology varies from **peptide** for a short amino acid chain to **polypeptide** for a chain of about 50 amino acids, and finally, **protein** for a longer chain than a polypeptide (Figure 44). This hierarchical classification reflects the diverse sizes and functions of these fundamental building blocks in biological systems.

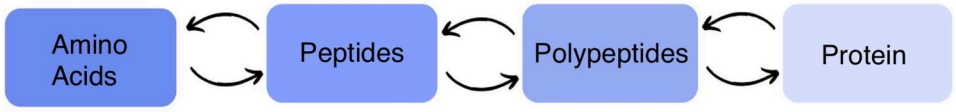


Figure 44 | Hierarchical Structure of Proteins | This illustration depicts the hierarchical arrangement of proteins, consisting of elongated amino acid sequences. The terminology employed varies with the length of the amino acid chain: "peptide" is used for shorter chains, "polypeptide" is used for a chain of approximately 50 amino acids, and "protein" is used for longer chains exceeding the length of a polypeptide.

During the process of protein synthesis, the shape of the protein evolves sequentially. Initially, it takes the form of a linear sequence of amino acids, known as the **primary structure**. Subsequent interactions between neighboring amino acids lead to the folding of the linear chain into various shapes, which constitutes the **secondary structure** or **alpha-helix**. Further folding, facilitated by interactions among the amino acids in their new positions, results in the intricate three-dimensional structure referred to as the **tertiary structure**. For most proteins, the tertiary structure represents their final conformation. However, in some instances, multiple polypeptide chains come together to form a functional protein, creating what is known as the **quaternary structure** (Figure 45). For example, insulin consists of two polypeptide chains, whereas hemoglobin comprises four polypeptide chains.

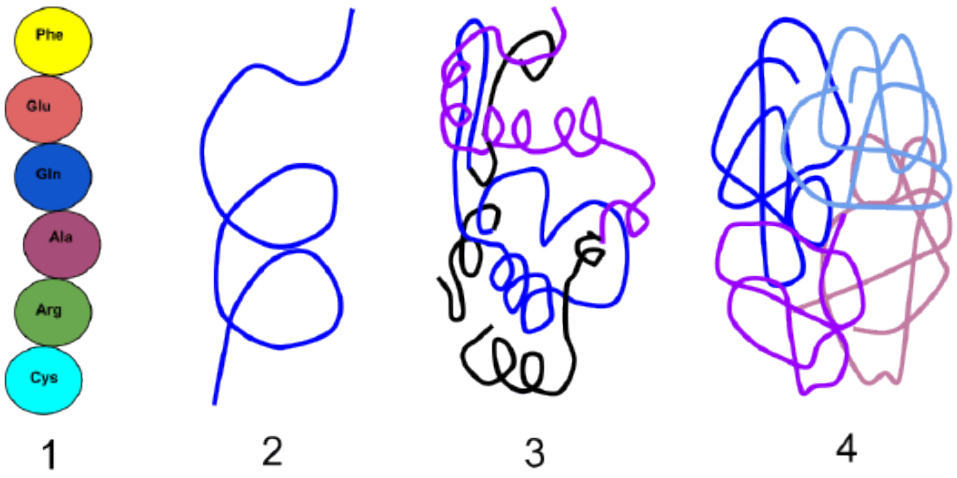


Figure 45 | Levels of Structural Organization of Protein | [62] 1) Primary Structure : the linear structure of amino acids in the polypeptide chain 2) Secondary Structure : hydrogen bonds between peptide group chains in an alpha helix or beta 3) Tertiary Structure : three-dimensional structure of alpha helices and beta helices folded 4) Quaternary Structure : three-dimensional structure of multiple polypeptides and how they fit together

Essential and Non-essential Amino Acids

While 20 diverse amino acids are found in nature, certain types can be generated within the body and are classified as nonessential amino acids. For instance, glutamine arises through the combination of glutamate and ammonia. On the other hand, specific amino acids must be acquired from the diet due to their inability to be produced within the body. These are categorized as essential amino acids. A prime example is histidine, which the body cannot synthesize and thus needs to be obtained from dietary sources. Other amino acids that fall under the essential category include isoleucine, leucine, lysine, methionine, phenylalanine, threonine, tryptophan, and valine.

Deamination and Transamination

Approximately 60 percent of amino acids undergo conversion into carbohydrates for energy utilization. This metabolic transformation is orchestrated through two interconnected processes related to amino acids: **deamination** and **transamination**. Deamination, as its name implies, involves the removal of the amino group from an amino acid. The remaining structure of the amino acid then serves as an intermediary molecule within either the glycolytic pathway or the Krebs cycle. For instance, alanine, an amino acid, is converted into pyruvate by shedding its amino group, which is subsequently converted into ammonia and ultimately transformed into a less harmful substance, urea. In cases where the amino group from alanine is detached and transferred to α-ketoglutarate to form glutamate, another amino acid, this mechanism is termed transamination. In transamination, one of the reactants is an amino acid, and the other is a keto acid. The amino group (NH_2) of one molecule is substituted for the keto group (=O) of another molecule. Transamination plays a pivotal role in the synthesis of nonessential amino acids [63].

An amino acid is typically transformed into significant metabolic intermediates, which can be further converted into glucose or subjected to oxidation through aerobic pathways. Amino acids that undergo degradation leading to acetyl CoA are classified as **ketogenic** because they serve as precursors for ketone bodies. Conversely, amino acids contributing to glucose synthesis or progressing through the Krebs cycle are termed **glucogenic**.

Urea Cycle

Urea constitutes a substantial portion of the nitrogenous waste, encompassing 80 to 90 percent of nitrogen-containing

compounds excreted in urine. Its synthesis occurs in the liver, followed by secretion into the bloodstream and elimination through the kidneys via urine. Notably, sweat glands also expel a minor quantity of urea during physical exertion.

Most of the amino acids are utilized in protein synthesis, producing relatively scant free amino acids within cells. In cases of amino acid surplus, the body lacks the capacity and mechanisms for their storage. Consequently, they are converted into glucose or ketones or are subject to decomposition. Amino acid degradation predominantly occurs in the liver, especially in the presence of protein excess. The breakdown of amino acids yields hydrocarbons and nitrogenous waste. Adding a hydrogen atom converts the amino group into ammonia (NH_3). Under acidic conditions, when ammonia captures an electron, it becomes an ammonium ion (NH_4^+). Stringent regulation of ammonia levels is imperative because it can cross the blood-brain barrier, potentially endangering the central nervous system. The urea cycle orchestrates the processing of the amino group, facilitating its elimination from the body. The liver is the principal site for the complete urea cycle, a series of biochemical reactions that convert NH_4^+ into urea [64].

Nitrogen Balance

When dietary nitrogen intake matches the quantity excreted, the individual achieves a state of **nitrogen balance**. **Negative nitrogen balance** can arise during illness or injury, while **positive nitrogen balance** might occur due to heightened protein consumption or conditions hindering nitrogenous waste removal [65]. For example, young children who receive sufficient protein frequently maintain a positive nitrogen balance.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 1.6.3: Protein Metabolism is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism

Triglycerides are the most prevalent type of lipids, carrying significant importance due to their high energy content. Structurally, as their name implies, they consist of three fatty acids and one glycerol molecule. Fatty acids exhibit varying sizes, typically featuring an even count of carbon atoms in a linear arrangement. For instance, stearate consists of 18 carbon atoms, while palmitate comprises 16. These saturated fatty acids are characterized by single covalent bonds between carbon and hydrogen, maximizing the hydrogen atom count. On the other hand, fatty acids such as linoleate and oleate possess a lone unsaturation between C9 and C10, earning them the label of **essential fatty acids** as they necessitate dietary intake.

Triglycerides are either consumed as part of the diet or synthesized within the body by adipocytes for storage or by hepatocytes utilizing carbohydrate precursors. The oxidation of fatty acids is pivotal for generating ATP or constructing fresh lipids from smaller components. However, despite the abundance of available lipid fuel, the activation of lipid utilization is gradual and proceeds at notably slower rates than glucose catabolism.

The metabolic pathways of lipids are intricately linked with those of glucose, encompassing glycolysis and the Krebs cycle. One fundamental process involves breaking down lengthy fatty acid structures into two-carbon segments, creating acetic acid molecules. Combining coenzyme A with the two-carbon acetic acid generates acetyl CoA, which initiates the Krebs cycle. Similarly, a glycerol molecule, which serves as the backbone of triglycerides, can be transformed into glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate, subsequently entering the glycolytic pathway.

Lipolysis

To access energy from triglycerides, they must initially undergo decomposition into their constituent parts—fatty acids and glycerol. This process, termed **lipolysis**, is facilitated by enzymes known as **lipases**. Subsequently, fatty acids undergo further breakdown through **β-oxidation** (Figure 46) within the mitochondria, forming acetic acid molecules that later transform into acetyl coA. Entrance of acetyl coA into the Krebs cycle leads to ATP production, similar to the process involving acetyl coA derived from pyruvate. After shedding their fatty acids, glycerol molecules enter directly into the glycolytic pathway.

Because a single triglyceride molecule generates three fatty acid molecules, each composed of as many as 16 or more carbon atoms, lipid molecules offer significantly more energy than carbohydrates. This substantial energy output establishes lipids as a vital energy source. Consequently, in low glucose levels, triglycerides can be transformed into acetyl coA molecules, serving as a resource for generating ATP through aerobic respiration.

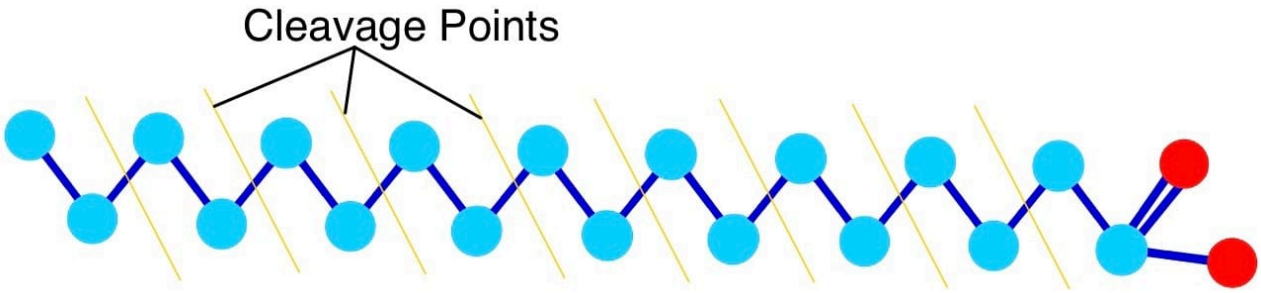


Figure 46 | Cleavage of Fatty Acid into Two-Carbon Structures in Beta-Oxidation | This diagram illustrates the process of beta-oxidation, highlighting the sequential splitting of a fatty acid into two-carbon structures.

Ketogenesis

Ketones are water-soluble molecules composed of three to four carbon compounds. They include **acetoacetate**, **β-hydroxybutyrate**, and **acetone**. Among these, acetoacetate acts as the precursor for the two major circulating ketones, acetone and β-hydroxybutyrate (Figure 47). Notably, β-hydroxybutyrate is the most abundant ketone circulating in the body.

The formation of ketones occurs when fatty acids undergo initial metabolism, yielding acetyl CoA via beta-oxidation [66]. When

the Krebs cycle becomes overwhelmed or ATP levels are sufficiently met, any surplus acetyl CoA molecules can be utilized to generate ketones, which involve the conversion of Acetyl CoA into an intermediary molecule known as **hydroxymethyl glutaryl CoA,** ultimately leading to the release of acetoacetate. The liver plays a pivotal role in synthesizing ketones, particularly during fasting, starvation, prolonged exercise, and instances like untreated type 1 diabetes mellitus.

Ketones can function as fuel molecules when required, effectively generating energy through their conversion into acetyl CoA. This energy generation process is crucial for sustaining the demands for energy under specific metabolic circumstances.

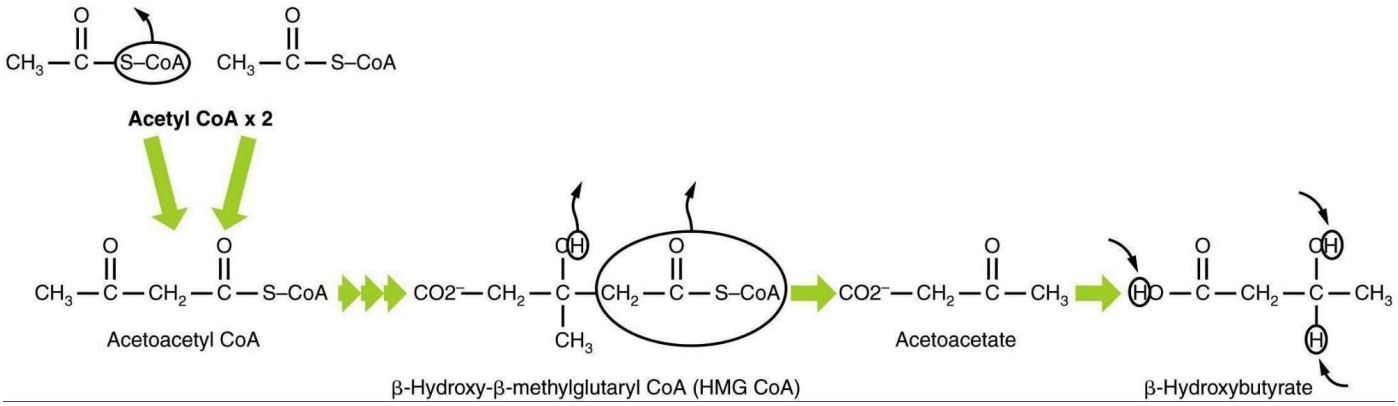


Figure 47 | Ketogenesis | [67] The surplus acetyl CoA is redirected away from the Krebs cycle into the ketogenesis pathway, leading to the synthesis of β-hydroxybutyrate, the predominant ketone body in the bloodstream.

Oxidation of Ketones

In organs heavily reliant on blood glucose, such as the brain, ketones emerge as a viable alternative energy source, particularly when glucose levels dip below normal. β-hydroxybutyrate, functioning as an intracellular energy substrate, undergoes a series of conversions – transitioning into acetoacetate, then acetoacetyl coA, and finally into acetyl coA (Figure 47). The introduction of acetyl coA into the Krebs cycle sparks its activation. Beyond its role as an alternative energy reservoir, β-hydroxybutyrate exhibits the potential to attenuate lipolysis and sympathetic tone and mitigate oxidative stress by elevating the expression of antioxidant genes.

In cases where ketone production outpaces their utilization, resulting in higher-than-normal levels of ketones, a state termed **ketosis** ensues. The breakdown of ketone bodies produces carbon dioxide, which has the potential to acidify the blood, giving rise to **ketoacidosis**—a dangerous condition frequently observed in individuals with type 1 diabetes. Additionally, acetone, released during the degradation of ketones, can be exhaled. Consequently, a distinctive indication of ketogenesis is the presence of a fruity odor in the breath.

Lipogenesis

The process of synthesis of new lipids is termed **lipogenesis**. In circumstances where blood glucose levels are elevated, yet energy demands remain subdued, any surplus acetyl coA generated through glycolysis can undergo conversion into various molecules such as fatty acids, triglycerides, cholesterol, steroids, or bile salts. Consequently, acetyl coA plays a vital role as it sets the initiation of lipogenesis in motion. Once activated, lipogenesis incorporates two carbon atoms from another acetyl CoA molecule. This sequence repeats until the fatty acids reach the desired length. Constructing a triglyceride through this mechanism provides an efficient means of storing the energy derived from carbohydrates. Thus, this process efficiently converts surplus energy into a storable form for later utilization[68].

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

1.7: References

1. Hooke, R. (1665). "Micrographia: or Some Physiological Descriptions of Minute Bodies Made by Magnifying Glasses with Observations and Inquiries Thereupon." London: Royal Society.
2. van Leeuwenhoek, A. (1677). "Observationes D. Antonii Lewenhoeck, de natis e semine genitali animalculis." The Hague: Reinier de Graaf.
3. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 3.4 Cell Membrane. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230620.181811/resources/b43fe17f2018f510b2e76cf067595c36442cf752]
4. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 3.2 Phospholipid Structure. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/a4162a574bb89f091385ceaee6426040ed2a7a6f]
5. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Anatomy and Physiology Figure 3.3 Phospholipid Bilayer. 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/28a6e812d6bf47c0dc1c0d8431badba122d205b1]
6. Almén MS, Nordström KJ, Fredriksson R, Schiöth HB (2009). "Mapping the human membrane proteome: a majority of the human membrane proteins can be classified according to function and evolutionary origin". *BMC Biol.* **7**: 50. doi:10.1186/1741-7007-7-50.
7. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 12.17 Cell Membrane and Transmembrane Proteins. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/c0eb73fcd3a46962113bf11d2e41db1f094027d5]
8. Martínez-Palomo, A. (1970). "The Surface Coats of Animal Cells". *International Review of Cytology*. **29**: 29–75. doi:10.1016/S0074-7696(08)60032-7.
9. Gennis, R.B. (1989). Pores, Channels and Transporters. In: Biomembranes. Springer Advanced Texts in Chemistry. Springer, New York, NY. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4757-2065-5_8
10. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 12.18 Ligand-Gated Channels. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/ab743e2bf4150b49bc081583bd72901ea932dc73]
11. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 12.19 Mechanically Gated Channels. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/2ae96ed9787c306d6303c74a6e60401f599d5b8a]
12. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022).Figure 12.20 Voltage-Gated. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/814d4facbd35f14feff6a5faabce201d2c66d578]
13. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 12.21 Leakage Channels. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/9c35c90b23bff2a25768a9338e14a84f78ee418f]
14. Wagner, Peter D. (2015-01-01). "The physiological basis of pulmonary gas exchange: implications for clinical interpretation of arterial blood gases". *European Respiratory Journal*. **45** (1): 227–243. doi:10.1183/09031936.00039214.
15. LadyofHats Mariana Ruiz Villarreal (2007), Simple diffusion in cells, Retrieved from [https://commons.m.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Scheme_simple_diffusion_in_cell_membrane-en.svg]
16. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 3.7 Osmosis Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/bef3a25cb3ad6886bec3679ba1ac469cd4affe02]
17. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 3.8 Concentration of Solutions Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/beb8f5eafb7f08dc3a619385dc9e66574dcfbbdf]
18. BruceBlaus (2013), Facilitated Diffusion, Retrieved from [https://commons.m.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Blausen_0394_Facilitated_Diffusion.png]
19. Alberts B, Johnson A, Lewis J, et al. Molecular Biology of the Cell. 4th edition. New York: Garland Science; 2002. Carrier Proteins and Active Membrane Transport. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK26896/
20. BruceBlaus (2013), Sodium Potassium Exchange, Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/8/83/Blausen_0818_Sodium-PotassiumPump.png]
21. Lingrel JB. The physiological significance of the cardiotonic steroid/ouabain-binding site of the Na,K-ATPase. Annu Rev Physiol. 2010;72:395-412. doi: 10.1146/annurev-physiol-021909-135725. PMID: 20148682; PMCID: PMC3079441.
22. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 3.10 Three Forms of Endocytosis Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/f8ba32b2d6f53d42ccc9479a05a9fe2fb6d80ba9]
23. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 3.11 Exocytosis. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/b916fcc13d21c7e538a362dcbe847c69e55b7e19]
24. Micrograph provided by the Regents of University of Michigan Medical School © 2012. [https://histologyslides.med.umich.edu/Histology/Digestive%20System/Liver%20and%20Pancreas/188B_HISTO_40X.htm]
25. Hodgkin AL (1951). "The ionic basis of electrical activity in nerve and muscle". *Biol. Rev.* **26** (4): 339–409.

26. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 12.22 Measuring Charge across a Membrane with a Voltmeter. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/ebf896983080bd7983bad79d4008dddd10bffab1c]
27. Squire, Larry; Berg, Darwin (2014). *Fundamental Neuroscience* (4th ed.). Academic Press. pp. 93–97. ISBN 978-0-12-385870-2.
28. Wahl (2005). "A Short History of Electrochemistry". *Galvanotechtnik*. **96**(8): 1820–1828.
29. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 3.13 Prototypical Human Cell. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/ec6b446074b356cfa75ef69a7987a9ee9256b89c]
30. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 3.14 Endoplasmic Reticulum (ER). Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/ac61b07e15894af6d33c9506bdce1d6c08789b1a]
31. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 3.15 Golgi Apparatus. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/c41f125bc91a4c8409bd4be3f2f307723bef9b57]
32. Graham Beards (2009), Stages of Phagocytosis, Retrieved from [https://commons.m.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Phagocytosis2.png]
33. Alberts B, Johnson A, Lewis J, et al. Molecular Biology of the Cell. 4th edition. New York: Garland Science; 2002. The Mitochondrion.Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK26894/
34. Cardanho-Ramos C, Morais VA. Mitochondrial Biogenesis in Neurons: How and Where. Int J Mol Sci. 2021 Dec 2;22(23):13059. doi: 10.3390/ijms222313059. PMID: 34884861; PMCID: PMC8657637.
35. Habbane M, Montoya J, Rhouda T, Sbaoui Y, Radallah D, Emperador S. Human Mitochondrial DNA: Particularities and Diseases. Biomedicines. 2021 Oct 1;9(10):1364. doi: 10.3390/biomedicines9101364. PMID: 34680481; PMCID: PMC8533111.
36. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 3.16 Mitochondrion. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/7ed799db954e5c35675740ccb26c29638d43369c]
37. Nina Parker, Mark Schneegurt, Anh-Hue Thi Tu, Philip Lister, Brian M. Forster (2016), Figure 3.46, Microbiology, Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/100c9bb64b669a4288a7d17a0675ef2a00e25303]
38. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013), Figure 3.18, Anatomy and Physiology, OpenStax, Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/0d6abe4238ff5dfd2c8adc59c9689fbfb87145f6] |
39. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 3.19 The Nucleus. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/83b9432fabdc1a4d12f4ae6ed9c404c678f55122]
40. Brown TA (2002). *The Human Genome* (2nd ed.). Oxford: Wiley-Liss.
41. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022).Figure 3.22 DNA Macrostructure. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240625.161426/resources/647d3546c5b7f5cb57b87eda7bfb1b3599e6f231]
42. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 4.5 Types of Cell Junctions. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/916a0c3c69b9faebb95d3745f923eb78a509d06a]
43. Cheung, Giselle; Chever, Oana; Rouach, Nathalie (2014-11-04). "Connexons and Pannexons: Newcomers in Neurophysiology". *Frontiers in Cellular Neuroscience*. **8**: 348. doi:10.3389/fncel.2014.00348.
44. Garrod, David; Chidgey, Martyn (2008-03-01). "Desmosome structure, composition and function". *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) - Biomembranes*. Apical Junctional Complexes Part I. **1778** (3): 572–587. doi:10.1016/j.bbamem.2007.07.014.
45. Walko, Gernot; Castañón, Maria J.; Wiche, Gerhard (May 2015). "Molecular architecture and function of the hemidesmosome". *Cell and Tissue Research*. **360** (2): 363–378. doi:10.1007/s00441-014-2061-z.
46. Itallie, Christina M. Van; Anderson, James M. (2009-08-01). "Physiology and Function of the Tight Junction". *Cold Spring Harbor Perspectives in Biology*. **1** (2): a002584. doi:10.1101/cshperspect.a002584.
47. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 24.2 Structure of ATP Molecule Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/2a6147c3e109ac8295926abf3a16e3cf3b985148]
48. BruceBlaus (2013), Structure of Glucose, Retrieved from [https://commons.m.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Blausen_0434_Glucose.png]
49. GKFX. (2017, September 5). Diagram of the structure of glycogen [Image]. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/c/c3/Glycogen.svg]
50. Fahy, E. (2008), Common Lipids lmaps, Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/2/20/Common_lipids_lmaps.png]
51. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 24.3 Sources of ATP. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/1bcb15e08ab236bbd1f973885662a79f930cc8c3]
52. Alfarouk KO, Verduzco D, Rauch C, Muddathir AK, Bashir AH, Elhassan GO, Ibrahim ME, Orozco JD, Cardone RA, Reshkin SJ, Harguindey S. Erratum: Glycolysis, tumor metabolism, cancer growth and dissemination. A new pH-based etiopathogenic perspective and therapeutic approach to an old cancer question. Oncoscience. 2014 Dec 18;2(4):317. doi: 10.18632/

oncoscience.158. Erratum for: Oncoscience. 2014;1(12):777-802. PMID: 26097865; PMCID: PMC4468317.
53. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 24.5 Glycolysis Overview Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/364357dcdfb48592130ea9a86bdaadd12da46480]
54. Eschopp (2017), Carbohydrate Metabolism, Retrieved from https://en.m.Wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Carbohydrate_Metabolism.png
55. Slonczewski, Joan L.; Foster, John W. (2011). *Microbiology: An Evolving Science* (2nd ed.). New York: W.W. Norton. p. 166. ISBN 9780393934472.
56. Nelson DL, Cox MM (2005). *Lehninger Principles of Biochemistry*(Fourth ed.). New York: W.H. Freeman and Company. p. 543. ISBN 978-0-7167-4339-2.
57. Kay J, Weitzman PD (1987). *Krebs' citric acid cycle: half a century and still turning*. London: Biochemical Society. pp. 25. ISBN 978-0-904498-22-6.
58. Parker, N., et al. (2016). Figure 8.14. Microbiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/0fe983ac116d86c33f9bc87b9b52f530a22df906]
59. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 24.8 Electron Transport Chain. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/3589e07e861aa242cdd9739089cfca02ffea566d]
60. Rich, P. R. (2003). "The molecular machinery of Keilin's respiratory chain". *Biochemical Society Transactions*. **31** (Pt 6): 1095–1105. doi:10.1042/BST0311095. PMID 14641005
61. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013), Anatomy and Physiology, OpenStax, Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/c8f38ece1f4e5dc47c57f51c012c6c0fa2ddc2b1]
62. Scurran15. (2015, June 1). Levels of structural organization of a protein [Image]. Own work. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/4/49/Levels_of_structural_organization_of_a_protein.svg]
63. Shen F, Sergi C. Biochemistry, Amino Acid Synthesis and Degradation. [Updated 2023 Jan 11]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2024 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK559250/
64. Cox, Michael (2013-01-01). *Lehninger Principles of Biochemistry*. Freeman. ISBN 9781429234146. OCLC 901647690
65. Dickerson RN. Nitrogen Balance and Protein Requirements for Critically Ill Older Patients. Nutrients. 2016 Apr 18;8(4):226. doi: 10.3390/nu8040226. PMID: 27096868; PMCID: PMC4848694.
66. Nelson, David L., and Michael M. Cox. *Lehninger Principles of Biochemistry.* 7th ed., W. H. Freeman, 2017, pp. 636-641.
67. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 24.15 Ketone Oxidation. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231218.154301/resources/e3bfec0963e339f0391b5bed0ab4893b13b0c4b1]
68. Kersten S (April 2001). "Mechanisms of nutritional and hormonal regulation of lipogenesis". *EMBO Rep.* **2** (4): 282–6. doi:10.1093/embo-reports/kve071. PMC 1083868. PMID 11306547

This page titled 1.7: References is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

2: NEUROPHYSIOLOGY

2.1: Objectives

2.2: Introduction

2.3: Nervous Tissue

2.3.1: Neurons

2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS

2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS

2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential

2.3.5: Voltage-gated Sodium and Potassium Ion Channels

2.3.6: Action Potential

2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types

2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission

2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential

2.3.10: Neurotransmitters

2.4: References

This page titled 2: Neurophysiology is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

2.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- Describe the hierarchical organization of the nervous system, including the central and peripheral divisions.
- Distinguish between somatic and autonomic nervous systems and their respective functions.
- Analyze the components of a motor neuron, including the soma, dendrites, axon, and axon terminals.
- Define unipolar, bipolar, and multipolar neurons and the locations where they are found.
- Compare and contrast sensory, motor, and interneurons regarding their roles in neural communication.
- Elaborate on the importance of motor neurons in transmitting signals from the central nervous system to effector organs.
- Describe how a signal is carried from the point of its origin to the brain and back to create a response.
- Discuss the various types of neuroglia (glial cells) and their roles in maintaining neural homeostasis.
- Explain how neuroglia contributes to structural support, immune response, and insulation functions.
- Describe the formation and structure of the blood-brain barrier and its selective permeability.
- Elaborate on how the blood-brain barrier safeguards brain tissue from harmful substances while allowing essential nutrients to pass.
- Name the cells involved in the formation of myelin sheath in the peripheral nervous system. Explain how these cells form these sheaths.
- Define depolarization, repolarization, and hyperpolarization.
- List and explain the characteristics of local potentials, including graded responses and short-range influence.
- Understand how local potentials contribute to the initiation of action potentials.
- Elaborate on the concept of decremental spread and its relevance to the limited propagation of graded potentials.
- Explain why local potentials are not suitable for long-range signaling.
- Explain the features of an action potential.
- Discuss the behavior of activation and inactivation gates of voltage-gated sodium ion channels.
- Describe the specific ion fluxes responsible for generating each phase of the action potential.
- Identify and explain the significance of the absolute and relative refractory periods.
- Detail how depolarizing graded potentials triggers the propagation of action potentials.
- Differentiate between continuous and saltatory conduction.
- Explain the unidirectional conduction of action potentials.
- Explain how myelin sheaths contribute to increased conduction velocity.
- Differentiate between Type A, Type B, and Type C nerve fibers.
- Differentiate between electrical and chemical synapses.
- Describe the step-by-step process of synaptic transmission from presynaptic depolarization to postsynaptic EPSP or IPSP generation.
- Discuss the roles of neurotransmitter release, receptor activation, and ion channels.
- Compare and contrast the events at excitatory and inhibitory synapses.
- Analyze how neurotransmitter binding influences postsynaptic potential changes.
- Predict the combined effects of excitatory and inhibitory inputs on a postsynaptic neuron.
- Discuss the outcome of receiving conflicting signals from different synapses.
- Describe the importance of summation in integrating multiple synaptic inputs.
- Relate spatial and temporal summation to mechanisms of inhibition and facilitation.
- Differentiate between ionotropic and metabotropic receptors in terms of structure and function. Describe how these receptors initiate intracellular signaling pathways.

This page titled 2.1: Objectives is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

2.2: Introduction

The nervous system, an intricate network orchestrating sensory reception, cognitive integration, and precise responsiveness, forms the foundation for comprehensive physiological comprehension.

Sensation, **integration**, and **response** constitute the core roles of the nervous system. This intricate system excels in receiving both internal and external stimuli, culminating in orchestrated responses. The transmission of signals by sensory neurons sets the stage for neural integration, where information is processed. The integration process melds sensory perceptions with higher-order cognitive functions, resulting in targeted and nuanced responses. This sophisticated interplay involves the seamless coordination of memory, learning, and emotional processing.

As we navigate the divisions of the nervous system (Figure 1), we first explore the **somatic nervous system**, a branch encompassing the **brain**, the **spinal cord**, **cranial** and **spinal nerves**, and the **ganglia**. These components contribute to conscious perception and voluntary motor coordination. We also delve into the realm of **reflexes**, dealing with subconscious motor responses. Next, we uncover the orchestration of involuntary responses as part of the **autonomic nervous system**. The interplay between its **sympathetic** and **parasympathetic divisions** constitutes a regulatory system governing involuntary physiological processes.

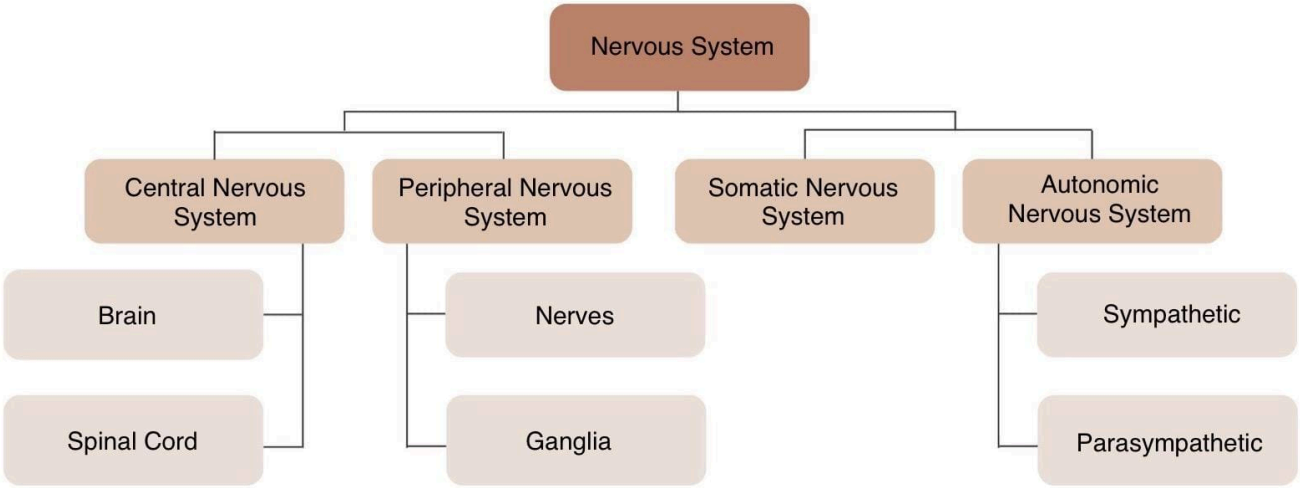


Figure 1 | Organization of the Nervous System | This figure illustrates the organization of the nervous system where the Central Nervous System (CNS) comprises the brain and spinal cord, and the peripheral Nervous System (PNS) consists of nerves and ganglia outside the CNS. The nervous system is also divided into the somatic and autonomic nervous systems. The Somatic Nervous System controls voluntary muscle movements. The Autonomic Nervous System is divided into sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions and regulates involuntary bodily functions to maintain internal homeostasis.

This page titled 2.2: Introduction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

2.3: NERVOUS TISSUE

Nervous or neural tissue consists of two distinct cell types: **neurons** and **glial cells** (also referred to as neuroglia or simply glia). Neurons represent the principal cellular component responsible for executing the computational and communicative functions facilitated by the nervous system. These cells exhibit electrical excitability and release chemical signals aimed at target cells. Conversely, glial cells are recognized for their supportive role in maintaining nervous tissue integrity.

2.3.1: Neurons

2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS

2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS

2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential

2.3.5: Voltage-gated Sodium and Potassium Ion Channels

2.3.6: Action Potential

2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types

2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission

2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential

2.3.10: Neurotransmitters

This page titled 2.3: Nervous Tissue is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

2.3.1: Neurons

Neurons serve as the fundamental cellular entities responsible for generating electrical impulses, transmitting information related to sensory perceptions, and participating in cognitive processes. Until recently, the prevailing belief among neuroscientists was that individuals were born with a fixed number of neurons. Growth primarily occurred during childhood when new neurons contributed to developing **neural circuits**—complex pathways that serve as information highways connecting different brain regions. The conventional understanding was that once these neural circuits were established, adding new neurons might disrupt the established flow of information and potentially compromise the communication system of the brain. The intricate nature of neurogenesis in humans continues to be a subject of ongoing investigation, with researchers eager to uncover its implications for cognitive processes. [1]

Structure of a Neuron

The structural characteristics of neurons play a pivotal role in determining their functional importance. The intricate morphology of these cells is crucial for establishing the network of interconnections inherent in the complex architecture of the nervous system.

The cardinal component of a neuron is the **cell body**, termed the **soma** (soma = "body"). This nucleus-encasing structure encompasses a majority of pivotal organelles. The soma emits numerous projections of its cell membrane, collectively denoted as processes. Neurons are conventionally characterized by a singular **axon**—an extension originating from the cell body and extending toward target cells. This solitary axon can undergo extensive branching, facilitating communication with multiple target cells. The nerve impulse propagation, crucial for intercellular communication, transpires along the axon to reach one or more recipient cells. The neuron's supplementary processes are **dendrites**, which adeptly intercept information from other neurons at specialized contact points called synapses. Dendrites exhibit intricate branching patterns, affording prime locations for reciprocal neural communication with the cell body. Information follows a sequential trajectory through the neuron: from dendrites, traversing the cell body, and subsequently coursing along the axon. This established pattern endows the neuron with polarity, signifying the unidirectional flow of information. A visual representation of the spatial interrelation of these components is portrayed in Figure 2.

A distinct region, designated as the **axon hillock**, marks the emergence of the axon from the cell body. The axon hillock manifests as a tapered extension of the cell body directed toward the axon. Enclosed within the axon hillock, the cytoplasm transitions, forming a composition of limited constituents known as **axoplasm**. This pivotal juncture signifies the inception of the axon and is concurrently termed the **initial segment**. Remarkably sensitive to the initiation of nerve impulses, the axon hillock boasts an elevated abundance of voltage-gated sodium and potassium ion channels.

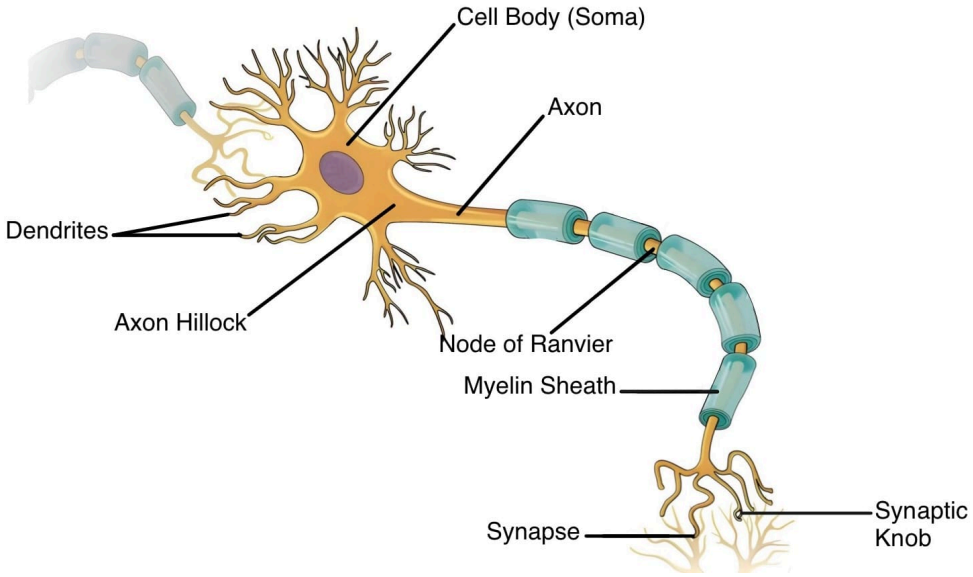


Figure 2 | Parts of a Neuron | [2] This illustration depicts the fundamental structure of a neuron, highlighting key components essential for its function. Cell Body (Soma) is the central region containing the cell nucleus and essential organelles. Dendrites are branch-like extensions emanating from the cell body. An axon is a long, slender projection extending from the cell body. Axon Hillock is the junction between the cell body and the axon. Myelin Sheath is a fatty insulation covering segments of the axon. Node of Ranvier represents a gap in the myelin sheath along the axon. Axon Terminals are small branches at the end of the axon. They possess enlargements at their tips that help communicate with other neurons at points called synapses.

Most axons are enveloped by an insulating myelin sheath, an entity synthesized by glial cells analogous to the insulation encasing electrical wires. A distinguishing feature between myelin and wire insulation is the presence of intervals or voids within the myelin sheath covering the axon. These intervals, known as **nodes of Ranvier**, bear significance in transmitting electrical signals down the axon.

The terminal phase of the axon culminates in the **axon terminal**. Typically, multiple branches extend toward the target cell from the axon terminal, ending in enlarged structures called **synaptic end bulbs** or **synaptic knobs**. These bulbs establish the junction with the target cell at the synapse.

Types of Neurons

The human body contains billions of neurons, each falling into different classifications. One type involves examining processes attached to the cell body.

Structural Classification of Neurons

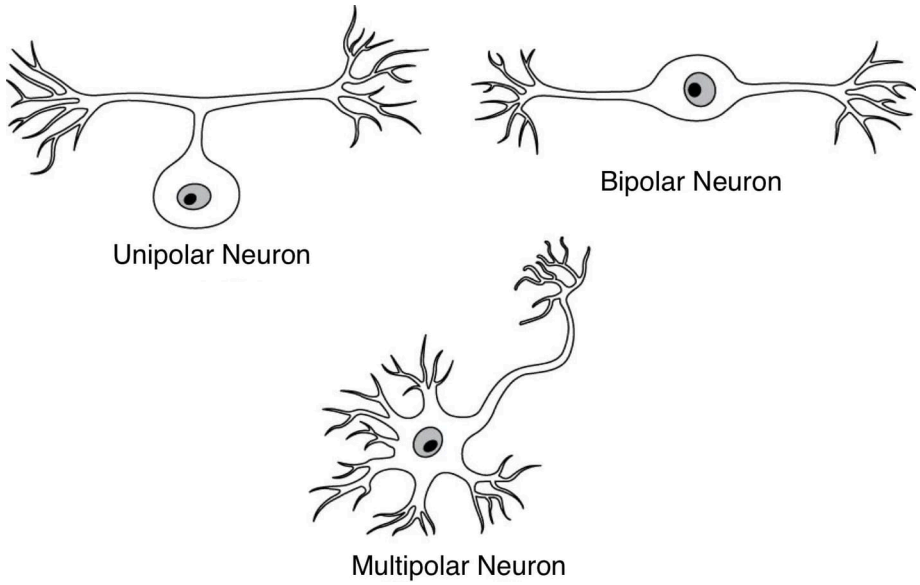


Figure 3 | The Structural Classification of the Neurons | [3] This diagram illustrates the structural diversity of neurons, categorized into three main types: unipolar, bipolar, and multipolar neurons. An unipolar neuron is characterized by a single, elongated process emerging from the cell body. A bipolar neuron features two distinct processes extending from opposite ends of the cell body. A multipolar neuron possesses many processes emanating from the cell body, typically one axon and multiple dendrites.

Unipolar neurons, also known as **pseudounipolar neurons**, are a type of sensory neuron with a single process emerging from the cell body (Figure 3). This single process splits into two branches, one acting as a dendrite to receive sensory input and the other functioning as an axon to transmit the information to the CNS. Ganglia frequently house the cell bodies of unipolar neurons, especially those involved in transmitting sensory signals from peripheral receptors to the CNS.

Bipolar neurons encompass two processes emanating from opposing poles of the cell body (Figure 3). One process is designated as the axon, while the other functions as a dendrite. Examples of bipolar neurons include specialized sensory receptors, such as **olfactory receptors** within the olfactory epithelium, **photoreceptors** (rods and cones) within the retina, and **hair cells** within the cochlea, vestibule, and semicircular canals.

Multipolar neurons possess a single axon and two or more dendrites (Figure 3). Multipolar neurons primarily serve motor functions.

Functional Classification of Neurons

Neurons can be classified based on their functions into **sensory** (**afferent**), **motor** (**efferent**), and **interneurons** (**association neurons)**. As the name suggests, sensory neurons transmit sensory signals from the PNS to the CNS. Motor neurons, conversely, facilitate the conveyance of motor signals from the CNS to the PNS. Interneurons, exclusively confined to the CNS, contribute to processing received signals and the modulation of impulses slated for release via motor neurons (Figure 4).

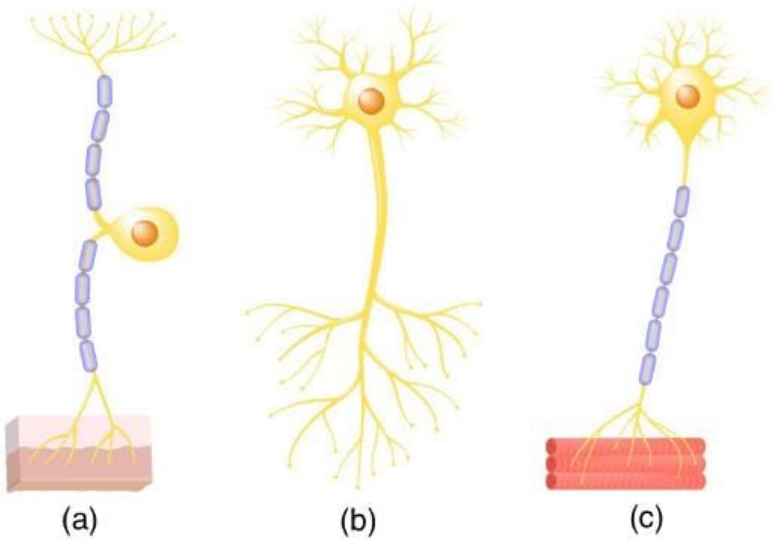


Figure 4 | The Functional Classification of the Neurons | [4] This figure illustrates the functional diversity of neurons, categorized into three main types: a) Sensory Neuron, specialized for the reception of sensory stimuli from the external environment or internal conditions. b) Interneuron that acts as an intermediary neuron within the CNS, facilitating communication between sensory and motor neurons. c) Motor Neuron transmits signals from the CNS to effectors, such as muscles or glands.

One of the fundamental functions of the nervous system is to enable the communication of information between the CNS and the PNS. An illustration of a sensory and a motor pathway is utilized here to elucidate how a sensory signal is communicated (Figure 5).

Located within the skin portion of the fingers are **thermoreceptors** adept at discerning alterations in thermal conditions. By subjecting the hand to the influence of heat, for example, the cell membrane of these thermoreceptors undergoes a transition in its electrochemical state, characterized by shifts in voltage. Should the stimulus exhibit considerable strength, the voltage alteration in the cellular membrane surpasses a critical threshold, thus eliciting the initiation of an electrical impulse, referred to as an **action potential**, which undertakes a process termed **propagation**, spreading along the axon to its ultimate destination of the cerebral cortex via the spinal cord, brainstem, and the thalamus, wherein conscious perception of the temperature occurs. Within the confines of the cerebral cortex, intricate processing occurs across a complex network of neurons, integrating the temperature stimulus. Eventually, a decision is reached concerning whether to augment the temperature or withdraw the hand. Enacting any of these choices mandates the cerebral cortex to disseminate directives that initiate muscular movement, as indicated in Figure 5.

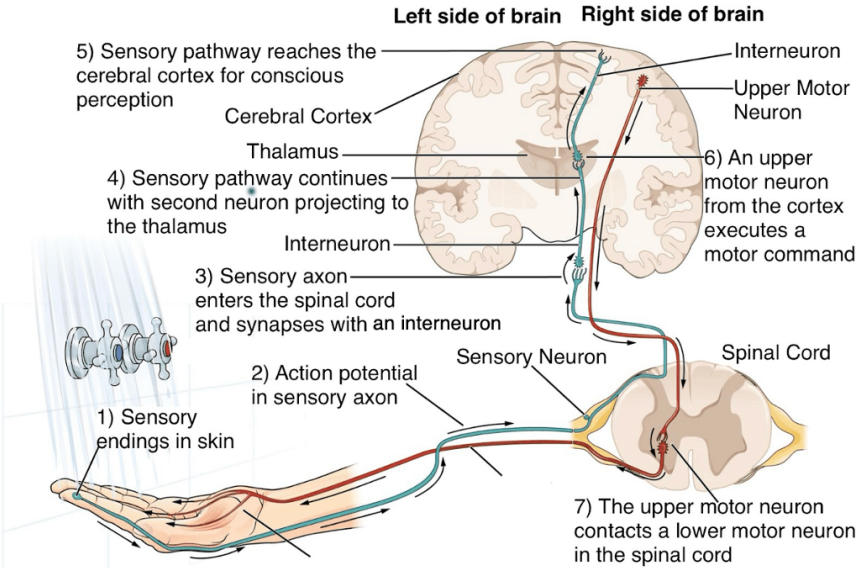


Figure 5 | Sensory Pathway for Temperature Perception | [5] This diagram illustrates the sensory pathway in the perception of temperature. **Thermoreceptors are** sensory neurons located in the skin that respond to changes in temperature and transmit electrical signals along many neurons to the cerebral cortex via the spinal cord, brainstem, and the thalamus wherein conscious perception of the temperature occurs. Motor Pathway. The efferent signals travel down the motor pathway, reaching the muscles responsible for withdrawing the hand. This rapid and coordinated response is crucial for avoiding tissue damage.

This page titled 2.3.1: Neurons is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS

While glial cells are found both in the CNS and PNS, various subtypes operate within the CNS, each serving distinct functions. Among these, the **astrocyte** stands out; its nomenclature is derived from its star-like morphological configuration observed through microscopic examination (astro = "star"). This cell extends numerous processes that interface with neurons, blood vessels, and the connective tissue covering the CNS (Figure 6). Predominantly, astrocytes provide structural support to neurons in the CNS. Besides, they govern the chemical milieu of the CNS, particularly influencing ion concentrations in extracellular fluid, which is pivotal for establishing and altering membrane potentials and electrochemical signaling. Astrocytes possess mechanisms to regulate excess potassium ion concentration, assisting the sodium-potassium exchange pump. They also play an important role in eliminating excessive signaling molecules, responding to tissue injury, and contributing to the integrity of the **blood-brain barrier** (BBB).

The BBB, a physiological barrier unique to a few bodily regions, including the brain, curtails the passage of many circulating substances into the CNS, thereby dictating restricted permeability. Like select bodily structures, the brain benefits from an exclusive blood supply. Minimal diffusion transpires through this barrier, compelling most substances to undergo selective transport to access the CNS. Thus, only specific molecules, including glucose, amino acids, water, gasses, and ions, can enter. Conversely, white blood cells remain excluded, safeguarding the CNS from potential harm but concurrently limiting its defense mechanisms against injury and infection. BBB presents challenges in CNS drug delivery, prompting pharmaceutical endeavors toward developing compounds capable of traversing the BBB to impact the nervous system[6].

The speed, intensity, and duration of central anesthesia depend directly on the ability of a drug to cross the BBB. Intravenous anesthetics and opioids cross the endothelial BBB primarily via passive diffusion, which is favored by high lipophilicity, low molecular weight, a non-ionized state at physiological pH, and a low fraction of plasma protein binding (as only unbound, free drug is active and capable of diffusion). Pathological conditions can disrupt tight junctions and increase BBB permeability. Factors such as severe hypercapnia, systemic inflammation, central ischemia, and malignant hypertension compromise barrier integrity, allowing higher concentrations of drugs to enter the CNS rapidly, significantly enhancing drug sensitivity and increasing the risk of exaggerated central effects.

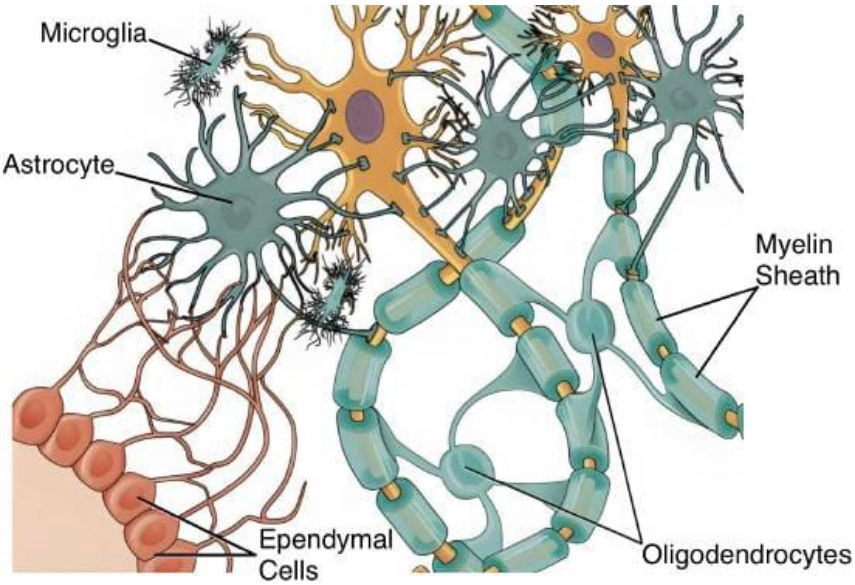


Figure 6 | Glial Cells of the CNS | [7] This figure illustrates the major types of glial cells within the CNS, essential for supporting neuronal structure and function. Astrocytes are star-shaped cells that play a crucial role in maintaining the chemical environment of neurons. Oligodendrocytes provide myelin sheath around axons to facilitate rapid electrical signal transmission. Each oligodendrocyte can myelinate multiple axons within the CNS. Microglia act as the immune cells of the CNS, monitoring for signs of injury, infection, or disease. Ependymal Cells line the ventricles of the brain and the central canal of the spinal cord. They are involved in the production and circulation of cerebrospinal fluid, contributing to the buoyancy and protection of the CNS.

Oligodendrocytes, a subtype of glial cells, insulate axons. The name, derived from "oligo," signifying "few," "dendron," indicating "branches," and "cyte," denoting "cell," alludes to its limited process count. These extensions originate from the cell body,

encircling axons to form myelin sheaths. A singular oligodendrocyte may wrap multiple segments of the same or different axons[8].

Microglia, comparatively smaller relative to other glial cells, act as the immune cells of the CNS, monitoring for signs of injury, infection, or disease. They are implicated in phagocytosis of aberrant or distressed cells and pathogens in healthy CNS tissue.

Ependymal cells, another subtype of glial cells, envelop the ventricles. They filter blood to produce cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), the CNS-circulating fluid. Ependymal cells exhibit structural similarity to epithelial cells, forming a single-layer arrangement with tight cell-cell connections and cilia on their apical surface to facilitate CSF movement within the ventricular space (Figure 6). The **choroid plexus**, a specialized vascular structure located within the ventricles, provides a site where ependymal cells interface with blood vessels, facilitating the filtration and absorption of blood components to form CSF.

This page titled 2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS

The **satellite cell** is recognized among the two distinct types of glial cells evident within the PNS. These cells inhabit sensory and autonomic ganglia, enveloping the neuron cell bodies therein. The nomenclature attributed to these cells corresponds to their morphological characteristics. Satellite cells serve a supportive role akin to the functions assumed by astrocytes within the CNS, except for establishing the BBB.

Schwann cell is another subtype of glial cell that provides myelin insulation to axons within the PNS. They contrast with oligodendrocytes in that each Schwann cell wraps a solitary axon segment, whereas oligodendrocytes extend processes that span multiple axon segments. Myelin, a lipid-dominant envelope, encircles the axon, engendering a **myelin sheath** that expedites the conduction of electrical impulses along the axon. The nucleus and cytoplasm of the Schwann cell remain positioned at the periphery of the myelin sheath (Figure 7). The extension of myelin sheaths can span from one to two millimeters, contingent upon axon diameter. Axon diameters range from 1 to 20 micrometers. The length of a myelin sheath can potentially be 100–1000 times greater than the diameter of the axon. Figures 7 and 8 illustrate the encompassing of a myelin sheath around an axon segment, although not according to scale.

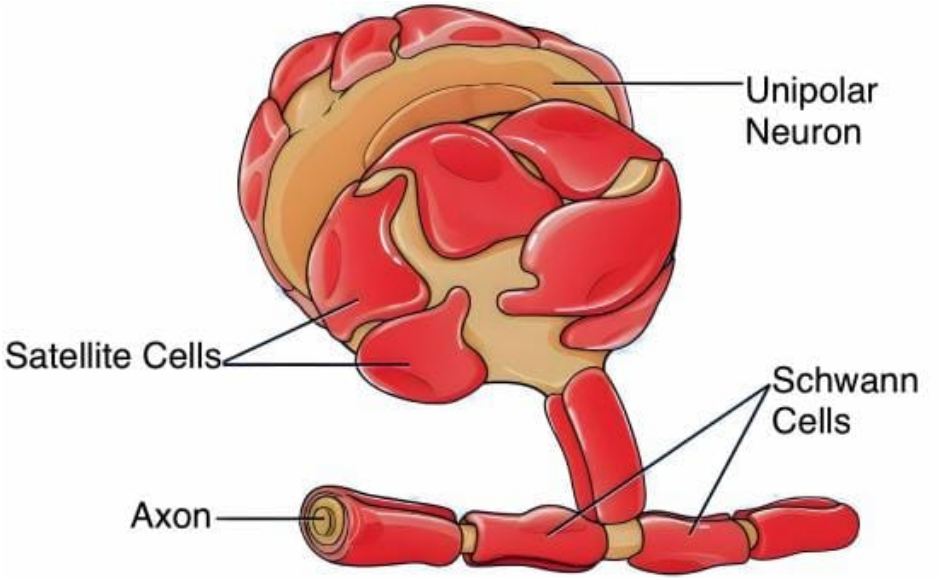


Figure 7 | Glial Cells of the PNS | [9] This figure depicts the two types of glial cells found within the PNS, contributing to the structural and functional support of peripheral nerves. Schwann Cells are principal glial cells in the PNS responsible for myelinating axons. They form the myelin sheath around individual axons, aiding in the rapid transmission of nerve impulses. Satellite Cells surround and support cell bodies of neurons within the ganglia in the PNS.

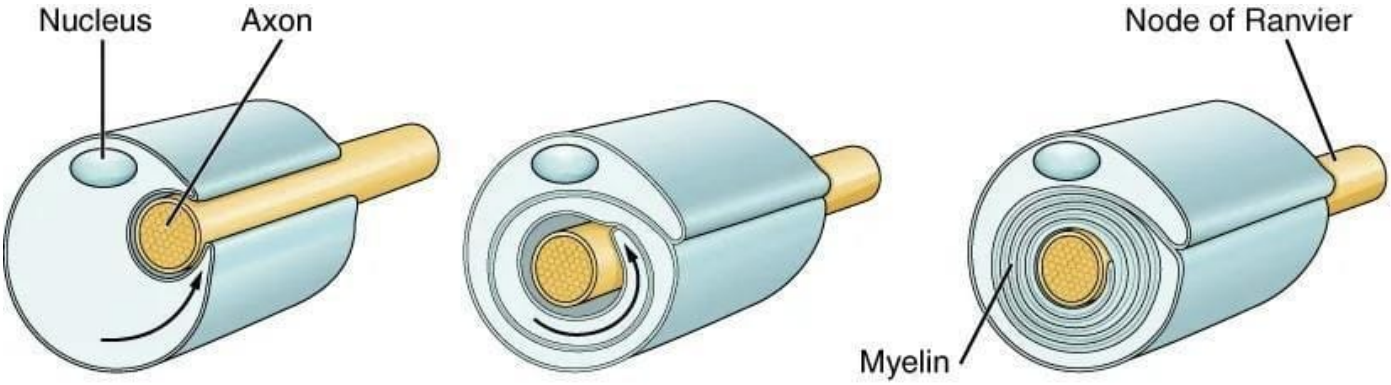


Figure 8 | The Process of Myelination by Schwann Cells | [10] This illustration captures the myelination process carried out by Schwann cells in the PNS. Schwann cells recognize and envelop individual axons in the PNS by wrapping around the axon multiple times, forming a myelin sheath consisting of numerous layers of lipid-rich membrane. As the Schwann cell continues to wrap around the axon, the layers of the myelin membrane compact, resulting in the formation of a myelin sheath that insulates the axon. Nodes of Ranvier are gaps in the myelin sheath where the axon is exposed.

During development, the glial cell displays a provisional or incomplete enclosure around the axon (Figure 8). The peripheries of this provisional wrapping incline towards convergence, with one extremity folding beneath the other. The inner perimeter enwraps the axon, configuring multiple strata, while the opposing border envelops the external surface, thus culminating in the comprehensive encapsulation of the axon. Schwann cells continuously monitor and maintain the myelin sheath throughout the life of the axon[11]. Upon axonal transection, the proximal stub emits multiple regenerating sprouts. The sprout that successfully interfaces with an adjacent Schwann cell continues to elongate, eventually reinnervating the target cell.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential

The membrane potential signifies the spatial allocation of electrical charge spanning the cell membrane, quantified in millivolts (mV). Conventionally, the reference point entails evaluating the interior of the cell relative to its external surroundings. Therefore, the membrane potential is a numerical manifestation characterizing the charge amassed within the intracellular domain of the membrane. The concept of the resting membrane potential encapsulates the equilibrium state of the cell, an incessantly active process counterbalanced by ion diffusion and active ion transport. Without external influences, the membrane potential persists in an unchanging state.

Graded Potentials

Localized alterations in the membrane potential are denoted as **graded potentials**, predominantly manifesting within the dendritic domains of neurons. The extent of variation in the membrane potential is contingent upon the magnitude of the inciting stimulus. In the example of shower temperature, tepid water would illustrate a minor shift in the membrane potential of a thermoreceptor. In contrast, elevated temperature would substantially increase the membrane potential.

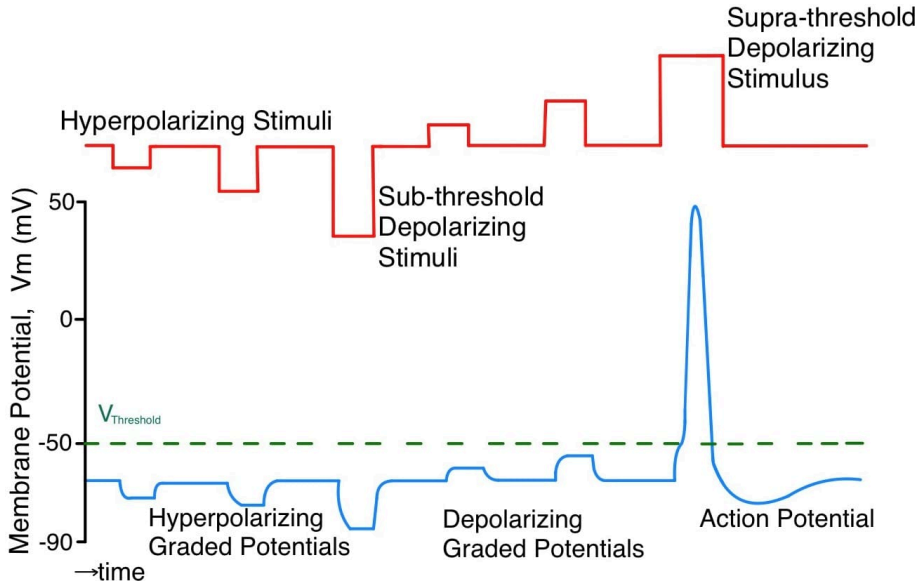


Figure 9 | Graded Potentials | This schematic diagram illustrates changes in the membrane potential of a neuron in response to stimuli. Graded potentials are localized variations in membrane potential that can either depolarize (depicted by the upward shift) or hyperpolarize (depicted by the downward shift) the neuron. An influx of positive ions causes a transient depolarization, which results in a shift towards a less negative membrane potential. Conversely, an efflux of positive ions or an influx of negative ions causes a temporary hyperpolarization, making the membrane potential more negative than the resting state. These graded potentials play a crucial role in influencing the generation of action potentials.

Graded potentials encompass a duality characterized by their **depolarizing** or **hyperpolarizing** nature, as depicted in Figure 9. Depolarizing graded potentials often arise due to the selective influx of sodium or calcium ions through specific ion channels. These ions possess higher extracellular concentrations compared to the intracellular environment. Their positive charge makes them migrate into the cell, reducing the intracellular negativity relative to the extracellular milieu. Conversely, hyperpolarizing graded potentials are caused by the efflux of potassium ions from the cell or the influx of chloride ions into the cell, facilitated by activating corresponding ion channels. The cellular environment becomes more negative when negative charges such as chloride ions enter the cell or when positive charges, such as potassium ions, exit the cell. The sodium-potassium exchange pumps are employed to restore the membrane potential to its resting state unless subsequent stimuli persist in driving the potential toward either depolarization or hyperpolarization. This reversal of the graded potential to its original state is referred to as **repolarization**. Furthermore, the amplitude of the graded potential gradually wanes as it propagates away from its initial active site, yielding a **decremental pattern** over distance.[12]

During cellular quiescence, ions distribute across the membrane in a highly anticipated manner when ion channels remain

closed (except for leakage channels, which exhibit sporadic activation; Figure 10). The extracellular compartment hosts a sodium concentration approximately tenfold that of the intracellular milieu, while the intracellular environment holds a heightened potassium ion concentration relative to the extracellular surroundings. The cytosol is enriched with abundant anions, primarily as phosphate ions and negatively charged proteins. The intracellular portion of the membrane is characterized by sizable anionic entities encompassing specialized phospholipids and proteins. Given such distribution of ions within the membrane, a disparity in charge emerges, quantified at -70 mV, denoting the established **resting membrane potential**. Although the precise measurement of the resting membrane potential may vary among different cell types, the standard benchmark of -70 mV is widely adopted. Leakage channels facilitate a gradual influx of sodium or efflux of potassium ions across the cell membrane while the sodium-potassium exchange pump endeavors to reinstate their original concentrations.[13]

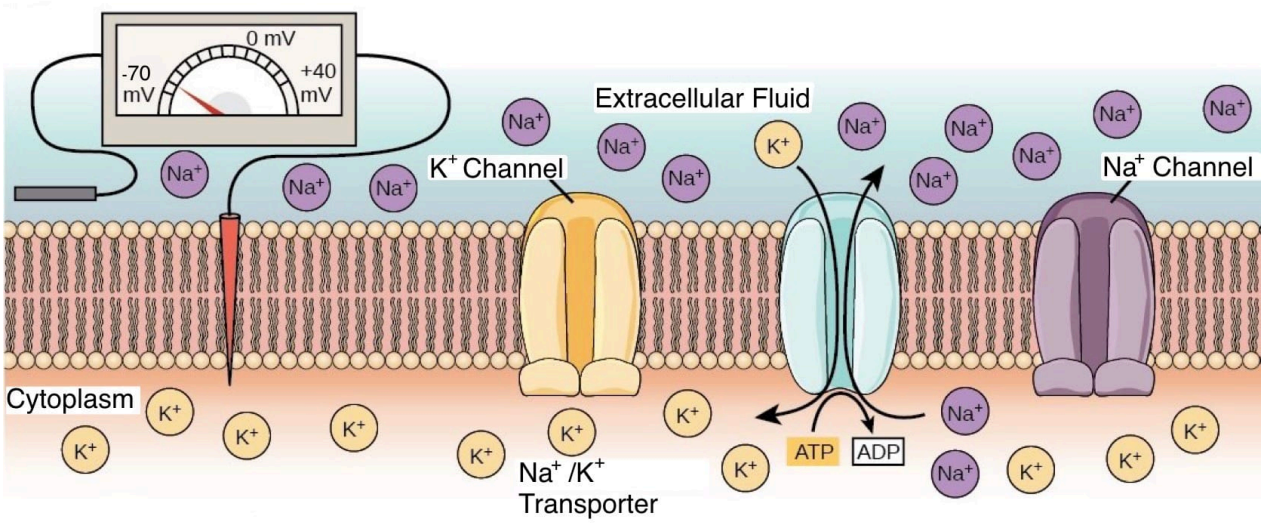


Figure 10 | Schematic Representation of Ion Distribution and Resting Membrane Potential during Cellular Quiescence | [14] The diagram illustrates the distribution of ions across the cell membrane during a quiescent state. The extracellular compartment exhibits a tenfold higher sodium ion (Na^+) concentration compared to the intracellular milieu, while the intracellular environment maintains an elevated potassium ion (K^+) concentration. The intracellular membrane features sizable anionic entities. The resulting charge disparity establishes a resting membrane potential of -70 mV, a standard benchmark across cell types. At resting membrane potential, voltage-gated Na^+ and K^+ channels are closed and $\mathrm{Na}^+/\mathrm{K}^+$ pump maintains normal concentrations of Na^+ and K^+.

This page titled 2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

2.3.5: Voltage-gated Sodium and Potassium Ion Channels

Depolarization and repolarization processes are central to an action potential and hinge on the functionality of two distinctive channel types—the voltage-gated sodium and potassium ion channels. The voltage-gated sodium channel is furnished with a dual-gating mechanism (Figure 11). This mechanism entails an **activation gate** and an **inactivation gate**. Typically, the activation gate is poised to open once the membrane potential surpasses -55 mV and is referred to as the **threshold**. In the resting state of a cell, the activation gate is shut, while the inactivation gate remains open. However, the activation gate opens upon attaining the threshold, permitting a rapid influx of sodium ions into the cell. The temporal alignment of this event coincides with the peak of depolarization. Concurrently, the inactivation gate closes, curtailing the entry of additional sodium ions during the repolarization phase. After the membrane potential crosses -55 mV once again, the activation gate undergoes closure. Following this, the inactivation gate reopens, restoring the readiness of the channel to initiate the entire cycle anew.[15]

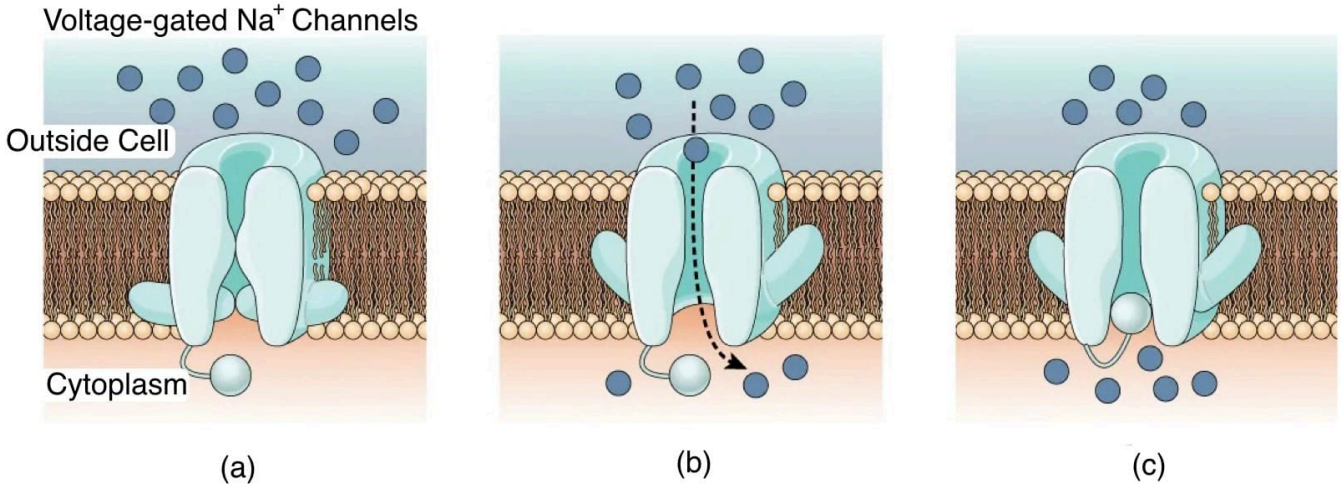


Figure 11 | Voltage-gated Sodium Channel | [16] This schematic diagram illustrates the functional architecture of a voltage-gated sodium channel dealing with the rapid and transient influx of sodium ions during depolarization. The channel is depicted as embedded in the cell membrane and responsible for selective ion conduction. Voltage-gated sodium (Na+) channels play a crucial role in the initiation and propagation of action potentials in neurons. These channels have two key gates: the activation gate and the inactivation gate. (a) During repolarization, as the membrane potential returns to its resting state, the inactivation gate opens, and the activation gate closes. The channel is in a non-conductive state, preventing (Na+) from entering the cell. (b) When the membrane depolarizes, the activation gate rapidly opens, allowing (Na+) to flow into the cell. This influx of (Na+) causes further depolarization of the membrane, contributing to the rising phase of the action potential. (c) Shortly after the activation gate opens, the inactivation gate closes, even if the membrane is still depolarized. This closure stops (Na+) flow, marking the peak and early repolarization of the action potential. The channel is now in an inactivated state.

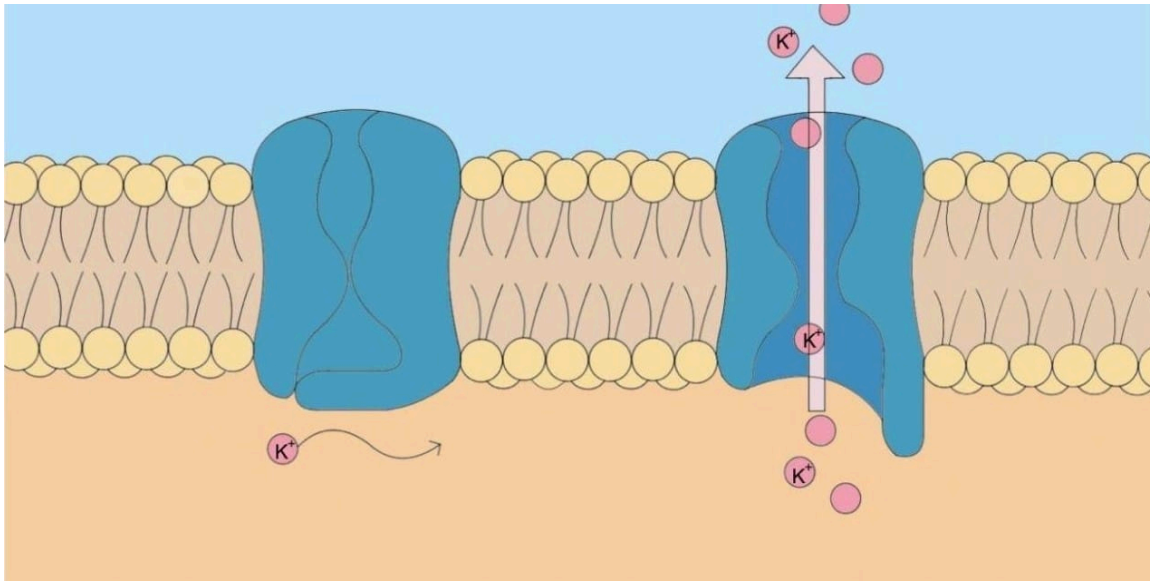


Figure 12 | Voltage-gated Potassium Channel | This diagram depicts the structure of a voltage-gated potassium channel. The channel is embedded within the cell membrane. Upon depolarization, conformational changes trigger the opening of the channel, allowing the selective flow of potassium ions (K^+) through the pore.

The voltage-gated potassium ion channel is characterized by a solitary gating mechanism responsive to a membrane voltage of about -50 mV (Figure 12). Its mode of operation differs from that of the voltage-gated sodium ion channel in terms of swiftness. The onset of channel opening may be slightly delayed, extending to a fraction of a millisecond after achieving the designated voltage. This temporal occurrence aligns precisely with the peak influx of sodium ions, resulting in the voltage-gated potassium ion channels becoming active concurrently with the inactivation of the voltage-gated sodium ion channels.

This page titled 2.3.5: Voltage-gated Sodium and Potassium Ion Channels is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

2.3.6: Action Potential

Action potential stands as the principal means through which neurons communicate. The alteration in membrane potential of modest amplitude is denoted as a graded potential. When this graded potential attains substantial magnitude, it can elicit an action potential before reverting to the standard resting membrane potential. Typically, the region of the excitable membrane where graded potentials manifest might not itself generate action potentials. An example of this domain is the dendrite. Here, current spreads passively from the site of a graded potential, depolarizing adjacent membrane regions until the signal reaches the initial segment.

During an action potential, the changes in permeability to sodium and potassium ions are intricately orchestrated to initiate, propagate, and ultimately restore the membrane potential of a cell. These changes are produced by the opening and closing of voltage-gated ion channels in response to specific changes in membrane voltage. An action potential can be generated if a stimulus is capable of allowing the opening of specific ion channels. A high concentration of ion channels distinguishes the initial segment from the rest of the neuron. Upon the arrival of a depolarizing stimulus, sodium ion channels open, fostering an influx of sodium ions into the cell and, thus, a decrease in membrane potential from -70 mV to -55 mV. Upon reaching this threshold, voltage-gated sodium and potassium channels are activated. Threshold alludes to the voltage point at which these channels undergo activation. Notably, any degree of depolarization that fails to raise the membrane potential to -55 mV will remain subthreshold, precluding the instigation of an action potential. Conversely, any stimulus that propels the membrane potential beyond -55 mV will incite many channels to open in a positive feedback manner, heralding the initiation of an action potential. Acknowledging that the threshold is contingent upon the specific cell type participating in action potential generation is pertinent. For instance, the threshold for tactile discernment would differ between a tactile receptor and a thermoreceptor.

Upon reaching the threshold, a rapid and profound depolarization takes place. This phenomenon arises due to the delay in opening voltage-gated potassium channels, leading to a pronounced sodium ion conductance in the cell (Figure 13). The robust concentration gradient governing sodium ion movement is so formidable that sodium ions continue to infiltrate the cell until it reaches +30 mV. During this phase, the recorded potential exhibits an abrupt ascent, signifying an intracellular positivity relative to the extracellular domain.

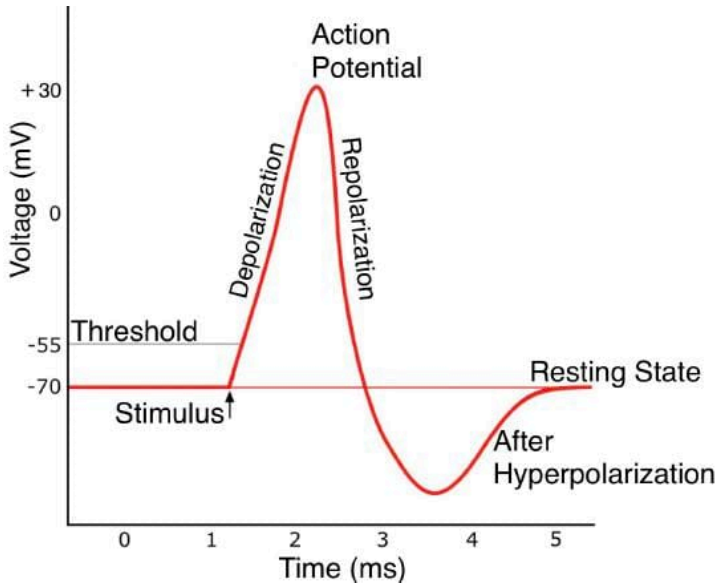


Figure 13 | Action Potential | [17] This schematic depicts an action potential, a rapid and transient change in membrane potential observed in excitable cells, such as neurons. The figure highlights key stages, including depolarization, repolarization, and hyperpolarization, as ions move across the cell membrane.

Although both voltage-gated sodium and potassium channels were activated simultaneously, potassium ion channels are slow to open. They begin to open as the membrane potential reaches +30 mV, catalyzing the efflux of potassium ions from the cell. As potassium ions depart the cell, the membrane potential reverts to its resting level. This rapid restoration of the membrane potential to its resting voltage is repolarization—a phenomenon characterized by the return toward the -70 mV benchmark emblematic of the resting membrane potential. Notably, the repolarization process reinstates the membrane potential to the

-70 mV resting value and extends slightly beyond it. Consequently, a hyperpolarization phase ensues while the potassium ion channels remain active; this period is termed **after hyperpolarization**. The slight delay in the closure of potassium ion channels accounts for this transient overshoot (Figure 13). Potassium ions continue to exit the cell, eliciting increased membrane negativity, thus yielding the hyperpolarizing overshoot. Following this, the channel undergoes closure once again, enabling the membrane to return to its resting potential. This restoration is facilitated by the ongoing operation of non-gated channels and the activity of the sodium-potassium exchange pump.

A threshold voltage engenders a binary outcome for the action potential—either it materializes or does not. Failure to attain the threshold precludes the occurrence of an action potential. Should the threshold be surmounted, the action potential unfolds and follows its prescribed course. Notably, these sequences remain consistent across all action potentials, implying a predetermined sequence once the threshold is reached. A more potent stimulus that induces depolarization beyond the threshold does not engender an augmented magnitude of the action potential. An **all-or-none** response inherently characterizes action potentials. Either the membrane potential achieves the threshold, and the complete sequence transpires as described above, or the membrane fails to meet the threshold, and no further developments occur (Figure 14). All action potentials culminate at an identical peak voltage of +30 mV, rendering them equivalent in amplitude. While more potent stimuli can incite a more rapid succession of multiple action potentials, the fundamental individual signal remains invariant (Figure 15).

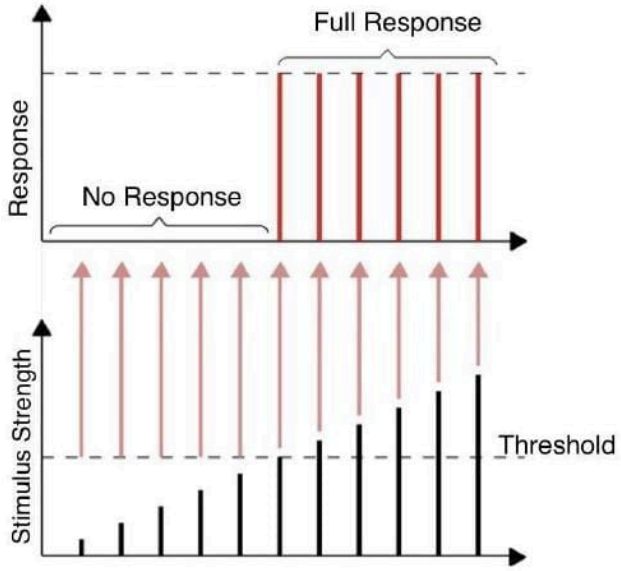


Figure 14 | The All-or-None Response of an Action Potential | [18] The graph depicts the characteristic behavior of an action potential, illustrating the concept of the 'All-or-None' response. When the stimulus strength does not reach a threshold, it cannot elicit an action potential. On the other hand, a stimulus of any strength that reaches the threshold generates an action potential.

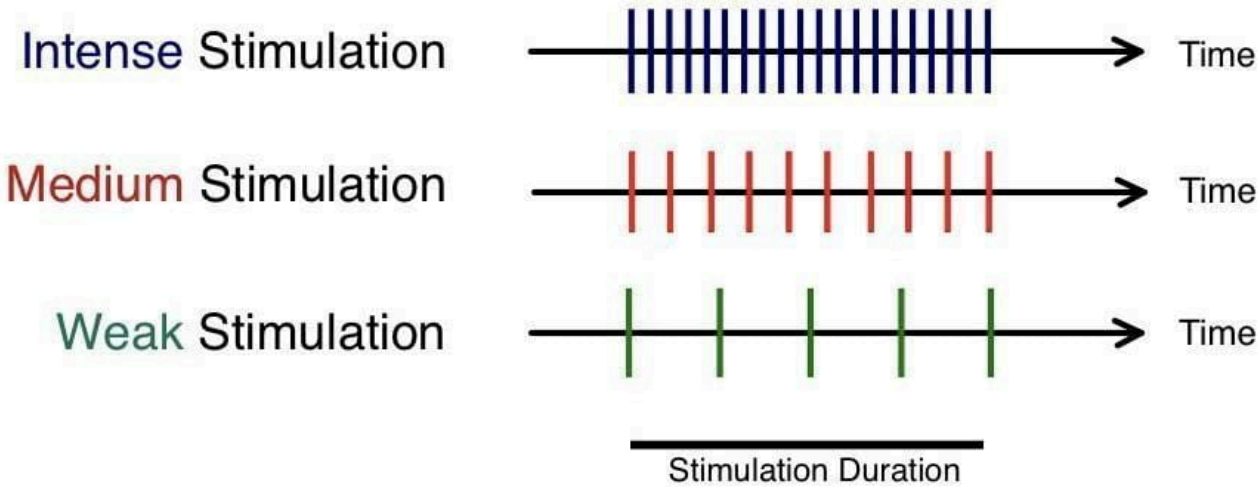


Figure 15 | Frequency-Response Relationship of Action Potentials to Stimulus Strength | The graph illustrates the relationship between the frequency of action potentials and the strength of the applied stimulus, showcasing the neuron's response across different intensities. A weak stimulation generates fewer action potentials compared to an intense one.

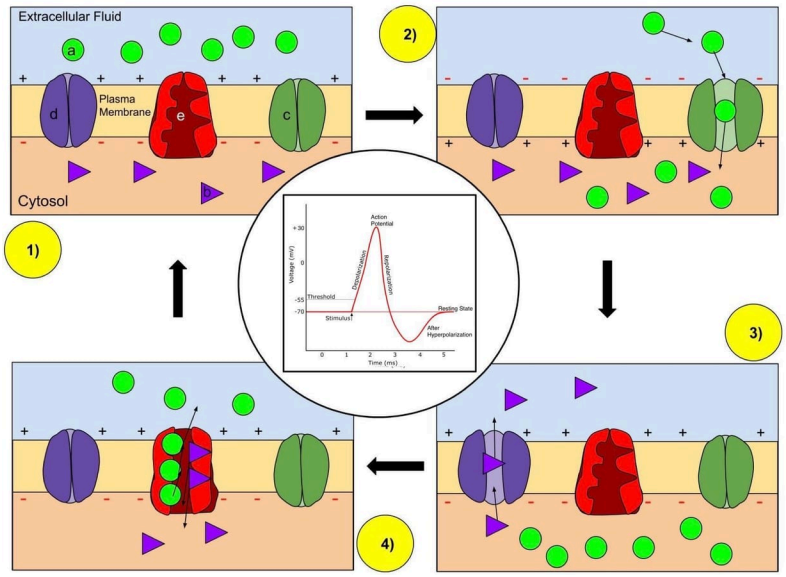


Figure 16 | Ion Movement During an Action Potential | [19] In the stages of an action potential, the permeability of the membrane of the neuron changes. At the resting state (1), sodium and potassium ions have limited ability to pass through the membrane, and the neuron has a net negative charge inside. Once the action potential is triggered, the depolarization (2) of the neuron activates sodium channels, allowing sodium ions to pass through the cell membrane into the cell, resulting in a net positive charge in the neuron relative to the extracellular fluid. After the action potential peak is reached, the neuron begins repolarization (3), where the sodium channels close and potassium channels open, allowing potassium ions to cross the membrane into the extracellular fluid, returning the membrane potential to a negative value. Finally, there is a refractory period (4), during which the voltage-dependent ion channels are inactivated while the \(Na+) and (K+) ions return to their resting state distributions across the membrane (1), and the neuron is ready to repeat the process for the next action potential. *Key:* a) Sodium ion (Na+). b) Potassium ion (K+). c) Sodium channel. d) Potassium channel. e) Sodium-potassium pump.

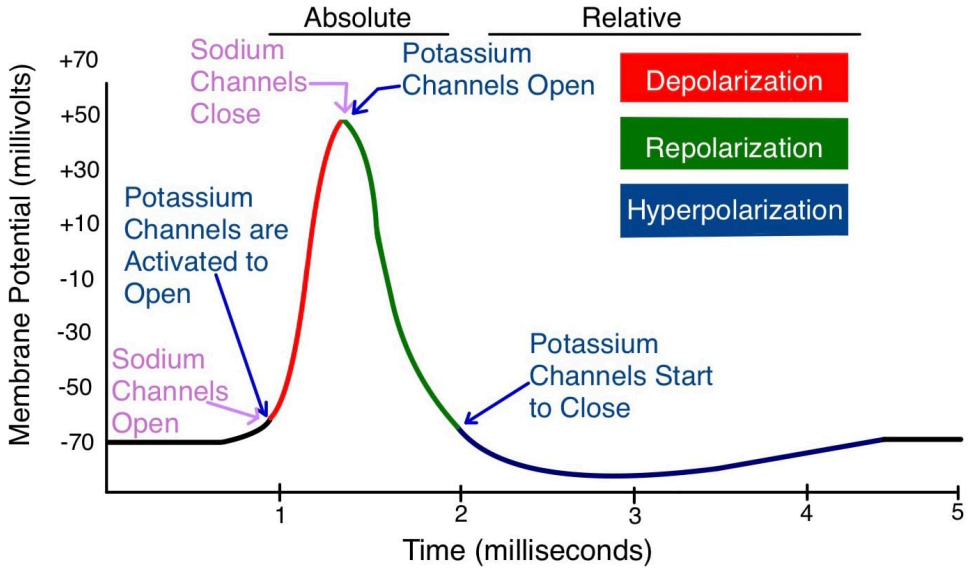


Figure 17 | Action Potential and Refractory Period | During the refractory period, the neuron is temporarily unresponsive to further stimuli. It consists of two phases: the absolute refractory period, where no stimulus can induce another action potential, and the relative refractory period, during which a stronger-than-usual stimulus is required.

An action potential in a neuron unfolds within approximately two milliseconds. While an action potential is actively transpiring, initiating another action potential is precluded—an occurrence termed the **refractory period** (Figure 16). The refractory period comprises two distinct phases: **absolute** and **relative refractory periods** (Figure 17). Within the absolute phase, the initiation of another action potential remains impossible. This constraint arises due to the inactivation gate of the voltage-gated sodium ion channel. A fresh action potential can be initiated only once the voltage-gated sodium ion channel has reverted to its resting configuration, characterized by a membrane potential below -55 mV. However, such initiation necessitates a more potent stimulus than the one that initially triggered the ongoing action potential. This response is attributed to the outward flow of potassium ions. The efflux of potassium ions establishes conditions wherein the influx of sodium ions would fail to bring about depolarization,

merely serving to forestall hyperpolarization of the cell.

Depolarization Phase and Sodium Permeability (pNa): At the beginning of an action potential, the permeability of the cell membrane rapidly increases to sodium ions due to the activation of voltage-gated sodium channels. These channels open in response to a depolarization of the membrane beyond a specific threshold voltage. As sodium channels open, sodium ions rush into the cell, rapidly increasing the positive charge. This influx of positively charged sodium ions causes a significant depolarization of the membrane potential, transitioning it from the resting potential (around -70 mV) toward a more positive value (Figure 18).

Repolarization Phase and Potassium Permeability (pK): Following the depolarization phase, the permeability to sodium ions decreases significantly as sodium channels are inactivated. Concurrently, the permeability to potassium ions increases. Voltage-gated potassium channels, initially closed or partially closed, start opening more fully in response to depolarization, which allows potassium ions to move out of the cell. As potassium ions exit the cell, the membrane potential gradually returns to its resting state, a process known as repolarization (Figure 18).

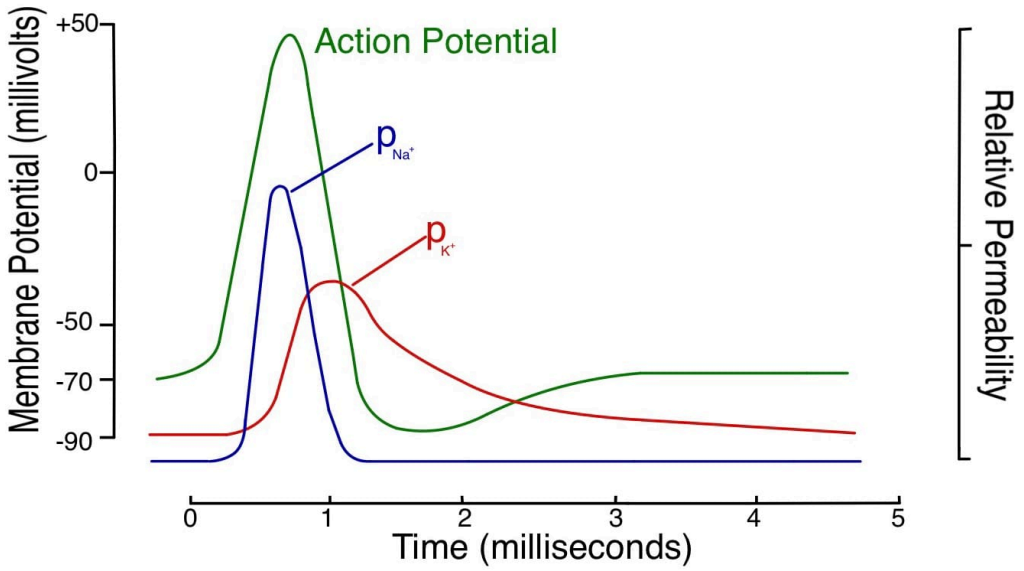


Figure 18 | Relative Changes in Sodium Ion Permeability (pNa) and Potassium Ion Permeability (pK) During an Action Potential | [20] This figure elucidates alterations in sodium and potassium ion permeability across the cell membrane during the progression of an action potential. At rest, the sodium and potassium ion permeabilities (pNa and pK, respectively) are relatively low, maintaining the resting membrane potential. Ion channels, including voltage-gated sodium and potassium channels, are closed. In response to a stimulus, voltage-gated sodium channels open, causing a significant increase in pNa. This influx of sodium ions results in the depolarization phase of the action potential. As the membrane potential reaches the threshold, more voltage-gated sodium channels open, further elevating pNa and initiating the rapid spike in membrane potential. The increase in pNa continues during the rising phase, contributing to the swift rise in membrane potential as sodium ions flow into the cell. At the peak of the action potential, voltage-gated sodium channels begin to be inactivated, leading to a decrease in pNa. Simultaneously, voltage-gated potassium channels open, causing an increase in pK. The efflux of potassium ions results in the repolarization of the membrane potential. The efflux of potassium ions briefly overshoots the resting membrane potential, contributing to hyperpolarization. During this phase, pK remains elevated. Both pNa and pK gradually return to their resting state levels as ion channels close, restoring the cell to its initial membrane potential.

The changes in permeability are instrumental in shaping the action potential waveform and its duration. The rapid increase and subsequent decrease in sodium permeability underlie the rapid depolarization and the falling phase of the action potential. The delayed but sustained increase in potassium permeability is pivotal in the repolarization phase and the return of the membrane potential to its resting value.[21]

Systemic electrolyte shifts significantly alter neuronal excitability during surgery by shifting resting membrane potentials and threshold potentials. **Hyperkalemia** increases resting membrane potential (making it less negative) and brings it closer to threshold; while this initially increases excitability, sustained depolarization causes steady-state inactivation of voltage-gated sodium ion channels. Conversely, **hypokalemia** hyperpolarizes the membrane (making the resting membrane potential more negative) and moves it further from threshold.

YouTube Video

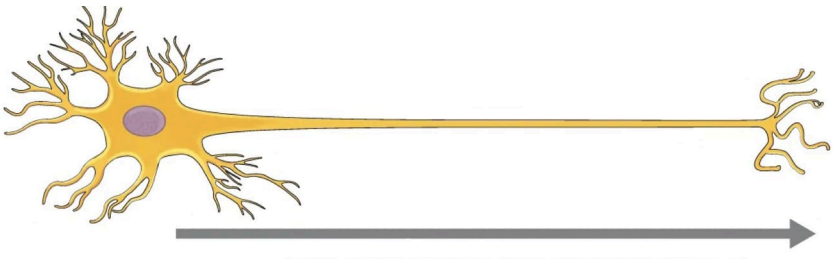
This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Propagation of an Action Potential

Typically, the origination of an action potential occurs within a specific section of the axon hillock, termed the **trigger zone** or **initial segment**. This locale harbors an elevated concentration of voltage-gated sodium ion channels, facilitating the swift execution of depolarization. As the action potential journeys along the length of the axon, it propagates due to the sequential activation of additional voltage-gated sodium ion channels. This propagation stems from the influx of sodium ions through these channels, traversing the intracellular milieu of the cell membrane.

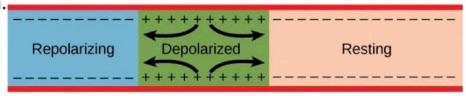
As sodium ions traverse a short stretch of the cell membrane, their positive charge induces a slight augmentation in membrane depolarization. This incremental depolarization engenders the initiation of new voltage-gated sodium ion channels as the impulse spreads. Consequently, a fresh influx of ions ensues, perpetuating the dissemination of depolarization (Figure 18). The peak of depolarization results in the inactivation of voltage-gated sodium ion channels, which imposes a refractory period during which these channels remain unresponsive. Consequently, any retrograde spread of depolarization towards previously active channels remains ineffectual. Therefore, the action potential propagation mandates one-way progression toward the axon terminals. This directed propagation contributes to the effective transmission of signals along the length of the neuron.



a) In response to a stimulus, the membrane is depolarized.



b) The depolarization spreads down the axon. Meanwhile, the first part of the membrane repolarizes.



c) The spread of sodium ions depolarizes the adjacent area. Since the repolarizing portion of the membrane undergoes a refractory period, it does not depolarize immediately, whereas the membrane towards the axon responds and thus depolarizes.

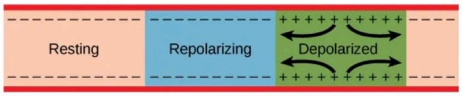


Figure 19 | Propagation Along an Unmyelinated Axon | [22] Depolarization in response to a stimulus reaches the axon hillock, where an action potential is generated, which travels along the axon in a wave-like fashion. As sodium channels open sequentially, a self-propagating depolarization occurs, ensuring the transmission of the signal toward the axon terminals. After sodium ion (Na+) influx, potassium channels open, allowing efflux of potassium ions (K+), repolarizing the membrane, and restoring the negative charge inside the neuron. Since the membrane enters a refractory period, during which it is temporarily resistant to generating another action potential, it only moves in one direction, which is towards the axon.

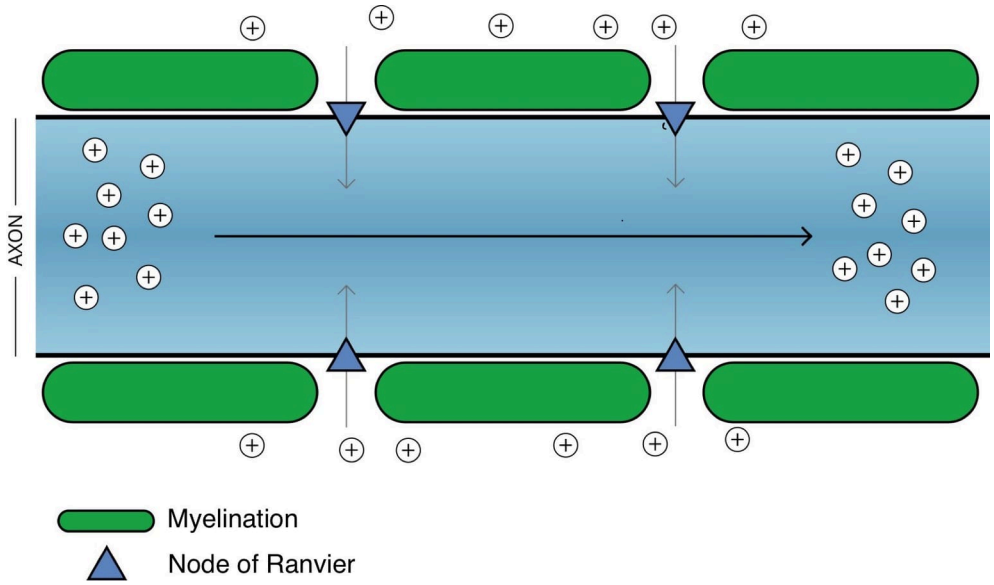


Figure 20 | Propagation (Conduction) of an Action Potential in a Myelinated Axon. | [23] This figure depicts the flow of sodium (Na+) and potassium (K+) ions during action potential conduction in a myelinated axon. At the nodes of Ranvier, voltage-gated sodium channels open, allowing Na⋄ influx, which depolarizes the membrane. The action potential then jumps to the next node in a process known as saltatory conduction. Following depolarization, voltage-gated potassium channels open, leading to K⋄ efflux and repolarization of the membrane. The myelin sheath insulates the axon, speeding up conduction by restricting ion exchange to the nodes.

The concept of propagation, as delineated earlier, holds true for unmyelinated axons (Figure 19). However, the action potential propagation in a myelinated axon takes on a distinct character (Figure 20). The myelinated stretch lacks the presence of voltage-gated sodium ion channels. However, the distribution of sodium ions from their higher to lower concentrations initiates depolarization in the adjacent area. The absence of a continuous channel arrangement along the axon segment ensures that the depolarization propagates optimally.[24]

The spacing between nodes of Ranvier must be precise for saltatory conduction to work effectively. If nodes are too far apart, the positive charge loses too much strength before reaching the next node. The depolarization decays below threshold, failing to open the voltage-gated sodium ion channels at the next node of Ranvier, stopping the signal completely (conduction block). On the other hand, if the distance between the nodes is too short, the signal has to regenerate at too many individual nodes along the axon. Opening channels at every node takes time, which slows down propagation speed and wastes cellular energy.

This page titled 2.3.6: Action Potential is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types

Nerve fibers can be categorized into three types according to their diameter. **Type A fibers** possess a substantial diameter, are myelinated, and exhibit the swiftest conduction velocity among all nerves within the body. Both afferent (sensory) and efferent (motor) nerve fibers fall within type A, which are further classified into their subtypes. On the other hand, **type B fibers**, though myelinated, possess a smaller diameter and predominantly function as preganglionic neurons within the ANS. **Type C fibers**, unmyelinated and featuring a modest diameter, operate with a comparably slower conduction velocity. These fibers function as postganglionic neurons within the ANS (Table 1). [25]

Table 1 | Peripheral Nerve Fiber Types and Their Functions |

Fiber Type	Fiber Size (μm)	Location/ Function
Aα	12-20	Neurons associated with proprioception
Aβ	5-12	Neurons associated with touch and pressure
Aγ	3-6	Part of the muscle spindle detecting stretch
Aδ	2-5	Neurons dealing with pain and temperature
B	<3	Preganglionic autonomic neurons
C	0.2-1.5 (unmyelinated)	Postganglionic autonomic neurons and neurons associated with pain and temperature

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission

The electrical changes within a neuron are similar to a light switch being turned on. A stimulus starts depolarization, but the action potential runs on its own once a threshold is reached. Temporary changes to the cell membrane voltage can result from neurons receiving information from the environment or from the action of one neuron on another. These types of potentials influence a neuron and determine whether an action potential will occur or not. Many of these transient signals originate at the **synapses,** which are connections between cells. There are two main types of synapses: **chemical** and **electrical**.

Electrical Synapse

Cells are directly linked through unique connections called gap junctions in electrical synapses. These connections let ions move from one cell to the next. If one cell gets excited in an electrical synapse, the connected cell also gets excited because ions pass between them (Figure 21). These synapses, however, are not very common in the nervous system, but they are more often found in the cardiac and smooth muscles.

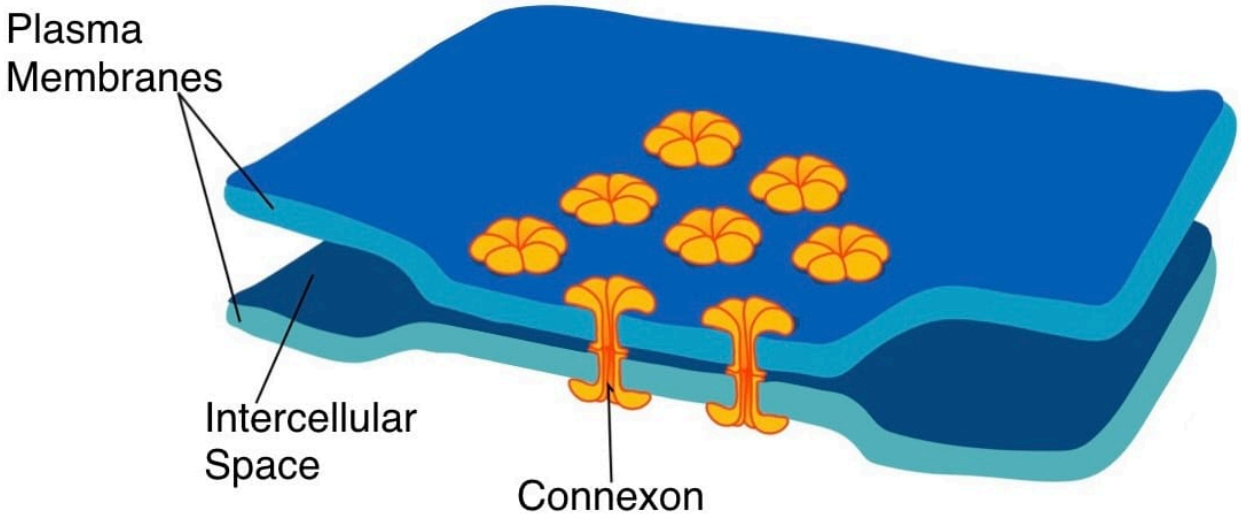


Figure 21 | Schematic representation of an electrical synapse | [26] Electrical synapses facilitate direct cell-to-cell communication through connexons. In this illustration, two adjacent neurons are depicted with their cell membranes in close proximity. The connexon channels form gap junctions, allowing the direct exchange of ions and small molecules between the cytoplasm of the connected cells. This rapid and bidirectional communication enables synchronized electrical activity and coordinated functioning of interconnected neural networks.

Chemical Synapse

In a chemical synapse, as the name suggests, a chemical substance such as a neurotransmitter is discharged by one cell, exerting its influence on another cell.

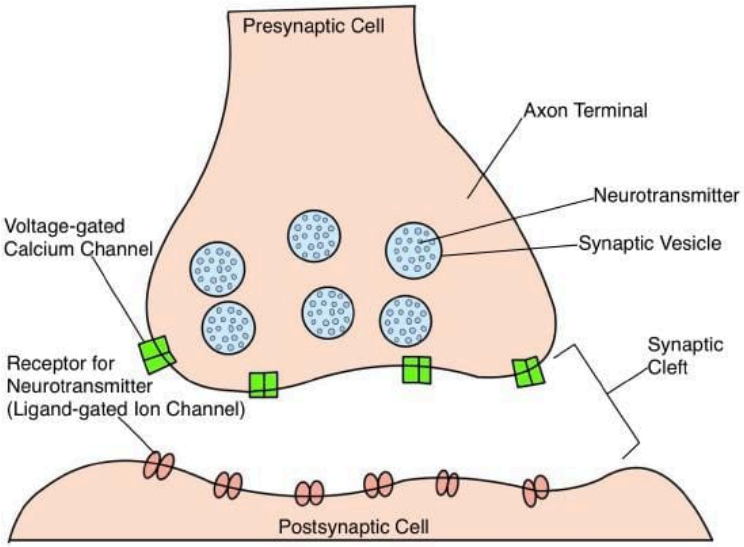


Figure 22 | A Chemical Synapse | This figure illustrates the key components and molecular events underlying synaptic transmission at a chemical synapse. A chemical synapse is the junction between two neurons, comprising a presynaptic terminal, synaptic cleft, and postsynaptic membrane. Neurotransmitter molecules (represented as orange spheres) are stored in vesicles within the presynaptic terminal. Upon depolarization of the presynaptic neuron, neurotransmitters are released into the synaptic cleft and bind to receptors on the postsynaptic membrane. This binding initiates a series of events that lead to the generation of a postsynaptic potential, facilitating the transmission of signals between neurons.

Upon the arrival of an action potential at the axon terminals, voltage-gated calcium ion channels embedded in the membrane of the synaptic end bulb undergo activation, permitting the influx of calcium ions into the cell. This influx results in an elevation of the intracellular calcium ion concentration within the end bulb. Subsequently, the calcium ions engage with proteins on the external surface of neurotransmitter vesicles. The presence of calcium ions facilitates the fusion of these vesicles with the presynaptic membrane, releasing neurotransmitters by exocytosis. These neurotransmitters traverse the minuscule gap separating the cells, called the **synaptic cleft**. Upon reaching the synaptic cleft, the neurotransmitter disperses over a short distance toward the postsynaptic membrane, which interfaces with neurotransmitter receptors. These receptors are tailored to match the specific neurotransmitter and form a complementary fit, akin to a key within its lock. A given neurotransmitter exclusively binds to its corresponding receptor. This selective binding event is a finely tuned chemical occurrence.

An illustration of a chemical synapse can be seen at the neuromuscular junction, where the presynaptic element comprises the axon terminals of the motor neuron (Figure 22). Acetylcholine serves as the neurotransmitter in this context. The receptor protein responsible is the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor, while the postsynaptic element pertains to the sarcolemma of a muscle cell.[27]

This page titled 2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential

Postsynaptic potentials (PSPs) are graded fluctuations in the dendritic regions of neurons, which serve as recipients of synaptic inputs from neighboring cells. These inputs can exert either depolarizing or hyperpolarizing influences on the neuron.

When a postsynaptic potential leads to depolarization, it gains the nomenclature of an **excitatory postsynaptic potential** (EPSP). This terminology is apt as it signifies its role in prodding the membrane potential of a neuron closer to the pivotal threshold value. EPSPs emerge from the opening of ion channels that selectively permit the passage of sodium ions. On the contrary, hyperpolarization in a postsynaptic potential instigates an **inhibitory postsynaptic potential** (IPSP). This distinction is rooted in its propensity to drive the membrane potential further away from the threshold. IPSPs trace their genesis to the strategic opening of chloride ion channels, thus facilitating the influx of chloride ions into the cellular milieu. Alternatively, they can be evoked through the augmentation of potassium ion permeability, which orchestrates the outward diffusion of potassium ions from the cellular interior. In this sophisticated discourse, the interplay of EPSPs and IPSPs takes center stage, intricately modulating the exquisite balance required for neuronal signaling precision.[28]

Summation

The amalgamation of these minute electrical changes at the cell membrane of a neuron can propel a neuron toward its threshold level, a phenomenon termed **summation** (Figure 23). Consider a scenario where the cumulative voltage shift across the membrane amounts to a +15 mV. This change signifies a transition from a resting potential of -70 mV to a threshold-proximate level of -55 mV. The graded potentials merge, driving the membrane to the critical threshold. Notably, these summative effects manifest in an initial segment.

Summation can occur in two distinct forms: **spatial** and **temporal**. Spatial summation entails the confluence of graded potentials originating from diverse loci on the neuron. On the other hand, temporal summation revolves around the sequential occurrence of multiple action potentials within a single neuron, thereby a notable shift in membrane potential (Figure 23). Furthermore, the realms of spatial and temporal summation can intertwine synergistically. Consider a scenario where both excitatory and inhibitory inputs are concurrently triggered. In such instances, the concurrent emergence of EPSPs and IPSPs tends to offset each other to a certain degree (Figure 24).

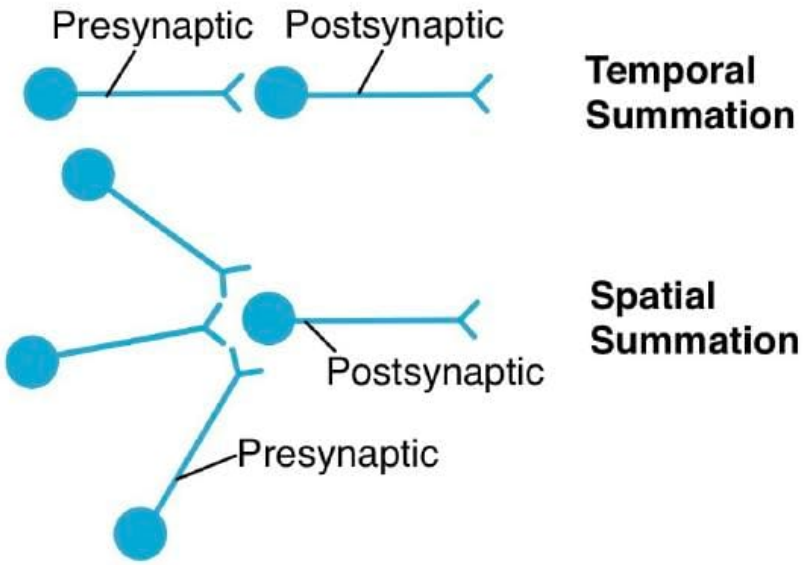


Figure 23 | Temporal and Spatial Summation | Spatial summation involves the simultaneous activation of numerous synapses, while temporal summation results from the sequential activation of a single synapse over time.

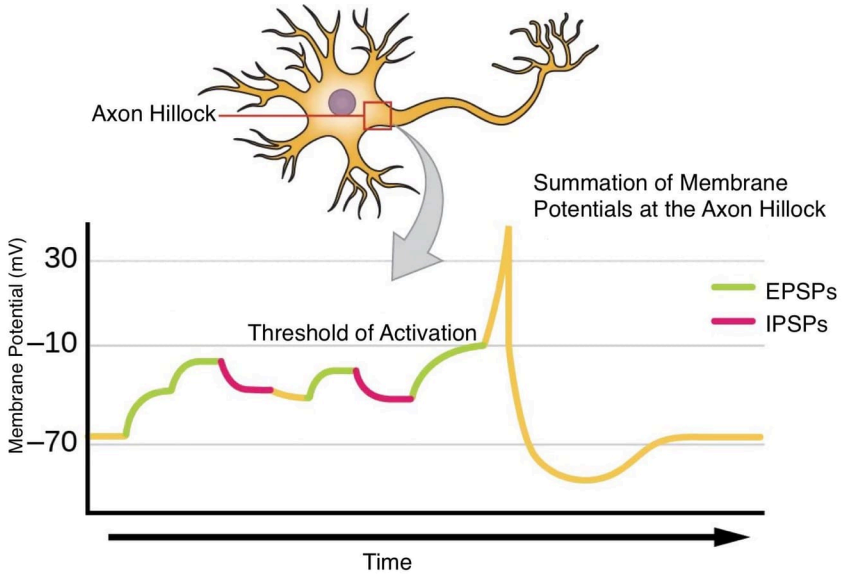


Figure 24 | Postsynaptic Summation | [29] The postsynaptic neuron integrates incoming signals from multiple presynaptic neurons, either through spatial or temporal summation. The combined effects determine whether the postsynaptic neuron will reach the threshold for action potential generation, highlighting the dynamic nature of synaptic integration in neural networks.

The synaptic dynamics and their role in shaping neuronal signaling involves a neurotransmitter that instigates the transient opening of membrane channels, spanning approximately one msec. Remarkably, the resultant postsynaptic potential, which manifests as a consequence of this event, endures for around 15 msec. This phenomenon sets the stage for summation. When these same membrane channels are consecutively reactivated, EPSPs accumulate, amplifying their impact. This rapid sequence of summative activations can culminate in reaching the critical threshold necessary to initiate an action potential in the postsynaptic cell. However, converting an action potential from the presynaptic neuron into an action potential within the postsynaptic neuron at the chemical synapse level is not instantaneous, unlike in an electric synapse. It unfolds over a finite interval termed the **synaptic delay**, which spans roughly 0.5 to 1 msec. This time gap can elongate depending on the complexity of the neuronal pathway, contingent upon the number of synapses involved.

Synaptic effectiveness is not static; it can be subject to modulation. The phenomenon of **presynaptic inhibition** serves as an example of attenuation. Here, the neurotransmitter released by the presynaptic neuron, specifically at axoaxonic synapses, reduces the quantity of neurotransmitter discharged by the postsynaptic axon terminal in response to an arriving action potential.[30] Conversely, **presynaptic facilitation** presents an enhancement mechanism. In this scenario, an axoaxonic synapse triggers the release of a greater quantity of neurotransmitters upon an action potential that arrives at the postsynaptic axon terminal. Consequently, a larger EPSP ensues, accentuating the synaptic response (Figure 25). Typically, when an action potential occurs, a fixed number of synaptic vesicles, known as a "quantum," are released, releasing a consistent amount of neurotransmitters. Neuromodulators or diffusible gasses released by neighboring neurons can increase the activity of calcium ion channels in the presynaptic neuron. The increase in presynaptic calcium concentration leads to a phenomenon where a larger quantum of synaptic vesicles is released upon the arrival of an action potential at the axon terminus. In other words, more neurotransmitter-containing vesicles are released in response to each action potential due to the heightened presynaptic calcium levels.[31] **Disfacilitation** refers to a decrease in excitatory synaptic input to a neuron, which results in membrane hyperpolarization and a subsequent reduction in firing activity. In contrast, **disinhibition** involves a temporary reduction of synaptic inhibition acting on a target neuron, effectively increasing its excitability or firing rate. At the circuit level, disinhibition typically occurs when a distinct population of upstream interneurons inhibits a second group of inhibitory interneurons, a mechanism often described as inhibiting the inhibitor, thereby freeing the downstream projection neuron from its usual tonic suppression.[32]

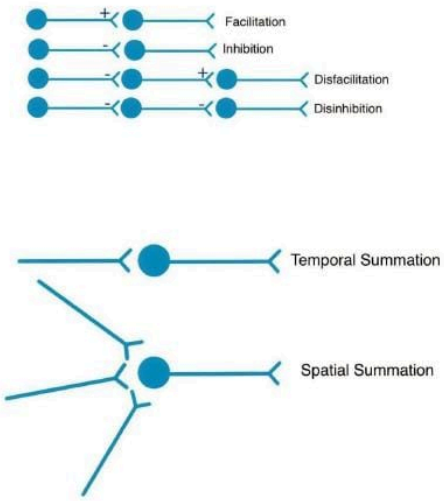


Figure 25 | Modulation of Neuronal Activity | This illustration depicts key synaptic processes: Facilitation, Inhibition, Disfacilitation, and Disinhibition. Facilitation represents an increase in synaptic excitation, while Inhibition involves a reduction in synaptic transmission, leading to hyperpolarization. Disfacilitation signifies a decrease in synaptic excitation, resulting in hyperpolarization. Conversely, disinhibition is characterized by a temporary decrease in synaptic inhibition, potentially enhancing excitatory synaptic transmission.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

2.3.10: Neurotransmitters

Neurotransmitters are chemical messengers orchestrating the transmission of signals from a neuron to a designated target cell across synaptic junctures. The transformative impact of these agents upon the postsynaptic entity rests entirely upon the unique receptor configuration therein. Without a receptor in the postsynaptic cell, the neurotransmitter remains without any consequential effect. The specific depolarizing or hyperpolarizing influence hinges upon the receptor type. For example, acetylcholine binding to the nicotinic receptor culminates in postsynaptic depolarization. It is due to the nature of a receptor as a cation channel, permitting an influx of positively charged sodium ions into the cell. However, acetylcholine binding to the muscarinic receptor may evoke either depolarization or hyperpolarization within the target cell.

Efficient clearance of neurotransmitters from the synaptic cleft is a dynamic facet. Various mechanisms facilitate this clearance. Neurotransmitters might diffuse away from the synaptic cleft, undergo inactivation via specialized enzymes within the presynaptic membrane, or be internalized into the axon terminal for subsequent storage and release upon the arrival of an action potential.

It is crucial to recognize that neurotransmitters engage with receptors from two primary classes on the cell surface: **ionotropic** and **metabotropic** (Figure 26). Ionotropic receptors constitute ligand-gated ion channels, such as the acetylcholine-sensitive nicotinic or glycine receptors. In contrast, metabotropic receptors entail intricate protein complexes culminating in metabolic modifications within the target cell.[33]

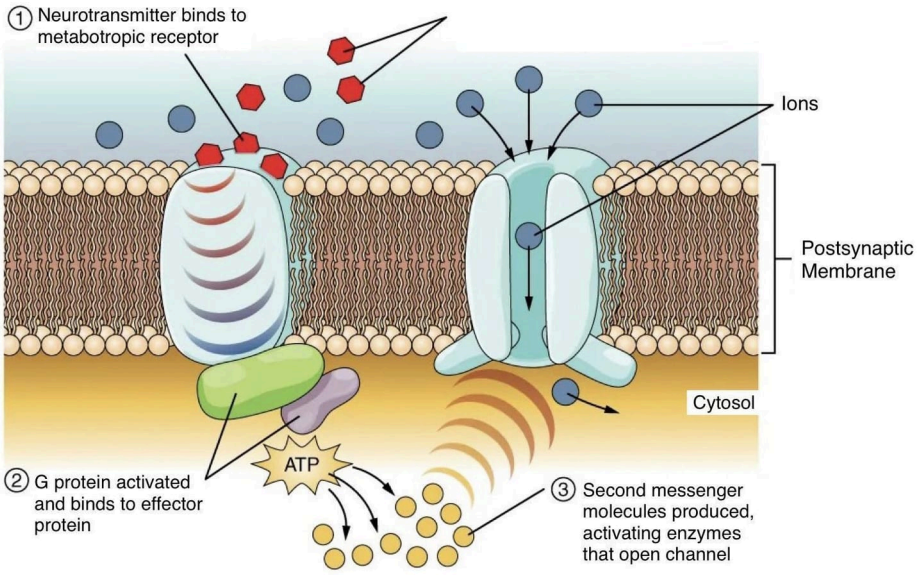


Figure 26 |Metabotropic and Ionotropic Receptor Types | [34] This figure depicts two major classes of neurotransmitter receptors. Metabotropic Receptors (Left): Receptors linked to intracellular signaling pathways via G proteins. Neurotransmitter binding triggers a cascade of events, leading to a slower and prolonged cellular response. Ionotropic Receptors (Right): Fast-acting receptors that, upon neurotransmitter binding, directly open ion channels, causing rapid changes in membrane potential.

Metabotropic receptors involve a receptor complex that includes the transmembrane receptor protein, a **G protein**. **G Protein-coupled receptors** (**GPCRs**) have seven membrane-spanning domains. They are coupled to a **guanosine triphosphate** (**GTP**)-**binding protein complex**. When a neurotransmitter (or another receptor-specific ligand) binds to a GPCR, it brings about a conformational change in the receptor, causing the activation of a G protein. In the inactive state, **guanosine diphosphate** (**GDP**) is bound to the G subunit (Figure 27). The activated G subunit exchanges GTP in place of GDP, which triggers the dissociation of the G subunit from the G dimer and the receptor. Both G-GTP and G subunit are then free to activate other membrane proteins.

Three classes of G subunits initiate most of the subsequent events within the cell. **Gs** stimulates adenylyl cyclase, **Gi** inhibits it, and **Gq** stimulates phospholipase (PLC). The Gq-mediated signal transduction is shown in Figure 27.[35]

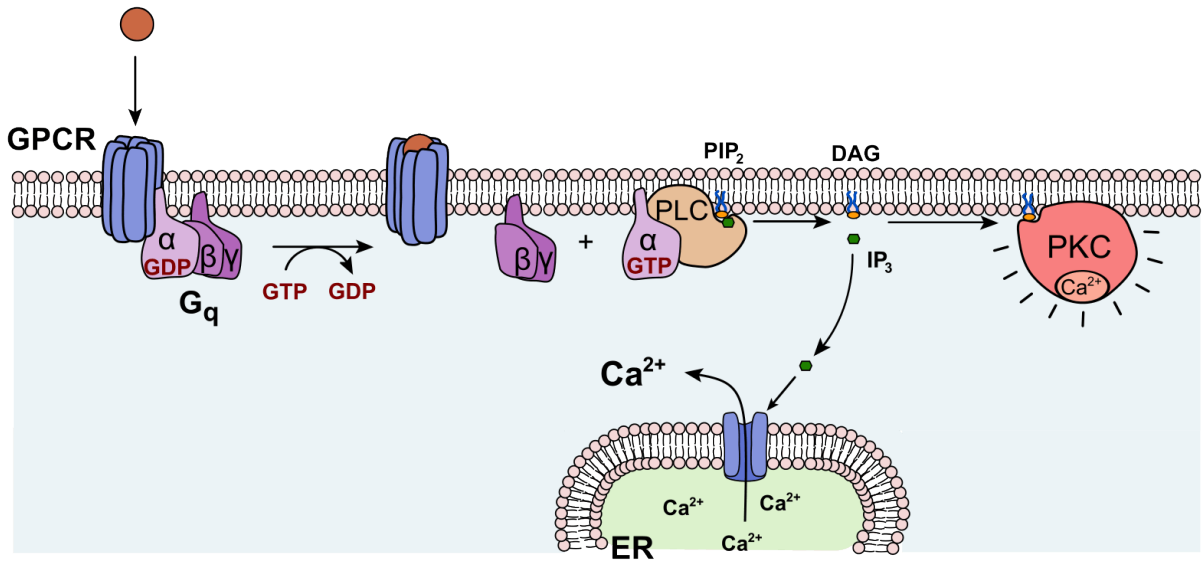


Figure 27 | Gq-mediated Signaling Cascade | [36] This schematic representation illustrates the Gq-mediated signaling pathway. Upon ligand binding to a G protein-coupled receptor (GPCR), the GPCR undergoes conformational changes leading to the activation of the Gq protein. Activated Gq then interacts with and activates phospholipase C (PLC), initiating the hydrolysis of phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate (PIP2) into inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate (IP3) and diacylglycerol (DAG). IP3 triggers the release of calcium ions (Ca_2^+) from intracellular stores, while DAG activates protein kinase C (PKC). The increased intracellular Ca_2^+ and activated PKC subsequently modulate downstream effectors, influencing many cellular processes.

Neurotransmitters often need help from second messengers to send signals from receptors to different parts of the cell. These messengers come in various types, such as **cyclic adenosine monophosphate** (**cAMP**). An enzyme called **adenylate cyclase** changes ATP to cAMP when activated by the G protein-mediated mechanism. Second messengers lead to changes inside the cell, usually by activating other enzymes. In neurons, they often tweak ion channels, causing them to open or close. These enzymes can also trigger changes like activating genes in the nucleus, which leads to more protein production. Such changes often form the basis for stronger connections between cells at synapses, which can be linked to learning and memory.

Types of Neurotransmitters

Acetylcholine

Acetylcholine is the oldest known neurotransmitter in the body. It is associated with many physiological roles including memory, learning, and movement. Acetylcholine is found in both CNS and PNS. It is the most abundant neurotransmitter in the PNS. Acetylcholine is synthesized in the cytoplasm of the axon terminal from two substrates, acetyl CoA and **choline**, in a reaction that is catalyzed by **choline acetyltransferase**. Once synthesized, it is stored in synaptic vesicles until an action potential causes its release by exocytosis. Soon after its release, acetylcholine is degraded by **acetylcholinesterase** (**AChE**), an enzyme in pre- and postsynaptic membranes. The degradation products are acetate, which enters the blood, and choline, which is taken up by the presynaptic neuron and recycled.

Acetylcholine binds to receptors called **cholinergic receptors**. There are two types of cholinergic receptors: the nicotinic and muscarinic receptors. Nicotine binds to the nicotinic receptor and activates it, similar to acetylcholine. Muscarine, a product of a specific type of mushroom, binds to the muscarinic receptor. There are two subtypes of nicotinic receptors: NM (N1) and NN (N2). NM is present in the neuromuscular junction, whereas NN is found in the autonomic ganglia. Muscarinic receptors are also subdivided into five types, M1-M5. M1, M4, and M5 are expressed in the CNS, M2 in the heart, and M3 in the smooth muscle and glands. Nicotinic receptors are ionotropic, whereas muscarinic receptors are metabotropic.[37]

Biogenic Amines

Another group of neurotransmitters falls into the category of **biogenic amines**. These neurotransmitters are produced through the modification of certain amino acids. Although they contain amino groups, they no longer have carboxyl groups, so they are

no longer classified as amino acids. Some biogenic amines are derived from the amino acid **tyrosine**, including **dopamine**, **norepinephrine**, and **epinephrine**.

Dopamine has its own system called the **dopaminergic system**, with specific receptors **D1** to **D5**. Soon after its release, dopamine is taken back into the cell by transporting proteins in its membrane to limit its action. Cocaine interferes with the reuptake process, causing dopamine to remain in the synapse longer.

Norepinephrine and epinephrine are part of the adrenergic neurotransmitter system. Both these neurotransmitters attach to the same alpha- and beta-adrenergic receptors. These receptors have different subtypes and work through metabotropic mechanisms. Norepinephrine and epinephrine are also taken back into the cell after use. The name epinephrine (also known as adrenaline) comes from "epi-" meaning "on" and "nephrine," referring to "kidney," while norepinephrine is sometimes called noradrenaline. These two chemicals are produced by the adrenal gland (situated above each kidney) and released into the bloodstream as hormones.

Tyrosine is made within the body using yet another amino acid, **phenylalanine**. It goes through various steps to become dopamine, norepinephrine, and epinephrine. For instance, tyrosine is turned into **dihydroxyphenylalanine** (**DOPA**), an intermediate metabolite, and then into dopamine. Dopamine is converted into norepinephrine, which is subsequently changed into epinephrine (Figure 39).



Figure 28 | Biosynthesis of Catecholamines | [38] Tyrosine, an amino acid, undergoes hydroxylation by the enzyme tyrosine hydroxylase to form dihydroxyphenylalanine (DOPA), which is then decarboxylated), resulting in the formation of dopamine. Dopamine is further modified by adding a hydroxyl group catalyzed by dopamine beta-hydroxylase, leading to the synthesis of norepinephrine. It undergoes methylation by phenylethanolamine N-methyltransferase (PNMT) to produce epinephrine.

Serotonin, also called **5-hydroxytryptamine**, is derived from the amino acid **tryptophan**. It is a crucial part of the serotonergic system, which operates through specific receptors named 5-HT1 to 5-HT7. When serotonin is no longer required, it is taken back into the cell for later use. **Monoamine oxidase** (**MAO**) and **catechol-O-methyltransferase** are vital enzymes that help break down dopamine, norepinephrine, epinephrine, and serotonin when their actions ought to be seized.[39] Low levels of serotonin production or a lack of receptors in the brain can lead to conditions such as depression. Drugs known as **Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors** (**SSRIs**) help prevent serotonin reuptake and are often used to treat depression.[40]

Amino Acid Neurotransmitters

Another significant category of neurotransmitters is composed of amino acids. This group encompasses **glutamate**, **gamma-aminobutyric acid** (**GABA**), a derivative of glutamate, and **glycine**. These amino acid neurotransmitters display a chemical structure characterized by amino and carboxyl groups. Each amino acid neurotransmitter operates within its distinct system, the **glutamatergic**, **GABAergic**, and **glycinergic** systems. These neurotransmitters are effectively cleared from the synaptic cleft through the reuptake process. A specialized mechanism in the presynaptic cell membrane or occasionally in adjacent glial cells expedites the removal of these amino acids from the synaptic cleft. Such clearance allows for recycling, repackaging into vesicles, and eventually re-releasing.

Glutamate serves as an excitatory neurotransmitter. It undergoes conversion from **glutamine** within the presynaptic axon terminal. Its subsequent fate involves reuptake, repackaging within the presynaptic cell, and converting to glutamine, a process facilitated by astrocytes. Glutamate binds primarily to ionotropic receptors but also interacts with metabotropic receptors within the CNS. Among the ionotropic receptors are **AMPA**, **NMDA**, and **kainate receptors**. Stimulation of AMPA and kainate receptors triggers increased sodium influx and potassium efflux, resulting in EPSPs. NMDA receptor activation leads to substantial calcium and sodium influx. Activation of metabotropic glutamate receptors prompts the release of IP3 and DAG or increases cAMP levels via G-protein-mediated mechanisms. Notably, involvement of glutamate in NMDA receptor-mediated pain conduction has sparked interest in developing NMDA receptor antagonists for managing chronic pain, utilizing intraspinal or extradural administration.

GABA takes on a primary role as an inhibitory neurotransmitter. Its inhibitory effect is achieved by initiating the opening of

either chloride or potassium ion channels, which results in cellular hyperpolarization. Among GABA receptors, **GABAA** and **GABAC** receptors belong to the category of ligand-gated ion channels and predominantly facilitate the opening of chloride channels. Conversely, the **GABAB** receptor functions as a metabotropic receptor employing G-protein mechanisms. Substances like benzodiazepines (with anti-anxiety, muscle relaxants, anticonvulsants, and sedative properties) and barbiturates (acting as anticonvulsants) exert their influence via GABAA receptors.

Glycine yields both excitatory and inhibitory effects within the CNS. Its binding to NMDA receptors enhances sensitivity to glutamate, thereby facilitating pain transmission. Furthermore, glycine binding can lead to the opening of chloride channels. Interestingly, the same neuron may secrete both glycine and GABA, which are stored within the same vesicles.[41]

Neuropeptide Neurotransmitters

A neuropeptide constitutes a neurotransmitter molecule formed by sequences of amino acids interconnected through peptide bonds. Neuropeptides are frequently discharged at synapses in conjunction with other neurotransmitters, often serving as hormones in diverse bodily systems, such as **vasoactive intestinal peptide** (**VIP**) or **substance P**.

Among the prominent neuropeptides are endogenous **opioid peptides**, pivotal in regulating pain sensitivity. This classification encompasses **enkephalins**, **endorphins**, and **dynorphins**. Neurons containing these endogenous opioid peptides are distributed across various bodily tissues, particularly in regions implicated in the nociceptive response, including the thalamus, periaqueductal gray, limbic system, cerebral cortex, and spinal cord.

Three categories of opioid receptors, namely **mu**, **kappa**, and **delta**, come with multiple subtypes. These receptors operate through G-protein-mediated metabotropic mechanisms, employing strategies such as adenylyl cyclase inhibition, heightened potassium ion conductivity, and calcium ion channel closure. Endogenous opioid peptides do not exclusively bind to one distinct receptor type but exhibit a degree of affinity for other opioid receptors. Generally, enkephalins exhibit pronounced binding to delta receptors, dynorphins favor kappa receptors, and beta-endorphins display affinity for both mu and delta receptors.[42]

Gaseous Neurotransmitters

Nitric oxide is a gas that can travel freely and move in any direction from where it is produced. Thus, nitric oxide exhibits **retrograde signaling**, where a postsynaptic neuron produces this neurotransmitter and communicates with a presynaptic neuron. Nitric oxide operates as a short-acting inhibitory neurotransmitter, finding its place in the gastrointestinal tract, blood vessels, and the CNS. It is the smallest of all the neurotransmitters. Nitric oxide, unlike other neurotransmitters, is not stored in vesicles. It does not directly engage with cell membrane receptors either. Instead, it connects with a heme moiety of a guanylyl cyclase molecule, which acts as its unique receptor.

Carbon monoxide is another gaseous neurotransmitter sharing similar traits as nitric oxide. Interestingly, some enteric neurons combine nitric oxide and carbon monoxide as co-neurotransmitters. These gases might work together to send important messages to enteric neurons.[43]

Table 2 | Characteristics of Neurotransmitter Systems

Neurotransmitters	Acetylcholine	Glutamate, Glycine, GABA	Serotonin, Dopamine, Norepinephrine, Epinephrine	Opioid Peptides, VIP, Substance P, Nitric Oxide
Receptors	Nicotinic and muscarinic receptors	Glu receptors, gly receptors, GABA receptors	5-HT receptors, D1 and D2 receptors, α adrenergic, and β adrenergic receptors	Receptors are too many to list
Termination of Action	Degradation by acetylcholinesterase	Reuptake by neurons or glia	Reuptake by neurons	Degradation by peptidases

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Effects of Anesthetics on Neurotransmitters in the Induction of Sedation

Anesthesia employs various mechanisms to alter neuronal activity and neurotransmission, resulting in sedation, loss of consciousness, and reduced responsiveness to sensory stimuli. These include anesthetic agents increasing the permeability of cell membranes to potassium ions, leading to hyperpolarization. This hyperpolarization minimizes the excitability of neurons, contributing to the sedative and anesthetic effects. Some anesthetics can block the action of acetylcholine, thus disrupting neurotransmission processes and bringing about a loss of consciousness. Some other anesthetic agents also decrease the uptake of GABA, a neurotransmitter that promotes inhibitory signals in the brain. By slowing GABA uptake, anesthetics prolong the inhibitory effect of GABA on neurons, leading to sedation and reduced neuronal activity. Anesthetics could act as agonists on GABAA receptors, enhancing the inhibitory effects of GABA neurotransmission, which further contributes to sedation and reduced neuronal activity. Anesthetics can also decrease the activity of NMDA and AMPA receptors, which transmit excitatory signals. This reduction in excitatory signaling contributes to the overall sedative and anesthetic effects.[44]

This page titled 2.3.10: Neurotransmitters is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

2.4: References

1. Brain Basics: The Life and Death of a Neuron https://www.ninds.nih.gov/health-information/public-education/brain-basics/brain-basics-life-and-death-neuron
2. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 12.8 Parts of a Neuron. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax.[https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/5eb1ce492d604faad88e5b8b096fc7ac4a8fcb8f]
3. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 12.9 Neuron Classification by Shape. Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax.[https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/23b2dfb9d515e5e0b6c5275db6ac195dca3c801d]
4. DataBase Center for Life Science (DBCLS). (2021). Sensory Neuron. [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/6/64/202101_Sensory_neuron.svg] DataBase Center for Life Science (DBCLS). (2021). Motor Neuron. [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/1/15/202101_Motor_neuron.svg] DataBase Center for Life Science (DBCLS). (2021). Interneuron. [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/d/dc/202101_Interneuron.svg]
5. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 12.14 Testing the Water: Posterior View. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. Houston, Texas: OpenStax. Retrieved from https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240130.204924/resources/4793e13d6f8cd84e4a7e25a79e0cf8319dc6a962
6. Kadry H, Noorani B, Cucullo L (November 2020). "A blood-brain barrier overview on structure, function, impairment, and biomarkers of integrity". *Fluids Barriers CNS*. **17** (1): 69. doi:10.1186/s12987-020-00230-3
7. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 12.11 Glial Cells of the CNS. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/d5ddd72143c60060583919fa105d60fdb8625a31]
8. Fields RD. Myelin formation and remodeling. Cell. 2014 Jan 16;156(1-2):15-7. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2013.12.038.
9. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 12.12 Glial Cells of the PNS. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/789953ea2d7ad8748316c97fe41ba07a2cf92af7]
10. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 12.13 The Process of Myelination. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/8de92595ed3624eb81ad881a982a5c710fb1963f]
11. J.L. Salzer, B. Zalc, Myelination, Current Biology, Volume 26, Issue 20, 2016, Pages R971-R975, ISSN 0960-9822, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cub.2016.07.074.
12. Graded Potential.Neurology for the Speech-Language Pathologist (Sixth Edition), 2017 https://www.sciencedirect.com/topics...aded-potential
13. Chrysafides SM, Bordes SJ, Sharma S. Physiology, Resting Potential. [Updated 2023 Apr 10]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2024 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK538338/
14. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 35.10 Depolarization. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/bb5cda2a164974bcfccd00a60e40a0b2b3934d87]
15. Manuel de Lera Ruiz and Richard L. Kraus (2015). Voltage-Gated Sodium Channels: Structure, Function, Pharmacology, and Clinical Indications. Journal of Medicinal Chemistry 2015 *58* (18), 7093-7118. DOI: 10.1021/jm501981g
16. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 35.9 Voltage-gated ion channels. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/09ab17c9199ed6fb925c5fae201df4bcfac9b846]
17. Chris, Diberri, tiZom. (Original work by en:User:Chris 73, updated by en:User:Diberri, converted to SVG by tiZom). (2010). Schematic of an action potential. Wikimedia Commons. [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/4/4a/Action_potential.svg]
18. Blacktc. (2019). All-or-none law. Wikimedia Commons. [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/8/83/All-or-none_law_en.svg]
19. CThompson02. (2018). Membrane Permeability of a Neuron During an Action Potential. Wikimedia Commons. [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/6/6a/Membrane_Permeability_of_a_Neuron_During_an_Action_Potential.svg]
20. PhysiologyWeb. (n.d.). Time course of sodium and potassium permeability during the neuronal action potential [Figure]. Retrieved from https://www.physiologyweb.com/lecture_notes/neuronal_action_potential/figs/neuronal_action_potential_timecourse_of_pna_and_pk.jpg
21. Britannica, The Editors of Encyclopaedia. "action potential". *Encyclopedia Britannica*, 3 Feb. 2024, https://www.britannica.com/science/action-potential. Accessed 18 February 2024.
22. Blausen, Bruce. (2013). Action Potential. Wikimedia Commons. [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/5/55/Blausen_0011_ActionPotential_Nerve.png]
23. Svenskan. (2010, November 17). Saltatorische Erregungsleitung [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. https://upload.wikimedia.org/

Wikipedia/commons/d/df/Saltatorische_Erregungsleitung.svg[https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/d/df/Saltatorische_Erregungsleitung.svg]
24. Chris H. Fry, Rita I. Jabr. The action potential and nervous conduction, Surgery (Oxford), Volume 28, Issue 2, 2010, Pages 49-54, ISSN 0263-9319. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mpsur.2009.12.001.
25. Arcilla CK, Tadi P. Neuroanatomy, Unmyelinated Nerve Fibers. [Updated 2023 Jan 2]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2024 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK554461/
26. Ruiz, Mariana (LadyofHats). (2006). Gap Cell Junction.Wikimedia Commons. [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/b/b7/Gap_cell_junction-en.svg]
27. Augustine GJ, Kasai H. Bernard Katz, quantal transmitter release and the foundations of presynaptic physiology. J Physiol. 2007 Feb 1;578(Pt 3):623-5. doi: 10.1113/jphysiol.2006.123224. Epub 2006 Oct 26. PMID: 17068096; PMCID: PMC2151334.
28. Britannica, The Editors of Encyclopaedia. "postsynaptic potential". *Encyclopedia Britannica*, 20 Mar. 2023, https://www.britannica.com/science/p...ptic-potential. Accessed 19 February 2024.
29. Clark, M. A., Douglas, M., Choi, J. (2018). Figure 35.16. In Biology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/ee34862d28dde2838ca58b4ff73225a93afbee38]
30. Timofeev I, Grenier F, Steriade M. Disfacilitation and active inhibition in the neocortex during the natural sleep-wake cycle: an intracellular study. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2001 Feb 13;98(4):1924-9. doi: 10.1073/pnas.98.4.1924. Epub 2001 Feb 6. PMID: 11172052; PMCID: PMC29358.
31. Jackman SL, Regehr WG. The Mechanisms and Functions of Synaptic Facilitation. Neuron. 2017 May 3;94(3):447-464. doi: 10.1016/j.neuron.2017.02.047. PMID: 28472650; PMCID: PMC5865607.
32. Möhler H, Rudolph U. Disinhibition, an emerging pharmacology of learning and memory. F1000Res. 2017 Feb 3;6:F1000 Faculty Rev-101. doi: 10.12688/f1000research.9947.1. PMID: 28232865; PMCID: PMC5302145.
33. https://med.libretexts.org/Bookshelves/Anatomy_and_Physiology/Anatomy_and_Physiology_(Boundless)/10%3A_Overview_of_the_Nervous_System/10.5%3A_Neurophysiology/10.5J%3A_Ionotropic_and_Metabotropic_Receptors. Accessed 20 February 2024.
34. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 12.28 Receptor Types. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax.[https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/2825892fb890044724c3af8df42f739d2b5d533d]
35. Woehler A, Ponimaskin EG. G protein--mediated signaling: same receptor, multiple effectors. Curr Mol Pharmacol. 2009 Nov;2(3):237-48. doi: 10.2174/1874467210902030237. PMID: 20021461.
36. Yikrazuul. (2010). Activation protein kinase C. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/3/31/Activation_protein_kinase_C.svg]
37. Sam C, Bordoni B. Physiology, Acetylcholine. [Updated 2023 Apr 10]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2024 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK557825/
38. NEUROtiker. (2007).Catecholamines Biosynthesis. Wikimedia Commons. [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Catecholamines_biosynthesis.svg]
39. Purves D, Augustine GJ, Fitzpatrick D, et al., editors. Neuroscience. 2nd edition. Sunderland (MA): Sinauer Associates; 2001. The Biogenic Amines. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK11035/
40. Chu A, Wadhwa R. Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors. [Updated 2023 May 1]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2024 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK554406/
41. Dalangin R, Kim A, Campbell RE. The Role of Amino Acids in Neurotransmission and Fluorescent Tools for Their Detection. Int J Mol Sci. 2020 Aug 27;21(17):6197. doi: 10.3390/ijms21176197. PMID: 32867295; PMCID: PMC7503967.
42. Froehlich JC. Opioid peptides. Alcohol Health Res World. 1997;21(2):132-6. PMID: 15704349; PMCID: PMC6826828.
43. Wang R. Shared signaling pathways among gasotransmitters. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2012 Jun 5;109(23):8801-2. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1206646109. Epub 2012 May 21. PMID: 22615409; PMCID: PMC3384202.
44. Son Y. Molecular mechanisms of general anesthesia. Korean J Anesthesiol. 2010 Jul;59(1):3-8. doi: 10.4097/kjae.2010.59.1.3. Epub 2010 Jul 21. PMID: 20651990; PMCID: PMC2908224.

This page titled 2.4: References is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

3: THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

3.1: Objectives

3.2: Introduction

3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord

3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord

3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal

3.6: Cerebrospinal Fluid

3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain

3.8: The Brain

3.9: Memory

3.10: Sleep

3.11: The Spinal Cord

3.12: Nerves

3.13: Reflexes

3.14: References

This page titled 3: The Central Nervous System is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

3.1: Objectives

- Summarize the embryonic development of the brain and the spinal cord.
- Locate the protective covering of the brain and the spinal cord.
- Describe the process of cerebrospinal fluid formation and circulation.
- Identify the two major blood vessels supplying the brain.
- Explain the significance of the circle of Willis.
- Give an overview of blood drainage from the brain back to the heart.
- Define cerebral perfusion pressure.
- Explain the regulatory mechanisms of cerebral blood flow.
- Illustrate the major functional areas of the cerebral cortex and their associated functions.
- Compare and contrast the sensory and motor homunculus representations in the brain.
- Define the roles of Broca's and Wernicke's areas in language processing and communication.
- Examine the concept of localization of function in the brain using language processing as an example.
- Identify the location and primary functions of the basal nuclei in the brain.
- Explain the involvement of the limbic system in learning, memory, and emotion.
- Discuss the functions of the thalamus, hypothalamus, cerebellum, and brainstem.
- Describe the role and function of the reticular activating system in arousal and consciousness.
- Explain the process of long-term potentiation and its role in memory formation.
- Discuss the roles of AMPA and NMDA glutamate receptors in long-term potentiation.
- Analyze the importance of sleep, its regulation, and its physiological functions.
- Summarize the external anatomy of the spinal cord.
- Describe the organization of gray matter and white matter within the spinal cord.
- Define a nerve and lay out the details of their internal organization.
- List the characteristics and functions of the cranial nerves.
- Summarize the arrangement and distribution of spinal nerves in the body, including plexuses, dermatomes, and myotomes.
- Define a reflex and its components.
- Differentiate between a stretch reflex and a Golgi tendon reflex.
- Describe the coupling of the crossed extensor reflex with the withdrawal reflex in response to stimuli.
- Explain how spinal tracts connect the brain to peripheral structures and distinguish between ascending and descending tracts.
- Elaborate on the trajectory of a sensory pathway, encompassing its point of origin to its ultimate destination.
- Describe the descending pathways while differentiating the direct and extrapyramidal pathways.

This page titled 3.1: Objectives is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

3.2: Introduction

The central nervous system (CNS) comprises two major components: the brain and the spinal cord. Neurons within the CNS are highly active and demand substantial energy resources as part of their communication functions. Unlike other cells, neurons do not store glucose and rely on a continuous blood supply to generate ATP. Insufficient oxygen supply to the CNS can have severe consequences, prompting the cardiovascular system to employ specific regulatory reflexes that safeguard uninterrupted blood flow to the brain.

This page titled 3.2: Introduction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord

The very first system to differentiate in the embryo is the nervous system, with its formation initiating as early as three weeks into development. As the nervous system starts to take shape, ectoderm, the outer layer of the embryo, engages in differentiation, giving rise to the skin and the foundation of the nervous system. Within this layer, a specialized region known as the **neural plat**e emerges, marking the inception of neural development. This initial step sets in motion the formation of the **neural tube**, a structure that ultimately evolves into the brain and spinal cord (Figure 1).

From its earliest stages, the neural tube undergoes intricate transformations, eventually expanding and diversifying into distinct regions that define the complexity of the mature brain. Segmentation into three primary vesicles—**prosencephalon**, **mesencephalon**, and **rhombencephalon**—lays the groundwork for subsequent specialization. Later in development, two of these vesicles further specialize, resulting in five distinct vesicles. The prosencephalon differentiates into the **telencephalon** and **diencephalon**, while the rhombencephalon becomes the **metencephalon** and **myelencephalon** (Figure 2). These five vesicles correspond to the major regions of the adult brain. The **cerebrum** originates directly from the telencephalon, while the diencephalon encompasses the **hypothalamus**, **thalamus**, and **epithalamus**. The metencephalon gives rise to the **pons** and **cerebellum**, whereas the myelencephalon forms the **medulla oblongata**. The mesencephalon remains as the **midbrain**.

Concurrently, the spinal cord emerges from the remainder of the neural tube, maintaining its tubular structure while undergoing essential modifications. Nervous tissue thickens within the spinal cord, while the once-hollow center diminishes to form a small **central canal**. Remarkably, the original hollow center of the neural tube transforms into the **ventricles** within the brain, serving as reservoirs for cerebrospinal fluid.[1]

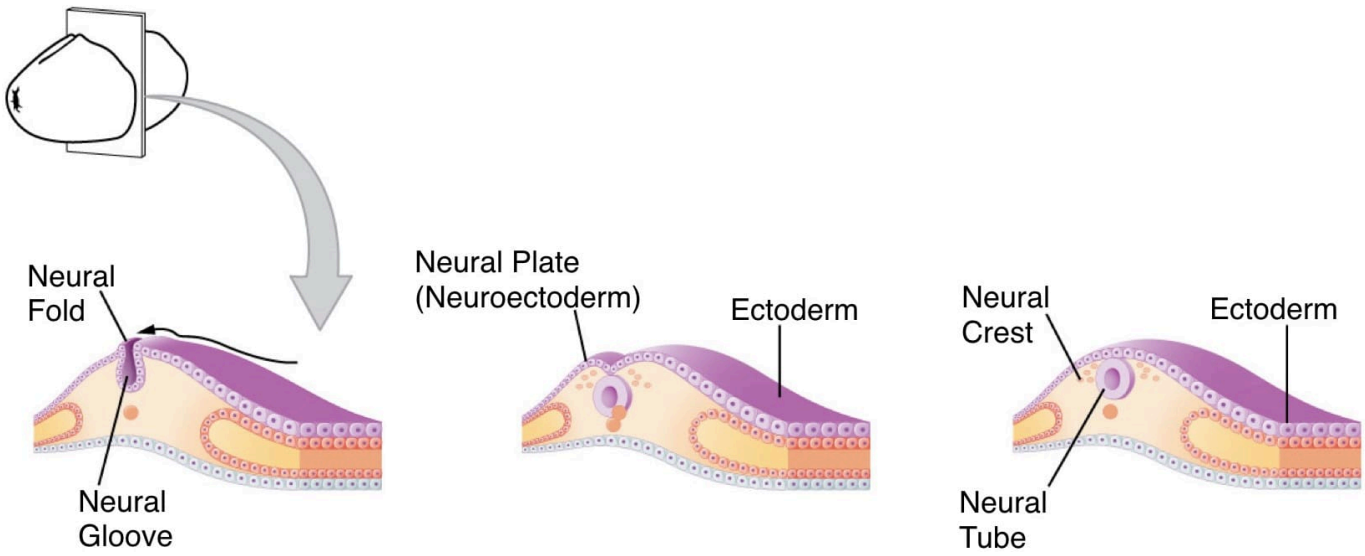


Figure 1 | Early Embryonic Development of the Nervous System | [2] The neural plate folds inward to form a neural groove. As the two sides of the neural groove converge, they form the neural tube beneath the ectoderm.

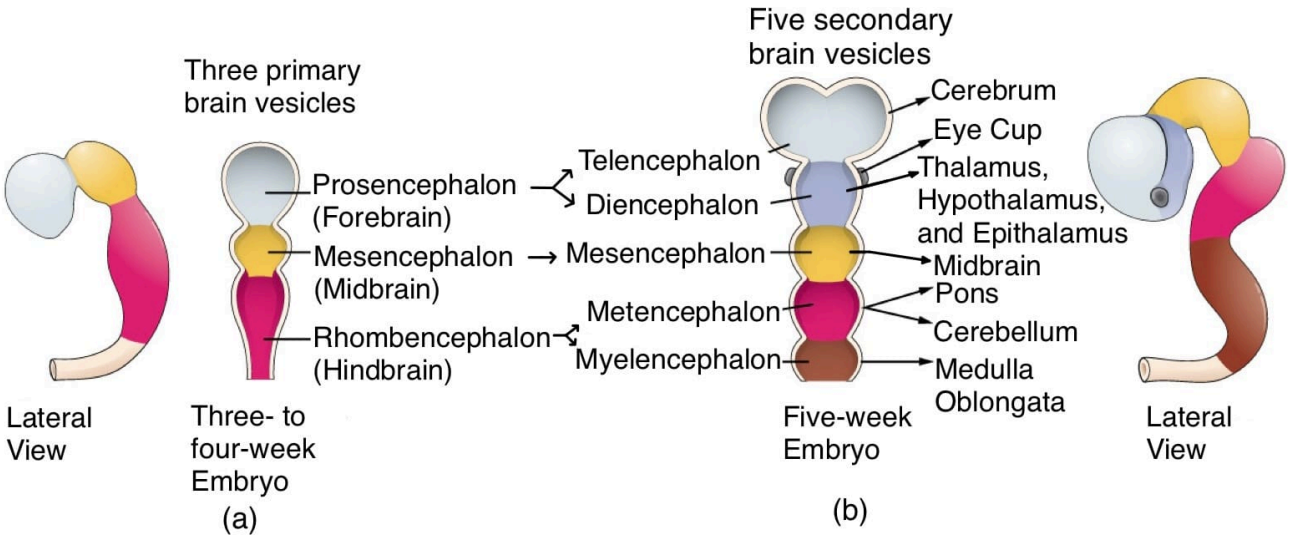


Figure 2 | Primary and Secondary Vesicle Stages of Development | [3] The embryonic brain develops complexity through enlargements of the neural tube called vesicles; (a) The primary vesicle stage has three regions which are the prosencephalon, mesencephalon, and rhombencephalon and (b) the secondary vesicle stage has five regions and are telencephalon, diencephalon, mesencephalon, metencephalon and myelencephalon.



This page titled 3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord

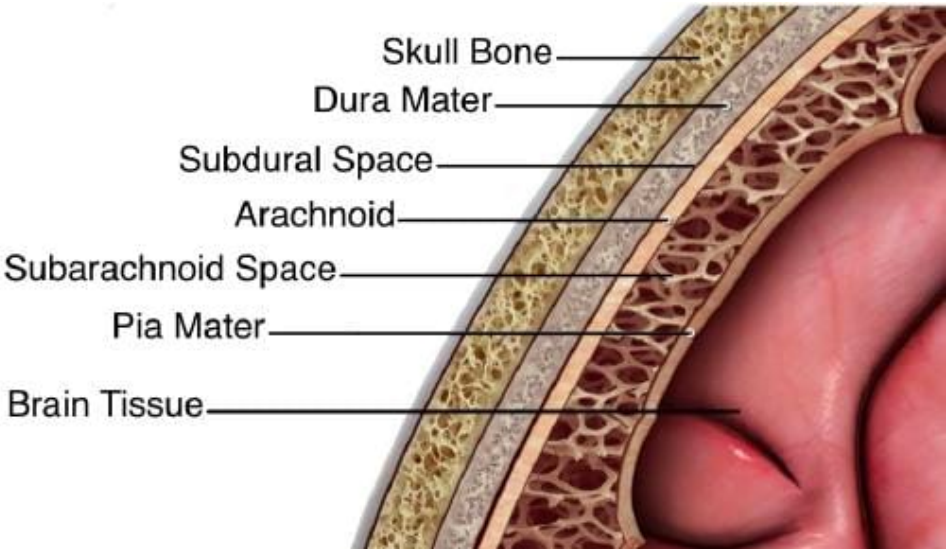


Figure 3 | Meningeal Layers of the Brain | [4] The outermost layer, the dura mater, is a thick and durable membrane providing protective support to the brain. It consists of tough fibrous tissue. The arachnoid mater is the middle layer, characterized by a delicate and web-like structure. It lies beneath the dura mater and above the subarachnoid space, contributing to cerebrospinal fluid circulation. The innermost layer, the pia mater, adheres closely to the brain's surface, following its contours. It is rich in blood vessels and ensures the delivery of nutrients to the brain tissue.

The external surface of the brain and the spinal cord are protected by a series of connective tissue membranes known as the **meninges.** Among them, the **dura mater** is a formidable safeguard. It consists of fibrous tissue that encases the entire brain, spinal cord, and the major blood vessels that course into the cranial and vertebral spaces. Its name, dura mater, stemming from Latin roots signifying "tough mother," aptly characterizes its role as a physical protector. Anchored firmly to the inner contours of the skull and vertebral cavity, this layer embodies resilience.

Nestled between the dura mater and the deepest meningeal layer, the **arachnoid** takes its name from its resemblance to a delicate cobweb, apparent in the fine trabeculae connecting it to the pia mater (Figure 3). The arachnoid mater assumes the form of a membranous sac draped loosely around the CNS. This structure extends into the dural sinuses (blood capillaries) in the guise of **arachnoid granulations**, tiny capillaries that facilitate the drainage of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) back into the bloodstream. Within the subarachnoid space, the CSF circulates, providing nourishment and a protective liquid buffer for the brain and spinal cord.

The **pia mater**, which is the innermost layer, sticks closely to the twists and turns of the brain. Its name comes from Latin, meaning "tender mother," giving the idea of a gentle and caring covering. The blood vessels that nourish the brain are located in this layer.

This page titled 3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal

Cerebrospinal fluid dynamics unfold within the **ventricles**, which are pathways that run through the brain. In this space, four ventricles and a **central canal** form, all starting from the original hollow cavity of the embryonic neural tube. The **lateral ventricles**, located deep within the cerebrum, play a crucial role as essential pathways for CSF. The connection between these lateral ventricles and the **third ventricle** is established through a pair of openings called **interventricular foramina**. The third ventricle is situated between the left and right halves of the diencephalon. It communicates with the **cerebral aqueduct** (or **mesencephalic aqueduct** or the **aqueduct of Sylvius**), which travels through the midbrain and serves as a significant juncture in the circulation of CSF. The **fourth ventricle** is located among the cerebellum, pons, and medulla. From here, CSF begins its exit route. It travels through the **foramen Magendie**, the median aperture, and the **foramina of Luschka**, the paired lateral apertures. Additionally, it passes through the **cisterna magna**, a space between the lower edge of the vermis and the posterior rim of the foramen magnum, allowing CSF entry into the central canal of the spinal cord.

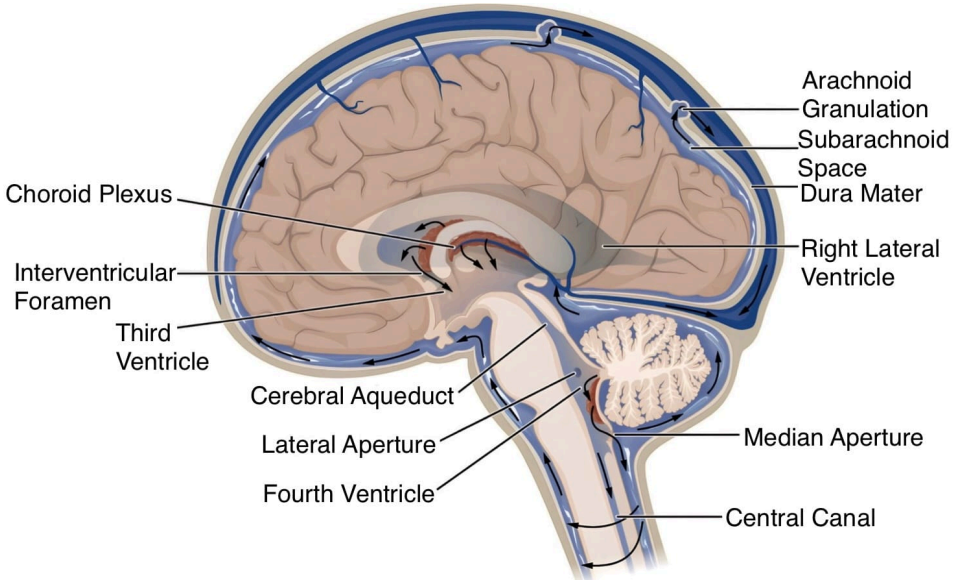


Figure 4 | The Flow Pathways of Cerebrospinal Fluid | [6] This figure illustrates the intricate pathways of CSF circulation within the CNS. Arrows indicate the directional flow of CSF, starting from its production within the choroid plexus of the ventricles, through the ventricular system, and into the subarachnoid space surrounding the brain and spinal cord. Specialized structures, such as the arachnoid granulations, return CSF into the bloodstream.

This page titled 3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

3.6: Cerebrospinal Fluid

Nestled within the ventricles are the **choroid plexuses**, a network of capillaries lacking blood-brain barriers. Ependymal cells, lining the ventricles, extract plasma from the blood, which becomes CSF. The lateral and third ventricles serve as the primary sources of CSF. Approximately 100 – 150 mL of CSF circulates in the CNS. The pulsatile activity of cerebral blood vessels influences its continuous motion. The fluid is a dynamic medium for exchanging substances between the brain and the surrounding environment.

Compared to plasma, CSF exhibits distinct variations in its electrolyte and solute concentrations. It demonstrates lower levels of protein, calcium ions, potassium ions, bicarbonate, urea, glucose, and phosphate while displaying elevated sodium and chloride ion concentrations. Remarkably, the composition of CSF closely mirrors that of the interstitial fluid within the brain, emphasizing its role in maintaining an optimal microenvironment for neuronal function.

The pH of CSF is around 7.3, representing a delicate balance essential for neural function. Notably, CSF contributes significantly to respiratory regulation through its influence on chemoreceptors located on the ventrolateral surface of the medulla. These chemoreceptors are exceptionally sensitive to pH changes, making CSF pH a crucial factor in the control of breathing. Carbon dioxide, an essential respiratory indicator, readily crosses the blood-brain barrier. This property enables carbon dioxide to induce swift shifts in the pH of CSF, thus influencing respiratory responses. The intricate interplay between carbon dioxide levels and the pH of CSF highlights the complex regulatory mechanisms maintaining respiratory stability.

The function of CSF extends beyond mere circulation. It becomes a sentinel of support, a cushion that guards the cerebral and spinal domains. Moreover, CSF undertakes another important role – as a carrier of metabolic waste, a courier that transports the byproducts of neural metabolism away from the CNS.

From the lateral ventricles, CSF traverses the foramen of Monro to reach the third ventricle. Guided by the cerebral aqueduct, this fluid reaches the fourth ventricle. Median and lateral apertures serve as portals through which CSF moves into the subarachnoid space. CSF from the fourth ventricle courses through the cisterna magna and emerges into the subarachnoid domain, heralded by the foramina of Luschka and Magendie. Yet, this movement is not one-directional, for the orchestration of CSF includes a process of absorption, a delicate ebb and flow that ensures equilibrium and sustenance. The subarachnoid space embraces a connection with the fluid that envelops the cerebral hemispheres and brainstem. **Arachnoid granulations** or **arachnoid villi** are outpocketings of the arachnoid membrane that delicately channel CSF into the venous circulation in the dural sinuses, simultaneously reabsorbing it alongside the metabolic remnants it carries (Figures 4 and 5).[5]

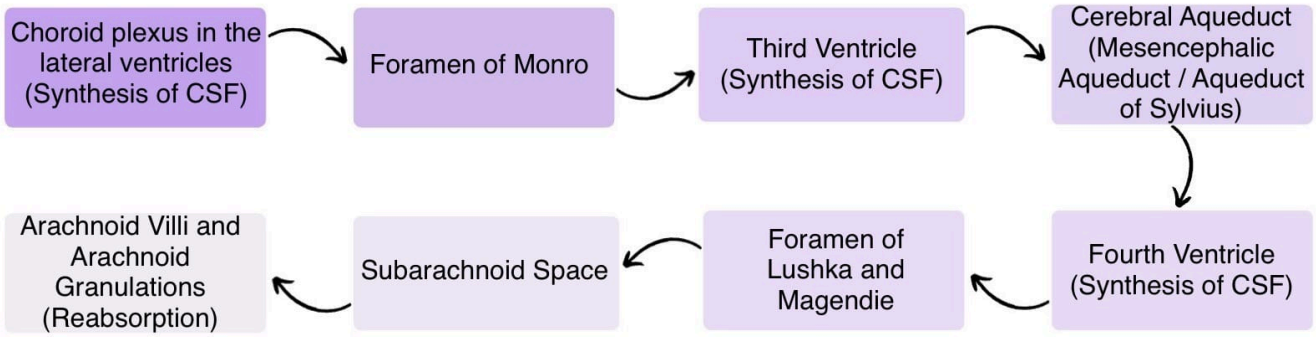


Figure 5 | CSF Formation, Circulation, & Reabsorption | The arrows help learn the steps involved in forming CSF until it is returned to the circulatory system.

Watch this animation (http://openstaxcollege.org/l/CSFflow) on the flow of CSF through the brain and the spinal cord and how it originates from the ventricles and then spreads into the space within the meninges, where the fluids move into the venous sinuses to return to the cardiovascular circulation.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 3.6: Cerebrospinal Fluid is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain

The brain, despite comprising only about two percent of total body weight, requires approximately 15 to 20 percent of the body's cardiac output to sustain its high metabolic demands. This continuous blood supply is essential for delivering oxygen and glucose to neurons while also removing metabolic waste products. Any disruption in cerebral circulation, even for a few minutes, can lead to irreversible neuronal damage, highlighting the dependence of the brain on uninterrupted blood flow.

Arterial Blood Supply

The brain receives blood from two primary sources: the **internal carotid artery** and the **vertebral artery**. These arteries are branches originating from the common carotid and subclavian arteries, respectively, as illustrated in Figure 6. The internal carotid artery further bifurcates into the **anterior** and **middle cerebral arteries**. These arteries are instrumental in supplying the frontal and parietal regions of the cerebrum, facilitating essential cognitive and sensory functions. Concurrently, the vertebral arteries from the opposite sides unite to form the **basilar artery**, a crucial conduit for blood supply to the posterior brain structures. From the basilar artery, branches such as the **posterior cerebral artery** emerge to nourish the temporal and occipital lobes of the cerebrum. Additionally, the largest branches of the vertebral arteries, called **posterior inferior cerebellar arteries,** supply critical regions of the cerebellum and spinal cord.

The **cerebral arterial circle**, or the **circle of Willis**, is of particular significance; it is an intricate junction where the vertebral (basilar) and internal carotid arteries converge. It mainly includes the posterior cerebral artery, a branch of the basilar artery, and the anterior cerebral artery and **posterior communicating artery**, branches of the internal carotid artery. This circular arrangement facilitates interconnection between major cerebral vessels, ensuring the provision of collateral circulation to vital cerebral structures. In the event of vessel occlusion, the circle of Willis acts as a safeguard, maintaining adequate blood flow to prevent ischemic symptoms. This remarkable anatomical feature exemplifies the innate capacity of the brain to adapt and preserve its function even under challenging circumstances.[7]

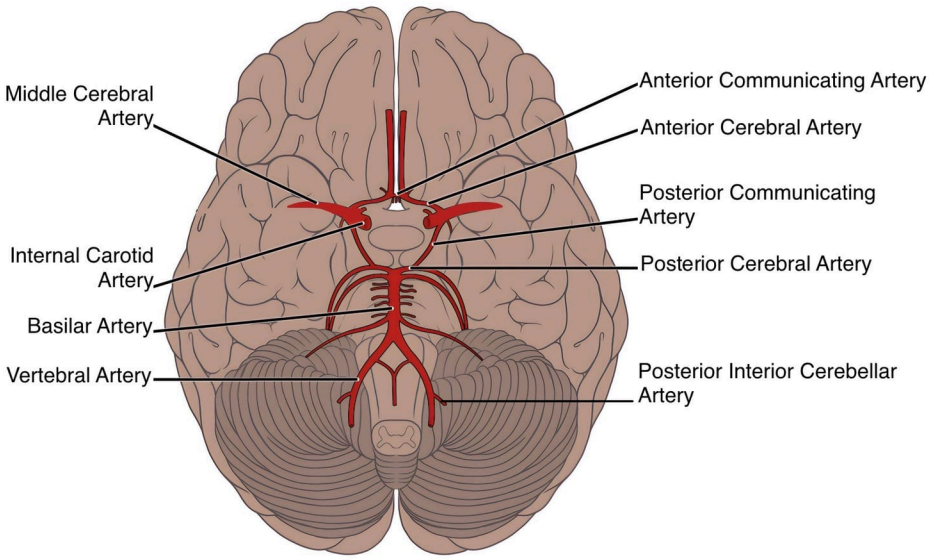


Figure 6 | Blood Supply to the Brain | [8] This illustration shows the major blood vessels supplying the brain. The major arteries, including the carotid and vertebral arteries, are depicted as they branch into smaller vessels, forming the cerebral arterial circle (Circle of Willis).

Venous Return

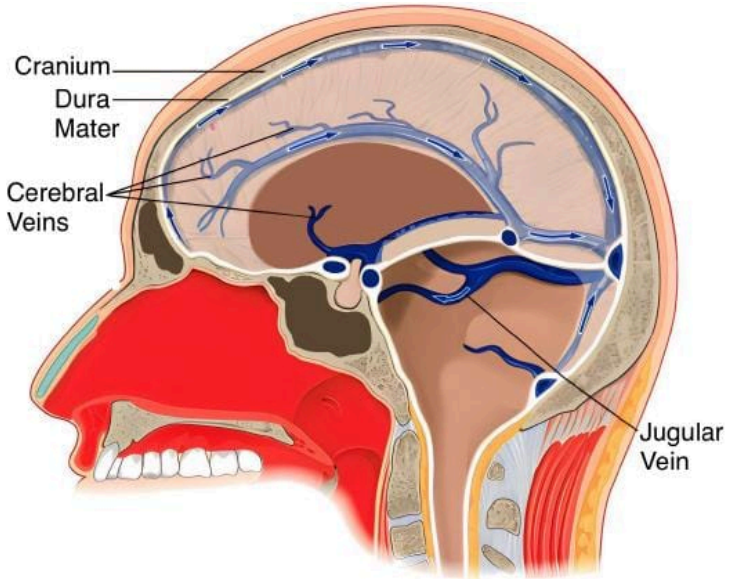


Figure 7 | Dural Sinuses and Veins | [9] Blood drains from the brain through a series of sinuses that connect to the jugular veins.

The deoxygenated blood within the brain follows a specific return route to systemic circulation. This journey is facilitated by an interconnected system of dural sinuses and veins (Figure 7). The dural sinuses converge and ultimately give rise to the **jugular veins**. The jugular veins serve as conduits that ensure the efficient return of blood to the heart, completing the cycle of oxygenation and nourishment.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Cerebral Hemodynamics

The brain is a remarkable structure within the landscape of physiological intricacies, constituting merely 2 percent of the body's mass. Approximately 15 to 20 percent of the total cardiac output is devoted to sustaining the constant metabolic demands of the brain, as neurons require ample oxygen and glucose to maintain their activities.

The cranial enclosure houses a complex interplay of brain, CSF, and blood. However, this space is limited. **Cerebral perfusion pressure** (**CPP**) operates as a stabilizing force throughout this arrangement, maintaining a delicate balance as long as CSF circulates freely. CPP is determined by the difference between mean arterial pressure and **intracranial pressure** (**ICP**). Mean arterial pressure ranges from 70 to 100 mm Hg, whereas ICP varies from 7 to 15 mm Hg. Therefore, CPP is approximately 60 to 80 mm Hg.

The average blood flow rate is about 50 mL per 100 g of cerebral tissue per minute. **Cerebral blood flow** (**CBF**) exemplifies a delicate equilibrium. CPP and **cerebral vascular resistance** (CVR) jointly govern CBF. CBF = CPP/CVR relationship offers insights into the finely calibrated balance. The cerebral vessels modulate their caliber to maintain constant blood flow, especially within a mean arterial pressure range of 50 to 150 mm Hg. When mean arterial pressure rises, arteriolar constriction increases vascular resistance, limiting blood flow and preventing high hydrostatic pressure from reaching the capillary bed, thus protecting delicate capillaries from structural damage or rupture.

If the volume of any component, whether brain tissue, CSF, or blood, starts to increase, compensatory mechanisms come into play to prevent drastic shifts in ICP. In a scenario where a lesion develops within the brain, compensatory mechanisms engage initially, such as CSF moving to the spinal subarachnoid spaces, helping to mitigate the impact. However, these mechanisms have limitations. As ICP rises, the venous channels become compressed while arterial vessels dilate to sustain CBF. This interplay between resistance and dilation strives to uphold CPP but can eventually lead to the formation of edema. As edema progresses, ICP escalates further, resulting in a cycle that intensifies over time. This interplay between rising ICP and cranial rigidity sets the stage for a complex dynamic.

Variations in factors such as carbon dioxide and hydrogen ion concentrations prompt adjustments in perfusion (autoregulation). For example, metabolic variations such as elevated carbon dioxide levels, diminished pH, and decreased oxygen levels lead to localized vasodilation. Local neuronal activity acts as an architect, influencing the regional distribution of blood. Neural orchestration via the sympathetic and parasympathetic systems elicits mild vasoconstriction and vasodilation. A marginal elevation in CBF during sleep, attributed to heightened arterial carbon dioxide levels, attests to the regulation of CBF.[10]

The impact of various anesthetics on CBF regulation is complex and multifactorial, influenced by factors such as dosage, patient characteristics, and concurrent use of other medications. Different anesthetics can affect CBF regulation differently due to their distinct mechanisms of action and pharmacological properties. Inhalational anesthetics such as isoflurane have been shown to decrease cerebral metabolic rate and CBF in a dose-dependent manner. However, they can also disrupt cerebral autoregulation, which is the ability of the brain to maintain constant blood flow despite changes in blood pressure. Disruption of cerebral autoregulation may lead to fluctuations in CBF and potentially contribute to adverse neurological outcomes. Intravenous anesthetics like propofol and barbiturates also impact CBF regulation. Propofol, for example, can cause dose-dependent decreases in CBF and cerebral metabolic rate. However, propofol may help preserve cerebral autoregulation within certain dosage ranges. Barbiturates have been used for cerebral protection during neurosurgical procedures due to their ability to decrease cerebral metabolic rate and intracranial pressure. Opioids, including fentanyl and morphine, are often used as adjuncts to anesthesia. While opioids generally do not have a significant direct effect on CBF regulation, they can cause respiratory depression, which may indirectly impact CBF through changes in arterial blood gases and blood pressure. Local anesthetics primarily affect peripheral nerves and have minimal direct effects on CBF regulation.[11]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

3.8: The Brain

The adult brain is described in terms of four major regions: the **cerebrum**, the **diencephalon**, the **brainstem**, and the **cerebellum** (Figure 8). The cerebrum is the largest part of the brain responsible for advanced cognitive processes, including thought, perception, and voluntary motor functions. The diencephalon comprises the thalamus, hypothalamus, and **pineal gland**. The thalamus relays sensory information to the cerebral cortex, which is crucial in perception and consciousness. Situated beneath the thalamus, the hypothalamus regulates essential bodily functions, including temperature, hunger, and hormonal secretion. Positioned at the back of the brain, the cerebellum is essential for motor coordination, balance, and precision. Comprising the medulla, pons, and midbrain, the brainstem controls vital life functions such as breathing, heartbeat, and sleep-wake cycles. Extending from the brainstem, the spinal cord is a vital pathway for transmitting sensory and motor information between the brain and the rest of the body.

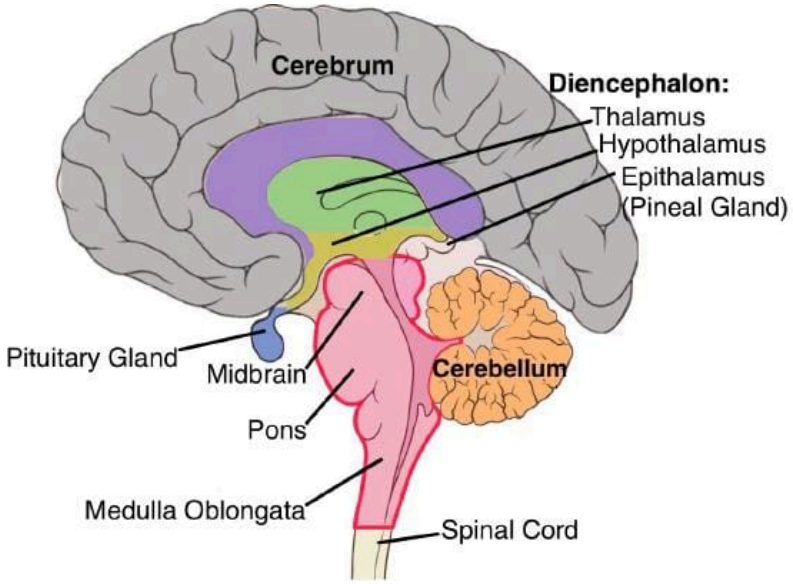


Figure 8 | The Brain | [12] This schematic representation of the human brain highlights major structures crucial to its diverse functions. The cerebrum is the largest part of the brain responsible for advanced cognitive processes, including thought, perception, and voluntary motor functions. The thalamus relays sensory information to the cerebral cortex, which is crucial in perception and consciousness. Situated beneath the thalamus, the hypothalamus regulates essential bodily functions, including temperature, hunger, and hormonal secretion. Positioned at the back of the brain, the cerebellum is essential for motor coordination, balance, and precision. Comprising the medulla, pons, and midbrain, the brain stem controls basic life functions such as breathing, heartbeat, and sleep-wake cycles. Extending from the brain stem, the spinal cord is a vital pathway for transmitting sensory and motor information between the brain and the rest of the body.

The CNS has a distinctive arrangement of neurons. These neurons form clusters, where cell bodies and dendrites create one aspect, while adjacent groups of axons present a contrasting feature. This phenomenon has led to the terms **gray matter** and **white matter**. Gray matter encompasses regions where cell bodies and dendrites predominate, while white matter refers to the areas where bundles of axons are visible to the naked eye. The pale appearance of white matter arises from the presence of myelin sheaths encasing axons. These protective sheaths, rich in lipid content, confer distinct coloration and the ability to facilitate rapid signal transmission (Figure 9). Notably, neuron cell bodies and axons are often visually particular. In the CNS, a localized aggregation of neuron cell bodies is termed a **nucleus**. At the same time, in the PNS, a similar grouping is called a **ganglion** (plural = ganglia).

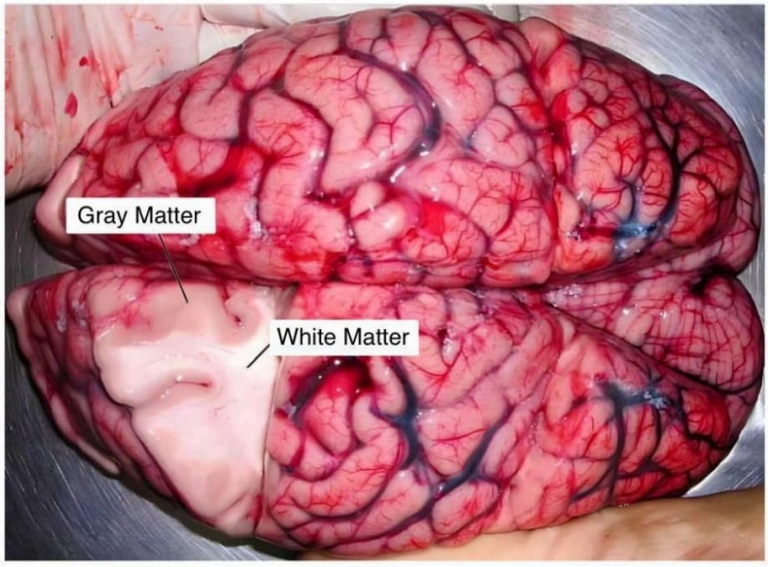


Figure 9 | Gray Matter and White Matter | [13] A brain removed during an autopsy, with a partial section removed, shows white matter surrounded by gray matter. Gray matter makes up the outer cortex of the brain.

The nomenclature diverges further when considering bundles of axons. Within the CNS, these bundled axons are termed **tracts**, signifying their role in conveying information. Conversely, these axonal clusters in the PNS are called **nerves**, indicating their function in transmitting signals to and from various body parts.

The Cerebrum

The prominent gray overlay of the human brain, resembling a substantial portion of its overall mass, corresponds to the cerebrum (Figure 10). This exterior is intricately folded to form the **cerebral cortex** (derived from the Latin term bark of a tree), and underlying this convoluted surface lies the remainder of the structure. Numerous advanced neurological functions, including memory, emotion, and consciousness, emanate from the intricate workings of the cerebral domain. The cerebral cortex constitutes the outer gray matter layer. A pronounced separation known as the **longitudinal fissure** delineates the two halves of the cerebrum, resulting in distinct right and left **cerebral hemispheres**. Deeper within this structure, the white matter of the corpus callosum is the primary conduit for interhemispheric communication within the cerebral cortex.

Deeply embedded nuclei termed the **basal nuclei**, also called **basal ganglia**, significantly contribute to cognitive processing and hold paramount importance in planning movements. The basal forebrain houses nuclei crucial to learning and memory. The limbic structure, a segment of the cerebral cortex intertwined with the **limbic system**, encompasses an assembly of regions dedicated to emotion, memory, and behavioral functions.

Cerebral Cortex

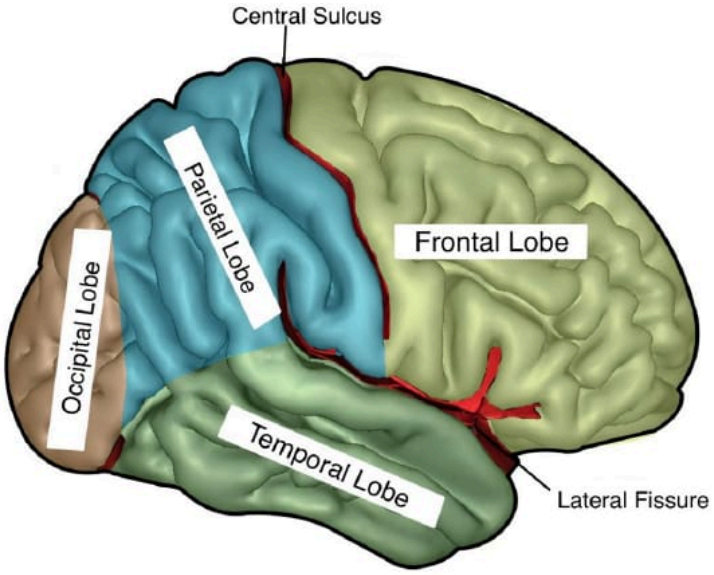


Figure 10 | Lobes of the Cerebral Cortex | [14] The cerebral cortex is divided into four lobes. They are the frontal, parietal, temporal, and occipital lobes. Extensive folding increases the surface area available for cerebral functions.

A continuous stratum of gray matter envelops the cerebrum and encircles both forebrain hemispheres, known as the cerebral cortex. This tenuous yet extensive domain of intricately folded gray matter is accountable for sophisticated neural functions. A ridge formed by one of these convoluted elevations is identified as a **gyrus** (plural = gyri), while the groove delineating two gyri is designated a **sulcus** (plural = sulci). The configuration of these tissue folds signifies specific territories within the cerebral cortex.

The cerebral surface can be mapped based on prominent gyri and sulci. Employing these distinctive landmarks, the cortex can be segregated into four principal zones or lobes (Figure 10). Among these markers is the **lateral fissure**, which restricts the temporal lobe from other sectors. The parietal and frontal lobes are situated superior to the lateral sulcus, segregated by the **central sulcus**. The posterior domain of the cortex corresponds to the occipital lobe. However, no conspicuous anatomical boundary delineates it from the parietal or temporal lobes on the lateral aspect of the brain. The absence of explicit anatomical demarcation between these lobes aligns with the interrelated functional nature of these regions.

The cerebrum is pivotal in orchestrating intricate cognitive functions such as memory, learning, language, and conscious awareness. These complex processes are meticulously distributed across discrete cortical regions, each with a dedicated responsibility for specific functions. The cerebral cortex encompasses a multitude of domains critical for sensory processing. These contain the primary cortical sectors specialized in processing somatosensory, visual, auditory, and gustatory stimuli, as well as association areas that facilitate information integration within these sensory domains. In the intricate organization of the cerebral cortex, sensory processing primarily occurs within the parietal, temporal, and occipital lobes, whereas the frontal lobe predominates in governing motor functions. Moreover, distinct regions within the cortex are dedicated to language processing, forming a finite collection further refined by their different roles in various aspects of linguistic function.

During the early 1900s, German neuroscientist Korbinian Brodmann conducted an extensive investigation into the microscopic structure of the cerebral cortex. His analysis led to the subdivision of the cortex into 52 distinct regions based on histological characteristics. This classification, termed **Brodmann's areas**, remains integral in characterizing cortical anatomical differences (Figure 11), which closely align with functional disparities. For instance, primary visual perception is attributed to areas 17 and 18 within the occipital lobe. Brodmann's areas 41 and 42 within the superior temporal lobe correspond to primary auditory sensation. Given the involvement of the temporal lobe in the limbic system, it bears significance in memory formation, as memories often emerge as recalled sensations. Memories of movement are the recollections of sensory feedback arising from those movements.[15]

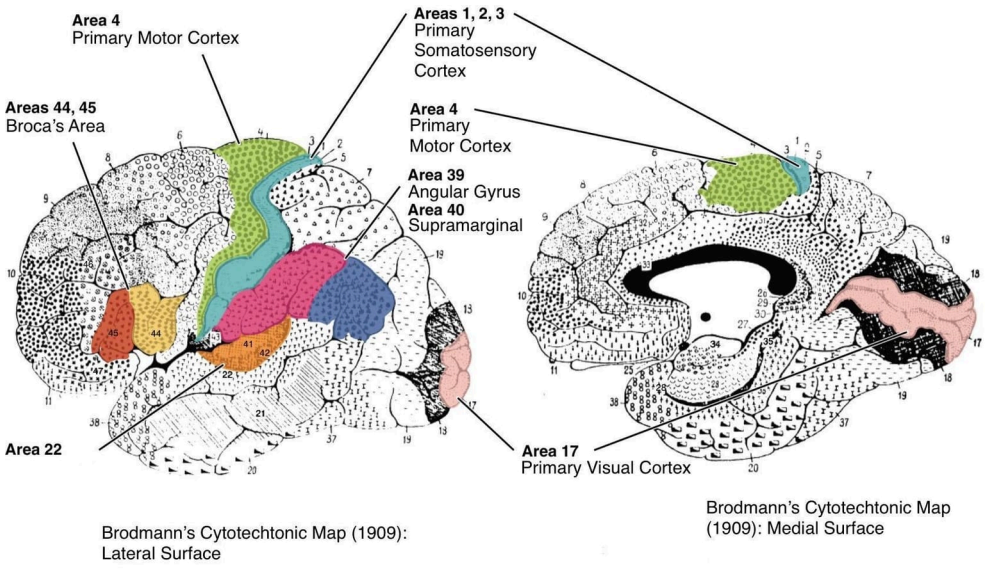


Figure 11 | Brodmann's Areas of the Cerebral Cortex | [16] Brodmann's mapping of functionally distinct regions of the cortex was based on its cytoarchitecture at a microscopic level. Primary Motor Cortex (Area 4), a part of the precentral gyrus, initiates and coordinates voluntary motor movements. Primary Somatosensory Cortex (Areas 1, 2, 3), found in the postcentral gyrus, these areas receive and process sensory information from the skin, muscles, and joints. Primary Visual Cortex (Area 17), situated in the occipital lobe, is vital for visual processing and plays a key role in visual perception. The primary auditory cortex (areas 41 and 42) in the temporal lobe is crucial for processing auditory information and contributes to our perception of sound. Broca's Area (Areas 44, 45), situated in the left frontal lobe, is associated with language production and speech formation. Wernicke's Area (Area 22), found in the left temporal lobe, is involved in language comprehension and understanding spoken and written language. The prefrontal Cortex (Area 9, 10, 11, 46, 47), located in the frontal lobe, is associated with executive functions, decision-making, and social behavior. Parietal Association Cortex (Area 5, 7) integrates sensory information and higher-order processing. Auditory Association Cortex (Area 20, 21, 22, 37), found in the temporal lobe, is associated with memory, language comprehension, and complex visual processing. The limbic cortex (Area 28, 34, 35, 36), which is part of the limbic system, plays a role in emotions, memory, and olfaction. |

The parietal lobe predominantly handles somatosensation—the general bodily sensations. The postcentral gyrus, or **primary somatosensory cortex**, situated posterior to the central sulcus, houses Brodmann's areas 1, 2, and 3. This cortical region processes various tactile senses, encompassing touch, pressure, pain, tickle, itch, vibration, proprioception, and kinesthesia, signifying body position and movement. Conversely, anterior to the central sulcus, the frontal lobe is chiefly associated with motor functions (Figure 12). The precentral gyrus, the **primary motor cortex**, orchestrates movement execution. Cells within this cortex relay commands to spinal cord cells, inducing skeletal muscle movement. Adjacent to this area lies the **premotor area or motor association area**, which is responsible for movement planning. **Broca's area**, predominantly in the left hemisphere, controls language production and speech-related activities.

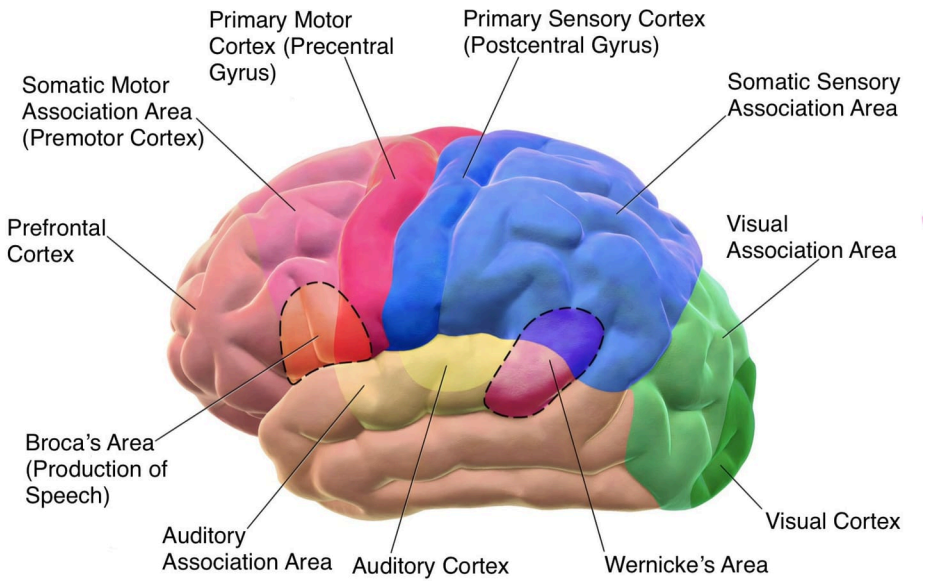


Figure 12 | Sensory and Motor Regions of the Cerebral Cortex | [17] The Motor Cortex is located in the frontal lobe, specifically the precentral gyrus. The somatosensory cortex is found in the postcentral gyrus of the parietal lobe, the visual cortex is situated in the occipital lobe and the auditory cortex is located in the temporal lobe. Broca's area, situated in the left frontal lobe, is associated with language production and speech formation. Wernicke's area, found in the left temporal lobe, is involved in language comprehension and understanding spoken and written language. Premotor cortex is responsible for movement planning. Parietal association cortex integrates sensory information and higher-order processing. Auditory association cortex found in the temporal lobe, is associated with memory, language comprehension, and complex visual processing.

The **prefrontal lobe**, positioned anteriorly, encompasses cognitive functions that underlie personality, short-term memory, and consciousness. The prefrontal cortex plays a pivotal role in shaping individual personality, largely influencing intention and plan execution. A renowned historical case involving Phineas Gage in 1848 helps us understand the significance of the prefrontal cortex. Following a traumatic incident where a metal spike penetrated his prefrontal cortex (Figure 13), Gage underwent marked personality alteration, transitioning from a diligent, amiable individual to an irritable and sluggish one. Despite these drastic changes, Gage managed to function as a stagecoach driver, illustrating the brain's potential for recovery even from substantial trauma.

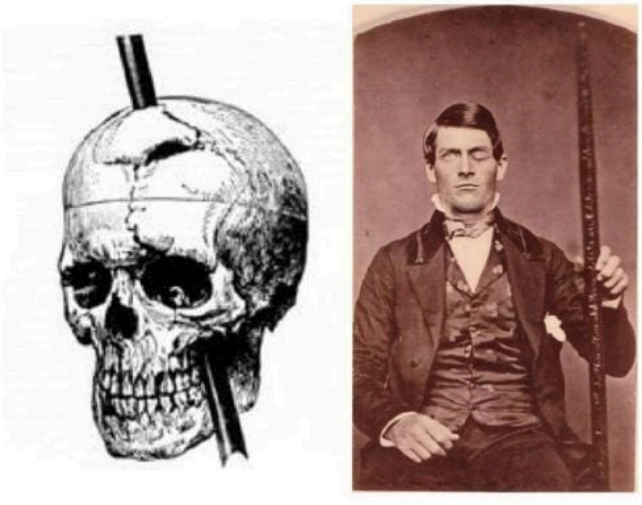


Figure 13 | Phineas Gage | [18] was a victim of an accident while working on a railroad in 1848. Phineas Gage had a large iron rod impaled through the prefrontal cortex. After the accident, his personality appeared to change, but he eventually learned to cope with the trauma and lived as a coach driver even after such a traumatic event.

Beyond the primary and association cortical domains, additional regions recognized as integrative areas occupy the interstitial

spaces between distinct sensory or motor functional parts. These zones integrate multisensory information or engage in more intricate processing of sensory and motor inputs. Proprioceptive input derived from arm and hand movements interfaces with visual stimuli to orchestrate the execution of actions.

Cortical Processing

The precentral gyrus serves as the primary motor cortex. Pioneering neurosurgeon Walter Penfield significantly contributed to our foundational comprehension of the primary motor cortex by using electrical stimulation on the surface of the cerebrum. Penfield's technique involved delicately probing the cortex while patients remained under local anesthesia, facilitating real-time observation of their responses to stimulation. This approach initially fostered the assumption that the precentral gyrus could directly induce muscle movements. Contemporary knowledge, however, reveals that the primary motor cortex receives inputs from diverse areas instrumental in movement planning. Its direct output then triggers the activation of spinal cord neurons, culminating in the regulation of skeletal muscle activity.

The primary motor cortex delineates a somatotopic arrangement of the body, giving rise to the representation of a **motor homunculus**. The terminology homunculus originates from the Latin term denoting a little man, embodying a graphical portrayal of the human body superimposed on a designated sector of the cerebral cortex. Notably, neurons governing the musculature of the lower legs and feet inhabit the medial expanse of the precentral gyrus. At the same time, the thighs, trunk, and shoulders are localized at the apex of the longitudinal fissure. The hand and face regions are positioned on the lateral aspect of the gyrus. Furthermore, this spatial distribution disproportionately emphasizes muscles endowed with extensive innervation. Specifically, greater cortical representation is accorded to muscles implicated in intricate and elegant actions, such as those governing the fingers and lower face. In contrast, muscles responsible for more coarse movements, like the back and buttock muscles, occupy comparatively more minor domains on the motor cortex (Figure 14).[19]

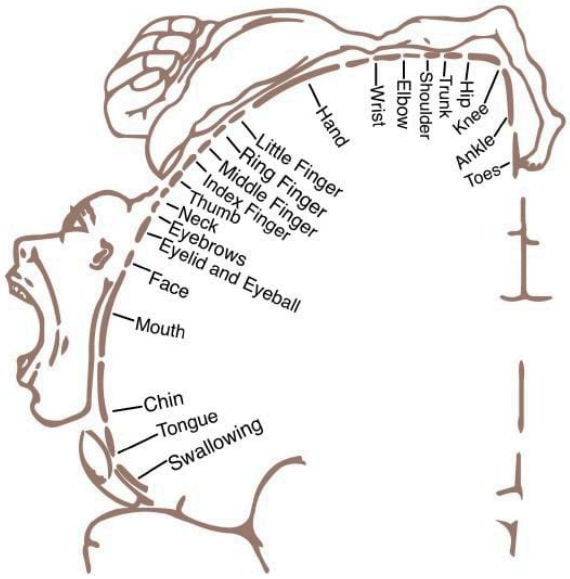


Figure 14 | The Motor Homunculus | [20] A cartoon representation of the motor homunculus showing the distribution of motor output from the primary motor cortex to different parts of the body. The distorted graphic representation of the body parts indicates the relative proportion of the primary motor cortex devoted to controlling skeletal muscle in each area.

Adjacent to the primary motor cortex lies the premotor cortex, Broca's area, and the frontal eye fields, all closely related to planning specific movement types. These areas encompass judgment, abstract reasoning, and **working memory**. Precursors to devising particular movements contain the assessment of whether these actions should be executed, exemplified by decisions such as whether to snooze the alarm or not.

Parallel to the primary motor cortex, the positions of somatosensory receptors on the body are transcribed onto the somatosensory cortex. This representation is often portrayed through a **sensory homunculus** (Figure 15).

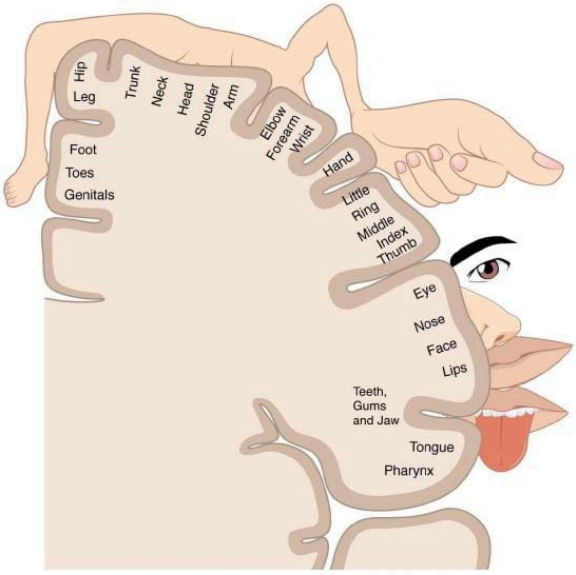


Figure 15 **|** The Sensory Homunculus | [21] A cartoon representation of the sensory homunculus arranged adjacent to the cortical region in which the processing takes place.

Within the somatosensory cortex, the medial aspect of the gyrus positioned within the longitudinal fissure represents the external genitals, feet, and lower legs. As the gyrus curves outward from the fissure, extending along the parietal lobe's surface, the somatotopic arrangement proceeds sequentially through the thighs, hips, trunk, shoulders, arms, and hands. Approaching the lateral sulcus, the head and face representation is lateral to the finger representation. This organization on the topographical map follows a medial-to-lateral arrangement, progressing from the lower to the upper body. Furthermore, axons transmitting sensory information from the head and neck extend to the thalamus and run adjacent to the upper body fibers. The connections via the thalamus uphold this topographical order, ensuring the preservation of anatomical information. Notably, this correspondence does not lead to a scaled-down body replica; instead, it accentuates more responsive regions, such as the fingers and lower face. Areas of the body with lower sensitivity, such as the shoulders and back, are allocated smaller areas within the cortex.

Language and Speech

Language constitutes a distinctive facet of neurological function within the human realm. An illustrative instance of multimodal integrative territories is linked to language functionality. Wernicke's area is situated adjacent to the auditory association cortex at the terminus of the lateral sulcus anterior to the visual cortex. Broca's area lies in the lateral domain of the frontal lobe, positioned anteriorly to the motor cortex sector linked to the head and neck. This terminology originates from a French surgeon and anatomist who examined patients incapable of vocalizing speech. These individuals exhibited intact speech comprehension but the inability to articulate speech sounds, indicating compromised or underdeveloped Broca's areas. The interconnection between these two domains is facilitated by tracts extending between the posterior temporal lobe and the lateral sector of the frontal lobe, referred to as **arcuate fasciculus** (Figure 16).[22]

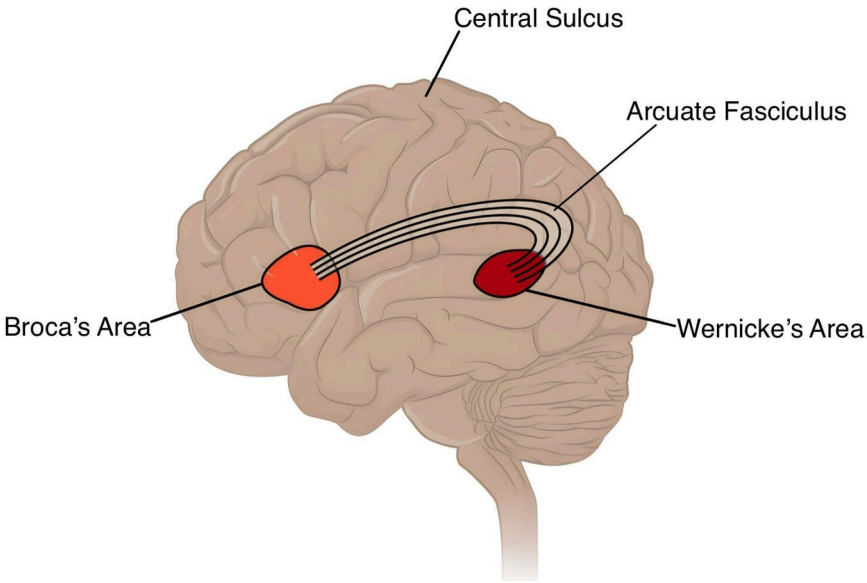


Figure 16 | Broca's and Wernicke's Areas | [23] Broca's area (motor speech area) is located in the left frontal lobe, typically in the posterior part of the left frontal gyrus, whereas Wernicke's area (sensory speech area) is positioned in the left temporal lobe, typically in the posterior part of the left superior temporal gyrus. The two areas are connected by a bundle of nerve fibers known as the arcuate fasciculus, facilitating communication between Broca's area and Wernicke's areas.

The Left and the Right Brain

The notion that individuals are either "right-brained" or "left-brained" represents an oversimplified perspective on a nuanced concept involving cerebral hemispheres. Lateralization of function does exist, attributing language function predominantly to the left hemisphere and spatial and nonverbal reasoning to the right hemisphere. However, it is important to recognize that various pervasive functions, such as language, are globally distributed throughout the cerebrum. This misconception has found support in studies involving split-brain patients. For individuals with intractable epilepsy, a severe neurological condition, one approach is to surgically sever the corpus callosum, thereby isolating the two cerebral hemispheres. Subsequently, a split-brain patient might struggle to formulate verbal responses based on sensory inputs processed in the right hemisphere. This leads to the misconception that language function resides solely in the left hemisphere. Nevertheless, documented cases highlight language function loss resulting from damage to the right hemisphere. Damage to the left hemisphere is typically categorized as **aphasia**, a speech function deficit, while damage to the right hemisphere can impact language usage. Impaired comprehension of figurative language, like jokes, irony, or metaphors, is associated with right hemisphere damage. Moreover, nonverbal elements of speech, including facial expressions and body language, can be influenced by right hemisphere damage, leading to flattened emotional expression in speech.

Ambidexterity denotes the ability to use both left and right hands equally and represents a renowned form of cross-dominance. Ambidextrous individuals are rare, comprising only 1% of the population. More commonly, individuals identified as ambidextrous were initially left-handed and learned ambidexterity either intentionally or during circumstances such as childhood or occupations that emphasize or require right-handed behaviors. The prevalence of right-handed tools and objects leads many left-handers to adopt right-handed usage, thus enhancing motor skills in their non-dominant hands. Right-handers might become ambidextrous due to their dominant right hand or arm injuries.[24]

Basal Nuclei

The **basal nuclei**, interchangeably termed **basal ganglia**, encompass a confluence of nuclei within the cerebrum that oversee the appraisal of cortical processing in relation to the broader operational state of the nervous system. Positioned deep within the cerebrum, the **caudate**, **putamen**, and **globus pallidus** constitute the principal components of basal nuclei responsible for orchestrating movement regulation (Figure 17). Caudate and putamen together form the **striatum**. Additional structures include the **subthalamic nuclei** and the **substantia nigra**. Thus, the basal nuclei within the cerebrum establish functional connectivity with a subset of brainstem nuclei, collectively forming a motor pathway.

Within the basal nuclei, two distinct streams of information processing operate. The entire input to the basal nuclei emanates

from the cortex into the striatum. The **direct pathway** of the basal nuclei is a key circuit that facilitates movement by promoting the activation of the motor cortex. It begins with excitatory signals from the motor cortex to the striatum, where specific neurons are activated. These neurons then inhibit the internal segment of the globus pallidus and the substantia nigra, which normally send inhibitory signals to the thalamus, an example of disinhibition. By inhibiting the globus pallidus and substantia nigra, the direct pathway reduces their inhibitory effect on the thalamus, allowing it to send stronger excitatory signals back to the motor cortex. This results in the promotion and initiation of movement. In a healthy brain, the direct pathway works alongside the indirect pathway to regulate motor activity, ensuring movements are smooth and properly controlled.

The **indirect pathway** of the basal ganglia is a critical circuit in the brain that helps control and fine-tune movement by inhibiting excessive or unwanted motions. It starts when excitatory signals from the motor cortex activate neurons in the striatum, which then inhibit neurons in the external segment of the globus pallidus. This reduction in activity leads to increased activity in the subthalamic nucleus, which in turn stimulates the internal segment of the globus pallidus. The stronger inhibitory signals are sent from the internal segment of the globus pallidus to the thalamus, reducing its ability to excite the motor cortex and thus suppressing movement. In conditions like Parkinson's disease, disruptions in this pathway can lead to excessive inhibition of movement, contributing to symptoms like slowness and difficulty initiating actions. The indirect pathway works in balance with the direct pathway to ensure smooth and controlled motor function. An illustrative video (http://openstaxcollege.org/l/basalnuclei1) visually expounds on the basal nuclei and the pathway that underlies information processing within the cerebrum. As depicted, the direct pathway represents a shorter route through the system, culminating in heightened cortical activity and amplified motor responses.[25]

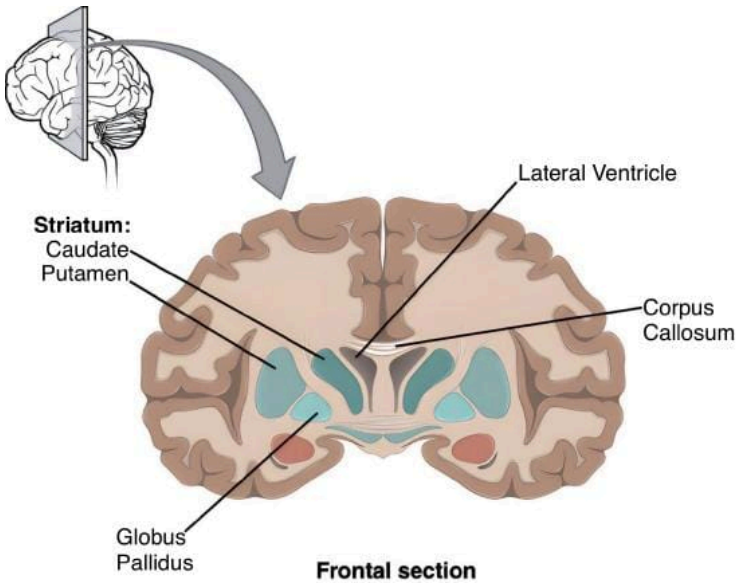


Figure 17 **|** Basal Nuclei (Basal Ganglia) | [26] This frontal Section through the brain depicts the location of individual structures of the basal nuclei. The caudate nucleus and putamen together form the striatum. The Globus pallidus is situated adjacent to the putamen. These nuclei are involved in the regulation of voluntary movement. Substantia nigra and subthalamic nuclei are not visible in this view.

Parkinson's disease, a hypokinetic condition affecting the basal nuclei with a specific impact on the substantia nigra, provides an illustration of the consequences of the direct and indirect pathways. In this disorder, neurons within the substantia nigra undergo degeneration, impeding dopamine release into the striatum. Without this modulatory influence, the basal nuclei predominantly rely on the indirect pathway. As elucidated earlier, the resulting hypokinetic disorder stems from diminished or absent direct pathway activation, which is pivotal for enhancing cortical motor commands. [27]

The Limbic System

The limbic system consists of structures arranged around the edge of the cerebrum, including the **amygdala**, **hippocampus**, and **cingulate gyrus**. It is connected to the hypothalamus and deals with emotional responses and memory functions. The limbic lobe demonstrates interconnections with the hypothalamus, exerting a regulatory influence over its activity contingent on emotional states. For instance, during anxiety or fear, the amygdala, situated in the medial portion of the temporal lobe, transmits signals to the hypothalamus. This communication triggers the activation of the sympathetic fight-or-flight response. Simultaneously, under the impetus of input from the amygdala, the hypothalamus prompts the release of stress hormones via its governance of the

endocrine system (Figure 18).[28]

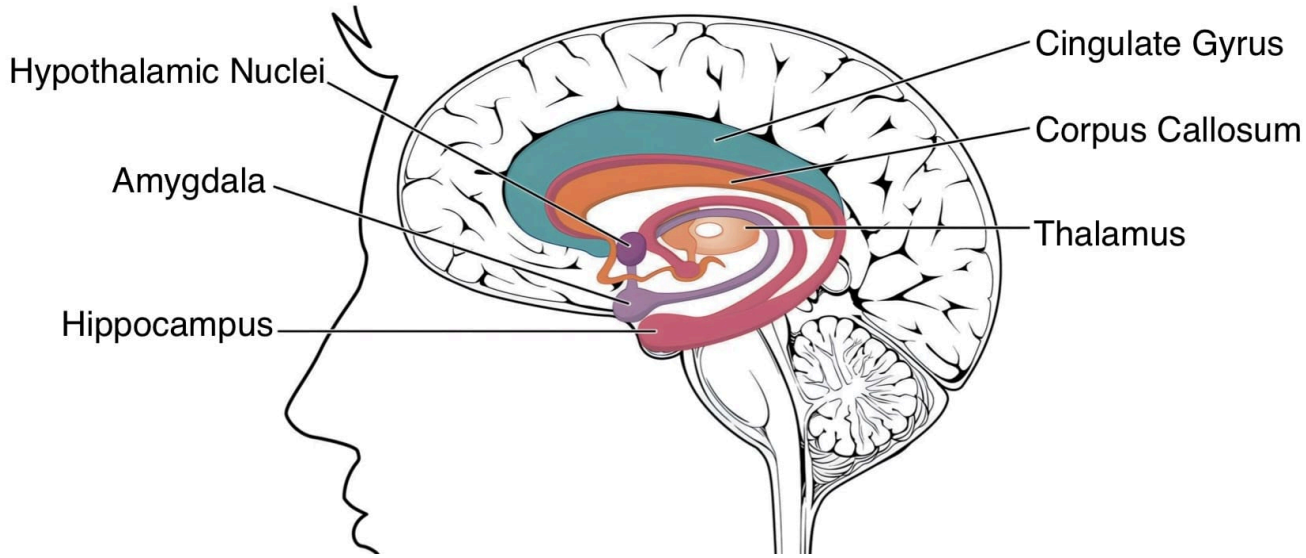


Figure 18 | The Limbic System | [29] Structures arranged around the edge of the cerebrum constitute the limbic system, which includes the amygdala, hippocampus, and cingulate gyrus, and connects to the hypothalamus.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The Diencephalon

The diencephalon, a region of the brain that preserves its designation from embryonic development, is called the "through brain" due to its connecting role. It functions as an intermediary between the cerebrum and the broader nervous system, except the olfactory system, which is responsible for the sense of smell. All other brain components, the spinal cord, and the PNS transmit information to and from the cerebrum through the diencephalon. This region also serves as the conduit for output originating from the cerebrum.

Situated beneath the cerebrum, the diencephalon comprises the walls of the third ventricle. The thalamus and the hypothalamus constitute the primary divisions of the diencephalon (Figure 19). Additional structures include the epithalamus, housing the pineal gland, and the subthalamus, encompassing the subthalamic nucleus, which is integrated within the basal nuclei.

Epithalamus

The epithalamus is a small part of the diencephalon, located near the posterior segment of the third ventricle. It plays a crucial role in regulating circadian rhythms, endocrine functions, and emotional responses. Its primary structure, the pineal gland, secretes **melatonin**, which helps regulate the sleep-wake cycle. Melatonin is derived from serotonin. Secretion of melatonin exhibits modulation contingent upon the prevailing environmental light levels. When light stimulates the retina, a nerve impulse is sent to the **suprachiasmatic nucleus** in the hypothalamus, a key regulator of biological rhythms. Subsequently, the neural signal proceeds through the spinal cord and culminates in the pineal gland, suppressing melatonin production. Consequently, blood melatonin levels decline, fostering wakefulness. Conversely, during diminishing light conditions, as typically experienced in the evening hours, melatonin production escalates, elevating its levels in the blood and instigating drowsiness. Given its pivotal role in governing the body's innate circadian rhythms, melatonin can be harnessed to induce natural sleep

patterns. Hence, melatonin finds utility in managing jet lag and serving as a sleep aid.[30] Additionally, the epithalamus connects the limbic system with other brain regions, influencing emotional processing and behavioral responses.

Thalamus

The thalamus assembles nuclei that mediate communication between the cerebral cortex and the peripheral structures, spinal cord, or brainstem. All sensory data, excluding olfaction, traverse the thalamus before reaching the cerebral cortex. Axons originating from peripheral sensory receptors or intermediate nuclei establish synaptic connections within the thalamus, from which thalamic neurons project directly to the cerebrum. Beyond its role in relaying information, the thalamus also undertakes information processing. For instance, the specific segment of the thalamus that receives visual input influences the prioritization of significant visual stimuli and the allocation of attention.

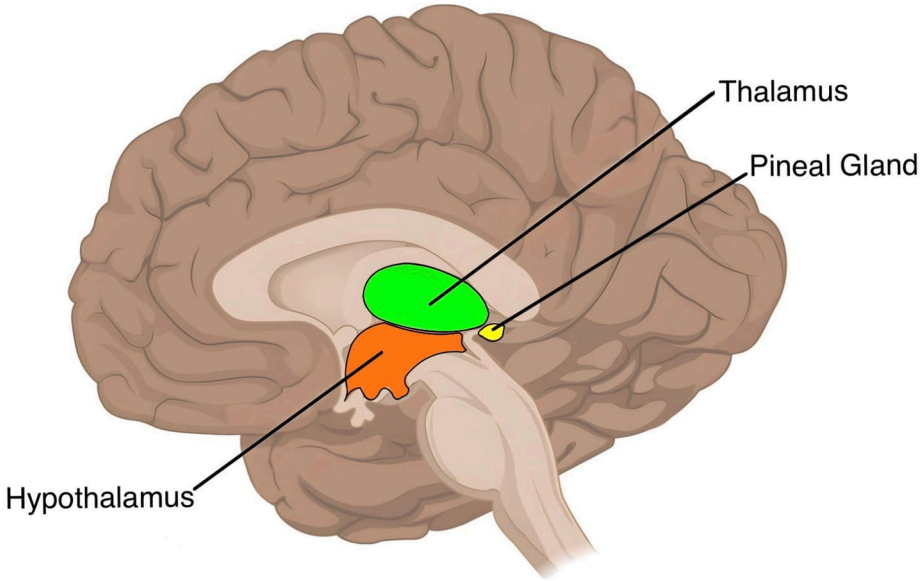


Figure 19 | The Diencephalon | [31] The diencephalon is composed primarily of the thalamus and hypothalamus, which define the walls of the third ventricle. The Epithalamus, a part of the diencephalon, houses the pineal gland.

The cerebrum reciprocally exchanges information with the thalamus, predominantly conveying motor directives. This engagement necessitates coordination with the cerebellum and various nuclei within the brainstem. Simultaneously, the cerebrum engages with the basal nuclei, an interaction that entails intricate connections with the thalamus. The cerebral cortex dispatches signals to the thalamus, which subsequently impacts the outcomes orchestrated by the basal nuclei.

Hypothalamus

Inferior and marginally anterior to the thalamus lies the hypothalamus, constituting the second prominent part of the diencephalon (Figure 19). Composing an assemblage of nuclei such as the arcuate nucleus or ventromedial nucleus, the hypothalamus primarily undertakes the task of governing homeostasis. The hypothalamus is the primary regulator of the autonomic nervous system functions and the activities of the endocrine system, exerting influence via the anterior pituitary gland. Several subdivisions of the hypothalamus participate in processes of memory and emotion, integrated within the broader framework of the limbic system. Additionally, the hypothalamus encompasses numerous distinct centers responsible for functions like regulating body temperature and synchronizing circadian rhythms.[32]

Brainstem

The brainstem, comprising the **midbrain**, **pons**, and **medulla oblongata**, acts as a vital conduit between the cerebral hemispheres and the spinal cord, facilitating the transmission of sensory and motor signals. The midbrain integrates sensory inputs from various modalities like vision, hearing, and touch while contributing to motor control. It houses cranial nerves III and IV, which are involved in eye movements and proprioception. Serving as a bridge between different brain regions, the pons plays a crucial role in transmitting sensory and motor information, particularly to and from the cerebellum. It houses cranial nerves V-

VIII as well as nuclei vital for regulating respiration and sleep. The medulla oblongata governs essential autonomic functions like heart rate, blood pressure, and respiration and contains nuclei responsible for reflex actions such as coughing and swallowing. Several cranial nerves, including IX, X, XI, and XII, originate from the medulla, contributing to functions related to the head, neck, and specialized senses.

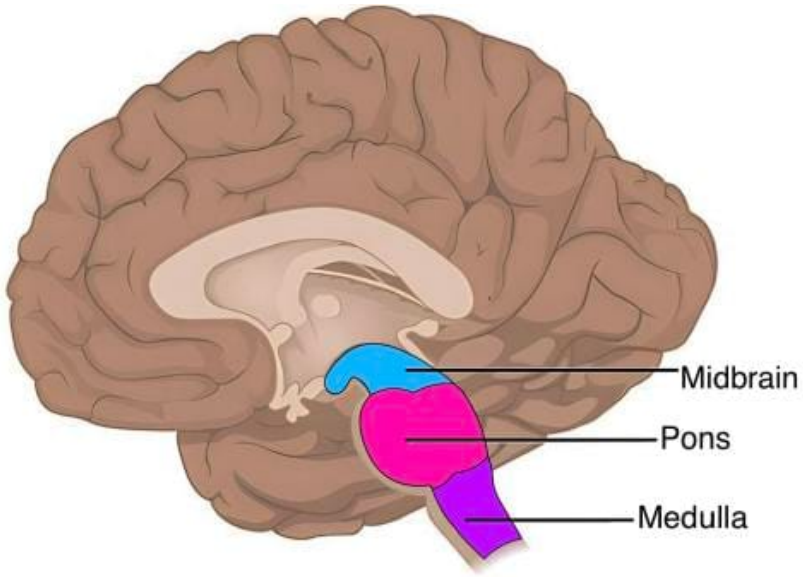


Figure 20 | The Brainstem | [33] The brainstem comprises three regions: the midbrain, the pons, and the medulla.

Midbrain

The midbrain, originating as one of the earliest divisions of the embryonic brain, occupies a compact space between the thalamus and the pons, housing the **superior** and **inferior colliculi**. The inferior colliculus plays a pivotal role in the auditory processing circuitry of the brainstem. Neurons within this structure transmit signals to the thalamus, which in turn relays auditory information to the cerebrum, enabling the conscious perception of sound. In contrast, the superior colliculus processes sensory inputs related to visual-spatial information and coordinates eye and head movement. Cranial nerves III (oculomotor) and IV (trochlear) originate from the midbrain, controlling extrinsic ocular movements. This intricate arrangement underscores the midbrain's significance in orchestrating sensory perception and motor responses essential for adaptive behavior.

Pons

"Pons," originating from the Latin word meaning "bridge," aptly describes its role as the primary connection between the cerebellum and the brainstem. Housing respiratory regulatory centers such as the apneustic and pneumotaxic centers alongside those of the medulla oblongata, the pons collectively contributes to the intricate control of breathing processes. Furthermore, within this structure reside cranial nerves V (trigeminal), VI (abducens), VII (facial), and VIII (vestibulocochlear), underscoring its importance in facilitating various sensory and motor functions, including facial sensation, eye movement, and hearing. The pons serves as a crucial nexus within the brainstem, orchestrating essential physiological processes and mediating communication between different regions of the CNS.

Medulla Oblongata

Often referred to as the medulla, this area corresponds to the **myelencephalon** during embryonic brain development (Figure 2). The prefix "myel" refers to the abundant white matter in this region, particularly its outer aspect, which seamlessly extends into the spinal cord's white matter. The brainstem features an extensive gray matter region known as the **reticular formation** or **reticular activating system** (RAS), distributed throughout, influencing processes such as sleep-wake cycles, cerebral activity, and attentiveness. The medulla houses vital centers crucial for cardiac, respiratory, and vasomotor functions, regulating autonomic processes like heart rate, blood pressure, and respiration. In maintaining cardiovascular homeostasis, the medulla coordinates autonomic nervous system responses, including adjustments in blood pressure. Additionally, it plays a crucial role in responding to descending inputs from the hypothalamus, amplifying sympathetic division activity in the cardiovascular system, particularly

during periods of anxiety or stress. Cranial nerves IX (glossopharyngeal) through XII (hypoglossal) originate within the medulla, further emphasizing its significance in regulating functions associated with the head, neck, and specialized senses.[34]

Reticular Activating System (RAS) or Reticular Formation

The reticular formation, a dispersed aggregation of gray matter spanning the entirety of the brainstem, is intricately linked to the modulation of sleep-wake cycles, encompassing broad cerebral activity and attention mechanisms. Functionally, this network processes and consolidates incoming sensory information, pivotal in numerous visceral and autonomic operations. Ascending fibers originating within the reticular formation transmit signals upwards to rouse and invigorate the cerebral cortex, enhancing the overall state of cortical vigilance. Concomitantly, descending fibers from the cerebral cortex can activate the RAS and concurrently wield influence over spinal cord activities through interactions with reticular formation cells. Notably, the reticular formation exhibits heightened sensitivity to the effect of general anesthetics, suggesting that drugs predominantly inhibit this region to induce the anesthetic state. It is also the site of origin of the descending analgesic pathways, where the neurons reach the spinal cord and block the transmission of pain signals to the brain via the endogenous opioid system.[35]

Cerebellum

The cerebellum shares similar gyri and sulci as the cerebrum (see Figure 21). Its primary function is to integrate data from the cerebrum with sensory signals from the PNS through the spinal cord. The cerebellum contributes approximately 10 percent of the brain's total mass. The arbor vitae, or "tree of life," manifests as a distinct branching pattern of white matter. Its proximity to the pons underscores its integration into the brainstem, emphasizing its central position in coordinating bodily movements. The central regions of the cerebellum include the **vermis** and **flocculonodular lobe** (Figure 22). They are pivotal in aligning visual information, equilibrium, and proprioceptive feedback to sustain balance and synchronize movements like walking or gait, accomplished through the descending output from the red nucleus. Conversely, the lateral hemispheres primarily plan motor functions through inputs from the frontal lobe that return via thalamic projections to the premotor and motor cortices. Processing in the central regions is oriented towards movements of the axial musculature, while the lateral regions govern activities of the appendicular musculature. The vermis predominantly receives input from the dorsal columns and spinocerebellar pathways.

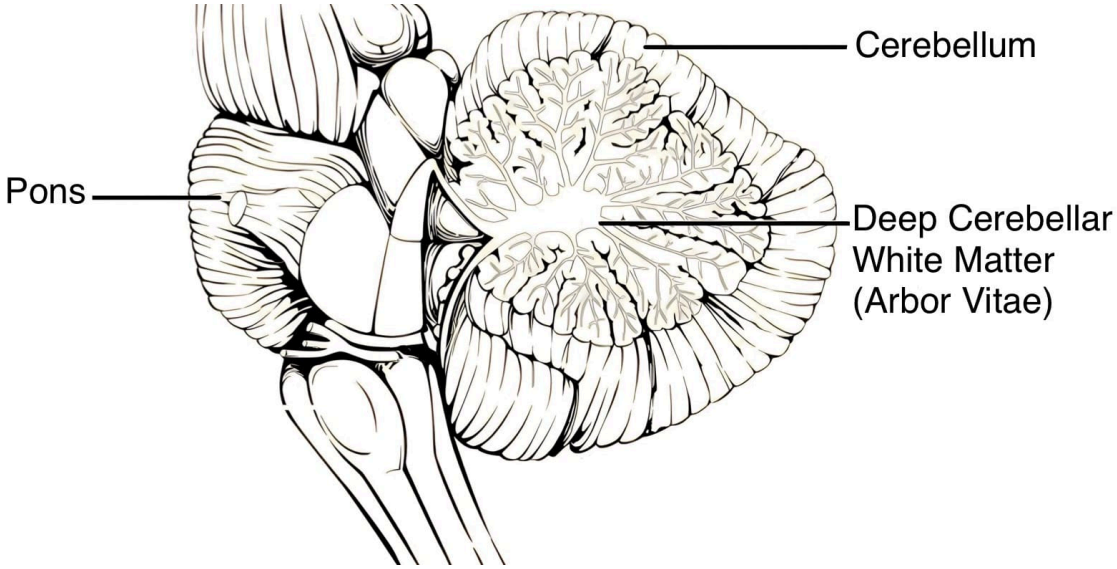


Figure 21 | The Cerebellum | [36] The cerebellum is positioned at the back of the brain and dorsal to the brainstem. The arbor vitae, or "tree of life," manifests as a distinct branching pattern of white matter. Its proximity to the pons underscores its integration into the brainstem, emphasizing its central position in coordinating bodily movements.

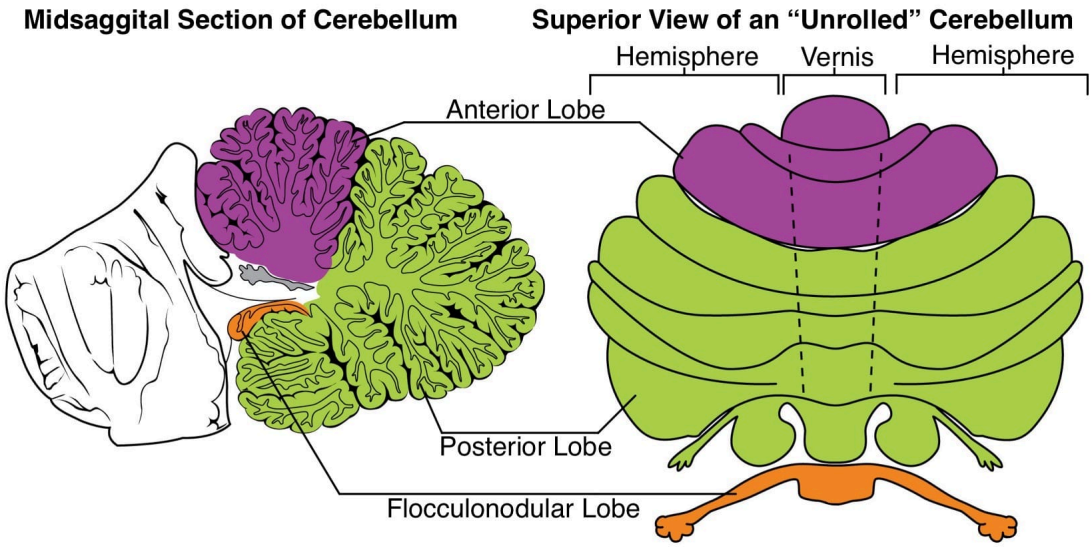


Figure 22 | Major Regions of the Cerebellum | [37] Two hemispheres are connected by the vermis. Its three lobes— anterior, posterior, and flocculonodular— contribute to the coordination of voluntary movements, balance, and posture maintenance.

Efferent fibers stemming from the cerebrum give rise to branches that interface with neurons in the pons. These neurons project into the cerebellum, supplying a duplicate of the motor directives sent to the spinal cord. Peripheral sensory information, introduced through cranial or spinal nerves, is replicated within the inferior olive nucleus, situated in the medulla oblongata. Fibers from this nucleus infiltrate the cerebellum and are juxtaposed with the efferent instructions from the cerebrum. For instance, if the primary motor cortex in the frontal lobe dispatches a directive to initiate walking through the spinal cord, a copy of this directive is transmitted to the cerebellum. Sensory feedback concerning muscle and joint status, proprioceptive particulars regarding walking movements, and equilibrium sensations converge on the cerebellum via the inferior olive. The cerebellum evaluates these inputs, and if any inconsistency arises between the initial cortical directive and the sensory feedback, it issues a corrective order to rectify the variance. The cerebellar output is channeled to the midbrain, which, in turn, transmits a descending input to the spinal cord to correct the information sent to skeletal muscles.

The cerebellum plays a crucial role in procedural memory, particularly in motor skills acquisition. Classical conditioning, famously demonstrated by Ivan Pavlov's experiments with dogs, provides a notable model for understanding the cerebellum's involvement in learning. In Pavlov's experiments, dogs learned to associate a neutral stimulus (such as a bell) with a biologically significant stimulus (such as food), leading to the conditioned response of salivation upon hearing the bell alone. This form of associative learning involves the cerebellum, among other brain regions. The cerebellum is heavily interconnected with areas involved in motor control and coordination, making it well-suited for the formation and storage of motor memories.[38]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 3.8: The Brain is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

3.9: Memory

The investigation of a renowned case involving a patient named Henry Molaison, referred to as HM, who underwent bilateral removal of his medial temporal lobes to mitigate intractable epilepsy illuminated the intricate association between brain structures and memory function. After the 1953 bilateral lobectomy, which alleviated his epilepsy but rendered HM incapable of forming new memories—a condition termed **anterograde amnesia**—he could recall most events predating the surgery, though experiencing partial loss of earlier memories, defined as **retrograde amnesia**. This circumstance catalyzed comprehensive investigations into memory mechanisms.

Although many questions are unanswered, memory processes are predominantly orchestrated by the temporal lobe in conjunction with subcortical structures beneath the cerebral cortex, including the hippocampus and amygdala. The retention of memories necessitates the involvement of medial temporal lobe structures. HM's inability to forge new memories, now termed **episodic memory**, signified that he had retained **short-term memory**, which is evident in tasks like the three-word recall. However, the transient nature of these memories within a short span indicated their non-transfer to long-term storage due to the removal of the medial temporal lobe structures. The distinction between short-term, **procedural**, and episodic memory demonstrated through HM's case suggests that distinct cerebral regions govern these functions. The perpetual storage of episodic memory mandates the hippocampus and affiliated medial temporal structures, while the location of these memories resides in the multimodal integration zones of the cerebral cortex. In contrast, short-term memory—**working** or **active memory**—is localized to the prefrontal lobe. Notably, HM's loss of medial temporal lobes did not result in the forfeiture of existing memories, nor did it impede the formation of new short-term memories. Consequently, it was inferred that the role of the hippocampus and adjoining medial temporal lobe structures lies in the transference or consolidation of short-term memories (residing in the prefrontal lobe) to **long-term memory** (located in the temporal lobe).[39]

Long-term potentiation (LTP) denotes a persistent augmentation in the synaptic efficacy between two neurons arising from synchronous stimulation. This phenomenon is postulated to play a pivotal role in memory encoding through synaptic strength modification, making LTP a fundamental cellular process underlying learning and memory.

For a visual depiction of LTP, a concise video is accessible at the link: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vso9jgfpI_c.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

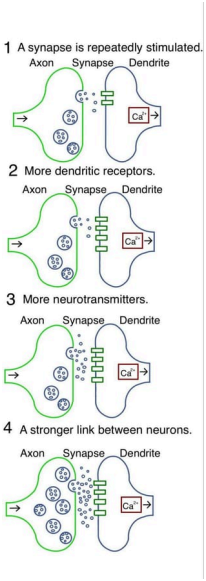


Figure 23 | Long-term Potentiation (LTP) |[40] LTP is a fundamental neurophysiological process crucial for learning and memory. Occurring primarily in the hippocampus and other brain regions, LTP involves the persistent strengthening of synaptic connections between neurons. This enduring enhancement in communication is often induced by repetitive and intense stimulation. Key features of LTP include the activation of NMDA receptors, which allow an influx of calcium ions into the postsynaptic neuron, triggering intracellular signaling cascades. This leads to changes in synaptic strength through the increased release of neurotransmitters and alterations in receptor sensitivity. The consolidation of LTP is associated with the growth of new synaptic connections, providing a cellular basis for long-term memory storage.

The hippocampus, a part of the limbic system, exhibits considerable plasticity, evident through LTP, as depicted in Figure 23. When subjected to high-frequency stimulation, the two axons that establish synapses with the pyramidal neurons within the hippocampus increase the amplitude of the EPSP, which is orchestrated through the following sequence: NMDA receptors, ordinarily obstructed by magnesium ion during neuronal inactivity, become unblocked upon depolarization. Glutamate, released by the presynaptic neuron, binds to AMPA receptors, inducing sodium ion influx and depolarization. This depolarization dislodges magnesium ions from the NMDA receptor, causing calcium ion influx, consequently triggering intracellular signaling pathways in the postsynaptic neuron. A resultant outcome of this signaling is the release of nitric oxide, which, in turn, prompts the presynaptic neuron to release additional glutamate and facilitates the insertion of more AMPA receptors. This sequence of heightened neurotransmitter release and increased receptor incorporation in a positive feedback manner constitutes a mechanism for establishing long-term memory in the hippocampus (Figure 24).[41]

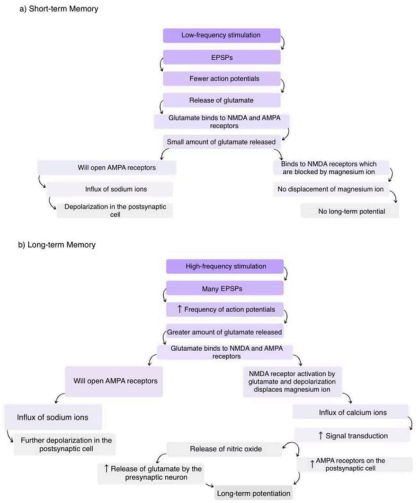


Figure 24 | Mechanisms of Memory Formation | The Pathway of Long-Term Potentiation (LTP) in the Hippocampus. This illustration outlines the pivotal steps of LTP in the hippocampus, a fundamental process underpinning memory formation. Starting with high-frequency neuronal stimulation and culminating in the enhancement of synaptic strength, each step succinctly captures the dynamic interplay between neurotransmitter release, receptor activation, and the subsequent intracellular responses that forge lasting neural connections essential for long-term memory.

This page titled 3.9: Memory is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

3.10: Sleep

Sleep is a recurring physiological state marked by altered consciousness, diminished sensory activity, and the suppression of nearly all voluntary muscular actions. It is differentiated from wakefulness by reduced responsiveness to stimuli and possesses a higher degree of reversibility than a comatose state.

Although the exact reason for sleep remains unclear, experts speculate that sleep provides neurons with chances for rest and regeneration. Without sleep, neurons might succumb to energy depletion or accumulation of waste products from cellular processes, culminating in malfunctions. Moreover, sleep affords the brain a platform for reinforcing crucial neuronal connections that may otherwise deteriorate due to inactivity. Concurrently, the release of growth hormone in children and young adults coincides with the deep sleep phase. This sleep phase also stimulates heightened synthesis and diminished degradation of proteins in numerous bodily cells. Notably, neural regions governing emotions, decision-making, and social interactions exhibit substantial quiescence during deep sleep. This observation implies that a specific sleep category contributes to preserving optimal emotional and social functioning during wakefulness.

Sleep-wake cycles exhibit a circadian rhythm with an approximate 24-hour periodicity. During the sleep phase, most bodily systems shift to an augmented anabolic state, amplifying growth and rejuvenation processes across multiple systems. Furthermore, sleep exerts multifaceted impacts on our daily functionality and physical and mental well-being, insights into which are still emerging. Neurons in the brainstem produce neurotransmitters like serotonin and norepinephrine that sustain the activity of specific brain regions during wakefulness. Meanwhile, distinct neurons within the brainstem initiate signaling upon sleep onset. These neurons seemingly "switch off" the signaling pathways that promote wakefulness.

The sensation of sleepiness is correlated with an accumulation of **adenosine** in the bloodstream while awake, leading to drowsiness. This chemical substance gradually disintegrates during the sleep phase. Caffeine consumption operates by inhibiting adenosine receptors in the brain, effectively counteracting the suppressive effect of adenosine on the arousal center.

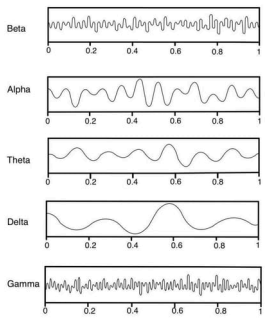


Figure 25 **|** Brain Waves During Sleep | [42] This figure displays brain wave patterns across sleep stages, as recorded through Electroencephalogram (EEG) readings. Beta waves dominate wakefulness, signifying heightened mental activity. Theta waves emerge during the transitional phase from wakefulness to sleep (NREM Stage 1) and are a prominent feature of REM sleep, associated with dreaming. NREM Stage 2 reveals the presence of a mix of theta and delta waves. Deep slow-wave sleep (NREM Stage 3-4) is characterized by the prevalence of high-amplitude delta waves, indicative of profound restorative sleep. Finally, during REM sleep, theta and beta waves resurface, mirroring wakeful brain activity accompanied by rapid eye movements. Additionally, gamma waves, associated with cognitive processes like memory and perception, and alpha waves, indicative of a relaxed but awake state, offer a more comprehensive understanding of the brain's intricate activity during the sleep cycle.

The **electroencephalogram** (EEG) is obtained by placing multiple electrodes on specific cranial regions, capturing cumulative responses of excitatory and inhibitory postsynaptic potentials originating in the cerebral cortex. **Alpha waves** manifest at 8 to 13

Hz frequency, are observed during wakefulness and rest, and are absent during sleep. **Beta waves** emerge during CNS activation, operating at 14 to 50 Hz. **Theta waves** occur during emotional stress in some adults and are more frequent in children, ranging from 4 to 7 Hz. **Delta waves** encompass all frequencies below 3.5 Hz and are predominant during sleep. **Gamma waves** are a type of wave pattern with a high frequency ranging from 25 to 100 Hz. These brain waves are associated with high level cognitive functioning.

Sleep comprises five phases: **stages 1**, **2**, **3**, and **4**, and **rapid eye movement** (**REM**) **sleep** (Figure 26). Progressing cyclically from stage 1 to REM and restarting with stage 1, approximately 50% of total sleep occurs in stage 2, 20% in REM, and 30% in other stages. In contrast, infants spend about half their sleep time in REM sleep.

During stage 1, a light sleep phase, intermittent awakenings are possible, characterized by slow eye movements and reduced muscle activity. Fragmented visual imagery and sudden muscle contractions, often initiated by a falling sensation, are typical upon awakening from this stage. Transitioning to stage 2 halts eye movements and introduces slower brain waves interspersed with bursts of **rapid sleep spindles**. In stage 3, delta waves of extremely low frequency appear, interspersed with smaller, faster waves. Stage 4 is dominated by delta waves (Figure 25). Stages 3 and 4, collectively known as **deep sleep**, are challenging to rouse from and are marked by the absence of eye movement or muscle activity. Emerging from deep sleep leads to grogginess and disorientation lasting several minutes, accompanied by bedwetting, night terrors, or sleepwalking in children.

REM sleep is identifiable by eye movements, muscle relaxation, pupillary constriction, and penile erection. Benzodiazepine usage (depressants that cause sedation and hypnosis) and increasing age reduce REM sleep duration. The initial REM sleep period typically arises 70 to 90 minutes after onset, and a complete sleep cycle averages 90 to 110 minutes (Figure 26). Early sleep cycles feature short REM durations and extended deep sleep phases. Throughout the night, REM periods elongate, while deep sleep diminishes. Morning sleep primarily encompasses stages 1, 2, and REM sleep.[43]

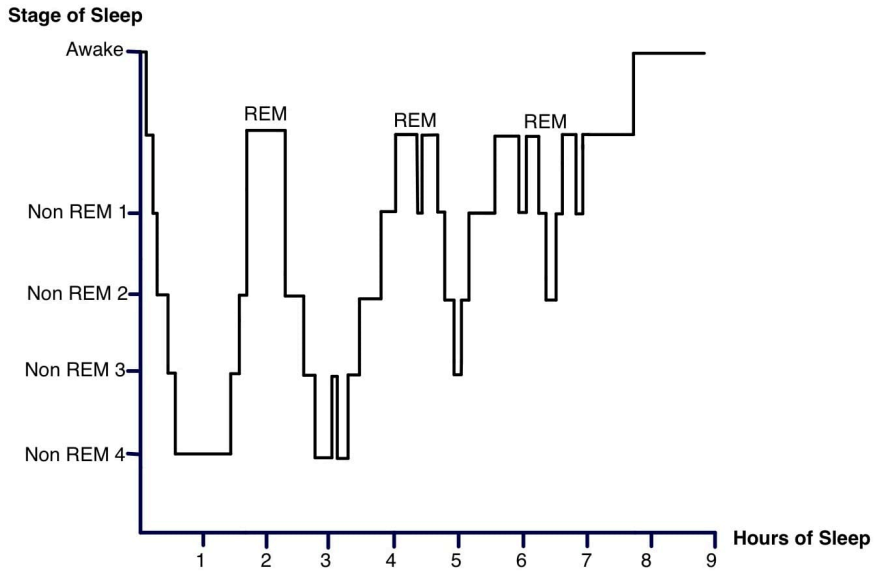


Figure 26 | Stages of Sleep During a Normal Sleep Cycle | [44] This figure illustrates the stages of sleep during a typical 8-hour sleep cycle. The initial wakefulness phase lasts approximately 0-5 minutes before transitioning into Stage 1, a brief light sleep period. This is followed by Stage 2, a deeper light sleep stage lasting 20-30 minutes. Stages 3 and 4 represent deep sleep. The REM (Rapid Eye Movement) sleep stage occurs in cycles lasting 70-90 minutes. These cycles repeat throughout the night, contributing to the recommended 8 hours of sleep.

Although individuals undergoing anesthesia or existing in an unconscious state are colloquially considered asleep, their arousal is unfeasible, and their cerebral EEGs lack the intricate, dynamic patterns characteristic of typical sleep. Instead, these EEGs exhibit sluggish and feeble activity, occasionally nearly impossible. A typical EEG pattern indicative of deep anesthesia is burst suppression, characterized by alternating phases of high-voltage brain activity and periods of no brain activity. Specific characteristics may vary depending on the type of anesthetic employed. For instance, isoflurane-induced delta activity lacks the higher frequencies observed during sleep, while propofol is associated with beta oscillations. In general, volatile anesthetics appear to result in a deficit of REM sleep.[45]

Insomnia, characterized by an inability to initiate or maintain sleep for the desired duration, constitutes a sleep disorder. Stress, circadian misalignment, dietary influences, and other elements can precipitate this condition.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 3.10: Sleep is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

3.11: The Spinal Cord

The spinal cord is another major component of the CNS. While cerebral development stems from neural tube elongations culminating in primary and subsequent secondary vesicles, the spinal cord sustains the tubular configuration and solely differentiates into specific domains. During neonatal maturation, distinctive anatomical attributes progressively manifest across the surface of the spinal cord.

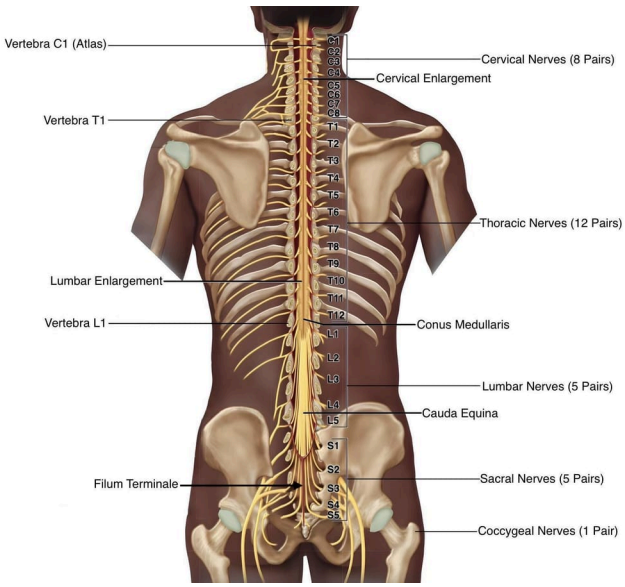


Figure 27 | Longitudinal View of the Spinal Cord | [46]. This illustration depicts the longitudinal anatomy of the spinal cord, including spinal nerves and enlargements. The spinal cord extends from the base of the brain, tapering down to the conus medullaris, marked by its lower termination. Emerging from the conus medullaris is the filum terminale, a slender thread-like structure that provides support and anchors the spinal cord within the spinal canal. The diagram also showcases the classification of spinal nerves into cervical (8 pairs), thoracic (12 pairs), lumbar (5 pairs), sacral (5 pairs), and coccygeal (1 pair) groups.

The spinal cord is a longitudinally oriented, cylindrical neural structure that extends from the foramen magnum at the base of the skull to the **conus medullaris**, a cone-shaped terminal end of the spinal cord near the first or second lumbar vertebra (Figure 27). Similar to the brain, a series of protective layers envelop the spinal cord, collectively called the meninges. The outermost layer is the dura mater, a tough and fibrous membrane that encases the spinal cord and forms a protective sheath. Adjacent to the dura mater lies the arachnoid mater, characterized by a delicate and avascular nature. The subarachnoid space between the arachnoid and pia mater contains CSF, providing buoyancy and cushioning to the spinal cord. The innermost layer, the pia mater, adheres closely to the surface of the spinal cord, following its contours (Figure 28). This layer is richly vascularized and facilitates the exchange of nutrients and waste products between the spinal cord and the surrounding CSF. Moreover, the pia mater extends inferiorly, forming the **filum terminale** and the denticulate ligaments, which anchor the spinal cord within the vertebral canal. Below the conus medullaris, a cluster of nerves known as the **cauda equina** ("horse's tail") emerges from the lumbar and sacral segments. The **cervical** and **lumbar enlargements** correspond to nerve supply for the upper and lower limbs, respectively. Comprising **ventral** and **dorsal roots** that have descended beyond the spinal cord proper ultimately course through the vertebral canal before exiting through their respective **intervertebral foramina** (Figure 27).

The anatomical boundary of the spinal cord involves its division into distinct regions predicated upon its spatial relationship with the vertebral column. The nomenclature assigned to a specific spinal cord region corresponds to the level at which spinal nerves traverse the intervertebral foramina. The cervical region is positioned immediately adjacent to the brainstem, followed sequentially by the thoracic, lumbar, and sacral regions. Notably, the length of the spinal cord does not mirror the entire vertebral column due to its limited elongation following the initial year or two of growth, while the skeletal structure continues expanding. The spinal nerves emanating from the spinal cord traverse the intervertebral foramina at their designated levels. Concurrently, as the vertebral column grows, these nerves undergo concomitant elongation, culminating in an elongated bundle of nerves, the cauda equina. The sacral spinal cord is localized at the level of the upper lumbar vertebral bodies, L1 to L2. Subsequently, the spinal nerves extend from their origins to align with the appropriate level of the vertebral column.

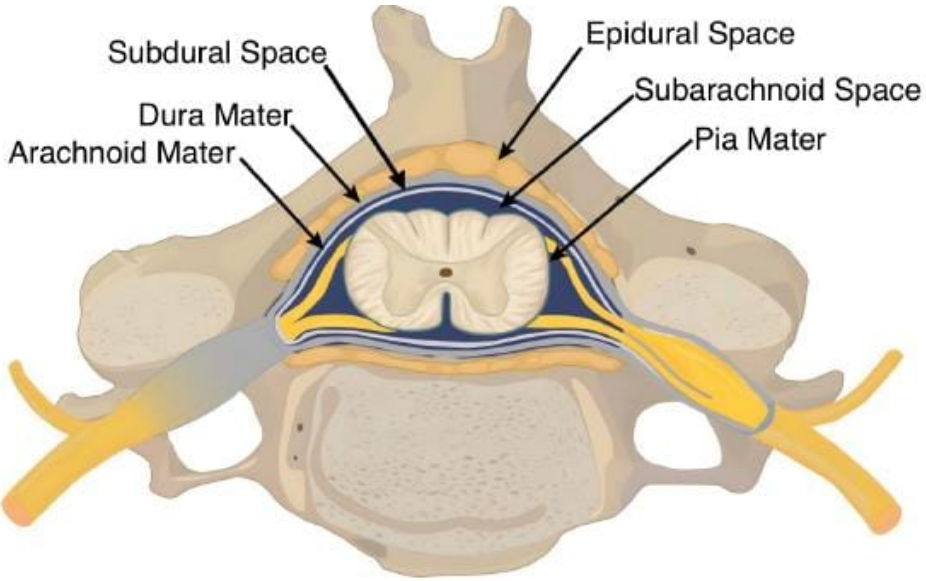


Figure 28 | Coverings of the Spinal Cord | [47] This diagram elucidates the protective coverings, collectively referred to as meninges, enveloping the spinal cord. The outermost layer, the dura mater, is a fibrous membrane forming a durable sheath around the spinal cord. Directly beneath it lies the arachnoid mater, a delicate, web-like membrane creating a space filled with cerebrospinal fluid. This fluid-filled space contributes to the buoyancy and protection of the spinal cord. The innermost layer, the pia mater, intimately adheres to the spinal cord, providing vascular support and nourishment to the neural tissue. |

As shown in Figure 29, the **anterior median fissure** delineates the anterior midline, while the posterior midline is restricted by the **posterior median sulcus**. Axons enter the posterior aspect of the spinal cord via the dorsal (posterior) nerve root, identifiable by the posterolateral sulcus on each side. The exit of axons from the anterior part occurs through the ventral (anterior) nerve root. Sensory functions are primarily attributed to the posterior regions, whereas motor functions are predominantly associated with the most anterior regions.

Gray Matter

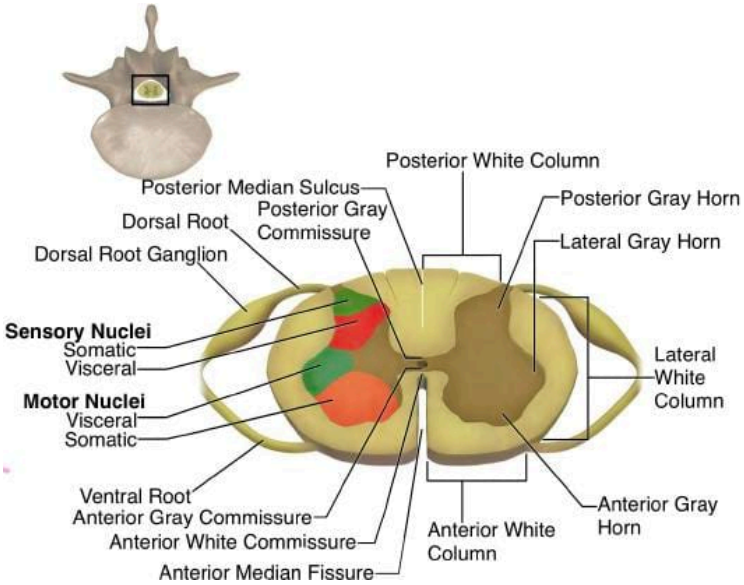


Figure 29 | Cross-section of the Spinal Cord | [48] This illustration depicts a transverse section of the spinal cord, revealing its intricate internal structure. The image showcases the central gray matter surrounded by the white matter. The dorsal and ventral horns house sensory and motor neurons, respectively, while the central canal traverses the gray matter containing cerebrospinal fluid. The white matter, referred to as columns, consisting of ascending and descending nerve fibers, forms the outer region and facilitates communication between different segments of the spinal cord and the brain.

In cross-sectional representation, the gray matter configuration within the spinal cord exhibits a pattern where bilateral expansion

mirrors its presence on the opposite side, delineating a bulbous "H" contour. As illustrated in Figure 29, the gray matter is further partitioned into distinct regions known as **horns**. The **posterior horn** serves as the locus for sensory information processing. The **anterior horn** generates motor commands, with the axons stemming from these neurons propagating motor signals to skeletal muscles. Limited to the thoracic, upper lumbar, and sacral segments, the **lateral horn** constitutes a crucial element of the sympathetic division within the autonomic nervous system.

White Matter

In a manner analogous to partitioning gray matter into horns, the white matter within the spinal cord is compartmentalized into columns (Figure 29). The columns extend linearly as contiguous bands of white matter. Enclosed within these columns are ascending bundles of nerve fibers responsible for conveying sensory data to the brain, while descending counterparts transmit motor directives originating from the brain. Positioned between the two posterior horns of gray matter lie the posterior columns. The anterior columns are between the two anterior horns, bordered by the axons of motor neurons emanating from that specific gray matter region. The white matter bilaterally within the spinal cord, flanked by the posterior horn and the axons of anterior horn neurons, constitutes the lateral columns. Comprising axons of ascending tracts, the posterior columns facilitate the transmission of sensory information. Conversely, the anterior and lateral columns contain diverse groups of axons, including both ascending and descending tracts.[49]

Regional Vertebral Characteristics

It is essential to discuss the details of a vertebra in relation to the location of the spinal cord to recognize the landmarks. A typical vertebra comprises a **vertebral body**, a **vertebral arch** featuring two **pedicles** and two **laminae**, and an arrangement of seven **processes**—**articular**, **transverse**, and **spinous**—that serve as points of attachment for articulation and musculature (Figure 30). The **intervertebral discs** demarcate and separate the vertebral bodies from one another. In instances where two adjacent vertebrae engage in articulation, the configuration of the pedicles delineates the contours of the **intervertebral foramina**, through which spinal nerves find passage. Combining the body of the vertebra with the vertebral arch yields the **vertebral foramen**, a spacious central aperture that encompasses and safeguards the spinal cord.[50]

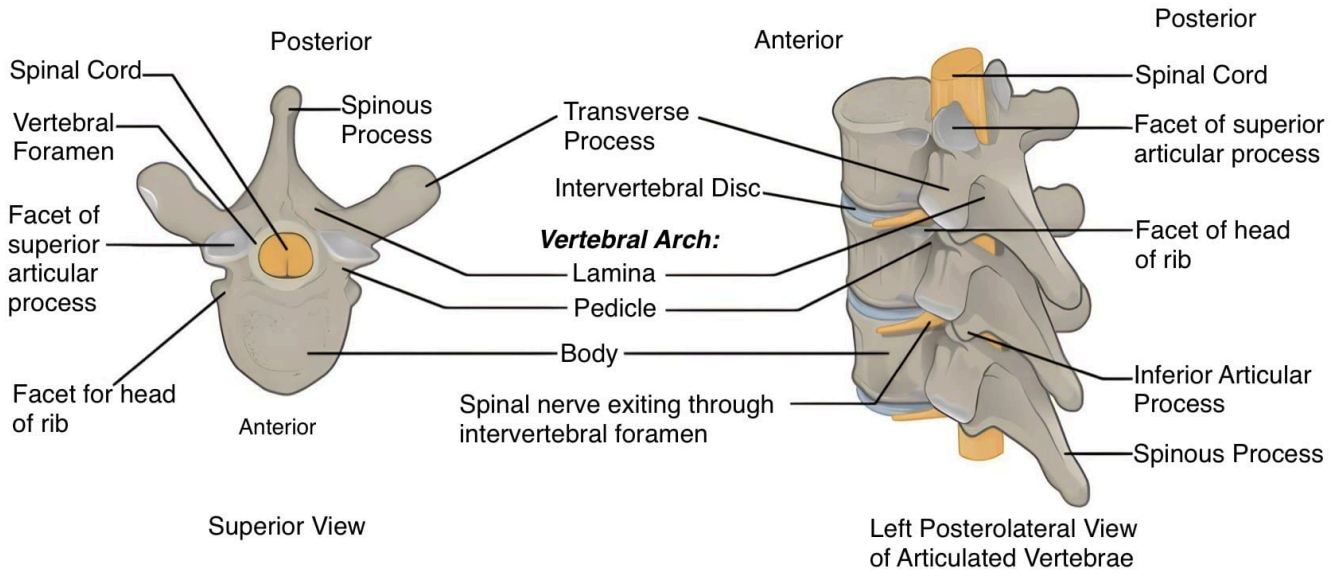


Figure 30 | Details of a Vertebra Enclosing the Spinal Cord | [51] Vertebrae, the structural units of the spine, possess several features crucial for spinal function. The vertebral body, anterior in position, provides weight-bearing support and houses intervertebral discs. The vertebral arch encircles the spinal cord posteriorly, comprising spinous and transverse processes serving as muscle and ligament attachment points. Articular processes form facet joints, facilitating vertebral articulation and movement. Intervertebral foramina permit spinal nerve passage.

Dorsal Root Ganglion

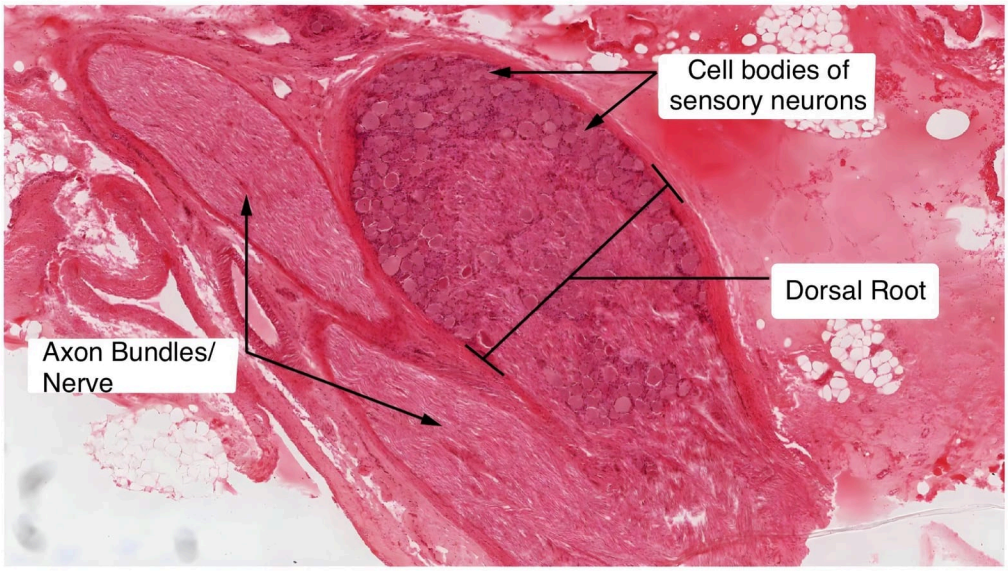


Figure 31 | Spinal Cord and Root Ganglion | [52] The illustration includes both a cross-section of the spinal cord and a section of the dorsal root ganglion (tissue source: canine). LM × 1600. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of the University of Michigan Medical School © 2012)

A ganglion is an assemblage of neuron cell bodies in the PNS. These ganglia can be classified into sensory and autonomic categories based on their primary functional roles. **Sensory ganglia** include **dorsal** (posterior) **root ganglia**, which exemplify the most prevalent type. These ganglia encapsulate cell bodies of neurons whose axons serve as sensory terminations in the periphery, such as within the skin, extending into the CNS via the dorsal nerve root. This ganglion constitutes a localized enlargement of the nerve root. Microscopic examination reveals neuron cell bodies and bundled posterior nerve root fibers (Figure 31). Notably, the cells within the dorsal root ganglion exhibit a unipolar configuration, reflecting their morphological classification. Analogous to the dorsal root ganglion, another variant is the **cranial nerve ganglion** associated with cranial nerves. While the roots of cranial nerves reside within the cranial cavity, the ganglia are situated outside the cranial vault. For instance, the **trigeminal ganglion** is superimposed upon the temporal bone, with its corresponding nerve anchored to the mid-pons region of the brainstem. Neurons in cranial nerve ganglia also exhibit a unipolar configuration.

Another key classification comprises the autonomic nervous system, consisting of the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions. The **sympathetic chain ganglia** form a sequential series aligned alongside the vertebral column, receiving central inputs from the lateral horn of the thoracic and upper lumbar spinal cord. Additionally, three **paravertebral ganglia** are situated within the cervical region. Functionally akin to the chain ganglia, the **prevertebral ganglia** form another triad of autonomic ganglia external to the chain but share similar functions, positioned anterior to the vertebral column. Neurons within these autonomic ganglia exhibit a multipolar morphology with dendrites radiating around the cell body, facilitating synapses with spinal cord neurons. Subsequently, neurons within the chain, paravertebral and prevertebral ganglia project to cranial and cervical areas, thoracic and abdominal regions, and pelvic cavities to regulate the sympathetic aspect of homeostatic mechanisms.[53]

This page titled 3.11: The Spinal Cord is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

3.12: Nerves

Nerves are aggregates of axonal bundles within the PNS. Distinguished from their central analog, referred to as tracts, these structures within the peripheral milieu manifest distinct characteristics. Nerves exhibit a composition beyond that of nervous tissue alone; they encompass connective tissues integral to their architectural constitution and vasculature for tissue nourishment. The exterior aspect of a nerve is surrounded by a fibrous connective tissue layer designated as the **epineurium**. Internally, axons are further organized into bundles, referred to as **fascicles**, each encased within an individual fibrous connective tissue layer termed the **perineurium**. Ultimately, individual axons find encapsulation within a matrix of loose connective tissue known as the **endoneurium** (Figure 32).

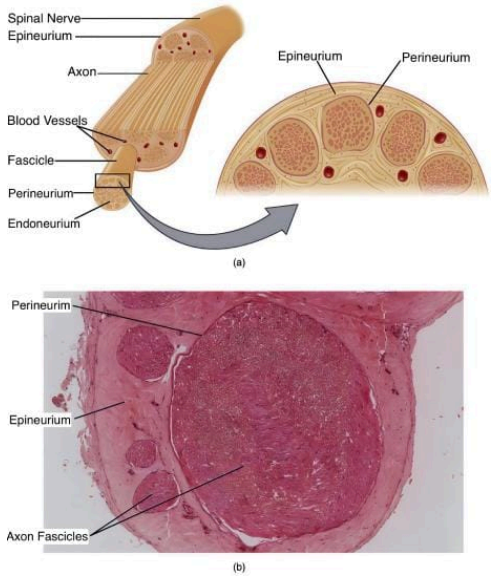


Figure 32 | Histology of a Nerve in its Cross Section | [54] The cross section of a nerve reveals its intricate composition and organization. Under a microscope, nerve tissue appears as a dense network of fibers surrounded by connective tissue layers. At the core of the nerve is the endoneurium, a delicate layer of connective tissue that ensheaths individual nerve fibers. Bundles of nerve fibers are further organized into fascicles, each surrounded by the perineurium, a denser connective tissue layer that provides structural support and protection to the fascicles. The entire nerve is enveloped by the epineurium, a tough outer layer of connective tissue that encases the entire nerve and provides additional protection and support. (Tissue source: Simian). LM × 40. (Micrograph provided by the Regents of the University of Michigan Medical School © 2012)

Nerves share an intimate association with their corresponding regions within the CNS, be it cranial nerves interfacing with the brain or spinal nerves establishing linkage with the spinal cord. A plexus encompasses an intricate network of axons (or vessels). This characterization extends to neural tissue and structures housing vascular components, such as the choroid plexus.[55]

Cranial Nerves

The nerves affixed to the brain are denoted as cranial nerves, primarily charged with overseeing sensory and motor functions within the head and neck regions. However, one of these cranial nerves (Cranial nerve X) extends its influence to organs nestled within the thoracic and abdominal cavities, serving the parasympathetic nervous system. The collective assembly comprises twelve cranial nerves, restricted by their sequential designations CNI through XII (Figure 33). Cranial nerves exhibit categorization into sensory, motor, or mixed nerves encompassing both modalities. In such instances, the axons within these nerves either originate from sensory ganglia positioned external to the cranial cavity or from motor nuclei within the brainstem. Sensory axons enter the brain and establish synapses within specific nuclei. Conversely, motor axons connect with skeletal muscles in the head or neck regions. Among the twelve cranial nerves, three are exclusively constituted by sensory fibers; five are purely motor in nature, and the remaining four present a composite architecture accommodating both sensory and motor elements.

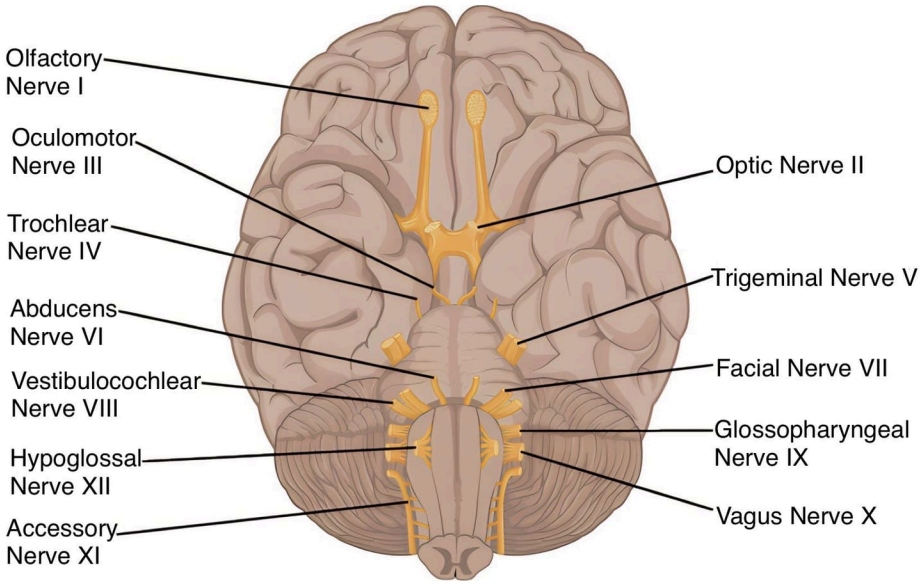


Figure 33 | The Cranial Nerves | [56] This figure illustrates the twelve pairs of cranial nerves. Each cranial nerve is labeled numerically and anatomically, highlighting their unique functions and connections within the CNS.

The cranial nerves encompass a range of functions within the nervous system. The **olfactory nerve** (CN I) and **optic nerve** (CN II), respectively, oversee olfaction and visual perception. The **oculomotor nerve** (CN III) governs eye movements by regulating four extraocular muscles, lifting the upper eyelid during upward gaze, and contributing to pupillary constriction. The **trochlear nerve** (CN IV) and **abducens nerve** (CN VI) similarly manage ocular movements but exert their influence over distinct extraocular muscles. The **trigeminal nerve** (CN V) is accountable for cutaneous sensations across the face and control over masticatory muscles. The **facial nerve** (CN VII) commands muscles involved in facial expressions, contributes to gustatory perception, and orchestrates the production of saliva. The **vestibulocochlear nerve** (CN VIII) governs auditory and equilibrium senses. The **glossopharyngeal nerve** (CN IX) presides over muscular control within the oral cavity and upper throat, participates in gustatory perception, and coordinates salivary secretion. The **vagus nerve** (CN X) contributes to homeostatic regulation, predominantly targeting autonomic ganglia of thoracic and upper abdominal organs. The **spinal accessory nerve** (CN XI) controls neck muscles alongside cervical spinal nerves, whereas the **hypoglossal nerve** (CN XII) controls the lower throat and tongue musculature. The oculomotor, facial, and glossopharyngeal nerves feature axons that engage the autonomic ganglia. Oculomotor fibers initiate pupillary constriction, while facial and glossopharyngeal fibers initiate salivation.

A mnemonic sentence, "Some Say Marry Money But My Brother Says Big Brains Matter More," corresponds to the fundamental function of each nerve, segregating them into sensory, motor, or mixed classifications. Purely sensory nerves encompass the first, second, and eighth cranial nerves: olfactory (CN I), optic (CN II), and vestibulocochlear (CN VI) nerves. The trio of eye movement-related nerves—oculomotor (CN III), trochlear (CN IV), and abducens (CN VI)—are solely motor in nature. Similarly, the spinal accessory (CN XI) and hypoglossal (CN XII) nerves serve as motor nerves. The remaining nerves, trigeminal (CN V), facial (CN VII), glossopharyngeal (CN IX), and vagus (CN X) feature both sensory and motor components. Often, nerves with shared functions are intertwined. For instance, the trigeminal and facial nerves pertain to facial aspects, with one addressing sensations and the other overseeing muscle actions. Likewise, the facial and glossopharyngeal nerves also transmit gustatory sensations and control salivary glands. The vagus nerve partakes in visceral responses to taste, notably the gag reflex.[57]

Spinal Nerves

The nerves interconnected with the spinal cord are recognized as spinal nerves, manifesting a considerably more organized arrangement than cranial nerves. All spinal nerves exhibit combined sensory and motor axons that diverge into two nerve roots. Sensory axons enter the spinal cord through the dorsal nerve root, while the motor fibers, encompassing somatic and autonomic components, emerge via the ventral nerve root. Each nerve's dorsal root ganglion manifests as an expansion of the spinal nerve.

Spinal nerves expand outward from the vertebral column to innervate the peripheral areas. However, the nerves within the periphery do not follow a direct continuation of spinal nerves; instead, the axons within these nerves undergo reorganization, adopting divergent trajectories. Axons originating from distinct spinal nerves congregate to form systemic nerves. This aggregation transpires at four specific sites along the vertebral column, termed **nerve plexuses**, where the term "plexus"

describes networks of nerve fibers devoid of associated cell bodies.

Among the four nerve plexuses, two exist at the cervical level, while one resides at the lumbar level and another at the sacral level (Figure 34). The **cervical plexus** emerges from spinal nerves C1 through C5, branching into the posterior neck and head. One of the major nerves from the cervical plexus, more specifically C3 to C5, is the **phrenic nerve**, which connects with the diaphragm at the base of the thoracic cavity. The **brachial plexus** constitutes another cervical-level plexus, arising from spinal nerves C6 through T1, orchestrating nerves of the arms—reflecting its designation, "brachial." The **radial nerve**, a notable component of this plexus, gives rise to the **axillary nerve**, which extends to the armpit region. Alongside the radial nerve, the **ulnar** and **median nerves** traverse the arm.

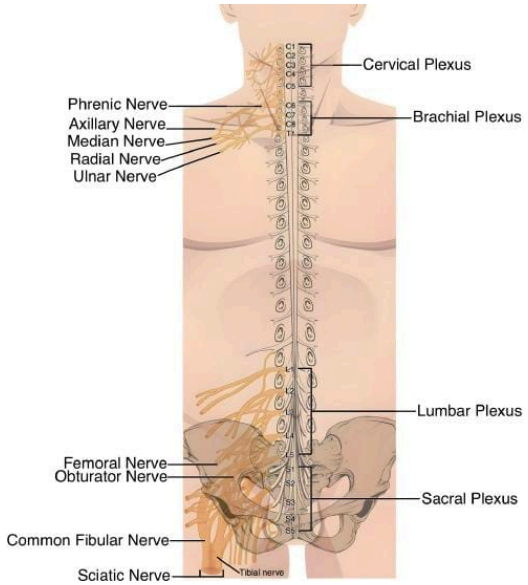


Figure 34 | Spinal Nerve Plexuses | [58] This figure illustrates the complex network of spinal nerve plexuses, which are formed by the interweaving and branching of spinal nerves. The major plexuses depicted include the cervical, brachial, lumbar, and sacral plexuses, each serving distinct regions of the body. The illustration provides a visual representation of how spinal nerves merge and diverge to form interconnected networks, facilitating the transmission of sensory and motor impulses throughout the body.

The **lumbar plexus** originates from all lumbar spinal nerves, supplying nerves to the pelvic region and anterior leg. Prominent within this plexus, the **femoral nerve** generates the **saphenous nerve**, extending through the anterior lower leg. The **sacral plexus** emerges from lower lumbar nerves L4 and L5 and sacral nerves S1 to S4. The **sciatic nerve** is a fusion of the tibial and fibular nerves stemming from this plexus. Crossing the hip joint, the sciatic nerve is closely associated with the condition **sciatica**, arising from nerve compression or irritation.

Spinal nerves of the thoracic region, T2 through T12, are not part of the plexuses but rather emerge and give rise to the intercostal nerves found between the ribs, which articulate with the vertebrae surrounding the spinal nerve (Table 1).[59]

Table 1. Spinal Nerve Plexuses

Spinal Plexus	Associated Nerves
Cervical Plexus	C1 - C5
Brachial Plexus	C5 - T1
Lumbar Plexus	L1 - L4

Spinal Plexus	Associated Nerves
Sacral Plexus	L4, L5, S1 - S4
Coccygeal Plexus	S4, S5, Co

Dermatomes and Myotomes

A **dermatome** is a specific skin area innervated by sensory fibers from a single spinal nerve. Such distinction of coverage by individual spinal nerves is crucial for understanding sensory perception in the body. Dermatomes play a vital role in diagnosing neurological conditions, pinpointing sensory deficits, and assessing the potential impact of nerve damage or compression on sensory function. They are often used to create dermatomal maps, which illustrate the distribution of sensory innervation across the body surface (Figure 35). These maps are valuable tools in medical practice, aiding in clinical examination, diagnosis, and surgical planning. Further insights into this topic can be gained from this video https://youtu.be/CYZBH6NX8wg?si=1JR510o0vAb48MkR

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

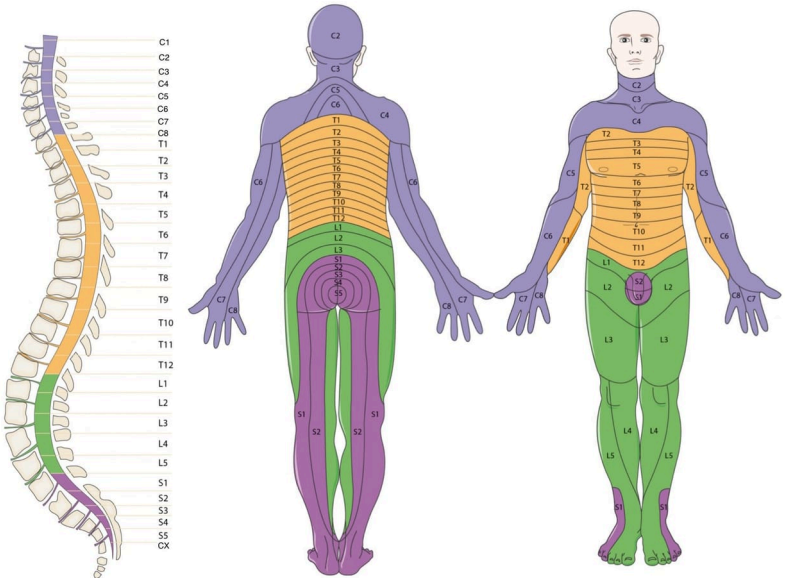


Figure 35 | Dermatomes | [60] This figure presents a dermatome map depicting the distribution of sensory innervation across the body surface by spinal nerves. Each dermatome is labeled and color-coded to indicate the corresponding spinal nerve segment from which it originates. The dermatome map provides a visual representation of how sensory information from different regions of the body is relayed to specific spinal nerve levels.

A **myotome** is a group of muscles innervated by motor fibers from a single spinal nerve. These muscle groups allow various movements and actions controlled by the nervous system. Myotomes are essential in understanding motor function and

neurological disorders. By testing the strength of muscles associated with specific myotomes, healthcare practitioners can diagnose and monitor conditions that affect motor control, such as spinal cord injuries, nerve compression, or neuromuscular disorders, and detect weakness or paralysis.[61]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 3.12: Nerves is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

3.13: Reflexes

Simple somatic reflexes do not include the higher centers discussed for conscious or voluntary aspects of movement. Reflexes can be spinal or cranial, depending on the nerves and central components involved. A few examples are discussed in detail here.

An example of a monosynaptic reflex is the **stretch reflex**, such as the **patellar reflex**, in which **muscle spindles** serve as the primary sensory receptors (Figure 36).

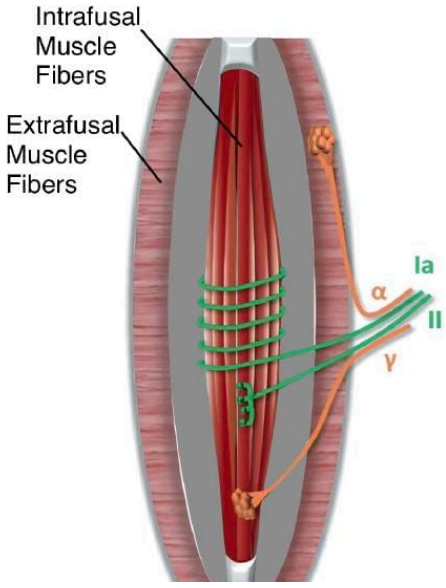


Figure 36 | Illustration of a Muscle Spindle within Skeletal Muscle | [62]. A muscle spindle is a sensory receptor located within the skeletal muscle. The intrafusal muscle fibers (center) are specialized fibers wrapped by sensory nerve endings, while the surrounding extrafusal muscle fibers generate force for movement. Sensory afferent neurons (Ia and II fibers) relay stretch information to the central nervous system, while gamma (γ) motor neurons regulate intrafusal fiber tension to maintain spindle sensitivity. Alpha (α) motor neurons control the extrafusal muscle fibers to generate force.

Muscle spindles are sensory receptors that are distributed throughout the skeletal muscle. They are made of collections of specialized muscle fibers called **intrafusal muscle fibers**, which are situated parallel to the skeletal muscle fibers, referred to as **extrafusal muscle fibers**. Each muscle spindle has its own afferent and efferent supply. The **gamma motor neuron** is its efferent neuron, whereas the **afferent fiber** is its afferent neuron (Figure 36). **Alpha motor neurons** are the efferent neurons that supply the extrafusal muscle fibers.[63]

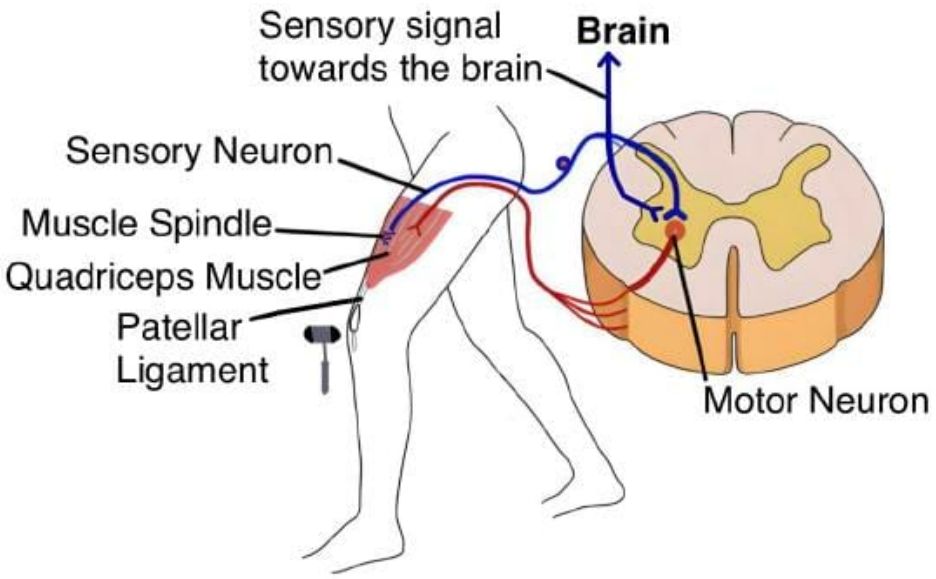


Figure 37 | Stretch Reflex | [64] This figure illustrates the stretch reflex, a response that maintains muscle tone and prevents the overstretching of muscles. When a muscle undergoes rapid stretching, sensory nerve fibers within the muscle spindle detect the change in muscle length and transmit signals to the spinal cord. Upon reaching the spinal cord, these sensory signals activate motor neurons, which, in turn, stimulate the stretched muscle to contract, thereby resisting further stretching. This reflex arc, depicted in the figure, represents a rapid and automatic feedback loop that helps maintain posture, stability, and coordinated movement.

When the patellar tendon is tapped (Figure 37), skeletal muscle fibers within the quadriceps femoris muscle are stretched. Their intrafusal muscle fibers are also elongated, which increases the firing rate of afferent nerve fibers. The afferent neuron establishes a direct synapse with the alpha motor neuron, resulting in muscle contraction. The muscle spindles, inducing the muscle to contract, thus evoke the characteristic knee-jerk reaction. For a visual understanding of the role of the muscle spindle, refer to this YouTube video: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=F871bBWS4oY.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

The **Golgi Tendon Reflex** operates as a **disynaptic** or **bisynaptic** mechanism that opposes the stretch reflex. **Golgi tendon organ** is a proprioceptive sensory receptor designed to detect variations in muscle tension. These organs are positioned at the junctions where skeletal muscle fibers meet their corresponding tendons. During active muscle contraction, the Golgi tendon organs are stimulated, prompting the transmission of action potentials through their afferent fibers. Subsequently, these sensory neurons engage with inhibitory interneurons in the spinal cord. This engagement leads to the inhibition of alpha-motor neurons, ultimately bringing about the relaxation of the initially contracting muscle.

The **Flexor Withdrawal Reflex** is **polysynaptic**. For instance, when an individual steps on a painful stimulus like a sharp, broken glass piece, nociceptors on the same side (**ipsilateral**) are activated. These nociceptors trigger the activation of motor neurons responsible for the contraction of leg muscles, causing flexion. In parallel, an inhibitory interneuron, initiated by a collateral branch of the nociceptor fiber, impedes the motor neurons governing extensor muscles, effectively counteracting any extension. Conversely, a mirrored response is observed on the opposing side (**contralateral)**. Extensor muscles are engaged, while flexor muscles are suppressed, a phenomenon known as the **crossed-extensor reflex** (Figure 38). This orchestrated process ensures leg extension on one side to maintain balance in response to the painful stimulus.[65]

Further insights into this topic can be gained from this video: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=RLe9koPfVoo.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

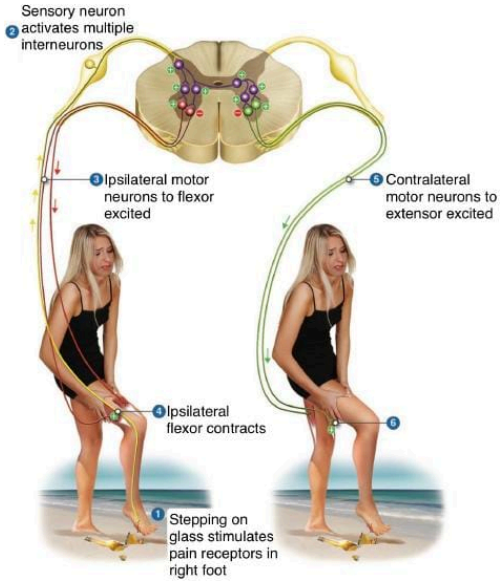


Figure 38 | Crossed-extensor Reflex | [66] This figure illustrates the crossed-extensor reflex, a response that accompanies the withdrawal reflex to maintain balance and stability during a sudden withdrawal of a limb. Upon stimulation of nociceptors in the affected limb, sensory nerve fibers transmit signals to the spinal cord. The withdrawal reflex causes the flexor muscles of the affected limb to contract, pulling the limb away from the painful stimulus. Simultaneously, the crossed-extensor reflex activates extensor muscles on the opposite side of the body to support weight-bearing and maintain balance. This reflex arc involves interneurons within the spinal cord that coordinate the sequential activation of flexor and extensor muscles.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Sensory Pathways

Specific regions of the CNS coordinate somatic processes using sensory inputs and motor outputs of peripheral nerves. The essential areas of the CNS that play a role in somatic processes can be separated into the spinal cord, brainstem, diencephalon, cerebral cortex, and subcortical structures.

A neural conduit transmitting peripheral sensory information to the CNS is termed an **ascending pathway** or **ascending tract** (Figure 39). Different sensory modalities traverse distinct routes within the CNS. Tactile and other somatosensory stimuli elicit responses from receptors situated in the skin, muscles, tendons, and joints throughout the body. Somatosensory stimuli originating below the neck propagate through the sensory pathways in the spinal cord, whereas those emerging from the head and neck region follow the trajectories of cranial nerves, explicitly engaging the trigeminal system.

Typically, four distinct orders of neurons in the sensory pathways play a pivotal role in processing sensory information (Figure 39). **First-order neurons**, or primary afferent neurons, are the initial receptors for transduced signals. These neurons have their cell bodies situated within the dorsal root ganglia of the spinal cord or in the ganglia of cranial nerves. **Second-order neurons** in the spinal cord or brainstem receive input from one or more primary afferent neurons. They play a crucial role in transmitting this sensory information to the thalamus. In some instances, the axons of second-order neurons may undergo decussation (crossing over) within the spinal cord or brainstem before ascending to the thalamus. **Third-order neurons** are strategically located within the relay nuclei of the thalamus. It is from this central hub that encoded sensory information begins its journey towards the cerebral cortex. **Fourth-order neurons** are the final destination for this sensory data, residing within the appropriate sensory areas of the cerebral cortex. Once here, the processed information gives rise to the conscious perception of the stimulus, allowing us to experience and interpret the sensory input.

The **dorsal column pathway**, also known as the **dorsal column-medial lemniscus pathway** (DCML; Figure 39), is a fundamental component of the sensory system. It is responsible for transmitting sensory information related to fine touch, proprioception (the sense of body position), and vibratory sensations from the periphery to the brain. The DCML pathway is organized as follows:

1. **Primary Afferent Neurons**: Sensory receptors, such as Meissner's corpuscles and Pacinian corpuscles for touch and Merkel cells for fine touch, are located throughout the body. The primary afferent neurons, also known as first-order neurons, have cell bodies located in the dorsal root ganglia (in the spinal cord) or cranial nerve ganglia (in the brainstem).
2. **Dorsal Columns**: These ascending white matter tracts in the spinal cord consist of two main components: the **fasciculus gracilis** (located more medially) and the **fasciculus cuneatus** (located laterally). These columns carry sensory information from the lower body (gracilis) and upper body (cuneatus) respectively. The primary afferent neurons enter the **nucleus gracilis** and **nucleus cuneatus** within the medulla and synapse with second-order neurons.
3. **Second-order Neurons**: Second-order neurons receive input from primary afferent neurons in the nucleus gracilis and nucleus cuneatus within the medulla. They then send their axons across to the opposite side in a process known as decussation. This crossing over ensures that sensory information from one side of the body is processed by the contralateral (opposite) hemisphere of the brain.
4. **Medial Lemniscus**: The axons of the second-order neurons ascend through the brainstem in a bundle known as the medial lemniscus. This pathway ensures the transmission of sensory information to the thalamus.
5. **Third-order Neurons**: The medial lemniscus neurons synapse in the thalamus. Third-order neurons in the thalamus receive these sensory signals and project them further into the cerebral cortex. Ultimately, the sensory information reaches the appropriate areas of the cerebral cortex, such as the primary somatosensory cortex (postcentral gyrus), where it is consciously perceived.

The DCML pathway enables us to discern between textures, recognize the position of our limbs without visual input, and perceive vibrations from objects or tools we handle. Dysfunction in this pathway can impair fine motor skills and spatial awareness.

The **spinothalamic pathway**, also known as the **anterolateral system**, is a component of our sensory system that helps detect and respond to noxious or potentially harmful stimuli. It is responsible for transmitting sensory information related to pain, temperature, and crude touch from the periphery to the brain. This pathway is essential for perceiving and responding to potentially harmful or noxious stimuli. The details of the spinothalamic pathway are described below:

1. **Primary Afferent Neurons (First-Order Neurons)**: Nociceptors and thermoreceptors are distributed throughout the body and are mainly concentrated in the skin and mucous membranes. The cell bodies of primary afferent neurons are located in the dorsal root ganglia (in the spinal cord) or cranial nerve ganglia (in the brainstem).
2. **Dorsal Horn of the Spinal Cord**: The axons of primary afferent neurons enter the spinal cord and synapse with second-order neurons in the dorsal horn of the spinal cord. The axons of the second-order neurons (carrying pain and temperature information) cross over to the opposite side of the spinal cord soon after entering.
3. **Anterolateral Funiculus**: The axons of the second-order neurons, which have now crossed over, ascend through the anterolateral funiculus, a white matter tract on the contralateral side of the spinal cord. Unlike the dorsal column pathway, where specific nuclei in the brainstem process sensory information, the spinothalamic pathway ascends through the spinal cord, reaching the reticular formation. From there, it projects to various thalamic nuclei.
4. **Third-Order Neuron**s: Third-order neurons from the thalamus project sensory signals further into the cerebral cortex, specifically the somatosensory cortex (postcentral gyrus), where it is consciously perceived. This perception enables us to sense pain, changes in temperature, and crude touch.

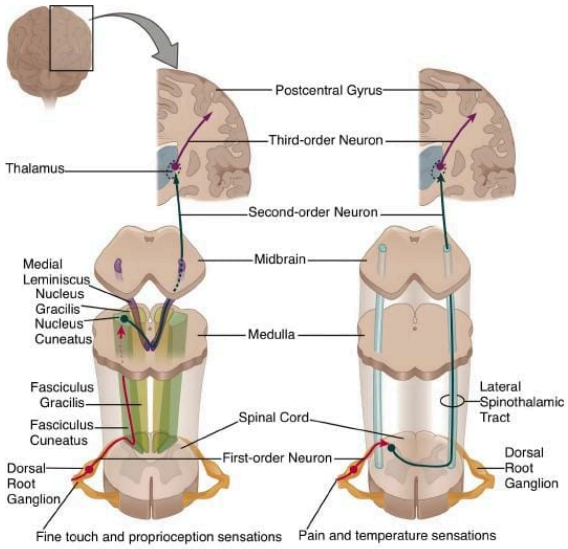


Figure 39 | Ascending Sensory Pathways of the Spinal Cord | [67] This figure illustrates the major ascending sensory pathways of the spinal cord, which transmit sensory information from the periphery to the brain for processing and perception. The primary pathways depicted include the dorsal column-medial lemniscal pathway and the spinothalamic tract. The dorsal column-medial lemniscal pathway carries tactile, proprioceptive, and vibratory sensations from the body to the brain, with information ascending ipsilaterally before decussating in the brainstem. The spinothalamic tract conveys pain, temperature, and crude touch sensations, crossing over to the contralateral side shortly after entering the spinal cord.

Parallel to their origin from dorsal root ganglion cells, these two systems share similarities. The dorsal column system predominantly mediates tactile sensations and proprioception, while the spinothalamic tract pathway predominantly mediates pain and temperature sensations. Furthermore, both systems feature contralateral second-order neurons projecting across the midline to the opposite side of the brain or spinal cord. In the dorsal column system, this crossing-over occurs in the brainstem; in the spinothalamic pathway, it transpires at the same spinal cord level where the sensory information entered. The third-order neurons within both pathways follow the same pattern. In both instances, the second-order neuron establishes synaptic connections within the thalamus, with the thalamic neuron subsequently projecting to the somatosensory cortex. The thalamus acts as a pivotal relay station for sensory input, encompassing a multitude of special senses and ascending somatosensory tracts. Each distinct sensory system is routed through a specific nucleus within the thalamus. The thalamus is an obligatory intermediary for most sensory tracts destined for the cerebral cortex, where conscious sensory perception is initiated except for olfaction.[68]

Motor Pathways

The salient attribute of the somatic nervous system resides in its jurisdiction over skeletal musculature. Somatic sensory input imparts information to the nervous system concerning the external milieu, yet the subsequent reaction involves deliberate engagement of voluntary muscle actions. The term *voluntary* conveys the notion that a conscious intent governs the initiation of a given movement. Nonetheless, specific facets of the somatic system employ voluntary muscles in ways that bypass the intended direction. A case in point is the capacity for respiratory functions to transition into an unconscious regulatory mode, enabling the individual to direct attention elsewhere.

Within the cerebral cortex, the sequential handling of sensory perception undergoes a continuum from primary processing to associative processing, culminating in integration within multimodal cortical regions. This hierarchy of processing levels facilitates the assimilation of sensory perceptions into memory and, of greater significance, drives the generation of responses. The culmination of cortical processing, spanning primary, associative, and integrative sensory domains, triggers an analogous series of motor processing stages, generally orchestrated within distinct cortical regions.

Located at the far front of the frontal lobe, the prefrontal cortex handles high-level planning rather than direct muscle execution. It sends its motor plans to secondary motor regions, the premotor cortex and supplemental motor area, which refine the movements. Unlike the rest of the frontal lobe, stimulating the prefrontal cortex with electricity does not trigger muscle contractions, defining it as an executive rather than a motor region.

Adjacent to the primary motor cortex, two noteworthy regions play integral roles in planning and synchronizing movements. The

premotor cortex occupies a more lateral position, whereas the supplemental motor area is situated in a medial and superior orientation. The premotor area regulates core muscle movements to sustain posture during actions, while the supplemental motor area assumes responsibility for movement planning and coordination. Moreover, the supplemental motor area governs sequential movements rooted in prior experiential knowledge, encompassing learned motor patterns. Neuronal activity within these regions is most pronounced in the lead-up to movement initiation. For instance, these areas may predetermine the preparatory motions for driving a car in anticipation of a traffic signal altering its state.

Cerebral motor output cascades downward into the brainstem and spinal cord to govern musculature via motor neurons. **Upper motor neurons** within the primary motor cortex establish synapses with **lower motor neurons** in the spinal cord or brainstem. Two descending pathways manifest as the **corticospinal tract** (Figure 40) and the **corticobulbar tract**. These designations reflect their cortical origin and targets, either the spinal cord or the brainstem, with *bulbar* denoting the brainstem as an enlarged region atop the spinal cord. These two pathways are referred to as **direct** or **pyramidal** pathways that assume responsibility for voluntary skeletal muscle movements. Each motor command originating in the primary motor cortex travels along the axons, eliciting the activation of upper motor neurons located in the cranial motor nuclei or the ventral horn of the spinal cord. Axons of the corticobulbar tract are ipsilateral, projecting from the cortex to the motor nucleus on the same side of the body. Conversely, the corticospinal tract axons predominantly cross the brainstem (lateral) or spinal cord (anterior) midline and synapse on the contralateral side of the body. Consequently, the right motor cortex governs the muscles on the left side of the body and vice versa.

The corticobulbar tract is a two-neuron upper motor neuron pathway that conducts voluntary motor commands from the primary motor cortex to the motor nuclei of cranial nerves located throughout the brainstem. Arising predominantly from the head and face representations of the precentral gyrus, these axons descend through the corona radiata and pass through the genu of the internal capsule before terminating in the midbrain, pons, and medulla. The corticobulbar tract innervates cranial nerves V, VII, IX, X, XI, and XII to control the skeletal muscles of mastication, facial expression, swallowing, phonation, and tongue movement. Functionally, most cranial nerve motor nuclei receive bilateral innervation which provides redundancy and preserves muscle function following unilateral cortical damage. The two clinically vital exceptions to this rule are the motor neurons governing the lower quadrant of the face (CN VII) and one of the muscles of the tongue (CN XII), both of which receive predominantly contralateral input.

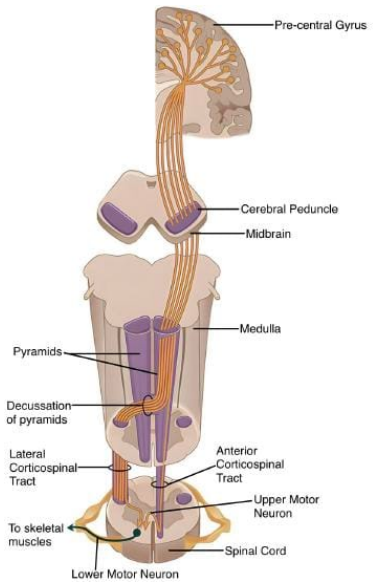


Figure 40 | Corticospinal Tract | [69] This figure illustrates the corticospinal tract, a major descending motor pathway responsible for voluntary motor control and coordination. Originating from the primary motor cortex (precentral gyrus), the corticospinal tract descends through the brainstem before crossing over at the level of the medulla oblongata (pyramidal decussation). After crossing, the fibers continue down the contralateral side of the spinal cord as the lateral corticospinal tract, innervating motor neurons in the ventral horn that control voluntary movements of skeletal muscles. Additionally, a smaller portion of fibers remains uncrossed and descends on the ipsilateral side as the anterior corticospinal tract, contributing to motor control, particularly of axial muscles.

The corticospinal tract descends through the deep white matter of the cerebrum, traversing the caudate nucleus and putamen as the internal capsule bundle. Subsequently, it navigates the midbrain as the cerebral peduncles en route through the pons and finally enters the medulla. In the medulla, these tracts form the pyramids, a substantial white matter tract (Figure 40). The pyramidal decussation at the medullary-spinal boundary marks the pivotal point where most corticospinal tract fibers cross to

the opposite side. At this juncture, the tract bifurcates into two segments, each commanding distinct muscular domains. The **lateral corticospinal tract** is the largest part of the corticospinal tract, with 90 percent of the nerve fibers. It begins in the cerebral cortex, decussates in the medulla and extends down the contralateral side of the spinal cord. It deals with the voluntary movement of the contralateral limbs. The **anterior corticospinal tract** governs the musculature of the body trunk. These axons refrain from crossing in the medulla, maintaining an anterior trajectory as they traverse the brainstem and enter the spinal cord. Upon reaching their designated level, they cross to the opposite ventral horn to synapse with lower motor neurons. As these axons enter the ventral horn, they interface with their corresponding lower motor neurons, predominantly stationed in their medial sectors to regulate axial trunk muscles. Because bodily trunk movements encompass both sides, the anterior corticospinal tract does not exhibit strict contralateral control. Certain collateral branches of the tract extend into the ipsilateral ventral horn, overseeing synergistic muscles on the same side or inhibiting antagonistic muscles via interneurons. The anterior corticospinal tract harmonizes postural muscles for expansive body movements through bilateral influence, exhibiting both ipsilateral and contralateral contributions.[70]

Extrapyramidal Pathways

Outside the corticospinal tract, the descending neural pathways connecting the brain and the spinal cord collectively constitute the extrapyramidal system. This term stems from its distinction from the corticospinal pathway, which encompasses the pyramids in the medulla. Several pathways originating from the brainstem contribute to this system.

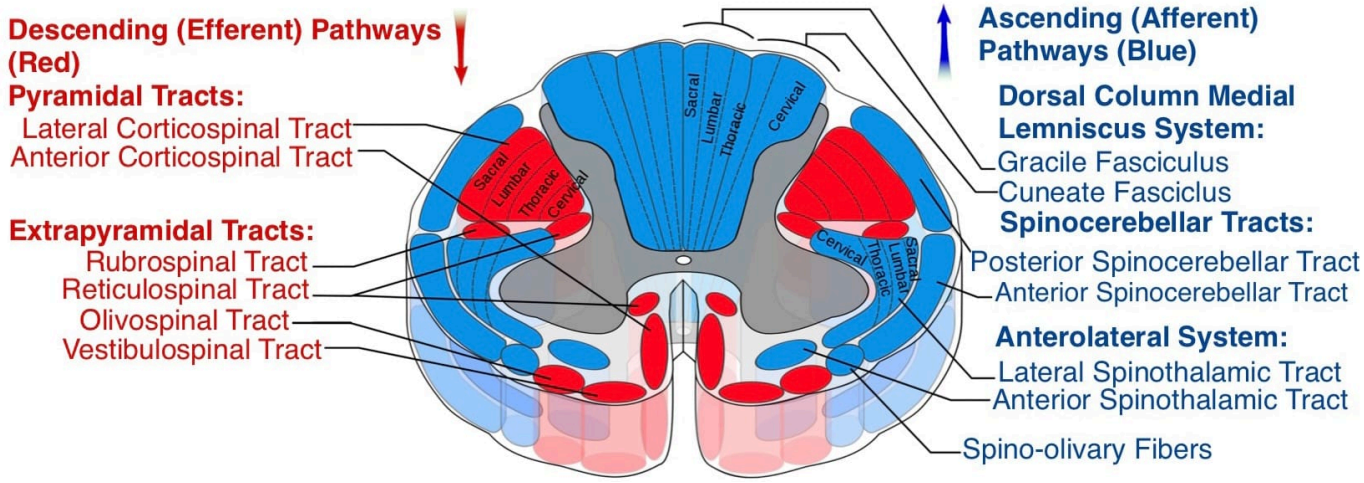


Figure 41 | Locations of Spinal Fiber Tracts | [71] This schematic illustrates the major fiber tracts within the spinal cord. The corticospinal tract originates from the motor cortex and descends through the spinal cord in the lateral columns. The dorsal column-medial lemniscus pathway is located in the dorsal columns of the spinal cord. The spinothalamic tract runs through the lateral and ventral columns of the spinal cord. Spinocerebellar tracts are found in the lateral and ventral columns. The rubrospinal tract originates in the red nucleus of the midbrain and descends through the lateral columns. Reticulospinal tracts arise from the brainstem reticular formation and extend through various parts of the spinal cord. Vestibulospinal tracts begin in the vestibular nuclei and descend through the lateral and ventral columns. Descending autonomic pathways are distributed throughout the spinal cord, influencing autonomic functions.

The **tectospinal tract** emanates from the midbrain and extends to the spinal cord, playing a crucial role in postural movements governed by the superior colliculus, a part of the midbrain. The terminology of this tract derives from an alternate designation for the superior colliculus, **tectum**. The **reticulospinal tract** connects the reticular activating system and the spinal cord (Figure 41). This tract influences trunk and proximal limb muscles associated with posture and locomotion, impacting muscle tone and autonomic functions.

The **vestibulospinal tract** interlinks the brainstem nuclei of the vestibular system with the spinal cord, enabling the modulation of posture, movement, and balance through equilibrium-related inputs from the vestibular system. The basal nuclei, pivotal for regulating CNS-initiated movements, exert influence over the extrapyramidal system, including its thalamic feedback to the motor cortex.

The orchestration of conscious muscle movements surpasses the simple issuance of a solitary command from the precentral

gyrus to the relevant motor neurons. During any bodily activity, muscles relay feedback to the brain, and the brain constantly revises instructions dispatched to the muscles. The cerebellum plays a significant role in the motor system by comparing cerebral motor commands with proprioceptive feedback. Corticospinal fibers projecting to the ventral horn of the spinal cord have branches that synapse in the pons, which further project to the cerebellum. Additionally, proprioceptive sensations from the dorsal column system have a collateral projection to the medulla, extending to the cerebellum. These two streams of information are juxtaposed within the cerebellar cortex. Conflicts arising from disparities between motor commands from the cerebrum and body position information relayed by proprioceptors prompt the cerebellum to stimulate the red nucleus of the midbrain.

The **red nucleus** transmits corrective commands to the spinal cord via the **rubrospinal tract**. The tract's name originates from the word *ruby*, reminiscent of the term *red*.

Thus, the somatic nervous system exclusively governs skeletal muscles. Due to the necessity of reaching peripheral muscles, the axon assumes a relatively elongated trajectory. Cell body diameters may span hundreds of micrometers to accommodate the lengthy axon, with some axons extending up to a meter, such as lumbar motor neurons that innervate muscles in the first digits of the feet.[72]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 3.13: Reflexes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

3.14: References

1. Elshazzly M, Lopez MJ, Reddy V, et al. Embryology, Central Nervous System. [Updated 2023 Apr 3]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2024 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK526024/
2. Open Oregon State. (n.d.). Early Embryonic Development of Nervous System [Figure 14.1.1]. In Anatomy & Physiology. Adapted from OpenStax Anatomy & Physiology. CC BY-SA. Retrieved from [https://open.oregonstate.education/aandp/chapter/14-1-embryonic-development/]
3. Open Oregon State. (n.d.). Primary and Secondary Vesicle Stages of Development [Figure 14.1.2]. In Anatomy & Physiology. Adapted from OpenStax Anatomy & Physiology. CC BY-SA. Retrieved from [https://open.oregonstate.education/app/uploads/sites/157/2021/02/1302_Brain_Vesicle_DevN.jpg]
4. Scientific Animations. (2020, January 24). A detailed depiction of different layers in skull using a 3D medical animation still image, with special focus on different layers of Meninges. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/1/13/3D_Medical_Illustration_Meninges_Details.jpg]
5. Telano LN, Baker S. Physiology, Cerebral Spinal Fluid. [Updated 2023 Jul 4]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2024 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK519007/
6. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 13.18 Cerebrospinal Fluid Circulation.Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/65b175d65cc4e4d696c6115ef4e8ec768f3915c9]
7. Purves D, Augustine GJ, Fitzpatrick D, et al., editors. Neuroscience. 2nd edition. Sunderland (MA): Sinauer Associates; 2001. The Blood Supply of the Brain and Spinal Cord. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK11042/
8. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 20.27 Arteries Serving the Brain. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/ad81523d6f8187d6df2fd981afa686087d9bb76e]
9. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 13.16 Dural Sinuses and Veins. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/4fe498935062da91ca5daa553291127695a1c43f]
10. Gofur EM, Bordoni B. Anatomy, Head and Neck: Cerebral Blood Flow. [Updated 2023 Jul 17]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2024 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK538134/
11. Dagal A, Lam AM. Cerebral autoregulation and anesthesia. Curr Opin Anaesthesiol. 2009 Oct;22(5):547-52. doi: 10.1097/ACO.0b013e32833020be. PMID: 19620861.
12. Belfaqih Co. (2021). Basic structures of the brain highlighted. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/c/cc/Basic_structures_of_the_brain_highlighted.png]
13. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 12.3 Gray Matter and White Matter. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/8b50cbf444749bdb2c13c93dddf6e7145cc308bc]
14. Sebastian023. (2012, September 2). *Brain lobes, main sulci and boundaries*. Retrieved from https://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Lobes_of_the_brain#/media/File:LobesCaptsLateral.png]
15. Zilles K. Brodmann: a pioneer of human brain mapping-his impact on concepts of cortical organization. Brain. 2018 Nov 1;141(11):3262-3278. doi: 10.1093/brain/awy273. PMID: 30358817; PMCID: PMC6202576.
16. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 13.8 Brodmann's Areas of the Cerebral Cortex. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/f2ede825d615044873eaaca9adb23d939c79ff32]
17. Blaus, B. (2014, March 12). Motor and Sensory Regions of the Cerebral Cortex [Image]. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/d/d2/Blausen_0102_Brain_Motor%26Sensory.png]
18. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 14.27 Phineas Gage. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/f832b04d5817cad33bb7431bb7e3890e802fa1e1] [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/1ffac1fa8c0841ccde79b925640cd40cd534cacb]
19. Catani M. A little man of some importance. Brain. 2017 Nov 1;140(11):3055-3061. doi: 10.1093/brain/awx270. PMID: 29088352; PMCID: PMC5841206.
20. Ralf. (2016, June 11). The "motor homunculus". The body surface is projected onto the gyrus precentralis (coronal section of the right hemisphere). Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/0/06/Motor_homunculus.svg]
21. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 14.23 The Sensory Homunculus. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/96080eb5404fe1fe6cef01dd1f93387a46102c71]

22. Hickok G. The functional neuroanatomy of language. Phys Life Rev. 2009 Sep;6(3):121-43. doi: 10.1016/j.plrev.2009.06.001. PMID: 20161054; PMCID: PMC2747108.
23. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 16.6 Broca's and Wernicke's Areas. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/248ada5fedc5d295c1ec6f7638211936bec9d7d4]
24. Corballis MC. Left brain, right brain: facts and fantasies. PLoS Biol. 2014 Jan;12(1):e1001767. doi: 10.1371/journal.pbio.1001767. Epub 2014 Jan 21. PMID: 24465175; PMCID: PMC3897366.
25. Reynolds, John N.J. and Parr-Brownlie, Louise C.. "basal ganglia". Encyclopedia Britannica, 12 Aug. 2015, https://www.britannica.com/science/basal-ganglion. Accessed 21 March 2024.
26. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 13.9 Frontal Section of Cerebral Cortex and Basal Nuclei. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/b61ad1040e5c5e97fe24ed9bb7730ff8049d19d5]
27. Kalia LV, Lang AE (August 2015). "Parkinson's disease". Lancet. 386 (9996): 896–912. doi:10.1016/s0140-6736(14)61393-3
28. Rajmohan V, Mohandas E. The limbic system. Indian J Psychiatry. 2007 Apr;49(2):132-9. doi: 10.4103/0019-5545.33264 . PMID: 20711399; PMCID: PMC2917081.
29. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 15.12 The Limbic Lobe. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/19ba1b0aa643ebe3ccbefc9e338662d603c3f530]
30. Ilahi S, Beriwal N, Ilahi TB. Physiology, Pineal Gland. [Updated 2023 Apr 24]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2024 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK525955/
31. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 13.11 The Diencephalon. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/33321c113f077238b2a12cfbad1d9edc5158b072]
32. https://bio.libretexts.org/Bookshelv...e_Diencephalon
33. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 13.12 The Brain Stem. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/850091deeb9f5948976e80e1d66900e78cb0e445]
34. Basinger H, Hogg JP. Neuroanatomy, Brainstem. [Updated 2023 Jul 4]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2024 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK544297/
35. Augustine JR (2016).Chapter 9: The Reticular Formation. Human Neuroanatomy (2nd ed.). John Wiley & Sons. pp. 141–153. ISBN 978-1119073994.
36. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 13.13 The Cerebellum. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/50ad0adfd4f00bc8443f645a1f9ce581c6b0671b]
37. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 16.15 Major Regions of the Cerebellum. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/fd4ebdfc2f524bb301c402da13b94bd926ccbc55]
38. Britannica, The Editors of Encyclopaedia. "memory". Encyclopedia Britannica, 14 Mar. 2024, https://www.britannica.com/science/memory-psychology. Accessed 21 March 2024.
39. Baddeley, A. D., Eysenck, M. W., & Anderson, M. C. (2015). *Memory* (2nd ed.). Psychology Press.
40. Tomwsulcer. (2011, June 14). Long term potentiation [Image]. Own work. Retrieved from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikiped...irst_Stage.png
41. Lynch, MA. Long-Term Potentiation and Memory. Physiol Rev 84: 87–136, 2004; 10.1152/physrev.00014.2003.
42. Sleep Foundation. (2023, December 22). Graphic illustration of brain waves during sleep stages. In Alpha Waves and Sleep. Retrieved from [https://www.sleepfoundation.org/how-sleep-works/alpha-waves-and-sleep.]
43. Brain Basics: Understanding Sleep | National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke. www.ninds.nih.gov.
44. Dana Foundation. (n.d.). [Sleep cycles graphic basics]. Understanding Sleep. Retrieved from [https://dana.org/resources/understanding-sleep/]
45. Date A, Bashir K, Uddin A, Nigam C. Differences between natural sleep and the anesthetic state. Future Sci OA. 2020 Nov 30:FSO664. doi: 10.2144/fsoa-2020-0149. PMID: PMC7720371.
46. Spurlock, G. (n.d.). Figure 11.5.4 Gross Anatomy of the Spinal Cord. Retrieved from LibreTexts website. [https://med.libretexts.org/Bookshelves/Anatomy_and_Physiology/Human_Anatomy_(Lange_et_al.)/11%3A_Central_Nervous_System/11.05%3A_Spinal_Cord]
47. Spurlock, G. (n.d.). Figure 11.5.1 Spinal Cord Protection. Retrieved from LibreTexts website. [https://med.libretexts.org/Bookshelves/Anatomy_and_Physiology/Human_Anatomy_(Lange_et_al.)/11%3A_Central_Nervous_System/11.05%3A_Spinal_Cord]
48. BruceBlaus. (2016). Spinal Cord Sectional Anatomy. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/a/ad/Spinal_Cord_Sectional_Anatomy.png]

49. Britannica, The Editors of Encyclopaedia. "spinal cord". Encyclopedia Britannica, 6 Mar. 2024, https://www.britannica.com/science/spinal-cord. Accessed 21 March 2024.
50. Anatomy and Physiology https://med.libretexts.org/Bookshelves/Anatomy_and_Physiology/Anatomy_and_Physiology_(Boundless)/7%3A_Skeletal_System_-_Parts_of_the_Skeleton/7.3%3A_The_Vertebral_Column/7.3B%3A_Parts_of_a_Vertebra. Retrieved on 3/23/24
51. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 7.23 Parts of a Typical Vertebra. *Anatomy and Physiology*. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/b7ace936bef1712ff26e889bfd6c372b328c185e]
52. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 13.19 Dorsal Root Ganglion. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/a8819bbbb2540ce4cdff6a21d3e0ccfa8210d3ee]
53. Britannica, The Editors of Encyclopaedia. "ganglion". Encyclopedia Britannica, 4 Jul. 2017, https://www.britannica.com/science/ganglion. Accessed 21 March 2024.
54. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 13.21 Nerve Structure. *Anatomy and Physiology*. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/9e05068e0623f34c0dbfd7424fd0a1015539467b]
55. Stefano Geuna, Stefania Raimondo, Giulia Ronchi, Federica Di Scipio, Pierluigi Tos, Krzysztof Czaja, Michele Fornaro, Chapter 3 Histology of the Peripheral Nerve and Changes Occurring During Nerve Regeneration,International Review of Neurobiology, Academic Press, Volume 87, 2009, Pages 27-46, ISSN 0074-7742, ISBN 9780123750846, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0074-7742(09)87003-7.
56. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 13.23 The Cranial Nerves. *Anatomy and Physiology*. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/0301c86d5b037f2400c0bf1f32466c60cd8d93ee]
57. Britannica, The Editors of Encyclopaedia. "cranial nerve". Encyclopedia Britannica, 1 Mar. 2024, https://www.britannica.com/science/cranial-nerve. Accessed 21 March 2024.
58. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 13.24 Nerve Plexuses of the Body. *Anatomy and Physiology*. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/319c0f73ddde3ef546f6484950e49e2ca194534d]
59. Betts, J Gordon; Desaix, Peter; Johnson, Eddie; Johnson, Jody E; Korol, Oksana; Kruse, Dean; Poe, Brandon; Wise, James; Womble, Mark D; Young, Kelly A (July 16, 2023). Anatomy & Physiology. Houston: OpenStax CNX. 13.4 The Peripheral Nervous System. ISBN 978-1-947172-04-3.
60. Laboratoires Servier. (2016, October). Dermatomes 3. Smart Servier. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/6/62/Nervous_system_-_Dermatomes_3_--_Smart-Servier.png] Laboratoires Servier. (2016, October). Dermatomes 2. Smart Servier. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/b/b6/Nervous_system_-_Dermatomes_2_--_Smart-Servier.png] Laboratoires Servier. (2016, October). Dermatomes 1. Smart Servier. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/4/48/Nervous_system_-_Dermatomes_1_--_Smart-Servier.png]
61. https://med.libretexts.org/Courses/Okanagan_College/HKIN_110%3A_Human_Anatomy_I_for_Kinesiology/03%3A_The_Nervous_System/3.03%3A_Spinal_Nerves/3.3E%3A_Dermatomes
62. Sonkodi, B., Berkes, I., & Koltai, E. (2020). Muscle spindle [Image]. In *Antioxidants* (Vol. 9, Issue 3, Article 212). MDPI. https://www.mdpi.com/antioxidants/antioxidants-09-00212/article_deploy/html/images/antioxidants-09-00212-g001.png
63. Macefield, VG; Knellwolf, TP (1 August 2018). "Functional properties of human muscle spindles". Journal of Neurophysiology. 120 (2): 452–467. doi:10.1152/jn.00071.2018
64. Raether, A. (2020, December 13). Reflex arc [Illustration]. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/3/32/Reflex_arc-La.svg]
65. https://med.libretexts.org/Bookshelves/Anatomy_and_Physiology/Anatomy_and_Physiology_(Boundless)/12%3A_Peripheral_Nervous_System/12.10%3A_Reflexes/12.10C%3A_Spinal_Reflexes. Retrieved 3/23/24
66. Cenveo AnatomyTool. (2012, December 15). Crossed-Extensor Reflex. AnatomyTool. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/a/aa/AnatomyTool_Crossed_extensor_reflex.jpg]
67. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022).Figure 14.19 Anterior View of Ascending Sensory Pathways of the Spinal Cord. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/315269b9a0a9e79e9eea6a4014d77a681c37af24]
68. Wang LH, Ding WQ, Sun YG. Spinal ascending pathways for somatosensory information processing. Trends Neurosci. 2022 Aug;45(8):594-607. doi: 10.1016/j.tins.2022.05.005. Epub 2022 Jun 12. PMID: 35701247.
69. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 14.28 Corticospinal Tract. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/46a9e1b56b4f0a95698e5d35a2dd1f58adddb56d]
70. Lemon RN. Descending pathways in motor control. Annu Rev Neurosci. 2008;31:195-218. doi: 10.1146/

annurev.neuro.31.060407.125547. PMID: 18558853.
71. Polarlys & Häggström, M. (2010). Tracts of the spinal cord. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/b/b2/Spinal_cord_tracts_-_English.svg]
72. Lee J, Muzio MR. Neuroanatomy, Extrapyramidal System. [Updated 2022 Nov 9]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2024 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK554542/

This page titled 3.14: References is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

4: SENSORY PHYSIOLOGY

4.1: Objectives
4.2: Introduction
4.3: Sensory Receptors
4.4: Physiology of Pain
4.5: References

This page titled 4: Sensory Physiology is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

4.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- Recognize distinctive characteristic features of sensory receptors.
- Identify major types of sensory receptors.
- Compare the sensory receptors based on their structures and functions.
- Distinguish between general and special senses.
- Differentiate between transduction and transmission of signals.
- Summarize the details of nociceptors and their modalities of activation.
- Trace the processing of pain at higher levels of the nervous system.
- Elucidate the principles underlying the gate theory of pain.
- Clarify hyperalgesia and the associated mechanisms contributing to its occurrence.
- Differentiate between visceral pain and somatic pain.
- Illuminate the concept of referred pain and its underlying physiological mechanism.
- Comprehend the modalities of action exhibited by local anesthetics.

This page titled 4.1: Objectives is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

4.2: Introduction

One of the fundamental functions of sensory receptors is to facilitate our understanding of the external environment and the status of our internal bodily processes. Sensory receptors play a pivotal role in this process by detecting various stimuli from diverse sources and converting them into electrical signals that can be transmitted through the nervous system. This transformation occurs when an external stimulus induces alterations in the membrane potential of a sensory neuron. Upon stimulation, the sensory structure initiates an action potential, subsequently conveyed to specific areas within the CNS. These incoming signals undergo intricate integration within the CNS, resulting in our conscious perception of the respective stimulus. This central integration process can trigger a motor response, allowing us to react appropriately to the sensory input received. Thus, sensory receptors serve as crucial intermediaries in the complex journey of sensory information, converting external or internal stimuli into electrical signals that our nervous system can perceive, interpret, and act upon.

In understanding sensory function, it is essential to differentiate between two key terms: **sensation** and **perception**. Sensation denotes the initial activation of sensory receptors, while perception involves the complex central processing of sensory input to create meaningful patterns. It is important to note that perception relies on sensation, but not all sensations necessarily lead to perception.

Sensory receptors are specialized cells or structures responsible for detecting various stimuli. These receptor cells undergo direct modifications when exposed to specific stimuli. Transmembrane protein receptors play a pivotal role in sensory processes. These proteins, situated within the cell membrane, facilitate physiological changes in neurons, often achieved through the opening of ion channels or alterations in cellular signaling pathways.

The activation of transmembrane receptors is initiated by ligands, which can encompass a wide range of molecules, such as those found in food that interact with taste receptors. Conversely, certain receptors are sensitive to mechanical or thermal stimuli. When exposed to such changes, these proteins undergo physical alterations that increase ion flow across the cell membrane. As a result, they can generate either an action potential or a graded potential within the sensory neurons.

This page titled 4.2: Introduction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

4.3: Sensory Receptors

Many stimuli are triggers within our external or internal environment, setting in motion a fascinating process within the peripheral nervous system. Receptors can remarkably convert these stimuli into neural signals, often recognized as action potentials. The spectrum of environmental cues these receptors encounter encompasses mechanical force, light, sound, various chemicals, and temperature variations. Notably, different categories of sensory receptors are finely tuned to detect specific types of stimuli, reflecting diversity and specialization, and are classified based on their structure and function.

Structural Receptor Types

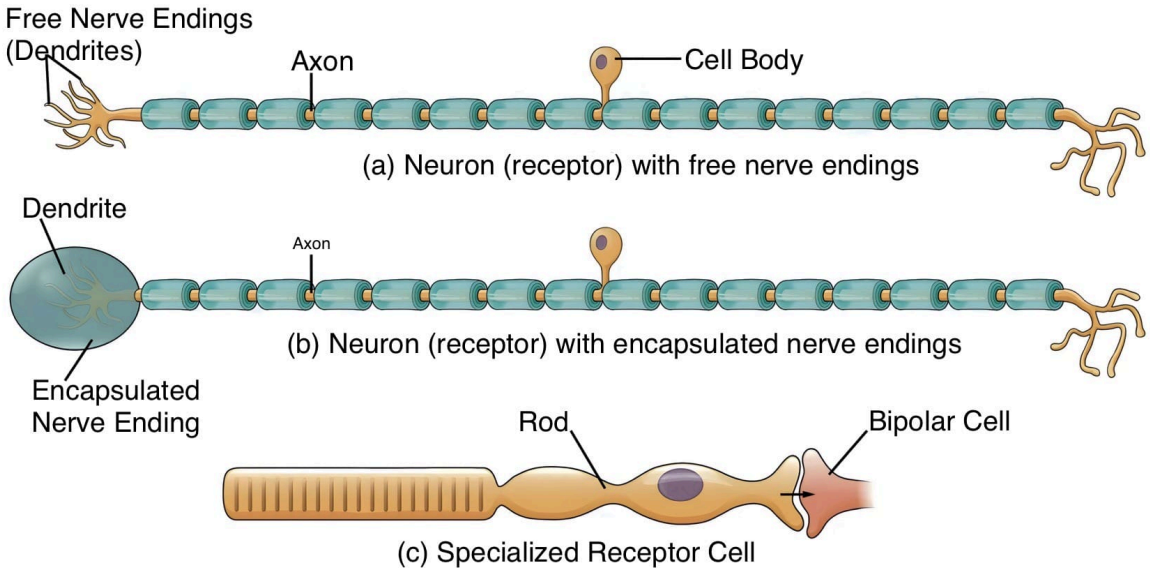


Figure 1 | Receptor Classification by Cell Type | [1] Receptor cell types can be classified based on their structure. Sensory neurons can have either (a) free nerve endings or (b) encapsulated endings. Photoreceptors in the eyes, such as rods (c), are examples of specialized receptor cells. Rods release neurotransmitters to activate bipolar cells in their sensory pathway.

The cells responsible for deciphering environmental cues exist in several distinct forms, each finely tuned for specific functions. **Neurons with free nerve endings** extend their dendrites into the tissues primed to sense specific stimuli. They function as versatile interpreters of sensory data, capturing a wide range of environmental signals with their receptive structures (Figure 1). **Neurons with encapsulated endings**, in contrast, possess sheathed nerve endings, a structural feature in which sensory nerve terminals are enclosed within specialized connective tissue. This encapsulation amplifies their sensitivity, rendering them exquisitely attuned to specific stimuli. Notably, neurons bearing encapsulated endings respond to pressure and tactile sensations, as observed in lamellated corpuscles located within the dermis of the skin (Figure 2). **Specialized receptor cells** boast distinctive structural components designed to interpret particular stimuli. These cells are finely crafted to excel in their designated sensory domains. An example is the rods, one of the photoreceptor cells in the retina, which are exquisitely equipped to detect and respond to light stimuli (Figure 1).

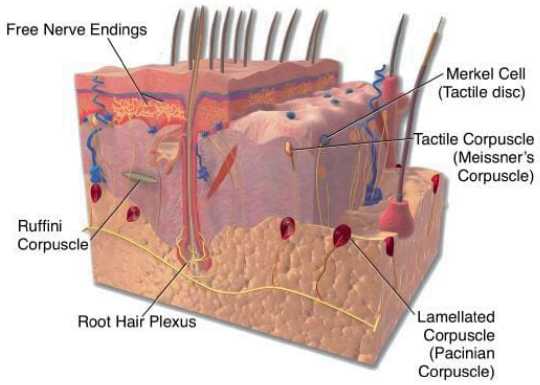


Figure 2 | Sensory Receptor Types in the Skin | [2] This figure illustrates the diverse sensory receptor types found within the skin. These receptors play crucial roles in detecting various stimuli, including touch, temperature, pain, and pressure. Four primary types of sensory receptors are depicted: Meissner's corpuscles, Merkel cells, Pacinian corpuscles, and free nerve endings. Meissner's corpuscles specialize in light touch and low-frequency vibration, while Merkel cells respond to sustained pressure and texture. Pacinian corpuscles detect deep pressure and high-frequency vibration. Free nerve endings are distributed throughout the skin and are responsible for sensing pain, temperature, and itch. Understanding the distribution and function of these sensory receptors is essential for comprehending the skin's sensory capabilities and its role in the body's sensory perception.

Functional Receptor Types

Sensory receptors can be functionally classified into various types based on their roles in detecting specific stimuli.

Mechanoreceptors, characterized by encapsulated nerve endings, are responsible for sensing deformations or changes in shape or pressure. Physical stimuli, including pressure, vibration, auditory sensations, and the intricate sense of body position, are systematically decoded via mechanoreceptors.

Thermoreceptors, consisting of free nerve endings, are essential for detecting temperature alterations. They demonstrate specialized sensitivities to elevated (heat) or lower temperatures relative to the standard body temperature.

Nociceptors, also called pain receptors, are free nerve endings. They are crucial in sensing damage or painful stimuli. The sensation of pain predominantly operates in a chemical sense, discerning the presence of specific chemicals triggered by tissue damage or similarly intense stimuli, chiefly through nociceptors.

Electromagnetic receptors, specifically rods and cones comprising bipolar neurons, are specialized for detecting light and enabling vision.

Chemoreceptors are a diverse group responsible for sensing various stimuli, including taste, smell, and changes in carbon dioxide and oxygen levels in the environment.

Receptor Types Based on Other Criteria

Sensory receptors may be classified based on their mechanism for transducing external stimuli into changes in membrane potential. Stimuli encountered in the sensory landscape typically fall into three broad categories. These encompass ions and macromolecules, which exert their influence on transmembrane receptor proteins as they traverse the cell membrane. Physical alterations in the environment constitute another class of stimuli that directly modulate the membrane potentials of receptor cells. Electromagnetic radiation stemming from visible light includes the third stimulus category.

Sensory receptors, in turn, can be further stratified according to the nature of the stimuli they are adept at transducing. Consider, for instance, chemoreceptors, which interpret chemical stimuli such as those associated with taste or smell. Concurrently,

osmoreceptors are primed to respond to variations in solute concentrations within bodily fluids.

Based on the distribution and function of the sensory receptors, sensations can be broadly categorized into two main types, **general** and **special senses**, each with distinctive characteristics. General sensory receptors are found within various organs and tissues. Notable examples of general senses include mechanoreceptors situated in the skin, muscles, or blood vessel walls. These receptors play integral roles in processes such as tactile sensation, proprioception (awareness of body movement), kinesthesia (sensory perception of bodily motion), and visceral sensing, which are significant in regulating autonomic functions. On the other hand, special senses are linked to specific dedicated organs, namely the eye, inner ear, tongue, and nose, each specialized for particular sensory functions.

Somatic senses predominantly reside in the skin, muscles, or tendons, whereas **visceral senses** emanate from nervous tissue interwoven within various organs such as the heart or stomach. While somatic senses chiefly contribute to conscious perception and the body's interaction with its environment, visceral senses often operate beneath the threshold of conscious awareness, actively regulating homeostasis through the autonomic nervous system.

Sensory Modalities

In the realm of sensory perception, each distinct sensory input is denoted as a sensory **modality**. These modalities represent the perception of specific stimuli and encompass various primary sensory experiences, including light, sound, taste, smell, temperature, and pressure. While the scope of sensory modalities is extensive, potentially numbering as many as 17, they can be systematically organized by subcategorizing the five major senses into more specific divisions or submodalities. For instance, the overarching sense of touch can be further delineated into various submodalities such as light pressure, deep pressure, vibration, itch, pain, temperature, or hair movement.[3]

The concept of **receptive field** plays a pivotal role in sensory processing. The receptive field denotes a specific area where a stimulus triggers a response. In most cases, the regions served by one sensory unit overlap and intricately intertwine with those governed by adjacent units. Notably, the receptive fields of sensory neurons in the CNS tend to be larger than those of sensory receptors. This discrepancy arises because central neurons aggregate information from numerous sensory receptors with a slightly distinct receptive field to construct a comprehensive sensory experience.[4]

Sensory Transduction

Sensory receptors are the initial conduits through which external or internal stimuli are transduced into physiological responses. These stimuli, ranging from photons of light on the retina to molecules of sodium chloride on the tongue, act as triggers that induce the opening of ion channels within the sensory receptor. This ion flux initiates a process of depolarization at the receptor, a phenomenon that can also be caused indirectly through second messenger cascades. This change in membrane potential, driven by the stimulus, is aptly termed the **receptor potential**. A receptor potential represents a graded potential residing within the peripheral terminal of a primary afferent sensory neuron. By exemplifying this mechanism, mechanoreceptors respond to mechanical stimuli by distorting their endings, consequently causing inward ion flux at the terminal. Once the receptor potential reaches a critical threshold, it spawns an action potential propagating along the axon.

The intensity of a stimulus influences both **recruitment** and **frequency**. Recruitment pertains to the response elicited by a robust stimulation, which indicates the activation of a greater number of sensory receptors within a sensory structure. Such heightened activation translates into an increased frequency of generated action potentials, particularly when numerous sensory receptors are simultaneously stimulated.

In concert with transduction, encoding of specific aspects of the stimulus must transpire to facilitate interpretation by the CNS. These encoded aspects encompass modality, spatial location, threshold, and intensity.

The sensory perception evoked by action potentials generated in a receptor hinges upon the specific brain region in which they ultimately engage. Sensory pathways are distinct from the origin of the receptor potential within a sensory receptor to their arrival at the cerebral cortex. Thus, regardless of where the activity is initiated, the sensation corresponds to that particular receptor. For example, stimulating the sensory nerve of a Pacinian corpuscle in the hand by applying pressure at the elbow would evoke a touch sensation. Similarly, stimulating the appropriate axons of the dorsal columns of the spinal cord, the thalamus, or the postcentral gyrus of the cerebral cortex would still yield a touch sensation no matter where the stimulation occurs along a specific sensory pathway.[5]

Adaptation in Sensory Receptors

Adaptation is a phenomenon characterized by a reduction in the sensitivity of sensory receptors, leading to a decrease in the frequency of action potentials transmitted by afferent neurons, even when a constant-strength stimulus persists. It prevents sensory overload and allows the body to focus on relevant information in its surroundings.

There are two categories of sensory receptors in terms of their adaptation properties. **Slowly adapting** or **tonic receptors** exhibit repetitive responses to prolonged stimuli and are particularly adept at detecting sustained, unchanging sensory input. These receptors are involved in various sensory functions, such as monitoring muscle length, processing tactile sensations like touch and pressure, perceiving pain and temperature, and gauging lung inflation. **Rapidly adapting** or **phasic receptors**, conversely, are specialized in detecting the initiation and cessation of stimuli. When exposed to a continuous stimulus, these receptors exhibit a decline in action potential frequency over time. Notable examples of phasic receptors include those responsible for sensing pressure (e.g., Pacinian corpuscles) and light touch (e.g., Meissner's corpuscles). This allows the receptor to detect changes in the stimulus more effectively.[6]

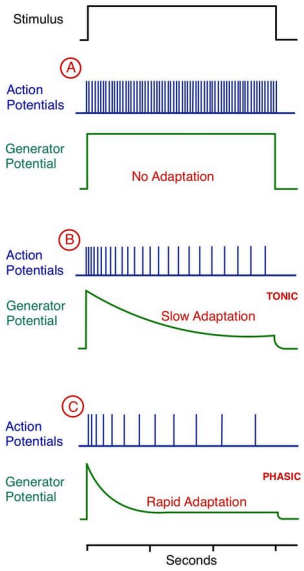


Figure 3 | Adaptation in Sensory Receptors | [7] This figure illustrates the concept of adaptation in sensory receptors. Two types of adaptation are depicted: Phasic Adaptation, represented by the rapid decline in response amplitude, occurs when sensory receptors quickly decrease their response to a constant stimulus. Tonic Adaptation, illustrated by the gradual decline in response amplitude, involves a slower adjustment of sensitivity to a sustained stimulus, enabling the receptor to maintain a continuous but reduced response.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 4.3: Sensory Receptors is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

4.4: Physiology of Pain

The concept of pain, originating from the Greek word signifying *penalty*, is deeply rooted in the human experience. Pain is a protective mechanism swiftly triggered in response to tissue damage or harm. Its primary function is to elicit a reaction, prompting individuals to remove or mitigate the source of the pain. Remarkably, individuals devoid of pain perception often face a perilously abbreviated lifespan due to the accidental injuries they sustain.

In tandem with other sensory processes, pain perception involves four distinct stages. The initial phase, known as **transduction**, entails the conversion of painful stimuli into action potentials. Subsequently, the **transmission** phase ensues, where these action potentials, now laden with pain signals, travel through dedicated axonal pathways to the CNS. Within the CNS, the third stage, **perception**, unfolds. The ultimate step in this intricate process is the **modulation** of pain. In this phase, the body deploys intrinsic mechanisms to diminish pain intensity. Pain modulation represents a dynamic and adaptive response to ensure well-being of an individual in the face of discomfort or injury.

Transduction

Pain emerges when tissue damage activates nociceptors. The name nociceptor is derived from the Latin word *Nocere*, meaning to hurt. Nociceptors are characterized by their unmyelinated, branched, and versatile nature. They transduce various stimuli into action potentials. Notably, nociceptors exhibit a remarkable diversity among sensory neurons, as a single type of stimulus can elicit responses from multiple receptor types. These receptors are on peripheral nerves and are concentrated within the skin, soft tissues, muscles, joint surfaces, arterial linings, periosteum, and the connective tissue lining the cranial vault (dura mater). However, they are absent from the brain and are relatively sparse on most visceral organs.

Contrary to many other sensory neurons, nociceptors exhibit minimal adaptation, responding slowly or not at all. They are susceptible to stimuli that either threaten tissue damage or actively cause it. When the intensity of a stimulus surpasses a particular threshold, it is categorized as noxious, indicating its potential to inflict tissue harm.

Nociceptors are **polymodal** in nature as they are activated by three primary types of stimuli: thermal stimuli exceeding 45 degrees Celsius, mechanical stimuli such as pressure or deformation, and chemical stimuli. The latter category encompasses many molecules, including hydrogen ions, potassium ions, bradykinin, histamine, acetylcholine, leukotrienes, ATP, and proteolytic enzymes released due to tissue damage. Bradykinin, histamine, and leukotrienes are associated with inflammation. Both bradykinin and histamine act as vasodilators among other roles they play in the body. Additionally, substances such as prostaglandins, substance P, and serotonin modulate the sensitivity of pain nerve endings, although they do not directly induce excitation. Substance P plays a multifaceted role by stimulating vasodilation and histamine release from mast cells. Histamine-induced vasodilation, in turn, augments local blood flow, initiating the process of inflammation. In the broader context, inflammation serves as a vital protective mechanism against infection or injury, underscoring the role of pain in safeguarding our overall well-being.

Nociception and the complex mechanisms underlying pain perception involve many intricate players. **Acid-sensing ion channels** play a pivotal role in mediating acid nociception, contributing to the perception of pain in response to acidic stimuli. Concurrently, **vanilloid receptors** or **transient receptor potential** (**TRP**) **channels**, distributed across both C and A-δ fibers, play a substantial role in the thermal, mechanical, and chemical nociception. Furthermore, the opioid system, inextricably entwined with the nociceptive process, comprises three G-protein-coupled receptors: the **μ-**, **δ-**, and **κ-receptors**. These receptors seamlessly interact with their corresponding endogenous ligands β-endorphin, enkephalin, and dynorphins. Peripheral opioid receptors are situated within primary sensory neurons, where they remain relatively quiescent until prompted by noxious stimuli. Among the pain-relieving drugs, morphine stands out as a prime example, predominantly exerting its effects through μ-opioid receptors and serving as a potent agent in the management of severe pain conditions.

Nociceptors employ a myriad of intricate signaling pathways. These pathways exhibit a profound connection to ion channels, with some pathways mediated by G-proteins and their downstream agents, including adenylate cyclase, cAMP, cGMP, IP3, and PLC. In contrast, other pathways entail a direct cellular response. These receptors respond to diverse stimuli, including capsaicin, vanilloid compounds, thermal fluctuations, and low pH, with minimal involvement in mechanical transduction. Conversely, an alternative subset of ion channels, referred to as **ENaC/degenerin channels**, predominantly serve as mechanoreceptors, adept at detecting mechanical stimuli. Adding to the complexity, acid-sensing ion channels come into play, responding sensitively to lactic acid and thereby contributing to pain perception, particularly in conditions like angina.

Transmission

Two distinct types of peripheral neurons carry out pain signal transmission: Aδ and C fibers, each with unique characteristics. Aδ fibers, characterized by myelination, conduct action potentials rapidly, ranging from 6 to 30 m/s. Predominantly located in the skin and muscle, these fibers primarily transmit swift, sharp pain signals. Aδ fibers typically respond to mechanical or thermal pain stimuli and employ excitatory amino acid neurotransmitters, such as glutamate and aspartate, to convey their messages. In contrast, C fibers are unmyelinated and dispersed in muscle, mesentery, abdominal viscera, and periosteum regions. Due to their unmyelinated nature, pain signals are conveyed at a much slower pace, spanning 0.5 to 2 m/s. The pain relayed by C fibers is often described as dull or burning in character. These fibers exhibit responsiveness to a broader range of stimuli, encompassing mechanical, thermal, and chemical injuries.

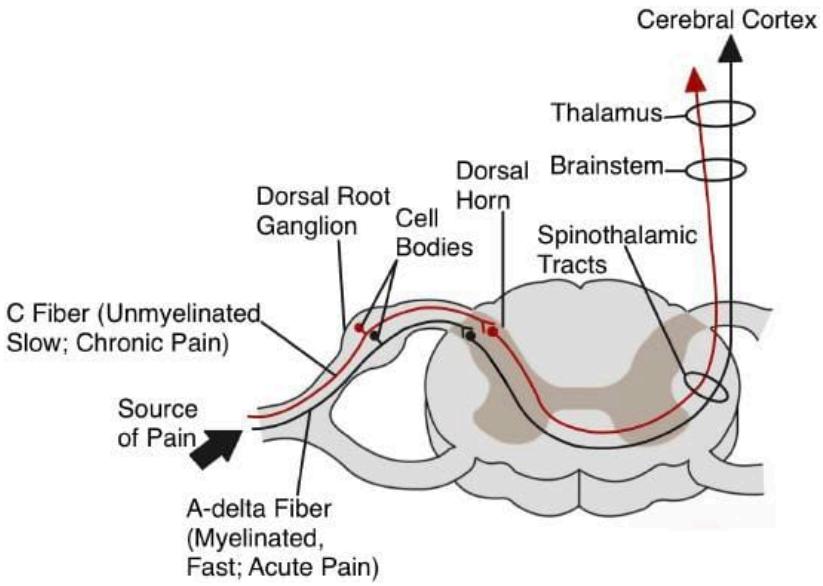


Figure 4 | Neural Pathways for Pain Transmission | [8]. This diagram illustrates the transmission of pain signals from the periphery to the cerebral cortex via the spinothalamic tract. Pain signals originate at the site of injury, involving two types of primary afferent fibers: A-delta fibers (myelinated, fast-conducting, associated with acute pain) and C fibers (unmyelinated, slow-conducting, associated with chronic pain). These fibers synapse in the dorsal horn of the spinal cord, where their cell bodies are located in the dorsal root ganglion. The pain signals are then transmitted via the spinothalamic tract through the brainstem and thalamus, ultimately reaching the cerebral cortex, where pain perception occurs.

Both Aδ and C fibers originating from the dorsal root ganglion travel through multiple spinal cord segments before reaching the gray matter of the dorsal horn (Figure 4). Here, they synapse with second-order neurons, categorized into two distinct types: nociceptive and **wide-dynamic-range** (WDR) **neurons**. Nociceptive neurons exclusively receive input from Aδ and C fibers. In contrast, WDR neurons possess a wider receptive field, responding to information from both nociceptive and non-nociceptive neurons, including Aβ fibers. Glutamate, released by both Aδ and C fibers, initiates a cascade of events by binding to AMPA receptors on the second-order neurons, thereby eliciting action potentials and perpetuating the signal transmission to higher levels of the CNS.

Substance P, primarily released by C fibers, assumes a pivotal role within the spinal cord, where it augments and prolongs the actions of glutamate. Notably, levels of substance P surge during persistent pain, contributing to the modulation of pain perception.

The journey of second-order neurons progresses as they cross the midline of the spinal cord via the anterior commissure and ascend through the anterolateral pathway of the spinothalamic tract, ultimately reaching the thalamus. This multifaceted relay system ensures the transmission of pain signals to higher centers within the CNS.

Perception

Perception involves relaying pain-related data to the brain, facilitated by two primary routes: the spinothalamic tract via the dorsal root ganglion and the trigeminal ganglion. These tracts ascend towards various brain regions, encompassing the reticular formation, periaqueductal gray, limbic system, hypothalamus, basal nuclei, as well as the primary and secondary somatosensory,

insular, anterior cingulate, and prefrontal cortices. The thalamus is also a crucial relay point within this intricate pathway. Notably, subcortical regions, including the brainstem, amygdala, and cerebellum, contribute significantly to the multifaceted experience of pain, thus underscoring the complexity of pain perception and processing.[9]

Modulation of Pain

The modulation of nociception can manifest at various stages along the afferent sensory pathway, contributing to the intricate perception of pain. Such modulation may arise at the very source of the pain stimulus or at any juncture within the ascending sensory pathways where synaptic transmission occurs. Additionally, the modulation of nociception can be orchestrated through descending efferent inhibitory pathways that originate at the level of the brainstem (Figure 5).

Peripheral modulation of nociception is primarily achieved through releasing or removing endogenous inflammatory mediators in the proximity of nociceptors. Several mediators, including ATP, glutamate, cytokines, kinins, and trophic factors, are produced at the inflammation site and can potentially sensitize and activate nociceptors.

Local anesthetics, such as lidocaine, function by reversibly binding to channels and obstructing sodium ion conduction, thereby inhibiting nerve transmission. Furthermore, analgesic effects can be achieved through drugs like aspirin and other nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), including both nonspecific cyclooxygenase (COX-1) inhibitors and specific cyclooxygenase (COX-2) inhibitors. These drugs work by impeding the action of the enzyme COX, which plays a crucial role in converting arachidonic acid into prostaglandins. By reducing prostaglandin synthesis, NSAIDs effectively modulate nociception at peripheral sites. Additionally, corticosteroids exert their influence by affecting cyclooxygenase pathways and other related pathways to suppress inflammation.

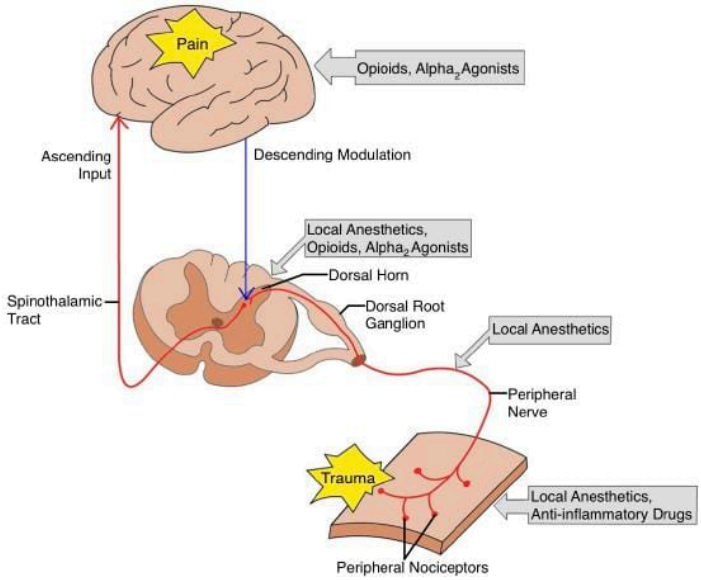


Figure 5 | Effects of Various Chemical Agents in the Modulation of Pain Transmission | [10] Local anesthetics, such as lidocaine, inhibit nerve transmission, whereas anti-inflammatory drugs offer analgesic effects. Various descending pathways, including opioidergic and adrenergic inputs, modulate pain at the dorsal horn.

The modulation of nociception at the spinal cord level is a multifaceted process governed by the influence of both excitatory and inhibitory neurotransmitters within the dorsal horn. The dorsal horn of the spinal cord acts as the central relay station for pain signals originating from A- δ and C nerve fibers, for the local frequency of pain impulses, and for interpretations transmitted from higher-level centers within the CNS. In this critical hub, pain nerve fibers establish synaptic connections with non-nociceptive nerve fibers, facilitating the integration of pain-related information. Moreover, the brain wields formidable descending pathways that transform pain input.

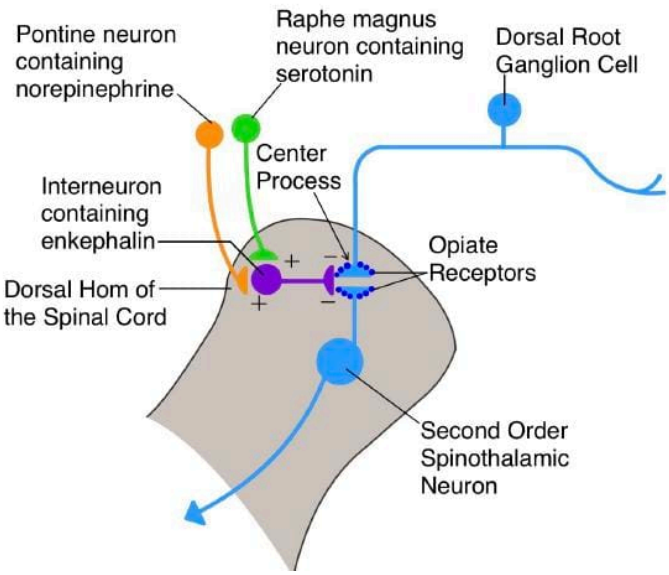


Figure 6 | Pain Modulation - Descending Pathways |[11] This flowchart illustrates the process of pain modulation through descending pathways in the CNS. The periaqueductal gray plays a central role in pain modulation, coordinating descending inhibition and facilitating pain relief by activating endogenous enkephalinergic neurons. These neurons stimulate the release of neurotransmitters such as serotonin, leading to the modulation of pain signals.

Within the brainstem, the descending pain-modulating pathway interfaces with various higher-level brain regions, including cingular-frontal areas, the amygdala, and the hypothalamus. The interaction between the cingular-frontal regions and the descending modulatory system represents a pivotal avenue of pain modulation in humans. The periaqueductal gray, enriched with inputs from diverse brain regions, can exert a profound analgesic effect. Concurrently, the rostral ventromedial medulla inhibits nociceptive information and contributes to the control of descending pain processes.

Descending inhibitory pathways originating from higher cerebral centers, such as serotonergic neurons, project to the dorsal horn of the spinal cord, where they effectively suppress pain transmission. Another prominent inhibitory pathway is the noradrenergic system. The **locus coeruleus**, located in the pons near the junction of the pons and the midbrain, is the largest group of noradrenergic neurons in the CNS that projects throughout the brain and spinal cord. Elevating the concentration of norepinephrine and serotonin within the synaptic cleft inhibits the propagation of nerve impulses responsible for transmitting pain signals to the brain. The communication of nociceptive information among various neurons relies on chemical signaling mediated by both excitatory and inhibitory amino acids, as well as neuropeptides.

The endogenous opioid system assumes a pivotal role in pain modulation. An opioid descending inhibitory pathway liberates endorphins and enkephalins, which operate presynaptically to hyperpolarize nerve fibers (Figure 6). This action effectively counteracts the pain signal in the form of action potentials as they traverse the ensuing synapse and lead to the release of neurotransmitters. Exogenous opioids such as morphine function as agonists at opioid receptors dispersed throughout the CNS. They use mechanisms of action to hinder the release of substance P (presynaptic) or involve postsynaptic inhibition through the inhibitory G-protein pathway, ultimately decreasing cAMP levels. Enkephalin elicits presynaptic inhibition by obstructing calcium ion channels, subsequently impacting the release of substance P.

The thalamus, the relay center, serves as the primary locus for the initial awareness of pain, constituting a rudimentary perception. The comprehensive interpretation of pain occurs upon relay to the cerebral cortex. The pain signal is subject to more precise perception and thorough analysis to determine the requisite action upon reaching the cerebral cortex.

Activities such as exercise, stress, acupuncture, and hypnosis activate the endogenous opioid system, leading to enduring analgesic effects. The anticonvulsant Gabapentin enhances the release of GABA, an inhibitory neurotransmitter, thereby impeding the further transmission of pain signals. Tricyclic antidepressants, known for elevating serotonin and norepinephrine levels, are postulated to contribute to their pain-relieving effects.[12]

Gating Mechanism

Within the complex web of pain transmission, one key modulation site resides in the dorsal horn, serving as the gateway for

pain impulses en route to the spinothalamic system. The **substantia gelatinosa**, also known as the gelatinous substance or Rexed's lamina II, is a specific region within the dorsal horn of the spinal cord (Figure 7). It spans several segments of the spinal cord, primarily in the cervical, thoracic, and lumbar regions, and plays a crucial role in the modulation of pain signals. It contains inhibitory interneurons that play a crucial role in the gating mechanism. Upon activation by various inputs, including both nociceptive and non-nociceptive stimuli, gating cells can exert inhibitory or facilitatory effects on projection neurons. This modulation occurs through complex interactions involving neurotransmitters such as GABA, glycine, and glutamate, as well as neuromodulators such as serotonin and endorphins.

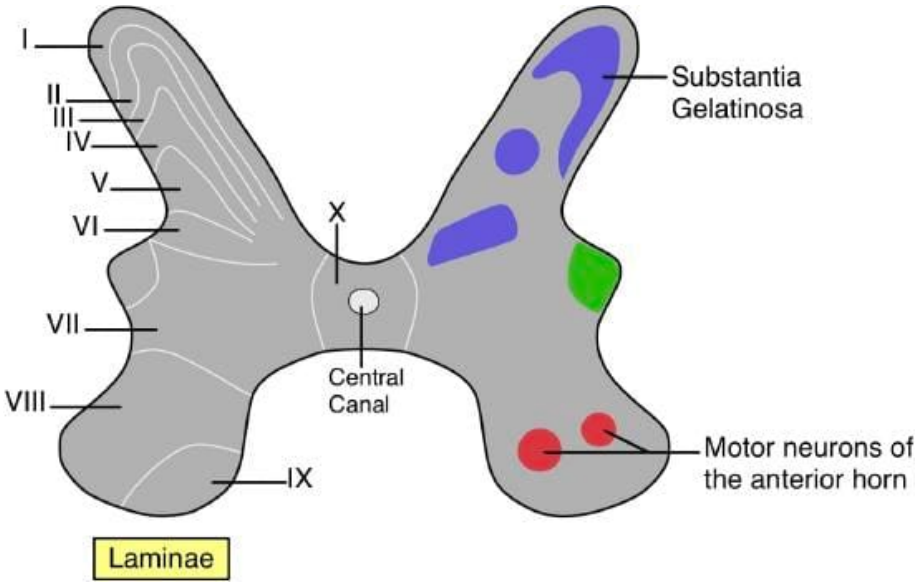


Figure 7 | Substantia Gelatinosa | [13] This figure provides an overview of the substantia gelatinosa of the dorsal horn of the spinal cord in modulating nociceptive signaling. The substantia gelatinosa serves as a critical site for the integration and modulation of incoming sensory information, particularly pain signals.

Melzack and Wall proposed the gate control theory of pain in 1965. Under normal, pain-free circumstances, an inhibitory interneuron in the substantia gelatinosa maintains a state of inactivity, effectively preventing the onward projection of pain signals to the brain, and thus the gate remains securely closed. However, the dynamic interplay of action potentials in specific nerve fibers can significantly influence the state of this gate.

When an action potential arises within a C fiber, which typically conveys pain signals, it exerts an inhibitory effect on the inhibitory interneuron. This inhibition, in turn, releases the gate from its closed position, allowing pain signals to proceed towards the brain. Conversely, when an action potential is generated in an Aβ fiber, a conduit for sensory information related to touch, a collateral branch activates the inhibitory interneuron, even in the presence of concurrent C fiber activation. This intricate interaction results in the closure of the gate, effectively impeding the transmission of pain signals (Figure 8).[14]

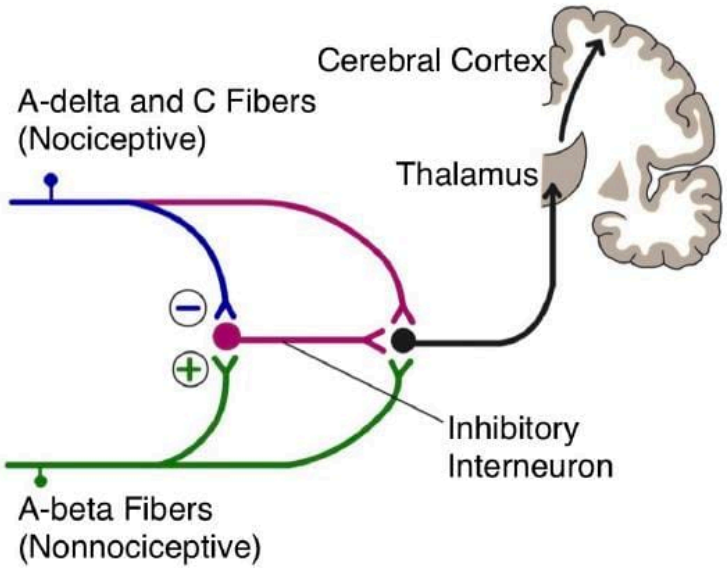


Figure 8 | Gate Control Theory of Pain |[15] Gating cells play a pivotal role in regulating the transmission of nociceptive signals to higher brain centers. The diagram illustrates how gating cells can influence this transmission by either enhancing or suppressing synaptic transmission between primary afferent fibers and projection neurons. This process effectively "gates" the flow of nociceptive information, thereby regulating pain perception.

Understanding the role of the substantia gelatinosa and the gate control mechanism has led to the development of pain management strategies that involve non-noxious sensory input, such as transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation and acupuncture, to alleviate pain. As an illustrative example, gentle rubbing is a prime instance of Aβ fiber activation, stimulating the inhibitory interneuron and ensuring the gate remains tightly closed.

Hyperalgesia

Hyperalgesia is a heightened sensitivity to pain resulting from damage to nociceptors or the sensory neurons responsible for transmitting pain signals. This heightened sensitivity can manifest locally in specific areas or diffusely across the entire body. There are two forms of hyperalgesia. **Primary hyperalgesia** occurs when damage to a particular tissue increases sensitivity to pain near the injured site. In other words, the tissue directly affected by injury becomes more sensitive to painful stimuli. **Secondary hyperalgesia**, in contrast, arises when the surrounding tissues, not directly damaged themselves, become more sensitive to painful stimuli. Such heightened sensitivity extends beyond the immediate area of injury and affects the adjacent healthy tissues. These two types of hyperalgesia collectively contribute to an individual's perception of pain. They are significant factors in understanding the complex nature of pain sensation and its modulation in response to injury or damage to the nervous system.[16]

Visceral Pain

Visceral pain emanates from the internal organs, where the density of pain receptors is relatively low. Consequently, visceral pain perception tends to be diffuse and characterized by a dull, aching quality, often making it challenging to pinpoint the precise source of discomfort. Visceral pain contrasts with somatic pain, which typically arises from injuries or tissue damage. The pain receptors are more abundant in somatic pain, resulting in a sharper or tingling sensation. This distinction in pain perception is vital in clinical assessments to differentiate between sources of discomfort within the body.[17]

Referred Pain

When particularly intense visceral sensations reach the threshold of conscious perception, they can manifest in unexpected locations within the body. For instance, powerful, visceral sensations originating from the heart may be perceived as pain radiating to the left shoulder and left arm. This non-standard pattern of conscious perception of visceral sensations is called "referred pain." The specific areas to which referred pain is projected to depend on the affected organ system (Figure 9). Although

the precise mechanism behind referred pain remains incompletely understood, the prevailing theory suggests that visceral and somatosensory fibers from the location of referred pain enter the spinal cord at the same vertebral level and may synapse on the same second-order neuron. According to this explanation, sensory fibers from the mediastinal region, where the heart is situated, would enter the spinal cord at the same level as the spinal nerves from the shoulder and arm. Consequently, the brain misinterprets the sensations from the mediastinal region as originating from the axillary and brachial regions. It is important to note that projections from the cervical ganglia's medial and inferior divisions also enter the spinal cord at these middle to lower cervical levels, further contributing to this phenomenon.[18]

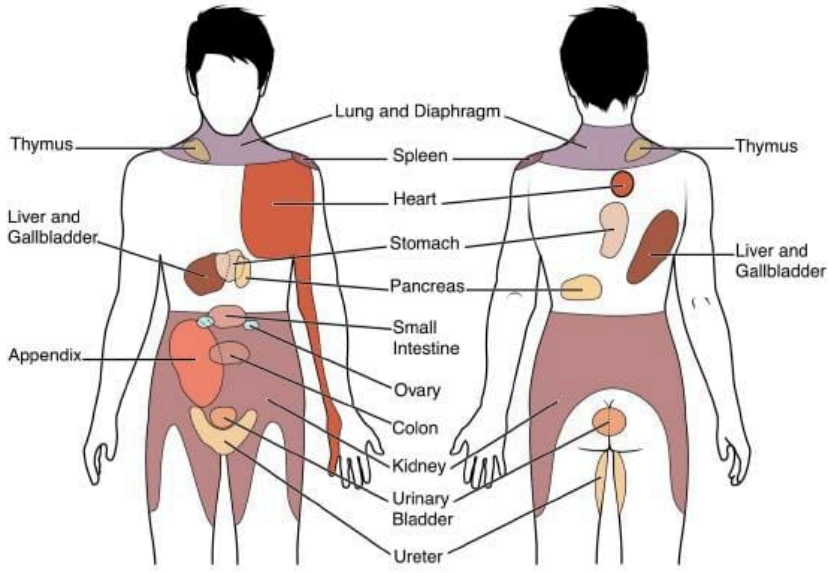


Figure 9 | Referred Pain | [19] This chart shows how conscious perception of visceral sensations is mapped to specific regions of the body. Some sensations are felt locally, whereas others are perceived as affecting areas quite distant from the involved organ.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 4.4: Physiology of Pain is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

4.5: References

1. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Anatomy and Physiology 2e.Figure 14.2 Receptor Classification by Cell Type Receptor. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/4932d9507cd94c25994e83bb6ceca801e9071171]
2. Blausen. (2014). Tactile Receptors. Wikimedia Commons. [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/b/be/Blausen_0809_Skin_TactileReceptors.png]
3. https://open.oregonstate.education/aandp/chapter/13-1-sensory-receptors/Retrieved on 3/26/2024
4. Marzvanyan A, Alhawaj AF. Physiology, Sensory Receptors. [Updated 2023 Aug 14]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2024 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK539861/
5. https://bio.libretexts.org/Bookshelves/Introductory_and_General_Biology/Book%3A_General_Biology_(Boundless)/36%3A_Sensory_Systems/36.02%3A_Sensory_Processes_-_Transduction_and_Perception retrieved 3/26/2024
6. Wark B, Lundstrom BN, Fairhall A. Sensory adaptation. Curr Opin Neurobiol. 2007 Aug;17(4):423-9. doi: 10.1016/j.conb.2007.07.001. Epub 2007 Aug 21. PMID: 17714934; PMCID: PMC2084204.
7. Tuthill, J. (n.d.). Figure 10: Each of the neuron's four signaling components produces a characteristic signal.. In Physiology. Retrieved from [https://uw.pressbooks.pub/app/uploads/sites/692/2023/05/receptorpotential-2048x1379.jpg]
8. Figure Fig. 25-4 Ascending neural pathway of pain via A-delta and C fibers.. Ascending neural pathway of pain via A-delta and C fibers. Adapted from Clinical Gate (n.d.). Retrieved from https://clinicalgate.com/pain-7/
9. Fausett H.J. Chapter 2. anatomy and physiology of pain. Warfield C.A., & Bajwa Z.H.(Eds.), Principles and Practice of Pain Medicine, 2e. The McGraw-Hill Companies,
10. Figure 4. Target sites for management. Adapted from Khalid, S., & Tubbs, R. S. (2017). Neuroanatomy and neuropsychology of pain. Cureus, 9(10), e1754. https://doi.org/10.7759/cureus.1754
11. d'Aquin, S. (2023, August 28). *Spinal neurotransmission and neuromodulation* [Lecture]. University of Zurich.https://media.licdn.com/dms/image/v2/D4E12AQGeC7xSujj5BQ/article-inline_image-shrink_1500_2232/article-inline_image-shrink_1500_2232/0/1693221775018?e=1732752000&v=beta&t=v0AgGfJMTSDA_WcwlHfgrpB8pmXu5QwRsmkrwOtNzDs
12. Rajneesh, K., Bolash, R. (2018). Pathways of Pain Perception and Modulation. In: Cheng, J., Rosenquist, R. (eds) Fundamentals of Pain Medicine. Springer, Cham. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-64922-1_2
13. Polarlys. (2006, June 3). Spinal cord – gray matter (Section). Wikimedia Commons. [https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/c/c0/Medulla_spinalis_-_Substantia_grisea_-_English.svg]
14. Moayedi, M.; Davis, K. D. (3 October 2012). "Theories of pain: from specificity to gate control". Journal of Neurophysiology. 109 (1): 5–12. doi:10.1152/jn.00457.2012
15. image
16. Treede, RD. (2013). Hyperalgesia. In: Gebhart, G.F., Schmidt, R.F. (eds) Encyclopedia of Pain. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-28753-4_1806
17. Collett B. Visceral pain: the importance of pain management services. Br J Pain. 2013 Feb;7(1):6-7. doi: 10.1177/2049463713480138. PMID: 26516492; PMCID: PMC4590154.
18. Jin Q, Chang Y, Lu C, Chen L, Wang Y. Referred pain: characteristics, possible mechanisms, and clinical management. Front Neurol. 2023 Jun 28;14:1104817. doi: 10.3389/fneur.2023.1104817. PMID: 37448749; PMCID: PMC10338069.
19. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Anatomy and Physiology 2e. Figure 15.7 Referred Pain Chart . OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/d8d93580f8c3d3c13a900d9e69e0017d57014187]

This page titled 4.5: References is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

5: THE AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM

5.1: Objectives

5.2: Introduction

5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems

5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System

5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System

5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System

5.7: Short and Long Reflexes

5.8: Dual Innervation

5.9: Autonomic Tone

5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS

5.11: References

This page titled 5: The Autonomic Nervous System is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

5.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- Distinguish between the somatic and autonomic efferent divisions of the nervous system, highlighting their pivotal roles and functions in physiological processes.
- Examine the alternate nomenclatures associated with each division of the autonomic nervous system (ANS).
- Identify the specific points of origin from which neurons emerge from the CNS for each autonomic division.
- Investigate the anatomical disparities between pre- and postganglionic neurons within sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions.
- Discriminate between long and short reflexes within the ANS.
- Recognize and categorize the neurotransmitters released from neurons within the ANS, elucidating their functions.
- Differentiate between antagonistic and complementary/cooperative effects in target organs that receive dual innervation, and analyze how these interactions contribute to overall physiological equilibrium.
- Explain the autonomic division responsible for controlling effector organs lacking dual innervation. Identify the specific organs and tissues under its regulatory influence.
- Locate the various receptor types linked to autonomic efferent innervation, elucidating their roles in mediating responses within target tissues.
- Distinguish between cholinergic and adrenergic nerve supplies within the ANS, emphasizing their distinct neurotransmitter preferences and resultant effects.
- Investigate the precise brain centers involved in regulating and coordinating autonomic motor pathways.

This page titled 5.1: Objectives is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

5.2: Introduction

The nervous system can be organized into two distinct functional components: the somatic nervous system (SNS) and the autonomic nervous system (ANS). These two systems manifest their primary disparities in the responses they elicit. The efferent branch of the SNS orchestrates the contraction of skeletal muscles. In contrast, the motor division of the ANS assumes command over cardiac and smooth muscle, as well as glandular tissue. While the SNS governs voluntary responses (though several occur without conscious awareness, such as breathing), the ANS is the orchestrator behind involuntary responses, particularly those integral to maintaining homeostasis.

This page titled 5.2: Introduction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems

In the SNS, a motor neuron originating in the brainstem or the ventral horn of the spinal cord connects directly to the skeletal muscle, bypassing any synapses in between. Conversely, in the ANS, a two-neuron chain is at play: the first motor neuron begins in the brainstem or spinal cord, and the second motor neuron arises from a ganglion to supply cardiac muscle, smooth muscle, or glands.

A notable difference between somatic and visceral reflexes resides in their efferent branches (Figure 1). In somatic reflexes, such as the withdrawal reflex, the output involves the lower motor neuron situated in the ventral horn of the spinal cord, which directly projects to a skeletal muscle, prompting its contraction. In contrast, the output of visceral reflexes follows a two-step pathway. It begins with the **preganglionic neuron** emerging from the lateral horn in the spinal cord or a cranial nucleus in the brainstem, leading to a ganglion. Subsequently, the **postganglionic neuron** projects to the target effector (Figure 1). Furthermore, there is a distinction in the neurotransmitters used by motor neurons in these systems. Motor neurons of the SNS release ACh. In contrast, motor neurons of the ANS release ACh, NE, or E.

The afferent branch of a reflex arc can also vary between somatic and visceral systems in specific instances. For example, specialized mechanoreceptors known as **baroreceptors** exist in the walls of the aortic and carotid sinuses. Baroreceptors sense the stretch of these structures when there is an increase in blood volume or blood pressure. They play a crucial role in cardiovascular and, particularly, vasomotor reflexes.

The ANS presides over regulating numerous internal organs, maintaining equilibrium through a delicate balance between its two divisions. These divisions are known as the **sympathetic division**, associated with the fight-or-flight response, and the **parasympathetic division**, often characterized as the rest-and-digest mode. Homeostasis is achieved through the interplay of these two systems. Dual innervation determines the activity at each target effector. For instance, the heart receives connections from both the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions. Sympathetic activation accelerates the heart rate, while parasympathetic action decelerates it.[1]

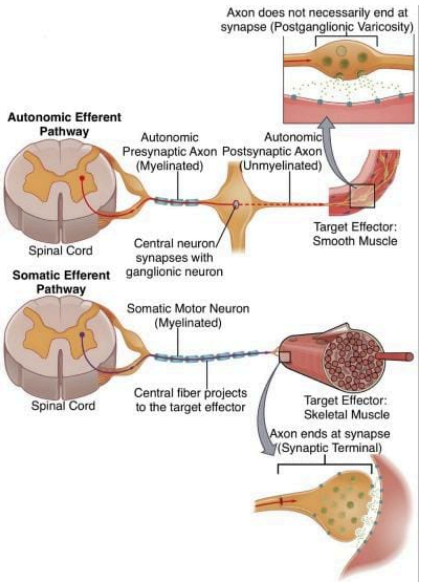


Figure () Comparison of Somatic and Visceral Efferent Pathways [2] This figure illustrates the differences between somatic and visceral efferent pathways in the nervous system. Somatic efferent pathways, which control voluntary movements, innervate skeletal muscle via the somatic nervous system. In contrast, visceral efferent pathways regulate involuntary functions of internal organs and glands, including smooth muscle in organs like the digestive tract and blood vessels, as well as cardiac muscle, through the autonomic nervous system.

This page titled 5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System

The sympathetic nervous system orchestrates a multifaceted response when the body confronts a threat, be it the need to fight or flee. This orchestrated response involves the activation of diverse effector organs, all working together to serve a common purpose. This coordinated response necessitates the divergence of connections within the sympathetic nervous system. These connections radiate outward from a specific region within the spinal cord to reach a wide array of ganglia, each of which is linked to various effector organs.

The neural connections of the sympathetic division originate from the thoracic and upper lumbar spinal cord, specifically from T1 through L2 (Figure 2). This anatomical basis has earned it the name **thoracolumbar system**. Each neuron situated in the lateral horn of the spinal regions projects to ganglia positioned adjacent to the vertebral column via the ventral spinal roots. Most of these ganglia belong to an intricate network known as the **sympathetic chain ganglia**, which runs parallel to the vertebral column. These ganglia are characterized by clusters of neurons interconnected by axonal bridges, often called **paravertebral ganglia** or **sympathetic chain ganglia**.

The axons of the preganglionic neurons originating from the spinal cord in the thoracolumbar region represent the conduit through which output from the CNS is relayed to the ganglion. Due to the proximity of sympathetic ganglia to the vertebral column, preganglionic sympathetic fibers are relatively short and characterized by myelination. In contrast, postganglionic neurons, which comprise the axons projecting from ganglionic neurons to target effectors, constitute the output stage of a ganglion that directly influences the organ. Compared to their preganglionic counterparts, postganglionic sympathetic fibers are notably longer due to the greater distance between the ganglion and the target effector (Figure 2).

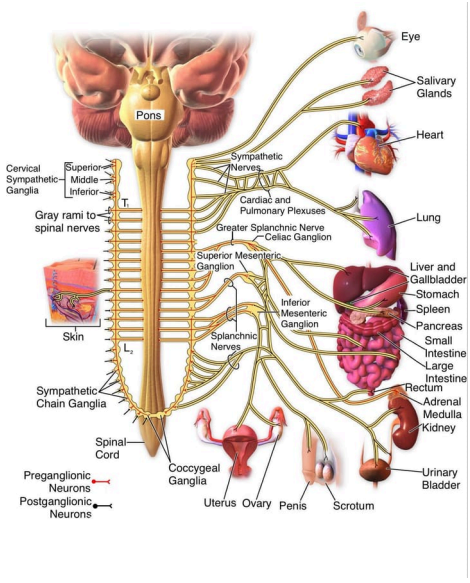


Figure 2 | Anatomical Organization of the Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System | [3] This figure illustrates the anatomical organization of the sympathetic division of the autonomic nervous system. The sympathetic division arises from the thoracic and lumbar regions of the spinal cord, forming a chain of ganglia adjacent to the vertebral column called the sympathetic chain or paravertebral ganglia. Preganglionic neurons originating from the spinal cord synapse with postganglionic neurons in these ganglia. Postganglionic neurons then project to target organs, including smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and glands, to regulate various physiological responses, such as the fight-or-flight response.

The efferent supply of the sympathetic system involves three distinct types of arrangements, as depicted in Figure 3. The first type entails the direct projection of the sympathetic nerve to the chain ganglion at the same level as the target effector (Figure 3a). A prime example of this scenario is the spinal nerve T1, which synapses with the T1 chain ganglion to innervate the trachea. These fibers, known as **white rami communicantes** (singular = ramus communicans), are myelinated and thus appear white. The axon originating from the central neuron (represented as a solid line, symbolizing the preganglionic fiber) synapses with the postganglionic neuron (depicted as a dashed line). Subsequently, this neuron extends its projections to the target effector, such as the trachea, via **gray rami communicantes** characterized by unmyelinated axons. Thus, preganglionic neurons originating in the lateral horn of the spinal cord between T1 and L2 are referred to as white rami communicantes. In contrast, the postganglionic

neurons are associated with gray rami communicantes.

In certain instances, the target effectors are positioned either superior or inferior to the spinal segment from which the preganglionic fiber emerges. Thus, the synapse with the postganglionic neuron occurs at chain ganglia situated superior or inferior to the location of the preganglionic neuron. For example, the spinal nerve T1 innervates the eye. This spinal nerve ascends along the chain until it reaches the superior cervical ganglion, where it engages in synaptic transmission with the postganglionic neuron (Figure 3b). Notably, not all preganglionic axons culminate in the sympathetic chain ganglia. Additional branches stemming from the ventral nerve root traverse through the chain and terminate at **collateral ganglia** or **prevertebral ganglia**, constituting **splanchnic nerves**. To exemplify, the greater splanchnic nerve at the T5 level forms synapses with a collateral ganglion located outside the chain before establishing connections with postganglionic nerves responsible for innervating the stomach (see Figure 3c). Collateral ganglia hold significant sway over the control of organs residing in the abdominal cavity and are closely integrated into the intricate web of the enteric nervous system. The three prominent collateral ganglia include the **celiac ganglion**, the **superior mesenteric ganglion**, and the **inferior mesenteric ganglion**, each playing distinct roles in regulating abdominal functions (Figure 2). The term *celiac* originates from the Latin word *coelom*, denoting a body cavity but in this context, referring to the abdominal cavity, while *mesenteric* pertains to associations with the digestive system.

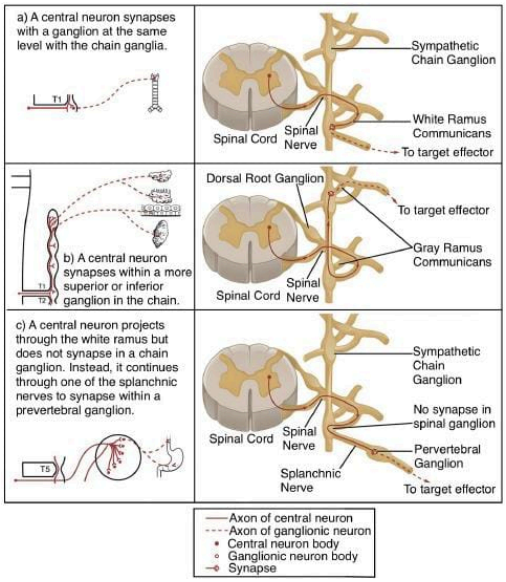


Figure 3 | Sympathetic Connections and Chain Ganglia | [4] The axon from a sympathetic neuron in the spinal cord can project to the periphery in several ways. (a) The fiber can project to the ganglion at the same level and synapse on a ganglionic neuron. (b) A branch can project to a superior or inferior ganglion in the chain. (c) A branch can project through the white ramus communicans but not terminate on a ganglionic neuron in the chain. Instead, it projects through one of the splanchnic nerves to a collateral ganglion or the adrenal medulla (not pictured).

A noteworthy subset of preganglionic sympathetic fibers diverges from the traditional ganglionic pathway by projecting to the **adrenal medulla**, an inner part of the adrenal gland. These axons, though still termed preganglionic fibers, differ in target as they do not reach a ganglion. Instead, they communicate with target structures by releasing approximately 80 percent E and 20 percent NE directly into the bloodstream. The release of E and NE into the bloodstream by the adrenal medulla during sympathetic activation primes the body for action, ensuring it can react rapidly and efficiently when faced with stressful situations. It orchestrates a variety of effects that range from enhancing cardiac function and promoting muscular readiness to supercharging metabolism. The specialized cells within the adrenal medulla that interact with preganglionic fibers are known as **chromaffin cells**. These cells, exhibiting neurosecretory characteristics, originate from the neural crest, mirroring their developmental origin with sympathetic ganglia and underlining the functional similarity between the adrenal medulla and sympathetic ganglia.

The divergence within the sympathetic system is evident in the branching patterns of preganglionic sympathetic neurons. A single preganglionic sympathetic neuron can impact many targets, often between 10 and 20. Following its departure from a neuron within the lateral horn of the thoracolumbar spinal cord, the preganglionic fiber traverses the white ramus communicans, entering the sympathetic chain. Within this chain, it branches off to engage various targets. Depending on the spinal cord level from which the preganglionic fiber exits, one branch may synapse with a neuron in the neighboring chain ganglion. Other branches extend upwards or downwards to reach different chain ganglia levels. Some branches traverse the chain ganglia and project through splanchnic nerves to a collateral ganglion. Finally, select branches may extend through splanchnic nerves to reach the adrenal medulla. This intricate network of branches illustrates how a single preganglionic neuron can wield far-reaching influence across diverse regions of the sympathetic system, thereby orchestrating wide-ranging responses in widely distributed organs.

When confronted with a threat, the sympathetic system orchestrates a series of coordinated responses. These include increasing heart and breathing rates, enhancing blood flow to skeletal muscles, and reducing blood flow to the digestive system and the kidneys. Simultaneously, sweat gland secretion escalates as part of this integrated reaction. These multifaceted physiological changes are essential for efficiently responding to and escaping imminent danger.

This page titled 5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System

The parasympathetic division stands out for its craniosacral organization. This distinct classification, also known as the craniosacral division, originates from the unique anatomical locations of its preganglionic neurons. The connections within the parasympathetic division mirror those of the sympathetic division in many ways but also differ in several ways. The key distinction lies in the origins of preganglionic neurons. For the parasympathetic system, these neurons are situated in the nuclei of the brainstem and the lateral horn of the sacral spinal cord, which grants it the name craniosacral system.

The structural organization of the parasympathetic system exhibits specific characteristics. Preganglionic neurons from cranial regions travel within cranial nerves, while those originating from the sacral areas navigate via spinal nerves. The targets of these axons are **terminal ganglia**, which are often found near or even within the target effector organ. When residing within organ walls, these ganglia are aptly termed **intramural ganglia**. Significantly, the lengths of axons in the parasympathetic system vary markedly. Preganglionic fibers are relatively long and myelinated, while unmyelinated postganglionic fibers are short due to the proximity of ganglia to the target effectors.

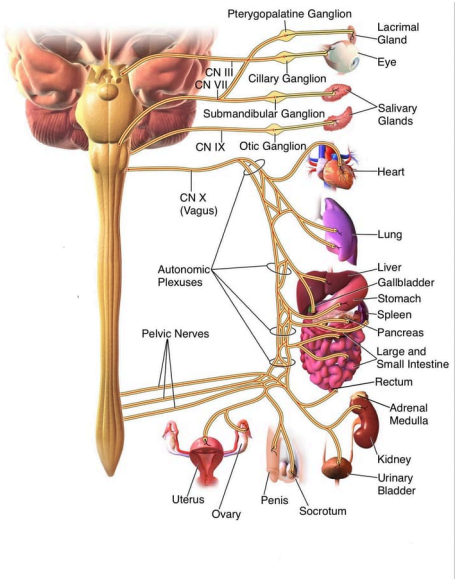


Figure 4 | Organization of the Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System | [5] This figure depicts the anatomical arrangement of the parasympathetic division of the autonomic nervous system. Originating from the brainstem and sacral region of the spinal cord, preganglionic neurons of the parasympathetic division project to terminal ganglia located near or within target organs. Within these terminal ganglia, preganglionic fibers synapse directly with postganglionic neurons. Postganglionic fibers then extend to innervate various target tissues, including smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and glands, to regulate functions such as digestion, urination, and sexual arousal.

The cranial component of the parasympathetic system involves cranial nerves III, VII, IX, and X, each originating from specific nuclei within the brainstem. For instance, preganglionic parasympathetic axons within cranial nerve III terminate in the ciliary ganglion. Postganglionic fibers then extend to control the smooth muscle of the iris, governing pupillary size. In the upper medulla, **submandibular** and **otic ganglia** house neurons whose axons project via the facial and glossopharyngeal nerves and deal with salivary gland regulation.

Under the parasympathetic influence, fibers within the facial nerve activate a specific ganglion and, subsequently, the lacrimal (tear) gland. Neurons residing in the dorsal nucleus of the vagus nerve and the nucleus ambiguous (not shown) project via the vagus nerve (cranial nerve X) to terminal ganglia within the thoracic and abdominal cavities. Here, parasympathetic preganglionic fibers exert their influence on organs such as the heart, bronchi, esophagus, stomach, liver, pancreas, gallbladder, and small intestine. Notably, postganglionic axons originating from vagus-activated ganglia often become integrated into organ structures, including the mesenteric plexus within digestive tract organs and intramural ganglia.

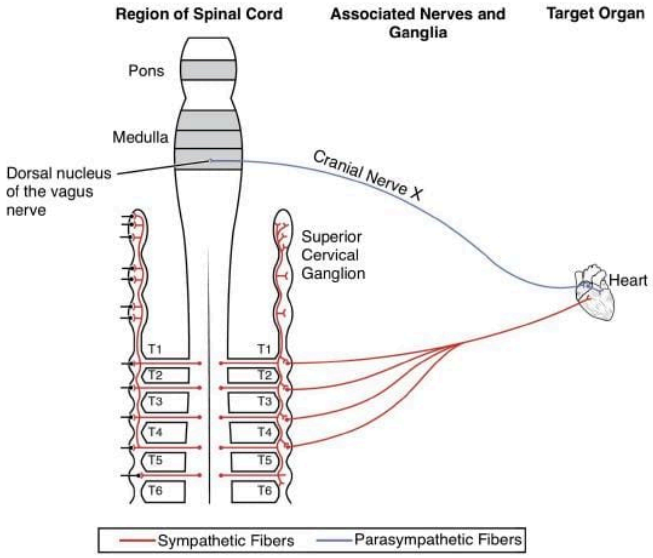


Figure 5 | Autonomic Connections to the Heart and Blood Vessels | [6]

Spanning from the iris and ciliary body of the eye to the urinary bladder and reproductive organs, the parasympathetic system embraces a wide range of effector organs. The cranial division of the parasympathetic system projects from ocular regions to select portions of the intestines, while the sacral component predominantly oversees the large intestine and the pelvic organs within the urinary and reproductive systems. This elaborate system ensures precise regulation across an array of vital physiological processes.

The ANS operates dynamically, adjusting sympathetic and parasympathetic tone based on the body's needs at any given moment. The precise balance between these tones helps maintain homeostasis and ensures that the body can rapidly adapt to varying internal and external conditions. While sympathetic tone readies the body for action and survival, parasympathetic tone fosters rest, digestion, and recovery. The interplay between these tones is a testament to the ability of the ANS to finely tune and regulate the body's physiological responses to meet its ever-changing demands.[7]

This page titled 5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System

Synapses in the autonomic system are classified as **cholinergic**, where ACh is the signaling molecule, or **adrenergic**, where NE or E take the signaling reins. These distinctions encompass the released signaling molecule and the class of receptors each binds.

Cholinergic System: Nicotinic and Muscarinic Receptors

Within the cholinergic system, two distinct classes of receptors emerge, the **nicotinic receptor** and the **muscarinic receptor**. Both of these receptors interact with ACh to elicit changes in the target cell. Nicotinic receptors operate as ligand-gated channels, while muscarinic receptors belong to the G protein-coupled receptor family. These receptors bear names that correlate with molecules that bind to them, with nicotine binding to nicotinic receptors and muscarine, a compound found in toxic mushrooms, binding to muscarinic receptors. Notably, ACh binds to both nicotinic and muscarinic receptor types. Nicotinic receptors are further subdivided into **N1** and **N2** (Table 1). N1 receptors are located in skeletal muscle fibers at the neuromuscular junction, while N2 receptors are found on the postganglionic membrane in the autonomic ganglia, including chromaffin cells within the adrenal medulla. As shown in Figure 6, both sympathetic and parasympathetic preganglionic fibers release the neurotransmitter ACh. All ganglionic neurons, which serve as the targets of these preganglionic fibers, express nicotinic receptors in their cell membranes. Nicotinic receptors trigger depolarization of the postsynaptic membrane upon activation. Postganglionic parasympathetic axons also release ACh, but their target receptors are muscarinic. Since they belong to the G protein-coupled receptor family, muscarinic receptors do not solely trigger depolarization of the postsynaptic membrane. Muscarinic receptors further subdivide into five distinct subtypes, known as **M1** to **M5**. Notably, M2 receptors are present in the heart, while M3 receptors are located in smooth muscle and glandular tissues (Table 1).

Adrenergic System: Alpha and Beta Adrenergic Receptors

The adrenergic system boasts two primary receptor types: **alpha (α) adrenergic receptors** and **beta (β) adrenergic receptors**. Unlike cholinergic receptors, adrenergic receptors are not classified by their drug-binding properties, as they all belong to the G protein-coupled receptor family. The α-adrenergic receptor includes **α1** and **α2** subtypes, while the β-adrenergic receptor comprises **β1**, **β2**, and **β3** subtypes (Table 1).

Typically, postganglionic sympathetic fibers release NE, with exceptions being axons that innervate sweat glands, which instead release ACh. The release of ACh at the sweat gland activates sweat secretion. This cholinergic innervation stimulates sweat production when the body needs to cool down, such as during physical exertion or exposure to high temperatures.

In terms of functionality, α1 and β1 adrenergic receptors generally have stimulatory effects, with α1 receptors distributed widely across sympathetic target structures and β1 receptors exclusive to cardiac muscle and the juxtaglomerular cells in the kidneys. In contrast, α2 and β2 adrenergic receptors tend to induce inhibitory effects at their respective target structures, albeit with some exceptions. α2-adrenergic receptors have widespread distribution throughout the body, while β2 receptors are primarily found in the smooth muscle lining of airways, the eyes, and skeletal muscle, and β3 receptors are present on adipocytes.

The classification of chemicals released by the sympathetic division is multifaceted. While postganglionic sympathetic axons release NE, traditionally termed a neurotransmitter, the adrenal medulla releases both E and NE directly into the bloodstream, categorizing them as hormones.[8]

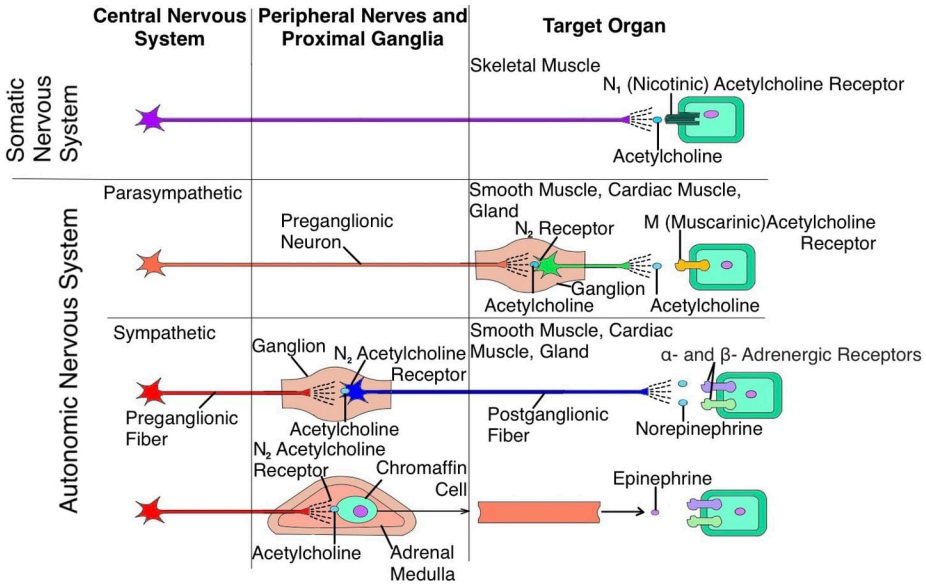


Figure 6 | Neurotransmitters and their receptors in the Somatic, Sympathetic and Parasympathetic Divisions of the Autonomic Nervous System |[9] This figure illustrates the neurotransmitters and their respective receptors involved in signal transmission within the somatic, sympathetic, and parasympathetic divisions of the autonomic nervous system. Key neurotransmitters such as ACh and NE interact with specific receptors, including nicotinic (N1 and N2) and muscarinic (M) receptors for ACh and adrenergic receptors (α and β) for NE, facilitating various physiological responses in target tissues.

Structurally, there are distinctions between the somatic and autonomic postganglionic divisions. Whereas a conventional synaptic end bulb is found at the neuromuscular junction in somatic innervation, autonomic postganglionic fibers exhibit chains of **varicosities** along their length (Figure 6). Varicosities form synaptic contacts with effector cells, allowing for the rapid and widespread modulation of physiological functions by the ANS.[10]

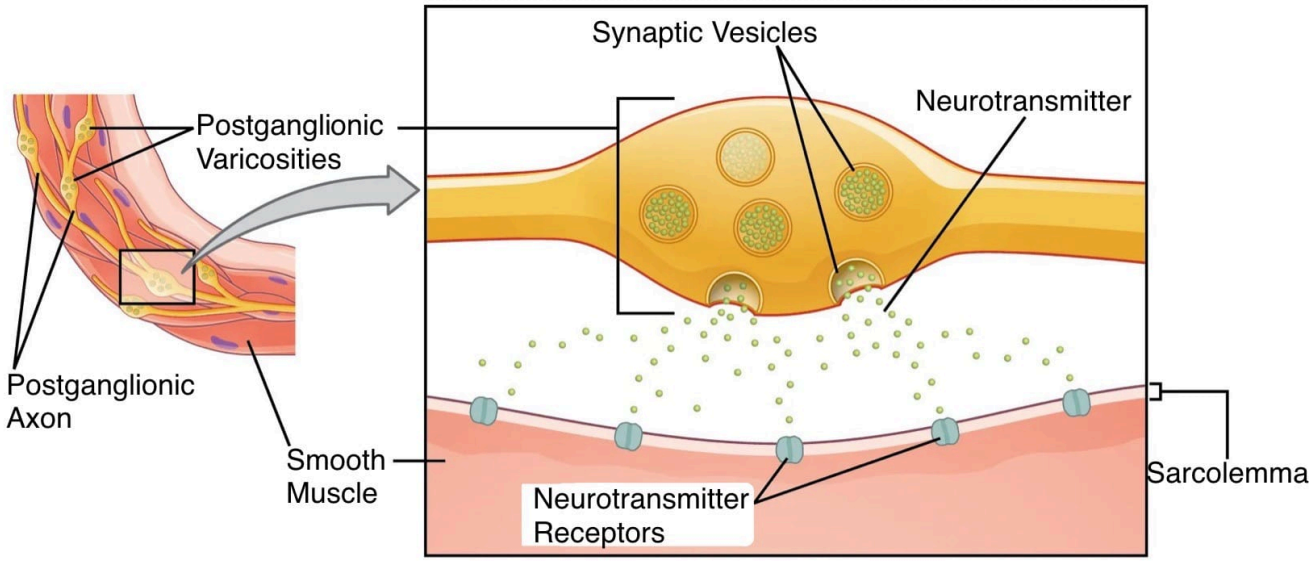


Figure 7 | Autonomic Varicosities | [11] This figure depicts the structure of autonomic varicosities, specialized regions along autonomic nerve fibers where neurotransmitter release occurs. Varicosities are characterized by multiple synaptic vesicles containing neurotransmitters such as ACh or NE.

Table 1 | *Autonomic Receptor Types* |

Receptor	Neurotransmitter (ligand)	Effector Tissue/Organ	Mechanism of Action	Effect on Effector
Nicotinic	ACh released from autonomic preganglionic fibers	All autonomic postganglionic cell bodies and adrenal medulla (N2); skeletal muscle (N1- note that it is not an autonomic structure)	Opens nonspecific cation receptor channels	Excitatory
Muscarinic	ACh released from parasympathetic postganglionic fibers	Cardiac muscle (M2), smooth muscle, most exocrine and some endocrine glands (M3)	Activates G-protein coupled receptor pathways	Excitatory or inhibitory (depends on the effector)
α1	NE released from sympathetic postganglionic fibers; E released from adrenal medulla	Smooth muscle, most sympathetic target tissues	Causes the release of IP3 and DAG, increases intracellular calcium	Excitatory
α2	Norepinephrine, epinephrine	Digestive organs, smooth muscle, adipocytes, platelets	Inhibits cAMP	Inhibitory
β1	Norepinephrine, epinephrine	Heart	Activates cAMP	Excitatory
β2	Epinephrine	Smooth muscles of arterioles and bronchioles	Activates cAMP	Inhibitory

Fight or Flight Response

The origins of the phrase "fight or flight" can be traced back to the work of Walter Cannon, a scientist based at Harvard in 1915. Although the concepts of homeostasis and the functioning of the sympathetic nervous system had been introduced in France during the previous century, Cannon expanded upon these ideas. He introduced the notion that when confronted with a threat, an animal's response involves preparing to either confront the danger head-on or make a swift escape. Over time, this commonly used phrase has evolved to encompass a broader spectrum of responses, including "fight, flight, or fright" and even "fight, flight, fright, or freeze." While Cannon's original contribution was a memorable catchphrase that encapsulated some of the reactions to threats, it is important to recognize that it represents an incomplete picture. The sympathetic nervous system is pivotal in orchestrating the physiological responses associated with various emotional states. The name "sympathetic" itself can be interpreted as reflecting this concept, with "sym-" meaning "together" and "-pathos" denoting "pain," "suffering," or "emotion." This video provides more about the fight-or-flight response (http://openstaxcollege.org/l/fightflight).[12]

The fight or flight response is a physiological mechanism that allows the body to adapt swiftly to perceived threats. Its ability to mobilize energy, enhance alertness, and prepare the body for action has been fundamental to human survival throughout evolution. The ANS orchestrates this intricate yet finely tuned reaction, specifically the sympathetic division. It plays a pivotal role in preparing the body to cope with perceived danger or challenges. Driven by a cascade of neurochemical events, this response ensures that an individual is primed to confront or evade a threat effectively.

The initiation of the fight or flight response begins with the detection of a potential threat. Whether it is a physical danger, an emotional stressor, or a challenging situation, the limbic system, particularly the amygdala and hypothalamus, plays a crucial role in processing these stimuli. The hypothalamus triggers a rapid response through the ANS upon detecting a threat. One of the primary actions taken by the sympathetic nervous system is to stimulate the adrenal medulla, located atop the kidneys. This gland releases a surge of E and NE directly into the bloodstream, which acts as powerful messengers, swiftly spreading the alert throughout the body. The actions of E and NE set off a series of immediate physiological changes to enhance an individual's chances of survival or successful confrontation. Some key alterations include increased heart rate, dilation of airways, pupil dilation, elevation of blood glucose levels, blood flow redistribution, and increased strength and vigilance.

While the immediate fight or flight response is designed for rapid, short-term action, the cascade of physiological changes can have long-term effects if the stressor persists. Extended sympathetic nervous system activation can lead to health issues such as chronic stress, hypertension, and immune system suppression.[13]

Table 2 | Effect of the Autonomic Nervous System on Organ Systems | [14]

Organ	Sympathetic action	Sympathetic	Parasympathetic Action	Parasympathetic Receptor
Heart	Increases heart rate Increases contractility	β1 β1	Decreases heart rate Decreases contractility	M2 M2
Vascular smooth muscle	Constricts blood vessels in skin Dilates blood vessels in skeletal muscle	α1 β2		
GI tract	Decreases motility Constricts sphincters	α2, β2 α1	Increases motility Relaxes sphincters	M3 M3
Bronchioles	Dilates bronchiolar smooth muscle	β2	Constricts bronchiolar smooth muscle	M3
Male Reproductive Function	Ejaculation	α1	Erection	M3
Bladder	Relaxes bladder Constricts urethral sphincter	β2 α1	Contract bladder	M3
Sweat glands	Increase sweating	M (α1 in the palms, soles, and armpits only)		

Organ	Sympathetic action	Sympathetic	Parasympathetic Action	Parasympathetic Receptor
Kidney	Increases renin secretion	β1		
Adipocytes	Increase lipolysis	β3		

While the ANS typically adheres to the pattern of dual innervation, a noteworthy exception exists within the sympathetic system. One example of such exceptionally sympathetic targets is the sweat glands, where postganglionic fibers utilize ACh as their neurotransmitter instead of the more common neurotransmitter, NE. Sweat glands possess muscarinic receptors designed to respond to ACh, a characteristic that defines them as **cholinergic sweat glands**. In most regions of the body, this cholinergic mechanism triggers sweat secretion. However, an intriguing exception arises in the palms, soles, and armpits. Sweat glands in these regions express α1 receptors, which are highly responsive to NE, making them **adrenergic sweat glands**. In some other instances, specific structures exclusively receive parasympathetic input. For example, the pancreatic acini and parietal cells of the stomach rely solely on parasympathetic innervation for regulation.[15]

This page titled 5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

5.7: Short and Long Reflexes

The CNS plays an integral role in somatic reflexes where the synapse occurs within the spinal cord or the brainstem. All somatic reflex pathways entail some level of CNS mediation. Visceral reflexes, associated with the thoracolumbar and craniosacral systems, share structural similarities with somatic reflexes. They comprise sensory neurons conveying information from visceral organs to the CNS and motor neurons that relay directives to the effector organs.

The classification of reflexes into short and long categories is based on the extent of CNS involvement. Short reflexes are typically involved in immediate, involuntary reactions, while long reflexes contribute to more complex, coordinated behaviors and homeostatic regulation. Long reflexes extend their afferent branches into the spinal cord or the brain, and they subsequently incorporate efferent branches for the execution of their responses (Figure 7). These reflexes often participate in more intricate physiological processes and frequently involve multiple levels of the CNS in their pathways. In contrast, short reflexes are entirely peripheral, confined to local interactions between sensory input and motor output (Figure 7). When a sensory neuron establishes a direct connection with the postganglionic neuron, effectively activating the effector organ without CNS involvement, such a "short circuit" bypasses the customary CNS relay, relying instead on localized neural networks to orchestrate rapid and specific responses. This unique characteristic of short reflexes underscores their adaptability and efficiency in rapidly responding to specific physiological needs.

When discussing the divisions of the nervous system that are relevant to autonomic functions, it is essential to recognize the enteric nervous system, a component that is intricately linked to the digestive organs. The term "enteric" refers to the digestive system, which includes neural tissues that are closely intertwined with gastrointestinal functions. Among these neural hubs, the myenteric plexuses are particularly important. They are distributed within the walls of digestive tract organs and facilitate direct neural influence on digestive processes. For example, a short reflex is initiated when stretch receptors in the stomach are activated by distension due to food intake. This reflex directly activates smooth muscle fibers in the stomach wall, enhancing motility to aid in digesting excess food. Interestingly, no CNS intermediation is required, as the stretch receptors directly stimulate a neuron embedded in the stomach wall, leading to smooth muscle contractions. These neurons are postganglionic parasympathetic neurons that are controlled by fibers within the vagus nerve.[16]

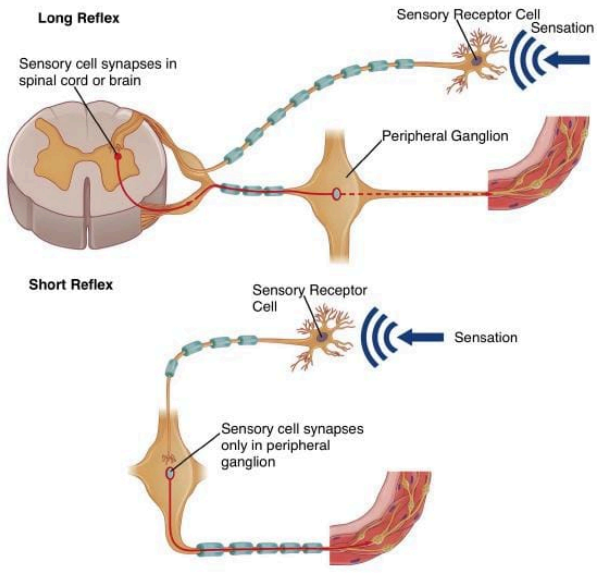


Figure 8 | Short and Long Reflexes | [17] This figure illustrates the concept of short and long reflex arcs in the autonomic nervous system. Short reflexes involve local processing within the autonomic ganglia, leading to rapid and localized responses to stimuli. On the other hand, long reflexes involve integration within the central nervous system, resulting in more widespread and coordinated responses across multiple organ systems. Short reflexes are typically involved in immediate, involuntary reactions, while long reflexes contribute to more complex, coordinated behaviors and homeostatic regulation.

This page titled 5.7: Short and Long Reflexes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

5.8: Dual Innervation

The ANS is paramount in orchestrating homeostasis due to the dynamic interplay between its sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions. At the core of homeostatic regulation lies the inherent competition between the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions as they vie for control over the target effectors. This competition represents a fundamental mechanism by which the body continuously adapts to changing physiological demands. The outcome of this contest determines the specific autonomic response enacted by the body. Using the heart as an example, it receives input from both the sympathetic and parasympathetic systems. With sympathetic activation, NE is released, and it binds to adrenergic receptors, accelerating depolarization and increasing heart rate and contraction force. Conversely, when the parasympathetic system is activated, ACh is released, and it binds to muscarinic receptors, causing hyperpolarization and making it more difficult for them to reach the threshold for activation, subsequently slowing the heart rate.

Although dual innervation is more common, some structures are supplied by only one division of the ANS, not both the sympathetic and parasympathetic systems. These include sweat glands, arrector pili muscles, the adrenal medulla, and blood vessels receiving only or mainly sympathetic supply. Conversely, specific structures in the body receive only a parasympathetic supply. These structures include the lacrimal glands and the submandibular and sublingual salivary glands.[7]

This page titled 5.8: Dual Innervation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

5.9: Autonomic Tone

The concept of autonomic tone showcases the intricate interplay between the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions, underscoring their distinct roles in orchestrating the body's physiological responses. Within each organ system, there often exists a predominant tendency toward either sympathetic or parasympathetic influence in its resting state. This inherent tendency is termed the autonomic tone of the system. Without parasympathetic input, the intrinsic rate of the heart would be around 100 beats per minute (bpm). However, under its unique influence, the parasympathetic system reduces this rate to the typical resting heart rate of 60–80 bpm, suggesting the intricacies of autonomic regulation within the body. This phenomenon designates the heart as under parasympathetic tone, highlighting the dominance of the parasympathetic division in regulating heart rate. In contrast, blood pressure is heavily influenced by the autonomic tone, with the sympathetic division playing a pivotal role. Smooth muscle within the walls of blood vessels contains specialized adrenergic receptors, highly responsive to the neurotransmitter NE. NE binds to these receptors upon release from postganglionic sympathetic fibers, provoking vessel constriction and consequent elevation of blood pressure. E and NE, released from the adrenal medulla, also interact with these receptors as they traverse the bloodstream, further contributing to blood pressure regulation. Thus, the sympathetic division exerts predominant control over the tone of systemic blood vessels. However, the sympathetic division exhibits versatility in certain situations. Blood vessels within skeletal muscle, particularly those in the lower limbs, tend to dilate rather than constrict when subjected to sympathetic input. This divergence from the usual vasoconstriction allows for increased blood flow to the skeletal muscles actively engaged in the "fight-or-flight" response, ensuring they receive adequate oxygen and nutrients. Parasympathetic projections to blood vessels are a rarity, primarily limited to those within the erectile tissue of reproductive organs where postganglionic parasympathetic fibers release ACh, inducing vessel dilation and promoting the engorgement of erectile tissue.[18]

This page titled 5.9: Autonomic Tone is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS

The regulation of autonomic influence is a complex endeavor that commences with neural integration in the hypothalamus. This integration then cascades down through the brain stem and into the spinal cord, where the intricate coordination of sympathetic and parasympathetic activities unfolds. These neural pathways and centers function in concert to ensure that our physiological responses remain finely tuned, a testament to the remarkable complexity of autonomic control.

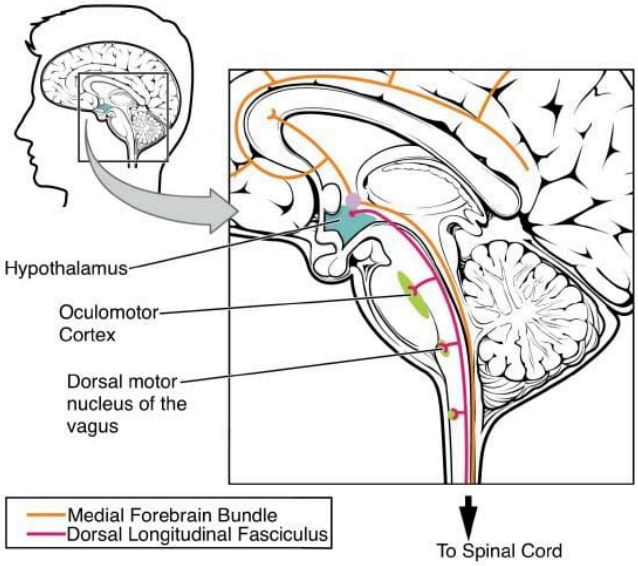


Figure 9 | Hypothalamic Regulation of the Autonomic Nervous System | [19] Schematic representation of key neural pathways connecting the hypothalamus to various brainstem structures. The medial forebrain bundle (MFB) (orange line) and dorsal longitudinal fasciculus (DLF) (pink line) are shown as major pathways involved in autonomic and motor control. The MFB extends from the hypothalamus and plays a role in reward and autonomic regulation, while the DLF connects the hypothalamus to brainstem nuclei, including the oculomotor cortex and dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus, facilitating autonomic and motor functions. The pathways project toward the spinal cord, integrating higher-order brain functions with autonomic and somatic responses.

The hypothalamus modulates the equilibrium between sympathetic and parasympathetic inputs to the body's organ systems. Facilitating these vital connections are two major neural conduits—the **median forebrain bundle** and the **dorsal longitudinal fasciculus** (Figure 8). These neural highways link the hypothalamus with the key parasympathetic nuclei in the brainstem and the preganglionic neurons within the thoracolumbar spinal cord. Moreover, the hypothalamus is not an isolated entity; it receives inputs from various forebrain regions through the medial forebrain bundle. The olfactory cortex, septal nuclei of the basal forebrain, and the amygdala are among the contributors, endowing the hypothalamus with information concerning the overall state of the nervous system. These forebrain structures are vital in conveying critical data to the hypothalamus, influencing its regulatory prowess.

The hypothalamus receives input from diverse sensory domains, including the visual cortex, auditory cortex, and limbic system. These sensory inputs enrich the hypothalamus with essential information about the external environment and emotional states. Furthermore, descending signals from the hypothalamus can potentiate activity in this area, fostering sympathetic system engagement, particularly during episodes of anxiety or stress.

The regulation of autonomic influence is a complex endeavor that commences with neural integration in the hypothalamus. This integration then cascades down through the brainstem and into the spinal cord, where the intricate coordination of sympathetic and parasympathetic activities unfolds. These neural pathways and centers function in concert to ensure that our physiological responses remain finely tuned, a testament to the remarkable complexity of autonomic control.[20]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

5.11: References

1. https://med.libretexts.org/Bookshelves/Anatomy_and_Physiology/Anatomy_and_Physiology_(Boundless)/14%3A_Autonomic_Nervous_System/14.1%3A_Introduction_to_the_Autonomic_Nervous_System/14.1A%3A_Comparing_the_Somatic_and_Autonomic_Nervous_Systems Accessed April 13th, 2024.

2. Betts, J. et al. (2013). Figure 15.6 Comparison of Somatic and Visceral Reflexes. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/ecd3cd85a82978d0bf6290a1cdaffc9b3745cb47]

3. Betts, J. et al. (2013). Figure 15.2 Connections of Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/3db5995a2e7f2051314b8951a567ffd91f00e3d6]

4. J. Gordon Betts, et al. (2013). Figure 15.3 Sympathetic Connections and Chain Ganglia. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/60364530311f898f73821add78596c5bdfb8cc7f2]

5. Betts, J. et al. (2013). Figure 15.4 Connections of Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System Neurons. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/bd879970514f24d2e16d7d777cf72f983f78f85f]

6. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 15.11 Fiber Tracts of the Central Autonomic System. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240226.174525/resources/2d3cce11ada5176ae9fe7b7cc542259a6b211be0]

7. Waxenbaum JA, Reddy V, Varacallo M. Anatomy, Autonomic Nervous System. [Updated 2023 Jul 24]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2024 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK539845/

8. Burnstock, Geoffrey, 'Structural and chemical organization of the autonomic nervous system with special reference to non-adrenergic, non-cholinergic transmission', in Christopher J. Mathias, and Sir Roger Bannister (eds), *Autonomic Failure: A Textbook of Clinical Disorders of the Autonomic Nervous System*, 5 edn (Oxford, 2013; online edn, Oxford Academic, 1 July 2013), https://doi.org/10.1093/med/9780198566342.003.0007, accessed 13 Apr. 2024.

9. Austin Community College. (n.d.). [Image of Somatic Branch– voluntary movement and secretions]. Austin Community College. Retrieved from [https://www.austincc.edu/apreview/PhysText/PNSefferent.html]

10. Bennett MR. (1998). Transmission at sympathetic varicosities. Physiology 13(2): 53-105. https://doi.org/10.1152/physiologyonline.1998.13.2.79

11. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 15.13 Autonomic Connections to Heart and Blood Vessels. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/de1f5a410a2c9f83248e52dd53e1bffe769c4178]

12. (http://openstaxcollege.org/l/fightflight). [7]

13. McCorry LK. Physiology of the autonomic nervous system. Am J Pharm Educ. 2007 Aug 15;71(4):78. doi: 10.5688/aj710478. PMID: 17786266; PMCID: PMC1959222.

14. https://fblt.cz/en/skripta/regulacni...ystem/accessed 13 Apr. 2024.

15. Hu Y, Converse C, Lyons MC, Hsu WH. Neural control of sweat secretion: a review. Br J Dermatol. 2018 Jun;178(6):1246-1256. doi: 10.1111/bjd.15808. Epub 2018 Apr 25. PMID: 28714085.

16. Wood, J.D. (2008). Autonomic/Enteric Reflexes. In: Binder, M.D., Hirokawa, N., Windhorst, U. (eds) Encyclopedia of Neuroscience. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-540-29678-2_492

17. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 15.5 Autonomic Varicosities. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/6bd0cba034d971830b9e1aaae47de3daa832a889]

18. Giuliano, R.J., Karns, C.M., Bell, T.A., Petersen, S., Skowron, E.A., Neville, H.J., and Pakulak, E., Parasympathetic and sympathetic activity are associated with individual differences in neural indices of selective attention in adults, *Psychophysiology*, 2018, vol. 55, p. e13079.

19. Betts, J. G., et al. (2013). Figure 15.8 Short and Long Reflexes. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/75660cf1275da1bda8b998d70a95c4b643b8d4d9]

20. Dampney, Roger A. L., 'The Hypothalamus and Autonomic Regulation: An Overview', in Ida J. Llewellyn-Smith, and Anthony J. M. Verberne (eds), *Central Regulation of Autonomic Functions*, 2nd edn (2011; online edn, Oxford Academic, 1 May 2011), https://doi.org/10.1093/acprof:oso/9780195306637.003.0003, accessed 13 Apr. 2024.

This page titled 5.11: References is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

6: PHYSIOLOGY OF MUSCLE AND BONE TISSUES

6.1: Objectives

6.2: Introduction

6.3: Muscle Tissue

6.4: Skeletal Muscle

6.5: Smooth Muscle

6.6: Bone Tissue

6.7: References

This page titled 6: Physiology of Muscle and Bone Tissues is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

6.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- List the distinctive features and functions of muscle tissue.
- Elaborate on the three types of muscle tissue, drawing comparisons and contrasts based on their characteristic traits.
- Illustrate the concept of a motor unit, highlighting the physiological disparities between smaller and larger motor units.
- Clarify the structural organization of skeletal muscle tissue, spanning from a single muscle cell to an entire muscle.
- Outline the structural organization of a myofibril, focusing on the details of a sarcomere.
- Explain the sliding filament model of muscle contraction, including the underlying mechanisms.
- Describe the sequential events that transpire at a neuromuscular junction, including action potentials in axons and muscle fibers, end plate potential, terminal bouton, acetylcholine, calcium ion channels, motor end plate, sodium ion channels, and the rationale behind ACh degradation post-receptor binding.
- Identify the mechanism of action for both depolarizing and nondepolarizing muscle relaxants.
- Describe excitation-contraction coupling within skeletal muscle fibers, starting from an action potential in a somatic motor neuron axon and culminating in the formation of initial cross-bridge bonds. Additionally, summarize events occurring during the recovery phase of muscle contraction.
- Explain how ATP is pivotal in muscle contraction and relaxation.
- Define the diverse types of muscle contractions, including isotonic, concentric, eccentric, and isometric, and their associated terminologies (load, force, and tension).
- Describe the physiological state of a muscle fiber during rigor mortis and the conditions that lead to this state.
- Elucidate the role and source of calcium ions in initiating skeletal muscle fiber contraction.
- Define the length-tension relationship in skeletal muscle fibers.
- Elaborate on how the intracellular composition of a muscle cell, such as the presence of glycogen, myoglobin, mitochondria, and creatine, offers insights into the specific types of cellular respiration carried out by that muscle cell.
- Analyze the relationship between a muscle cell's contraction speed and its ATP generation and replenishment mechanisms while explaining how cells relying on anaerobic respiration accumulate an oxygen debt.
- Differentiate between twitch summation and motor recruitment in skeletal muscle.
- Contrast the mechanism of contraction in smooth muscle cells with that in skeletal muscle cells, including an explanation of how latch bridges enable smooth muscle cells to sustain contractions for longer durations with less ATP expenditure.
- Examine the distinctions in the innervation of smooth muscle cells compared to skeletal muscle cells, encompassing both structural and functional variations.
- List the functions of bone tissue.
- Identify the components of bone tissue, encompassing bone cells and bone matrix.
- Discriminate between spongy bone and compact bone.

- Provide a comprehensive explanation of osteogenesis, highlighting the distinctions between intramembranous bone formation and endochondral ossification.
- Describe interstitial growth and appositional growth in bone.
- Elaborate on the intricacies of bone remodeling.
- Rationalize the integral role of bone in the regulation of calcium and phosphate metabolism.

This page titled 6.1: Objectives is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

6.2: Introduction

There are three distinct types of muscle tissues, each with its unique characteristics and functions (Figure 1). **Skeletal muscles**, which comprise a significant portion of musculature, derive their name from their role in moving the skeleton and their attachment to skeletal structures. In contrast, **cardiac muscle** is exclusive to the heart, orchestrating the vital task of propelling blood throughout the circulatory system. **Smooth muscle** is responsible for an array of involuntary movements, such as causing hair to stand on end when cold or facilitating the movement of food through the digestive tract. This chapter delves into the comprehensive functions of skeletal and smooth muscle tissues. The cardiac muscle is dedicated to a section elsewhere in this textbook.

Bones are the rigid framework that supports our bodies, facilitates movement, protects vital organs, and plays a pivotal role in mineral storage and blood cell formation. This chapter deals with bone formation, remodeling, and repair processes while examining the dynamic interplay of cells, such as **osteoblasts** and **osteoclasts**, in sculpting and maintaining bone structure. The role of bones in calcium and phosphate metabolism will also be dealt with.

This page titled 6.2: Introduction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

6.3: Muscle Tissue

Muscle, one of the fundamental tissue types in the human body, plays a pivotal role in physiological processes. At the cellular level, muscle tissue comprises a singular cell type—the **muscle cell**. These cells, often recognized by their elongated and slender appearance, are called **muscle fibers**. Notably, the defining feature of muscle fibers is their remarkable capacity for dynamic changes in length, referred to as **muscle contraction**, followed by **relaxation**, wherein they return to their original state.

Functions of Muscle Tissue

Skeletal muscles play a prominent role in the facilitation of bodily movement. However, their functional purview extends beyond motion generation. Skeletal muscles play a pivotal role in counteracting gravitational forces, thereby preserving posture and equilibrium through continuous micro-adjustments. These subtle yet indispensable contractions mitigate excessive mobility within bones and joints, thereby ensuring the structural robustness and stability of the skeletal framework. Furthermore, skeletal muscles act as protective barriers for particularly those within the abdominal and pelvic regions against external traumas. Simultaneously, they provide essential support by bearing the weight of these vital organs, thus augmenting their functional viability.

Skeletal muscles are strategically positioned at the entrances of internal passageways, enabling them to govern the movement of various substances. This control extends to essential functions such as swallowing, urination, and defecation, all of which fall under voluntary functions.

Aside from their role in movement and internal regulation, skeletal muscles are key players in maintaining the body's thermal equilibrium. Muscle contractions, powered by energy from ATP breakdown, generate heat as a byproduct. This thermogenic quality is particularly evident during periods of sustained muscle activity, where increased heat production raises body temperature. Furthermore, in response to cold environmental conditions, the body employs shivering—a coordinated contraction of skeletal muscles—to generate warmth. This unique thermoregulatory function of skeletal muscles underscores their versatility and importance in the body's overall functioning.[1]

Smooth muscle serves vital functions in the body, such as regulating blood pressure within the arterial walls, essential for propelling blood through the circulatory system. Additionally, smooth muscle in visceral organs and internal passageways plays a pivotal role in facilitating the movement of materials within the body. The highly coordinated cardiac muscle contractions contribute significantly to pumping blood into the vascular system.[2]

The primary function of cardiac muscle is to contract rhythmically and forcefully, pumping blood throughout the body, ensuring the delivery of oxygen and nutrients to tissues, and removing waste products.[2]

Types of Muscle Tissue

There are three distinct muscle tissue types. While each possesses unique attributes, they share specific common properties. One such property is excitability, an essential feature stemming from the ability of plasma membranes to alter their electrical states. This alteration facilitates the transmission of action potentials along the membrane's entire expanse. However, the response to excitability differs among muscle tissue types. Skeletal muscle fibers rely entirely on neural signaling from the nervous system to operate effectively. Cardiac and smooth muscle fibers fall into the category of involuntary muscles as they exhibit excitability even without neural stimulus. Although the nervous system can exert some influence on their excitability, they maintain intrinsic responsiveness.[3]

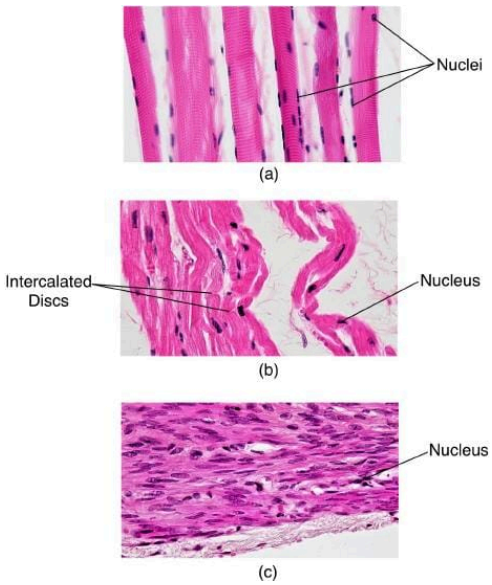


Figure 1 | The Three Types of Muscle Tissue | [4] This figure is a histological overview of the three primary types of muscle tissues in the human body: (a) Skeletal Muscle (b) Cardiac Muscle (c) Smooth Muscle. Skeletal muscle tissue is characterized by long, multinucleated fibers with striations. Cardiac muscle tissue exhibits branching, striated fibers with intercalated discs. Smooth muscle tissue features spindle-shaped cells lacking striations.

All muscle types depend on ATP to sustain contraction. They possess several distinctive properties, such as **elasticity**, which allows them to return to their initial length during relaxation; **extensibility**, which permits stretching and extension; and **contractility,** where muscle tissue can exert force by shortening and pulling on attachment points.3

There are differences in the microscopic organization of contractile proteins—actin and myosin in the three types of muscle fibers. This divergence in structural arrangement gives rise to distinctive features that set each muscle type apart. Skeletal muscle and cardiac muscle share a notable commonality. In both these muscle types, actin and myosin proteins are arranged in the cytoplasm of individual muscle cells, resulting in a highly ordered pattern called striations. These striations are readily observable under a light microscope at significant magnification (Figure 1) [5]. However, there are differences between these two muscle types. Skeletal muscle fibers are multinucleated, with several nuclei per cell. They do not possess direct physical connections between cells but operate under neural control, allowing for voluntary muscle control [6]. In contrast, cardiac muscle fibers contain one to two nuclei and are intricately interlinked physically and electrically via special structures called **intercalated discs**. This interconnection ensures coordinated contractions throughout the heart, functioning as a single unit termed a **syncytium**. Cardiac muscle fibers are shorter than their skeletal counterparts but extensively branched, facilitating efficient electrical transmission via intercalated discs. Moreover, both skeletal and cardiac muscle fibers have numerous mitochondria and myoglobin molecules, enabling ATP generation primarily through aerobic metabolism [7].

Distinctive among these muscle types is smooth muscle, characterized by the absence of the regular actin-myosin organization seen in skeletal and cardiac muscles. This unique structural aspect imparts a uniform, nonstriated appearance to the cytoplasm of smooth muscle fibers, hence the name "smooth muscle." Each smooth muscle fiber houses a single nucleus.

This page titled 6.3: Muscle Tissue is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

6.4: Skeletal Muscle

Neural Control of Skeletal Muscle

Skeletal muscle relies extensively on the nervous system for its initiation and activation. The motor neurons responsible for inducing contractions within skeletal muscle fibers originate in the spinal cord or brainstem. Furthermore, these neural pathways are linked to motor neurons in higher cerebral centers, such as the cerebral cortex. A distinguishing characteristic of these neurons is their specialized capacity to propagate action potentials over considerable distances, covering the extensive gap from the spinal cord to the target muscle, which may span up to three feet long.[3]

Motor Unit

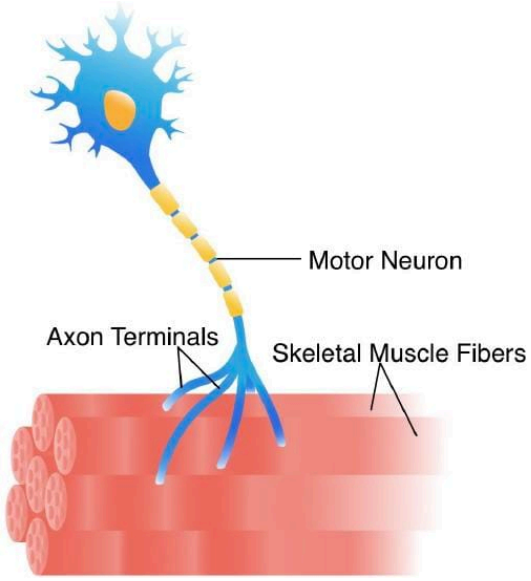


Figure 2 | A Motor Unit | [8] This figure illustrates the concept of a motor unit, which consists of a motor neuron and the muscle fibers it innervates.

Motor units, a crucial component of skeletal muscle function, are formed when the axon terminal of a motor neuron innervates a skeletal muscle fiber (Figure 2). However, it is important to note that the size of a motor unit can vary depending on the specific muscle being considered.

Small motor units are where a single motor neuron supplies a limited number of muscle fibers within a muscle. This configuration is particularly evident in muscles responsible for fine motor control, such as the extraocular eye muscles governing eyeball movement. Despite thousands of muscle fibers within these muscles, approximately six of them receive synaptic connections from a single motor neuron. This precise arrangement allows for the fine-tuned coordination of eye movements, ensuring both eyes swiftly converge on the same target. Furthermore, small motor units play a pivotal role in the intricate movements of the fingers and thumb, such as those needed for grasping or playing a string instrument. In contrast, large motor units typify situations where a single motor neuron innervates a greater number of muscle fibers within a muscle. They are primarily associated with more straightforward, forceful movements, exemplified by the powerful extension of the knee joint. An example is the thigh or postural muscles, where a single motor neuron branches into thousands of connections, each supplying numerous muscle fibers.

Thus, skeletal muscles encompass a diverse spectrum of motor units, affording the nervous system extensive control over muscle activity. Smaller motor units are affiliated with neurons exhibiting lower excitability thresholds, initially firing to stimulate smaller muscle fibers. The activation of smaller motor units generates relatively modest contractile strength (tension) within the muscle. As the need for greater force arises, larger motor units, characterized by motor neurons with higher thresholds, are engaged to stimulate larger muscle fibers. This process of progressively enlisting additional motor units to enhance muscle contraction is called **recruitment**. Consequently, as more motor units are recruited, muscle contraction gains progressively greater strength. In specific muscles, the largest motor units can generate contractile forces up to 50 times greater than the smallest motor units

within the same muscle, which encompasses scenarios ranging from delicately picking up a feather using the biceps brachii muscle with minimal force to lifting a substantial weight by recruiting numerous motor units.

Under specific circumstances, the maximum number of motor units within a muscle can be simultaneously activated, producing the utmost contractile force for that muscle. However, while impressive, this state cannot be sustained for an extended duration due to the significant energy demands of maintaining such contractions. To prevent complete muscle fatigue, not all motor units are active simultaneously; instead, a subset of motor units remains at rest while others are in operation. This strategic recruitment approach is a vital mechanism employed by the nervous system to optimize the utilization of skeletal muscle. It is an example of the body's self-preservation mechanism, ensuring that the muscles can endure prolonged contractions without reaching a point of exhaustion.[5]

Neuromuscular Junction

Each muscle fiber is innervated by a motor neuron, establishing a specialized juncture termed the **neuromuscular junction** (NMJ). This junction represents the epicenter where the muscle fiber becomes responsive to signaling initiated by the myelinated axon of the motor neuron. As the motor neuron approaches the NMJ, it transitions from myelination to a non-myelinated state. The terminal Schwann cell plays a pivotal role in fortifying the connection between the neuron and the muscle cell, ensuring the activation of receptors following the release of neurotransmitters. Within the **terminal bouton** of the motor neuron, approximately 300,000 vesicles housing ACh are stored. The **synaptic cleft**, a space with the extracellular fluid between the two cells, serves as a conduit through which drugs and toxins can access the NMJ.

The inception of signaling commences with the initiation of a neuronal action potential, which traverses the axon of the motor neuron and its various branches, ultimately converging at the NMJ. This action potential sparks an upsurge in calcium ion conductance by activating voltage-gated calcium ion channels located at the axon terminal. The entry of calcium ions into the axon terminal prompts the fusion of ACh vesicles with the axonal membrane, leading to the release of ACh into the synaptic cleft (Figures 3, 4, and 5).[3]

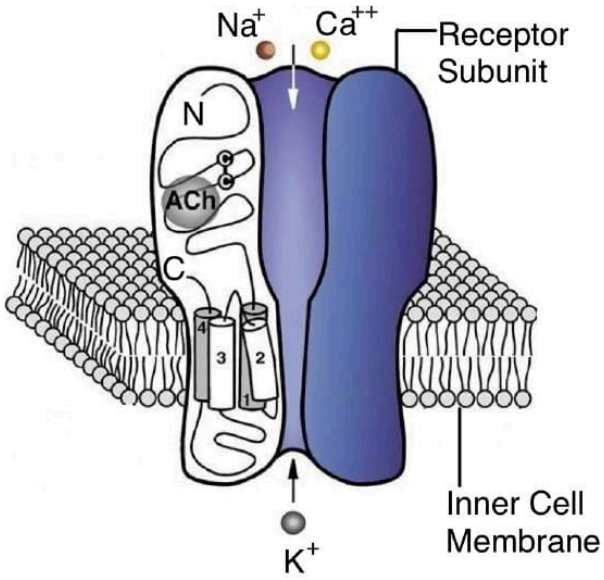


Figure 3 | Postjunctional ACh Receptor | [9] This figure illustrates the structural features of a postjunctional ACh receptor located on the postsynaptic membrane of muscle fiber at the neuromuscular junction. The receptor consists of five subunits arranged in a circular formation around a central pore. Each subunit is composed of multiple transmembrane domains that span the lipid bilayer of the membrane. The binding site for ACh is located at the interface between adjacent subunits. Upon binding of ACh to the receptor, conformational changes occur, leading to the opening of the central pore and the influx of ions, primarily sodium (Na^+), across the membrane. This influx of ions initiates depolarization of the muscle cell membrane, ultimately resulting in muscle contraction.

The postsynaptic ACh receptors emerge as glycoprotein complexes composed of five subunits. These subunits are arranged to create a central channel within the receptor protein, facilitating the passage of ions along a concentration gradient across the cell membrane. Specifically, the ACh receptors at the postjunctional membrane encompass alpha, beta, delta, and epsilon protein subunits. Activation of these ACh receptors, leading to the opening of the cation channel, necessitates the simultaneous

binding of ACh molecules to each of the two alpha-subunits. This concurrent occupation by two ACh molecules induces a conformational shift in the receptor, thereby prompting the opening of the central ion channel. Subtypes of ACh receptors exist. **Postjunctional ACh receptors** are localized within the confines of the motor end plate, while **extrajunctional receptors** are dispersed throughout the skeletal muscle. Under normal physiological conditions, neuronal activity curtails the synthesis of extrajunctional ACh receptors. However, prolonged inactivity, sepsis, denervation, or skeletal muscle trauma may increase these receptors. When these receptors are activated, they exhibit prolonged openings, allowing an increased flow of ions. Consequently, the proliferation of extrajunctional ACh receptors contributes to resistance or tolerance to non-depolarizing neuromuscular blocking drugs, a concept to be discussed later.

ACh undergoes rapid hydrolysis soon after its release, primarily facilitated by the enzyme **acetylcholinesterase**. This enzymatic action restores membrane permeability and prevents sustained depolarization. Acetylcholinesterase, synthesized by the skeletal muscle fiber, predominantly resides in the synaptic cleft close to the site of ACh action.

The cumulative effect of ion flux across all synaptic end bulbs within a neuromuscular junction culminates in generating an **end plate potential** (**EPP**). The EPP resembles a graded potential akin to an excitatory postsynaptic potential, albeit considerably larger. This augmentation in size arises from the simultaneous release of ACh by multiple terminal boutons upon activation of the axon terminal. Moreover, a terminal bouton releases more neurotransmitters than a typical presynaptic knob in response to an action potential.

The motor end plate distinguishes itself with a larger surface area and a higher density of neurotransmitter receptor channels. Although an action potential cannot be initiated directly at the motor end plate, the occurrence of an EPP facilitates local current flow in both directions between the depolarized end plate and the adjacent resting cell membrane, which, in turn, prompts the opening of voltage-gated sodium ion channels, allowing sodium ions to enter the muscle fiber. This influx leads to a rapid reduction in potential to the threshold level in adjacent areas, ultimately initiating an action potential that propagates bidirectionally away from the motor end plate, spanning the entire membrane and serving as the trigger for the excitation-contraction coupling process. This bidirectional propagation differs from the unidirectional conduction of action potentials observed in neurons.[3]

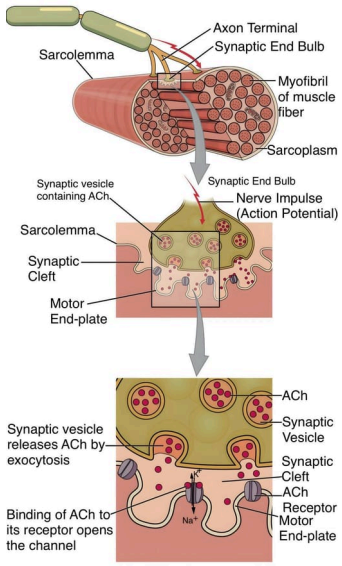


Figure 4 | Neuromuscular Junction | [10] This figure depicts the details of the neuromuscular junction, the point of contact between a motor neuron and a muscle fiber. At the synaptic terminal of the motor neuron, neurotransmitter-filled synaptic vesicles are clustered. Upon the arrival of an action potential, these vesicles release neurotransmitters into the synaptic cleft. On the postsynaptic membrane of the muscle fiber, there are specialized receptors known as acetylcholine receptors. These receptors bind to the released neurotransmitters, leading to depolarization of the muscle cell membrane and initiation of muscle contraction.

Remarkably, one action potential triggers the release of approximately 150 to 200 ACh vesicles, each containing about 10,000 ACh molecules. These ACh molecules diffuse across the synaptic cleft and engage nicotinic cholinergic receptors within the **motor end plate**—a distinct and functionally unique region of the sarcolemma at the NMJ. Upon ACh binding, a channel within the ACh receptor opens, permitting the influx of positively charged ions, primarily potassium and sodium ions, through this ion channel into the muscle fiber. This influx induces depolarization, transitioning the membrane potential from approximately -90

mV to -45 mV (threshold potential). Astoundingly, each NMJ boasts around 50 million densely packed nicotinic ACh receptor sites, ensuring the efficiency of this critical neuromuscular signaling process.1

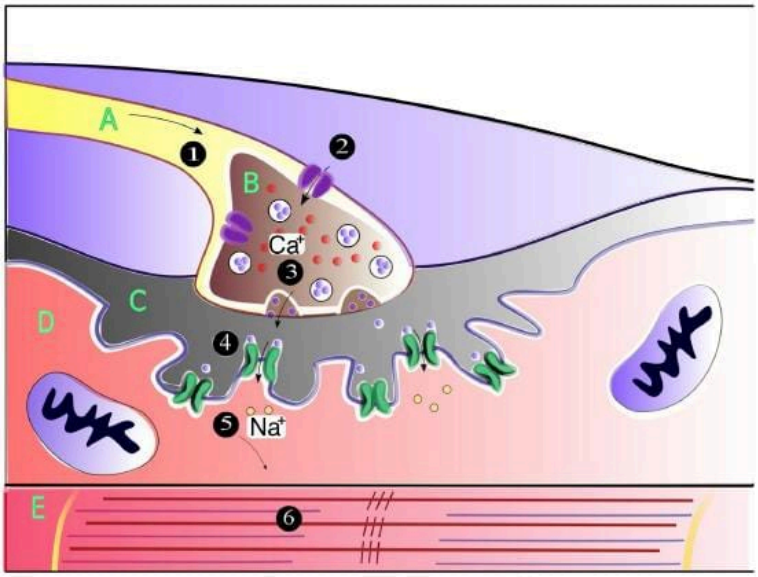


Figure 5 | Neuromuscular Junction - A Detailed Version | [11] A muscle fiber will contract or relax when it receives signals from the nervous system. The neuromuscular junction is the site of the signal exchange. The steps of this process occur as follows: (1) The action potential reaches the axon terminal. (2) Voltage-dependent calcium gates open, allowing calcium to enter the axon terminal. (3) Neurotransmitter vesicles fuse with the presynaptic membrane, and ACh is released into the synaptic cleft via exocytosis. (4) ACh binds to postsynaptic receptors on the sarcolemma. (5) This binding causes ion channels to open and allows sodium ions (Na+) to flow across the membrane and potassium ions (K+) to leave the muscle cell. (6) The movement of ions generates an action potential which travels to the myofibril and results in muscle contraction. A: Motor Neuron Axon; B: Axon Terminal; C. Synaptic Cleft; D. Muscle Cell

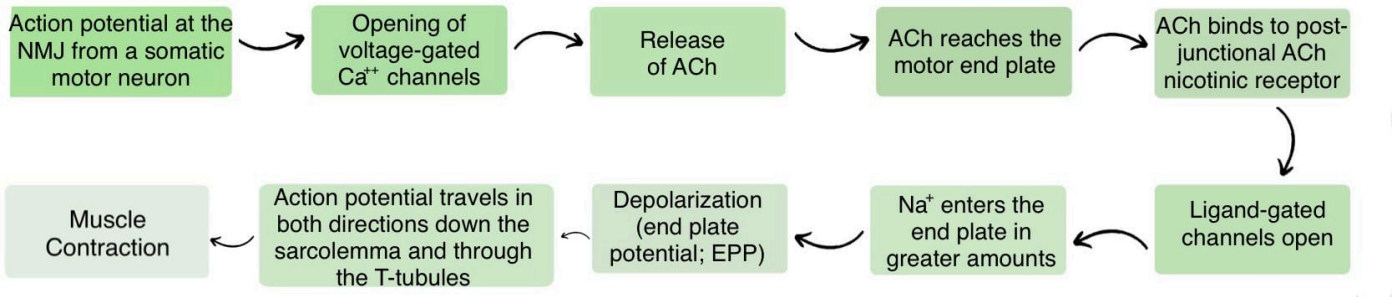


Figure 6 | A Step-by-Step Description from the Arrival of an Action Potential at the Neuromuscular Junction to Muscle Contraction |

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Epimysium, Perimysium, and Endomysium

Each skeletal muscle is nestled within a protective framework comprising three distinct layers of connective tissue. These layers maintain the muscle's structural integrity, facilitate potent contractions, and enable autonomous movement.

The outermost layer, the **epimysium**, consists of dense, irregular connective tissue. It is pivotal in enabling the muscle to

generate powerful contractions while safeguarding its structural integrity. The epimysium is a seamless extension of the connective tissue that anchors a muscle to a bone (forming a tendon) or another adjacent muscle (Figure 7). Additionally, the epimysium functions as a partition, segregating the muscle from neighboring tissues and organs within the vicinity. This segregation, in turn, grants the muscle the autonomy to move independently and execute its designated functions.

Beneath the epimysium lies the **perimysium**, an intermediate layer composed of connective tissue. The perimysium is vital in organizing and grouping individual muscle fibers into bundles called **fascicles** (Figure 7). By enclosing and supporting these bundles, the perimysium facilitates efficient coordination of muscle contractions within the muscle as a whole. This connective tissue layer also houses blood vessels and nerves, providing essential nourishment and neural communication to the muscle fibers it encompasses.

The **endomysium**, the innermost layer, represents a fine meshwork of connective tissue that envelops each muscle fiber within a fascicle. Its intricate network insulates, protects, and nourishes the delicate muscle fibers, offering both mechanical and nutritional support. Furthermore, the endomysium houses capillaries and myosatellite cells, which are involved in muscle regeneration and repair processes.[5]

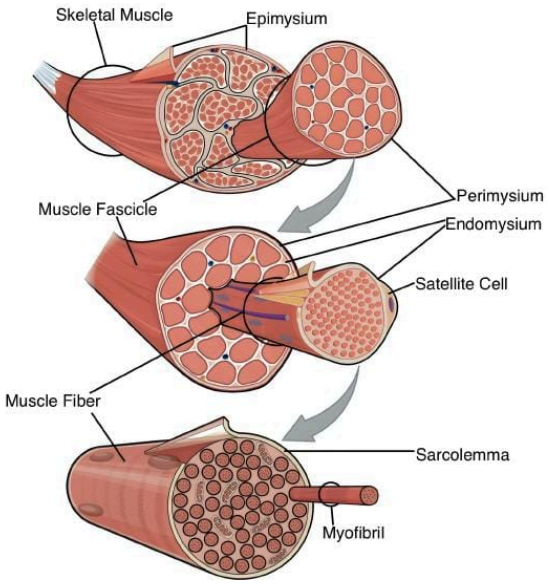


Figure 7 | Connective Tissue Covering of Skeletal Muscle | [12] This figure illustrates the connective tissue covering a skeletal muscle, highlighting its structural organization and functional significance. The outermost layer, the epimysium, surrounds the entire muscle and provides protection and support. Beneath the epimysium, the perimysium divides the muscle into fascicles, each containing multiple muscle fibers. The perimysium contains blood vessels and nerves that supply the muscle fibers within the fascicle. The endomysium surrounds individual muscle fibers, providing structural support and facilitating the exchange of nutrients and waste products.

Skeletal Muscle Fiber

Embryonic myoblasts, each intricately equipped with its own nucleus, engage in a precisely orchestrated fusion process during early development. These individual myoblasts, at times aggregating in substantial numbers, collectively produce multinucleated skeletal muscle fibers with diameters spanning up to an astonishing 100 µm and lengths extending to approximately 30 cm (11.8 in). This extraordinary biological phenomenon not only underscores the inherent intricacy of skeletal muscle development but also imparts a connotation to the term "Sarco," originating from the Greek word "sarx," signifying "flesh." In this microcosm of cellular structure, terminology takes on a distinct form: the plasma membrane enveloping these muscle fibers earns the title of the **sarcolemma**, the cytoplasm within is aptly termed **sarcoplasm**, and the specialized, smooth endoplasmic reticulum, which warehouses, releases, and retrieves calcium ions, is distinguished as the **sarcoplasmic reticulum** (Figure 8). Myofibrils are long, cylindrical structures composed of repeating units called sarcomeres, which are the contractile units of muscle fibers.[5]

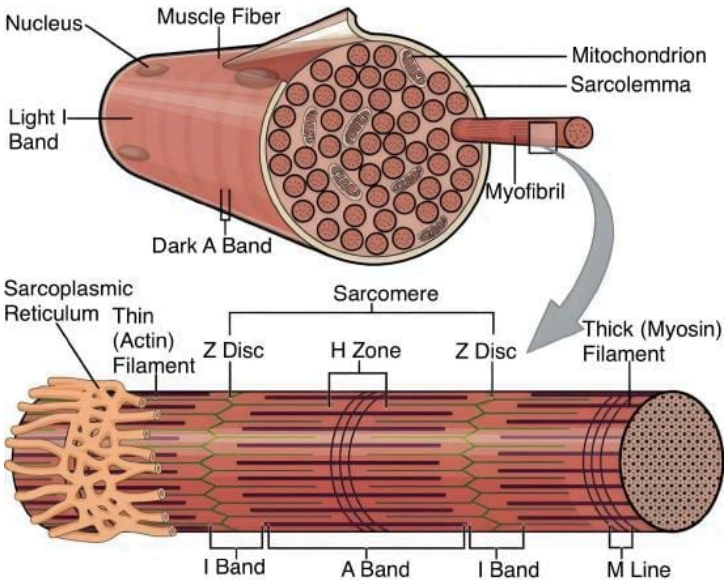


Figure 8 | A Schematic Illustration of a Skeletal Muscle Fiber | [13] This schematic diagram depicts the structural organization of a skeletal muscle fiber, highlighting its key anatomical features. Sarcolemma, the plasma membrane, surrounds the muscle cell. Within the sarcolemma lies the sarcoplasm, the cytoplasm of the muscle fiber, which contains specialized structures such as myofibrils and sarcoplasmic reticulum. Myofibrils are long, cylindrical structures composed of repeating units called sarcomeres, which are the contractile units of muscle fibers. Sarcomeres contain thick and thin filaments made up of proteins such as actin and myosin, which interact during muscle contraction to generate force. Within the sarcomere, the A band represents the region containing thick and thin filaments, while the I band contains only thin filaments. The H zone is a region within the A band with only thick filaments.

The Sarcomere

The sarcomere is the fundamental unit within muscle fibers. It is situated within the myofibril that extends along the length of the muscle fiber and connects to the outer layer of the cell, known as the sarcolemma. When myofibrils contract, the entire muscle cell contracts, underscoring the pivotal role of these microscopic structures. Given their small size, numerous myofibrils containing thousands of sarcomeres can fit within a single muscle fiber.

Within each sarcomere exists an intricate arrangement of contractile myofilaments, namely the **thin** and **thick filaments**, accompanied by a network of supporting proteins. The area where these filaments intersect, characterized by the minimal spacing between them, plays a crucial role in muscle contraction. It serves as the starting point for filament movement and the initiation of muscular contraction.

Thin filaments, anchored at their ends by **Z-discs** (also referred to as **Z-lines**), refrain from entering the central region, which is exclusively occupied by the thick filaments. These thick filaments, firmly anchored at their bases, converge at a specific location known as the **M line**. The Z-discs and M lines are crucial in muscle contraction, as they provide the structure and alignment necessary for synchronized contractions to occur. As myofibrils consist of an array of sarcomeres arranged in series, synchronized contractions occur as these individual sarcomeres pull together in unison.

This coordinated movement results in a distinct pattern characterized by alternating dark and light bands within the muscle fiber. The dark bands, termed **A bands**, contrast with the lighter **I bands**. These bands, consistently aligned across myofibrils, collectively contribute to the striated appearance unique to skeletal muscle fibers, serving as a hallmark of their structural organization. This striated appearance is a result of the arrangement of the sarcomeres, with their thin and thick filaments creating a pattern that is visible under a microscope.

The A band represents a stack of thick filaments flanked by slender portions of overlapping thin filaments at both ends. Within this structure, the region devoid of thin filaments emerges as the **H zone**. The vertical tethering of thick filaments within each stack is denoted as the M line—an axis both of structural support and functional significance. In contrast, the I band encapsulates the segments of thin filaments that do not extend into the A band's territory. Each I band exhibits a central vertical boundary, the Z line, which highlights the boundaries of adjacent sarcomeres (Figures 8-9).

The primary protein component is **myosin** within the thick filaments of muscle fibers. Myosin molecules consist of a tail and a

spherical head region. These molecules assemble to form long, filamentous structures, with the rounded heads projecting outward at regular intervals along the filament. The heads contain binding sites for both ATP and actin. In contrast, the thin filaments primarily consist of **actin**, which forms a double helix structure. Associated with actin are two regulatory proteins: **tropomyosin** and **troponin**. Tropomyosin winds around the actin filament, covering myosin-binding sites in the absence of calcium ions. Troponin is a complex of three subunits: **troponin C**, **troponin I**, and **troponin T**. Troponin C binds to calcium ions, inducing a conformational change in troponin I, which in turn moves tropomyosin away from the myosin-binding sites on actin when calcium ions are present. When calcium ions bind to troponin and tropomyosin moves aside, myosin heads can interact with actin, forming cross-bridges that pull the thin filaments toward the center of the sarcomere, resulting in muscle contraction. However, each myosin head can only pull a short distance before it must reset, a process that necessitates ATP. [15]

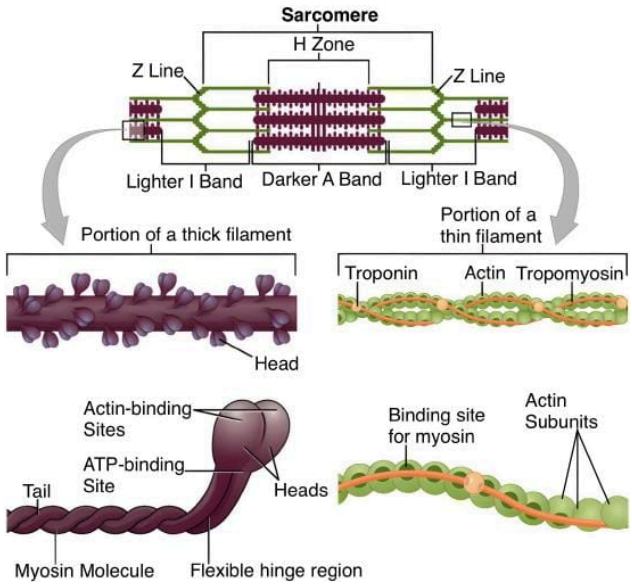


Figure 9 | The Sarcomere | [16] The arrangement of thick and thin filaments within the sarcomere creates distinct regions visible under a microscope. The A band represents the region of overlap between thick and thin filaments, where myosin heads interact with actin. The H zone is a central region within the A band where only thick filaments are present. The I band is the region of the sarcomere where only thin filaments are found, and it extends from one A band to the next. The Z line marks the boundary between adjacent sarcomeres and anchors the thin filaments.

Transverse Tubules (T-Tubules)

Transverse tubules (**T-tubules**) are invaginations of the sarcolemma that penetrate deep into the muscle fiber, allowing for rapid transmission of action potentials from the cell surface to the interior of the muscle fiber. This rapid transmission ensures synchronous activation of all sarcomeres within the muscle fiber, leading to coordinated muscle contraction. A **triad** is a T-tubule flanked by two **terminal cisternae** of the sarcoplasmic reticulum (Figure 10).

There are periodic invaginations in the sarcolemma, aptly named T-tubules, with "T" denoting their transverse orientation to enable the action potential to reach the sarcoplasmic reticulum's membrane. Since muscle fibers can have a diameter of up to 100 µm, T-tubules are crucial in ensuring that the sarcolemma comes close to the sarcoplasmic reticulum within the sarcoplasm. This structural arrangement forms a triad with a T-tubule sandwiched between the sarcoplasmic reticulum membranes (Figure 10). The triad envelops the cylindrical myofibril structure housing the contractile proteins, actin, and myosin.

These T-tubules function as conduits, transmitting the action potential into the cell's interior, which, in turn, triggers the opening of calcium ion channels within the adjacent sarcoplasmic reticulum membrane, leading to the release of calcium ions from the sarcoplasmic reticulum into the sarcoplasm. This influx of calcium ions into the sarcoplasm is the pivotal event that kick-starts the contraction process in the muscle fiber, primarily within its contractile units, known as sarcomeres.[15]

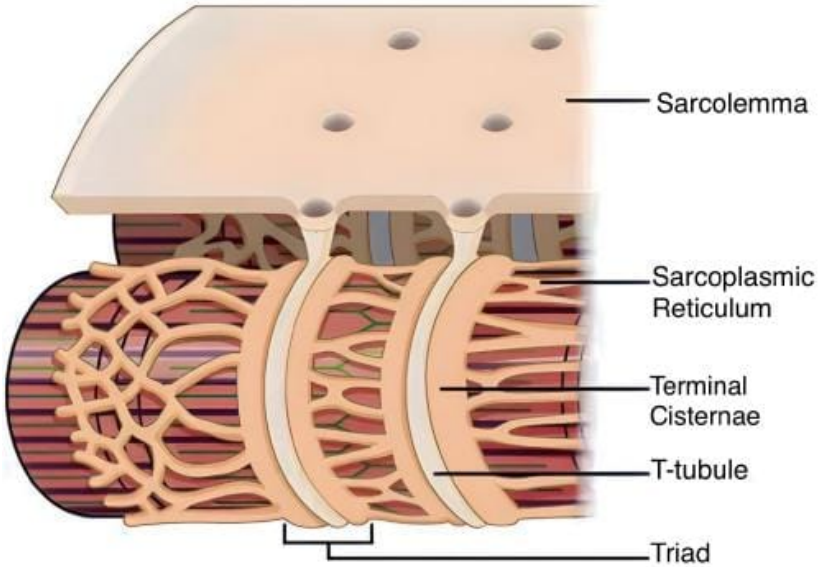


Figure 10 | The Transverse Tubule | [17] The transverse tubules (T-tubules) are invaginations of the sarcolemma that penetrate deep into the muscle fiber, allowing for rapid transmission of action potentials from the cell surface to the interior of the muscle fiber. The close association of T-tubules with the terminal cisternae of the sarcoplasmic reticulum, a network of membranous channels that stores and releases calcium ions, forms a triad and is essential for the rapid and synchronized release of calcium ions during muscle contraction.

Dihydropyridine receptors, also known as **DHPRs**, are voltage-gated calcium channels found predominantly in skeletal muscle fibers as part of the T-tubules. Upon membrane depolarization, such as during the propagation of an action potential along the sarcolemma, DHPRs undergo a conformational change that allows them to function as voltage sensors. This conformational change triggers the opening of adjacent calcium release channels called **ryanodine receptors** (**RyRs**), which are located on the sarcoplasmic reticulum (Figure 11). The activation of DHPRs and subsequent opening of RyRs result in the release of calcium ions from the sarcoplasmic reticulum into the cytoplasm of the muscle fiber. This calcium release triggers the contraction of the muscle fiber by binding to troponin and initiating the sliding filament mechanism (Figure 12).[18]

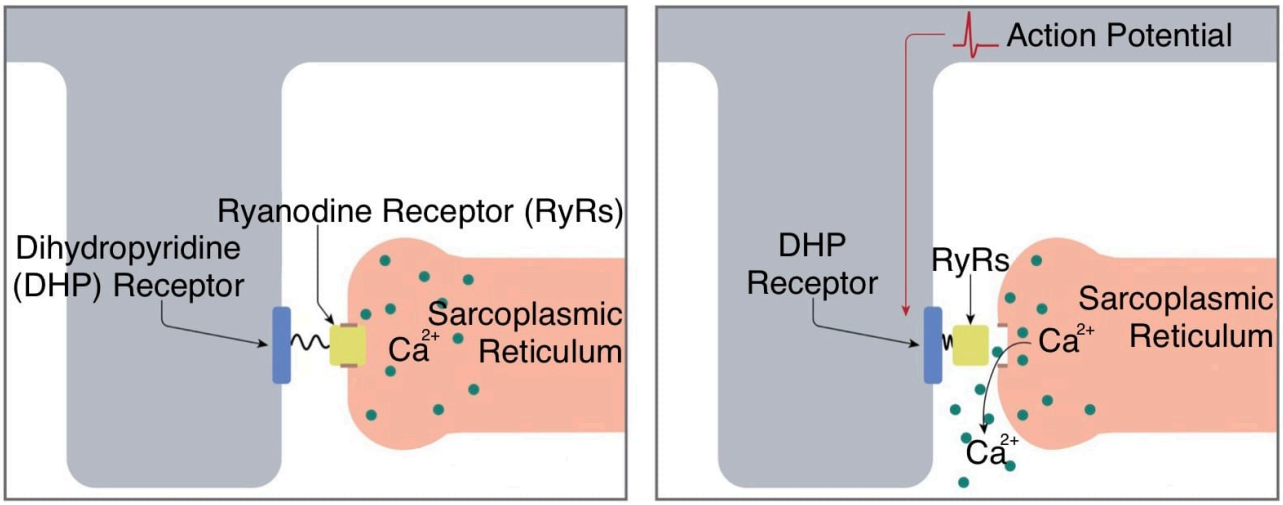


Figure 11 | Dihydropyridine and Ryanodine Receptors | [19] The dihydropyridine receptor (DHPR) is a voltage-gated calcium channel located in the transverse tubules (T-tubules) of the sarcolemma, where it detects membrane depolarization during action potential propagation. Upon depolarization, the DHPR undergoes a conformational change that triggers the opening of the adjacent Ryanodine Receptor (RyR), a calcium release channel located on the sarcoplasmic reticulum. The RyR releases calcium ions stored within the SR into the cytoplasm in response to DHPR activation, leading to an increase in intracellular calcium concentration.

Excitation-Contraction Coupling

To initiate contraction in a skeletal muscle fiber, the membrane undergoes excitation triggered by a stimulus that initiates an action potential. This action potential propagates like a sweeping wave along the sarcolemma, marking the excitation phase in excitation-contraction coupling. During this process, calcium ions stored in the sarcoplasmic reticulum are released, primarily through RyRs. Calcium ions interact with troponin upon release, causing it to move aside and expose the actin-binding sites for myosin heads to attach. Subsequently, myosin pulls actin filaments towards the center, resulting in the shortening of the muscle fiber.

Following membrane depolarization, repolarization occurs, restoring the negative membrane potential. Concurrently, the enzyme acetylcholinesterase deactivates acetylcholine in the synaptic cleft. This breakdown prevents acetylcholine from reattaching to a receptor and reopening its channel, thereby preventing prolonged muscle excitation and contraction.[20]

Molecular Basis of Muscle Contraction: The Sliding Filament Model

The sliding filament model of muscle contraction illustrates the process by which muscles generate force and produce movement. In this model, muscle contraction occurs as thick and thin filaments within the sarcomere slide past each other, causing the sarcomere to shorten (Figure 12). The thick filaments, composed primarily of myosin, contain globular heads that interact with the thin filaments, composed of actin, during contraction. The interaction between myosin heads and actin filaments forms cross-bridges, which undergo a series of conformational changes to pull the thin filaments toward the center of the sarcomere. This movement is powered by the hydrolysis of ATP, which provides the energy necessary for muscle contraction. As the thin filaments slide past the thick filaments, the sarcomere shortens, resulting in muscle contraction. 21

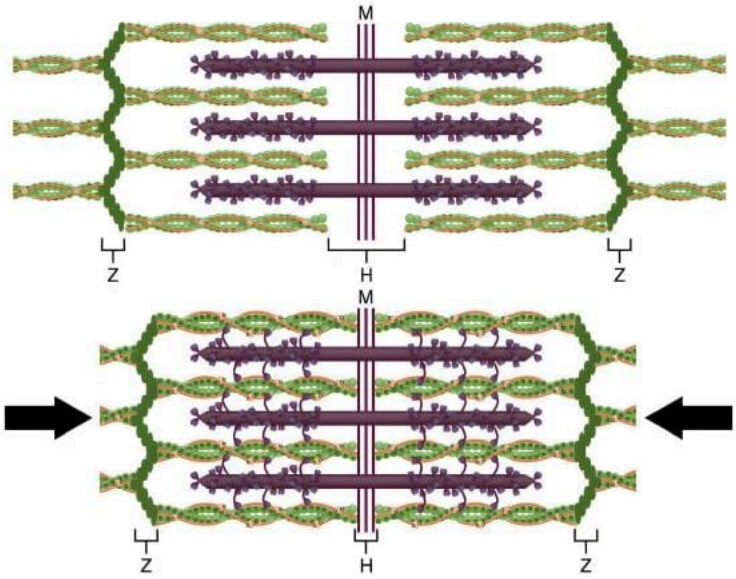


Figure 12 | The Sliding Filament Model of Muscle Contraction | [22] In this model, muscle contraction occurs as thick and thin filaments within the sarcomere slide past each other, causing the sarcomere to shorten. The thick filaments, composed primarily of myosin, contain globular heads that interact with the thin filaments, composed of actin, during contraction. The interaction between myosin heads and actin filaments forms cross-bridges, which undergo a series of conformational changes to pull the thin filaments toward the center of the sarcomere. As the thin filaments slide past the thick filaments, the sarcomere shortens, resulting in muscle contraction.

The intricate process leading to the contraction of an individual muscle fiber commences with a signal originating from the motor neuron innervating that specific fiber. Subsequently, the local membrane of the fiber undergoes depolarization, which triggers an action potential propagating across the entire membrane, including the T-tubules. These T-tubules release stored calcium ions from the sarcoplasmic reticulum. Calcium ions in the cytoplasm catalyze the onset of muscle contraction, a process powered by ATP (Figure 13). As long as calcium ions remain within the sarcoplasm, binding to troponin and thus keeping the actin-binding sites exposed, and as long as an adequate supply of ATP is available to drive the cyclical interactions between myosin and actin, the muscle fiber will persist in shortening until reaching its anatomical limits.[5]

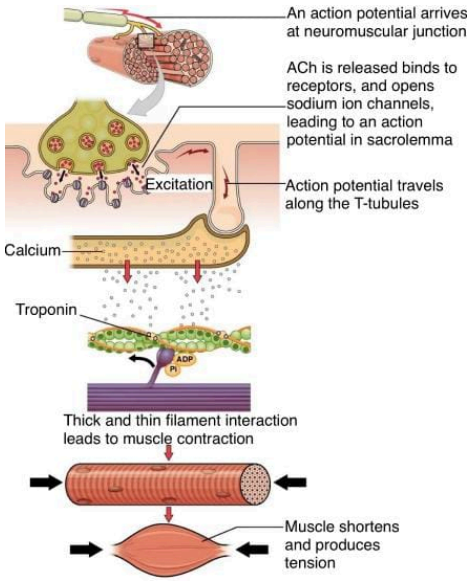


Figure 13 | Initiation of Contraction of a Skeletal Muscle Fiber | [23] Upon a stimulus-triggered excitation of a skeletal muscle fiber, an action potential propagates along the sarcolemma, initiating the excitation phase of excitation-contraction coupling. This excitation event prompts the release of calcium ions from the sarcoplasmic reticulum. Released calcium ions bind to troponin, causing it to shift and expose the actin-binding sites for myosin heads. Subsequently, myosin heads attach to the exposed actin-binding sites and pull the actin filaments towards the center of the sarcomere. This interaction results in the shortening of the muscle fiber and the initiation of muscle contraction. The ATP molecule serves as the energy source for this contraction process.

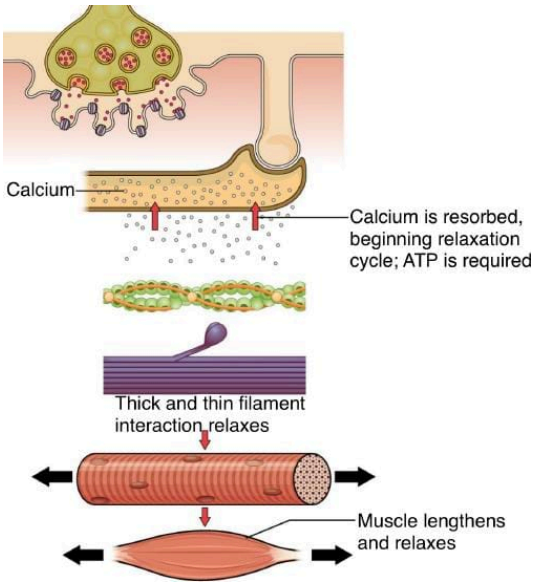


Figure 14 | Relaxation of a Skeletal Muscle Fiber | [24] Relaxation of a skeletal muscle fiber occurs following the cessation of stimulation. At this stage, the action potential ceases, and calcium ions are transported back into the sarcoplasmic reticulum, primarily via calcium pumps located in its membrane, requiring ATP. This reuptake process reduces the concentration of calcium ions in the cytoplasm, leading to the dissociation of calcium ions from troponin. As calcium ions dissociate from troponin, troponin returns to its original position, covering the binding sites on actin filaments. With the binding sites blocked, myosin heads cannot attach to actin, preventing further muscle contraction.

The termination of muscle contraction is typically initiated when the signal transmission from the motor neuron ceases. This cessation prompts the repolarization of the sarcolemma and T-tubules, concurrently causing the closure of the voltage-gated calcium channels within the sarcoplasmic reticulum. As a result, calcium ions are actively transported back into the sarcoplasmic reticulum with the help of **calcium ATPase**, re-shielding the binding sites on the actin strands by tropomyosin, as illustrated in Figure 14. ATP is required to pump calcium back into the sarcoplasmic reticulum. [25]

ATP and Muscle Contraction

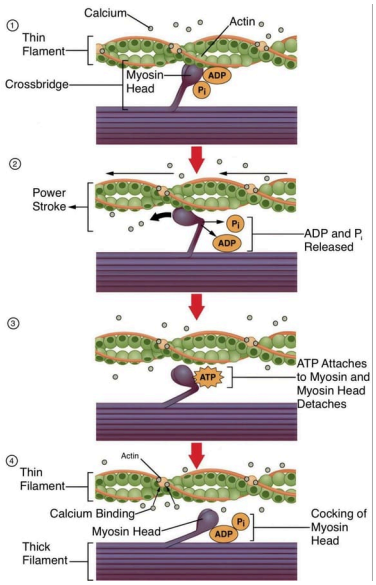


Figure 15 | ATP and Skeletal Muscle Contraction | [26] (1) The myosin head is attracted to actin, and myosin binds actin at its actin-binding site, forming the cross-bridge. (2) the phosphate generated in the previous contraction cycle is released during the power stroke. This results in the myosin head pivoting toward the center of the sarcomere. (3) A new molecule of ATP attaches to the myosin head, causing the cross-bridge to detach. (4) The myosin head hydrolyzes ATP to ADP and phosphate, which returns the myosin to the cocked position.

A series of essential steps occur to sustain the continued sliding of thin filaments past thick filaments during muscle contraction. Myosin heads engage with actin at binding sites, pull, detach, re-cock, and then attach to additional binding sites, repeating this cyclic process called the **cross-bridge cycle**. This motion of the myosin heads can be compared to the action of rowing a boat, where the oars (analogous to myosin heads) are used to pull, lifted from the water (detach), repositioned (re-cocked), and then submerged again to pull (as depicted in Figure 15). Importantly, each cycle of this process demands energy, and the repetitive activity of myosin heads in the sarcomeres as they pull on the thin filaments necessitates a constant supply of energy, which ATP furnishes.

Cross-bridge formation is initiated when the myosin head binds to actin while carrying ADP and inorganic phosphate (Pi) (Figure 15-1). The subsequent release of Pi results in a reinforced connection between myosin and actin, propelling the myosin head towards the M-line and dragging the actin along. This action causes the filaments to shift about 10 nm closer to the M-line, a movement termed the "power stroke" (Figure 15-2), as it represents the phase where the thin filament moves. Importantly, in the absence of ATP, the myosin head remains firmly attached to actin.

The myosin head possesses two binding sites: one for actin and another for ATP. When ATP binds, the myosin head disengages from actin (Figure 15-3). Subsequently, ATP undergoes hydrolysis to ADP and Pi due to the inherent ATPase activity of myosin. The energy liberated during ATP hydrolysis readies the myosin head into a cocked position (Figure 15-4), preparing it for the next phase of movement.

In the cocked position, the myosin head carries a surplus of energy. This energy is expended during the power stroke. Consequently, after the power stroke, ADP is released, but the established cross-bridge persists, with actin and myosin still interconnected. As long as ATP remains available, it promptly attaches to myosin, allowing the cross-bridge cycle to recommence and muscle contraction to persist.

Each thick filament comprises approximately 300 myosin molecules, boasting numerous myosin heads, engaging in a constant cycle of cross-bridge formation and rupture during muscle contraction. This process unfolds across all sarcomeres within one myofibril, spanning all myofibrils within a muscle fiber and encompassing all the muscle fibers within a skeletal muscle. It becomes evident why an extensive amount of energy, in the form of ATP, is a prerequisite to sustain the functionality of skeletal muscles.

Interestingly, the absence of ATP has a dramatic effect, leading to the phenomenon known as **rigor mortis**, which becomes apparent shortly after an individual's passing. When ATP production ceases, there is no available ATP to facilitate the detachment of myosin heads from the actin-binding sites. As a result, the cross bridges persist in their bound state, leading to the characteristic muscle rigidity observed in skeletal muscles during rigor mortis.[27]

The steps involved in skeletal muscle contraction and relaxation are summarized in Figure 16.

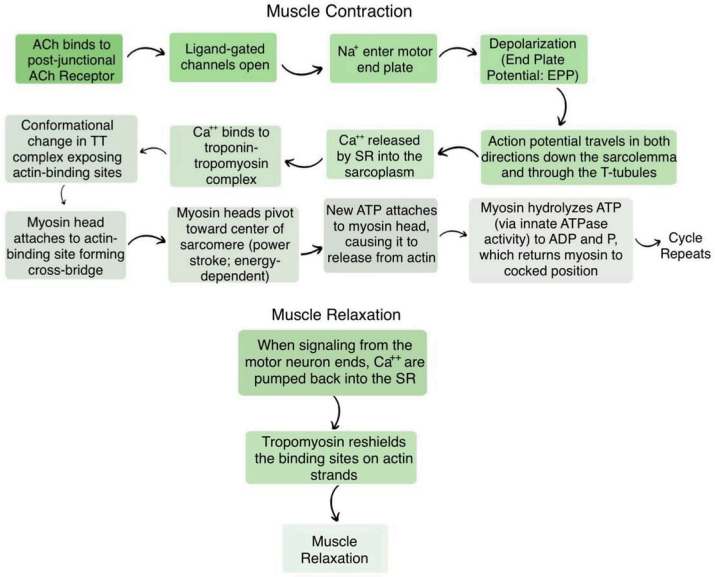


Figure 16 | Summary of Skeletal Muscle Contraction and Relaxation | This illustration shows the onset of contraction and relaxation in a step-by-step manner.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Sources of ATP for Muscle Contraction and Relaxation

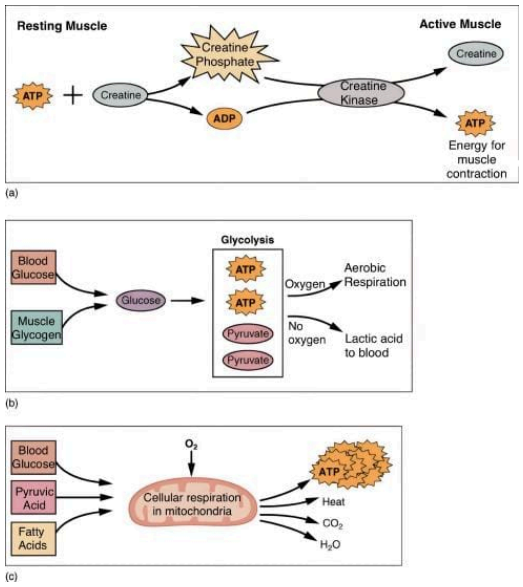


Figure 17 | Sources of ATP for Muscle Contraction and Relaxation | [28] (a) Some ATP is stored in a resting muscle. As contraction starts, it is used up in seconds. More ATP is generated from creatine phosphate, which lasts about 15 seconds. (b) Each glucose molecule produces two ATP and two molecules of pyruvic acid, which can be used in aerobic respiration or converted to lactic acid. If oxygen is not available, pyruvic acid is converted to lactic acid. (c) Aerobic respiration is the breakdown of glucose in the presence of oxygen to produce carbon dioxide, water, and ATP.

ATP plays a pivotal role in fueling muscle contraction. Beyond its direct involvement in the cross-bridge cycle, ATP is also indispensable for energizing the active transport using calcium pumps within the sarcoplasmic reticulum. Muscle contraction hinges on an adequate ATP supply, yet the muscle's intrinsic ATP reserves are limited, sufficient only for a few seconds of sustained contractions. To maintain the energy needed for muscle contraction, ATP must be continually replenished through three distinct mechanisms: creatine phosphate metabolism, anaerobic glycolysis, and aerobic respiration.

Creatine phosphate, a molecule that harbors energy within its phosphate bonds, is a critical energy reserve. During rest, excess ATP is converted into creatine, yielding ADP and creatine phosphate. As muscle activity commences and demands energy, creatine phosphate promptly donates its phosphate group to ADP, facilitating the formation of ATP and creatine. Thus, the creatine phosphate stockpile is ready to regenerate ATP rapidly when energy is required. This enzymatic process is catalyzed by **creatine kinase**. Consequently, the energy derived from creatine phosphate fuels the initial seconds of muscle contraction. Nevertheless, this source can only sustain energy production for approximately 15 seconds, necessitating the utilization of alternative energy pathways thereafter (Figure 17).

As the ATP generated by creatine phosphate depletes, muscles shift to glycolysis as an alternative ATP source. The glucose necessary for glycolysis is obtained from blood glucose or through the metabolism of glycogen stored within the muscle. The transition to glycolysis leads to a slower rate of ATP production. When one glucose molecule undergoes breakdown, it yields two ATP molecules and two pyruvates, which can be used in aerobic respiration or converted into lactic acid under low oxygen levels (Figure 17).

In the presence of oxygen, pyruvic acid is directed towards aerobic respiration. However, if oxygen is not readily available, pyruvic acid is transformed into lactic acid, which may contribute to **muscle fatigue**. This process occurs during strenuous exercise when substantial energy output is required, yet oxygen delivery to the muscles is insufficient. While glycolysis is not sustainable for extended durations (approximately 1 minute of muscle activity), it is valuable in facilitating short bursts of high-intensity output.

Aerobic respiration is the metabolic breakdown of glucose or other nutrients in the presence of oxygen, yielding carbon dioxide, water, and a substantial amount of ATP. Roughly 95 percent of the ATP required for resting or moderately active muscles is supplied through aerobic respiration, predominantly within mitochondria. The aerobic respiration substrates encompass glucose in the bloodstream, pyruvic acid, and fatty acids. Aerobic respiration is significantly more efficient than anaerobic glycolysis, producing approximately 36 ATPs per glucose molecule versus the mere two from glycolysis. Nevertheless, aerobic respiration necessitates a consistent supply of oxygen to the skeletal muscle and operates at a slower pace (Figure 15-3). To address this,

muscles retain a modest reserve of excess oxygen in proteins known as **myoglobin**, promoting more efficient muscle contractions and reducing fatigue. Additionally, aerobic training enhances the efficiency of the circulatory system, ensuring that oxygen can be delivered to the muscles for extended periods.

Muscle fatigue transpires when a muscle can no longer respond to nervous system signals with contractions. The precise underlying mechanisms of muscle fatigue remain incompletely understood, though specific factors have been correlated with the diminished muscle function observed during fatigue. Normal muscle contraction relies on adequate ATP levels, and as these reserves deplete, muscle performance may decline. This factor tends to be more influential in brief, high-intensity muscle exertions than in sustained, lower-intensity activities. The accumulation of lactic acid may contribute to fatigue by reducing intracellular pH, impacting the activity of enzymes and proteins.

Intensive muscle activity generates an **oxygen debt**, signifying the quantity of oxygen required to compensate for ATP production in the absence of oxygen during muscle contractions. Oxygen is indispensable for replenishing ATP and creatine phosphate levels, converting lactic acid back to pyruvic acid, and, in the liver, converting lactic acid into glucose or glycogen. Other systems engaged during exercise also necessitate oxygen. These cumulative processes contribute to the heightened breathing rate experienced after exercise as the body strives to repay the oxygen debt. This elevated oxygen intake persists until the oxygen debt has been reconciled, even after exercise has ceased.[29]

Sarcomere Length Tension Relationship

The optimal length for a sarcomere to generate maximal tension lies within 80 percent to 120 percent of its resting length. At 100 percent, the sarcomere reaches its prime state, where the medial edges of the thin filaments align precisely with the most medial myosin heads of the thick filaments (Figure 18). This alignment maximizes the overlap between the actin-binding sites and myosin heads, resulting in optimal cross-bridge formation and tension production. When a sarcomere is stretched beyond this ideal length, surpassing the 120 percent threshold, the overlap between thick and thin filaments becomes insufficient, reducing tension production. Conversely, if a sarcomere is shortened below 80 percent, the zone of overlap decreases, and the thin filaments extend beyond the last of the myosin heads, thereby diminishing the H zone, typically composed of myosin tails. Eventually, the tension generated is diminished when the thin filaments have nowhere else to go due to excessive shortening. It is essential to note that if a muscle is stretched to the extreme point where thick and thin filaments no longer overlap, cross-bridge formation cannot occur, resulting in no tension produced within that sarcomere. However, such extreme stretching is generally resisted by accessory proteins and connective tissues that prevent this disruption.[30]

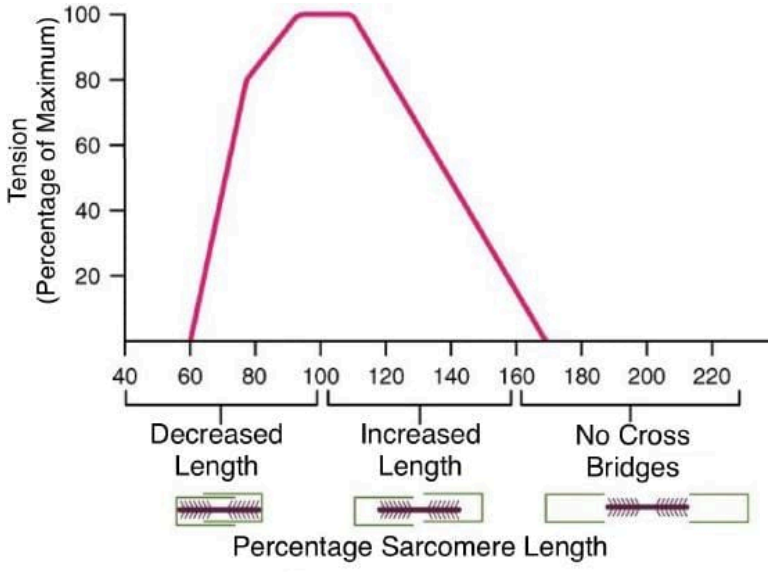


Figure 18 | Length Tension Relationship in a Sarcomere | [31]

This figure illustrates the optimal length of a sarcomere to generate the maximum force during muscle contraction. The thick and thin filaments overlap optimally at this ideal length, allowing for the most efficient interaction between actin and myosin.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Muscle Contraction Types

In muscle physiology, moving an object, often called a load, necessitates the contraction of sarcomeres within skeletal muscle fibers. This contraction, which results in the shortening of the muscle fibers, generates a force known as **muscle tension**. However, muscle tension can also be produced when the muscle contracts against a stationary load. Thus, two primary skeletal muscle contraction categories are **isotonic** and **isometric** contractions. Isotonic contractions involve the maintenance of constant tension in the muscle while the muscle's length changes, causing a load to be moved.

There are two distinct types of isotonic contractions: **concentric** and **eccentric**. During a concentric contraction, the muscle shortens as it exerts force to move a load (Figure 19). For instance, when lifting a hand weight, the biceps brachii muscle contracts, causing the forearm to move upward while the angle at the elbow joint decreases. In this process, sarcomeres within the biceps brachii muscle fibers shorten, cross-bridges form, and myosin heads pull the actin, facilitating the shortening of the muscle. Conversely, an eccentric contraction transpires as muscle tension decreases and the muscle elongates. For example, an eccentric contraction occurs when lowering a hand weight in a controlled and gradual manner. During this phase, the number of cross-bridges activated by nervous system signals diminishes, gradually releasing tension in the biceps brachii muscle. As a result, the angle at the elbow joint increases during this controlled load lowering.[32]

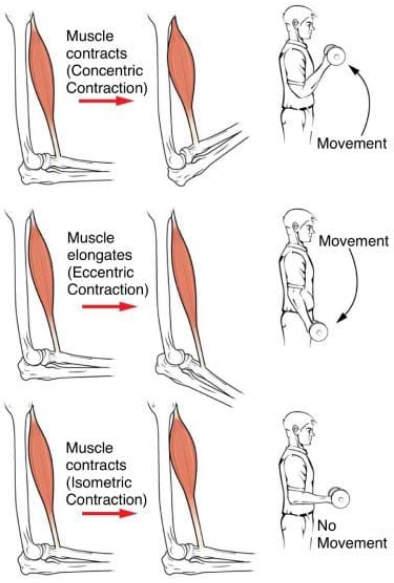


Figure 19 | Types of Muscle Contractions | [33] This diagram illustrates the various ways in which muscles can contract. It highlights three primary types of muscle contractions: isotonic, isometric, and eccentric. In an isotonic contraction, the muscle changes length while maintaining constant tension, resulting in movement, such as lifting a weight. Isometric contractions occur when the muscle generates tension without changing length, such as pushing against an immovable object. Eccentric contractions involve the lengthening of the muscle under tension, such as lowering a weight under control.

Isometric contractions are characterized by generating muscle tension without altering the angle of a skeletal joint. During isometric contractions, sarcomeres within the muscle experience shortening and an increase in tension, yet they do not induce a load's movement because the force generated by the muscle is insufficient to overcome the resistance posed by the load.

Attempting to lift a heavy weight, for example, where sarcomeres within the muscle would activate and shorten to a certain point, progressively building muscle tension. However, there would be no observable change in the angle of the elbow joint as the load remains immovable. Isometric contractions play a pivotal role in maintaining posture and upholding the stability of bones and joints. For example, the ability to keep the head upright is achieved through isometric contractions, not because the muscles are incapable of moving the head but rather to achieve a state of stillness without initiating movement.

Most bodily actions involve a blend of isotonic and isometric contractions, working together to produce a broad spectrum of movements and actions. The nervous system regulates this intricate orchestration of muscle activities, overseeing concentric, eccentric, and isometric contractions, muscle fiber recruitment, and muscle tone.[34]

Muscle fibers exhibit diverse contraction rates in response to stimuli, leading to three main categories: **slow-twitch**, **fast-twitch**, and **intermediate fibers**. Slow-twitch fibers, also known as **Type I fibers**, contract slowly and are rich in mitochondria, making them well-suited for endurance activities like long-distance running. Fast-twitch fibers, or **Type II fibers**, contract rapidly and rely on anaerobic metabolism, which is ideal for generating powerful movements such as sprinting. Intermediate fibers possess characteristics of both slow and fast-twitch fibers, offering a balance of endurance and strength.

A single action potential originating from a motor neuron serves as the stimulus for a single contraction within the muscle fibers of its corresponding motor unit. This isolated and transient contraction is formally known as a **twitch**. The duration of a twitch can fluctuate, spanning from a few milliseconds to around 100 milliseconds, contingent on the specific muscle type under consideration. A myogram is a graphical representation depicting muscle tension over time. (Figure 20).

The process of a twitch unfolds in three distinct phases. Commencing the sequence is the **latent period**, where the action potential journeys along the sarcolemma, and calcium ions are liberated from the sarcoplasmic reticulum. This initial phase is characterized by the coupling of excitation and contraction, albeit without actual muscle contraction occurring. Following the latent period is the **contraction phase**. During this stage, calcium ions within the sarcoplasm attach themselves to troponin, shifting tropomyosin away from actin-binding sites. Consequently, cross bridges between actin and myosin form, and sarcomeres undergo shortening until they attain their maximum tension-producing state. Ultimately, the **relaxation phase** marks the conclusion of the twitch. In this phase, tension diminishes as contraction subsides. Calcium ions are actively transported out of the sarcoplasm and into the sarcoplasmic reticulum while cross-bridge cycling halts, reinstating the muscle fibers to their quiescent or resting state.5

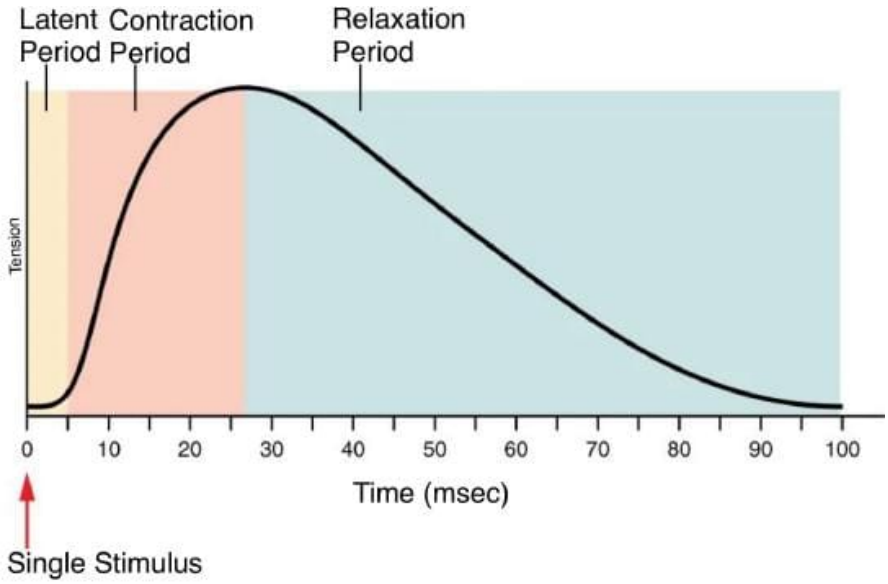


Figure 20 | A Myogram of a Muscle Twitch | [35] A Myogram of a muscle twitch comprises three distinct phases: the latent period, during which the stimulus is applied, and excitation occurs; the contraction phase, marked by a rapid increase in muscle tension as the muscle fibers contract; and the relaxation phase, where tension decreases as the muscle fibers return to their resting state. The amplitude of the myogram corresponds to the magnitude of muscle tension generated during contraction.

While a muscle twitch is possible, it is important to note that a single twitch does not lead to substantial muscle activity. A succession of action potentials must be directed toward the muscle fibers to induce a muscle contraction.

The subsequent twitch becomes more potent when muscle fibers are stimulated while a preceding twitch is still in progress. This

effect is termed **wave summation**. The rationale lies in the concept that the excitation-contraction coupling effects stemming from consecutive motor neuron signals **summate** (Figure 21a). At a molecular level, summation transpires because the second stimulus releases increased calcium ions. These additional calcium ions become available to activate more sarcomeres while the muscle is still undergoing contraction from the initial stimulus. Consequently, summation leads to an amplified contraction of the motor unit.[27]

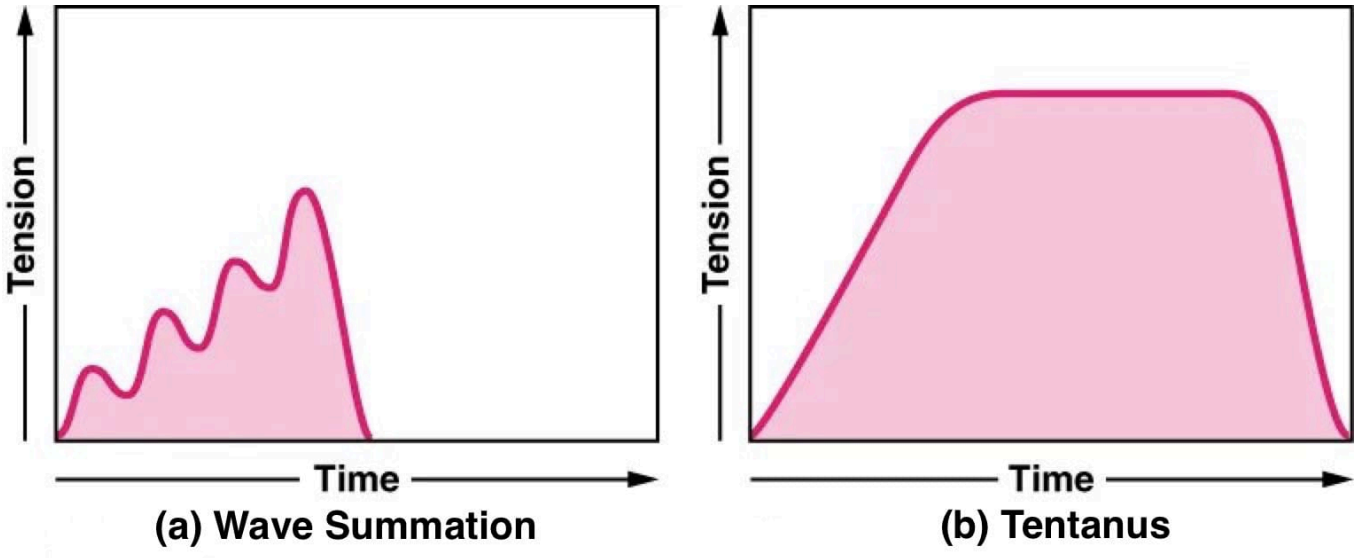


Figure 21 | Wave Summation and Tetanus | [36] (a) The excitation-contraction coupling effects of successive motor neuron signals are added together and is referred to as wave summation. The bottom of each wave, the end of the relaxation phase, represents the point of stimulus. (b) When the stimulus frequency is so high that the relaxation phase disappears completely, the contractions become continuous; this is called tetanus.

When the frequency of signaling from the motor neuron increases, **summation** ensues, leading to a progressive elevation in muscle tension within the motor unit until it attains a pinnacle. At this juncture, the tension achieved is approximately three to four times greater than the tension generated by a single twitch. This state is referred to as **incomplete tetanus**. During incomplete tetanus, the muscle undergoes rapid cycles of contraction, each punctuated by a brief relaxation phase (Figure 21a). Should the stimulus frequency be elevated so that the relaxation phase vanishes entirely, contractions become continuous, constituting **complete tetanus** (Figure 21b). Throughout tetanus, the concentration of calcium ions in the sarcoplasm is elevated to a level that permits nearly all sarcomeres to engage in cross-bridge formation and subsequent shortening, which allows for a sustained contraction to persist without interruption, albeit until the muscle succumbs to fatigue and can no longer sustain tension production.[37]

Treppe

Treppe, also known as the staircase effect or the Bowditch effect, refers to a physiological phenomenon in muscle contraction where each successive contraction of a muscle, when stimulated immediately after the previous contraction, is slightly stronger or more forceful than the previous one (Figure 22). This effect is characterized by a gradual increase in muscle tension with each contraction. Treppe can continue until the muscle reaches its maximum force of contraction. It is important to note that treppe is distinct from tetanus. Treppe occurs when stimuli are delivered at a frequency that allows partial relaxation between contractions. Treppe is often observed in skeletal muscles that have been at rest for some time and are then stimulated to contract repeatedly. It is attributed to the gradual increase in intracellular calcium concentration and improved muscle fiber recruitment with each successive contraction, resulting in enhanced muscle performance over time.

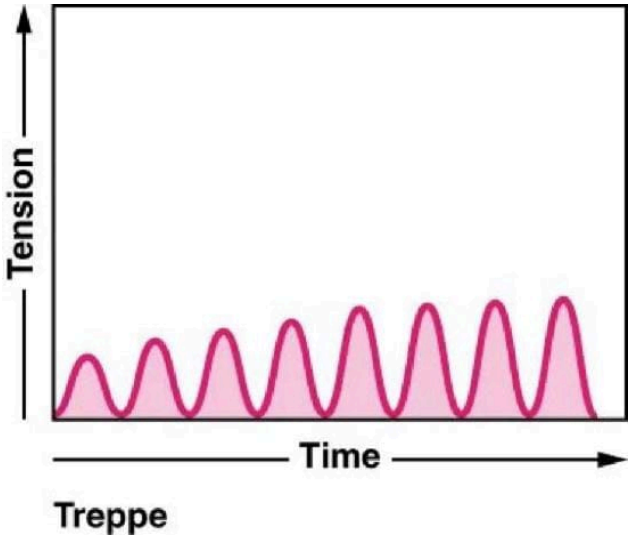


Figure 22 | Treppe | [38] The figure illustrates the phenomenon of treppe, also known as the staircase effect, in muscle contraction. Treppe refers to the gradual increase in the force of muscular contractions observed when a muscle is stimulated repeatedly at a fixed frequency. Each successive contraction produces slightly greater tension than the previous one, leading to a stepwise increase in muscle strength. This phenomenon is depicted graphically, showing the consecutive peaks in muscle tension with each contraction.

Muscle Tone

Skeletal muscles are seldom completely relaxed but maintain a slight, ongoing contraction even when not actively engaged in movement. This continuous, low-level contraction, known as **muscle tone**, serves important physiological functions. It plays a critical role in stabilizing joints and sustaining posture, ensuring that our bodies remain upright and stable. The mechanism behind muscle tone is intricate and involves the coordinated interaction between the nervous system and skeletal muscles. This interaction leads to the activation of a limited number of motor units at any given time, often cyclically, allowing muscles to sustain a constant level of tension without reaching complete exhaustion. While some motor units are active, others can recover and rest.

The absence of these subtle, ongoing contractions that contribute to muscle tone is termed **hypotonia**. Hypotonia can result from damage to specific parts of the CNS, such as the cerebellum, or from the loss of nerve innervation to a skeletal muscle, as seen in conditions like poliomyelitis. Muscles affected by hypotonia appear limp and may exhibit functional deficits, including weakened reflexes. Conversely, excessive muscle tone is referred to as **hypertonia**, often accompanied by hyperreflexia, which involves exaggerated reflex responses. Hypertonia can arise from damage to upper motor neurons within the CNS. It may manifest as muscle rigidity, as seen in conditions like Parkinson's disease, or as spasticity, characterized by a rhythmic alteration in muscle tone, causing a limb to return to its original position when passively stretched quickly. Spasticity is observed in some stroke patients and other neurological disorders.[39]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Nondepolarizing and Depolarizing Muscle Relaxants

Nondepolarizing muscle relaxants exert their neuromuscular blockade by binding to one or both α-subunits of the postjunctional ACh receptor (Figure 3), thereby preventing ACh from binding to these sites and opening the ion channel.

Notable examples of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants include rocuronium, vecuronium, and cisatracurium. The blockade induced by nondepolarizing muscle relaxants can be reversed using cholinesterase inhibitors. Drugs like **neostigmine** act as anticholinesterase and counteract the neuromuscular block produced by nondepolarizing muscle relaxants. **Sugammadex** is another drug used to change certain types of nondepolarizing muscle relaxants. The choice of reversal agent depends on the specific pharmacological properties of the nondepolarizing muscle relaxant used. In contrast, **depolarizing muscle relaxants** like **succinylcholine** activate the motor end-plate similarly to ACh. Depolarizing muscle relaxants bind to the acetylcholine receptors on the motor end plate of the muscle cell, mimicking the action of ACh. This causes the muscle cell to depolarize, which initially leads to muscle contraction (**fasciculations**). Unlike ACh, which is quickly broken down by acetylcholinesterase, depolarizing muscle relaxants persist at the receptor. This sustained activation keeps the sodium channels open, preventing repolarization, and thus, the muscle remains in a depolarized, unresponsive state. Since the muscle cannot repolarize and generate new action potentials, it eventually leads to muscle paralysis.

Under normal physiological conditions, depolarizing muscle relaxants typically have a shorter action period than nondepolarizing muscle relaxants. However, a phenomenon known as **desensitization** may occur during the administration of a depolarizing block. Prolonged exposure to a depolarizing muscle relaxant can render the postjunctional membrane less responsive to ACh, resulting in the inability to elicit muscle contraction through nerve stimulation. This phenomenon is referred to as a **Dual block**, consisting of two stages: initially resembling a depolarizing block and then transitioning to a nondepolarizing block, akin to the actions of a nondepolarizing muscle relaxant. This latter stage is known as a **Phase II Block**.

Both depolarizing and nondepolarizing muscle relaxants play a vital role in interrupting nerve impulse transmission at the NMJ, resulting in partial paralysis (paresis) or complete paralysis of skeletal muscles. These pharmacological agents are indispensable for inducing muscle relaxation, facilitating tracheal intubation, and ensuring optimal conditions for surgical procedures. They are also employed in emergency departments, during cardiopulmonary resuscitation, and in intensive care units to assist with mechanical ventilation. Importantly, these agents lack analgesic or anesthetic properties and must never be used as a substitute for proper anesthesia, as they can render a patient paralyzed while still conscious.

Assessment of nondepolarizing and depolarizing blocks induced by muscle relaxants involves nerve stimulation and recording of action potentials from the muscle supplied by the selected nerve. Characteristics of a depolarizing block (**Phase I Block**) include **fasciculations** observed before paralysis, sustained tetanic and twitch rates upon nerve stimulation, and the absence of post-tetanic potentiation. In contrast, the features of a nondepolarizing block (Phase II Block) include a lack of fasciculations, a decrease in both tetanic and twitch rates during stimulation, and the presence of post-tetanic potentiation.

Certain antibiotics, particularly aminoglycosides, can inhibit ACh release from nerve terminals and intensify neuromuscular blockade when administered concurrently with therapeutic doses of neuromuscular blocking agents. Additionally, various pharmacological agents can either enhance or diminish the intensity of the muscle relaxant in use.

Curare, a term encompassing several South American arrow poisons traditionally utilized by indigenous peoples for immobilizing and paralyzing wildlife for sustenance, operates by inducing paralysis in skeletal muscles. This paralysis ultimately leads to fatality. Curare achieves its effects by binding to nicotinic ACh receptors at the motor end plate, effectively engaging in competitive inhibition with ACh. In modern medicine, curare is employed as a muscle relaxant during general anesthesia.[40]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 6.4: Skeletal Muscle is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

6.5: Smooth Muscle

Smooth muscle, characterized by its lack of striations, is primarily found in the walls of hollow organs like the urinary bladder, uterus, stomach, and intestines, as well as within passageways such as the arteries and veins of the circulatory system. It also lines the respiratory, urinary, and reproductive tracts (Figure 23). Smooth muscle serves various functions within the body, including controlling the size of the iris and altering the shape of the lens in the eyes. Additionally, it plays a role in erecting hair in response to cold temperatures or fear within the skin, referred to as goosebumps. [41]

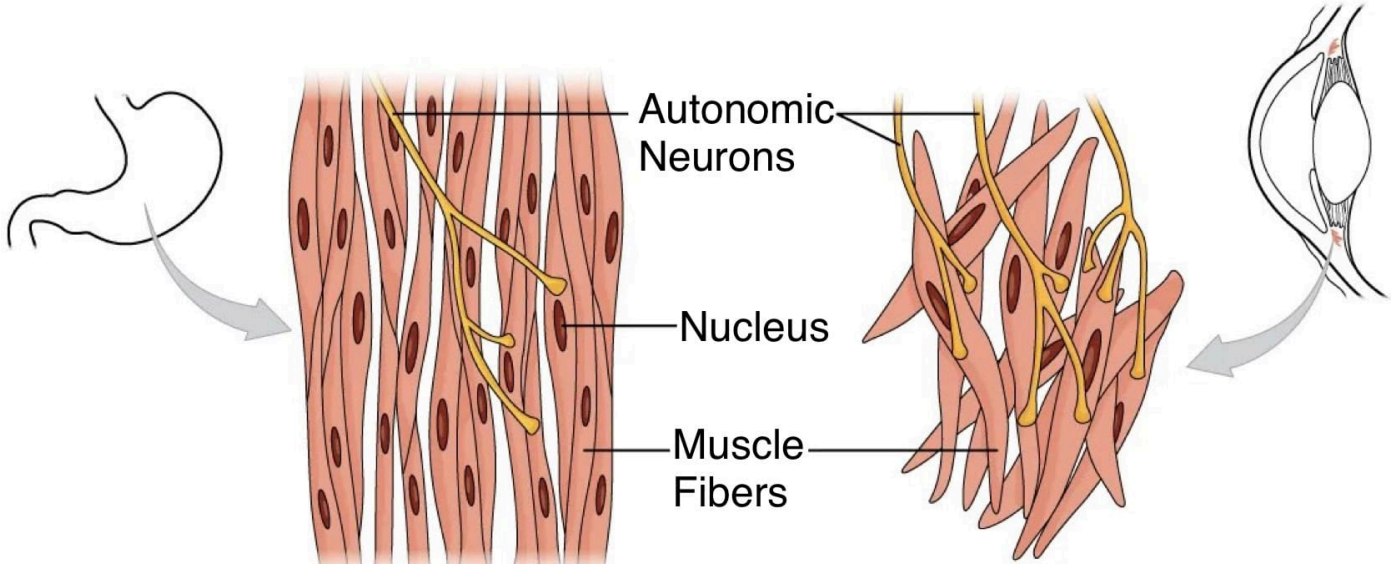


Figure 23 | Smooth Muscle Tissue | [42] This figure depicts smooth muscle tissue, a type of muscle tissue found in various organs throughout the body, including the walls of blood vessels, the digestive tract, and the respiratory system. Smooth muscle cells are spindle-shaped with a single nucleus and lack striations, giving them a smooth appearance under the microscope.

Unlike skeletal muscle fibers, where stretching beyond the overlap of thin and thick filaments fails to generate tension, smooth muscle fibers can develop tension even when stretched to 2.5 times their resting length. This is because the resting length of smooth muscle fibers is significantly shorter than that of skeletal muscle fibers. Smooth muscle can be stretched considerably before reaching its optimal length. Moreover, in smooth muscle fibers, the thin filaments overlap with the thick filaments even in the stretched-out position, allowing cross-bridge interactions and tension development. This property of smooth muscle is advantageous, as it enables the accommodation of varying volumes of contents with minimal change in tension. For example, this feature is essential in structures like the bladder, which needs to adapt to variable fluid levels without significant tension alterations. Smooth muscle contraction, which relies on the presence of calcium ions, is characterized by several differences compared to skeletal muscle fibers, particularly in cellular structure and calcium handling. Smooth muscle fibers possess a much smaller diameter compared to skeletal muscle cells. Unlike skeletal muscle cells, smooth muscle fibers do not require T-tubules to penetrate deeply into the cell to transmit action potentials. This difference is due to the smaller size of smooth muscle fibers and the fact that they lack the highly organized sarcomere structure found in skeletal muscle.

Smooth muscle fibers have a limited sarcoplasmic reticulum for calcium storage but compensate with calcium ion channels in the sarcolemma. These calcium ion channels open during the action potential along the sarcolemma, allowing extracellular calcium ions to flow into the sarcoplasm and reach **calmodulin**, a regulatory protein crucial for smooth muscle contraction. Most of the calcium ions needed to trigger smooth muscle contraction come from this influx of extracellular calcium ions, which diffuse into the sarcoplasm.

Smooth muscle contraction continues until ATP-dependent calcium pumps actively transport calcium ions back into the sarcoplasmic reticulum and out of the cell. However, a low concentration of calcium ions remains in the sarcoplasm to maintain muscle tone. This residual calcium keeps the muscle in a slight state of contraction, which is particularly important in certain tracts and around blood vessels.

Because many smooth muscles need to function continuously without rest, they exhibit relatively low power output but can sustain contractions without significant energy expenditure. Some types of smooth muscle can maintain contractions even when calcium ion is removed and myosin kinase is inactivated or dephosphorylated. It is achieved through a subset of cross bridges, known as latch bridges, which link myosin heads and actin for extended periods without requiring ATP. This property allows for the maintenance of muscle tone in smooth muscle that lines arterioles and other visceral organs with minimal energy consumption.

Smooth muscle is considered involuntary muscle because it operates without conscious control. Various triggers can initiate smooth muscle contractions, including hormones, neural stimulation by the ANS, and local factors. In specific locations, such as the walls of visceral organs, stretching the muscle can also stimulate contraction, leading to the stretch-relaxation response.

The spindle-shaped smooth muscle fibers, which possess a single nucleus, typically measure 30 to 200 µm in length. These dimensions are significantly smaller than those of skeletal muscle fibers. While they lack the striations and sarcomeres observed in skeletal and cardiac muscle fibers, smooth muscle fibers contain actin and myosin contractile proteins and thick and thin filaments. **Dense bodies** are specialized structures found in the smooth muscle fibers. They are composed of proteins such as alpha-actinin, vinculin, and desmin, which provide structural support and stability to the smooth muscle cell. Dense bodies are interconnected by **intermediate filaments,** creating a lattice-like network throughout the cytoplasm of the smooth muscle cell. This network helps to transmit contractile forces generated by the action of myosin filaments across the cell, allowing for coordinated contraction and relaxation of the smooth muscle tissue. Dense bodies help hold thin filaments in place and anchor to the inner membrane of the sarcolemma. As the thick filaments pull thin filaments during the powerstroke action of muscle contraction, they tug on the dense bodies, which are linked to intermediate filament networks throughout the sarcoplasm. This coordinated action leads to the contraction of the entire muscle fiber, causing the ends to draw towards the center and generating a twisting motion in the middle (Figure 24). [41]

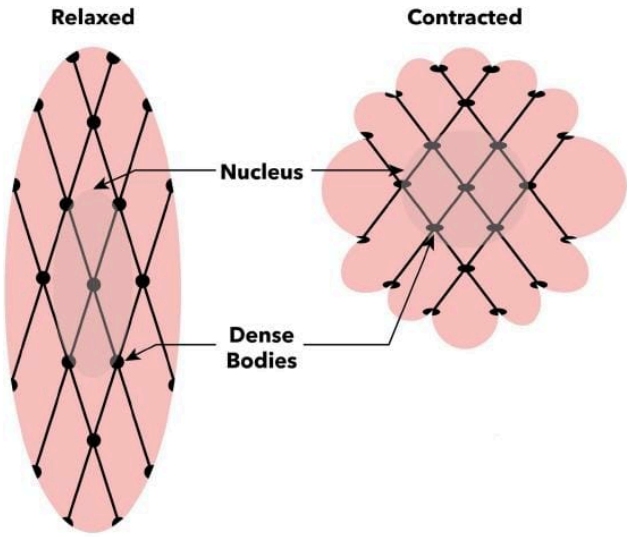


Figure 24 | Comparison of a Relaxed and a Contracted Smooth Muscle Cell | [43] This figure illustrates the structural changes between a relaxed and a contracted smooth muscle cell. Dense bodies are distributed throughout the cytoplasm in the relaxed state, anchoring intermediate filaments. As contraction begins, dense bodies move closer together, and there is an overall reduction in cell length.

In contrast to skeletal and cardiac muscle cells, smooth muscle cells do not contain troponin to regulate cross-bridge formation. Instead, the regulatory protein calmodulin takes on this role. Calcium ions essential for muscle contraction are sourced from both the sarcoplasmic reticulum within the smooth muscle fibers and from the extracellular fluid through specialized membrane invaginations termed **calveoli**, which are comparable to T-tubules.

Smooth Muscle Contraction and Relaxation

A stimulus for smooth muscle contraction could be neural, humoral, or mechanical. Autonomic nerve stimulation, various hormones or neurotransmitters, and intrinsic changes causing stretch are examples of stimuli causing calcium entry into the sarcoplasm from multiple sources. These calcium ions bind to calmodulin, forming the **calcium-calmodulin complex**. Subsequently, this complex activates an enzyme known as **myosin light chain kinase (MLCK)**. This enzyme activates myosin heads by phosphorylating them, which involves converting ATP to ADP and Pi, with Pi attaching to the head. Once activated, the

myosin heads can attach to actin-binding sites and exert force on the thin filaments, pulling them towards thick filaments (Figure 25).[44]

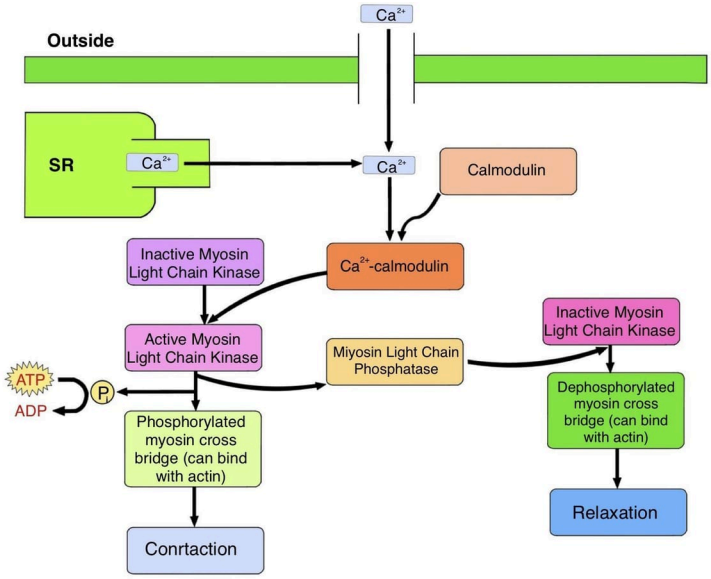


Figure 25 | Smooth Muscle Contraction and Relaxation | [45] This figure demonstrates the process of smooth muscle contraction and relaxation. Upon stimulation by neurotransmitters, hormones, or mechanical stretch, calcium ions bind to calmodulin, leading to the activation of myosin light chain kinase (MLCK). MLCK phosphorylates the myosin light chains, enabling myosin heads to interact with actin filaments. This interaction triggers cross-bridge cycling, resulting in the shortening of smooth muscle cells and subsequent contraction.

In the absence of stimulus for muscle contraction, calcium ion levels decrease within the cell, and calmodulin no longer binds to calcium ions. This allows **myosin light chain phosphatase** (MLCP) to become active and catalyze the removal of phosphate groups from MLC. MLCP activity is controlled by various signaling pathways, such as cAMP and cGMP, serving as second messengers. They, in turn, activate protein kinases, which phosphorylate MLCP. In the presence of MLCP, the phosphorylation level of MLC decreases, inhibiting the interaction between myosin heads and actin filaments. This prevents cross-bridge formation and muscle contraction, ultimately leading to smooth muscle relaxation.[46]

Types of Smooth Muscle Fibers

Smooth muscle is organized into two primary types: **single-unit smooth muscle** and **multiunit smooth muscle**. These two types differ in their locations within the body and their characteristics.

Single-unit smooth muscle, also known as unitary muscle or visceral muscle, is a prevalent type of smooth muscle characterized by muscle fibers interconnected by gap junctions, enabling them to contract synchronously as a single unit. Found predominantly in the walls of visceral organs, excluding the heart, single-unit smooth muscle is abundant in structures like the digestive tract, urinary bladder, and uterus. It possesses self-excitable properties, capable of initiating contractions independently without nervous stimulation. These cells exhibit slow-wave potentials, manifesting as rhythmic fluctuations in membrane potential involving depolarization and hyperpolarization.

Visceral smooth muscle displays a stress-relaxation response, crucial for organs like the stomach and urinary bladder, which continually change size during filling and emptying. Initially contracting when stretched during filling, it quickly relaxes to prevent premature emptying, maintaining organ integrity. Additionally, visceral smooth muscle sustains muscle tone during emptying and contraction, preventing flaccidity. Its slow, steady contractions facilitate the movement of substances, such as food, in the digestive tract.

Multiunit Smooth Muscle, in contrast, lacks gap junctions and electrical coupling between cells. Contractions in one cell do not propagate to neighboring cells; they remain confined to the originally stimulated cell. Multiunit smooth muscle is neurogenic, with stimuli primarily generated by autonomic nerves. It surrounds structures like ciliary muscles of the eyes, large blood vessels, respiratory passageways, and the base of hair follicles. Contraction of multiunit smooth muscle, such as in hair follicles, can result in phenomena like goosebumps.

Unlike skeletal muscle, where motor neurons form highly organized NMJs with muscle fibers, smooth muscle lacks such organization. Instead, axons of neurons in the ANS course through smooth muscle, forming varicosities, bulges containing neurotransmitters. Varicosities release neurotransmitters into the synaptic cleft, activating smooth muscle cells (Figure 26). Additionally, visceral muscle in the walls of hollow organs (excluding the heart) contains pacesetter cells, which can spontaneously trigger action potentials and muscle contractions. These unique features contribute to the involuntary and often rhythmic nature of smooth muscle function.[41]

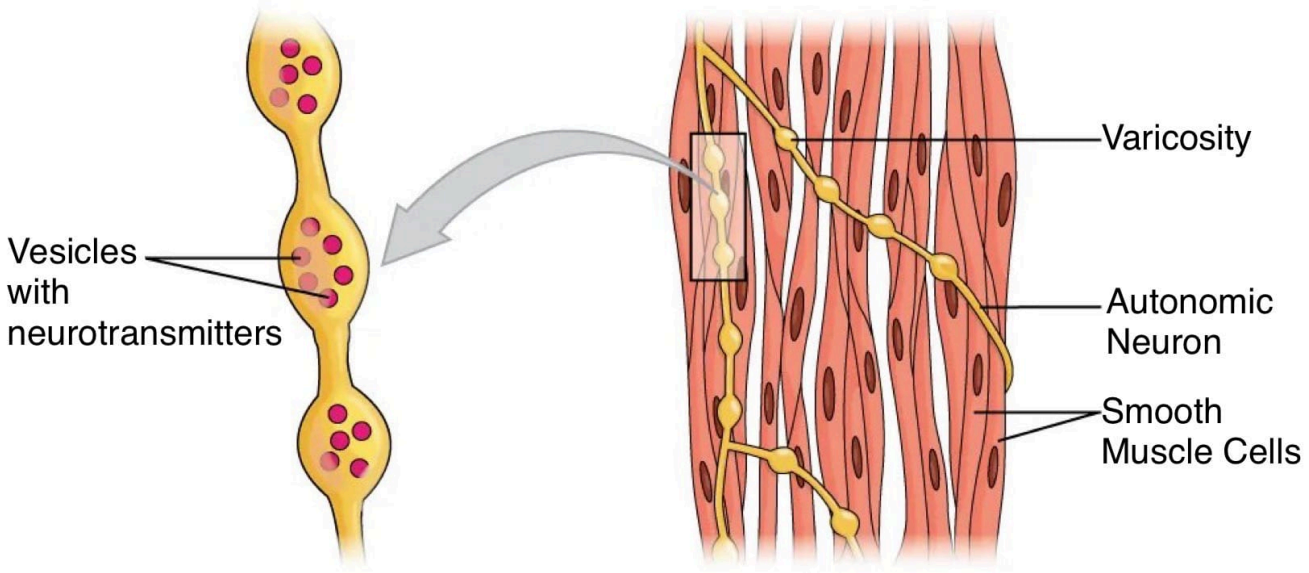


Figure 26 | Varicosities | [47] This figure depicts varicosities, specialized structures found along neuronal processes, such as axons and dendrites. Varicosities are characterized by localized swellings or enlargements along the length of the neuronal fibers. Within these structures, neurotransmitter-containing vesicles are stored and released in response to neuronal signaling.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 6.5: Smooth Muscle is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

6.6: Bone Tissue

Bone tissue is a specialized type of connective tissue that plays a crucial role in maintaining the structural integrity of the body. It serves many functions, each of which is vital for the overall health and functioning of the organism.

Functions of Bone Tissue

One of the primary functions of the bone tissue is to protect vital organs. Bones create a sturdy framework around delicate structures like the brain, spinal cord, heart, and lungs, shielding them from potential injuries. Bones act as the framework of the body, providing structural support. They serve as the scaffolding upon which muscles, tendons, and ligaments attach, allowing for movement and maintaining the body's shape. Within the cavities of certain bones, particularly the long bones and flat bones such as the pelvis, the bone marrow produces red blood cells, white blood cells, and platelets by a process known as **hematopoiesis** or **hemopoiesis**. Bones also serve as sites for fat storage, primarily in the form of yellow bone marrow. This stored fat can be a source of energy in times of need. Bones also store essential minerals such as calcium, phosphate, and carbonate. These minerals are not only critical for the structural integrity of bones but are also vital for various physiological processes throughout the body. They can release or absorb minerals, particularly calcium and phosphate, to ensure the proper functioning of multiple systems. Moreover, bone tissue contributes to the body's acid-base balance by absorbing alkaline salts, notably carbonate. This process helps regulate the pH of bodily fluids, ensuring that they remain within the appropriate range for optimal physiological function.[48]

Types of Bone Tissue

Bone tissue in the human body consists of two primary types: **compact** (**cortical**) and **spongy** (**trabecular**) **bone** (Figure 27).

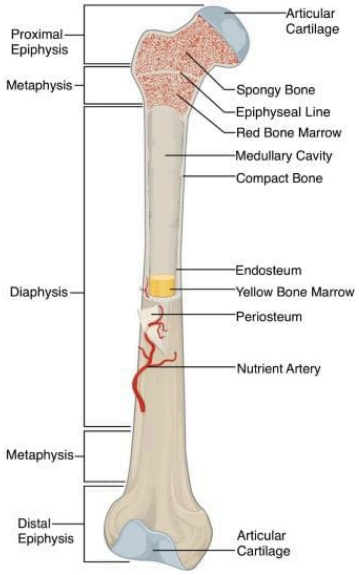


Figure 27 | A Typical Long Bone Showing Compact and Spongy Bone | [49] This figure illustrates the anatomical features of a typical long bone, encompassing its various parts, coverings, and internal structures. The long bone comprises a central shaft, the diaphysis, primarily composed of compact bone tissue. Enveloping the diaphysis is the periosteum, a dense fibrous membrane that covers the bone's surface, providing attachment for muscles and tendons and contributing to bone growth and repair.Located at each end of the long bone are the epiphyses, consisting of spongy bone enclosed by a layer of compact bone termed the epiphyseal cortex. The epiphyses are capped with articular cartilage, a smooth, lubricated tissue facilitating frictionless joint movement. Internally, traversing the diaphysis and extending into the epiphyses, is the marrow cavity, a hollow chamber housing yellow bone marrow, predominantly composed of adipose tissue. Yellow bone marrow serves as a site for fat storage and provides energy reserves for the body.

Compact bone forms the dense outer layer of bones. It is typically found beneath the periosteum, the tough membrane that covers bones. Compact bone appears solid to the naked eye and is composed of tightly packed units called **osteons** or **Haversian systems**. Compact bone is organized into a series of concentric layers or **lamellae** surrounding a central canal known as the

Haversian canal (Figure 28). The central canal contains blood vessels, lymphatics, and nerves, providing essential nutrients.

Compact bone is highly resistant to bending and compression forces. The primary function of compact bone is to provide strength and support to the bone. It helps protect the internal structures of the bone and provides a rigid framework for attaching muscles, tendons, and ligaments.[7]

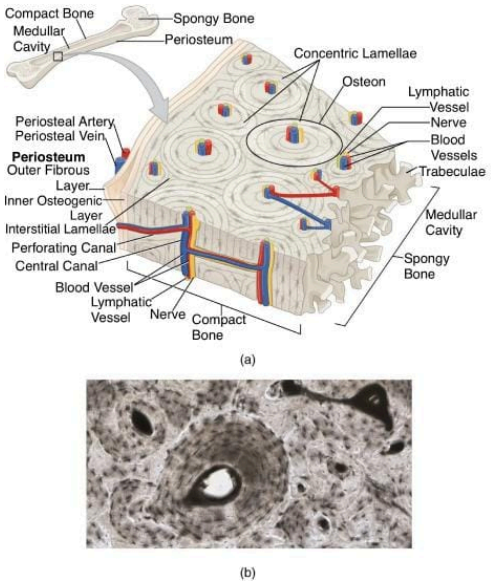


Figure 28 | Histology of Compact Bone (a) This cross-sectional view of compact bone shows the basic structural unit, the osteon. (b) A micrograph of an osteon. | [50] This figure provides a cross-sectional view of compact bone, focusing on its basic structural unit, the osteon. Each osteon consists of concentric lamellae, circular layers of the mineralized matrix, surrounding a central canal known as the Haversian canal. The Haversian canal contains blood vessels, nerves, and lymphatic vessels, providing essential nutrients and oxygen to the bone tissue and facilitating waste removal. Radiating outward from the central canal are small channels called canaliculi, which connect adjacent osteocytes, the bone cells embedded within the lamellae. Canaliculi allow for communication and nutrient exchange between osteocytes, ensuring the metabolic health of the bone tissue. The arrangement of osteons within compact bone tissue provides structural support, protects blood vessels and nerves, and facilitates efficient nutrient delivery and waste removal.

Spongy bone is found in the inner regions of bones, especially within the marrow space. Unlike compact bone, spongy bone has a porous, lattice-like appearance. It is characterized by a network of thin, bony **trabeculae** (plates or rods) that form an intricate three-dimensional meshwork (Figure 29). These trabeculae create open spaces within the bone, filled with bone marrow. This arrangement makes spongy bone considerably less dense than compact bone. Spongy bone has several important functions. Despite its lower density, it contributes significantly to bone strength, especially in resisting forces applied from various directions. Spongy bone also plays a vital role in metabolic processes involving bone tissue. For example, it has a metabolic rate that is approximately ten times higher than that of compact bone. This increased metabolic activity is partly due to its rich blood supply, making it a critical site for hematopoiesis in the bone marrow. Additionally, spongy bone is involved in exchanging nutrients and gases within the bone.[6]

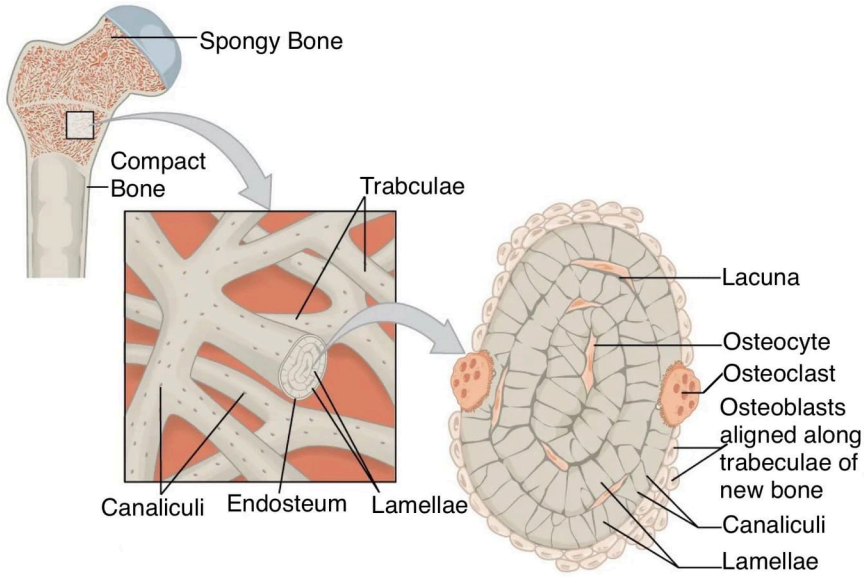


Figure 29 | Histology of Spongy Bone | [51] This figure presents the histological features of spongy bone, also called trabecular or cancellous bone. Spongy bone is characterized by its porous, lattice-like structure composed of bony trabeculae interspersed with spaces filled with bone marrow. The trabeculae, thin and branching structures, are formed by lamellae, concentric layers of mineralized matrix. These lamellae contain osteocytes, mature bone cells, arranged in lacunae, small cavities within the bone matrix. Osteoblasts, bone-forming cells, are responsible for the synthesis and deposition of new bone matrix, while osteoclasts, bone-resorbing cells, are involved in the breakdown and remodeling of bone tissue.

Periosteum and Endosteum

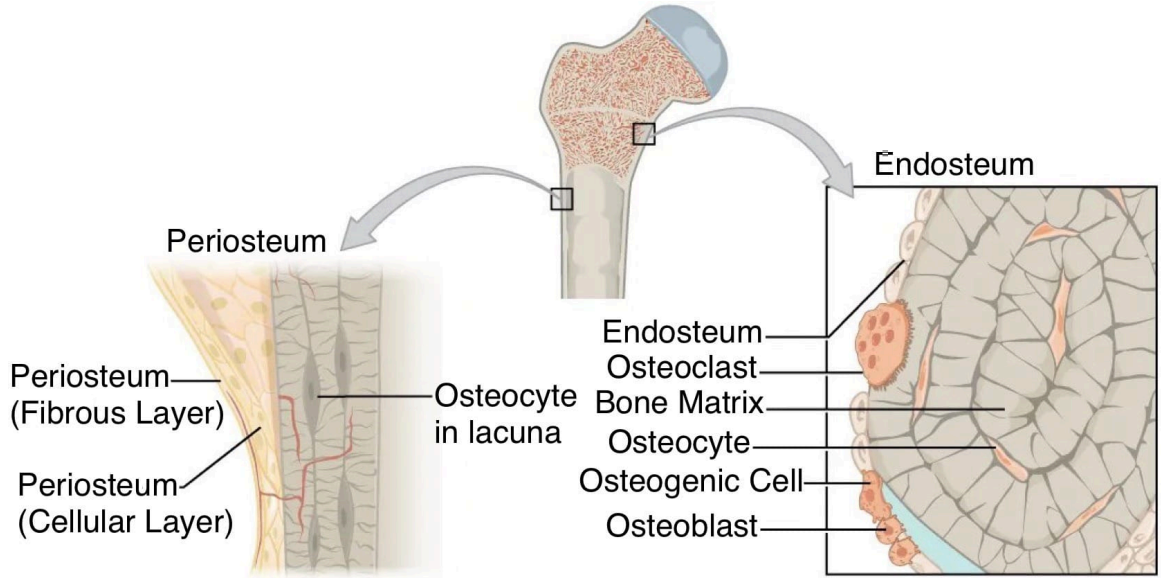


Figure 30 | Periosteum and Endosteum | [52] This figure illustrates the histological features of the periosteum and endosteum, two specialized membranous layers that envelop and line the outer and inner surfaces of long bones, respectively. The periosteum, located on the outer surface of the bone, consists of two distinct layers: the outer fibrous layer and the inner cellular layer. The outer fibrous layer is composed of dense irregular connective tissue, providing mechanical strength and protection to the bone. The inner cellular layer contains various bone cells, including osteoprogenitor cells, osteoblasts, and osteoclasts. Osteoprogenitor cells are precursor cells capable of differentiating into osteoblasts, which are responsible for bone formation, and osteoclasts, which are involved in bone resorption and remodeling. The endosteum, lining the inner surface of the bone, is a thin membrane containing osteoprogenitor cells, osteoblasts, and osteoclasts similar to those found in the periosteum. It covers the trabeculae of spongy bone and lines the medullary cavity of the diaphysis.

The **periosteum** is a vital connective tissue sheath that envelops the outer surface of compact bone. It comprises two layers: an outer **fibrous layer** and an inner **cellular layer** (Figure 30). The outer fibrous layer is composed of dense irregular connective tissue, which provides durability and protection to the bone. It safeguards the bone from external forces and potential injuries.

The inner layer is where the dynamic activity occurs. It contains a network of blood vessels, nerve fibers, **osteoblasts**, and **osteoclasts**. Osteoblasts build new bone to support growth and repair, whereas osteoclasts break down old or damaged tissue to remodel and maintain bone density, referred to as **bone resorption**. One of the primary functions of the periosteum is to protect the underlying bone tissue from mechanical trauma, stress, and potential damage. The network of blood vessels within the periosteum supplies oxygen and nutrients to the bone tissue, ensuring its metabolic needs are met. Osteoblasts within the periosteum play a crucial role in bone formation. They contribute to a type of growth called **appositional growth**, which involves depositing new bone tissue on the outer surface of existing bone, thereby increasing its diameter. Through appositional growth, the periosteum allows bones to increase in diameter over time. Osteoblasts in the periosteum lay down new bone tissue on the outer surface, contributing to thickening of the bone. During fracture repair, the periosteum plays a critical role in coordinating the formation of callus tissue and the subsequent remodeling of bone tissue at the site of injury.

The **endosteum** is a thin, membranous structure that lines the inner surfaces of both compact and spongy bone, as well as the canals of blood vessels known as **Volkmann's canals** (Figure 30). The endosteum consists of a layer of connective tissue that contains osteoblasts, osteoclasts, and a modest blood supply. Osteoclasts within the endosteum are involved in bone resorption. This remodeling function helps maintain bone integrity and adjust bone structure to adapt to mechanical stresses. The endosteum lines the inner surfaces of Volkmann's canals, which are channels that allow blood vessels and nerves to penetrate deep into the bone, providing essential nourishment and communication throughout the bone tissue.

Bone Cells

Osteoblasts are specialized bone-forming cells derived from mesenchymal stem cells called **osteoprogenitor cells** in the bone marrow and periosteum. They are often referred to as young bone cells because their primary function is to synthesize and deposit new bone tissue. They produce and secrete organic components of the bone matrix, including collagen fibers and various noncollagenous proteins. These organic components provide the framework for bone tissue. Morphologically, osteoblasts are a diverse group. Their shape can range from flat and elongated to plump and cuboidal, reflecting their dynamic activities. These cells line up along the bone-forming surfaces, whether it be on the outer periosteal surface or within the bone itself (Figure 31).

Osteoblasts actively produce and secrete **osteoid**, the unmineralized organic portion of the bone matrix. **Mineralization**, the process of adding calcium and phosphate ions to osteoid, is a critical aspect of bone formation. Osteoblasts orchestrate this by coordinating the deposition of these essential mineral salts onto the osteoid matrix and convert the once-flexible osteoid into the rigid, mineralized bone tissue for support and protection.

Osteoblasts are not mere builders; they are also regulators of bone homeostasis. These versatile cells influence bone remodeling, a lifelong process maintaining skeletal integrity. One of their chief responsibilities is interacting with osteoclasts, the bone-resorbing cells, ensuring a delicate balance between bone formation and resorption. Moreover, osteoblasts are equipped with specialized receptors for essential hormones, such as parathyroid hormone (PTH) and estrogen. These receptors allow them to respond to hormonal signals that help maintain bone metabolism. Physical activity and various external stimuli can influence osteoblast activity. Engaging in weight-bearing exercise, for instance, stimulates osteoblasts to enhance bone formation, contributing to bone density and strength.

Many osteoblasts eventually transition into a more mature, quiescent state and take on a new identity as **osteocytes**. They surround themselves with bone matrices and become trapped within small spaces called **lacunae**. Once transformed, they cease secreting osteoid and assume the role of maintaining bone tissue and sensing mechanical stresses. They have numerous cellular extensions extending into tiny channels called **canaliculi**, allowing them to communicate with neighboring osteocytes, obtain nutrients, and remove waste products.

When forces are applied to bone tissue through activities such as weight-bearing exercise, the deformation of bone triggers responses within osteocytes. They signal osteoblasts to deposit bone tissue where needed, reinforcing the structure. Simultaneously, they communicate with osteoclasts and instruct them to resorb bone in regions where it is no longer required. This elegant coordination ensures that bone remains robust, adapting to the ever-changing demands.

Various factors, such as estrogen deficiency during menopause or prolonged treatment with glucocorticoid medications, can trigger osteocyte **apoptosis** or programmed cell death. This process can be detrimental to bone structure, as these cells are vital for orchestrating bone remodeling. The loss of osteocytes disrupts the bone renewal process, potentially leading to decreased bone density and increased risk of fracture. Estrogen therapy, often prescribed to mitigate the effects of menopause-related estrogen deficiency, can help prevent osteocyte apoptosis and sustain bone structure. Another key player in preserving osteocyte function is **bisphosphonate** therapy. Bisphosphonates are a class of medications that have demonstrated the ability to maintain osteocyte viability and function. By doing so, they contribute to the overall well-being of bone tissue.[3]

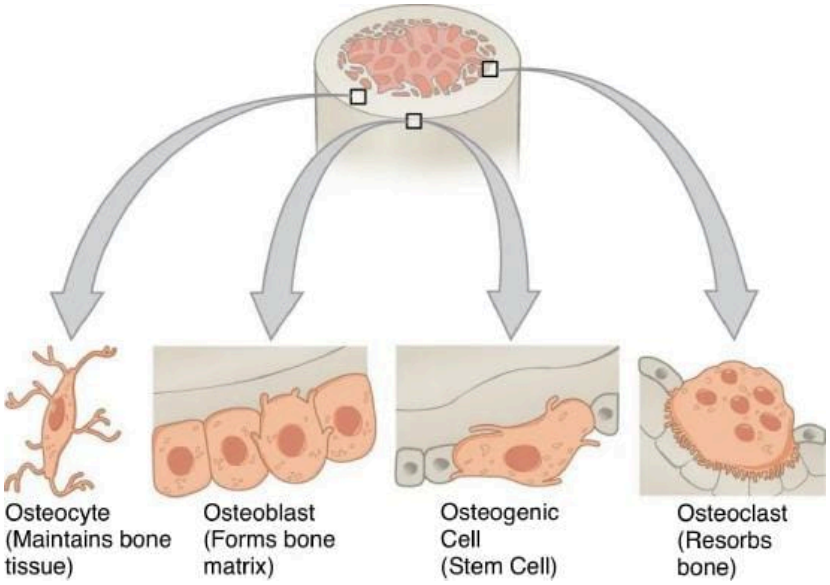


Figure 31 | Bone Cells | [53] This figure provides an overview of the various types of bone cells found within the bone tissue. Osteoprogenitor Cells, precursor cells capable of differentiating into osteoblasts, primarily reside in the periosteum and endosteum. Osteoblasts, bone-forming cells, are responsible for synthesizing and depositing new bone matrices, essential for bone growth and repair. Osteocytes, mature bone cells housed within lacunae, maintain bone tissue integrity and regulate remodeling by sensing mechanical stress. Osteoclasts, derived from monocyte/macrophage lineage, are multinucleated cells tasked with bone resorption, facilitating mineral release during remodeling and repair.

Unlike many of their bone cell counterparts, osteoclasts are multinucleated and are responsible for the resorption, or breakdown, of bone tissue. They are derived from precursor cells in the bone marrow and belong to the monocyte-macrophage family, representing a link between the immune system and the skeletal structures. Osteoclasts are vital for the remodeling and maintenance of bone tissue. They are equipped with specialized ion channels embedded in their cell membranes (Figure 31). These ion channels function as miniature proton pumps, expelling protons into the extracellular space that surrounds the bone. This expulsion of protons leads to a profound drop in pH within their immediate microenvironment. The localized decrease in pH is instrumental in the dissolution of bone mineral, which primarily consists of calcium phosphate. This acidification effectively "softens" the bone, rendering it more amenable to resorption. As osteoclasts carry out this acid-mediated dissolution of bone minerals, they expose the organic matrix of the bone, primarily composed of collagen.

Bone Matrix

The bone matrix is the structural framework of bone tissue, providing the strength, resilience, and adaptability our bones rely upon. It is a fusion of two distinct components: the inorganic and organic substances. The inorganic component comprises approximately 69% of the bone matrix and predominantly contains **hydroxyapatite crystals**, mainly made of calcium phosphate. These mineral salts provide bone tissue with its hardness and compressional strength. They give bones their characteristic rigidity and ability to withstand mechanical forces. The organic component is a complex blend of collagen and non-collagenous structural proteins, making up around 22% of the bone matrix. Collagen fibers, primarily type I collagen, constitute 90% of this organic mix. They weave through the bone, forming a flexible but strong framework. Though present in smaller quantities, the non-collagenous structural proteins play indispensable roles in bone structure and function, contributing to the overall strength, elasticity, and resilience. The mineralized hydroxyapatite crystals bolster rigidity, while the collagen fibers confer flexibility and toughness. Together, this blend of hydroxyapatite crystals, collagen, and non-collagen structural proteins creates a bone matrix that is both strong and adaptable. It provides the bone with the resilience to withstand mechanical stresses while ensuring the capacity to remodel and adapt to changing demands continually.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Bone Formation (Ossification)

Bone formation, also known as **ossification**, is the intricate process by which bone tissue develops and matures. It occurs through two primary processes: **intramembranous ossification**, which directly forms bone within mesenchyme, and **endochondral ossification**, which replaces a cartilaginous model with bone tissue and is responsible for the development of long bones such as the femur, humerus, and tibia.

During intramembranous ossification, mesenchymal cells within the embryonic or fetal mesenchyme differentiate into osteoblasts as the first step. Osteoblasts cluster together and start laying down bone matrices directly within the mesenchyme. The area where osteoblasts begin adding bone is called the **ossification center.** The matrix consists of collagen fibers and organic components. As the bone matrix is deposited, it becomes mineralized through the deposition of calcium salts (**calcification**), the second step in this process. As the matrix hardens and forms the bone tissue, blood vessels grow into the developing bone, providing oxygen and nutrients to the bone cells. Some osteoblasts become entrapped in lacunae within the newly formed bone matrix and differentiate into osteocytes. The formation of bone at this stage (step 3) is in the form of small, irregularly shaped plates called trabeculae. Eventually, the spongy bone develops into compact bone (step 4) (Figure 32). Intramembranous ossification is commonly seen in flat bones of the skull, including the mandible and maxilla, clavicles, and during the healing of bone fractures, bridging the gap and facilitating bone repair.[54]

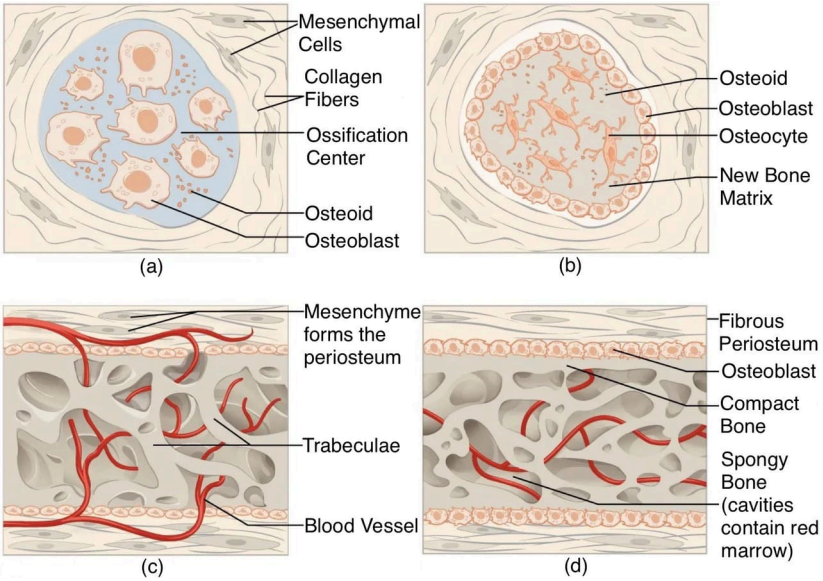


Figure 32 | Intramembranous Ossification | [55] Intramembranous ossification follows four steps. (a) Mesenchymal cells group into clusters, and ossification centers form. (b) Secreted osteoid traps osteoblasts, which then become osteocytes. (c) Trabecular matrix and periosteum form. (d) Compact bone develops superficial to the trabecular bone, and crowded blood vessels condense into red marrow.

Endochondral ossification involves several steps. The first step is the differentiation of mesenchymal cells into **chondrocytes**, cells within the cartilage, which begins with the formation of a **hyaline cartilage** model of the future bone. As the cartilage grows, it is gradually replaced by bone tissue, where osteoblasts replace chondrocytes (step 2). Chondrocytes in the primary center of ossification begin to grow (hyperplasia) and stop secreting collagen and other proteoglycans. Instead, they start secreting alkaline phosphatase, essential for mineral deposition and calcification of the matrix. Apoptosis of the hypertrophic chondrocytes forms cavities within the bone. The hypertrophic chondrocytes secrete **vascular endothelial cell growth factor**, which causes

sprouting of blood vessels from the perichondrium. They invade the cavity left by the chondrocytes and branch in opposite directions along the shaft length. The blood vessels carry hematopoietic cells, osteoprogenitor cells, and other cells inside the cavity. The hematopoietic cells will later form the bone marrow. Once vascularized, the perichondrium, the outer covering of the cartilage, differentiates into periosteum. Undifferentiated cells (osteoprogenitor cells) become osteoblasts and begin to secrete osteoid against the shaft of the cartilage model using the calcified matrix. In the midshaft of the cartilage model, a primary ossification center appears along with the periosteum (step 3). The bone matrix becomes mineralized, forming the diaphysis (shaft) of the bone, where the initial bone formation is called trabeculae, which ultimately becomes compact bone. Osteoclasts break down spongy bone to form the medullary cavity (bone marrow).

The cartilage continues to grow in the ends of the long bones (step 4). Soon, **secondary ossification centers** develop in the center of the epiphyses (step 5). These centers undergo a similar process of bone formation as in the primary ossification center. The hyaline cartilage between the diaphysis and epiphysis remains active in the building of cartilage, adding to the length of the bone, and is called the **epiphyseal plate** (Figure 33). This area allows for longitudinal bone growth during childhood and adolescence. The epiphyseal growth plate is critical for bone growth, and its closure (ossification) marks the end of longitudinal bone growth, typically occurring in late adolescence or early adulthood.[56]

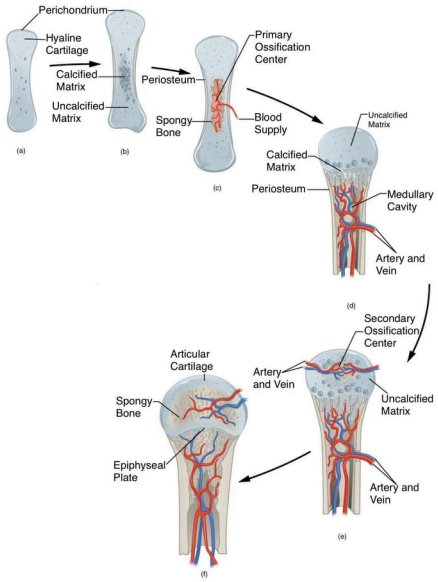


Figure 33 | Endochondral ossification | [57] Endochondral ossification follows five steps. (a) Mesenchymal cells differentiate into chondrocytes. (b) The cartilage model of the future bony skeleton and the perichondrium form. (c) Capillaries penetrate cartilage. Perichondrium transforms into periosteum. Periosteal collar develops. Primary ossification center develops. (d) Cartilage and chondrocytes continue to grow at the ends of the bone. (e) Secondary ossification centers develop. (f) Cartilage remains at the epiphyseal (growth) plate and at the joint surface as articular cartilage

Bone Growth

Bone growth is a dynamic and highly regulated process that ensures the skeletal system's integrity and function throughout life. It involves two distinct mechanisms: **longitudinal** or **interstitial growth** and **appositional growth**. Interstitial growth contributes to bone length, primarily occurring at the epiphyseal plates (Figure 34), while appositional growth increases bone thickness by adding a new extracellular matrix to the cartilage surface.

Longitudinal growth primarily drives the increase in bone length during development. This process hinges on continuous cell division within chondrocytes, which are found in the epiphyseal plates, the growth plates located near the ends of long bones. The epiphyseal plates are crucial for longitudinal bone growth and are typically active until the end of adolescence. As chondrocytes divide, they form stacks of cells within the epiphyseal plates. These stacks, known as **chondrocyte columns**, contribute to the longitudinal expansion of the bone. As new chondrocytes form, older ones transform calcified cartilage, a process that precedes the mineralization of the matrix. This mineralization marks the termination of the bone's lengthening process in that particular region. Once a bone reaches its final length, the epiphyseal plates close, converting the remaining cartilage into bone tissue. This process signifies the cessation of longitudinal bone growth in that specific bone.[58]

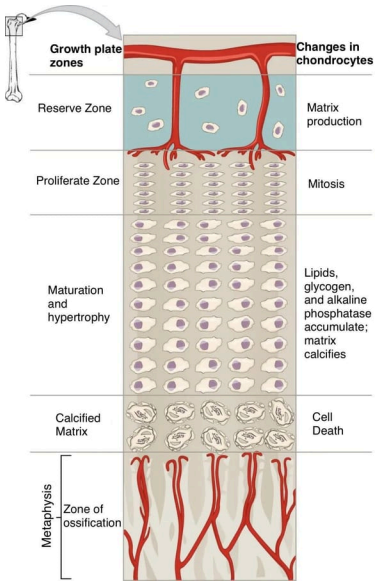


Figure 34 | Longitudinal Bone Growth | [59] This figure describes the process of longitudinal bone growth, highlighting the key anatomical structures and cellular events involved. Longitudinal bone growth occurs primarily at the epiphyseal plates, also known as growth plates, located at the ends of long bones. Within the epiphyseal plates, the zones are organized into the reserve, proliferation, maturation, and ossification zones. In the reserve zone, chondrocytes serve as a reservoir for future growth. The proliferation zone is characterized by active chondrocyte proliferation, forming columns of stacked cells. In the maturation zone, chondrocytes undergo hypertrophy and cease proliferation while preparing for mineralization. In the ossification zone, osteoblasts deposit new bone matrix onto the cartilage scaffold, while osteoclasts resorb older bone tissue, facilitating bone elongation.

While longitudinal growth primarily influences bone length, appositional growth governs bone thickness. This process involves the addition of more extracellular matrix to the cartilage surface. It is orchestrated by specialized cells called **chondroblasts**, which develop from the **perichondrium**, a fibrous connective tissue surrounding the cartilage. Simultaneously, within the interior cavity of the bone, osteoclasts continue to play a crucial role. They are responsible for the degradation of bone tissue. This internal degradation process persists until the bone reaches its ultimate thickness. The formation rate on the outer surface and degradation from the inner surface are carefully balanced to maintain constant thickness of the bone. This equilibrium ensures that the bone structure remains robust and adaptable to mechanical demands. These two processes are essential for the continuous development and maintenance of the skeletal system throughout life.

Bone Modeling and Remodeling

Bones, being dynamic structures, can adapt to the forces they encounter and the physiological influences they experience. This adaptability, known as **bone modeling**, ensures that the skeleton maintains its structural integrity while responding to various biomechanical demands. One fundamental aspect of bone modeling involves the gradual adjustment of bone shape in response to mechanical forces, which can include widening or changing the axis of bones. Such changes are achieved through the independent actions of two key players: osteoblasts and osteoclasts. Osteoblasts add bone to appropriate surfaces, while osteoclasts remove bone from surfaces as dictated by biomechanical forces. As individuals age, bones may also widen in response to the periosteal apposition of new bone and endosteal resorption of old bone. While bone modeling is a continuous process throughout life, it is less frequent in adults compared to **bone remodeling**.

Unlike bone modeling, which occurs in response to developmental or adaptational changes, bone remodeling is a constant process in adults. It involves the removal of old bone and the addition of new, mechanically stronger bone. This perpetual cycle serves multiple vital functions. First and foremost, bone remodeling is essential to maintain the structural integrity of the skeleton, ensuring the bones remain robust and capable of withstanding mechanical stresses. Additionally, it plays a pivotal role in metabolic functions, serving as a reservoir for vital minerals such as calcium and phosphorus.

The process of bone resorption, a central aspect of remodeling, relies on the action of osteoclasts. These specialized cells secrete hydrogen ions and the enzyme **cathepsin K**. The hydrogen ions acidify the resorption compartment beneath the osteoclasts, leading to the dissolution of the mineral component of the bone matrix. Simultaneously, cathepsin K digests the proteinaceous matrix, facilitating the removal of old and damaged bone. Osteoclasts bind to bone matrix peptides via integrin receptors in their membranes, initiating the process of bone digestion and leading to the formation of saucer-shaped lacunae on the bone

surface. Upon completing the resorption process, osteoclasts undergo apoptosis. Following the cessation of osteoclast activity, recruitment of osteoblasts to the resorption site occurs. During the **formation phase**, osteoblasts synthesize new bone matrices, depositing collagen and minerals to form osteoid. This transition from the activation to the formation phase is crucial, allowing osteoblasts to replace osteoclasts and lay down a new osteoid matrix. The mineralization of the osteoid matrix follows, ultimately culminating in the formation of a bone structure unit, which represents a fundamental building block of bone tissue. The bone returns to a resting state or the quiescent phase, with osteoblast and osteoclast activity balanced (Figure 35). [60]

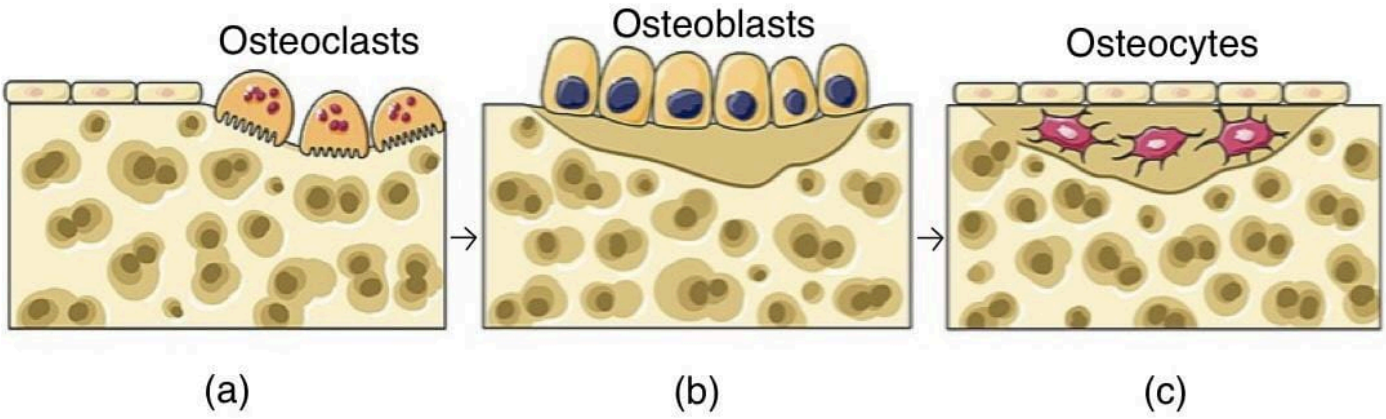


Figure 35 | Phases of Bone Remodeling | [61] This figure illustrates the sequential phases involved in bone remodeling, highlighting key cellular and structural events. (a) The remodeling process begins with the bone digestion phase, where various stimuli, such as mechanical stress or hormonal signals, trigger the recruitment of osteoclasts to the bone surface. (b) Following resorption, the cessation of osteoclast activity and the recruitment of osteoblasts to the resorption site occurs. (c) During the formation phase, osteoblasts synthesize new bone matrix, depositing collagen and minerals to form osteoid. The bone returns to a resting state in the quiescent phase, with osteoblast and osteoclast activity balanced.

The Role of Bones as Mineral Reservoirs

Bones serve as critical reservoirs for essential minerals in the body, with approximately 99% of body calcium, 85% of phosphorus, and 65% of total body magnesium stored within them. This storage plays a pivotal role in maintaining the delicate balance of these minerals in the bloodstream, ensuring their availability for various physiological processes. Calcium and phosphate metabolism is a tightly regulated process involving multiple hormones and interactions between different organ systems.

PTH, a hormone produced by the parathyroid glands, is a key player in maintaining calcium and phosphate homeostasis. It exerts its influence on multiple organ systems, ensuring the appropriate levels of these minerals are maintained. One of its primary actions is to increase calcium reabsorption while inhibiting phosphate reabsorption in the kidneys. This mechanism is crucial for maintaining the delicate balance of these minerals in the bloodstream, highlighting the significant role of PTH in the body. **Calcitonin**, produced by the thyroid gland, is an antagonist to bone resorption. It acts by inhibiting the activity of osteoclasts, the cells responsible for bone breakdown. This regulatory mechanism helps to prevent excessive bone resorption and maintain bone density.

Vitamin D plays a multifaceted role in calcium and phosphate metabolism. It enhances the absorption of calcium and phosphate in the intestinal tract. This action is pivotal for maintaining adequate mineral levels in the body. Vitamin D also contributes to the mineralization of osteoid. This process is essential for ensuring the structural integrity of bones. Vitamin D indirectly influences bone resorption by promoting the production of RANK ligand (RANKL) in osteoblasts. This RANKL then interacts with osteoclast precursors, leading to their maturation and activation, which, in turn, enhances bone resorption. This complex regulation helps maintain the balance between bone formation and resorption. Additionally, vitamin D regulates the expression of several bone proteins, including the promotion of the transcription of **osteocalcin**, a protein involved in bone mineralization. Vitamin D also plays a role in reducing the excretion of calcium and phosphate in the kidneys. This action further contributes to maintaining mineral balance in the body.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Markers of Bone Formation

Markers of bone formation help evaluate the rate of new bone tissue generation. They provide critical information about bone health and identify conditions associated with increased bone formation. **Alkaline phosphatase** is an enzyme found in osteoblasts. It promotes the deposition of calcium and phosphate ions into the bone matrix, facilitates the activity of osteoblasts, and helps maintain the proper mineral balance in bone tissue. Alkaline phosphatase helps remove pyrophosphate, a mineralization inhibitor, from the bone matrix by converting pyrophosphate into inorganic phosphate. It prevents the inhibition of hydroxyapatite crystal formation, allowing proper mineralization. Elevated serum alkaline phosphatase levels may indicate increased bone turnover, as seen in conditions like Paget's disease, fractures, or bone metastases.

Osteocalcin, also known as bone gamma-carboxyglutamic acid-containing protein, is a sensitive and specific marker of osteoblast activity. It is a protein primarily produced by osteoblasts. It helps in the assembly and arrangement of collagen fibers, which are a major structural component of bone. Osteocalcin plays a role in bone mineralization, the process by which calcium and phosphate ions are deposited into the bone matrix to form hydroxyapatite crystals. It acts as an autocrine regulator, influencing the activity of osteoblasts. Osteocalcin promotes osteoblast differentiation and maturation, leading to increased bone formation. It also enhances the synthesis of type I collagen, the primary protein in bone.

Osteocalcin can also influence the activity of osteoclasts. By interacting with osteoclasts, osteocalcin helps regulate the balance between bone formation and resorption, maintaining skeletal integrity. The regulation of osteocalcin is complex, and the mechanism of its action is unknown. Elevated osteocalcin levels are associated with increased bone formation, such as hyperparathyroidism, hyperthyroidism, and bone metastases. Conversely, decreased osteocalcin levels may reflect reduced rates of bone formation, as seen during glucocorticoid treatment.

During collagen synthesis, **procollagen peptides** are released from both the amino-terminal (N-terminal) and carboxy terminal (C-terminal) ends of the procollagen molecule. Elevated levels of these peptides are observed during periods of growth and in situations with increased bone formation, such as Paget's disease, and in response to growth hormone.[62]

Markers of Bone Resorption

Markers of bone resorption offer insights into the rate at which bone tissue is broken down and reabsorbed. Various markers derived from the degradation of **type I collagen** provide crucial information about bone resorption. These include **hydroxyproline-containing peptides and hydroxylysine glycosides**. Elevated urinary hydroxyproline values are observed after menopause, and they decrease with antiresorptive drug treatments like estrogens, calcitonin, and bisphosphonates. Hydroxylysine glycosides, derived from type I collagen, are valuable indicators of bone resorption, particularly in conditions like osteoporosis. The type 5 isoenzyme of **acid phosphatase**, found in osteoclasts, is released during bone resorption. This enzyme serves as an important marker, reflecting ongoing bone resorption processes. Cathepsin K enzyme is involved in bone resorption. Its presence and activity can also serve as a marker of ongoing bone breakdown.

Procollagen peptides are precursors to collagen, a vital protein in bone formation. They are synthesized within osteoblasts and are the initial building blocks of collagen, which eventually become collagen fibers, one of the major components of the bone matrix. Type I collagen degradation products are released during bone resorption. Higher levels of these indicate greater resorption. Several forms of degraded collagen products exist, such as hydroxyproline-containing peptides and hydroxylysine glycosides. Acid phosphatase is an enzyme capable of digesting bone matrix in acidic environments. The greater the level of these enzymes, the higher the resorption rate. Cathepsin K is an enzyme primarily produced by osteoclasts. It plays a critical role in breaking down the organic components of bone, mainly type I collagen, a major structural protein in the bone matrix. Cathepsin K functions to degrade collagen fibers, allowing osteoclasts to access the mineralized bone beneath. It functions optimally in an acidic

environment. It helps lower the pH in the resorption lacunae, making it conducive for the dissolution of hydroxyapatite crystals and the digestion of collagen.[63]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 6.6: Bone Tissue is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

6.7: References

1. Mader, S. S., & Windelspecht, M. (2019). *Human Biology*. McGraw-Hill Education.
2. Guyton, A. C., & Hall, J. E. (2016). *Textbook of Medical Physiology*. Elsevier.
3. Sherwood, L. (2015). *Human Physiology: From Cells to Systems*. Cengage Learning.
4. Berkshire Community College Bioscience Image Library. (2018, April 5). Cross section: teased skeletal muscle. Muscle Tissue: Skeletal Muscle Fibers. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/a6/Muscle_Tissue_Skeletal_Muscle_Fibers_%28401536016309%29.jpg] Berkshire Community College Bioscience Image Library. (2018, April 5). Cross section: smooth muscle. Muscle Tissue: Smooth. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/c/c2/Muscle_Tissue_Smooth_%28400871004909%29.jpg] Berkshire Community College Bioscience Image Library. (2018, April 5). Cross section: cardiac muscle. Muscle Tissue: Cardiac Muscle. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/0a/Muscle_Tissue_Cardiac_Muscle_%28420130290329%29.jpg]
5. Widmaier, E. P., Raff, H., & Strang, K. T. (2016). *Vander's Human Physiology: The Mechanisms of Body Function*. McGraw-Hill Education.
6. Martini, F. H., Nath, J. L., Bartholomew, E. F., Ober, W. C., & Petti, K. M. (2018). Fundamentals of Anatomy & Physiology (11th ed.). Pearson Education.
7. Saladin, K. S. (2018). Anatomy & Physiology: The Unity of Form and Function (8th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.
8. Silverthorn, D. U. (2018). *Human Physiology: An Integrated Approach*. Pearson.
9. ScholarJay. (2022, November 1). General depiction of a motor unit [Image]. Own work. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/7c/Motor_Unit.png]
10. Shushruth. (2006, August 19). NACh Receptor [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved from [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:NACh_receptor.PNG]
11. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.6 Motor End-Plate and Innervation. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/ff663ee127683f7dd83c225b6d39d277da9256ed]
12. Elliejellybelly13. (2015, June 7). Muscles will contract or relax when they receive signals from the nervous system [Image]. Own work. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/2/2e/The_Muscle_Contraction_Process.png]
13. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.3 The Three Connective Tissue Layers. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/7990f132356dc4b9ee2949417ac064b52b47b06f]
14. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.4 Muscle Fiber. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/079419aef68b615feb19ec1d7a05d558e06b5adc]
15. Alberts, B., Johnson, A., Lewis, J., Raff, M., Roberts, K., & Walter, P. (2014). *Molecular Biology of the Cell* (6th ed.). Garland Science.
16. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.5 The Sarcomere. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/20598ea3cb1cf18c62196a5f93bbe36a1a6d246f]
17. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.7 The T-tubule. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/d9b10442a6f0569d0b57588ff01150c417d02884]

18. Fill, M., & Zahradník, I. (2012). Molecular Basis of Excitation-Contraction Coupling. *Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology*, 740, 959-978. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-94-007-2888-2_43

19. Walsh, D., & Sved, A. (2019, September 16). *Coupling of the muscle action potential to Ca++ release from the sarcoplasmic reticulum: The dihydropyridine receptor and ryanodine receptor* [Diagram]. Wikimedia Commons. [https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/ad/Coupling_of_the_muscle_action_potential_to_Ca%2B%2B_release_from_the_sarcoplasmic_reticulum_-_the_dihydropyridine_receptor_and_ryanodine_receptor.png]

20. Johnson, L. R. (2022). *Principles of Medical Physiology*. Elsevier.

21. Costanzo, L. S. (2018). *Physiology* (6th ed.). Elsevier.

22. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). The Sliding Filament Model of Muscle Contraction. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/1463f0ef934552382ad130bf14cd23dd9e1e779a]

23. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.8 Contraction of a Muscle Fiber. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/d27415657173fa90321a95a51a9637b20d168b70]

24. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.9 Relaxation of a Muscle Fiber. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/d27415657173fa90321a95a51a9637b20d168b70]

25. Pham S, Puckett Y. Physiology, Skeletal Muscle Contraction. [Updated 2023 May 1]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2024 Jan-. Available from [https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK559006/]

26. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.9 Relaxation of a Muscle Fiber. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/86ea61f9cc667f8fdba8e214b3cefcb16b60676e]

27. Kenney, W. L., Wilmore, J. H., & Costill, D. L. (2022). *Physiology of Sport and Exercise* (7th ed.). Human Kinetics.

28. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.12 Muscle Metabolism. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/b54437d9c1a12b07842921d529ee26b6b8a788a5]

29. McArdle, W. D., Katch, F. I., & Katch, V. L. (2021). *Exercise Physiology: Nutrition, Energy, and Human Performance*(9th ed.). Wolters Kluwer Health.

30. Lieber, R. L. (2020). *Skeletal Muscle Structure, Function, and Plasticity*. Wolters Kluwer Health.

31. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.14 The Ideal Length of a Sarcomere. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/e49c4199749b70779ff60b6ce90cc734a2478391]

32. Powers, S. K., & Howley, E. T. (2021). *Exercise Physiology: Theory and Application to Fitness and Performance* (11th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.

33. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.13 Types of Muscle Contractions. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/385a6ffe78f42f8c4094a1a1239eca47202fbb7b]

34. Baechle, T. R., & Earle, R. W. (2020). *Essentials of Strength Training and Conditioning* (4th ed.). Human Kinetics.

35. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.15 A Myogram of a Muscle Twitch. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/70ce61f1d91bfabb1380bc8e4536bbab0dc8cc05]

36. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.16 Wave Summation and Tetanus. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/8dcd185fc693a743ca3fab91514e09341203d403]

37. Kandel, E. R., Schwartz, J. H., Jessell, T. M., Siegelbaum, S. A., & Hudspeth, A. J. (2013). *Principles of Neural Science*(5th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.

38. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.17 Treppe. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/9dae424d070461811aaffd6f7528e9f45efbe02b]

39. Snell, R. S. (2010). *Clinical Neuroanatomy* (7th ed.). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

40. Flood, P., Rathmell, J. P., & Shafer, S. (2014). *Stoelting's Pharmacology & Physiology in Anesthetic Practice* (5th ed.). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

41. Marieb, E. N., & Hoehn, K. (2019). *Human anatomy & physiology* (11th ed.). Pearson.

42. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.23 Smooth Muscle Tissue. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/0f9c0c0dce95ae4a54187eb26d9f0095f36e1aef]

43. Walsh, D., & Sved, A. (2019). Smooth muscle cell contraction [Digital image]. Wikimedia Commons. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/35/Smooth_muscle_cell_contraction.png

44. Sullivan, J., & Torchia, M. (2019). *Principles of Physiology* (3rd ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.

45. Webb, R. C. (2003, December 1). [FIG. 1 Regulation of smooth muscle contraction.]. In *Smooth Muscle Contraction and Relaxation*. Advances in Physiology Education, 27(4). [https://journals.physiology.org/cms/10.1152/advan.00025.2003/asset/images/medium/u10430173001.jpeg]

46. Murray, R. K., Bender, D. A., Botham, K. M., Kennelly, P. J., & Rodwell, V. W. (Eds.). (2018). *Harper's Illustrated Biochemistry* (31st ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.

47. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 10.25 Motor Units. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/96e6248554bc189ec4c99aed7b71f07e425aabee]

48. Roberts, S. B., & Shear, C. R. (1999). Bone Tissue: Composition, Organization, and Function. In G. A. Rodan & R. P. Bilezikian (Eds.), Principles of Bone Biology (Vol. 1, pp. 3-19). Academic Press.

49. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 6.7 Anatomy of a Long Bone. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/584a309c687dbba48af841cf629d2a6937ad6599]

50. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 6.12 Diagram of Compact Bone. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/301b6f7a5ee06e44f1c81fea177fc92f579061b5]

51. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 6.13 Diagram of Spongy Bone. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/7e2f0912df46040139feeffbec2d11c4bf8cc5a6]

52. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 6.8 Periosteum and Endosteum. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/672d391b03509aa4dfecbb7fe15b4febbc463e3f]

53. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 6.11 Bone Cells. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/a556bd455f44e1339456a7f7f065b1d9184940ed]

54. Bilezikian, John P., et al. *Principles of Bone Biology*. 2nd ed., Academic Press, 2008.

55. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 6.16 Intramembranous Ossification. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/adc7826f821d921d2b47a768327e1204b1a47dc7]

56. Martin, R. B., Burr, D. B., Sharkey, N. A., & Fyhrie, D. P. (2015). *Skeletal Tissue Mechanics* (2nd ed.). Springer.

57. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 6.17 Endochondral Ossification. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/acb367be0c8eb09417dd0588910685533efa0c80]

58. Hall, B. K. Endochondral Ossification: A Model for Developmental Biology. *CRC Critical Reviews in Biochemistry*, vol. 20, no. 4, 1986, pp. 363-396. JSTOR, www.jstor.org/stable/30266531.

59. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 6.18 Longitudinal Bone Growth. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/aaa021b0d0eab80f66f4c7fab30575cb0ccb0b42]

60. Bone Modeling and Remodeling. *Boundless Anatomy and Physiology*, Lumen Learning,courses.lumenlearning.com/boundless-ap/chapter/bone-modeling-and-remodeling/. Accessed 4 July 2024.

61. Laboratoires Servier. (2019, September 29). Bone remodeling [Image]. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/thumb/5/56/Bone_regeneration_-_Bone_remodeling_cycle_III_-_Osteoclasts_Monocytes_Pre-osteoblasts_etc_--_Smart-Servier.jpg/1600px-Bone_regeneration_-_Bone_remodeling_cycle_III_-_Osteoclasts_Monocytes_Pre-osteoblasts_etc_--_Smart-Servier.jpg?20190929000056]

62. Rosen, C. J., Bouxsein, M. L., & Compston, J. E. (2013). *Primer on the Metabolic Bone Diseases and Disorders of Mineral Metabolism* (8th ed.). Wiley-Blackwell.

63. Eastell, R., & Szulc, P. (2017). *Use of Biochemical Markers of Bone Turnover in Osteoporosis*. In Marcus, R., Feldman, D., Dempster, D. W., Luckey, M., & Cauley, J. A. (Eds.), *Osteoporosis* (4th ed., pp. 1571-1596). Academic Press.

This page titled 6.7: References is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7: ENDOCRINE PHYSIOLOGY

7.1: Objectives
7.2: Introduction
7.3: Chemical Signaling
7.4: Endocrine Glands
7.5: Types of Hormones
7.6: Hormone Transportation
7.7: Mechanisms of Hormone Action
7.8: Target Cell Response
7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion
7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion
7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
7.12: The Thyroid Gland
7.13: The Parathyroid Glands
7.14: Vitamin D (1,25-Dihydrocholecalciferol)
7.15: Adrenal Glands
7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas
7.17: References

This page titled 7: Endocrine Physiology is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- Distinguish between autocrine, paracrine, endocrine, and neuroendocrine regulatory mechanisms governing various physiological functions.
- Compare and contrast neural and endocrine signaling, highlighting their unique characteristics and roles in body regulation.
- Distinguish between various hormone classes based on their structural characteristics, elucidating how these structural differences impact cellular signaling mechanisms.
- Explore the involvement of G-proteins in cellular responses to chemical signals, providing a detailed understanding of the complexities associated with G-protein-mediated signal transduction.
- Clarify the functions, locations, and timing of second messengers in cellular signaling, outlining the mechanisms behind significant second messenger pathways and highlighting their benefits compared to other signal transduction methods.
- Explain how the chemical structure of a hormone dictates its signaling mechanism on target cells, emphasizing the distinctions between membrane-bound receptors and direct gene activation by lipid-soluble hormones.
- Elaborate on how hormones influence the concentrations of their receptors and those of other hormones, providing insights into permissiveness in hormone action.
- Discriminate between primary and secondary hyposecretion (or hypersecretion) disorders, elucidating the underlying mechanisms and clinical implications.
- Describe the structural relationships between the hypothalamus and the anterior and posterior portions of the pituitary gland, emphasizing how the hypothalamus independently influences secretions from each pituitary section.
- Explain the role of releasing and inhibiting hormones secreted by the hypothalamus, including their transport to target structures and specific hormonal regulations.
- Explore the significance of oxytocin in the body, identifying its major target structures and physiological functions.
- Describe the major functions of antidiuretic hormone, its site of production, and its target structures within the body.
- Explain the functions of growth hormone and the mediators activated by it. Explore the regulation of its blood concentration.
- Identify the anterior pituitary hormones classified as tropic hormones and elucidate their roles and significance.
- Detail the synthesis of thyroid hormones and their diverse functions. Discuss how their secretion is regulated through negative feedback mechanisms.
- Examine the hormones responsible for regulating blood calcium concentration. Identify their target structures and the typical effects they induce.
- Distinguish between the typical endocrine gland function and the role of the adrenal medulla in the sympathetic nervous system.
- Summarize the main hormones secreted by different zones of the adrenal cortex, outlining the functions of mineralocorticoids, glucocorticoids, and sex hormones.

- Explain how the hypothalamus and pituitary gland cooperate in the negative feedback control of cortisol secretion during stressful situations.
- Describe the production and actions of insulin and glucagon, emphasizing their roles in maintaining blood glucose concentration and their complementary functions.

This page titled 7.1: Objectives is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.2: Introduction

The endocrine system comprises a network of glands and organs, each tasked with synthesizing and releasing specific chemical messengers called **hormones**. These hormones, functioning as regulatory signals, orchestrate various physiological processes that sustain life. The purview of endocrine physiology encompasses the synthesis, regulation, and actions of hormones, dissecting the mechanisms by which they modulate bodily functions. This chapter explores the highly coordinated interplay between glands, receptors, and target tissues to maintain homeostasis. It unravels the intricacies of hormonal feedback loops, which fine-tune the body's responses to changing internal and external conditions. Throughout this exploration, we will delve into the mechanisms of hormone action, their intricate signaling pathways, and the consequences of hormonal imbalances.

This page titled 7.2: Introduction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.3: Chemical Signaling

While previous chapters have explored neurotransmitter-based chemical signaling at synapses, this section unveils the intricacies of various other chemical signaling modalities, including **autocrine**, **paracrine**, **endocrine**, and **neuroendocrine** signaling. Autocrine signaling is a specialized form of cellular communication characterized by the secretion of chemical substances by a cell, which subsequently acts upon the same cell to induce specific changes. An example of autocrine signaling involves Interleukin-1 (IL-1), a vital signaling molecule secreted by monocytes during inflammatory responses. Remarkably, monocytes express IL-1 receptors on their cell surface, creating a feedback loop that regulates the release of additional IL-1 (Figure 1).

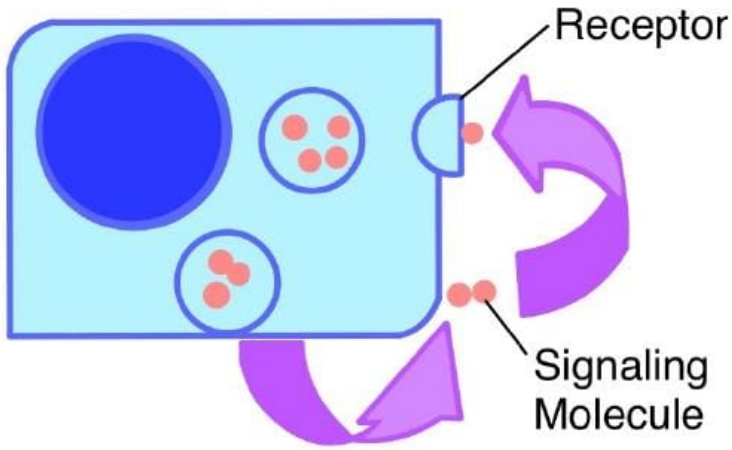


Figure 1 | Autocrine Signaling | This figure illustrates the autocrine signaling process, in which a cell produces and secretes signaling molecules (ligands) that bind to receptors on its own surface. The binding of these ligands to the cell's receptors triggers intracellular signaling cascades, leading to changes in cellular behavior or gene expression.

Paracrine signaling, in contrast, entails localized communication between neighboring cells. Chemical messengers produced by one cell affect nearby cells, typically without significantly impacting distant cellular entities. **Prostaglandins**, essential lipid molecules derived from **arachidonic acid**, exemplify paracrine signaling, playing pivotal roles in blood clotting, vasoconstriction, vasodilation, and myriad other physiological processes. **Histamine**, another paracrine agent, is released by immune cells and influences smooth muscle cells in blood vessels and airways. Neurotransmitters within the nervous system, acting exclusively within synaptic clefts, also exemplify paracrine agents (Figure 2).

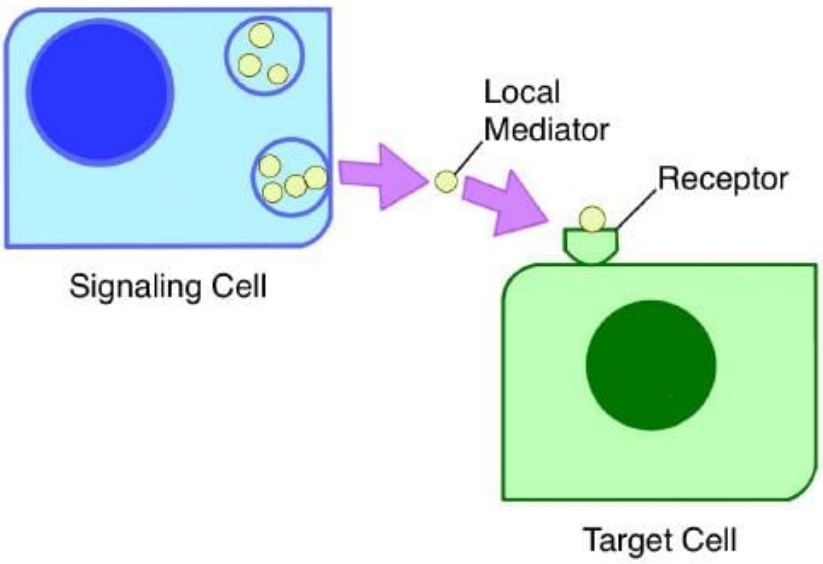


Figure 2 | Paracrine Signaling | This figure depicts the paracrine signaling pathway, where a cell releases signaling molecules (ligands) into the extracellular space. These ligands diffuse locally to nearby target cells, binding to receptors on their surface and initiating specific cellular responses.

Endocrine signaling encompasses the release of hormones by **ductless glands** into the extracellular fluid. These hormones, upon release, enter the bloodstream and traverse substantial distances to exert their effects throughout the body (Figure 3). When neurons undertake hormone secretion, as observed within the hypothalamus, this phenomenon is termed **neuroendocrine signaling** (Figure 4) which bridges the nervous and endocrine systems, coordinating complex processes such as stress responses, metabolism, and reproduction.[1]

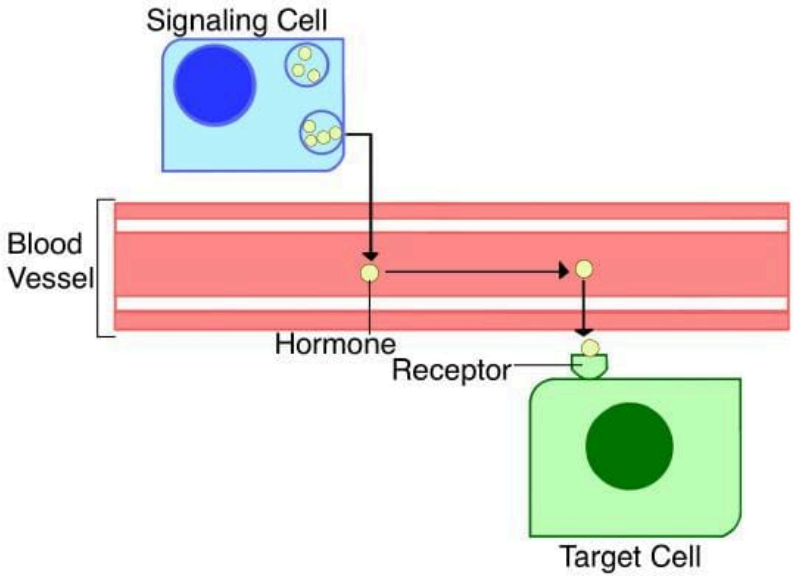


Figure 3 | Endocrine Signaling | This figure illustrates the endocrine signaling process, where endocrine cells release hormones into the bloodstream. These hormones travel over long distances through the circulatory system to reach target cells in distant organs or tissues. Upon arrival, the hormones bind to specific receptors on or within the target cells, triggering intracellular signaling pathways that regulate various physiological functions such as metabolism, growth, and homeostasis.

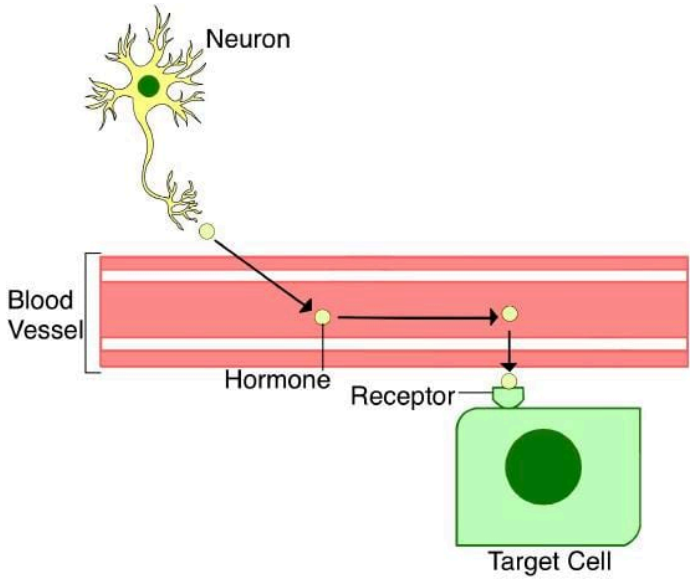


Figure 4 | Neuroendocrine Signaling | This figure illustrates the neuroendocrine signaling process, where specialized neurons (neuroendocrine cells) release hormones into the bloodstream in response to neural stimuli. These hormones travel through the circulatory system to distant target cells, where they bind to specific receptors and trigger physiological responses.

Neural Versus Endocrine Signaling

In the intricate workings of the human body, two predominant intercellular communication systems orchestrate vital functions: the nervous system and the endocrine system. Together, these systems play a pivotal role in preserving homeostasis, the delicate balance essential for the body's proper functioning.

The nervous system employs a dual-pronged approach to intercellular communication: **electrical signaling** and **chemical signaling**. As discussed in previous chapters,electrical signaling manifests as action potentials, swiftly transmitting impulses along neurons. In contrast, neurotransmitters, such as ACh, facilitate intercellular communication through local, rapid actions. When an action potential reaches a synaptic terminal, neurotransmitters disperse across the synaptic cleft. Upon binding with receptors on the postsynaptic cell, these neurotransmitters transduce receptor stimulation into cellular responses, encompassing continued electrical signaling or modification of cellular behavior. Target cells exhibit near-instantaneous responses, with cessation paralleling the conclusion of neural signaling. This neural communication lends itself to expeditious, momentary bodily functions like movement, sensation, and cognition.

The endocrine system, on the other hand, primarily relies on chemical signaling as its sole mode of communication. It entails the secretion of hormones by endocrine structures, with subsequent release into the extracellular fluid. Hormones embark on a journey primarily via the bloodstream, binding to receptors on target cells and inciting characteristic responses. Endocrine signaling, while effective, operates on a temporal scale longer than neural signaling. The precise duration varies depending on the specific hormone; for instance, adrenal hormones like epinephrine and norepinephrine are released in seconds during the fight-or-flight response, while certain reproductive hormones may necessitate up to 48 hours for target cell responses. Furthermore, endocrine signaling often exhibits broader specificity compared to its neural counterpart. A single hormone may partake in various physiological processes contingent upon the involved target cells. For example, oxytocin, which stimulates uterine contractions during labor in women also assumes a crucial role in breastfeeding and can influence the sexual response and emotional attachment in both genders.

In essence, the nervous system is predisposed to swift responses to immediate alterations in the external environment. In contrast, the endocrine system lies in maintaining the body's internal milieu, homeostasis, and reproductive control. Yet, the rapidity of the fight-or-flight response is a testament to the intricate interplay between these two systems. The nervous system's quick action, prompted by external threats, stimulates the adrenal glands to secrete hormones expeditiously. Consequently, the nervous and endocrine systems collaboratively orchestrate rapid responses, effectively accommodating sudden shifts in external and internal environments when warranted (Table 1).[2]

Table 1. *Comparison of Endocrine and Nervous Systems*

	Endocrine System	Nervous System
Signaling Mechanism(s)	Chemical	Chemical/Electrical
Primary Chemical Signal	Hormones	Neurotransmitters
Distance Traveled	Long or Short	Long or Short
Response Time	Fast or Slow	Fast

This page titled 7.3: Chemical Signaling is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.4: Endocrine Glands

The endocrine system comprises an intricate network of cells, tissues, and organs that undertake the secretion of hormones, serving as either their primary or secondary physiological role. Among the principal constituents of this system are the hypothalamus, pituitary gland, thyroid gland, parathyroid glands, adrenal glands, pancreas, and pineal gland, as depicted in Figure 5. Certain glands encompass multifaceted functionalities, encompassing both endocrine and nonendocrine functions. For instance, the pancreas possesses dual roles, housing cells integral to the digestive process while concurrently secreting the hormones insulin and glucagon. These hormones play a pivotal role in the regulation of blood glucose levels.

Beyond these glands, several other organs within the human body incorporate cells that contribute to the endocrine milieu. Notable examples include the hypothalamus, heart, kidneys, stomach, small intestine, liver, skin, ovaries, and testes. Furthermore, emerging research has illuminated the endocrine functionality of adipose tissue, adding another layer of complexity to this intricate system.

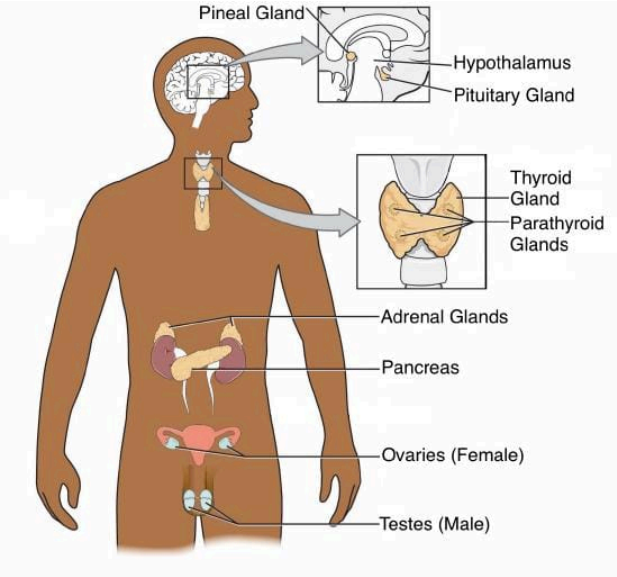


Figure 5 | Endocrine Glands | [3] This figure illustrates the major endocrine glands and their locations within the human body. The glands depicted include the hypothalamus, pituitary gland, pineal gland, thyroid gland, parathyroid glands, adrenal glands, pancreas, and gonads (ovaries and testes).

Hormones, the messengers of the endocrine system, circulate extensively in the bloodstream, yet their influence is highly specific, exerted exclusively upon cells equipped with requisite receptors. These specialized cells, responsive to a particular hormone, are denoted as target cells. Upon binding to its designated receptor on a target cell's surface or within the cell, a hormone sets a sequence of intracellular events in motion. These orchestrated responses culminate in precise alterations within the target cell, enabling the hormone to govern myriad physiological processes.

The impact of hormones encompasses a broad spectrum of functions vital to human biology, including regulating reproduction, facilitating growth, tissue development, metabolic control, maintaining fluid and electrolyte balance, modulation of sleep patterns, and numerous other intricate processes. A comprehensive list of the principal hormones within the human body, along with their associated effects, is cataloged in Table 2 for reference.

***Table 2**. Endocrine Glands, Their Major Hormones, the Chemical Nature of the Hormones, and their functions*

Endocrine Gland	Associated Hormones	Chemical Class	Effect
Hypothalamus	Releasing and inhibiting hormones	Peptides	Act on the anterior pituitary to release specific hormones
Hypothalamus	Antidiuretic Hormone (ADH)	Peptide	Stimulates Water Reabsorption by Kidneys
Hypothalamus	Oxytocin	Peptide	Stimulates Uterine Contractions During Childbirth
Anterior Pituitary	Growth Hormone (GH)	Protein	Promotes Growth of Body Tissues
Anterior Pituitary	Prolactin (PRL)	Peptide	Promotes Milk Production
Anterior Pituitary	Thyroid-stimulating Hormone (TSH)	Glycoprotein	Stimulates Thyroid Hormone Release
Anterior Pituitary	Adrenocorticotropic Hormone (ACTH)	Peptide	Stimulates Hormone Release by Adrenal Cortex
Anterior Pituitary	Follicle Stimulating Hormone (FSH)	Glycoprotein	Stimulates Gamete Production
Anterior Pituitary	Luteinizing Hormone (LH)	Glycoprotein	Stimulates Androgen Production by Gonads
Thyroid	Thyroxine (T4), Triiodothyronine (T3)	Amine	Stimulate Basal Metabolic Rate
Thyroid	Calcitonin	Peptide	Reduces Blood Calcium Levels
Parathyroid	Parathyroid Hormone (PTH)	Peptide	Increases Blood Calcium Levels
Adrenal Cortex	Aldosterone	Steroid	Increases Blood Sodium Levels
Adrenal Cortex	Cortisol, Corticosterone, Cortisone	Steroid	Increases Blood Glucose Levels

Endocrine Gland	Associated Hormones	Chemical Class	Effect
Adrenal Medulla	Epinephrine, Norepinephrine	Amine	Stimulate Fight-or-flight Response
Pineal	Melatonin	Amine	Regulates Sleep Cycles
Pancreas	Insulin	Protein	Reduces Blood Glucose Levels
Pancreas	Glucagon	Protein	Increases Blood Glucose Levels
Testes	Testosterone	Steroid	Stimulates Development of Male Secondary Sex Characteristics and Sperm Production
Ovaries	Estrogens and Progesterone	Steroid	Stimulates Development of Female Secondary Characteristics and Prepare the Body for Childbirth

This page titled 7.4: Endocrine Glands is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.5: Types of Hormones

Hormones, the chemical messengers orchestrating the symphony of physiological processes within the human body, can be categorized into three primary groups based on their chemical structures, a classification that profoundly influences various facets of their functionality. These three major groups are derived from amino acids and lipids (Table 3).

***Table 3**. Amine, Peptide, Protein, and Steroid Hormone Types*

Hormone Class	Components
Amine Hormone	Amino Acids with modified groups (e.g. norepinephrine's carboxyl group is replaced with a benzene ring)
Peptide Hormone	Short chains of linked amino acids
Protein Hormone	Long chains of linked amino acids
Steroid Hormones	Derived from cholesterol

Amine Hormones

One subset of hormones, termed amine hormones, originates from the modification of amino acids. In this transformation, the carboxylic group ($-COOH$) of the amino acid is excised while the amino group ($-NH_2$) persists. Notably, these hormones find their genesis in amino acids such as **tryptophan** and **tyrosine**. A prominent example is **melatonin**, secreted by the pineal gland, governing circadian rhythms. Tyrosine derivatives encompass thyroid hormones (**thyroxine** or **T4** and **triiodothyronine** or **T3**), regulators of metabolism, and catecholamines (**epinephrine**, **norepinephrine**, and **dopamine**). Epinephrine and norepinephrine, secreted by the adrenal medulla, are key players in the fight-or-flight response (see Chapter 5). Dopamine, released by the hypothalamus, inhibits prolactin release (**prolactin-inhibiting hormone**) by the anterior pituitary.

Peptide and Protein Hormones

Peptide, polypeptide, and protein hormones constitute the second classification, distinguished by their amino acid composition. Peptide hormones comprise short amino acid chains, typically containing around ten amino acids. Polypeptide hormones extend this chain, incorporating up to 100 amino acids. In contrast, protein hormones are more extensive and may consist of multiple polypeptide chains. Notably, insulin is constituted by two polypeptide chains. Some examples of peptide hormones include antidiuretic hormone (ADH), a pituitary hormone governing fluid balance, and **atrial-natriuretic peptide** (ANP), synthesized by the heart to regulate blood pressure. The **gonadotropin-releasing hormone**, produced by the hypothalamus, is a polypeptide hormone. Protein hormones encompass **growth hormone**, produced by the anterior pituitary, and **follicle-stimulating hormone** (FSH), classified as a glycoprotein due to its carbohydrate moiety. Amino acid-derived hormones can be stored within cytoplasmic vesicles of endocrine cells and released upon appropriate stimulation, contrasting with steroid hormones that are synthesized on demand.

The synthesis of peptide, polypeptide, and protein hormones parallels the fundamental process of protein synthesis. DNA undergoes transcription, yielding mRNA, which is subsequently translated into an amino acid chain. Initially, peptide, polypeptide, and protein hormones are synthesized as **preprohormones**, which contain a signal peptide necessary for directing the nascent protein to the endoplasmic reticulum. After cleavage of the signal peptide, the preprohormone is converted into a **prohormone**, an inactive intermediate. Further post-translational processing, including cleavage of specific peptide sequences, results in the formation of the mature, biologically active **hormone** (Figure 6). This sequential processing ensures proper folding, modification, and activation of the hormone before it is secreted into the bloodstream to exert its physiological effects . For example, insulin traces its lineage back to preproinsulin.

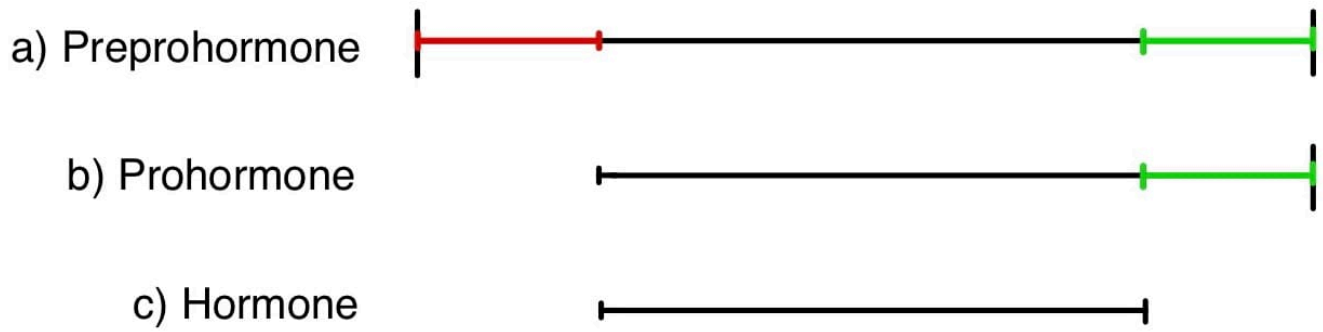


Figure 6 | The figure shows hormone synthesis from the preprohormone stage to the active hormone. Peptide, polypeptide, and protein hormones are first made as preprohormones, containing a signal peptide that directs them to the endoplasmic reticulum. After the signal peptide is cleaved, the preprohormone becomes an inactive prohormone. Further processing then converts the prohormone into the mature, active hormone.|

Steroid Hormones

Steroid hormones constitute the lipid-derived category, utilizing cholesterol as a precursor in their synthesis. Reproductive hormones like **testosterone** and **estrogens**, originating from gonads (testes and ovaries), belong to this group. The adrenal glands contribute **aldosterone**, a hormone central to osmoregulation, and **cortisol**, a key player in metabolism, to the lipid-derived category. These hormones exhibit low solubility in water and necessitate transport proteins or carrier proteins for circulation to their target cells. This intricate structure significantly prolongs the half-life of steroid hormones compared to amino acid-derived hormones. The half-life denotes the time required for half of the hormone concentration to degrade. For instance, cortisol boasts a half-life of approximately 60 to 95 minutes (Table 4), whereas epinephrine, an amino acid-derived hormone, lingers for about one minute.

Table 4. *Half-Life and Metabolic Clearance of Hormones with Degree of Protein Binding*

Hormone	Protein Binding (%)	Plasma Half-life	Metabolic Clearance (ml/min)
Thyroid	99.97	6 Days	0.7
Thyroxine	99.7	1 Day	18
Triiodothyronine			
Steroids	94	100 Min	140
Cortisol	89	85 Min	860
Testosterone	15	25 Min	1100
Aldosterone			
Proteins	Little	50 Min	50
Thyrotropin	Little	8 Min	800
Insulin	Little	8 Min	600
Antidiuretic Hormone			

This page titled 7.5: Types of Hormones is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.6: Hormone Transportation

The transit of hormones within the body is a highly regulated process contingent upon the distinctive solubility characteristics of these chemical messengers. Water-soluble hormones travel in the bloodstream in a dissolved state. However, upon reaching the target cell's perimeter, these hormones are, by nature, unable to traverse the bilipid bilayer of the cell membrane. Consequently, they necessitate interaction with a membrane receptor, thereby initiating the downstream signaling cascade within the target cell.

Lipid-soluble hormones, in contrast, rely on specialized escorts to safely navigate the aqueous bloodstream. These chaperones come in the form of binding proteins, often bearing a polar nature. Binding proteins serve as diligent custodians, facilitating the secure transport of lipid-soluble hormones within the bloodstream. Remarkably, lipid-soluble hormones possess the unique capability to effortlessly permeate the membranes of target cells, promptly engaging in the initiation of cellular responses.

Binding Proteins, colloquially called globulins, are pivotal actors in this transport endeavor. They showcase an intriguing diversity in specificity. Some binding proteins are designed with a singular purpose: the transportation of a particular hormone. In contrast, others are versatile, demonstrating a non-specific affinity for various hormone types. One example is thyroid hormones, derivatives of the amino acid tyrosine. Tyrosine's inherent traits—limited solubility in water coupled with a pronounced affinity for lipids—necessitate a unique transportation strategy. Thyroid hormones enlist the services of **thyroid-binding globulin**, a carrier protein expressly tailored for this distinctive task.

Regulation of Hormone Action

Hormone action is a carefully timed process, with hormones released into the bloodstream as needed to correct disruptions in specific bodily functions. Once the desired physiological outcome is attained, it is imperative to curtail the actions of these hormones to restore homeostasis expediently. The cessation of hormone action is predominantly orchestrated through enzymatic degradation. Enzymes in the liver and kidneys work efficiently to break down hormones into inactive forms. Subsequently, these inactive metabolites are eliminated through two principal avenues: bile, ushering them into the digestive system, and urine, facilitating their expulsion via the renal route. This intricate interplay between the mechanisms of hormone transportation and termination oversees the actions of hormones, guaranteeing their punctual delivery and the well-timed conclusion of their involvement in orchestrating the intricacies of physiological processes.

This page titled 7.6: Hormone Transportation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.7: Mechanisms of Hormone Action

Hormone receptors play a crucial role as the central component in triggering the cascade of molecular events. These receptors, often protein structures, are strategically situated either within the cell or at the cell membrane. Distinctive in their capacity, hormone receptors possess an intrinsic ability to discern and respond solely to hormones that align with their specific molecular configurations, characterized by unique shapes and side groups. Consequently, these receptors process the hormonal message, thereby setting a series of signaling events and cellular mechanisms in motion that culminate in the target cell's response. Notably, while consistent in their molecular recognition, hormone receptors may be distributed across cells in diverse bodily tissues. Intriguingly, these receptors may evoke disparate responses despite their shared hormone recognition capabilities. Consequently, the nature of the response incited by a hormone is contingent not solely upon the hormone itself but also on the peculiarities of the target cell.

Upon the receipt of the hormone's signal, the target cell exhibits a remarkable versatility in its potential responses. These responses span a spectrum of cellular actions, encompassing but not limited to stimulation of protein synthesis, enzyme activation or deactivation, alteration in membrane permeability affecting the passage of specific ions or molecules, modified Rates of mitosis and cell growth and stimulation of secretory activity. Furthermore, it is important to note that a single hormone holds the potential to elicit diverse responses within a given cell, a testament to the intricacies of hormone signaling and the multifaceted nature of cellular regulation.

Mechanisms Involving Intracellular Hormone Receptors

The realm of intracellular hormone receptors is characterized by their strategic positioning within the cellular confines. In strict accordance with their nomenclature, these receptors reside inside the cell, necessitating a unique set of attributes for hormone interaction.

For hormones to engage with intracellular receptors effectively, they must exhibit the ability to traverse the formidable barrier of the cell membrane, which entails that such hormones must possess properties conducive to membrane penetration. Steroid hormones demonstrate the remarkable capacity to permeate the lipid bilayer of the cell membrane. This inherent quality renders them adept at reaching and binding to intracellular receptors with relative ease, as illustrated in Figure 7.

Another class of lipid-soluble hormones, thyroid hormones, shares similar characteristics in this context. These hormones feature a chemical structure adorned with benzene rings, each bearing iodine atoms. This unique arrangement enables thyroid hormones to meet the lipid-soluble criteria, allowing them to easily cross the cell membrane and enter the intracellular environment, where they can carry out their regulatory functions.

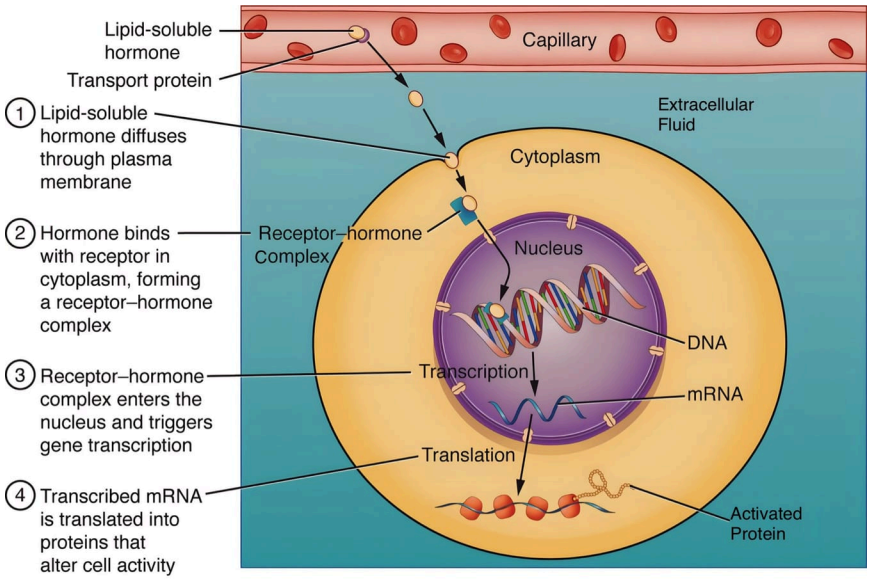


Figure 7 | Intracellular Hormone Receptor Mechanism | [4] This figure depicts the activation process of intracellular hormone receptors, specifically for lipid-soluble hormones such as steroid and thyroid hormones. Upon entering the cell, these hormones bind to their respective receptors located either in the cytosol or within the nucleus. This binding forms a hormone-receptor complex that undergoes a conformational change, allowing it to translocate to the nucleus (if initially in the cytosol) or to interact directly with DNA (if the receptor is already bound to DNA). The activated complex then binds to specific hormone response elements on the DNA, initiating the transcription of target genes into mRNA. This process ultimately leads to the synthesis of proteins that mediate various physiological responses.

Steroid hormones, known for their versatility, can bind to their receptors either in the cytosol or within the nucleus of the cell. Regardless of where this binding occurs, the resulting hormone-receptor complex ultimately moves toward the cell's nucleus to attach to a specific DNA segment. In contrast, thyroid hormones take a different approach, bypassing the initial binding steps. They directly interact with receptors that are already bound to DNA, allowing them to streamline the process and dock directly onto these pre-existing DNA-bound receptors.

For both steroid and thyroid hormones, the binding of the hormone-receptor complex to DNA initiates a delicate genetic process. This key interaction activates the transcription of a target gene into mRNA. The mRNA then travels to the cytosol, directing ribosomes in the precise synthesis of proteins. Through this finely tuned sequence, these hormones regulate cellular responses that are essential to the intricate workings of physiological processes.

Mechanisms Involving Cell Membrane Hormone Receptors

Hydrophilic or water-soluble hormones orchestrate a complex series of molecular interactions within cellular communication. Unable to pass through the lipid bilayer of the cell membrane, they initiate their signaling through receptors located on the membrane's outer surface. This hormonal message activates a cascade of cell-signaling events, involving G proteins, **adenylyl cyclase**, **cyclic AMP** (**cAMP**) as a secondary messenger, and protein kinases. G proteins, with their GTP-binding ability, play a central role in this process. Comprising three subunits—α, β, and γ—the G protein activates when the α-subunit binds to GTP, triggering adenylyl cyclase to convert ATP into cAMP. As a second messenger, cAMP activates **protein kinase A** (**PKA**), which drives a phosphorylation cascade, modifying numerous cellular proteins, including enzymes. Unlike lipid-soluble hormones that act on gene transcription, hydrophilic hormones exert their influence by orchestrating precise intracellular signaling events, highlighting the complexity and elegance of cellular responses to these water-soluble messengers.

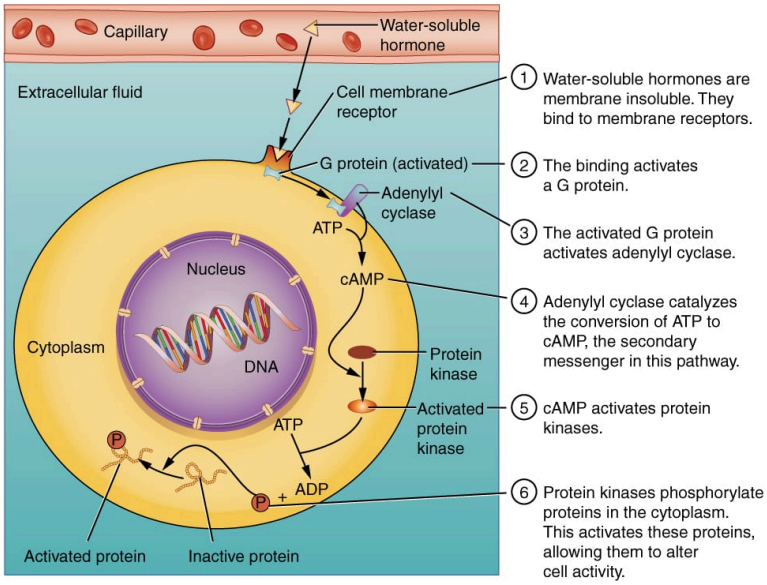


Figure 8 | Signaling Pathway of Water-soluble Hormones | [5] This figure illustrates the signaling pathway of water-soluble hormones, which cannot cross the cell membrane due to their hydrophilic nature. Upon binding to receptors on the cell membrane's outer surface, the hormone initiates a cascade of intracellular events. The hormone-receptor interaction activates a G protein, consisting of α, β, and γ subunits. Once the α-subunit binds GTP, it activates adenylyl cyclase, which catalyzes the conversion of ATP to cyclic AMP (cAMP), a second messenger. cAMP, in turn, activates protein kinase A, triggering a phosphorylation cascade that modifies target proteins, leading to cellular responses.

In the complex realm of cellular regulation, the phosphorylation of proteins plays a critical role in coordinating a wide range of cellular effects. These effects encompass everything from nutrient metabolism to hormone synthesis and various cellular products. The magnitude and diversity of these effects depend on several factors, including the characteristics of the target cell, the specific G proteins and kinases involved, and the dynamic network of protein phosphorylation.

In this intricate process, cAMP emerges as a key player among second messengers. Numerous hormones, each with its unique signaling message, rely on cAMP to initiate a cascade of intracellular events. For instance, calcitonin promotes bone formation and regulates blood calcium levels, while glucagon manages blood glucose levels. **Thyroid-stimulating hormone** precisely triggers the release of thyroid hormones T3 and T4. ADH utilizes cAMP mechanism in inserting aquaporins on the cell membrane of the tubular cell in the renal tubule.

This phosphorylation cascade enables hormonal responses to be rapid, efficient, and highly specific. Even in response to minimal hormone concentrations in the bloodstream, thousands of signaling events can occur simultaneously. However, this dynamic process is short-lived, as cAMP is quickly deactivated by the enzyme **phosphodiesterase** (PDE) in the cytosol, ensuring that target cell responses are promptly halted to prevent overstimulation.

In this intricate interplay of cellular responses, there are both accelerators and brakes. Certain G proteins, such as **growth hormone–inhibiting hormone** (**GHIH**), known as **somatostatin**, reduce cAMP levels upon hormone binding. This decrease in cAMP inhibits the secretion of human growth hormone. This duality of action is captured in their nomenclature, with **Gs-proteins** designated for stimulation and **Gi-proteins** for inhibition.

Intriguingly, the cAMP second messenger system is but one act in a multifaceted cellular performance. An alternative signaling system employs calcium ions as the second messenger. In this system, G proteins activate **phospholipase C** (**PLC**), akin to adenylyl cyclase in function. Once engaged, PLC cleaves a membrane-bound phospholipid, yielding **diacylglycerol** (**DAG**) and **inositol triphosphate** (**IP3**). DAG activates protein kinases, notably **protein kinase C** (**PKC**), thus commencing yet another phosphorylation cascade (Figure 9). Concurrently, IP3 ushers calcium ions from intracellular stores, predominantly from the smooth endoplasmic reticulum. An example of a DAG mechanism is Angiotensin II. While PKC phosphorylates specific target proteins leading to the regulation of vasoconstriction, IP3 mechanism is also activated allowing the release of calcium and muscle contraction.

Besides the cAMP and PLC pathways, activation of stimulatory G (Gs) proteins can indirectly enhance calcium channel opening via the cAMP pathway and PKA, while inhibitory G (Gi) proteins may reduce calcium channel activity by inhibiting adenylyl cyclase

and cAMP production, or through direct inhibition of calcium channels.

Calcium ions, as a key second messenger, exert their influence through two primary pathways. They can directly regulate enzymatic activities and various cellular functions. Alternatively, they can bind to **calcium-binding proteins**, notably calmodulin, which modulates protein kinases within the cell. This intricate signaling process highlights the remarkable precision and coordination involved in cellular responses to hormones, underscoring the complexity of physiological regulation.

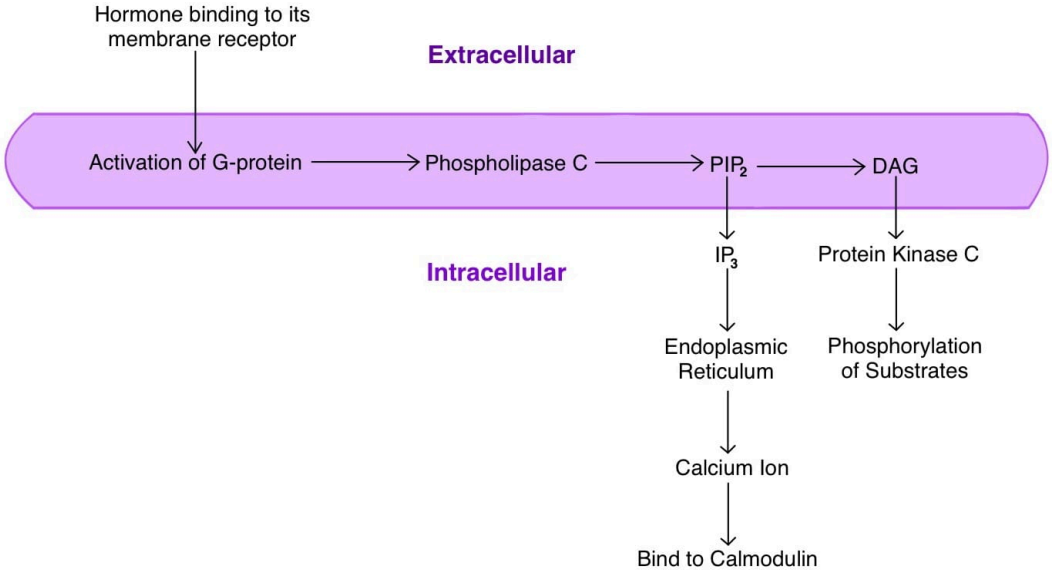


Figure 9 | Membrane Phospholipid Second Messenger System | This figure illustrates the membrane phospholipid second messenger system, highlighting its role in cellular signaling. Upon hormone binding to a specific receptor on the cell membrane, an intracellular signaling cascade is initiated. The activation of phospholipase C (PLC) catalyzes the conversion of phosphatidylinositol bisphosphate (PIP2) into inositol trisphosphate (IP3) and diacylglycerol (DAG). IP3 triggers the release of calcium ions from the endoplasmic reticulum, while DAG remains in the membrane and activates protein kinase C (PKC).

This page titled 7.7: Mechanisms of Hormone Action is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.8: Target Cell Response

Hormones exert their influence not only by delivering messages but also by shaping the receptivity of their target tissues. This dynamic adjustment manifested through alterations in receptor number and affinity, enables the fine-tuning of cellular responses.

Receptor Upregulation

Upregulation signifies a hormone's capacity to enhance the abundance or avidity of its receptors, either for itself or other hormones. For instance, within the ovary, estrogen orchestrates a symphony of receptor upregulation, augmenting its own receptor population and elevating the receptivity of luteinizing hormone (LH) receptors. This harmonious interaction amplifies the ovarian response to hormonal cues.

Receptor Downregulation

Conversely, the downregulation of receptors represents a counterpoint to the symphony of hormonal modulation. Here, hormones curtail the quantity or affinity of their receptors, often in response to prolonged exposure to elevated hormone levels. As an illustrative example, progesterone orchestrates the downregulation of both its receptors and those of estrogen. This strategic modulation preserves the delicacy of hormonal balance.

Hormonal Interactions

Hormones seldom operate in isolation, engaging in complex interactions that sculpt cellular responses. There are three primary modes of interaction:

The **permissive effect** is where the presence of one hormone sets the stage for another hormone's action. For instance, thyroid hormones orchestrate intricate permissive relationships with specific reproductive hormones. A deficiency of iodine, a fundamental thyroid hormone component, can reverberate throughout the reproductive system, impacting its development and functionality.

The **synergistic effect** is when two hormones wielding similar effects collaborate. At times, the presence of both hormones is requisite for a robust response. For example, FSH from the anterior pituitary and ovarian estrogens nurture the maturation of ova.

The **antagonistic effect** is where opposing forces vie for dominance. The interplay of two pancreatic hormones, insulin, and glucagon, serves as an example where insulin takes the lead in glucose storage as glycogen in muscle fibers and hepatocytes, lowering blood glucose levels. In contrast, glucagon stimulates hepatocyte glycogen breakdown and raises blood glucose levels.

This page titled 7.8: Target Cell Response is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion

The complex dynamics of endocrine function can be disrupted by disorders related to hypo- and hypersecretion, upsetting the balance of hormonal regulation. **Primary hyposecretion** occurs when an endocrine gland fails to produce sufficient hormones, impairing vital bodily functions. This issue often arises from intrinsic glandular problems, which hinder hormone production. For example, primary hypothyroidism occurs when the thyroid gland is damaged—commonly due to autoimmune diseases like **Hashimoto's thyroiditis**—leading to decreased thyroid hormone levels. **Secondary hyposecretion** happens when the gland is capable of secreting hormones but is inadequately stimulated by another hormone. For instance, a tumor in the anterior pituitary can interfere with the production of TSH, resulting in decreased thyroid hormone levels.

Primary hypersecretion occurs when an endocrine gland produces excessive amounts of a hormone due to internal issues, disrupting the body's equilibrium. This overproduction originates within the gland itself, leading to elevated hormone levels. **Secondary hypersecretion** arises from external factors affecting the gland, leading to increased hormone levels. This external stimulation can trigger excessive hormone production, resulting in an imbalance.

This page titled 7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion

Maintaining precise control over hormone levels is essential to prevent imbalances and the risk of disease. This regulation relies on a careful balance between hormone production and degradation, with reflex mechanisms playing a key role in monitoring and adjusting hormone levels in response to neural and chemical stimuli. Hormonal reflexes vary in complexity (Figure 10). A simple reflex, such as low blood calcium levels triggering the release of parathyroid hormone (PTH), restores balance efficiently. In contrast, more complex responses involve the hypothalamus releasing or inhibiting hormones, leading to a multi-step process across several endocrine glands, highlighting the intricate nature of hormonal regulation.

The **negative feedback loop** is the foundation of hormonal regulation, marked by its precise suppression of further hormone secretion once a target threshold is reached. This mechanism acts as a vigilant overseer, maintaining hormone levels within a narrow range. For instance, when glucocorticoid hormones are released by the adrenal glands following signals from the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary, the system monitors rising hormone levels. As glucocorticoid concentrations peak in the bloodstream, the hypothalamus and pituitary adjust their signals to the adrenal cortex, halting further hormone release—a prime example of negative feedback regulation.

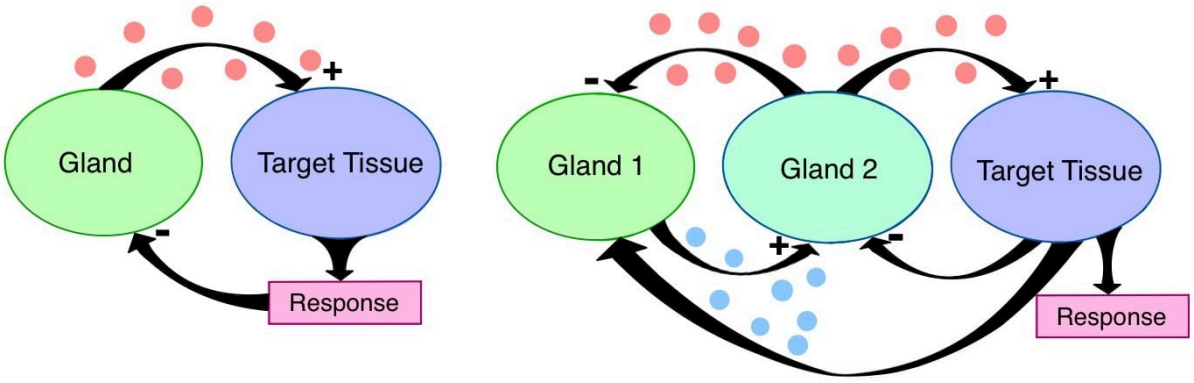


Figure 10 | Regulation of Hormone Secretion | The left panel demonstrates a simple endocrine reflex, where an endocrine gland secretes a hormone that stimulates a target tissue, leading to an effect that triggers negative feedback to suppress further hormone secretion. The right panel illustrates a more complex regulatory system, where one endocrine gland stimulates another gland to release a hormone, which then regulates the effector function. Similar to the simple reflex, the response initiates a negative feedback loop that inhibits further stimulation, ensuring precise hormonal control.

While negative feedback regulation predominates, **positive feedback loops** are rare and characterized by the amplification of hormone release. In this uncommon process, an initial hormone release stimulates further secretion. The release of oxytocin during childbirth exemplifies this mechanism. Oxytocin induces uterine contractions, which push the fetus toward the cervix, activating stretch receptors that signal the posterior pituitary to release more oxytocin, intensifying the contractions. This cycle continues until the birth, after which the feedback loop ceases. Despite their rarity, positive feedback loops, along with other control mechanisms, play crucial roles in maintaining the body's equilibrium.

Response to Humoral and Neural Stimuli

Humoral stimuli refer to changes in the concentration of non-hormonal substances in the blood, such as nutrients or ions, which prompt the release or inhibition of hormones to maintain physiological balance. A prime example involves osmoreceptors in the hypothalamus, which monitor blood osmolarity (the concentration of solutes in plasma). When osmolarity rises above the normal range, indicating dehydration, osmoreceptors signal the hypothalamus to release ADH. ADH instructs the kidneys to reabsorb more water, reducing urine output and restoring blood osmolarity to its proper level. Another example is blood glucose regulation. High glucose levels trigger the pancreas to release insulin, which facilitates cellular glucose uptake and promotes the liver's conversion of glucose into glycogen for storage.

Hormonal release can also occur due to neural stimuli. In response to perceived threats, the sympathetic nervous system activates the adrenal glands, prompting the release of norepinephrine and epinephrine. These hormones cause physiological changes like increased heart and respiratory rates, dilation of blood vessels to skeletal muscles, and suppression of digestive and immune functions, preparing the body for the fight-or-flight response.[6]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Pineal Gland

The pineal gland is situated inferiorly and slightly posterior to the thalamus, a diminutive endocrine organ whose functions remain partially elucidated. This gland is recognized for synthesizing and secreting the amine hormone **melatonin**, derived from serotonin. Melatonin secretion exhibits modulation contingent upon the prevailing environmental light levels. Upon exposure to photons of light, which stimulate the retinas in the eyes, a nerve impulse is dispatched to the **suprachiasmatic nucleus** within the hypothalamus—an integral regulator of biological rhythms. Subsequently, the neural signal proceeds through the spinal cord and culminates in the pineal gland, suppressing melatonin production. Consequently, blood melatonin levels decline, fostering wakefulness. Conversely, during diminishing light conditions, as typically experienced in the evening hours, melatonin production escalates, elevating its levels in the blood and instigating drowsiness. Given its pivotal role in governing the body's innate circadian rhythms, melatonin can be harnessed to induce natural sleep patterns. Hence, melatonin finds utility in managing jet lag and serving as a sleep aid.[31]

This page titled 7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus

Many hormones are secreted within the hypothalamus-pituitary complex, each with distinct roles. Some of these hormones elicit direct responses in target tissues, while others regulate the synthesis and secretion of hormones produced by other glands. Beyond these functions, the hypothalamus-pituitary complex bridges the endocrine and nervous systems, harmonizing their messages. A stimulus initially received by the nervous system must frequently traverse the hypothalamus-pituitary complex to be translated into hormonally-mediated responses.

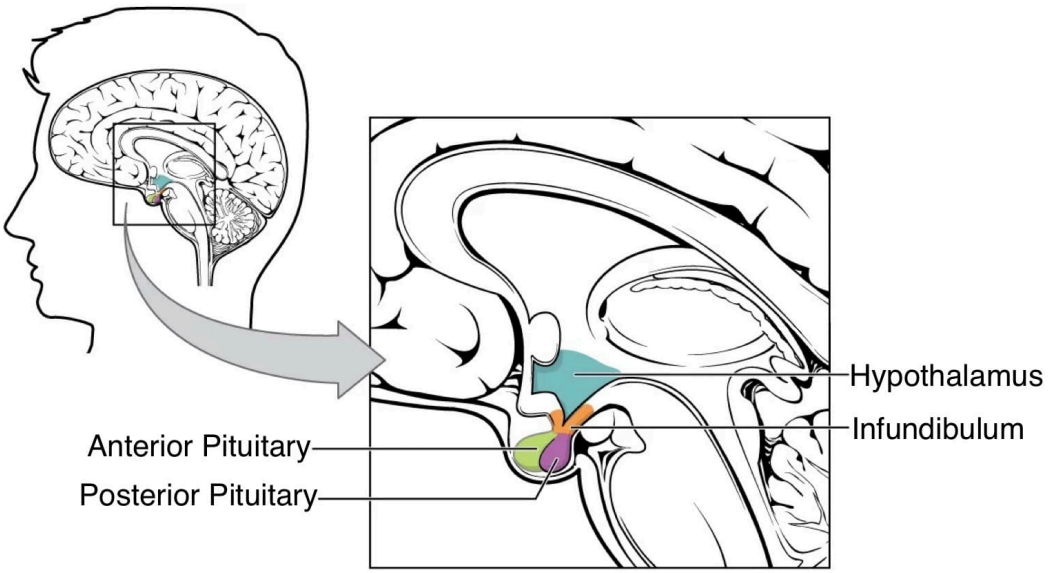


Figure 11 | Hypothalamus–Pituitary Complex | [7] The hypothalamus connects to the pituitary gland by the stalk-like infundibulum. The pituitary gland consists of an anterior and posterior lobe, with each lobe secreting different hormones in response to signals from the hypothalamus.

The hypothalamus is a neuroendocrine structure within the diencephalon, positioned anteriorly and inferiorly to the thalamus (Figure 11). This structure secretes a repertoire of hormones, each playing a role in orchestrating physiological processes. Intriguingly, the hypothalamus maintains a close anatomical and functional relationship with the pituitary gland, often called the **hypophysis**. This gland, resembling a small bean in size, is suspended from the hypothalamus by a slender stalk termed the **infundibulum**, or pituitary stalk. The pituitary gland is snugly cradled within the sella turcica of the sphenoid bone. Embryologically, it derives from two distinct tissue types, giving rise to its two primary lobes: the **posterior pituitary**, also known as the **neurohypophysis**, is composed of neural tissue. In contrast, the **anterior pituitary**, or **adenohypophysis**, is constituted by glandular tissue originating from primitive digestive tract cells. While some species possess an additional **intermediate lobe** within the pituitary, this structure remains underdeveloped in humans.

It is imperative to understand that the posterior pituitary does not synthesize its own hormones but serves as a reservoir for two hypothalamic hormones, ADH or vasopressin and oxytocin. These hormones are stored within the posterior pituitary and are released in response to specific stimuli when required. The following table (Table 5) summarizes the hormones secreted by both the posterior and anterior pituitary.

***Table 5**. Hormones Secreted by the Anterior Pituitary and Stored in the Posterior Pituitary*

Pituitary Lobe	Associated Hormones	Chemical Class	Effect
Anterior	Growth Hormone (GH)	Protein	Promotes growth of body tissues

Pituitary Lobe	Associated Hormones	Chemical Class	Effect
Anterior	Prolactin (PRL)	Peptide	Promotes milk production from mammary glands
Anterior	Thyroid-stimulating Hormone (TSH)	Glycoprotein	Stimulates thyroid hormone release from the thyroid gland
Anterior	Adrenocorticotropic Hormone (ACTH)	Peptide	Stimulates hormone release by the adrenal cortex
Anterior	Follicle-stimulating Hormone (FSH)	Glycoprotein	Stimulates gamete production in gonads
Anterior	Luteinizing Hormone (LH)	Glycoprotein	Stimulates the production of testosterone by the testes and estrogen and progesterone by the ovaries
Posterior	Antidiuretic Hormone (ADH)	Peptide	Stimulates water reabsorption by kidneys and serves as a vasoconstrictor
Posterior	Oxytocin	Peptide	Stimulates uterine contractions during childbirth and the release of milk by the mammary glands during nursing

Posterior Pituitary

The posterior pituitary is an extension of the neuronal networks originating from the **paraventricular** and **supraoptic nuclei** within the hypothalamus, which host the cell bodies of specialized neurons. However, the axons of these neurons take a distinct course, descending as the **hypothalamic-hypophyseal tract** within the infundibulum before culminating in axon terminals that constitute the posterior pituitary (Figure 12). The paraventricular nuclei mostly yield oxytocin, whereas the supraoptic nuclei produce antidiuretic hormone (ADH). Following their synthesis, these hormones traverse along the axons, journeying into specific storage sites within the axon terminals in the posterior pituitary. Upon receiving signals from the same hypothalamic neurons responsible for hormone production, these stored hormones are subsequently released from the axon terminals into the bloodstream.

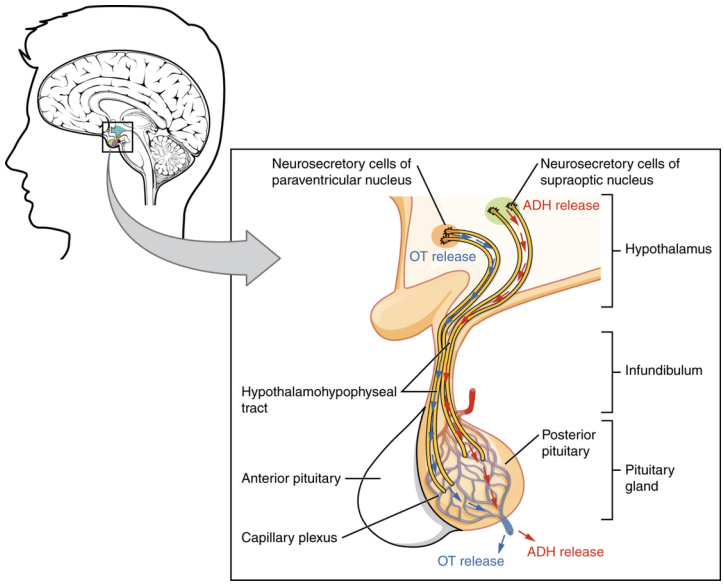


Figure 12 | Posterior Pituitary | [8] Neurosecretory cells located in the supraoptic and paraventricular nuclei of the hypothalamus release oxytocin (OT) or antidiuretic hormone (ADH) into the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland via the hypothalamohypophyseal tract. These hormones are either stored in the posterior pituitary or released into the bloodstream through the capillary plexus.

Oxytocin

At the end of fetal development, the peptide hormone oxytocin, named after the term "tocia," meaning "childbirth," plays a crucial role. It acts as the key driver of uterine contractions and the gradual dilation of the cervix during labor. In the early stages of pregnancy, oxytocin receptors are not prominently expressed in uterine tissues. However, as pregnancy nears its end, there is a significant increase in the expression of these receptors, particularly in the smooth muscle cells of the uterus, making the tissue more responsive to oxytocin.

The process begins with oxytocin triggering uterine contractions, which help position the fetal head toward the cervix. The stretching of the cervix from these contractions activates a feedback mechanism that stimulates the hypothalamus to produce more oxytocin, which is then released from the posterior pituitary. This coordinated sequence enhances the intensity and effectiveness of uterine contractions, further aiding in cervical dilation. This positive feedback loop continues until the moment of birth.

Following childbirth, the mother experiences a decline in her elevated blood oxytocin levels. Nonetheless, oxytocin maintains a pivotal role in the process of milk release. When the newborn initiates suckling, specialized sensory receptors within the nipples become activated, transmitting signals to the hypothalamus. In response to these sensory cues, oxytocin is promptly released into the bloodstream which allows cells within the mother's milk ducts contract, propelling milk into the infant's mouth. This reflex is recognized as the **milk ejection reflex**, commonly referred to as "let-down" in breastfeeding women (Figure 13).

Beyond its role in lactation, oxytocin is implicated in various other physiological processes. Firstly, in both males and females, oxytocin is believed to contribute to the development of the parent-newborn bond, often referred to as attachment. Additionally, oxytocin is considered to play a role in fostering feelings of love and emotional closeness. Furthermore, it is intertwined with the mechanisms underlying the sexual response.

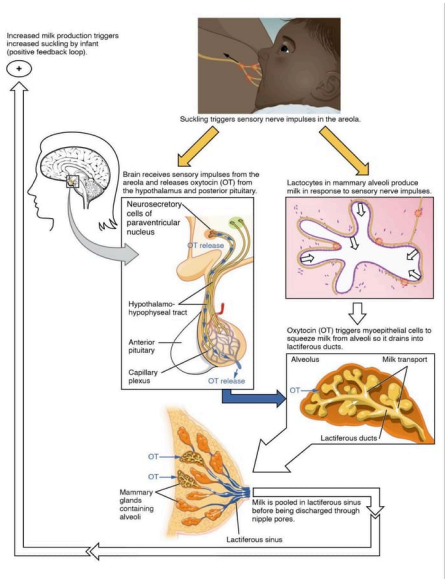


Figure 13 | Milk Let-Down Reflex | [9] This diagram illustrates the physiological process of the milk letdown reflex in lactating women. Upon suckling by the infant, mechanoreceptors in the nipple are stimulated, sending neural signals to the hypothalamus. In response, the hypothalamus releases oxytocin from the posterior pituitary. Oxytocin travels through the bloodstream to the mammary glands, triggering the contraction of myoepithelial cells surrounding the alveoli. This contraction leads to the ejection of milk into the ducts, making it available for the infant.

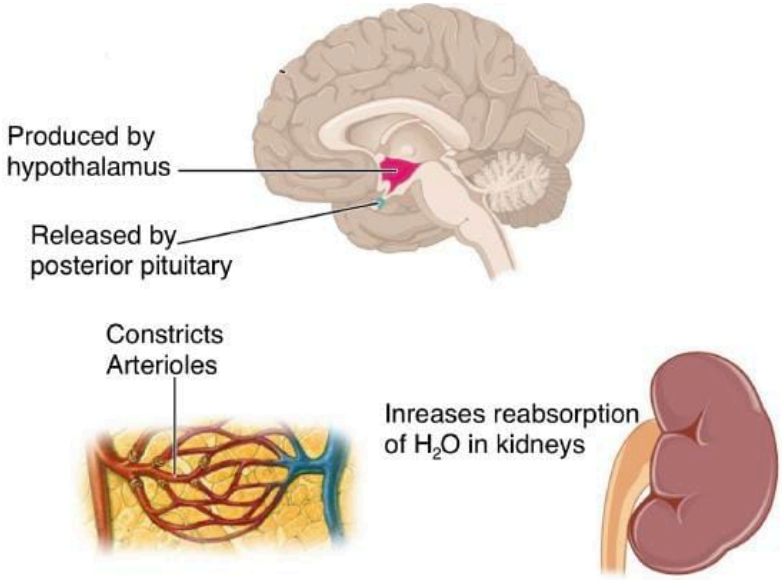


Figure 14 | Antidiuretic Hormone (ADH) | [10]

Antidiuretic Hormone (ADH; Arginine Vasopressin)

The solute concentration of blood is subject to fluctuations due to various factors such as dietary intake, health conditions, medications, and other variables. Specialized cells within the hypothalamus called **osmoreceptors** continuously monitor blood osmolarity, with a particular sensitivity to sodium ions and other solutes. When blood osmolarity rises, which can happen during dehydration or after consuming a highly salty meal, osmoreceptors relay signals to the posterior pituitary to release ADH (Figure 14). The target cells for ADH are located in the tubular cells of the kidneys. The primary effect of ADH is to enhance the permeability of these epithelial cells to water by incorporating aquaporins, thereby facilitating increased water reabsorption. As more water is reabsorbed from the filtrate in the kidneys, more water is returned to the bloodstream, resulting in less water being excreted in the urine. This heightened concentration of water dilutes the concentration of solutes in the blood.

ADH is alternatively referred to as vasopressin because, at very high concentrations, it induces the constriction of blood vessels (Figure 14). This constriction elevates blood pressure by increasing peripheral resistance. The release of ADH is regulated through a negative feedback loop. When blood osmolarity decreases, the osmoreceptors in the hypothalamus detect this change and trigger a corresponding reduction in ADH secretion. Consequently, less water is reabsorbed from the urine filtrate, and the opposite relationship holds true. It is noteworthy that drugs can influence the secretion of ADH. For instance, alcohol consumption inhibits the release of ADH, leading to increased urine production, which can eventually result in dehydration and the commonly experienced hangover.

Hormone Secretion by the Anterior Pituitary

Two distinct classes of hypothalamic hormones regulate the secretion of hormones from the anterior pituitary. These hormones are categorized into **releasing hormones**, which promote the secretion of anterior pituitary hormones, and **inhibiting hormones**, which suppress their release. These hormones are produced by neurons that reach the anterior pituitary through a special set of capillaries (Figure 15). This intricate system, known as the **hypothalamo-hypophyseal portal system**, facilitates the transportation of hypothalamic hormones to the anterior pituitary without initially entering the systemic circulation. Hormones synthesized by the anterior pituitary, in response to these releasing hormones, enter a secondary capillary network before eventually joining the general circulation.

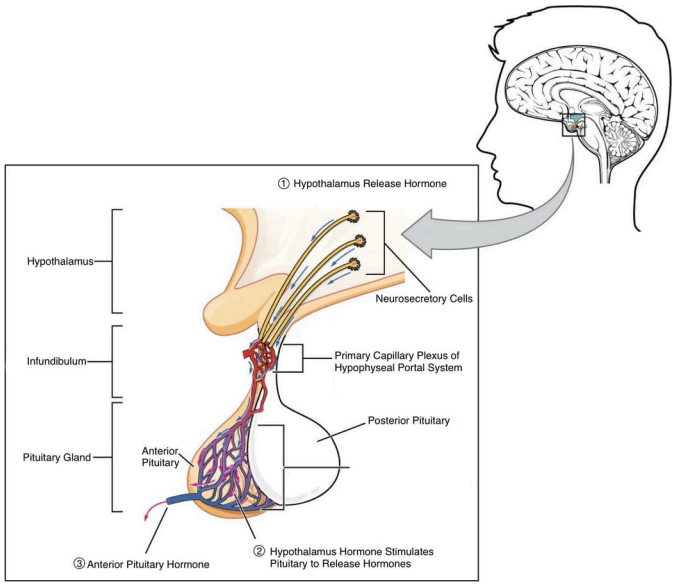


Figure 15 | Hypothalamo-Hypophyseal Portal System | [11] This diagram illustrates the hypothalamo-hypophyseal portal system, which connects the hypothalamus to the anterior pituitary gland. The figure shows the neurosecretory cells in the hypothalamus releasing hormones into the primary capillary plexus of the portal system. These hormones travel through the portal veins to the anterior pituitary, where they regulate the secretion of various tropic hormones.

The anterior pituitary gland is responsible for producing six distinct hormones (Figure 16). These include **growth hormone** (**GH**), **thyroid stimulating hormone** (**TSH**), **adrenocorticotropic hormone** (**ACTH**), **FSH**, **LH**, and **prolactin**. Among these hormones secreted by the anterior pituitary, TSH, ACTH, FSH, and LH are collectively termed **tropic hormones** (trope- = “turning”) as are their primary function is to stimulate other endocrine glands to release yet another set of hormones.

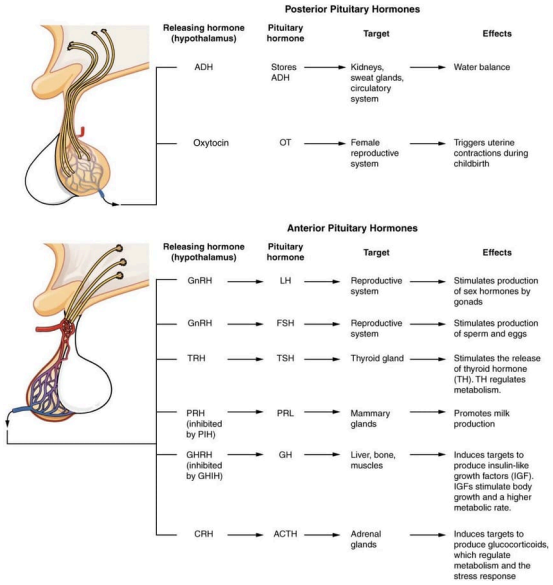


Figure 16 | Anterior and Posterior Pituitary Hormones| [12] This diagram depicts the hormones produced and released by the anterior and posterior lobes of the pituitary gland. The anterior pituitary secretes key hormones, including adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), luteinizing hormone (LH), follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), growth hormone (GH), and prolactin (PRL), which regulate various physiological processes such as metabolism, stress response, and reproductive functions. The posterior pituitary stores and releases hormones produced in the hypothalamus, including oxytocin, which is involved in childbirth and lactation, and antidiuretic hormone (ADH), which regulates water balance in the body.

Growth Hormone

The endocrine system plays a vital role in regulating human growth, protein synthesis, and cellular replication. GH, also known as **somatotropin**, is a key hormone involved in these processes. GH is a protein hormone produced and secreted by the anterior pituitary gland. Its principal function is anabolic, which promotes protein synthesis and tissue growth through direct and indirect mechanisms (Figure 17). The levels of GH in the body are controlled by the **growth hormone-releasing hormone** (**GHRH**) and **growth hormone-inhibiting hormone** (**GHIH**), also known as **somatostatin**, both released by the hypothalamus.

GH has a glucose-sparing effect, which occurs when it stimulates lipolysis, the breakdown of lipids from adipose tissue. This process releases fatty acids into the bloodstream, leading many tissues to shift from using glucose as their primary energy source to utilizing fatty acids, thereby conserving glucose. GH also has a diabetogenic effect, prompting hepatocytes (liver cells) to break down glycogen into glucose, releasing it into the bloodstream. The term "diabetogenic" is used because GH excess can result in elevated blood glucose levels, similar to those seen in untreated diabetes mellitus. The rise in blood glucose levels results from both the glucose-sparing and diabetogenic effects of GH. Moreover, GH indirectly influences growth and protein synthesis by stimulating the liver and other tissues to produce a group of proteins called **insulin-like growth factors** (**IGFs**; Figure 17). These IGFs are crucial in promoting cellular proliferation while inhibiting apoptosis. IGFs also enhance the uptake of amino acids from the blood by cells, particularly affecting skeletal muscle and cartilage cells, thereby facilitating protein synthesis.

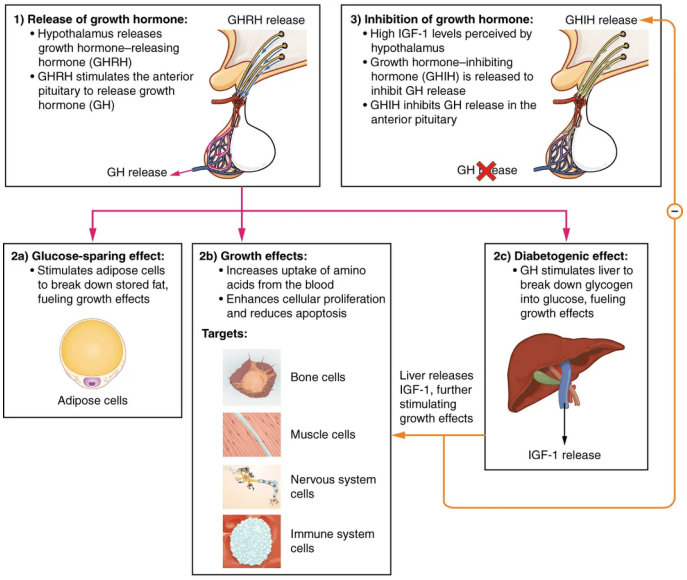


Figure 17 | Regulation of Growth Hormone Secretion | [13] This figure illustrates the hormonal regulation of growth hormone (GH) by the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary gland. Growth hormone-releasing hormone (GHRH) from the hypothalamus stimulates the anterior pituitary to release GH into the bloodstream. Conversely, growth hormone inhibiting hormone (GHIH), also secreted by the hypothalamus, inhibits GH release. GH exerts its effects on tissues such as the liver, where it promotes the production of insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1), which mediates many of GH's growth-promoting effects. It promotes growth, stimulates adipose cells to break down stored fat, and liver to break down glycogen to glucose. The figure also shows the negative feedback loop, where increased levels of IGF-1 inhibit both GHRH secretion and GH release while enhancing GHIH release, ensuring balanced growth regulation.

Prolactin

As its name suggests, prolactin is pivotal in promoting lactation or milk production in women. Throughout pregnancy, it actively contributes to the development of mammary glands. After childbirth, prolactin stimulates mammary glands to produce breast milk. In women who are not pregnant, prolactin secretion is held in check by **prolactin-inhibiting hormone** (**PIH**), which interestingly is dopamine—a neurotransmitter released by neurons in the hypothalamus. Prolactin levels rise only during pregnancy in response to **prolactin-releasing hormone** (**PRH**) released from the hypothalamus.

Thyroid Stimulating Hormone

The thyroid gland activity is regulated by a hormone known as TSH or **thyrotropin**. TSH is discharged from the anterior pituitary gland in response to the influence of **thyrotropin-releasing hormone** (**TRH**) from the hypothalamus. True to its name, TSH is responsible for initiating the secretion of thyroid hormones. This process operates within a classic negative feedback loop. When the bloodstream contains elevated levels of thyroid hormones, it signals a reduction in the production of TRH, consequently leading to a decrease in TSH production. Conversely, thyroid hormone levels dipping below the normal range increases TSH production.

Adrenocorticotropic Hormone

ACTH, or corticotropin, is a potent stimulator for the adrenal cortex, prompting the secretion of corticosteroid hormones, primarily cortisol. ACTH originates from a precursor molecule called **pro-opiomelanotropin** (**POMC**), which, upon cleavage, yields various biologically active molecules. These include ACTH, melanocyte-stimulating hormone, and the brain opioid peptides recognized as endorphins.The release of ACTH is regulated by **corticotropin releasing hormone** (**CRH**) produced by the hypothalamus, in response to the body's normal physiological rhythms.

Follicle-Stimulating Hormone and Luteinizing Hormone

The endocrine system plays a pivotal role in orchestrating the development and maintenance of the reproductive system. Several key endocrine glands, including the anterior pituitary, adrenal cortex, and gonads (testes in males and ovaries in females), contribute to this intricate regulation.

Puberty marks a critical phase in reproductive system development when sex-specific characteristics emerge in adolescents. This process is initiated by the **gonadotropin releasing hormone** (**GnRH**), which is synthesized and released by the hypothalamus. GnRH acts on the anterior pituitary, stimulating the secretion of **gonadotropins**, essential hormones governing gonadal function. A negative feedback loop regulates GnRH levels. Elevated reproductive hormone levels suppress GnRH release, while decreased hormone levels trigger increased GnRH production. This feedback mechanism ensures the delicate control of reproductive hormone levels throughout life.

Gonadotropins comprise two glycoprotein hormones, FSH and LH. FSH promotes the production and maturation of gametes (ova in females and sperm in males). In females, FSH supports follicular growth, leading to the secretion of estrogen within the ovaries. LH plays a vital role in ovulation in females. It also stimulates the production of estrogen and progesterone by the ovaries and testosterone production by the testes. Under the control of GnRH and feedback regulation, these gonadotropins govern the development, function, and cyclical events of the reproductive system, ensuring the regulation of reproductive capacity throughout life.[14]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.12: The Thyroid Gland

The thyroid gland, a bilobed, butterfly-shaped organ, resides in the anterior region of the neck, positioned just below the larynx and anterior to the trachea (Figure 18). The **isthmus**, a central connecting portion, joins the left and right lobes, resembling wings. The predominant structural units within the thyroid gland are **thyroid follicles**. These follicles exhibit a central lumen filled with a syrupy substance termed **colloid**. Encircling the colloid-filled central cavity are epithelial follicle cells. This intricate arrangement plays a significant role in the production of thyroid hormones. Colloid, the viscous substance within the thyroid follicles, serves as the focal point for synthesizing thyroid hormones. Notably, the process of thyroid hormone production is contingent upon the presence of a vital and distinctive constituent, iodine.

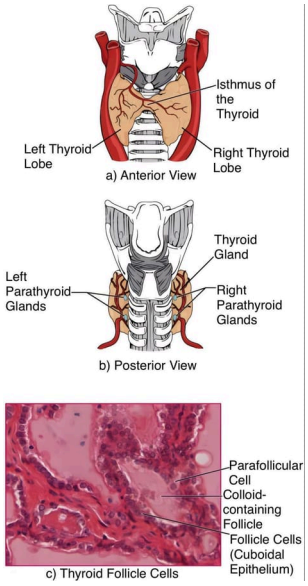


Figure 18 | Structure of the Thyroid Gland | [15] a) Anterior view of the thyroid gland, showing its location at the front of the neck, wrapped around the trachea, and consisting of two lobes connected by the isthmus. (b) Posterior view of the thyroid gland, highlighting the parathyroid glands, which are embedded in the posterior surface. (c) A cross-sectional view of the thyroid gland, illustrating the internal structure of thyroid follicles. These follicles are spherical units filled with colloid, responsible for the production and storage of thyroid hormones. The surrounding follicular cells produce thyroxine (T4) and triiodothyronine (T3), which regulate metabolism.

Synthesis and Release of Thyroid Hormones

Within the colloid, thyroid hormones are synthesized through a complex sequence of biochemical reactions involving iodine and **thyroglobulin**, a glycoprotein secreted into the colloid by follicular cells (see Figure 19). The subsequent steps outline the production of thyroid hormones:

1. **Iodide Transport via Sodium-Iodide Cotransport:** Dietary iodine is initially carried in the bloodstream as **iodide**, a less reactive form. Upon binding of TSH to its receptors on the thyroid follicular cells, an active transport process is initiated. This process, facilitated by the **sodium-iodide cotransporter** (**NIS**), allows the movement of iodide from the bloodstream into the cytosol of follicular cells. Consequently, iodide concentration within the follicular cells becomes significantly higher than in the bloodstream. Iodide enters the follicular lumen from the cytoplasm by the transporter **pendrin**.
2. **Iodination and Thyroglobulin Synthesis:** Within the luminal region of follicular cells adjacent to the colloid, iodide undergoes oxidation through the enzymatic action of **peroxidase**. This oxidation process involves the removal of negatively charged electrons from two iodide ions, yielding iodine, which then traverses the follicular cell membrane and enters the colloid. Concurrently, the endoplasmic reticulum within the follicular cells synthesizes thyroglobulin, a high-molecular-weight glycoprotein.
3. **Organification of Iodine and Coupling of Monoiodotyrosine (MIT) and Diiodotyrosine (DIT):** Within the colloid, the peroxidase enzyme catalyzes the binding of iodine to tyrosine residues within thyroglobulin, resulting in two key

intermediaries: monoiodotyrosine (MIT) and diiodotyrosine (DIT). MIT comprises a single tyrosine attached to one iodine, while DIT features a tyrosine linked to two iodine atoms. Covalent bonds unite one MIT and one DIT molecule, yielding **triiodothyronine** (**T3**), a thyroid hormone containing three iodine atoms. More commonly, two DIT molecules combine through covalent bonding to form **thyroxine** (**T4**), another thyroid hormone housing four iodine atoms. These synthesized hormones remain within the colloid until the release of TSH prompts endocytosis, leading to the internalization of the colloid back into the follicular cells. Subsequently, lysosomal enzymes facilitate the proteolysis of thyroglobulin, liberating free T3 and T4. These free thyroid hormones diffuse across the follicular cell membrane and enter the bloodstream. Any residual MIT and DIT molecules are deiodinated by **thyroid deiodinase**, releasing iodine that can be reused to synthesize additional thyroid hormones. A variant called **reverse T3** (**rT3**), which differs from T3 in iodine positioning, is synthesized in small quantities within the thyroid gland. While T3 is biologically active, rT3 is not. Elevated rT3 levels may be observed in fetal development, chronic illness, and during periods of starvation.

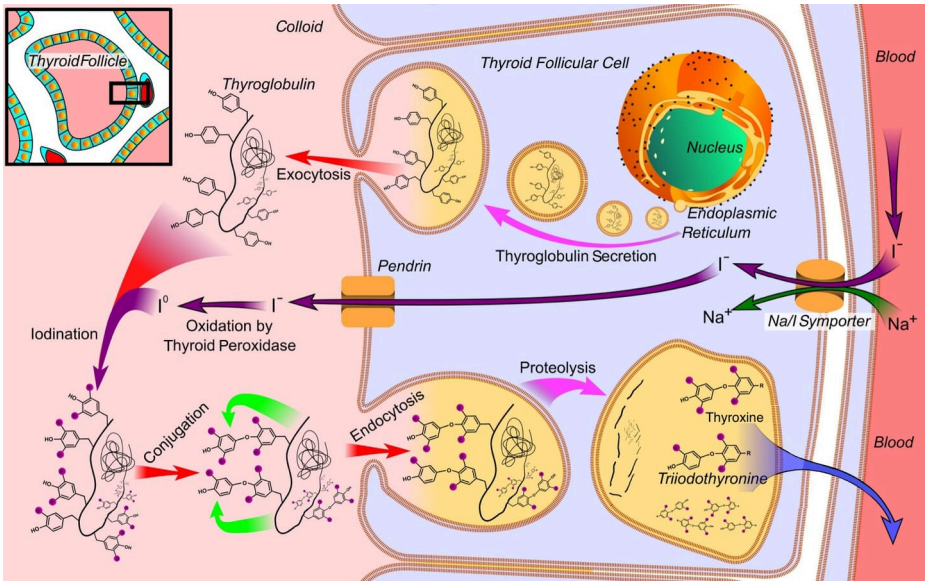


Figure 19 | Thyroid Hormone Synthesis | [16] Thyroglobulin is synthesized in the rough endoplasmic reticulum and follows the secretory pathway to enter the colloid in the lumen of the thyroid follicle by exocytosis. Meanwhile, a sodium-iodide (Na/I) symporter pumps iodide (I-) actively into the cell. Iodide enters the follicular lumen from the cytoplasm by the transporter pendrin. In the colloid, iodide (I-) is oxidized to iodine (I0) by an enzyme called thyroid peroxidase. I0 is very reactive and iodinates the thyroglobulin at tyrosyl residues in its protein chain (in total containing approximately 120 tyrosyl residues). In *conjugation*, adjacent tyrosyl residues are paired together. The entire complex re-enters the follicular cell by endocytosis. Proteolysis by various proteases liberates thyroxine and triiodothyronine molecules into the blood.

Approximately 99 percent of circulating T3 and T4 in the bloodstream is bound to specialized transport proteins such as thyroxine-binding globulins (TBG), albumin, or other plasma proteins. This binding mechanism serves as a means of containment, preventing their unrestricted diffusion into body cells. When blood levels of T3 and T4 decline, the bound T3 and T4 molecules are released from these plasma proteins. These liberated hormones can efficiently traverse the cell membrane of target cells. Less than one percent of the circulating T3 and T4 remains unbound. This fraction of free T3 and T4 can permeate the lipid bilayer of cell membranes, allowing uptake by cells. T3 is more potent than T4, and in many cases, cells convert T4 to T3 by removing an iodine atom—a process known as **monodeiodination**. Metabolism of T4 can yield either T3 or reverse T3 (rT3). Approximately 80 percent of T3 arises from the deiodination of T4, while the remaining 20 percent is synthesized within the thyroid gland. The half-life of T3 is around 24 to 30 hours.[17]

Regulation of Thyroid Hormone Secretion

As depicted in Figure 20 within the context of thyroid hormone regulation, when blood concentrations of T3 and T4 are low, it prompts the hypothalamus to release TRH. TRH, in turn, stimulates the anterior pituitary gland to secrete TSH. Subsequently, TSH acts on the thyroid gland, prompting it to release T3 and T4, the two primary thyroid hormones. A negative feedback system comes into play to maintain the balance of these hormones. Elevated levels of T3 and T4 in the bloodstream signal a reduction in the production and secretion of TRH and TSH. This negative feedback loop helps regulate the levels of TRH, TSH, T3, and T4, ensuring they remain within a narrow range. The regulatory mechanisms involved in this process are intricate. TRH employs the IP3 and DAG second-messenger pathways to transmit its signal, whereas TSH enhances the production of cAMP in the follicular cells of the thyroid gland to exert its effects. While day-to-day regulation of thyroid hormone levels is achieved through

the negative feedback control loop between the thyroid gland and anterior pituitary gland, the hypothalamus plays a pivotal role in the long-term regulation of thyroid hormone secretion.

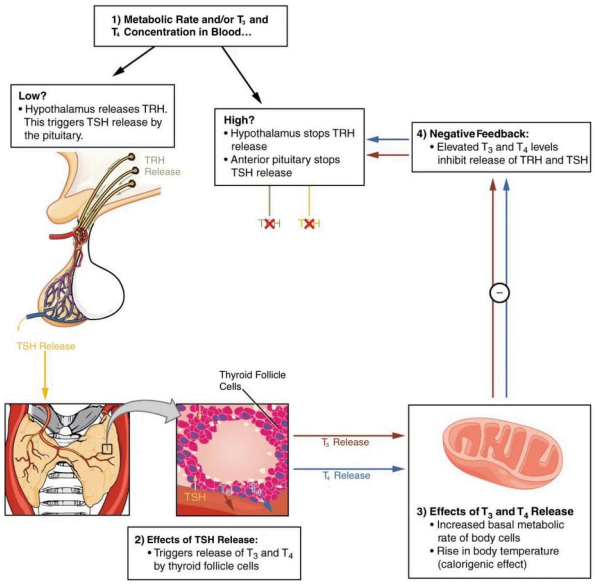


Figure 20 | Regulation of Thyroid Hormone Secretion | [18] This figure illustrates the feedback loop regulation of thyroid hormone secretion. The hypothalamus secretes thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH), which stimulates the anterior pituitary to release thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH). TSH then acts on the thyroid gland, promoting the synthesis and release of thyroid hormones (T3 and T4). Elevated levels of T3 and T4 in the bloodstream inhibit the release of TRH and TSH through a negative feedback mechanism, maintaining hormone levels within a normal range. Thyroid hormones increase basal metabolic rate including raising body temperature.

Functions of Thyroid Hormones

Sufficient levels of thyroid hormones play a crucial role in various physiological processes, making them indispensable for overall health. Their significance extends to multiple aspects of development, growth, and bodily functions. The thyroid hormones T3 and T4 are frequently referred to as metabolic hormones due to their significant influence on the body's basal metabolic rate, which is the energy the body expends at rest. These hormones exert their effects by binding to intracellular receptors on the mitochondria, the cellular organelles responsible for energy production. Upon binding, T3 and T4 instigate a series of metabolic processes with several noteworthy outcomes, which can be summarized as **calorigenesis**. Calorigenesis encompasses a set of metabolic responses, including an increase in the number and activity of mitochondria, heightened production of ATP and heat, augmented blood flow to the skin, elevated heart rate, increased cardiac output, enhanced minute ventilation, boosted protein synthesis, and alterations in carbohydrate and fat metabolism. Importantly, these effects of calorigenesis are not limited to specific cell types; they impact all cells throughout the body, given that mitochondria and the cellular processes influenced by T3 and T4 are ubiquitous. The collective impact of T3 and T4 on cellular metabolism and heat production regulates the body's overall energy expenditure and temperature control.

Adequate thyroid hormone levels are essential for protein synthesis and the development of tissues, particularly during fetal and childhood growth. They are critical for normal nervous system maturation in both prenatal and early childhood stages. Additionally, thyroid hormones continue to support neurological function in adults. T3 and T4 have intricate interactions with reproductive hormones. Deficiencies can affect libido, fertility, and various aspects of reproductive function. Thyroid hormones enhance the body's sensitivity to catecholamines, such as epinephrine and norepinephrine, released from the adrenal medulla. This effect is achieved by up-regulating receptors in blood vessels. Excessive levels of T3 and T4 can accelerate heart rate, strengthen heart contractions, and increase blood pressure.

Dietary iodine deficiency can impair the synthesis of T3 and T4, leading to **hypothyroidism** and various severe disorders. When the production of T3 and T4 is compromised, the body responds by secreting increasing amounts of TSH. This hyperstimulation results in the accumulation of thyroglobulin in the thyroid follicles, increasing colloid deposits. This accumulation enlarges the thyroid gland, a condition called **goiter** (Figure 21). Importantly, a goiter is a visible manifestation of iodine deficiency, which can have additional adverse effects, including impaired growth and development, reduced fertility, and complications during prenatal and infant stages. Notably, iodine deficiency is a leading cause of preventable mental retardation worldwide.

Neonatal hypothyroidism, or **cretinism**, is characterized by cognitive deficits, short stature, and sometimes deafness and muteness. It affects children and adults born to mothers who experience iodine deficiency during pregnancy. In regions with access to iodized salt, dietary deficiency is rare. Instead, thyroid gland inflammation is a more common cause of hypothyroidism.



Figure 21 | Goiter | [19] This figure shows a visible enlargement of the thyroid gland, known as goiter, in the neck region. Goiter can result from iodine deficiency, leading to decreased production of thyroid hormones (T3 and T4), which prompts increased secretion of thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) from the pituitary gland. The excessive stimulation of the thyroid causes its enlargement. Goiter may also occur due to hyperthyroidism.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Regulation of Calcium Ions in the Blood

Calcium ion is vital in numerous physiological processes, particularly muscle contraction, nerve impulse transmission, blood clotting, and endocrine secretion. Understanding calcium ion distribution and regulation is crucial for comprehending its profound impact on bodily functions.

The adult human body contains a substantial reservoir of calcium, totaling between 1 to 2 kilograms. Remarkably, nearly 99% of this calcium resides within the skeletal system, providing structural support and acting as a mineral reservoir. The remaining 1% is dispersed in the extracellular space and soft tissues, where it exerts its physiological effects. Intriguingly, intracellular calcium levels are astonishingly lower, approximately 10,000 times lower, compared to the concentration of ionized calcium in the extracellular fluid. This vast difference highlights the stringent regulation of calcium within cellular compartments to maintain cellular functions and signaling.

Calcium within the bloodstream predominantly exists in three distinct forms, each with unique characteristics. Approximately 9% of serum calcium is found in the nonionized, chelated form, bound to bicarbonate and phosphate ions. Calcium in this state is unavailable for physiological processes. About 41% of total serum calcium is in the protein-bound form**,** where calcium forms complexes with plasma proteins. In this nonionized and nondiffusible state, it is inaccessible to tissues. Approximately 50% of serum calcium exists in the ionized and diffusible form, which is a physiologically active state. Ionized calcium is free, can diffuse

through biological membranes, and directly contributes to various physiological effects. Consequently, measurements of ionized calcium levels offer the most clinically relevant information. Ionized calcium serves as a second messenger in numerous cellular signaling pathways. Given its critical roles, the endocrine system tightly regulates blood calcium ion levels.

The regulation of the diffusible ionized fraction of calcium ions within the blood hinges on three key hormones: calcitonin, PTH, and vitamin D. Understanding the regulatory mechanisms involving these hormones further illuminates the complexities of calcium homeostasis in the human body.[20]

Calcitonin

The follicles of the thyroid gland house **parafollicular cells**, commonly known as **C cells**. These specialized cells are crucial for calcium homeostasis by secreting the polypeptide hormone **calcitonin**. When blood calcium levels rise, parafollicular cells respond by releasing calcitonin into the bloodstream. Calcitonin primarily functions to lower blood calcium concentrations. It inhibits the activity of osteoclasts, which are responsible for bone resorption. Calcitonin binds to calcitonin receptors located on the surface of osteoclasts. Calcitonin activates intracellular signaling pathways upon binding to G-protein receptors and increasing intracellular cAMP levels. Elevated cAMP levels activate PKA, which inhibits osteoclast activity through several mechanisms. 1) interferes with the attachment of osteoclasts to bone surfaces, impairing their ability to resorb bone; 2) reduces the secretion of acid, further contributing to decreased bone resorption; 3) induction of apoptosis in osteoclasts decreasing their numbers. Thus, by dampening osteoclast activity, calcitonin helps prevent the excessive release of calcium ions from bones. Additionally, calcitonin inhibits the reabsorption of calcium and phosphate ions within renal tubular cells. This action facilitates the excretion of these ions in urine, further contributing to the reduction of blood calcium levels.

Pharmaceutical preparations of calcitonin are occasionally prescribed for therapeutic purposes, such as in the management of osteoporosis and osteoarthritis. Calcitonin is administered to individuals with osteoporosis to reduce the activity of osteoclasts, thereby helping to mitigate bone loss and maintain bone density. In cases of osteoarthritis, calcitonin is used to curb cartilage degradation, offering relief and potential disease management. [21]

Table 6 provides an overview of the various hormones secreted by the thyroid gland, including calcitonin's role in calcium homeostasis.

Table 6. *Thyroid Hormones, their chemical characteristics and their major functions*

Associated Hormone	Chemical Class	Effect
Thyroxine (T4) and Triiodothyronine (T3)	Amine	Stimulate basal metabolic rate which affects growth, maturation and normal functioning of all body systems
Calcitonin	Peptide	Reduces blood calcium levels

This page titled 7.12: The Thyroid Gland is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.13: The Parathyroid Glands

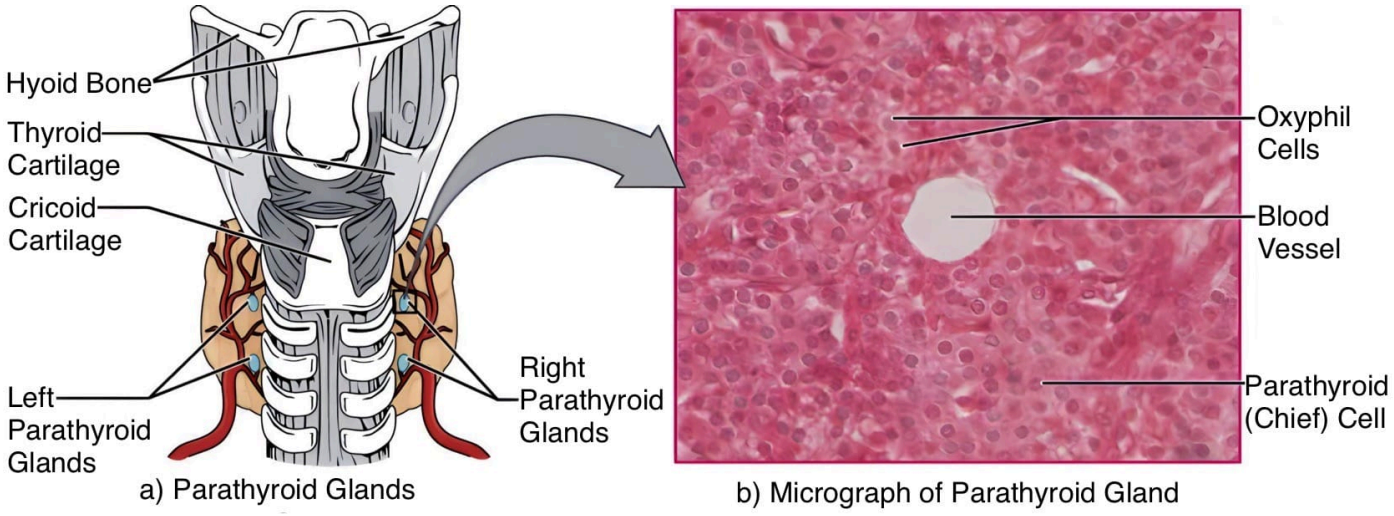


Figure 22 | Parathyroid Glands | [22] This figure illustrates the anatomical location and histological features of the parathyroid glands. The parathyroid glands are typically situated on the posterior surface of the thyroid gland, with four glands commonly found (two on each side). Histologically, the parathyroid glands are composed of two main cell types: chief cells and oxyphil cells. Chief cells, which are smaller and more numerous, are responsible for producing parathyroid hormone (PTH), essential for calcium regulation. Oxyphil cells, larger and less abundant, are thought to play a role in the aging process of the glands.

The parathyroid glands, petite, circular structures nestled within the connective tissue enveloping the posterior aspect of the thyroid gland (Figure 22), play a pivotal role in the intricate regulation of calcium levels within the body. While typically four parathyroid glands are present, exceptions with additional glands within the neck or chest tissue may occur. Although closely associated with the thyroid gland, parathyroid glands maintain a degree of separation through a robust connective tissue capsule. These glands comprise **chief cells** as their primary functional units. Within these epithelial cells, an 84-amino acid-containing polypeptide hormone, PTH, also known as **parathormone**, is synthesized and secreted. PTH takes center stage as the principal hormone orchestrating the control of blood calcium ion concentrations. It initiates a gradual release of calcium ions from bones by stimulating osteoclasts. The effect of PTH on osteoclast is indirect. PTH affects osteoclasts by stimulating osteoblasts to secrete RANKL, which promotes osteoclast differentiation. PTH facilitates the increased reabsorption of calcium (and magnesium) ions within the renal tubules, ensuring these ions are retained within the body. It prompts increased phosphate excretion at the renal tubules to prevent the utilization of calcium ions in bone matrix deposition. PTH initiates the production of **calcitriol**, also known as **1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D**, the active form of vitamin D3. Calcitriol stimulates heightened absorption of dietary calcium and phosphate ions by the intestines. Additionally, PTH generally increases the expression of calcium-binding proteins, especially in tissues like the kidneys and intestines, to enhance calcium absorption and retention.

A sophisticated negative feedback mechanism finetunes PTH levels. As blood calcium ion concentrations rise, they exert an inhibitory effect on further PTH release (Figure 23). Conversely, low levels of magnesium ions can stimulate PTH secretion. However, it is noteworthy that chronic hypomagnesemia may impair the parathyroid gland's proper function, potentially leading to hypocalcemia in severely hypomagnesiemic individuals.

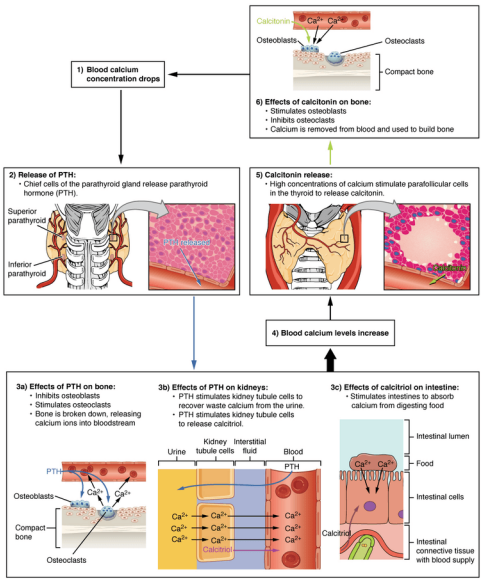


Figure 23 | The Interplay of Calcitonin and Parathyroid Hormone in Maintaining Blood Ca_2^+ Homeostasis | [23] This figure depicts the role of parathyroid hormone (PTH) in regulating blood calcium levels. PTH, produced by the chief cells of the parathyroid glands, is released in response to low blood calcium concentrations. The figure illustrates three primary mechanisms through which PTH maintains calcium homeostasis: PTH stimulates osteoclast activity, promoting the release of calcium from bones into the bloodstream, enhances renal tubular reabsorption of calcium, reducing urinary calcium excretion and ensuring more calcium is retained in the body, and indirectly increases intestinal calcium absorption by stimulating the conversion of vitamin D to its active form, calcitriol. This figure also summarizes the role of calcitonin in regulating blood calcium levels. Its main effect is to inhibit the action of osteoclasts.

This page titled 7.13: The Parathyroid Glands is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.14: Vitamin D (1,25-Dihydrocholecalciferol)

Vitamin D, under the influence of PTH, is derived from two primary sources as a crucial regulator of calcium balance within the body. One source is dietary intake, where vitamin D is absorbed through the small intestine. The second source involves the synthesis of vitamin D within the body, facilitated by exposure to ultraviolet radiation from sunlight. Sunlight triggers the conversion of **7-dehydrocholesterol** in the skin to **cholecalciferol**, which subsequently transforms into **25-hydroxycholecalciferol** in the liver, catalyzed by **25-hydroxylase**. To activate vitamin D fully, it must undergo a hydroxylation reaction in the kidney. Specifically, a hydroxyl group (-OH) is added to 25-hydroxycholecalciferol, facilitated by **1α-hydroxylase**, resulting in the formation of **calcitriol**, also known as **1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol** (Figure 24).

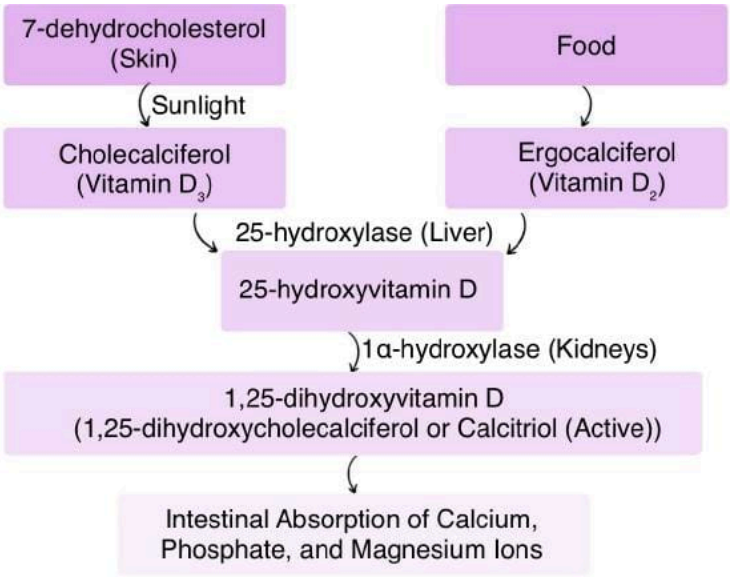


Figure 24 | Synthesis of Vitamin D | This figure illustrates the biochemical pathway for the synthesis of vitamin D, highlighting the key steps involved in its production. The process begins with the conversion of 7-dehydrocholesterol, found in the skin, to previtamin D_3 upon exposure to ultraviolet (UV) radiation from sunlight. Previtamin D_3 is then thermally isomerized to vitamin D_3 (cholecalciferol). Subsequently, vitamin D_3 is transported to the liver, where it undergoes hydroxylation by the enzyme 25-hydroxylase, resulting in the formation of 25-hydroxyvitamin D_3. This intermediate is then converted to its active form, 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D_3 (calcitriol), in the kidneys through further hydroxylation, primarily regulated by parathyroid hormone (PTH) and blood calcium levels.[24]

PTH, secreted by the parathyroid glands, is central in regulating vitamin D activity. PTH stimulates the conversion of 25-hydroxycholecalciferol to its active form, 1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol, by activating 1α-hydroxylase. Activated vitamin D, in turn, profoundly affects calcium and phosphate homeostasis. It enhances the absorption of calcium ions and phosphate in the digestive tract, promotes their reabsorption in the kidney, and contributes to the maintenance of normal serum concentrations of calcium and phosphate ions.

Abnormal parathyroid gland activity can lead to significant health consequences. **Hyperparathyroidism**, resulting from an overproduction of PTH, leads to excessive calcium ion reabsorption from bones, often causing a decrease in bone density, resulting in spontaneous fractures or deformities. Elevated blood calcium levels lead to reduced cell membrane permeability to sodium ions and diminished nervous system responsiveness. Calcium ion deposits may accumulate in various tissues and organs, impairing their normal functioning. In response to high blood calcium levels, the parafollicular cells of the thyroid gland secrete calcitonin, which inhibits osteoclast activity, reduces dietary calcium ion absorption in the intestine, and prompts the kidneys to excrete large amounts of calcium ions in the urine. Conversely, abnormally low blood calcium ion levels stemming from a deficiency of PTH (**hypoparathyroidism**) can result from thyroid gland-related injuries or surgeries. Inadequate calcium levels are associated with conditions such as osteoporosis and osteomalacia in adults and rickets in children. These deficits can also impair cell proliferation, neuromuscular function, blood clotting, and the inflammatory response. Vitamin D receptors are found in nearly all body cells, underscoring the systemic importance of vitamin D. Profoundly low blood calcium levels can increase membrane permeability to sodium ions, leading to muscle twitching, cramps, spasms, or convulsions. In severe cases, muscle paralysis, including respiratory muscles, can occur, posing a life-threatening risk.[25]

RANK Ligand Osteoprotegerin System

The **RANK ligand-osteoprotegerin** (**RANKL/OPG**) system plays a central role in regulating bone resorption and formation. Controlled by PTH and estrogen, this system is essential for maintaining the balance of bone remodeling, a vital process for preserving skeletal health and integrity.

PTH indirectly regulates osteoclast activity by activating osteoblasts, which act as intermediaries in this intricate process. Within osteoblasts resides the key duo: RANKL (RANK ligand) and OPG (osteoprotegerin). PTH serves as the catalyst, prompting osteoblasts to synthesize RANKL. The RANKL thus produced binds to its receptor, RANK, situated on osteoclast precursors, setting off a cascade of events. This interaction triggers the fusion, differentiation, and activation of these precursors, culminating in the formation of mature, multinucleated osteoclasts. The binding of RANKL to its receptor, RANK, is paramount in the genesis, function, and persistence of osteoclasts. As osteoclasts approach bone surfaces, their membrane adheres firmly to the bone, transforming into a ruffled membrane. From this specialized membrane, enzymes and hydrochloric acid are secreted, initiating the dissolution of the bone matrix. Approximately one to two weeks into this resorption phase, OPG, a natural antagonist of RANKL expressed by neighboring osteoblasts, intervenes. OPG inhibits the binding of RANKL to RANK, effectively deactivating osteoclasts.

Osteoblasts come into play as they migrate to the resorption cavity within the bone, filling the pit with fresh bone matrix. Some osteoblasts become embedded within the matrix, transforming into osteocytes responsible for preserving the bone matrix. Others align along the inner layer of the bone surface. Over time, the newly formed bone matrix mineralizes, and the bone returns to rest, ready for subsequent remodeling.

Estrogen plays a significant role in modulating the RANKL/OPG system. It curbs the expression of RANKL while fostering the expression of OPG. In postmenopausal women, diminished estrogen levels upset this delicate balance. This hormonal shift leads to heightened RANKL expression, an increased population of osteoclasts, and elevated levels of bone resorption. Although osteoblasts persist in depositing new bone matrix, their deposition rate lags behind the bone removal pace. Over time, this imbalance may result in bone thinning and weakening, increasing the risk of fractures.[26]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 7.14: Vitamin D (1,25-Dihydrocholecalciferol) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.15: Adrenal Glands

Positioned above the kidneys and encased in a fibrous protective layer, the adrenal glands play a vital role in regulating physiological balance and managing the body's response to stress. Known for their abundant blood supply, these glands receive some of the highest rates of blood flow in the human body, reflecting their essential function in endocrine regulation. The adrenal glands act as watchful guardians, managing the delicate balance of everyday life and the challenges of stress, while playing a crucial role in the body's overall mission to maintain homeostasis.

Each adrenal gland consists of an outer cortex rich in glandular tissue and an inner medulla composed of neuroendocrine tissue (Figure 25). Further division of the cortex reveals three distinct zones, the **zona glomerulosa**, the **zona fasciculata**, and the **zona reticularis**. Each of these zones orchestrates the secretion of its unique array of hormones. Functioning as an integral component of the **hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal** (**HPA**) **axis**, the adrenal cortex plays a pivotal role in governing long-term stress responses, blood pressure regulation, blood volume maintenance, nutrient metabolism and storage, fluid and electrolyte balance, and inflammatory processes. Under the instruction by the hypothalamus through the release of CRH, ACTH is secreted by the anterior pituitary gland. ACTH then primarily targets the adrenal cortex, stimulating it to produce **cortisol**, a steroid hormone also known as **hydrocortisone**, which is critical for regulating metabolism, immune response, and stress adaptation. This feedback loop ensures that cortisol levels adjust dynamically based on the body's needs.

The adrenal medulla, a neuroendocrine powerhouse, comprises postganglionic sympathetic neurons. It interfaces with the CNS through the sympathomedullary (SAM) pathway. This neural connection channels impulses from the hypothalamus via neurons originating in the thoracic spinal cord. In response to this stimulation, the adrenal medulla releases the amine hormones epinephrine and norepinephrine (see Chapter 5).

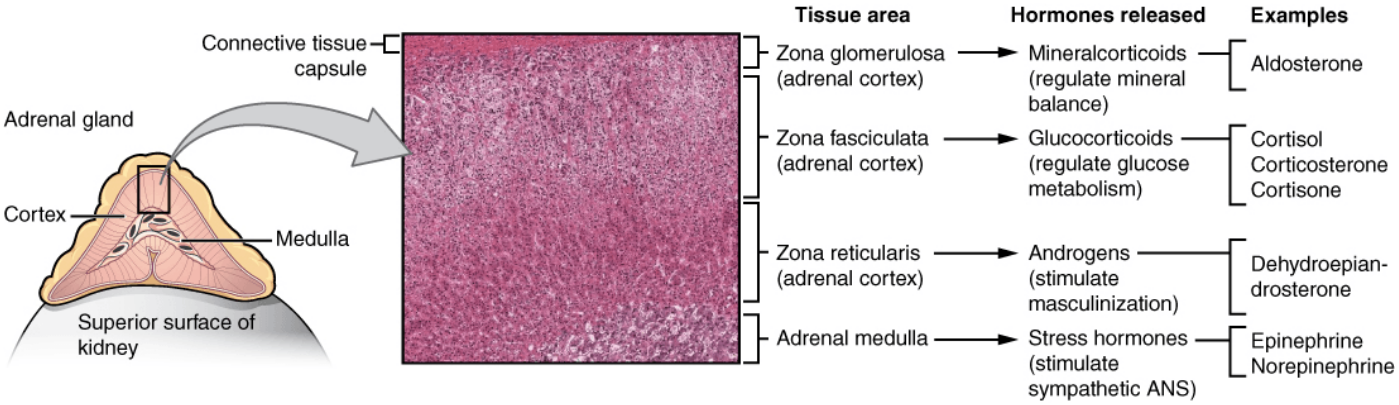


Figure 25 | Anatomy and Histology of the Adrenal Gland | [27] This figure illustrates the anatomical location and histological structure of the adrenal gland. Positioned atop each kidney, the adrenal glands are encapsulated in a fibrous tissue layer, providing structural protection. The glands consist of two distinct regions: the outer **adrenal cortex**, responsible for producing corticosteroids like cortisol, and the inner **adrenal medulla**, which secretes catecholamines, such as epinephrine and norepinephrine. Histologically, the cortex is divided into three layers: the **zona glomerulosa**, which produces aldosterone; the **zona fasciculata**, which secretes glucocorticoids; and the **zona reticularis**, responsible for androgens. The adrenal medulla contains chromaffin cells, which are specialized for catecholamine synthesis.

A core mission of the adrenal gland is to navigate the labyrinth of stress, encompassing both physical and psychological triggers. The body's reaction to stress follows a discernible pattern termed the **General Adaptation Syndrome** (GAS). The **initial phase**, the alarm reaction, corresponds to short-term stress and elicits the renowned fight-or-flight response. This rapid-fire reaction is mediated by epinephrine and norepinephrine from the adrenal medulla via the SAM pathway. The body swiftly returns to baseline once this acute stress is alleviated. However, the body transitions into the **resistance stage** should the stress persist. Here, the response is characterized by adaptations to the ongoing stress, such as optimizing nutrient absorption in cases of starvation. Prolonged stress, culminating in the **stage of exhaustion**, ushers in symptoms distinct from the initial fight-or-flight response. This phase may encompass depression, immune suppression, severe fatigue, and, in extreme cases, fatal cardiovascular events. These complex symptoms stem primarily from the actions of adrenal cortex hormones, particularly cortisol, following cues from the HPA axis.

Adrenal Cortex

In the adrenal cortex, several distinct zones are characterized by layers of lipid-storing cells, each responsible for producing specific hormones.

Mineralocorticoids

The outermost layer of the adrenal cortex, known as the zona glomerulosa, plays a pivotal role in synthesizing a group of hormones called **mineralocorticoids**. These hormones, primarily exemplified by **aldosterone**, influence body minerals, particularly sodium and potassium ions, thus contributing significantly to regulating fluid and electrolyte balance.

Aldosterone, the primary mineralocorticoid, is essential for regulating the levels of sodium and potassium ions in bodily fluids. Its secretion is carefully regulated in response to several physiological signals, such as increased blood potassium levels, decreased blood sodium levels, lowered blood pressure, or reduced blood volume. The release of aldosterone is initiated by CRH from the hypothalamus, which triggers the anterior pituitary gland to release ACTH (Figure 26). Moreover, aldosterone plays a pivotal role within the **renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system** (**RAAS**), a complex physiological pathway. In response to conditions such as low blood volume or low blood pressure, specialized kidney cells release the enzyme **renin**. Renin catalyzes the conversion of **angiotensinogen**, a blood protein synthesized in the liver, into **angiotensin I**. This precursor hormone, angiotensin I, is subsequently transformed into **angiotensin II** in the lungs through the action of **angiotensin-converting enzyme** (**ACE**). Angiotensin II serves several crucial functions such as inducing vasoconstriction of the arterioles, resulting in decreased blood flow and signaling the adrenal cortex to secrete aldosterone, which enhances fluid retention, subsequently elevating blood volume and blood pressure (Figure 27). While reabsorbing sodium ions and eliminating potassium ions at the renal tubules, aldosterone indirectly stimulates the reabsorption of water contributing to increased blood volume and blood pressure. ACE inhibitors, a class of medications, function by blocking the activity of ACE, thus preventing the conversion of angiotensin I to angiotensin II. By doing so, they effectively inhibit an increase in blood pressure associated with the RAAS pathway.

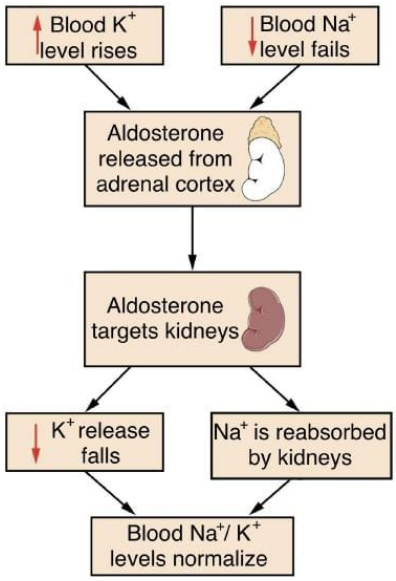


Figure 26 | The Aldosterone Feedback Loop | [29]

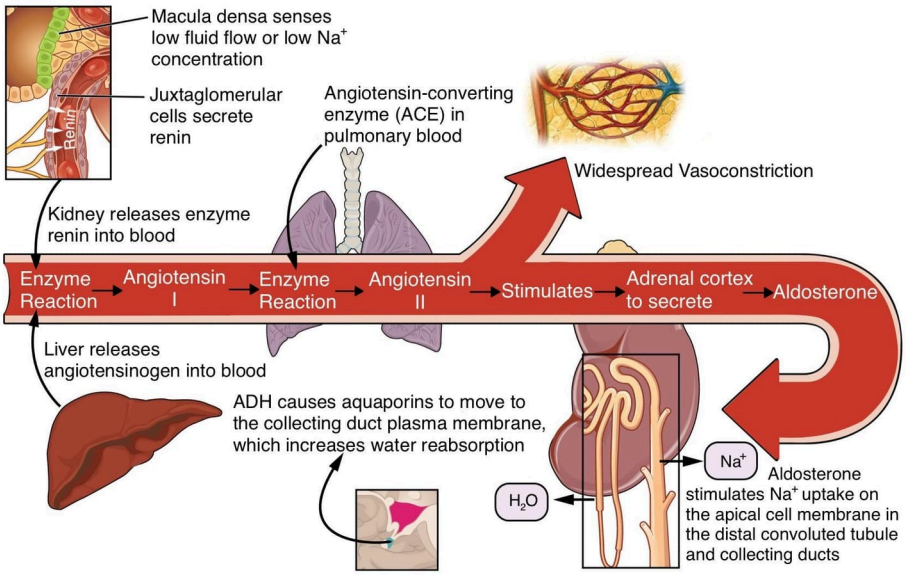


Figure 27 | Schematic representation of the Renin-Angiotensin-Aldosterone System (RAAS) | [28] This hormonal cascade begins with the release of renin from the juxtaglomerular cells of the kidneys in response to low blood pressure. Renin converts angiotensinogen, produced by the liver, into angiotensin I. Angiotensin I is then converted to angiotensin II by the angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) primarily in the lungs. Angiotensin II stimulates vasoconstriction, increases blood pressure, and promotes the release of aldosterone from the adrenal cortex. Aldosterone enhances sodium reabsorption in the kidneys, leading to increased water retention, blood volume, and further elevation of blood pressure.

Glucocorticoids

Located in the intermediate region of the adrenal cortex, the zona fasciculata derives its name from the distinctive arrangement of its cells, which form small bundles known as fascicles, interspersed with minute blood vessels. The primary hormones synthesized within the zona fasciculata are categorized as **glucocorticoids** due to their pivotal role in glucose metabolism. Cortisol, also known as hydrocortisone, is a major glucocorticoid. In addition to cortisol, a fraction is converted into **cortisone** and **corticosterone** in the liver.

Long-term stressors trigger a cascade of hormonal responses. Initially, the CRH stimulates the anterior pituitary to release ACTH, which, in turn, acts on the adrenal cortex, eliciting the secretion of glucocorticoids, as illustrated in Figure 28.

Cortisol exhibits a diurnal secretion pattern, peaking in the early morning hours, typically before the onset of physical activity. The primary overarching effect of cortisol is to inhibit tissue growth and simultaneously stimulate the breakdown of stored nutrients, ensuring a continuous supply of essential fuel sources. During prolonged stress conditions, cortisol promotes the catabolism of glycogen into glucose, converts stored triglycerides into fatty acids and glycerol, and facilitates the breakdown of muscle proteins into amino acids. These raw materials are then used to synthesize additional glucose and ketones, serving as crucial energy sources for the body. Furthermore, cortisol exhibits immunosuppressive properties by diminishing the activity of key immune cells such as macrophages and T-lymphocytes, resulting in an anti-inflammatory effect. This unique characteristic of cortisol has significant clinical applications, as it is employed to treat inflamed joints, manage severe asthma, and alleviate pruritic skin rashes.

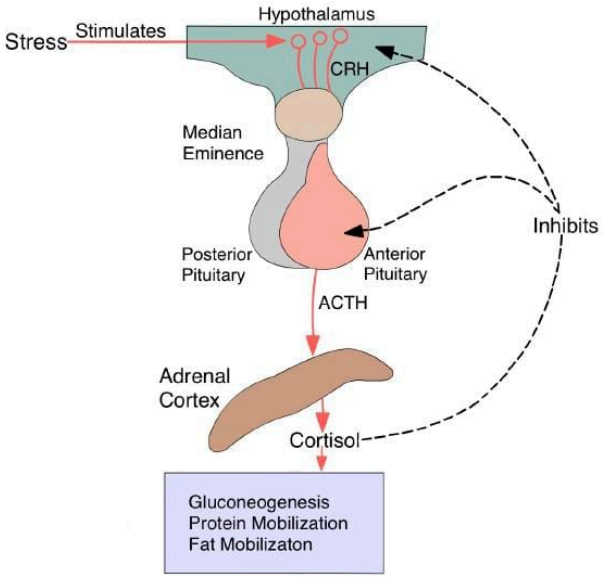


Figure 28 | Overview of the Regulation of Glucocorticoid Secretion | This figure depicts the role of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis in regulating cortisol production. The hypothalamus secretes corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH), which stimulates the anterior pituitary to produce adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH). In turn, ACTH acts on the adrenal cortex, leading to the synthesis and release of glucocorticoids, primarily cortisol. Cortisol's key functions include mobilizing fats and proteins and converting them into glucose through gluconeogenesis. Elevated cortisol levels in the bloodstream provide negative feedback to both the hypothalamus and the anterior pituitary, inhibiting the secretion of CRH and ACTH, respectively.

Androgens

Located in the deepest region of the adrenal cortex, the zona reticularis produces trace amounts of androgens, including **androstenedione** and **dehydroepiandrosterone**. In response to ACTH secreted by the anterior pituitary, these androgens are synthesized and subsequently converted to testosterone or estrogens within various tissues. While these minimal levels of androgens may play a role in female libido, their significance in adult males is diminished by the substantial testosterone output from the testes. However, in post-menopausal women, when ovarian functions wane, the primary source of estrogens shifts to the androgens produced by the zona reticularis.

Adrenal Medulla

As previously mentioned, the adrenal cortex releases glucocorticoids as part of the response to prolonged stress, such as severe illness. In contrast, the adrenal medulla functions differently, releasing its hormones in response to acute, short-term stress mediated by the sympathetic nervous system.

The adrenal medulla is composed of distinctive postganglionic sympathetic neurons called chromaffin cells. These cells are characterized by their large and irregular shapes and are responsible for producing the neurotransmitters epinephrine and norepinephrine. Epinephrine is produced in higher quantities, maintaining a ratio of approximately 4 to 1 with norepinephrine, and is the more potent hormone of the two. Because chromaffin cells release epinephrine and norepinephrine into the systemic circulation, where they travel extensively to exert their effects on distant cells, they are classified as hormones. The secretion of epinephrine and norepinephrine from the adrenal medulla is regulated by a neural pathway initiated by the hypothalamus in response to threats or stressors. Both hormones signal the liver and skeletal muscle cells to convert glycogen into glucose, increasing blood glucose levels. Additionally, they elevate heart rate and blood pressure, preparing the body for the "fight or flight" response. The neural pathway also dilates airways to enhance blood oxygen levels, promotes vasodilation to oxygenate vital organs such as the lungs, brain, heart, and skeletal muscles, and constricts blood vessels serving less essential organs like the gastrointestinal tract, kidneys, and skin. This response suppresses certain components of the immune system while also inducing effects such as dry mouth, decreased appetite, pupil dilation, and peripheral vision loss. Table 7 provides an overview of the main hormones produced by different regions of the adrenal glands, detailing their chemical characteristics and primary effects on the body.[30]

Table 7. *Hormones of the Adrenal Glands, their chemical characteristics and major effects in the body*

Adrenal Gland	Associated Hormone	Chemical Class	Effects
Zona Glomerulosa of the adrenal cortex	Aldosterone	Steroid	Increases blood sodium levels.
Zona Fasciculata of the adrenal cortex	Cortisol, corticosterone, cortisone	Steroid	Increases blood glucose levels.
Zona Reticularis of the adrenal cortex	Androgens	Steroid	Sex drive in females.
Adrenal Medulla	E, NE	Amine	Stimulates fight-or-flight response.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 7.15: Adrenal Glands is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas

The pancreas is a slender, soft organ located primarily behind the stomach (Figure 29). This versatile gland serves a dual function, acting as both an exocrine and an endocrine organ vital to numerous bodily processes. About 98 percent of the pancreas consists of pancreatic **acini**, which are organized into a single layer of cells. The acinar cells carry out the exocrine function by coordinating the release of pancreatic juice, rich in various digestive enzymes, into the small intestine via the pancreatic duct. In contrast, the remaining two percent of pancreatic tissue is made up of the **pancreatic islets**, or **islets of Langerhans**. These small clusters of cells are responsible for secreting several hormones, including **glucagon**, **insulin**, **somatostatin**, and **pancreatic polypeptide**, which collectively play crucial roles in regulating various physiological functions.

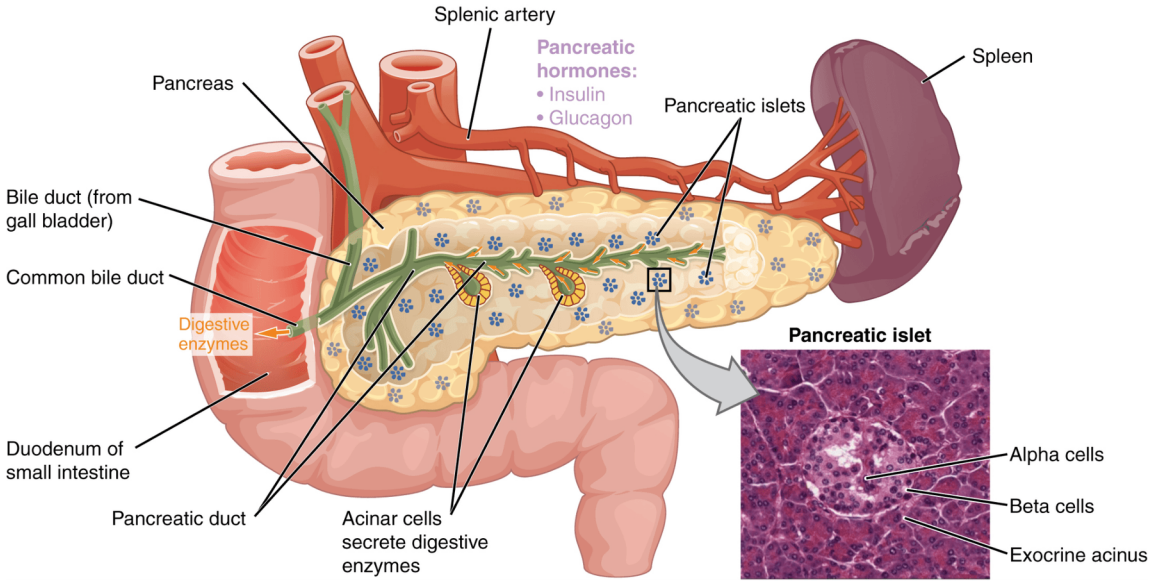


Figure 29 | Diagram illustrating the pancreas and its anatomical location in relation to the stomach, small intestine, and spleen | [31] The pancreas is depicted as a slender, soft organ situated posterior to the stomach and extending horizontally across the abdomen. In the accompanying histological section, the structure of the pancreas is shown, emphasizing the predominance of pancreatic acini (approximately 98%), which are organized into a single layer of acinar cells responsible for the exocrine function. This section also illustrates the pancreatic islets (islets of Langerhans), which comprise about 2% of the tissue and contain hormone-secreting cells such as alpha and beta cells that produce glucagon and insulin respectively.

Cells and Secretions of the Pancreatic Islets

The pancreatic islets house four distinct cell types (Table 8). **Alpha cells**, constituting roughly 20 percent of each islet, produce the hormone glucagon. It plays a vital role in regulating blood glucose levels, with its release triggered by low blood glucose levels and inhibited by normal glucose concentrations. **Beta cells**, comprising about 75 percent of each islet, produce the hormone insulin. Elevated blood glucose levels stimulate insulin release, while decreased glucose levels reduce its secretion. **Delta cells**, accounting for approximately four percent of islet cells, secrete the peptide hormone somatostatin. Pancreatic somatostatin inhibits the release of both glucagon and insulin. **PP cells**, representing around one percent of islet cells, release the pancreatic polypeptide hormone. This hormone is believed to influence appetite and regulate both pancreatic exocrine and endocrine secretions. Pancreatic polypeptide may reduce post-meal food consumption and is also released during fasting.

***Table 8**. Hormones of the Pancreatic Islets, their chemical nature and major effects in the body.*

Associated Hormones	Chemical Class	Effects
Insulin (Beta Cells)	Protein	Reduces blood glucose levels
Glucagon (Alpha Cells)	Protein	Increases blood glucose levels
Somatostatin (Delta Cells)	Protein	Inhibits insulin and glucagon release

Associated Hormones	Chemical Class	Effects
Pancreatic Polypeptide (PP Cells)	Protein	Role in appetite

Glucose Transporters

Glucose, a vital energy source for all body cells, is pivotal in maintaining energy balance. Excess glucose not immediately utilized by cells for energy can be either stored in the liver and muscles as glycogen or converted into triglycerides and stored in adipose tissue.

Glucose transporters represent a family of membrane proteins responsible for facilitating the movement of glucose across a cell's plasma membrane. Several established isoforms of glucose transporters are recognized within this group, namely **GLUT-1** through **GLUT-4**, each with distinct tissue distributions (Table 9). GLUT-1 is predominantly found in fetal tissues, erythrocytes, and the endothelial cells forming the blood-brain barrier. **GLUT-2** exhibits primary expression in the liver, beta cells of the pancreas, basolateral membrane of the small intestinal epithelium, and renal tubular cells. **GLUT-3** is prevalent in neurons and the placenta. GLUT-4, which relies on insulin for activation, is primarily expressed in adipose tissue and striated muscle cells.

Table 9. *Types of Glucose Transporters and their Distribution*

Glucose Transporter	Effects
GLUT-1	Fetal tissues, blood-brain barrier
GLUT-2	Liver, Beta cells, renal tubular cells
GLUT-3	Neurons and placenta
GLUT-4 (Insulin-dependent)	Adipose tissue, skeletal and cardiac muscle

Glucagon

Glucagon, a peptide hormone, secreted when glucose levels are low, triggers several essential processes to restore glucose levels to their normal range. It stimulates the liver to initiate glycogenolysis, the conversion of stored glycogen back into glucose, which is then released into the bloodstream for utilization by body cells. Additionally, glucagon prompts the liver to extract amino acids from the blood, subsequently converting them into glucose through gluconeogenesis. Furthermore, glucagon promotes lipolysis, the breakdown of stored triglycerides into free fatty acids and glycerol. Glycerol, once released into the bloodstream, makes its way to the liver, where it undergoes conversion into glucose, contributing to the process of gluconeogenesis. Collectively, these actions exert a significant influence on elevating blood glucose levels. Crucially, the activity of glucagon is subject to regulation through a negative feedback mechanism. As blood glucose levels rise, this mechanism inhibits the further production and secretion of glucagon, ensuring a balanced response to changing glucose concentrations.

Insulin

The discovery of insulin in 1921 by Canadian surgeon Frederick G. Banting and his assistant Charles Best marked a pivotal moment in medical history. Their groundbreaking research on insulin's role in regulating glucose revolutionized the treatment of diabetes and has since saved countless lives.

Insulin consists of two polypeptide chains, α, and β, connected by two disulfide bonds. The synthesis of insulin commences with **preproinsulin**, progressing to **proinsulin**. In storage granules, proteases remove a connecting peptide called the **C peptide**,

leaving behind the mature insulin molecule (Figure 30). Notably, the C peptide is co-secreted alongside insulin, and monitoring its concentration is essential for assessing beta cell function in diabetic patients receiving exogenous insulin therapy.

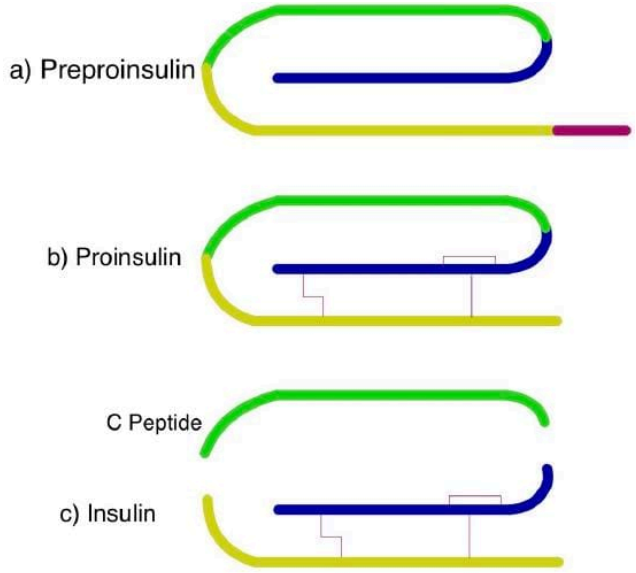


Figure 30 | Overview of the synthesis and secretion of insulin in pancreatic beta cells | This figure illustrates the stepwise process of insulin production, beginning with the transcription of the insulin gene in the nucleus of beta cells in the islets of Langerhans. The preproinsulin precursor is synthesized in the endoplasmic reticulum, where it undergoes co-translational modification to form proinsulin. Proinsulin is then transported to the Golgi apparatus, where it is packaged into secretory granules. Within these granules, proinsulin is cleaved to yield the active form of insulin, consisting of two peptide chains (α and β) linked by disulfide bonds, along with C-peptide.

Insulin plays a pivotal role in facilitating glucose uptake by body cells. Its primary actions target the liver, adipose tissue, and skeletal muscle. However, certain tissues, such as the brain, red blood cells, and specific cells in the liver, kidneys, and small intestine, operate independently of insulin. These tissues lack insulin receptors on their cell membranes and can uptake glucose without the need for insulin mediation.

Mechanism of Insulin Secretion

The insulin release process begins with glucose uptake through the GLUT-2 transporter within the beta cells of the pancreatic islets. Once inside the cell, glucose undergoes phosphorylation, leading to an increase in ATP levels. Elevated ATP concentrations subsequently trigger the closure of ATP-sensitive potassium ion channels. As a result, the outflow of potassium ions from the cell diminishes, reducing membrane potential. This depolarization event within the beta cell initiates the opening of voltage-sensitive calcium channels. The entry of calcium ions into the cell, in turn, facilitates the exocytotic release of insulin from its storage vesicles (Figure 31).

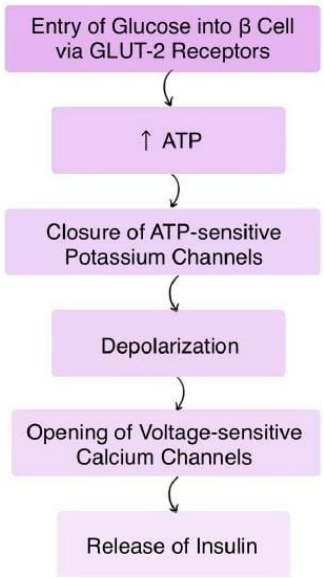


Figure 31 | Mechanism of Insulin Secretion by a Beta Cell | This figure illustrates the key steps involved in the process of insulin release in response to elevated blood glucose levels. The figure shows glucose entering beta cells through glucose transporter type 2 (GLUT2) channels, leading to an increase in intracellular glucose concentration. Increased glucose is metabolized via glycolysis and the citric acid cycle, resulting in enhanced production of ATP. The rise in ATP levels leads to the closure of ATP-sensitive potassium channels, causing membrane depolarization. Depolarization opens voltage-gated calcium channels, allowing calcium ions to flow into the cell. The influx of calcium triggers the fusion of insulin-containing secretory granules with the plasma membrane, leading to the exocytosis of insulin into the bloodstream.

During periods of postabsorption or fasting, the concentration of blood glucose is rigorously maintained within the range of 70 to 110 mg/dL. If blood glucose levels exceed this range, the beta cells respond by releasing insulin, which facilitates the uptake of glucose from the bloodstream into various body cells. Conversely, glucagon is secreted if blood glucose concentrations dip below this range. Glucagon prompts the liver to release glucose into the blood (Figure 32).

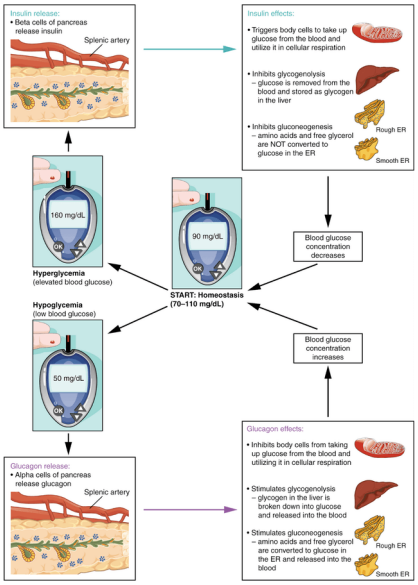


Figure 32 | Overview of the Mechanisms involved in the Homeostatic Regulation of Blood Glucose Levels | [32]. This figure illustrates the dynamic balance between insulin and glucagon, the primary hormones responsible for maintaining glucose homeostasis. When blood glucose levels rise after a meal, pancreatic beta cells secrete insulin. Insulin promotes the uptake of glucose by muscle and fat cells, stimulates glycogenesis in the liver, and inhibits gluconeogenesis. As blood glucose levels decrease, pancreatic alpha cells secrete glucagon. Glucagon stimulates glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis in the liver, increasing glucose release into the bloodstream.

The insulin receptor is a glycoprotein composed of two alpha and two beta subunits interconnected by disulfide bonds. The alpha

subunit is located externally and encompasses the insulin-binding region. Conversely, the beta subunit comprises an extracellular domain, a transmembrane domain, and an intracellular domain endowed with insulin-stimulated kinase activity toward its tyrosine residues. The pivotal initiation of insulin's influence on glucose metabolism hinges upon insulin receptor phosphorylation of the beta subunit, activating the insulin receptor tyrosine kinase (Figure 33).

Upon activation, insulin receptor tyrosine kinase phosphorylates specific intracellular proteins, culminating in the translocation of intracellular vesicles harboring glucose transporters (GLUT-4) to the cell membrane (Figure 32). Consequently, insulin orchestrates the rapid mobilization of a reservoir of glucose transporter vesicles to the cell membrane, where they merge and expose glucose transporters to the extracellular milieu. Subsequently, these transporters facilitate the diffusion of glucose into the cell. This insulin-driven uptake of glucose primarily occurs in muscle tissue. Once inside the cell, the liberated glucose undergoes metabolic processes regulated by insulin. During anabolic conditions, insulin spurs glycogen synthesis.

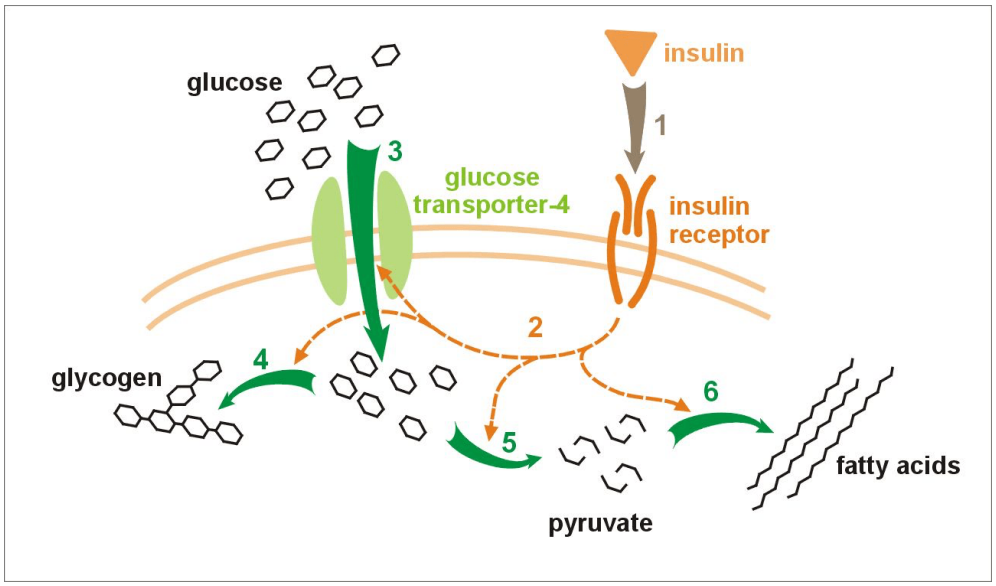


Figure 33 | Insulin-mediated glucose uptake | [33] Effect of insulin on glucose uptake and metabolism. Insulin binds to its receptor (1), which in turn starts many protein activation cascades (2). These include: translocation of Glut-4 transporter to the plasma membrane and influx of glucose (3), glycogen synthesis (4), glycolysis (5) and fatty acid synthesis (6).

Insulin plays several vital roles, such as promoting the conversion of excess glucose into glycogen for storage in the liver, inhibiting enzymes involved in glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis, and facilitating triglyceride and protein synthesis while impeding the breakdown of proteins and lipids. The secretion of insulin is subject to regulation via a negative feedback mechanism, whereby a decrease in blood glucose levels leads to the inhibition of further insulin release.

Without insulin, GLUT-4 typically undergoes sluggish recycling between the cell membrane and the cell interior. In addition to its role in glucose regulation, insulin exerts several other crucial effects. It contributes to the reduction of blood amino acid levels and stimulates the synthesis of proteins. Likewise, insulin facilitates the storage of triglycerides while concurrently inhibiting enzymes involved in processes like lipolysis, glycogenolysis, and gluconeogenesis.

Experiments involving mutagenesis have demonstrated that insulin receptors devoid of tyrosine kinase activity exhibit ineffectiveness in mediating insulin's capacity to stimulate cellular metabolism. Likewise, mutagenesis affecting any of the three major phosphorylation sites results in impaired insulin receptor kinase activity, reducing insulin's immediate metabolic and growth-promoting impacts.

In the resting state, about 50% of the body's glucose is used by the brain, which does not depend on insulin. Another 25% is taken up by the liver and gastrointestinal tissues (splanchnic), also independently of insulin. The remaining 25% of glucose metabolism happens in insulin-dependent tissues, mainly muscles. The amount of glucose used by the body matches what the body produces. About 85% of glucose production occurs in the liver, with the kidneys producing the rest (about 5-20%). Half of the liver's glucose comes from breaking down glycogen (glycogenolysis), and the other half from making new glucose (gluconeogenesis).

After eating, when blood sugar rises, insulin is released from beta cells. This increase in insulin stimulates glucose uptake by the liver, gut, and muscle tissues while reducing the body’s natural glucose production. Most of the glucose (about 80-85%) absorbed

by peripheral tissues goes to muscles, with only a small portion (around 4-5%) going to fat cells. While fat cells play a small role in glucose use, they are important for glucose balance. Insulin suppresses fat breakdown (lipolysis), and even small increases in insulin significantly reduce the levels of free fatty acids in the blood. Lower free fatty acid levels help muscles take up more glucose, and these changes in response to insulin and glucose are essential for maintaining normal glucose levels in the body. [34]

The Incretin Effect

Glucagon-like peptide-1 (**GLP-1**) is a hormone released from the intestinal mucosa, linked to the release of insulin in response to an oral glucose load rather than direct injection into the vein. This phenomenon is known as "the incretin effect." GLP-1 lowers plasma glucose levels by affecting insulin and glucagon secretion and slowing gastric emptying. One mechanism by which GLP-1 stimulates insulin release is by inhibiting the ATP-dependent opening of potassium channels. GLP-1 is currently utilized to enhance insulin release, proving to be effective for patients with diabetes. It also offers additional benefits such as appetite suppression and weight loss.[35-36]

Food in the small intestine triggers the release of gastrointestinal tract hormones, including **glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide** (formerly known as **gastric inhibitory peptide** or **GIP**). This initial release of GIP catalyzes insulin production and subsequent secretion by the pancreatic beta cells. Following nutrient absorption, the resultant surge in blood glucose levels further stimulates the secretion of insulin. Insulin secretion is increased by other factors like amino acids, fatty acids, and the activation of the parasympathetic nervous system whereas glucagon secretion is increased by amino acids, exercise, incretins, and the activation of the sympathetic nervous system.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

7.17: References

1. **Human Physiology**. University of Guelph. Available at: https://opened.uoguelph.ca (University of Guelph Open Books

2. LibreTexts. (n.d.). *Comparing the nervous and endocrine systems*. In *Anatomy and physiology*. Retrieved September 13, 2024, from https://med.libretexts.org/Bookshelves/Anatomy_and_Physiology/Anatomy_and_Physiology_(Boundless)/15%3A_Endocrine_System/15.1%3A_Overview_of_the_Endocrine_System/15.1B%3A_Comparing_the_Nervous_and_Endocrine_Systems

3. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 17.2 Endocrine System. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/eade2d286c1bf61900ea443ba642f097fc0c334d]

4. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 17.4 Binding of Lipid-Soluble Hormones. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/1f800b90fc46e0ee992c36313b278312471395e8]

5. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 17.5 Binding of Water-Soluble Hormones. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/f1cbb3d650243dca17e57977066fee3889f99252]

6. Widmaier, E.P., Raff, H., & Strang, K.T. (2019). *Vander's Human Physiology: The Mechanisms of Body Function* (15th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.

7. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022).Figure 17.7 Hypothalamus–Pituitary Complex. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/ed5522dd5b4d052d9576384dbf168d12ebcf9229]

8. OpenStax AnatPhys fig.17.8 - The Posterior Pituitary Complex - English labels at AnatomyTOOL.org by OpenStax, license: Creative Commons Attribution. Source: book 'Anatomy and Physiology' https://openstax.org/details/books/a...and-physiology.

9. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.23 Let-Down Reflex. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/3bc0c5c5ca2283cad189591bebb1f1dcbeb6c76b]

10. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 26.11 Antidiuretic Hormone (ADH). In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/books/anatomy-and-physiology/pages/26-2-water-balance?query=Antidiuretic&target=%7B%22index%22%3A0%2C%22type%22%3A%22search%22%7D#fs-id2021199]

11. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 17.9 Anterior Pituitary. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/5ae383f85727937cee0a0e698d85b8703c833d1a]

12. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022).Figure 17.11 Major Pituitary Hormones. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/ff514ffc08664490c02c67cd608c2444ec8e1613]

13. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 17.10 Hormonal Regulation of Growth. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/c103ed23e020805e4e23bea3706a582b3f5ce93e]

14. Medicine LibreTexts. (n.d.). *The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus*. Retrieved from https://med.libretexts.org

15. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 17.12 Thyroid Gland. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/249f0580da52f4fb69755bb631697cfe85aaea53]

16. Häggström, M. (2011, June 16). Thyroid Hormone Synthesis. [https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/82/Thyroid_hormone_synthesis.png]

17. Merck Manual. (n.d.). *Overview of Thyroid Function*. Merck Manual Professional Edition. Retrieved from https://www.merckmanuals.com/professional/endocrine-and-metabolic-disorders/thyroid-disorders/overview-of-thyroid-function

18. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 17.13 Classic Feedback Loop. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/image-cdn/v1/f=webp/apps/archive/20230828.164620/resources/0c75c57b179f6d45096268109e754fc2f4084022]

19. Almazi. (2008, July 24). Goitre [https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/42/Goitre.jpg]

20. Deranged Physiology. (n.d.). Control of plasma calcium. Deranged Physiology. https://derangedphysiology.com/main/cicm-primary-exam/required-reading/endocrine-system/Chapter%20119/control-plasma-calcium

21. Cleveland Clinic. (n.d.). Calcitonin. Cleveland Clinic. https://my.clevelandclinic.org/health/articles/22330-calcitonin

22. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 17.15 Parathyroid Gland. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/f75bebf2cf9a1fbd91bc7503d1c327a0d2d7af26]

23. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 17.16 Parathyroid Hormone in Maintaining Blood Ca2+ Homeostasis Parathyroid Gland. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/1a7ea0075f67340d0be854af9c21dd4101468677]

24. Lumen Learning. (n.d.). Vitamin D synthesis. In *Biology for Majors II*. Retrieved from https://courses.lumenlearning.com/wm-biology2/chapter/vitamin-d-synthesis/

25. National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases. (n.d.). *Primary hyperparathyroidism*. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. https://www.niddk.nih.gov/health-information/endocrine-diseases/primary-hyperparathyroidism

26. Boyce, B.F., Xing, L. Biology of RANK, RANKL, and osteoprotegerin. *Arthritis Res Ther* 9 (Suppl 1), S1 (2007). https://doi.org/10.1186/ar2165

27. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 17.17 Adrenal Glands. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/79571d2cc0df3066152ef2e26c749a0e9b6de7e3]

28. https://openstax.org/books/anatomy-and-physiology/pages/26-3-electrolyte-balance?query=Aldosterone%20Feedback%20Loop&target=%7B%22index%22%3A0%2C%22type%22%3A%22search%2 id1896420 Figure 26.13 The Aldosterone Feedback Loop Aldosterone,

29. Alila Medical Media. (2015). Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system [Medical diagram]. Wikimedia Commons. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:2626_Renin_Aldosterone_Angiotensin.jpg

30. Molina P.E.(Ed.), *Endocrine Physiology, 6e*. McGraw Hill. (2023). https://accessmedicine.mhmedical.com/content.aspx?bookid=3307&sectionid=275922164

31. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 17.18 Pancreas. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/4951dea9376c42021514f1d90d8d54e51d3ee4bd]

32. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 17.19 Homeostatic Regulation of Blood Glucose Levels . In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/e56fbc3cc3feb6deac24cc36418839e1dcf8aa95]

33. XcepticZP. (2007, April 10). Effect of insulin on glucose uptake and metabolism [Diagram]. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/c/ce/Insulin_glucose_metabolism_ZP.svg]

34. Gopalan, C., & Kirk, E. (2022). *Biology of Cardiovascular and Metabolic Diseases*. Elsevier Publisher.

35. Nauck MA, Quast DR, Wefers J, Meier JJ. GLP-1 receptor agonists in the treatment of type 2 diabetes - state-of-the-art. Mol Metab. 2021 Apr;46:101102.

36. Nachawi N, Rao PP, Makin V. The role of GLP-1 receptor agonists in managing type 2 diabetes. Cleve Clin J Med. 2022 Aug 1;89(8):457-464. doi: 10.3949/ccjm.89a.21110. Erratum in: Cleve Clin J Med. 2022 Oct 3;89(10):597. PMID: 35914933.

This page titled 7.17: References is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

8: THE BLOOD

8.1: Objectives

8.2: Introduction

8.3: Functions of Blood

8.4: Composition of Blood

8.5: Characteristics of Blood

8.6: Blood Plasma

8.7: Hematopoiesis

8.8: Erythrocytes

8.9: Leukocytes

8.10: Platelets

8.11: Hemostasis

8.12: References

This page titled 8: The Blood is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

8.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- Explain the functions of blood within the human body.
- Outline the process by which blood plasma is converted into serum, including the removal of specific blood components and identification of the organic molecules that constitute these components.
- Analyze the various types of plasma proteins, their respective functions, and the sites of their production.
- Investigate the stepwise differentiation of pluripotent stem cells into distinct cellular components of blood. Explore the factors involved in this differentiation process and their mechanisms of action.
- Examine the anatomical characteristics of red blood cells (RBCs) and elucidate how these features contribute to the efficient transport of oxygen.
- Describe the life cycle of an erythrocyte, with a focus on the endocrine feedback loop that regulates the production of RBCs. Explore the key body parameter that is maintained in homeostasis despite the absence of sensory receptors that directly count RBCs.
- Analyze the distinguishing features of leukocytes (white blood cells) and provide a comprehensive list of the five major types of leukocytes and their specific functions.
- Investigate the composition of platelets and the triggers that initiate their activation within the bloodstream.
- Define hemostasis and delineate its three sequential phases.
- Explain the sequence of events leading to platelet plug formation during the hemostasis process.
- Examine the role of clotting factors, identify their sources, and elucidate their function in the coagulation process.
- Create a visual flowchart illustrating both the intrinsic and extrinsic pathways of the clotting cascade.
- Clarify the molecular mechanisms that underlie blood clotting.
- Discuss the natural mechanisms that prevent inappropriate clotting within blood vessels.
- Investigate the events comprising fibrinolysis, the process of breaking down blood clots.
- Compile a list of major anticoagulants and expound their modes of action in preventing excessive blood clotting.

This page titled 8.1: Objectives is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

8.2: Introduction

The circulation of blood is essential for delivering nutrients to our numerous cells and removing waste products. At the center of this complex system is the heart, which continuously pumps blood through a vast network of blood vessels. Together, these three key elements—blood, heart, and blood vessels—form the **cardiovascular system**, the focus of this chapter.

Blood, a unique form of fluid connective tissue, is composed of a diverse array of cells, fibers, and ground substance. Like other connective tissues, blood comprises cellular elements and an extracellular matrix. These cellular elements, collectively referred to as **formed elements**, encompass **red blood cells (RBCs)**, known as **erythrocytes**, **white blood cells (WBCs)**, or **leukocytes**, and specialized cell fragments termed **platelets** or **thrombocytes**. What sets blood apart from other connective tissues is its fluid matrix, known as **plasma**. This fluid, primarily composed of water, serves as the medium that perpetually suspends the formed elements, facilitating their circulation throughout the body within the intricate cardiovascular system.

This page titled 8.2: Introduction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

8.3: Functions of Blood

Blood plays a pivotal role in maintaining the overall well-being of the human body. It serves as an intricate transportation network, a robust defender against external threats, and a vigilant guardian of internal balance. Following the absorption of nutrients from the digestive tract, blood acts as the primary carrier, swiftly transporting these vital substances to the liver for processing and subsequent delivery to body cells. Oxygen, drawn from inhaled air, diffuses into the bloodstream, commencing its journey from the lungs to the heart. From there, it is systematically pumped to every nook and cranny of the body. Endocrine glands dispatch their vital hormonal messengers into the bloodstream. The blood then expertly ferries these hormones to their distant target cells, orchestrating a symphony of physiological responses. Blood plays an essential role in waste management. It efficiently collects cellular waste and byproducts and shuttles them to designated organs for elimination. For instance, carbon dioxide is conveyed to the lungs for exhalation, while various waste products find their way to the kidneys and liver, ultimately departing the body as urine or bile.

An array of WBCs protects the body against external threats, including pathogenic bacteria. Some WBCs possess the ability to seek out and neutralize internal dangers, such as cells with aberrant DNA or viral-infected host cells. Blood also stands ready to act as a rapid responder in the face of vascular damage, effectively managing bleeding episodes. Platelets and specific plasma proteins collaboratively form protective clots, staunching the flow of blood from injured vessels, and preventing excessive blood loss.

Blood actively participates in the regulation of body temperature. When circulating through the skin's vessels, it facilitates the dissipation of excess heat to the environment, aiding in temperature control. Conversely, in response to declining body temperature, blood is diverted away from the skin to help maintain internal warmth. Blood is a vigilant guardian of the body's chemical equilibrium. Proteins and various compounds within the blood serve as buffers, regulating the pH levels of bodily tissues. Additionally, blood plays a pivotal role in maintaining the precise water and ion concentrations within body cells, ensuring optimal cellular function.[1]

This page titled 8.3: Functions of Blood is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

8.4: Composition of Blood

Blood constitutes approximately 8 percent of an adult's total body weight. The typical blood volume in adult males hovers around 5 to 6 liters, whereas adult females tend to average a volume of 4 to 5 liters. These variations are influenced by gender and individual factors.

Blood comprises two fundamental components, formed elements and plasma. The most abundant cellular component within the blood is the RBC, overshadowing the other constituents by a significant margin. Conversely, plasma accounts for roughly 55 percent of the blood's composition, leaving the formed elements to claim the remaining 45 percent. Table 1 provides an overview of the key components of the blood.

Hematocrit, an indicator of blood composition, represents the percentage of blood cells within the total blood volume. RBCs constitute approximately 99 percent of all blood cells, so hematocrit is often regarded as the percentage of RBCs in the entire blood volume. The determination of hematocrit involves a centrifugation process, wherein blood samples are subjected to spinning forces, inducing the separation of heavier elements from the lighter liquid plasma (Figure 1). Due to their greater mass, erythrocytes settle at the bottom of the hematocrit tube. Directly above the erythrocyte layer lies a delicate, pale stratum housing the residual formed elements of blood, namely, WBCs and platelets. This layer, aptly named the **buffy coat**, derives its title from its distinctive coloration and typically represents less than 1 percent of a blood sample.

Ascending further through the hematocrit tube, straw-colored fluid, the blood plasma, constitutes the remaining portion of the sample. The volume of erythrocytes post-centrifugation is also commonly referred to as the **packed cell volume** (**PCV**). In normal blood, erythrocytes constitute approximately 45 percent of the blood's total volume. However, it's noteworthy that hematocrit values can exhibit variations, typically ranging from 36 to 50 percent, influenced by factors such as gender and other individual characteristics. For females, the normal hematocrit range spans from 37 to 47 percent, with a mean value of 42 percent, while males typically exhibit hematocrit values ranging from 42 to 52 percent, with a mean of 47 percent. The percentage attributed to other formed elements, namely WBCs, and platelets, is minuscule, rendering them a negligible consideration within the context of hematocrit measurement. In **anemia**, hematocrit levels are significantly reduced, where there is a lower proportion of RBCs in the blood. Since RBCs are responsible for transporting oxygen throughout the body, a decrease in their number leads to diminished oxygen-carrying capacity. This can result in symptoms such as fatigue, weakness, shortness of breath, and pale skin due to insufficient oxygen delivery to tissues and organs. Anemia can be caused by various factors, including blood loss, iron deficiency, chronic diseases, or bone marrow disorders. In contrast, **polycythemia** is characterized by an abnormally high hematocrit, indicating an excess of RBCs in the bloodstream. This increase in RBCs thickens the blood, making it more viscous. As a result, blood flow can become sluggish, increasing the risk of complications such as clot formation, stroke, or heart attack.[2]

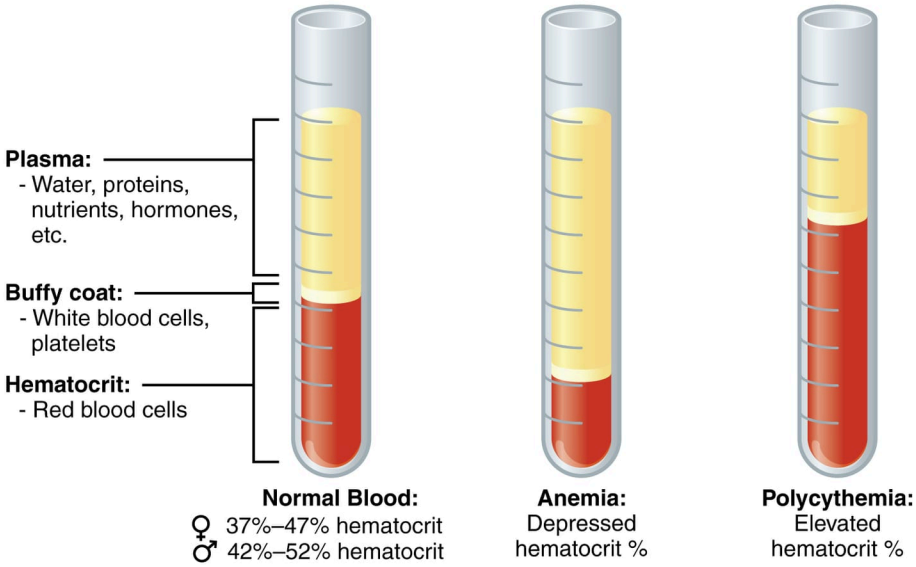


Figure 1 | Comparison of Normal Hematocrit, Anemia, and Polycythemia | [3] Hematocrit refers to the percentage of red blood cells (RBCs) in the blood. This figure illustrates the differences in hematocrit levels between normal blood, anemia, and polycythemia. In normal hematocrit, RBCs make up about 40-45% of blood volume, ensuring efficient oxygen transport. In anemia, hematocrit levels are significantly reduced, indicating fewer RBCs, which leads to diminished oxygen-carrying capacity. In contrast, polycythemia shows an abnormally high hematocrit, reflecting an excess of RBCs, which can thicken the blood and potentially impair circulation.

This page titled 8.4: Composition of Blood is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

8.5: Characteristics of Blood

Blood exhibits varying shades of color, primarily contingent on its oxygenation status. When oxygenated in the lungs, blood takes on a vibrant, bright red hue. In contrast, blood that has delivered its oxygen to the body's tissues assumes a darker, more subdued red coloration. This color transformation is attributed to **hemoglobin**, a prominent pigment within RBCs, whose appearance shifts in response to changes in oxygen saturation.

Blood manifests a remarkable viscosity, rendering it somewhat sticky. Its viscosity surpasses that of water by a factor of approximately five. Viscosity, a property indicating a fluid's thickness and resistance to flow, owes its characteristics to the presence of plasma proteins and formed elements within the blood. The heightened viscosity significantly impacts blood pressure and circulation dynamics.

Blood temperature slightly exceeds the standard internal body temperature, measuring around 38°C (100.4°F), compared to the typical 37°C (98.6°F) body temperature. Daily temperature variations of up to 0.5°C are well within normal. As blood courses through the smooth surfaces of blood vessels, it encounters friction and resistance, particularly as vessels age and lose elasticity. This friction generates heat, contributing to the blood's slightly elevated temperature.

Blood maintains a pH level that averages around 7.4, but it can vary slightly within the healthy range of 7.35 to 7.45. On the pH scale, this makes blood slightly basic, or alkaline, compared to pure water, which has a neutral pH of 7.0. The body relies on various buffering systems to keep blood pH within this narrow range, as it is crucial for life and the proper functioning of all bodily systems. Even small shifts in blood pH can disrupt enzyme structure and activity, impairing essential metabolic processes such as energy production, digestion, and tissue repair. Additionally, pH imbalances can interfere with hemoglobin's ability to transport and release oxygen efficiently. Abnormal pH levels also disrupt the balance of key electrolytes like potassium, sodium, and calcium, which are essential for nerve signaling, muscle contraction, and maintaining a regular heart rhythm.

This page titled 8.5: Characteristics of Blood is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

8.6: Blood Plasma

Plasma consists primarily of water, accounting for about 92 percent, along with a complex mixture of substances. These include both organic and inorganic components, such as nutrients, gasses, electrolytes, hormones, antibodies, antigens, and waste products, either dissolved or suspended, each present in varying concentrations. Nonprotein solutes make up roughly one percent of the total plasma volume, while approximately seven percent consists of proteins. **Serum**, on the other hand, is the liquid portion of blood remaining after coagulation, essentially plasma without the clotting factors. It is commonly used in diagnostic tests as it provides valuable information about the body's biochemical and metabolic state.

Plasma Proteins

Plasma proteins can be broadly classified into three main groups. **Albumin** is the most abundant plasma protein and is synthesized by the liver. It primarily acts as a transport vehicle for fatty acids and steroid hormones. Since lipids are hydrophobic, they require binding to albumin for transportation in the watery plasma. Albumin also plays a crucial role in maintaining osmotic pressure within blood vessels, which helps regulate blood volume and pressure. Typically, albumin constitutes around 54 percent of the total plasma protein content, with clinical levels ranging from 3.5 to 5.0 g/dL of blood.

Globulins are the second most prevalent group of plasma proteins and consist of three main subgroups: **alpha**, **beta**, and **gamma globulins**. Alpha and beta globulins serve as carriers for substances like iron, lipids, and fat-soluble vitamins (A, D, E, and K) to deliver them to cells. Additionally, they contribute to osmotic pressure. Gamma globulins, also known as **immunoglobulins** or antibodies, are crucial components of the immune system and are produced by specialized WBCs called **plasma cells**. Globulins account for approximately 38 percent of the total plasma protein volume, with clinical levels ranging from 1.0 to 1.5 g/dL of blood.

Fibrinogen is the least abundant of the plasma proteins and, like albumin and certain globulins, is synthesized by the liver. It plays a vital role in the blood clotting process. Fibrinogen comprises about seven percent of the total plasma protein volume, with clinical levels ranging from 0.2 to 0.45 g/dL of blood.[4]

Table 1 | *Major Blood Components* |

Component and % of Blood	Subcomponent and % of Component	Type and % (where appropriate)	Site of Production	Major Function(s)
Plasma 46-63%	Water 92%	Fluid	Absorbed by Intestinal Tract or Produced by Metabolism	Transport Medium
	Plasma Proteins 7%	Albumin 54-60%	Liver	Maintain Osmotic Concentration, Transport Lipid Molecules
		Globulins 35-38%	Alpha Globulins - Liver	Transport, Maintain Osmotic Concentration
			Beta Globulins - Liver	Transport, Maintain Osmotic Concentration

Component and % of Blood	Subcomponent and % of Component	Type and % (where appropriate)	Site of Production	Major Function(s)
			Gamma Globulins (Immunoglobulins)-Plasma Cells	Immune Responses
		Fibrinogen 4-7%	Liver	Blood Clotting
	Regulatory Proteins <1%	Hormones and Enzymes	Various Sources	Regulate Various Body Functions
	Other Solutes 1%	Nutrients, Gasses, and Wastes	Absorbed by Intestinal Tract, Exchanged in Respiratory System, and Produced by Cells	Numerous and Varied
Formed Elements 37-54%	Erythrocytes 99%		Red Bone Marrow	Transport Oxygen and Carbon Dioxide
	Leukocytes <1%	Granular Leukocytes: Neutrophils, Eosinophils, Basophils	Red Bone Marrow	Nonspecific Immunity
		Agranular Leukocytes: Monocytes and Lymphocytes	Lymphocytes: Bone Marrow and Lymphatic Tissue	Specific Immunity
			Monocytes: Red Bone Marrow	Nonspecific Immunity
	Platelets <1%		Megakaryocytes in the Red Bone Marrow	Blood Clotting

This page titled 8.6: Blood Plasma is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

8.7: Hematopoiesis

The lifespan of formed elements in the blood is relatively short. While certain leukocytes, known as **memory cells**, can persist for years, most erythrocytes, leukocytes, and platelets typically have a brief existence ranging from a few hours to a few months. Consequently, the body continually and rapidly generates new blood cells and platelets, a process known as **hemopoiesis** or **hematopoiesis** (derived from the Greek roots "haima-" meaning "blood" and "-poiesis" meaning "production").

Hematopoiesis occurs at different sites throughout various stages of life. It begins in the yolk sac of the developing embryo and continues in the fetal liver, spleen, lymphatic tissues, and eventually the red bone marrow before birth. After birth, most hematopoiesis takes place in the red marrow of spongy (cancellous) bone tissue. In children, hematopoiesis may also occur in the medullary cavities of long bones. In adults, however, it is primarily confined to specific bones such as the skull, pelvis, vertebrae, sternum, and the proximal epiphyses of the femur and humerus. Although the liver and spleen retain the ability to produce blood cells throughout adulthood, they typically play a minimal role in hematopoiesis under normal conditions.

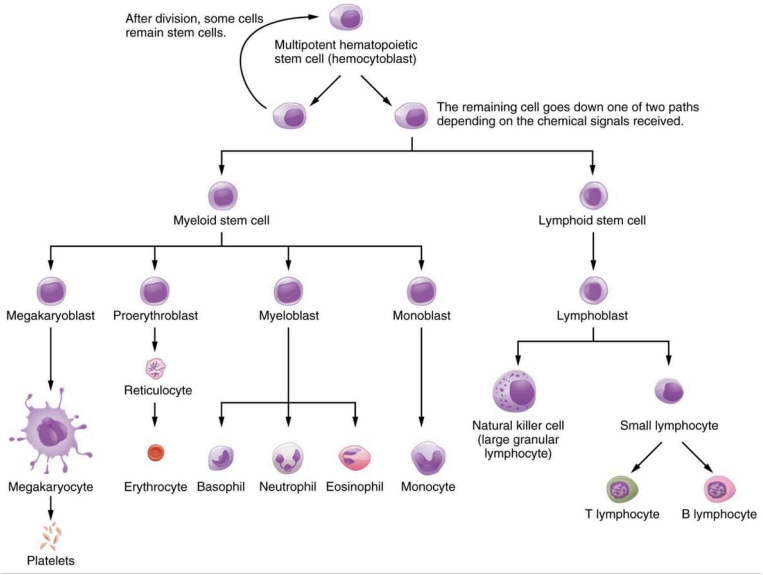


Figure 2 | Hematopoietic System of Bone Marrow | [5] This figure illustrates the organization of the hematopoietic system within the bone marrow. Hematopoiesis is the process by which all blood cells are produced from hematopoietic stem cells (HSCs). These multipotent stem cells differentiate into two primary lineages: the myeloid and lymphoid lineages. The myeloid lineage gives rise to red blood cells (erythrocytes), platelets (thrombocytes), and various white blood cells, including neutrophils, eosinophils, basophils, and monocytes. The lymphoid lineage produces lymphocytes, including B cells, T cells, and natural killer (NK) cells.

Formed elements in the blood originate from stem cells located within the red bone marrow. When a stem cell divides, one daughter cell remains a stem cell to sustain the stem cell pool, while the other differentiates into a specialized cell type. Stem cells follow a hierarchical structure, where their ability to give rise to different cell types decreases with each developmental stage. Totipotent stem cells, the most versatile, can produce all cell types in the human body, including those that form the fetal membranes. Next in the hierarchy are pluripotent stem cells, capable of producing many, but not all, body cell types. Below them are mesenchymal stem cells, which develop into various connective tissues, though not into epithelial, muscle, or nervous tissue. **Hematopoietic stem cells** (**HSCs**), also known as **hemocytoblasts**, represent the next level and are responsible for generating all blood cell types (Figure 2).

Hematopoiesis begins when HSCs are exposed to specific chemical signals, collectively called **hematopoietic growth factors**, which stimulate their division and differentiation. One daughter cell remains an HSC to ensure the ongoing production of blood cells, while the other differentiates into a more specialized stem cell. These specialized stem cells include **lymphoid stem cells**, which give rise to lymphocytes—such as T cells, B cells, and natural killer (NK) cells—essential for immune defense. **Myeloid stem cells**, on the other hand, produce erythrocytes (red blood cells), megakaryocytes (platelet-producing cells), and myeloblasts, which further differentiate into monocytes and three types of granular leukocytes: neutrophils, eosinophils, and basophils.

It is important to note that lymphoid and myeloid stem cells do not directly develop into mature blood cells. Instead, they progress through several intermediate precursor stages, often identified by names ending in "-blast." For example, **megakaryoblasts** mature into **megakaryocytes** (Figure 2 and Figure 10), and **proerythroblasts** become **reticulocytes**, which then lose their nucleus and most organelles to mature into erythrocytes (Figure 3).

Hemopoietic Growth Factors

The progression of stem cells into fully developed cells is driven by various hemopoietic growth factors, including **erythropoietin** (**EPO**), a glycoprotein hormone composed of 193 amino acids. EPO's primary role is to stimulate the production of erythrocytes in the bone marrow. Around 85 percent of circulating EPO is produced by interstitial fibroblast cells in the kidneys, with the liver contributing the remaining 15 percent. EPO production increases in response to low oxygen levels, such as those experienced at high altitudes. Similarly, regular aerobic exercise, which elevates oxygen demand, prompts the kidneys to release more EPO.

When RBCs are depleted due to severe or prolonged bleeding or are underproduced due to illness or malnutrition, the kidneys compensate by producing additional EPO to boost RBC production. In cases of renal failure, the loss of EPO production leads to anemia, which hampers the body's ability to meet oxygen demands, even under normal conditions.

EPO is used therapeutically to treat certain types of anemia where increasing RBC counts and oxygen levels is beneficial. Within 24 hours of EPO administration, RBC production increases, potentially leading to **erythrocytosis** (an elevated number of RBCs), which eventually reduces further EPO production as oxygen levels normalize.

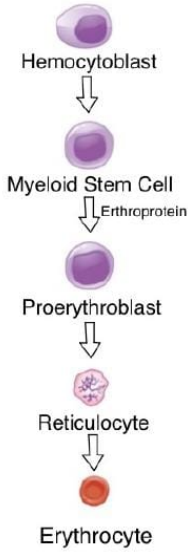


Figure 3 | Erythropoiesis | [5] This figure illustrates the process of erythropoiesis, depicting the sequential stages of red blood cell development. The process begins with a hemocytoblast (also known as a hematopoietic stem cell), which differentiates into a myeloid stem cell. Under the influence of erythropoietin, the myeloid stem cell progresses to a proerythroblast. Further maturation leads to the formation of a reticulocyte, which ultimately develops into a mature erythrocyte (red blood cell).

Thrombopoietin is a glycoprotein hormone synthesized by the liver and kidneys. Its primary role is to promote the development of megakaryocytes into platelets, which play a critical role in blood clotting and wound healing.

Cytokines constitute a category of glycoproteins secreted by various cell types, including red bone marrow cells, leukocytes, macrophages, fibroblasts, and endothelial cells. They function as local signaling molecules, operating in autocrine or paracrine modes. Cytokines stimulate the proliferation of progenitor cells and contribute to the enhancement of both nonspecific and specific immune responses. Two major cytokine subtypes are **colony-stimulating factors** (**CSFs**) and **interleukins**. Some CSFs drive the differentiation of myeloblasts into granular leukocytes, specifically neutrophils, eosinophils, and basophils. Another type of CSF stimulates the production of monocytes. Synthetic forms of these hormones are commonly administered to cancer patients undergoing chemotherapy to restore WBC counts.

Initially believed to be secreted exclusively by leukocytes to communicate with other leukocytes, interleukins are now known to be produced by various cells, including those in the bone marrow and endothelium. Beyond their role in communication

between immune cells, interleukins have broader functions in cell differentiation and maturation, immune system modulation, and inflammation regulation. Over a dozen interleukins have been identified to date, with more anticipated discoveries in the future.[6]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 8.7: Hematopoiesis is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

8.8: Erythrocytes

Erythrocytes, also known as RBCs, are the most abundant formed elements in the blood. A mere drop of blood contains millions of erythrocytes along with thousands of leukocytes. Males typically have around 5.4 million erythrocytes per microliter (μL) of blood, while females have approximately 4.8 million per μL. Erythrocytes make up roughly 25 percent of the total body cells. They are small in size, with an average diameter of only about 7–8 micrometers (μm).

The primary functions of erythrocytes are twofold: they bind to inhaled oxygen in the lungs and transport it to all tissues, and they carry carbon dioxide waste from the tissues back to the lungs for exhalation. Unlike leukocytes, which often leave the bloodstream to perform their defensive duties, erythrocytes remain confined within the vascular network.

During the maturation process in the red bone marrow, erythrocytes undergo significant changes. They expel their nucleus and most other organelles to make room for the accumulation of hemoglobin within their cytoplasm. In the first day or two after entering circulation, immature erythrocytes, known as **reticulocytes**, may still contain remnants of organelles. Reticulocytes typically constitute around 1–2 percent of the total erythrocyte count and serve as a rough indicator of the rate of RBC production. Abnormally low or high reticulocyte counts can signify deviations in erythrocyte production. However, these remnants of organelles are swiftly shed, leaving circulating mature erythrocytes with minimal internal cellular structures. Erythrocytes are devoid of mitochondria and primarily rely on anaerobic respiration, meaning they do not utilize the oxygen they transport. They also lack endoplasmic reticula and do not engage in protein synthesis. Nonetheless, erythrocytes do contain specific structural proteins that help maintain their unique shape and enable them to alter their form to navigate through capillaries.

Erythrocytes exhibit a distinctive biconcave disc shape characterized by a plump periphery and a thin center (Figure 4). This unique morphology arises from their lack of most organelles, including a nucleus, which creates more space to accommodate hemoglobin molecules responsible for gas transport. The biconcave design offers several advantages in facilitating gas exchange. Firstly, it provides an expanded surface area relative to its volume, enhancing the efficiency of gas exchange. In contrast, a sphere with a similar diameter would have a lower surface area-to-volume ratio. Within capillaries, erythrocytes carry oxygen that can readily diffuse into the surrounding plasma and subsequently traverse the capillary walls to reach nearby cells. Simultaneously, some of the carbon dioxide generated as a waste product by these cells diffuses into the capillaries to be absorbed by the erythrocytes.

Capillary beds, where much of this gas exchange occurs, are exceedingly narrow. This narrowness slows the movement of erythrocytes through the capillaries, prolonging the window for efficient gas exchange. However, the confines of capillaries can be so compact that even erythrocytes, despite their small size, may need to flex and fold to navigate through. Fortunately, the flexible structural proteins in erythrocytes allow them to bend considerably, effectively accommodating these tight spaces. Subsequently, when they enter wider blood vessels, erythrocytes may stack upon one another, akin to a roll of coins, forming a structure known as **rouleaux**, derived from the French word for "roll."[1]

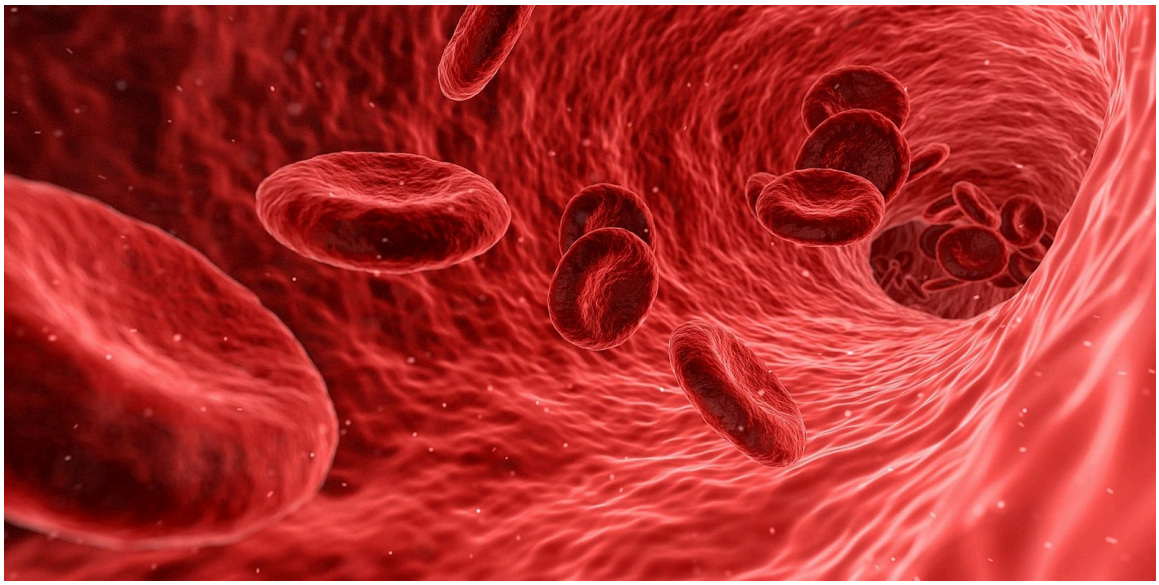


Figure 4 | Normal Erythrocyte Morphology | [7] This image illustrates the typical biconcave shape and uniform size of healthy red blood cells within a blood vessel.

Hemoglobin

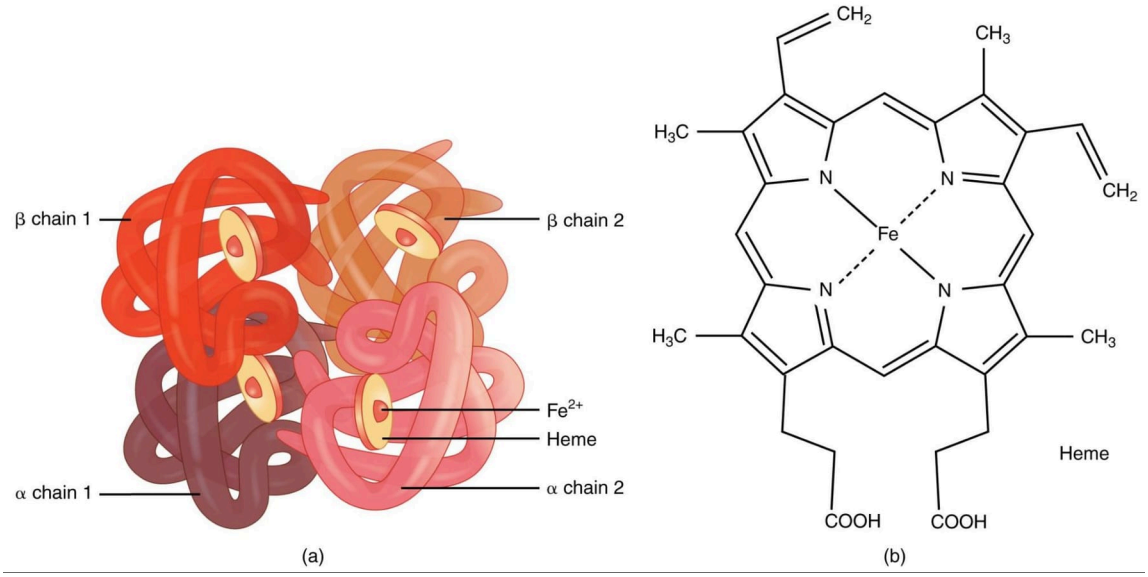


Figure 5 | Structure of Hemoglobin | [8] (a) Hemoglobin contains four globin proteins, each of which is bound to one molecule of the iron-containing pigment, heme. (b) Heme with its porphyrin ring containing iron ($Fe_2{}^+$) in the center.

Hemoglobin represents a substantial molecular complex composed of proteins and iron. It comprises four intricately folded protein chains known as **globin**, designated explicitly as alpha 1, alpha 2, beta 1, and beta 2 (Figure 5a). Each globin subunit is associated with a red pigment molecule called **heme**, which houses an iron ion (Figure 5b). The iron ions within the heme possess the remarkable capacity to bind with oxygen molecules. Consequently, each hemoglobin molecule can engage with four oxygen molecules simultaneously. Within an individual erythrocyte, there exists a vast quantity of approximately 300 million hemoglobin molecules, implying the potential to capture and transport a staggering 1.2 billion oxygen molecules (Figure 5b).

Within the pulmonary environment, hemoglobin undergoes oxygenation by acquiring oxygen, forming a compound known as **oxyhemoglobin**. This brightly colored, oxygen-saturated hemoglobin then journeys to various body tissues, gradually relinquishing some of its oxygen molecules. As it does so, it transforms into a darker red substance called **deoxyhemoglobin**, sometimes denoted as **reduced hemoglobin**. The extent of oxygen release hinges upon the local demand within the surrounding tissues. Under normal resting conditions, approximately 25 percent of the oxygen molecules carried by hemoglobin are

discharged. Hemoglobin rarely, if ever, surrenders all of its oxygen content. Simultaneously, in the body's capillaries, carbon dioxide enters the bloodstream. Roughly 7 percent of it dissolves within the plasma, while a portion remains as dissolved carbon dioxide. The remaining fraction combines with amino acids within hemoglobin to form **carbaminohemoglobin**, encompassing approximately 23–24 percent of the total carbon dioxide content.

Upon traversing the capillaries, hemoglobin transports carbon dioxide back to the lungs, where it is released to enable the exchange of oxygen. Deviations in RBC levels can significantly impact the body's capacity to deliver oxygen to tissues effectively. Ineffective hematopoiesis, for instance, results in inadequate RBC numbers and, consequently, reduced hemoglobin availability. This condition may lead to insufficient oxygen delivery to tissues, resulting in various forms of anemia. Conversely, excessive RBC production gives rise to a condition termed polycythemia. While polycythemia does not directly impede oxygen delivery to tissues, it increases blood viscosity, making it more challenging for the heart to circulate blood effectively.

Tissue oxygenation can be assessed through a parameter known as percent saturation, which denotes the percentage of hemoglobin binding sites occupied by oxygen. Monitoring this parameter is typically accomplished using a pulse oximeter, which is usually applied to a slender body part, such as the tip of a patient's finger. Normal readings obtained from a pulse oximeter typically fall within the 95–100 percent range. Lower percentages indicate a condition known as **hypoxemia**, signifying diminished blood oxygen levels. The broader term **hypoxia** encompasses situations characterized by reduced oxygen concentrations. Alternatively, free oxygen within the plasma is directly monitored, often through arterial blood sampling. In this context, the quantity of oxygen is expressed in terms of **partial pressure of oxygen**, abbreviated as **pO2**, and is conventionally measured in millimeters of mercury (mm Hg).

The kidneys play a pivotal role in this process as they filter approximately 180 liters of blood per day in an average adult. Consequently, the kidneys serve as ideal locations for receptors that gauge oxygen saturation. In response to hypoxemia, wherein diminished oxygen levels are detected, less oxygen exits the blood vessels that supply the kidneys. This results in hypoxia within the kidney tissue fluid, where actual oxygen concentrations are monitored. Specialized interstitial fibroblasts within the kidneys respond to hypoxia by secreting EPO, thereby stimulating the production of erythrocytes to restore oxygen levels to a normal range. This process operates within a classic negative feedback loop: as oxygen saturation levels rise, EPO secretion diminishes, and conversely, when oxygen levels decline, EPO production increases. Consequently, this negative feedback loop plays a vital role in preserving homeostasis.

Populations residing at high altitudes, where the atmosphere inherently contains lower oxygen levels, naturally maintain a higher hematocrit than individuals living at sea level. Consequently, individuals traveling to elevated regions may experience symptoms of hypoxemia, such as fatigue, headaches, and shortness of breath, for a few days following their arrival. In response to hypoxemia, the kidneys initiate the secretion of EPO, leading to an elevation in erythrocyte counts until homeostasis is reestablished.[1]

Life Cycle of Erythrocytes

Erythrocyte production within the bone marrow occurs at a remarkable rate, surpassing 2 million cells per second. This prolific production necessitates the availability of several essential raw materials, which are fundamental to the production and maintenance of any cell, including glucose, lipids, and amino acids. However, erythrocyte production specifically requires various trace elements:

Iron: Hemoglobin, the molecule responsible for oxygen transport within erythrocytes, contains ferrous ions in each heme group. The body typically absorbs less than 20 percent of dietary iron. Heme iron, derived from animal-based foods like meat, poultry, and fish, is more efficiently absorbed than non-heme iron found in plant-based foods. Iron becomes a part of the body's total iron pool upon absorption. The bone marrow, liver, and spleen can store iron in proteins known as **ferritin** and **hemosiderin**. **Transferrin** facilitates the transfer of iron from storage sites across intestinal cell plasma membranes into tissue fluid, from where it enters the bloodstream. When stimulated by EPO to increase erythrocyte production, iron is released from storage, binds to transferrin, and is transported to the red bone marrow, where it becomes integrated into erythrocyte precursors.

Copper: Copper, another trace mineral, plays a vital role in two plasma proteins, **hephaestin** and **ceruloplasmin**. These proteins are essential for the production of hemoglobin. Hephaestin, located in the intestinal villi, facilitates iron absorption by intestinal cells, while ceruloplasmin transports copper. Copper deficiency can lead to reduced iron transport for heme synthesis, causing iron to accumulate in tissues and potentially resulting in organ damage.

Zinc: Zinc, a trace mineral, acts as a co-enzyme that assists in the synthesis of the heme portion of hemoglobin.

B Vitamins: **Folate** and **vitamin B12** function as co-enzymes for DNA synthesis. Consequently, they play a critical role in the

production of new cells, including erythrocytes. A deficiency in dietary folate, particularly during early pregnancy, has been linked to neural tube defects in fetal development.

Erythrocytes have a lifespan of up to 120 days in the bloodstream before they are removed by specialized myeloid phagocytic cells called **macrophages**, primarily located within the bone marrow, liver, and spleen. The life cycle of erythrocytes is summarized in Figure 6. During the degradation of erythrocytes, the hemoglobin components undergo further processing. Globin, the protein component of hemoglobin, is broken down into amino acids, which can be returned to the bone marrow for use in the production of new erythrocytes. The iron within the heme group is either stored in the liver or spleen, primarily in the form of ferritin or hemosiderin or transported via transferrin in the bloodstream to the red bone marrow for recycling into new erythrocytes. The non-iron portion of heme is metabolized into **biliverdin**, a green pigment, which is further converted into **bilirubin**, a yellow pigment, as a waste product. Bilirubin binds to albumin and is transported in the blood to the liver, where it is utilized in bile synthesis. Bile is released into the intestines to aid in the emulsification of dietary fats. In the large intestine, bacteria convert bilirubin into **urobilinogen** and subsequently into **stercobilin**, which is excreted in feces. The color changes associated with hemoglobin breakdown pigments can be observed in various scenarios. For instance, biliverdin from damaged erythrocytes contributes to the vivid colors seen in bruises at injury sites. In cases of impaired liver function, ineffective bilirubin removal leads to a yellowish discoloration known as **jaundice**. Stercobilin within feces impart the typical brown color, while urobilins are responsible for the yellow color observed in urine. Hemoglobin that is not phagocytized undergoes breakdown in the circulation, with the alpha and beta chains being released and subsequently removed from circulation by the kidneys.[6]

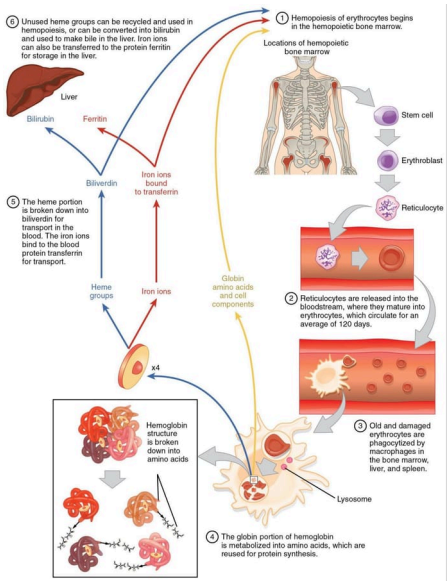


Figure 6 | Erythrocyte Lifecycle and Hemoglobin Recycling | [9] This figure illustrates the lifecycle of red blood cells (erythrocytes), from their production in the bone marrow to their breakdown and recycling of components. (1) Hemopoiesis: Erythropoiesis, the formation of erythrocytes, begins in the bone marrow. Stem cells differentiate into erythroblasts and then reticulocytes. (2) Circulation: Reticulocytes are released into the bloodstream, where they mature into erythrocytes. (3) Erythrocyte Breakdown: Old or damaged erythrocytes are phagocytized by macrophages in the bone marrow, liver, and spleen. (4) Globin Recycling: Within the macrophage, the globin portion of hemoglobin is broken down into amino acids, which are then reused for protein synthesis. (5) Heme Breakdown and Iron Transport: The heme portion of hemoglobin is broken down into biliverdin, which is transported in the blood. Iron ions are released and bind to the protein transferrin for transport throughout the body. (6) Heme and Iron Recycling/Excretion: Unused heme groups can be recycled and used in hemopoiesis, or converted into bilirubin and processed by the liver to make bile. Iron ions can be stored in the liver bound to ferritin.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 8.8: Erythrocytes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

8.9: Leukocytes

Leukocytes or WBCs, play a pivotal role in the body's defense mechanisms against diseases. They safeguard the body against invading microorganisms and abnormal body cells with DNA mutations and participate in the cleanup of cellular debris. Although leukocytes and erythrocytes both originate from hematopoietic stem cells located in the bone marrow, they exhibit profound differences in various aspects. For instance, leukocytes are considerably less abundant than erythrocytes, typically numbering only between 5,000 and 10,000 per microliter (μL) of blood. In addition to being larger than erythrocytes, leukocytes are unique among formed elements as they are complete cells possessing a nucleus and organelles. Leukocytes encompass a diverse array of types, with most having significantly shorter lifespans than erythrocytes, some enduring only for a few hours or even minutes, particularly in the context of acute infections.

One of the most distinguishing features of leukocytes is their ability to move actively. These cells routinely exit the bloodstream to execute defensive functions within the body's tissues. To reach their intended destinations, leukocytes rely on the vascular network as a conduit but soon exit to perform their actual roles. Upon arrival at their destinations, leukocytes often receive distinct names based on their functions, such as macrophages or microglia. As illustrated in Figure 7, they exit the narrow blood vessels through a process known as **emigration** or **diapedesis**, during which they squeeze through the adjacent cells in the blood vessel wall. Once outside the capillaries, some leukocytes adopt fixed positions within lymphatic tissue, bone marrow, the spleen, the thymus, or other organs. Others navigate through tissue spaces in a manner reminiscent of amoebas, continually extending their plasma membranes. They may wander freely or migrate towards specific directions guided by chemical signals. This migration of leukocytes is driven by **chemotaxis**, a phenomenon where injured or infected cells, along with nearby leukocytes, emit chemical signals that act as a "911" call, attracting more leukocytes to the affected site.[1]

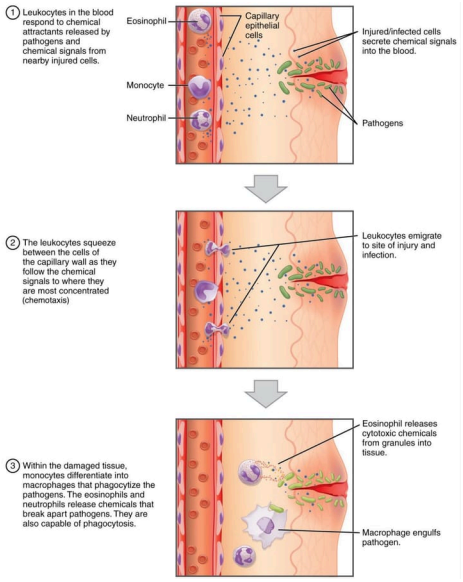


Figure 7 | Emigration of Leukocytes | [10] This figure illustrates the process of leukocyte migration and immune response at the site of infection or injury. (1) Chemotaxis and Leukocyte Activation: Leukocytes (neutrophils, eosinophils, and monocytes) in the bloodstream detect chemical signals released by injured or infected cells. These attractants guide the leukocytes toward the affected tissue, where pathogens are present. (2) Diapedesis and Migration: Leukocytes squeeze between the endothelial cells of the capillary wall, a process known as diapedesis, to move from the bloodstream into the infected tissue. (3) Pathogen Elimination and Immune Response: Monocytes differentiate into macrophages, which engulf and digest pathogens via phagocytosis. Eosinophils and neutrophils release cytotoxic chemicals that break down pathogens, further enhancing the immune response.

Classification of Leukocytes

Leukocytes are categorized into two groups based on the presence or absence of highly conspicuous granules within their

cytoplasm. **Granular leukocytes**, as the name suggests, possess abundant granules within their cytoplasm, and this category includes neutrophils, eosinophils, and basophils (Figure 8). In contrast, **agranular leukocytes** have some granules but are relatively sparse and less conspicuous. Agranular leukocytes encompass monocytes, which subsequently mature into phagocytic macrophages, and lymphocytes, which originate from the lymphoid stem cell lineage.

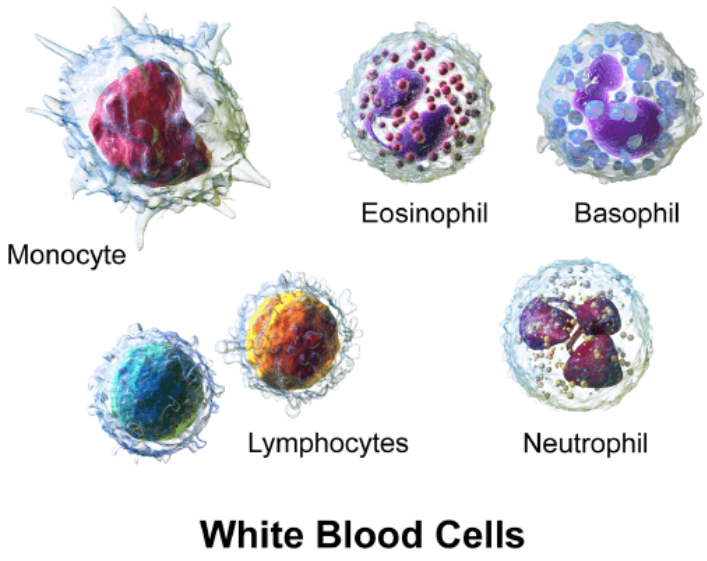


Figure 8 | Classification of Leukocytes | [11] This figure depicts different types of white blood cells (WBCs), also known as leukocytes, which play a crucial role in the immune response. Monocyte: A large agranulocyte that differentiates into macrophages to phagocytose pathogens and present antigens. Eosinophil: A granulocyte involved in allergic reactions and parasitic infections, characterized by granules that contain cytotoxic enzymes. Basophil: A granulocyte responsible for inflammatory responses, particularly in allergic reactions, through the release of histamine. Lymphocytes: Includes B cells, T cells, and natural killer (NK) cells, which are essential for adaptive immunity and immune surveillance. Neutrophil: The most abundant granulocyte, acting as the first line of defense against infections by engulfing and destroying pathogens through phagocytosis.

Granular Leukocytes

Granular leukocytes are typically characterized by a lobed nucleus and are categorized based on the type of stain that best highlights their granules (Figures 8 and 9).

Neutrophils, the most abundant type of leukocyte, typically constitute 50–70 percent of the total leukocyte count. They are swift responders to infection sites and efficient phagocytes, with a strong preference for combating bacteria. Neutrophil granules contain **lysozyme**, an enzyme capable of breaking down bacterial cell walls, as well as oxidants like hydrogen peroxide and defensins, proteins that bind to and puncture bacterial and fungal plasma membranes, leading to the leakage of cell contents. Elevated neutrophil counts are indicative of infection and inflammation, particularly bacterial infections, but can also be observed in burn patients and individuals under unusual stress. Burn injuries trigger increased neutrophil proliferation to fend off infections that may result from the loss of the skin's protective barrier. Low neutrophil counts may be due to drug toxicity and other disorders, making individuals more susceptible to infections.

Eosinophils typically account for 2–4 percent of the total leukocyte count. Their granules contain antihistamine molecules, which counteract inflammatory chemicals produced by basophils and mast cells. Some eosinophil granules house toxic molecules to parasitic worms, which can enter the body through the skin or by ingesting raw or undercooked fish or meat. Eosinophils are also capable of phagocytosis and are especially effective when antibodies bind to the target, forming an antigen-antibody complex. Elevated eosinophil counts are often associated with allergies, parasitic worm infestations, and certain autoimmune diseases. Low counts may result from drug toxicity and stress.

Basophils are the least common leukocytes, typically constituting less than one percent of the total leukocyte count. Broadly, basophils intensify the inflammatory response, a characteristic they share with mast cells. Previously, mast cells were thought to be circulating basophils, but they are now understood to originate from different cell lineages. Basophil granules release

histamine, contributing to inflammation, and **heparin**, which opposes blood clotting. Elevated basophil counts are linked to allergies, parasitic infections, and hypothyroidism, while reduced counts are associated with pregnancy, stress, and hyperthyroidism.

Agranular Leukocytes

Agranular leukocytes differ from granular leukocytes by having smaller, less conspicuous granules in their cytoplasm. Their nuclei are typically simple in shape, occasionally exhibiting indentations but lacking distinct lobes. Agranulocytes primarily comprise two major types: lymphocytes and monocytes (Figures 8 and 9).

Lymphocytes are unique among blood-formed elements as they originate from lymphoid stem cells. They make up approximately 20 to 30 percent of the total leukocyte population. Lymphocytes encompass three major groups: natural killer cells, B cells, and T cells.

Monocytes originate from myeloid stem cells and typically account for 2 to 8 percent of the total leukocyte count. Macrophages, which are derived from monocytes, play essential roles in the immune system. They are efficient phagocytes capable of engulfing pathogens and cellular debris. Additionally, macrophages release antimicrobial defensins and chemotactic chemicals that attract other leukocytes to the site of infection. While some macrophages are fixed in specific locations, others roam through various tissues and body fluids. Elevated monocyte counts are typically associated with viral or fungal infections, tuberculosis, and certain forms of leukemia and chronic diseases. Conversely, reduced monocyte counts are often linked to bone marrow suppression.[6]

Lifecycle of Leukocytes

Most leukocytes exhibit a relatively brief lifespan, often measured in hours or days. The generation of all leukocytes initiates within the bone marrow under the regulatory influence of CSFs and interleukins. Subsequent production and maturation of lymphocytes occur in specialized areas of lymphatic tissue called **germinal centers**. Lymphocytes possess the remarkable ability to undergo mitosis, potentially generating identical cell clones. This unique capacity allows an individual to sustain immunity against numerous previously encountered threats throughout their lifetime.[12]

Formed element	Major subtypes	Numbers present per microliter (μL) and mean (range)	Appearance in a standard blood smear	Summary of functions	Comments
Erythrocytes (red blood cells)		5.2 million (4.4–6.0 million)	Flattened biconcave disk; no nucleus; pale red color	Transport oxygen and some carbon dioxide between tissues and lungs	Lifespan of approximately 120 days
Leukocytes (white blood cells)		7000 (3000–10,000)	Obvious dark-staining nucleus	All function in body defenses	Exit capillaries and move into tissues; lifespan of usually a few hours or days
	Granulocytes including neutrophils, eosinophils, and basophils	4360 (1800–9950)	Abundant granules in cytoplasm; nucleus normally lobed	Nonspecific (innate) resistance to disease	Classified according to membrane-bound granules in cytoplasm
	Neutrophils	4150 (1800–7300)	Nuclear lobes increase with age; pale lilac granules	Phagocytic; particularly effective against bacteria. Release cytotoxic chemicals from granules	Most common leukocyte; lifespan of minutes to days
	Eosinophils	165 (0–700)	Nucleus generally two-lobed; bright red-orange granules	Phagocytic cells; particularly effective with antigen- antibody complexes. Release antihistamines. Increase in allergies and parasitic infections	Lifespan of minutes to days
	Basophils	44 (0–150)	Nucleus generally two-lobed but difficult to see due to presence of heavy, dense, dark purple granules	Promotes inflammation	Least common leukocyte; lifespan unknown
	Agranulocytes including lymphocytes and monocytes	2640 (1700–4950)	Lack abundant granules in cytoplasm; have a simple-shaped nucleus that may be indented	Body defenses	Group consists of two major cell types from different lineages
	Lymphocytes	2185 (1500–4000)	Spherical cells with a single often large nucleus occupying much of the cell's volume; stains purple; seen in large (natural killer cells) and small (B and T cells) variants	Primarily specific (adaptive) immunity: T cells directly attack other cells (cellular immunity); B cells release antibodies (humoral immunity); natural killer cells are similar to T cells but nonspecific	Initial cells originate in bone marrow, but secondary production occurs in lymphatic tissue, several distinct subtypes; memory cells form after exposure to a pathogen and rapidly increase responses to subsequent exposure; lifespan of many years
	Monocytes	455 (200–950)	Largest leukocyte with an indented or horseshoe-shaped nucleus	Very effective phagocytic cells engulfing pathogens or worn out cells; also serve as antigen-presenting cells (APCs) for other components of the immune system	Produced in red bone marrow; referred to as macrophages after leaving circulation
Platelets		350,000 (150,000–500,000)	Cellular fragments surrounded by a plasma membrane and containing granules; purple stain	Hemostasis plus release growth factors for repair and healing of tissue	Formed from megakaryocytes that remain in the red bone marrow and shed platelets into circulation

Figure 9 | Summary of Formed Elements in Blood | [13]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 8.9: Leukocytes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

8.10: Platelets

Platelets are unique cellular components in the blood, playing an essential role in preventing excessive bleeding when blood vessels are damaged. Their dynamic nature and complex internal structure enable them to react swiftly and effectively to preserve the integrity of the circulatory system. Unlike typical cells, platelets are small cytoplasmic fragments with diameters ranging from 2 to 4 µm. These critical components are central to maintaining **hemostasis**, the process that halts bleeding by forming clots at sites of vascular injury.

Platelets have a relatively short lifespan, circulating in the blood for an average of 8 to 12 days before being removed by macrophages in organs such as the spleen, liver, and bone marrow. About one-third of the body's platelets are sequestered in the spleen, acting as a reserve. This reservoir ensures that platelets can be rapidly released when needed for clot formation and blood vessel repair, particularly during times of injury or high demand.

Thrombopoiesis is the process of the formation of platelets, which begins with HSCs in the bone marrow. HSCs differentiate into **myeloid stem cells**, which are progenitors for several blood cell lines, including the one responsible for platelet formation. From the myeloid stem cells, the next step in platelet production involves differentiation into a more specialized precursor cell called a **megakaryoblast**. The megakaryoblast is an immature, early-stage cell that will eventually give rise to **megakaryocytes**. Megakaryocytes grow to an enormous size through a process called **endomitosis**, where their DNA replicates multiple times without cell division, leading to a large, lobulated nucleus. This prepares the megakaryocyte for the final stages of platelet production. The mature megakaryocyte then extends long, branching cytoplasmic extensions called **proplatelets** into the blood vessels within the bone marrow. These proplatelets gradually fragment at their ends, releasing thousands of **platelets** into the bloodstream (Figure 10). Throughout this process, **thrombopoietin**, produced primarily by the liver, plays a key role in regulating megakaryocyte and platelet production, ensuring that platelet levels remain balanced to support proper hemostasis.[6]

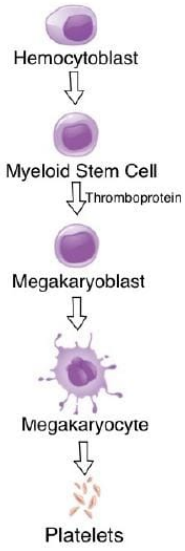


Figure 10 | Thrombopoiesis | [5] This figure depicts the process of platelet formation, known as thrombopoiesis, from hematopoietic stem cells in the bone marrow. The hemocytoblast, a multipotent stem cell, gives rise to various blood cell types, including the myeloid stem cell, which serves as a progenitor for multiple blood cell lineages, including platelets. The megakaryoblast, derived from the myeloid stem cell, matures into a megakaryocyte—a large, multinucleated cell that fragments into small platelet units. Thrombopoietin, a regulatory hormone, plays a crucial role in stimulating platelet production throughout this differentiation process.

Platelets contain secretory vesicles filled with various bioactive molecules, including enzymes, hormones, and signaling molecules. They also possess **delta (dense) granules**, which are rich in ADP (a key molecule in platelet activation and aggregation), ATP, calcium ions (referred to as **factor IV**), serotonin (which activates nearby platelets), histamine, and epinephrine. Additionally, **alpha granules** carry essential components such as **von Willebrand factor (vWF)**, fibrinogen,

fibronectin, **platelet factor-4**, and **platelet derived growth factor** (**PDGF**), all of which are critical for repairing damaged blood vessel walls and contributing to the clotting process. Platelets also contain contractile proteins like actin and myosin, which play an important role in platelet plug formation by facilitating contraction during clot formation. Furthermore, platelets secrete prostaglandins, including **thromboxane A_2 (TXA_2)**, a molecule that attracts and activates platelets. TXA_2 also indirectly promotes coagulation by encouraging the synthesis of **thrombin**, an enzyme that converts fibrinogen to fibrin, and by supporting the action of **procoagulants**, such as **factor XIII**, which stabilizes clots by cross-linking fibrin. Platelets also release **anticoagulants** and **fibrinolytics**, maintaining a balance in the clotting process.[14]

This page titled 8.10: Platelets is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

8.11: Hemostasis

Hemostasis is most efficient in the smaller blood vessels, specifically arterioles and venules where the body can swiftly respond to injuries and minimize blood loss. On the other hand, when an injury occurs in an artery, it typically leads to more substantial blood loss compared to damage in a vein. This discrepancy arises due to variations in blood pressure and the distinct characteristics of arterial and venous vessels.

Under normal physiological conditions, several key mechanisms prevent the inappropriate formation of blood clots. **Nitric oxide (NO)**, produced by endothelial cells lining the blood vessels, acts as a vasodilator that helps clear procoagulant factors and reduces the likelihood of platelet adhesion, aggregation, and fibrinogen binding. NO accomplishes this by inhibiting the **TXA_2 receptor**, which is involved in platelet activation. Additionally, endothelial cells, which line the innermost layer of the blood vessel walls, produce **prostacyclin**, a prostaglandin with vasodilatory effects. Prostacyclin disrupts platelet adhesion and aggregation by inhibiting the binding of **vWF**, the activation of TXA_2, and the release of platelet granules. Basophils and mast cells also contribute to clot prevention by releasing heparin, which forms a protective glycocalyx coat on the inner surface of blood vessels. This glycocalyx layer acts as a barrier that prevents platelets from adhering to the vessel walls, inhibiting the initiation of clot formation. Together, these natural mechanisms keep blood in a non-clotting state under normal circumstances, ensuring smooth blood flow and preventing the formation of harmful clots within healthy vessels.

When an injury or surgical intervention occurs, it damages blood vessels and initiates a complex, multi-step process that halts bleeding and ultimately dissolves the clot (Figure 11). This process, known as **hemostasis**, consists of several tightly regulated stages including **vascular constriction**, **platelet plug formation**, and **coagulation** (**blood clotting**) (Figure 12). Any malfunction or failure in these steps can lead to hemorrhage, characterized by uncontrolled bleeding. The key players in hemostasis are endothelial cells, platelets, and clotting factors.[15]

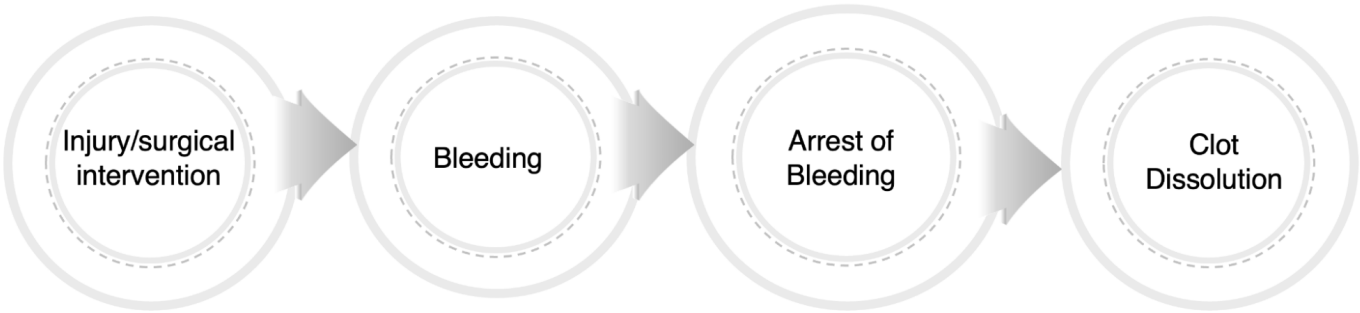


Figure 11 | A Typical Response to Injury | The sequential steps of hemostasis following injury or surgical intervention begins with the initial insult, leading to bleeding. This is followed by the body's natural mechanisms to arrest the bleeding and ultimately dissolve the clot after healing is complete.

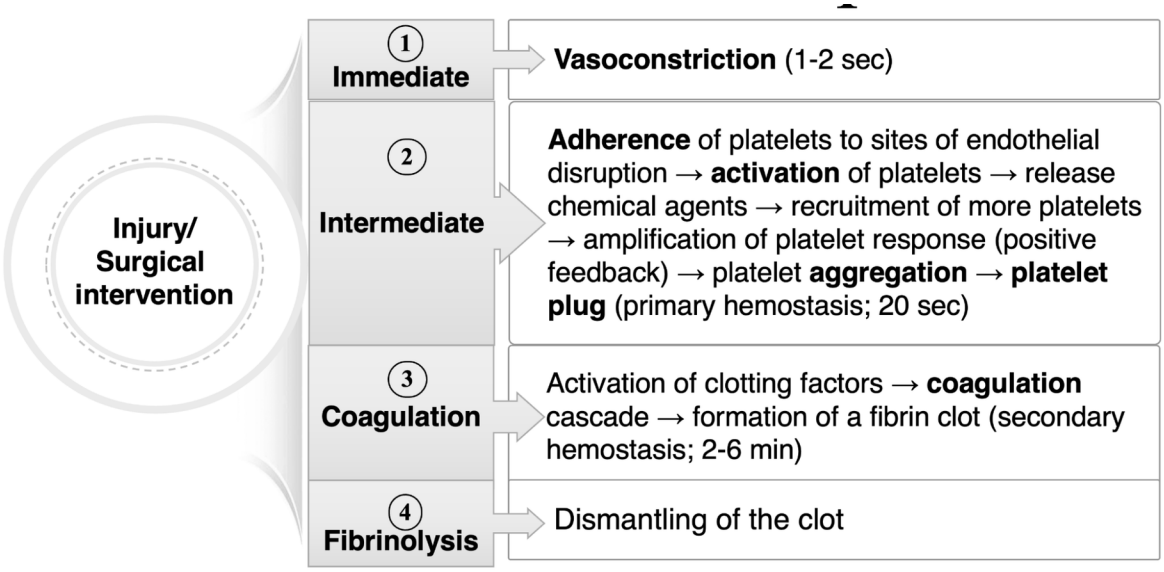


Figure 12 | Summary of the Steps involved in Hemostasis | A schematic diagram illustrating the sequential steps of hemostasis after injury or surgical intervention. This process includes: (1) immediate vasoconstriction to reduce blood flow (1-2 seconds), (2) the formation of a platelet plug (primary hemostasis; 20 seconds), (3) the activation of the coagulation cascade leading to a fibrin clot (secondary hemostasis; 2-6 minutes), and (4) fibrinolysis, the breakdown of the clot.

Vascular Spasm

Vasoconstriction, a critical component of the hemostasis process, plays a pivotal role in preventing excessive blood loss following an injury or surgical intervention. When a vessel is damaged or a surgical procedure is performed, a sequence of events unfolds to initiate vasoconstriction and maintain vascular integrity. Traumatized tissues, along with sensory impulses such as pain signals, release various chemical substances into the surrounding environment. The body's neurogenic and myogenic reflexes come into play as a response to the injury or surgical trauma. These reflexes help initiate the vasoconstrictive process. Endothelial cells respond to the injury by releasing specific vasoconstrictor agents, such as **endothelins**. Simultaneously, there is a decrease in vasodilators and **anticoagulants** (such as **thrombomodulin** and heparin, which prevent blood clot formation). This loss further contributes to vasoconstriction. The immediate result of these coordinated actions is the initiation of a vascular spasm, which occurs remarkably quickly, typically within one to two seconds after the injury (Figure 14). The contraction of the smooth muscle lining within the vessel wall drives this spasm.

The vascular spasm response, generally lasting for about 30 minutes, is a crucial early step in hemostasis, although in some cases, it can persist for extended periods, potentially lasting hours. Overall, vasoconstriction serves as a rapid and effective mechanism to reduce blood flow to the injured area, contributing significantly to the prevention of blood loss and facilitating subsequent stages of the hemostatic process.[15]

Formation of the Platelet Plug

In the second stage of hemostasis, **platelet plug formation**, platelets, which normally circulate freely in the plasma, respond rapidly to injury. This stage involves three key steps: **platelet activation, adhesion,** and **aggregation**. Activated platelets adhere to the exposed site of injury, then clump together, forming a platelet plug that is crucial for stopping blood loss and initiating the clotting process.

Injury or surgical intervention exposes the subendothelial matrix within the blood vessel. The subendothelial matrix becomes accessible to platelets, attracting them to the site of injury. Platelets bind to the exposed collagen within the subendothelial matrix through a specialized plasma protein known as vWF. This adhesion is mediated by the glycoprotein complex **GP Ib-IX-V** and **GP VI** surface receptors. The initial platelet adhesion to collagen activates further platelets to join the growing plug, initiating a positive feedback mechanism. As platelets adhere, they become activated. This process leads to the release of contents from platelet granules, including **ADP, serotonin, and thromboxane A2 (TxA2)**. Activation of **GP IIb/IIIa** allows for fibrinogen binding, facilitating platelet aggregation.The activation of PLC results in the production of IP3, which triggers the

release of calcium ions, catalyzing the release of contents from dense and alpha granules. This initiates a positive feedback loop that activates additional platelets. Concurrently, DAG and PKC contribute to a rearrangement of the platelet cytoskeleton, transforming the platelets into a flat and spiky shape that enhances their ability to bind to vWF. Additionally, **phospholipase A2** is activated, leading to the release of **arachidonic acid**, which is converted into TxA2 with the aid of **cyclooxygenase-1** (**COX-1**). This compound further promotes platelet activation. Inflammatory agents released at the injury site cause platelets to swell and display receptors, such as **GpIb** and **GPIIb-GpIIIa**, facilitating the release of ADP and the production of TXA_2. This process uncovers fibrinogen receptors on the platelet surface, allowing fibrinogen (**factor I**) to link platelets together and form a platelet plug. The activation of new platelets continues to enhance this positive feedback loop, leading to the cross-linking of more platelets and reinforcing the platelet plug.

A critical event in this process is the formation of the **GpIIb-GpIIIa receptor complex**, which links activated platelets together (Figure 13). The linked and activated platelets clump together, resulting in platelet aggregation (Figure 14). This aggregation renders the platelets spiky and sticky, enhancing their adhesive properties. The cumulative effect of platelet aggregation is the formation of the **primary platelet plug**. This plug helps block the breach in the blood vessel, acting as the first line of defense against excessive bleeding. The formation of this primary platelet plug is the initial defense against blood loss, preventing excessive bleeding and setting the stage for the subsequent stages of hemostasis. Actin and myosin contraction within the platelets further stabilize the plug by enhancing its strength during the healing process. In addition, fibronectin and PDGF contribute to repairing damaged vessel walls, supporting tissue regeneration and repair.[16]

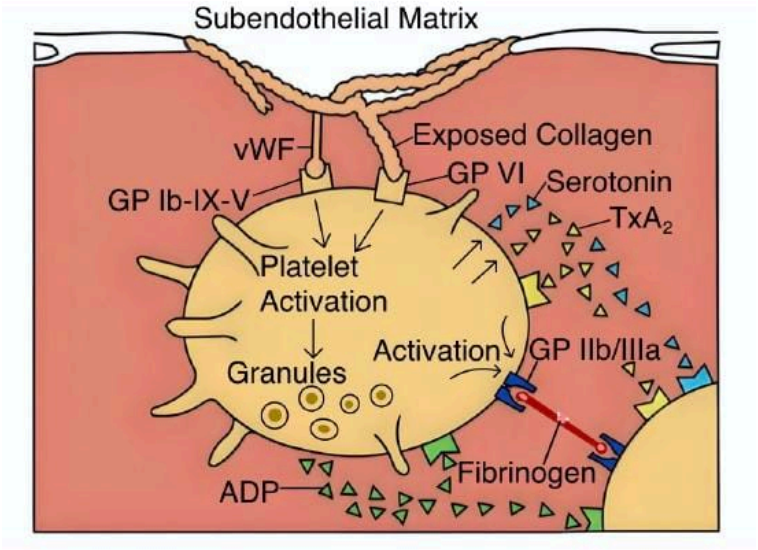


Figure 13 | Activation of Platelets | Illustration of platelet activation and aggregation. Following vascular injury, platelets adhere to exposed collagen in the subendothelial matrix via von Willebrand factor (vWF) and glycoprotein Ib-IX-V (GP Ib-IX-V). This triggers platelet activation, leading to the release of granules containing ADP, serotonin, and thromboxane A2 (TxA2). Activation of glycoprotein IIb/IIIa (GP IIb/IIIa) allows for fibrinogen binding, facilitating platelet aggregation and the formation of a platelet plug.

Coagulation

Coagulation, also known as blood clotting, is the foremost and most dominant hemostatic defense mechanism against blood loss. This intricate and precisely regulated process is essential for preventing excessive bleeding and plays a pivotal role in wound healing. Coagulation is characterized by a highly orchestrated sequence of events, often referred to as the **coagulation cascade**. This cascade is initiated upon injury and leads to the activation of a series of clotting factors. These factors act in a precise order, each triggering the next in line, much like a cascade of falling dominos. The ultimate aim of this cascade is to generate a meshwork of insoluble fibrin strands that serve as the framework for the blood clot. The culmination of the coagulation cascade is the formation of fibrin strands. Fibrin is an insoluble filamentous protein that forms a mesh-like structure at the site of injury. This fibrin mesh traps blood cells, including platelets, creating a cohesive and sturdy clot that seals the breach in the blood vessel. This process is instrumental in limiting blood loss and initiating the healing process.

One of the critical aspects of coagulation is its specificity and localization. The coagulation cascade and subsequent fibrin formation are confined to the precise location of the vessel injury. This spatial precision ensures that clot formation occurs exclusively where it is needed, preventing the formation of unwanted clots within intact blood vessels, a condition known as **thrombosis**. Within the coagulation cascade, a group of chemical agents, predominantly serine proteases known as **clotting factors** (or **coagulation factors**), initiate a series of reactions that, in turn, activate additional coagulation factors. While intricate, this process initiates along two pathways, the **extrinsic or tissue factor pathway** that is typically set in motion by traumatic injury and the **intrinsic pathway** which is triggered by internal damage to the vessel wall. These pathways eventually converge into a third pathway known as the **common pathway**, as illustrated in Figure 13. All three pathways rely on the participation of 12 well-established clotting factors, including calcium ions and **vitamin K**, as outlined in Table 2. The liver and platelets primarily produce these clotting factors.[17]

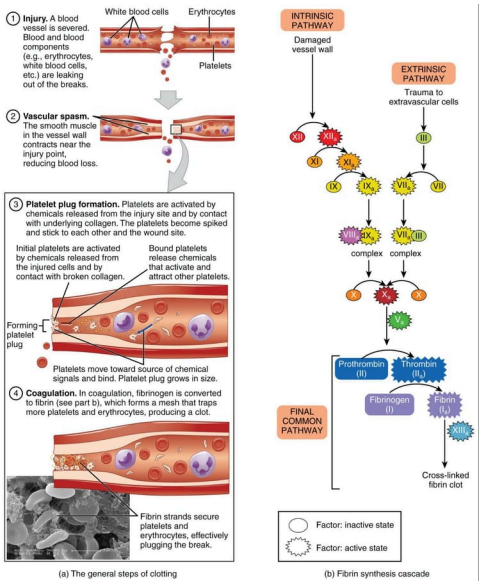


Figure 14 | Overview of hemostasis | [18] (a) Depicts the sequential stages of blood clotting: injury, vascular spasm, platelet plug formation (highlighting platelet activation and aggregation), and coagulation (showing fibrin mesh formation). (b) Illustrates the coagulation cascade, including the intrinsic, extrinsic, and common pathways, culminating in the conversion of fibrinogen to fibrin and the formation of a cross-linked fibrin clot.

Clotting Factors

Clotting factors are a group of serine proteases, which are enzymes involved in the coagulation process. These proteases play a pivotal role in the cascade of events that lead to the formation of blood clots. Several clotting factors rely on vitamin K for their proper functioning. Specifically, factors II (prothrombin), VII, IX, and X require vitamin K as a cofactor. Vitamin K ensures that these factors are appropriately activated and functional in the coagulation process. Bile salts are essential for the absorption of vitamin K from the large intestine.

Clotting factors exhibit varying half-lives in the bloodstream, reflecting differences in their stability and turnover. Typically, most clotting factors have a half-life ranging from 1.5 to 3 days, ensuring their presence in circulation for an adequate duration. Notably, factor VII has a shorter half-life of approximately 6 hours, while cofactors V and VIII have slightly longer half-lives of 8 to 12 hours.

The 12 clotting factors are assigned Roman numerals I through XIII, not necessarily in the order of their activation but according to the sequence of their discovery. Factor VI was initially considered a distinct clotting factor but is now believed to be identical to factor V. Instead of renumbering the other factors, factor VI was retained as a placeholder. Vitamin K, unlike most vitamins, is not solely obtained through dietary sources; it is also synthesized by bacteria residing in the large intestine. Calcium ions, denoted as factor IV, are acquired from dietary intake and bone resorption.[19]

Table 2 | *Clotting Factors* |

Clotting Factor Number	Clotting Factor Name	Type of Molecule	Location	Source Pathway(s)
I	Fibrinogen	Plasma protein	Liver	Common; Converted into fibrin
II	Prothrombin	Plasma Protein	Liver	Common; Converted into thrombin
III	Tissue Thromboplastin or Tissue Factor	Lipoprotein mixture	Damaged cells & platelets	Extrinsic
IV	Calcium Ions	Inorganic ions in plasma	Diet, platelets, bone matrix	Entire process
V	Proaccelerin	Plasma protein	Liver, platelets	Extrinsic and intrinsic
VII	Proconvertin	Plasma protein	Liver	Extrinsic
VIII	Antihemolytic Factor A	Plasma protein	Platelets and endothelial cells	Intrinsic; Deficiency results in Hemophilia A
IX	Antihemolytic Factor B (Plasma Thromboplastin Component)	Plasma protein	Liver	Intrinsic; Deficiency results in Hemophilia B
X	Stuart–prower Factor (thrombokinase)	Plasma protein	Liver	Extrinsic and intrinsic
XI	Antihemolytic Factor C (Plasma Thromboplastin Antecedent)	Plasma protein	Liver	Intrinsic; Deficiency results in hemophilia C
XII	Hageman Factor	Plasma protein	Liver	Intrinsic; Initiates clotting in vitro; also activates plasmin

Extrinsic Pathway

The more rapid and direct response, the extrinsic or tissue factor pathway, is initiated when damage occurs to the surrounding tissues, often due to traumatic injury. In this pathway, extravascular cells located outside the bloodstream are exposed to blood plasma and release a substance called **factor III** (**thromboplastin**). Factor III then triggers a sequence of events involving the addition of calcium ions and factor VII (proconvertin), which is activated by factor III. These components come together to form an enzyme complex. This enzyme complex subsequently activates factor X, setting in motion the common pathway. Notably, the events in the extrinsic pathway occur rapidly, typically within seconds. The sequence of events in the extrinsic pathway can be summarized as follows:

Tissue trauma → Release of tissue thromboplastin (or tissue factor) + Factor VII + Membrane phospholipid + Calcium ions → Activation of Factor X.

Intrinsic Pathway

The intrinsic pathway is a more intricate and extended process involving numerous clotting factors that are inherent to the blood. While it can be initiated by tissue damage, such as that caused by arterial disease, it is most commonly triggered when factor XII comes into contact with foreign substances, such as when blood is placed in a glass test tube. Within the body, factor XII becomes activated when it encounters negatively charged molecules, including inorganic polymers and phosphate generated earlier in the sequence of reactions within the intrinsic pathway. Factor XII initiates a series of reactions that subsequently activate factor XI, followed by factor IX (or plasma thromboplastin). Simultaneously, chemicals released by platelets enhance the speed of these activation reactions. Ultimately, factor VIII from platelets and endothelial cells combines with factor IX (antihemolytic factor B or plasma thromboplastin) to form an enzyme complex that activates factor X, initiating the common pathway. The events within the intrinsic pathway typically conclude within a few minutes.

Common Pathway

The intrinsic and extrinsic pathways ultimately converge into a shared route, aptly named the common pathway. This pathway leads to the production of fibrin, which is crucial for sealing off the vessel. Once factor X has been activated through the intrinsic or extrinsic pathway, the enzyme prothrombinase catalyzes the conversion of factor II, an inactive enzyme known as prothrombin, into the active enzyme thrombin. Thrombin must normally exist in an inactive form in circulation; otherwise, clots would spontaneously form, which is incompatible with life. Subsequently, thrombin transforms factor I, the insoluble fibrinogen, into soluble fibrin protein strands. Factor XIII then plays a pivotal role in stabilizing the fibrin clot (Figure 13). Within the stabilized clot, contractile proteins contract, exerting force on the fibrin threads, akin to tightening shoelaces. This contraction process not only brings the clot's edges closer together but also expels a small amount of fluid called serum, which is essentially blood plasma minus its clotting factors.[17]

Table 3 | *Clotting Factors and their Mechanisms* |

Clotting Factors	Mechanisms of action
Vitamin K	Needed as a cofactor in the production of many clotting factors by the liver.
Calcium Ion	Needed in the formation of prothrombin activator which activates the common pathway; also acts with factor VIII during clot retraction.
Prostacyclin (PGI2)	Prevents platelet adhesion and therefore clotting cascade from taking place.
Thrombin	Activates platelets, endothelial cells, leukocytes; removes pairs of polypeptides to form the fibrin monomer. Thrombin also activates plasminogen into plasmin.

Clotting Factors	Mechanisms of action
Thrombomodulin	Slows the effect of thrombin. Activates protein C when combined with thrombin.
Heparin	Increases the action of antithrombin III 100 to 1000-fold.
Antithrombin III	A serine protease inhibitor that inhibits proteases IX through XII. Its inhibitory function is greatly increased when bound to heparin.
ADP	Provides a sticky coat on the surface of the platelet helping them stick to one another.
Serotonin	Constriction of the vessel.
Thromboxane A2	Attracts more platelets to the site of injury; vasoconstriction.
Tissue Plasminogen Activator (tPA)	Converts plasminogen to plasmin.
Warfarin	Inactivates vitamin K, causing clotting factors to not be present in the blood.
Plasmin	Digests fibrinogen, factor V, factor VIII, factor XIII, and prothrombin.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Blood Coagulation Tests

From a clinical perspective, the time required for blood to clot is a valuable indicator of the proper functioning of platelets, clotting factors, and other components involved in the clotting process. This measurement is known as **bleeding time**, and in a typical scenario, it should be between 2 to 6 minutes.

Thrombin time is employed to assess fibrinogen concentration, while **prothrombin time** (**PT**) gauges the time taken to form a clot when tissue thromboplastin is present. Normally, PT falls within the range of 12 to 14 seconds. PT is frequently employed to evaluate the extrinsic and common pathways, which involve factors II, V, VII, and X, as well as vitamin K, and is used in monitoring patients on warfarin therapy (Figure 15).

Another relevant parameter is the **activated partial thromboplastin time** (aPTT), which measures the time needed to form a clot when plasma thromboplastin is introduced. This process typically takes about 30 seconds and tests the intrinsic and common pathways, including factors VIII, IX, and XI (Figure 15). aPTT is commonly utilized for patients undergoing heparin therapy. Factors must be reduced by more than 30 percent to see a change.

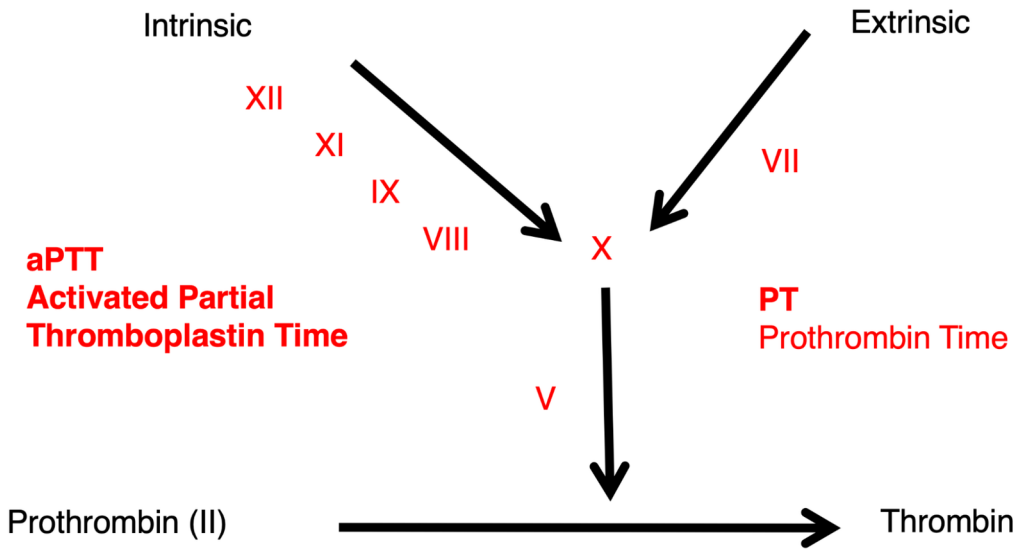


Figure 15 | Hemostasis | The coagulation cascade, showing the intrinsic pathway (Factors XII, XI, IX, VIII), extrinsic pathway (Factor VII), and the common pathway (Factors X, V, and II/Prothrombin leading to Thrombin). The associated laboratory tests, aPTT and PT, are also indicated.

The **International Normalized Ratio** (INR) is a calculated value standardizing PT results. It is determined by dividing the patient's prothrombin time by the normal mean prothrombin time. An INR reading falling between 0.9 and 1.3 is considered normal, while an elevated INR indicates anticoagulation therapy. Factors must be reduced by more than 30 percent to see a change.

Activated clotting time (**ACT**) is a laboratory test that assesses the clotting time of whole blood when diatomaceous earth is introduced to activate the intrinsic clotting pathway. It is used to monitor clotting time in response to high-dose heparin therapy. Typically, a normal ACT falls within 90 to 130 seconds. This test is commonly employed to monitor heparin therapy in the operating room. However, it is worth noting that the ACT may not be highly sensitive in detecting certain clotting abnormalities. Several factors can influence the ACT results. Conditions like **hypothermia**, **thrombocytopenia** (a low platelet count), and deficiencies in fibrinogen, factor VII, or factor XII can impact the test outcome.[20]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Regulation of Blood Clotting

The regulation of blood clotting is a multifaceted process that precisely controls clot formation to prevent both excessive bleeding and inappropriate thrombosis. This intricate regulation involves several key mechanisms. Anticoagulants, including inhibitors of coagulation factors, play a crucial role in limiting clot formation. Fibrinolytic agents, on the other hand, are responsible for breaking down existing clots. The body's ability to produce both these types of agents is essential for maintaining hemostasis and

is also leveraged commercially to create a variety of therapeutic substances used to treat various pathological conditions.

Fibrinolysis

The clot must eventually be dismantled as the healing vessel seeks to return to its normal blood flow. This gradual breakdown of the clot is known as **fibrinolysis**, and it involves a rather intricate sequence of reactions that include factor XII and protein-catabolizing enzymes. During this process, the inactive **plasminogen** protein, synthesized in the liver, undergoes activation to become **plasmin**, a proteolytic enzyme. Activation of plasmin occurs through various mechanisms, including the gradual release of tPA from injured tissue, the presence of **urokinase** produced by the kidneys, and, in specific situations, streptokinase secreted by streptococci bacteria. Plasmin then progressively disassembles the fibrin strands within the clot into smaller fibrin degradation products. Furthermore, bradykinin, a vasodilator, is released during this phase which counteracts the vasoconstrictor effects of serotonin and prostaglandins, which were initially released by the platelets. As a result, the smooth muscle in the vessel walls relaxes, restoring normal circulation.[21]

Anticoagulants

An anticoagulant is a substance that counteracts the process of coagulation. Within the circulation, various plasma anticoagulants regulate and confine coagulation to the injured region, restoring the blood to its normal, clot-free state. **Tissue factor pathway inhibitor** (**TFPI**) prevents the conversion of inactive factor VII into its active form in the extrinsic pathway. **Thrombomodulin**, expressed on endothelial cells' surface, interacts with thrombin. This interaction leads to the activation of **protein C**, a plasma protein. Once activated, protein C plays a crucial role in deactivating clotting factors VIIIa and Va. Additionally, **protein S** acts as a cofactor for protein C, and both proteins depend on vitamin K for their activity. **Antithrombin III** counters factors IX - XII and opposes the transformation of prothrombin (factor II) into thrombin within the common pathway. Additionally, as previously mentioned, basophils release heparin, a polysaccharide with short-acting anticoagulant properties. Heparin acts against prothrombin as well as factors IX through XII. Notably, heparin significantly enhances the action of antithrombin III, increasing its effectiveness by 100 to 1000-fold. When used alone, heparin, a conjugated polysaccharide, exerts limited activity unless it combines with antithrombin III. This action influences both the intrinsic and common coagulation pathways, which can be evaluated using the PTT and ACT tests. However, its effect has a short half-life, and reversal can occur within about 4 hours, particularly when overdosed. To counteract an overdose, an antagonist called **protamine** can be administered. Heparin undergoes metabolism by **heparinase**, degradation by macrophages, and renal excretion. Importantly, it does not cross the placenta, making it safe for use during childbirth. A pharmaceutical form of heparin is often administered as a therapeutic measure, particularly in surgical patients at risk of blood clots.

Low molecular weight heparins, commercially prepared, function by inhibiting factor X and have a longer half-life than heparin. They do not significantly affect the aPTT assay but are incompletely reversible with protamine. In situations requiring swift reversal, fresh frozen plasma can be employed.

Cryoprecipitate is obtained through the controlled thawing of fresh frozen plasma (FFP), leading to the precipitation of larger molecules. It primarily consists of fibrinogen and factor VIII, along with smaller quantities of factor XIII, vWF, and fibronectin. Cryoprecipitate is employed to replenish fibrinogen levels in patients experiencing acquired hypofibrinogenemia and associated bleeding, typically occurring in situations such as surgical bleeding or trauma.

Warfarin functions by inhibiting Vitamin K and impacts the extrinsic and common pathways of coagulation. It has a relatively long half-life of approximately 35 hours, necessitating several days for its effects to be reversed, partly because it binds to proteins in the blood. The impact of warfarin can be assessed through tests like the PT and the INR. Quick reversal of its anticoagulant effects can be achieved using fresh frozen plasma, which contains all procoagulants except platelets, along with Vitamin K supplementation.

Aspirin or **acetylsalicylic acid** possesses multiple biochemical activities, one of which is its anticoagulant effect. It effectively inhibits platelet aggregation. Aspirin acetylates cyclooxygenase, rendering it non-functional for an extended period (typically 4 to 7 days). This permanent inhibition prevents the conversion of arachidonic acid into TXA_2, thereby inhibiting platelet aggregation. In contrast, other NSAIDs like ibuprofen offer only temporary effects, lasting 24 to 48 hours. **Plavix**, on the other hand, is an anti-ADP agent that provides a permanent effect in inhibiting platelet function.

Fibrinolytic (**thrombolytic**) **agents** constitute a class of drugs that accelerate the degradation of abnormal clots. Administering a thrombolytic agent to a patient within three hours following a thrombotic stroke significantly improves their prognosis. However, it is crucial to distinguish between strokes caused by thrombi and those resulting from hemorrhage before commencing treatment.

tPA is an enzyme that catalyzes the conversion of plasminogen into plasmin, the primary enzyme responsible for clot breakdown. While it is naturally released by endothelial cells, it is also utilized in clinical medicine. Urokinase and streptokinase are two other fibrinolytic agents that activate plasminogen, thereby enhancing the breakdown of fibrin.[22]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 8.11: Hemostasis is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

8.12: References

1. Barrett, K. E., Brooks, H. L., Yuan, J. X., & Bullock, B. L. (2019). *Ganong's Review of Medical Physiology*. (26th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.

2. El Brihi J, Pathak S. Normal and Abnormal Complete Blood Count With Differential. [Updated 2024 Jun 8]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from:https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK604207/

3. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 18.2 Composition of Blood. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/7fa48eed7793f19b4120a18fbd89b434fe2d1274]

4. Hall, J. E. (2020). *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. (14th ed.). Elsevier.

5. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 18.4 Hematopoietic System of Bone Marrow. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/b97929a2a971004a37d547f85bda626c407dc574]

6. Kaushansky, K., Lichtman, M. A., Prchal, J. T., West, C. D., Kipps, T. J., & Seligsohn, U. (Eds.). (2021). *Williams Hematology*. (10th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.

7. Socha, A. (2017, December 17). Human red blood cells. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/37/Red_Blood_Cell.jpg]

8. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 18.7 Hemoglobin. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/77d1defdd1bc3c0e72e371fbb841ab81cba640ee]

9. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 18.8 Erythrocyte Lifecycle. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/e8386446b36358889e9988cf8e77ead8abe841a8]

10. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 18.10 Emigration. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/f242e57c593ac3308297d2d128d5b70ee4440aa3]

11. BruceBlaus. (2013, September 11). White Blood Cells [Image]. Retrieved from [https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/1/1f/Blausen_0909_WhiteBloodCells.png]

12. Kassiana Mafra, Brenda Naemi Nakagaki, Hortência Maciel Castro Oliveira, Rafael Machado Rezende, Maísa Mota Antunes, Gustavo Batista Menezes, The liver as a nursery for leukocytes, *Journal of Leukocyte Biology*, Volume 106, Issue 3, Sep 2019, Pages 687–693, https://doi.org/10.1002/JLB.MR1118-455R

13. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 18.5 Summary of Formed Elements in Blood In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20231109.173216/resources/f42d5a1ae3df42ef3a315aab7e391e8a9e23a0bb]

14. Golebiewska EM, Poole AW. Platelet secretion: From haemostasis to wound healing and beyond. Blood Rev. 2015 May;29(3):153-62. doi: 10.1016/j.blre.2014.10.003. Epub 2014 Oct 31. PMID: 25468720; PMCID: PMC4452143.

15. LaPelusa A, Dave HD. Physiology, Hemostasis. [Updated 2023 May 1]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK545263/

16. Periayah MH, Halim AS, Mat Saad AZ. Mechanism Action of Platelets and Crucial Blood Coagulation Pathways in Hemostasis. Int J Hematol Oncol Stem Cell Res. 2017 Oct 1;11(4):319-327. PMID: 29340130; PMCID: PMC5767294.

17. Chaudhry R, Usama SM, Babiker HM. Physiology, Coagulation Pathways. [Updated 2023 Aug 28]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK482253/

18. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 18.14 Hemostasis. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240226.174525/resources/f8d6035d3435b9b89f34052b3814d18414fe07de]

19. Barmore W, Bajwa T, Burns B. Biochemistry, Clotting Factors. [Updated 2023 Feb 24]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK507850/

20. Raber MN. Coagulation Tests. In: Walker HK, Hall WD, Hurst JW, editors. Clinical Methods: The History, Physical, and Laboratory Examinations. 3rd edition. Boston: Butterworths; 1990. Chapter 157. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK265/

21. Risman RA, Kirby NC, Bannish BE, Hudson NE, Tutwiler V. Fibrinolysis: an illustrated review. Res Pract Thromb Haemost. 2023 Feb 17;7(2):100081. doi: 10.1016/j.rpth.2023.100081. PMID: 36942151; PMCID: PMC10024051.

22. Raffaele De Caterina, Steen Husted, Lars Wallentin, Giancarlo Agnelli, Fedor Bachmann, Colin Baigent, Jørgen Jespersen, Steen Dalby Kristensen, Gilles Montalescot, Agneta Siegbahn, Freek W.A. Verheugt, Jeffrey Weitz, Anticoagulants in heart disease: current status and perspectives, *European Heart Journal*, Volume 28, Issue 7, April 2007, Pages 880–913, https://doi.org/10.1093/eurheartj/ehl492

This page titled 8.12: References is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9: THE HEART

9.1: Objectives

9.2: Introduction

9.3: Location of the Heart

9.4: The Pericardium

9.5: Layers of the Heart Wall

9.6: External Anatomy of the Heart

9.7: Internal Anatomy of the Heart

9.8: Blood Supply to the Heart

9.9: Cardiac Muscle

9.10: Conduction System of the Heart

9.11: Electrophysiology of Cardiac Pacemaker Cells

9.12: Electrophysiology of Cardiac Contractile Cells

9.13: Electrocardiogram (ECG)

9.14: Cardiac Cycle

9.15: Heart Rate, Stroke Volume, and Cardiac Output

9.16: Cardiac Reserve

9.17: References

This page titled 9: The Heart is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- Describe the external details, size, and location of the heart.
- Explain the internal anatomy, including the chambers, valves, and layers within the wall.
- Illustrate the step-by-step flow of blood through the heart until ejection.
- Discuss the concept of coronary circulation and its significance.
- Identify challenges associated with coronary circulation and potential complications.
- Summarize the mechanisms of autoregulation that influence coronary circulation.
- Define the key characteristics of cardiac muscle fibers.
- Differentiate the electrical activity within cardiac conductive (pacemaker) cells from cardiac contractile cells.
- Enumerate the components of the cardiac conduction system and identify the normal pacemaker of the heart.
- Analyze the purpose and interpretation of an electrocardiogram (ECG).
- Identify the sources of calcium for muscle contraction.
- Correlate electrical events from depolarization to repolarization with mechanical changes, pressure variations, and blood flow adjustments during a normal cardiac cycle.
- Define cardiac output and outline methods of its measurement.
- Describe the regulation of each component influencing cardiac output.
- Explain the implications of the Frank-Starling law of the heart in cardiac function.
- Define preload and afterload and their relevance to cardiac output.
- Elaborate on the impact of the parasympathetic and sympathetic nervous systems on heart rate.
- Differentiate how potassium and calcium ions separately affect the contractility of the heart.

This page titled 9.1: Objectives is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.2: Introduction

The human heart demonstrates remarkable efficiency in its pumping capacity. With an average heart rate of 75 beats per minute, it carries out approximately 100,000 contractions every day, exceeding 39 million beats annually, and 3 billion beats over a 75-year lifespan. In each heartbeat cycle, every heart chamber propels around 70 mL of blood in a resting adult. The overall output accumulates to a rate of 5.25 liters of blood per minute and an impressive 14,000 liters per day. Across a year, this cumulative output amounts to an astonishing 10,000,000 liters or 2.6 million gallons of blood. This immense quantity of blood flows through a network of vessels extending approximately 60,000 miles throughout the body.[1]

This page titled 9.2: Introduction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.3: Location of the Heart

Positioned within the thoracic cavity, the heart is in the center, nestled between the lungs. This area, known as the **mediastinum**, houses the heart (Figure 1). The heart is set apart from neighboring structures in the mediastinum by a membrane called the **pericardium** or **pericardial sac**. This protective layer encases the heart in its own compartment called the **pericardial cavity**. [2]

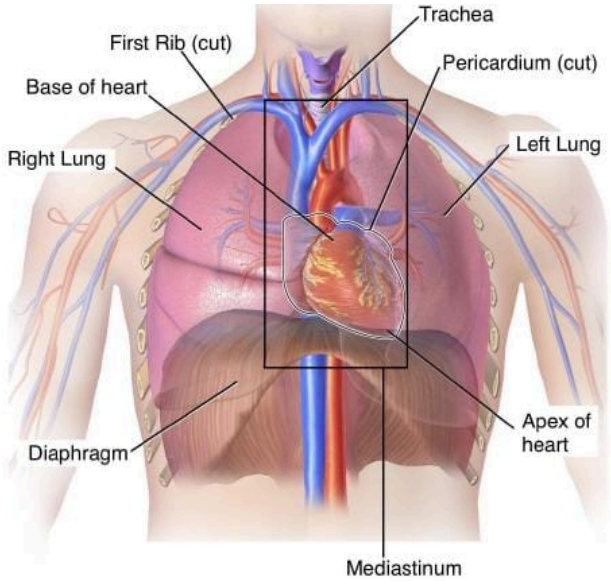


Figure 1 | Location of the Heart in the Thoracic Cavity | [3] The heart is located within the thoracic cavity, specifically in the central compartment known as the mediastinum. This figure illustrates the heart's position relative to surrounding structures, including the lungs, highlighting its protected placement within the chest.

This page titled 9.3: Location of the Heart is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.4: The Pericardium

The pericardium, meaning "around the heart," is a double-layered connective tissue membrane that encases the heart like a protective sac. This membrane is also known as the pericardial sac. The **parietal pericardium** is the outer layer consisting of dense connective tissue, protecting the heart and upholding its position within the thoracic cavity. On the other hand, the inner layer, the **visceral pericardium** or **epicardium**, is affixed to the heart and forms a part of the heart's wall. Pericardial cavity is the space between the visceral and the parietal pericardium. Notably, the pericardium secretes a small volume of serous fluid, which fills the pericardial cavity and envelopes both layers. This fluid acts as a lubricant, minimizing friction during the expansion and contraction of the heart.[4]

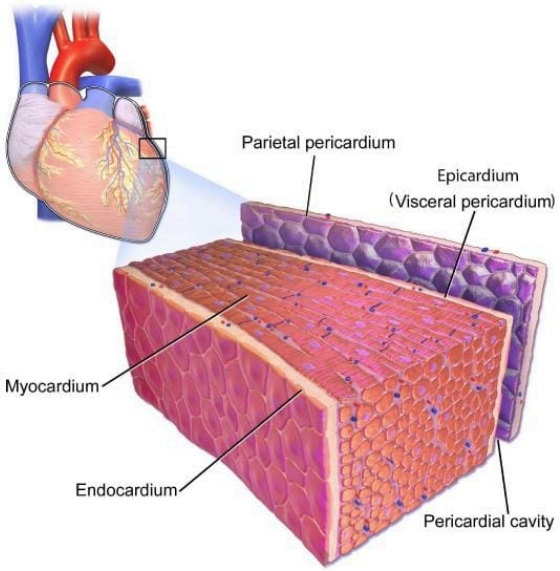


Figure 2 | Pericardial Membranes and Layers of the Heart Wall | [5] This figure illustrates the pericardial membranes and the layers of the heart wall. The outermost layer, the parietal pericardium, is shown as part of the protective pericardial sac that encloses the heart. The visceral pericardium, also referred to as the epicardium, forms the innermost layer of the pericardial membrane and is directly attached to the surface of the heart. The pericardial cavity lies between these layers and contains a small amount of serous fluid that reduces friction during the movement of the heart. Additionally, the layers of the heart wall—the epicardium, myocardium, and endocardium—are depicted, highlighting the structural relationships among them.

This page titled 9.4: The Pericardium is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.5: Layers of the Heart Wall

The wall of the heart consists of three distinct layers, each varying in thickness. These layers, arranged from the outermost to the innermost, are the epicardium, **myocardium**, and **endocardium**, as shown in Figure 2. The outer layer, known as the epicardium, serves as both the surface layer of the heart and the innermost layer of the pericardium, referred to as the visceral pericardium.

The middle layer, myocardium, dominates in thickness. It consists of cardiac muscle fibers, as well as a network of blood vessels and nerve fibers, all contributing to the efficient pumping action of the heart. The contraction of the myocardium drives blood through the heart and into the major arteries, facilitating its distribution throughout the body.

In Figure 3, a unique muscle arrangement characteristic of cardiac muscle is shown. This arrangement forms a swirling pattern around the heart chambers, creating a figure 8 configuration between the atria and ventricles. This distinctive pattern contributes to the resilience of the heart under stress and enhances its capability to pump blood efficiently.[6]

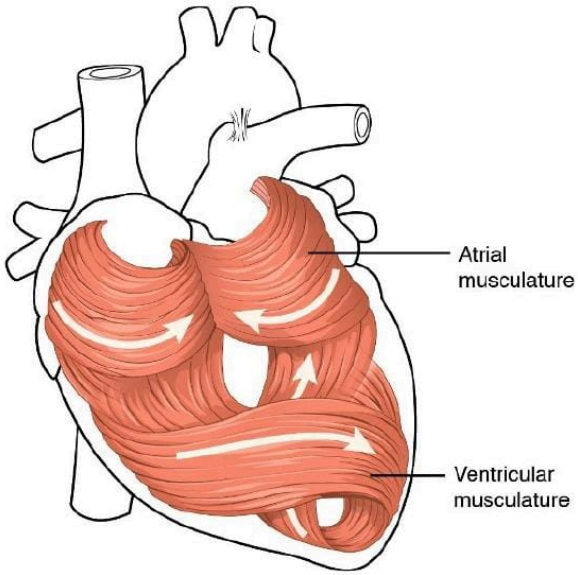


Figure 3 | Musculature of the Heart | [7] The swirling pattern of cardiac muscle tissue contributes significantly to the heart's ability to pump blood effectively.

Although both the right and left ventricles expel the same volume of blood per contraction, the muscle lining the left ventricle is notably thicker compared to the right ventricle. This difference arises because the left ventricle must generate significantly higher pressure to overcome the resistance necessary for propelling blood throughout the extensive systemic circuit. Conversely, the right ventricle does not require as much pressure generation, given the shorter pulmonary circuit and lower resistance. Figure 4 portrays the variations in muscular thickness between these two ventricles.

The endocardium is a delicate layer of connective tissue that lines the chambers of the heart and envelops the valves.[8]

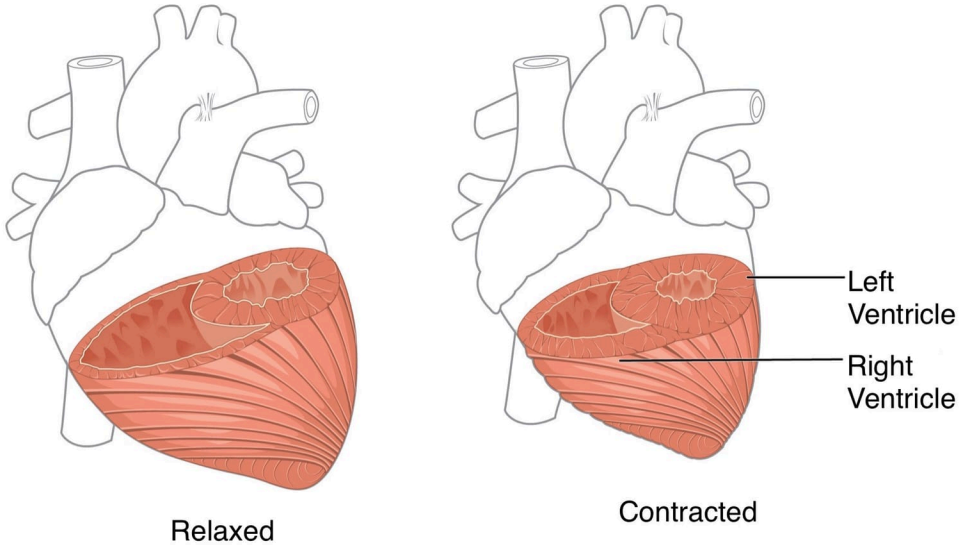


Figure 4 | Differences in Ventricular Muscle Thickness | [9] This figure illustrates the differences in muscle thickness between the right and left ventricles of the heart. The left ventricle is shown with significantly thicker muscle compared to the right ventricle. This increased thickness is necessary for generating higher pressure to overcome the resistance of the systemic circuit. In contrast, the right ventricle, which pumps blood through the shorter pulmonary circuit with lower resistance, has relatively thinner muscle.

This page titled 9.5: Layers of the Heart Wall is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.6: External Anatomy of the Heart

The fully developed heart in adults has an average weight ranging from 250 to 350 grams (9 to 12 ounces), with dimensions of approximately 12 cm (5 inches) in length, 8 cm (3.5 inches) in width, and 6 cm (2.5 inches) in thickness. In the context of well-trained athletes, the heart's size can be notably larger due to the exercise-induced addition of muscle proteins, enhancing its blood-pumping capacity. Nonetheless, it is vital to recognize that heart thickening does not always stem from exercise; it can also arise due to conditions like **hypertrophic cardiomyopathy**. This condition, characterized by abnormal heart thickening, poses a risk of sudden death in seemingly healthy young individuals.

Considering its shape, the heart boasts a broader area at its upper surface, termed the **base**, which gradually narrows as it extends to the **apex**, as depicted in Figure 5. The base aligns with the third costal cartilage level, while the apex is positioned between the fourth and fifth ribs.

The cardiac muscle receives nourishment from the right and left **coronary arteries** to sustain its function. These arteries branch into progressively smaller vessels, ultimately delivering oxygen-rich blood and essential nutrients to the myocardium.[10]

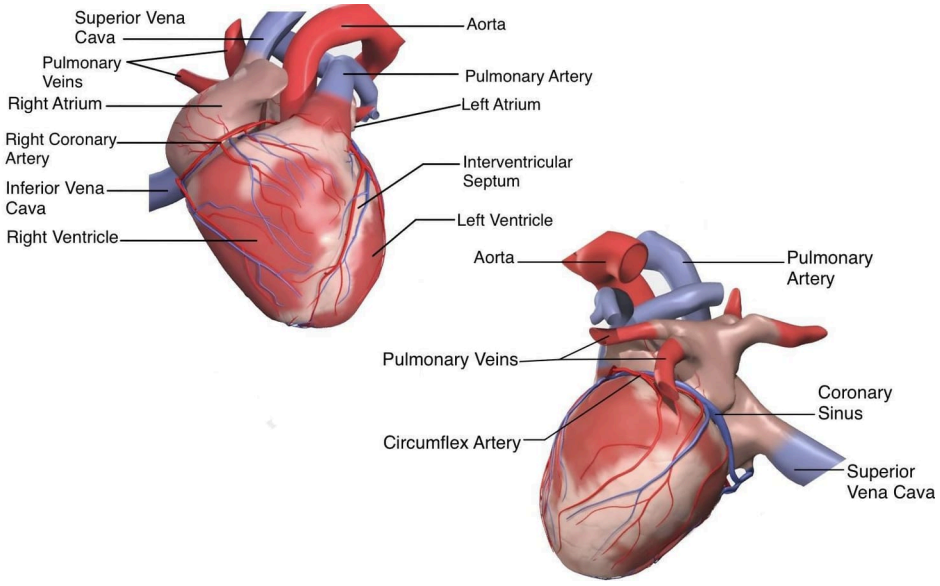


Figure 5 | External Anatomy of the Heart | [11] Anatomical representation of the human heart, showcasing key structures. The image includes two perspectives: (Left) an anterior view highlighting the right atrium and ventricle, the aorta, pulmonary artery, and the right coronary artery, and (Right) a posterior view displaying the left atrium and ventricle, the pulmonary veins, the coronary sinus, and the circumflex artery. The interventricular septum and the superior and inferior vena cava are also labeled.

This page titled 9.6: External Anatomy of the Heart is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.7: Internal Anatomy of the Heart

The heart is partitioned into distinct chambers by walls known as **septa**. The **interatrial septum** is positioned between the two atria, while the septum located between the two ventricles is termed the **interventricular septum**. Notably, the interventricular septum is thicker than the interatrial septum. This thickness is essential to facilitate the ventricles' ability to generate heightened pressure during contraction. As its name implies, the atrioventricular septum lies between the atria and ventricles. This septum contains four openings that serve as conduits for blood to flow from the atria to the ventricles and from the ventricles to the pulmonary trunk and aorta. Within these openings, positioned between the atria and ventricles, are specialized valves. These valves are instrumental in ensuring that blood flows in a one-way direction. The specific valves between the atria and ventricles are referred to as **atrioventricular** (**AV**) **valves** (Figure 6). On the right side, the AV valve is called the **tricuspid valve**, while on the left side, it is termed the **bicuspid** or **mitral valve**. These valves play a crucial role in maintaining the unidirectional flow of blood within the heart.[2]

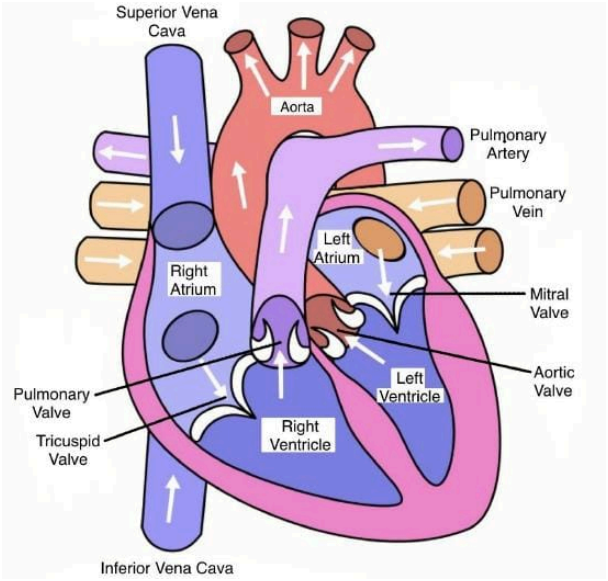


Figure 6 | Internal Structures of the Heart | [12] This figure illustrates the internal structures of the heart, including the septa and valves. The interatrial septum is shown separating the two atria, while the interventricular septum divides the ventricles and is depicted as thicker to accommodate higher pressure generation. The atrioventricular septum, located between the atria and ventricles, contains the four openings that allow blood to flow from the atria to the ventricles and from the ventricles to the pulmonary trunk and aorta. The figure also highlights the atrioventricular (AV) valves: the tricuspid valve on the right side and the mitral valve on the left side. These valves ensure one-way blood flow and prevent backflow within the heart.

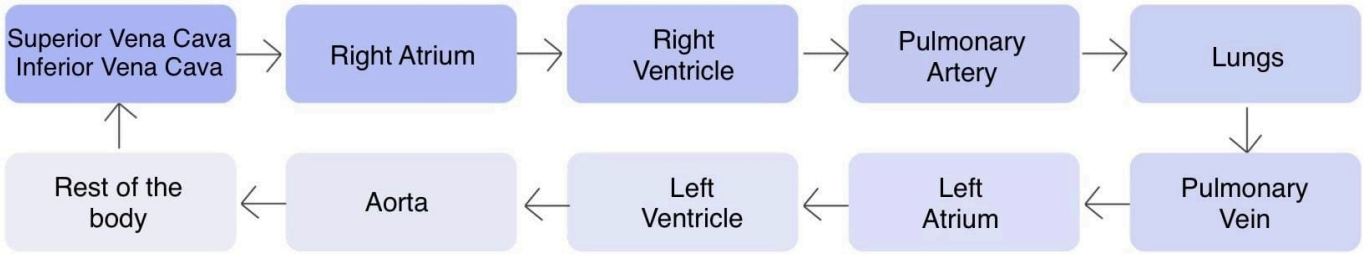


Figure 7 | Circulation of Blood through the Heart | A flow chart showing the circulation of blood through the heart as well as between the heart and the lungs. White arrows within the heart and black arrows between boxes represent flow of blood through the heart. Blue boxes indicate deoxygenated blood, red boxes indicate oxygenated blood, and purple boxes indicate sites of gas exchange

Chambers of the Heart

The human heart, a vital organ responsible for circulating blood throughout the body, is divided into four distinct chambers: two atria and two ventricles. The atria are the upper chambers and are separated by the interatrial septum. Separated by the interventricular septum, the ventricles, the lower chambers, are the heart's powerful pumps.

Right Atrium

The right atrium is the receiving chamber for deoxygenated blood originating from the systemic circulation. Three significant vessels contribute to this blood influx within this chamber: the **superior** and **inferior venae cavae**, prominent systemic veins, and channel deoxygenated blood into the right atrium. The **coronary sinus**, a sizable coronary vein responsible for draining blood from the myocardium, also empties into the right atrium (Figure 5). The superior vena cava collects blood from areas above the diaphragm, while the inferior vena cava collects blood from regions below it.

Right Ventricle

The right ventricle receives blood from the right atrium via the tricuspid valve at the entrance of the atrioventricular septum. As the ventricle contracts, the pressure within this chamber rises, propelling the blood through the **pulmonary semilunar valve** toward the **pulmonary trunk** and the right atrium. (Figure 6). To prevent any unwanted backflow, the tricuspid valve closes securely after the blood passes through, ensuring it does not return to the right atrium.

Left Atrium

After the exchange of gasses between the alveoli and the pulmonary capillaries, the oxygen-enriched blood returns to the left atrium via four **pulmonary veins** (Figures 5 and 6). The majority of blood filling in the left atrium takes place primarily when the atria are in their relaxed state.

Left Ventricle

Blood moves from the left atrium into the left ventricle through the bicuspid valve. This valve is positioned within the opening of the atrioventricular septum on the left side of the heart. The left ventricle then propels the blood into the aorta through the **aortic semilunar valve**, as illustrated in Figure 6.

Valves of the Heart

The heart contains four valves. Their function is to ensure that blood flows in only one direction. The opening between the right atrium and right ventricle is guarded by the tricuspid valve, also known as the **right atrioventricular valve**. This valve comprises three flaps, or leaflets, crafted from endocardial tissue and reinforced by additional connective tissue. Each flap is connected to sturdy strands of connective tissue called **chordae tendineae**. Numerous chordae tendineae are associated with each flap, linking to a **papillary muscle** extending from the ventricle's lower surface. In the right ventricle, three papillary muscles correspond to the three distinct sections of the valve (Figures 8b and 9b).[4]

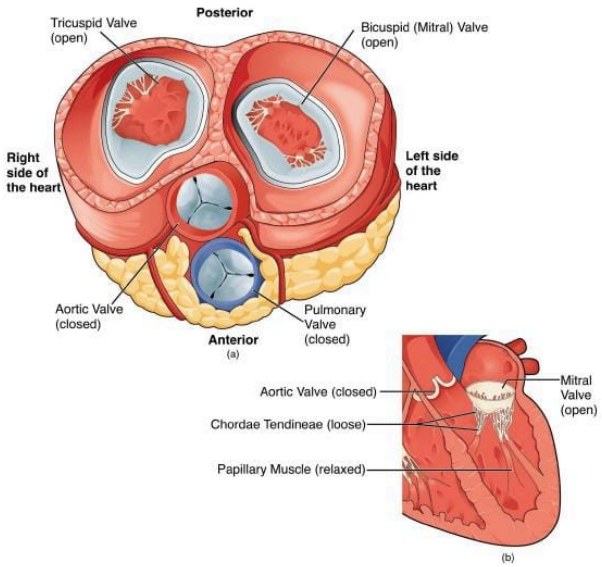


Figure 8 | Heart Valves during Blood Flow from the Atria to the Ventricles | [13] (a) A transverse section through the heart illustrates the four heart valves. (b) A frontal section through the heart illustrates blood flow through the mitral valve.

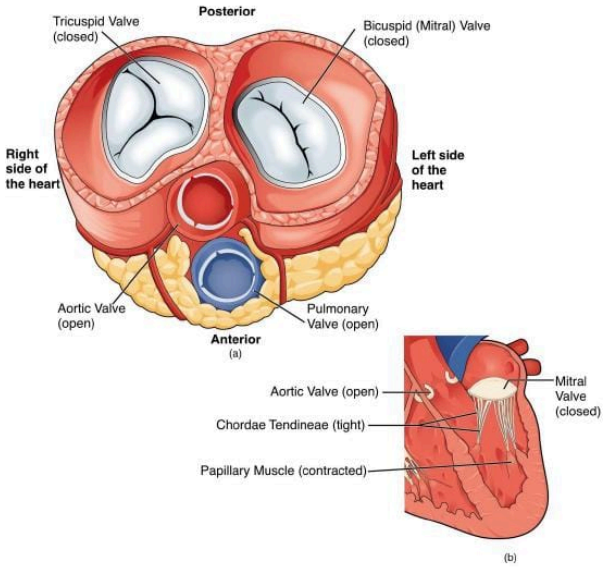


Figure 9 | Heart Valves during Ventricular Contraction | [14] (a) A transverse section through the heart illustrates the four heart valves during ventricular contraction, with the semilunar valves open and the atrioventricular (AV) valves closed. (b) A frontal view shows the closed mitral (bi-leaflet) valve, which prevents the backflow of blood into the left atrium.

The mitral valve is positioned at the entrance connecting the left atrium and left ventricle, also referred to as the **left atrioventricular valve** (Figures 8 & 9). Structurally, this valve comprises two cusps tethered by chordae tendineae to two papillary muscles extending from the lower wall of the left ventricle.[15]

Moving from the base of the pulmonary trunk is the pulmonary semilunar valve, also known as the **pulmonary valve** or the **right semilunar valve**. This valve prevents blood backflow from the pulmonary trunk into the right ventricle. Consisting of three endocardial flaps reinforced by connective tissue, the pulmonary valve closes due to the pressure difference as the ventricle relaxes, leading to blood flowing back from the pulmonary trunk to the right ventricle. This blood flow fills the pocket-like flaps, triggering the closure of the pulmonary valve with an audible sound.[16]

Situated at the base of the aorta is the aortic semilunar valve, commonly referred to as the **aortic valve**. Its role is to prevent blood from regurgitating from the aorta into the left ventricle. This valve, comprising three flaps, closes when the ventricle relaxes and blood attempts to return from the aorta to the left ventricle. The filling of the cusps due to this blood flow leads to valve closure and the production of an audible sound.[17]

During ventricular contraction to propel blood into the pulmonary trunk and aorta, the atrioventricular valves are closed, while the semilunar valves are open, as depicted in Figure 9. Closing of the atrioventricular valves safeguards against blood being driven back into the atria. Conversely, in Figure 8a, both atrioventricular valves are open, while the semilunar valves are closed. This configuration occurs when both atria and ventricles are relaxed, and atria are filling the ventricles.

As ventricles begin to contract, their increased pressure prompts blood to flow towards lower-pressure regions, primarily the atria. This flow causes the cusps of the tricuspid and mitral valves to close, as shown in Figure 8a. During the relaxation phase of the cardiac cycle, the papillary muscles and chordae tendineae are also relaxed, leading to minimal tension. However, when the ventricles contract, the papillary muscles engage, exerting pressure on the chordae tendineae. This tension reinforces the stability of the atrioventricular valve cusps, preventing them from inverting into the atria.

Unlike the atrioventricular valves, semilunar valves lack associated papillary muscles or chordae tendineae. During ventricular relaxation and a pressure shift, the blood's force against the cusps seals the openings, halting any backflow. To witness the actual opening and closing of heart valves, you can observe an echocardiogram at http://openstaxcollege.org/l/heartvalve.

The **fibrous skeleton** of the heart is a dense connective tissue framework that provides structural support to the heart valves and serves as an attachment point for cardiac muscle fibers. It plays a crucial role in maintaining the shape and function of the valves, preventing overstretching during the cardiac cycle.[18]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 9.7: Internal Anatomy of the Heart is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.8: Blood Supply to the Heart

The heart, a tireless and highly active organ, demands a continuous and adequate blood supply to sustain its vital function. Although the heart chambers contain blood, this blood does not directly nourish the heart muscle (myocardium). Instead, the heart relies on a dedicated network of coronary arteries to deliver oxygen and essential nutrients, which fuel its continuous contractions and support overall heart health. Simultaneously, the blood circulating through the heart muscle removes metabolic waste products, including carbon dioxide and lactic acid, preventing their harmful accumulation. Furthermore, this blood supply delivers hormones and signaling molecules that regulate heart function and maintains the proper ionic balance within heart muscle cells, crucial for electrical conductivity and coordinated contraction.

Coronary Arteries

The coronary arteries, originating from the aorta, play a pivotal role in providing oxygenated blood to various heart regions. Their nomenclature corresponds to their positions as right and left coronary arteries (Figure 10). The right coronary artery delivers blood to the right atrium, specific segments of both the right and left ventricles, and the heart's conduction system. On the other hand, the left coronary artery supplies blood to the left atrium, left ventricle, and interventricular septum.

The right coronary artery emits one or more marginal arteries beneath the right atrium. These arteries supply blood to the superficial regions of the right ventricle. The right coronary artery also gives rise to the **posterior interventricular artery**, also known as the **posterior descending artery**. This artery spans the heart's rear surface and extends to supply the interventricular septum and portions of both ventricles. Notably, the **circumflex artery**, stemming from the left coronary artery, converges with the smaller branches of the right coronary artery. Furthermore, the **anterior interventricular artery**, or **left anterior descending artery** (**LAD**), constitutes the second significant branch of the left coronary artery.

Coronary Veins

Coronary veins perform the vital function of returning deoxygenated blood to the heart. These veins follow a pattern where smaller veins amalgamate to form a sizable, thin-walled vein known as the coronary sinus. Positioned on the heart's posterior surface, the coronary sinus directly empties into the right atrium. These veins typically run parallel to the corresponding arteries, as illustrated in Figure 10.

The **great cardiac vein**, a significant conduit, receives contributions from several prominent branches. These include the **posterior cardiac vein**, **middle cardiac vein**, and **small cardiac vein**. The posterior cardiac vein is responsible for collecting blood from regions that are supplied by the marginal artery. Meanwhile, the middle cardiac vein gathers blood originating from areas the posterior interventricular artery serves. The small cardiac vein carries the deoxygenated blood from the rear surfaces of the right atrium and ventricle. Complementing these, the **anterior cardiac veins** drain the anterior surface of the right ventricle. Ultimately, the great cardiac vein merges with the coronary sinus on the heart's posterior surface.[19]

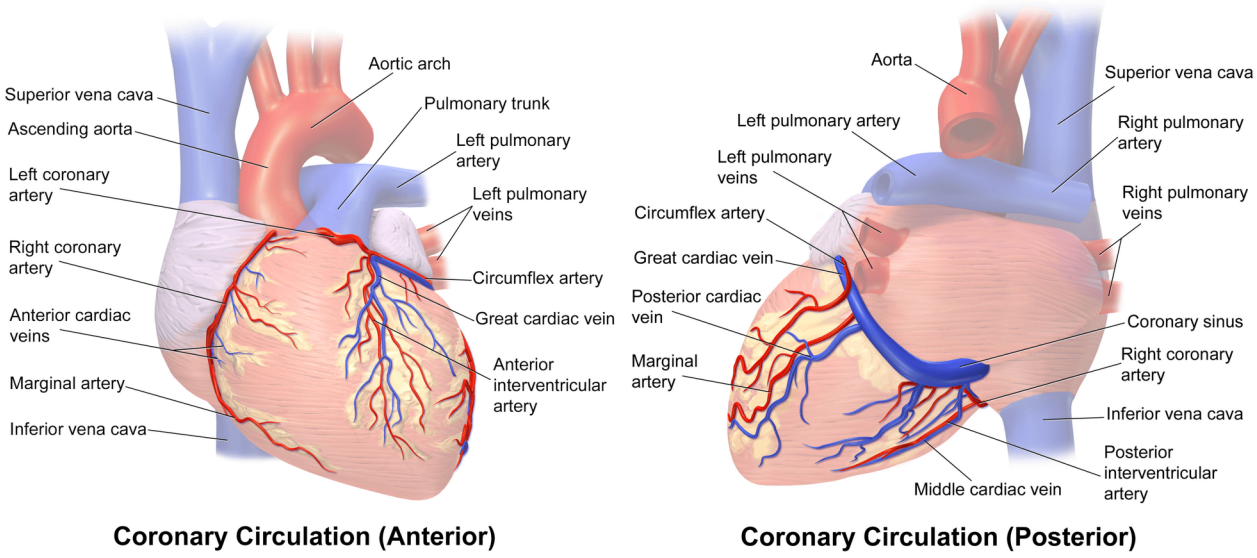


Figure 10 | Coronary Circulation | [20] Above: An anatomical illustration of the anterior view of the heart, showing the coronary arteries (left and right), veins (great cardiac vein, anterior cardiac veins), and major vessels (aorta, pulmonary trunk, vena cava). Below: An anatomical illustration of the posterior view of the heart, detailing the coronary circulation. Labels identify coronary arteries (right, circumflex, marginal, posterior interventricular), cardiac veins (great, posterior, middle, coronary sinus), and the aorta, pulmonary arteries and veins, and vena cava (superior and inferior).

Phasic Variations in the Coronary Blood Flow

Coronary blood flow undergoes dynamic changes throughout the cardiac cycle. During systole, the increased pressure within the myocardial tissue compresses the arteries penetrating the myocardium, temporarily closing them off. Coronary artery branches travel from the epicardium to the endocardium, making the vessels that supply the subendocardial region of the left ventricle particularly vulnerable to compression during systole. As a result, blood flow through the left coronary artery decreases, with occasional instances of temporary retrograde flow. In contrast, the position and thickness of the ventricular muscle protect the subepicardial vessels, allowing partial blood flow during systole. Due to these variations, approximately 75% of total coronary flow occurs during diastole.

Given that coronary artery perfusion primarily occurs during diastole, the flow in these penetrating arteries depends on the pressure gradient between the main epicardial arteries (aortic diastolic pressure) and the subendocardium (left ventricular diastolic pressure), as well as the duration of diastole. As a result, myocardial perfusion decreases when left ventricular diastolic pressure rises, especially in patients with advanced coronary artery disease. Consequently, the subendocardial region of the left ventricle is more vulnerable to ischemic injury, making it a common site for myocardial infarction.

The higher incidence of ischemia in the subendocardial regions of the left ventricle is attributed to the earlier depletion of autoregulation in these vessels. When coronary blood pressure drops, the subendocardial vessels dilate, leading to a further decline in perfusion pressure and reduced flow in the subendocardial muscle. In contrast, the flow in the right coronary artery remains undisturbed during systole due to low pressure in the right ventricular cavity, allowing flow during both systole and diastole.

The myocardial fiber-to-capillary ratio is 1:1, similar to that of skeletal muscle fibers. However, during cardiac muscle hypertrophy, the number of muscle fibers remains constant while their size increases. Unlike skeletal muscle, the capillary-to-muscle fiber ratio does not increase during cardiac hypertrophy, requiring each capillary to supply a larger mass of muscle. As a result, the distance nutrients must travel to reach the center of the muscle increases, limiting the extent of hypertrophy without causing ischemia. Additionally, the high oxygen extraction from coronary circulation leaves coronary venous blood with less than 25% oxygen saturation. These factors make the coronary arteries particularly susceptible to widespread degenerative atherosclerotic changes.

Regulation of Coronary Circulation

The primary resistance to blood flow within the coronary circulation is encountered at the smaller arterioles within the myocardium. The response of these vessels to the metabolic demands of the heart muscle significantly influences coronary blood flow. On the epicardial surface, larger vessels offer minimal resistance to blood flow. However, these larger vessels can constrict significantly under neural influences like sympathetic activation, resulting in elevated resistance to blood flow in the coronary vasculature.

The metabolism of the heart muscle primarily relies on oxygen. Therefore, the amount of blood flowing through the coronary vessels is directly linked to the workload of the heart muscle. At rest, the heart extracts considerable oxygen from the blood. To increase oxygen consumption, blood flow must be raised through vasodilation. When the heart's metabolic demands increase (or coronary blood flow decreases), the accumulation of metabolites in the local environment occurs. These metabolites relax the smooth muscles in the precapillary vessels, leading to reduced coronary vascular resistance and subsequently increased coronary blood flow. Several factors and substances have been proposed as mediators that regulate the balance between myocardial metabolic activity and coronary vascular resistance. These include decreased oxygen partial pressure, elevated carbon dioxide, hydrogen ion, and potassium ion concentrations, and substances like lactic acid, prostaglandins, adenine nucleotides, and adenosine.

Activation of the sympathetic nervous system triggers the release of norepinephrine and epinephrine, resulting in an elevated heart rate and blood pressure, along with increased heart muscle metabolism and subsequent augmented blood flow to the heart. In the normal range, a brief increase in blood pressure will lead to a temporary rise in coronary blood flow before returning to baseline due to the increased tone of coronary vessels (autoregulation). Reduced blood pressure leads to decreased oxygen levels in the heart muscle, causing the accumulation of metabolites and subsequent vasodilation of the coronary vessels. In cases of severe hypotension, however, this vasodilation might not be enough to restore normal coronary blood flow. Consequently, impaired heart muscle contractions can initiate a harmful cycle that may lead to severe consequences if not adequately managed. The elevation in oxygen consumption linked with an increased heart rate causes dilation of the coronary arteries, leading to enhanced coronary blood flow. If the coronary vessels cannot dilate, the rise in heart rate could have adverse effects.[6]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 9.8: Blood Supply to the Heart is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.9: Cardiac Muscle

Cardiac muscle fibers, or cardiomyocytes, exhibit striations similar to skeletal muscle fibers and possess a single, centrally located nucleus. In some cases, two or more nuclei may be observed. Distinctive folds of the sarcolemma, termed transverse (T) tubules, extend deeply into the cell's interior, facilitating the transmission of electrical impulses to the inner regions. While the sarcoplasmic reticulum (endoplasmic reticulum) stores calcium ions, this internal reservoir alone is inadequate for inducing muscle contraction. Additional calcium ions must be sourced from the extracellular fluid. Numerous mitochondria are present in cardiac muscle fibers, ensuring an ample energy supply for muscle contraction (Figure 11a).

Contrary to skeletal muscle fibers, cardiac muscle fibers exhibit a branching pattern. Specialized structures called **intercalated discs** (Figure 11a) mark the points where two adjoining cells meet. These discs play a crucial role in propagating depolarization between neighboring cells (Figure 11b). At the intercalated discs, the sarcolemmas of adjacent cells adhere together and are equipped with gap junctions, facilitating the movement of ions between cells (Figure 11c). Additionally, desmosomes, specialized connections between cells, are present at the intercalated discs, offering extra structural support and stability to cardiac muscle fibers.[21]

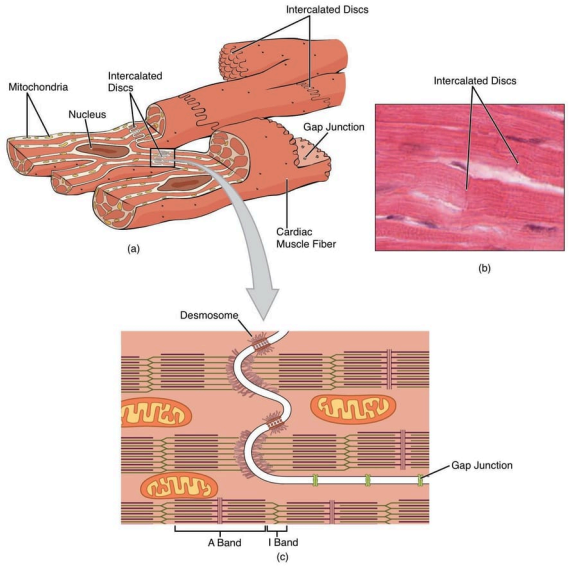


Figure 11 | Cardiac Muscle | [22] (a) Cardiac muscle cells have myofibrils composed of myofilaments arranged in sarcomeres, T tubules to transmit the impulse from the sarcolemma to the interior of the cell, numerous mitochondria for energy, and intercalated discs that are found at the junction of different cardiac muscle cells. (b) A photomicrograph of cardiac muscle cells shows the nuclei and intercalated discs. (c) An intercalated disc connects cardiac muscle cells and consists of desmosomes and gap junctions.

Calcium is essential for cardiac muscle contraction, and it comes from several key sources. One major source is extracellular calcium, which enters the cardiac muscle cells through voltage-gated calcium channels when an action potential depolarizes the cell membrane. This influx of calcium triggers further calcium release from internal stores, initiating muscle contraction. Blood calcium levels, which are regulated by dietary intake and bone resorption, contribute to maintaining optimal extracellular calcium levels.

Another significant source is the sarcoplasmic reticulum, a specialized organelle within muscle cells that stores calcium. When calcium from the extracellular space enters the muscle cell, it binds to ryanodine receptors on the sarcoplasmic reticulum, triggering the release of more calcium into the cytoplasm. This process, known as **calcium-induced calcium release**, plays a critical role in directly contributing to muscle contraction. Once released, calcium binds to troponin, facilitating the interaction between actin and myosin, which allows the muscle to contract. After contraction, calcium is pumped back into the sarcoplasmic reticulum for storage or removed from the cell, ending the contraction and allowing the muscle to relax.

Abnormal conditions such as hypercalcemia and hypocalcemia can significantly affect cardiac muscle contraction. **Hypercalcemia**, characterized by elevated calcium levels in the blood, can lead to excessive calcium influx into cardiac cells. This condition increases contractility, which may result in stronger, more forceful contractions, potentially leading to arrhythmias. In extreme cases, hypercalcemia can cause sustained muscle contraction or even cardiac arrest due to the inability of the muscle to relax. On the other hand, **hypocalcemia**, a condition where blood calcium levels are too low, reduces the amount of calcium available for cardiac muscle contraction. This can weaken the contractions, impairing the heart's ability to pump effectively. Low calcium levels can also prolong the repolarization phase, increasing the risk of arrhythmias, including life-threatening conditions like ventricular fibrillation.[23]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 9.9: Cardiac Muscle is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.10: Conduction System of the Heart

Cardiac muscle possesses the unique ability to spontaneously generate its own electrical impulses, rapidly traveling between cells, initiating the contraction process. This characteristic is referred to as **autorhythmicity**. Each cardiac muscle fiber can produce its own electrical signal. The cell with the naturally higher depolarization rate takes the lead, and the impulse spreads from the faster cell to the slower one, triggering contractions. The cardiac conduction system comprises five essential components: the **sinoatrial** (**SA**) **node**, the **atrioventricular** (**AV**) **node**, the **AV bundle** (also known as the **bundle of His**), the **AV bundle branches**, and the **Purkinje fibers** (Figure 12).

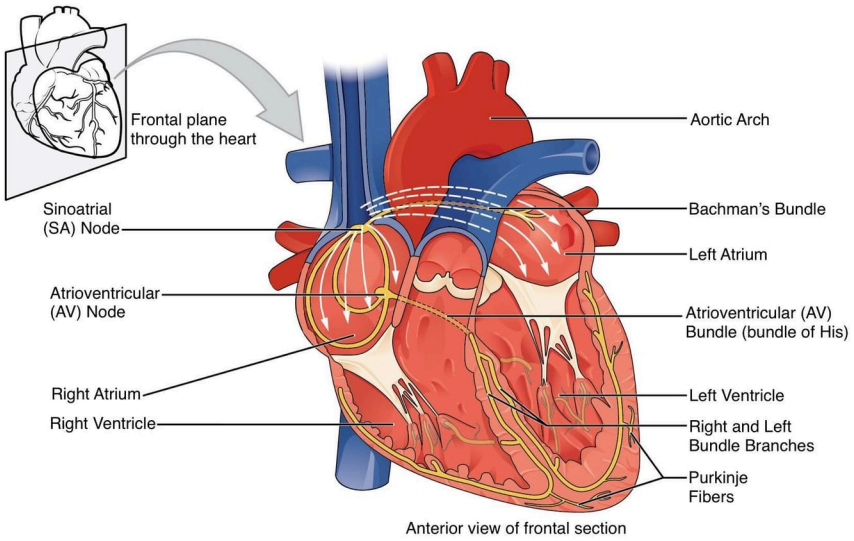


Figure 12 | Conduction System of the Heart | [24] The initiation of an action potential at the sinoatrial (SA) node spreads throughout the atria reaching the atrioventricular (AV) node, AV bundle (bundle of His), bundle branches, and ultimately Purkinje fibers. Bachmann's bundle, also known as the interatrial band, is a specialized band of cardiac muscle fibers that serves as a key pathway for electrical conduction in the heart by connecting the right atrium to the left and facilitating the rapid transmission of electrical impulses from the SA node to the left atrium.

Sinoatrial Node

The sinoatrial (SA) node is a specialized group of myocardial conducting cells positioned in the upper and back walls of the right atrium, close to the entrance of the superior vena cava. Recognized for its highest inherent depolarization rate, the SA node is often termed the heart's **pacemaker**. It serves as the initiator of the sinus rhythm or the regular electrical pattern. This electrical impulse originates from the SA node, spreading to the atrial myocardial contractile cells and onward to the AV node. The internodal pathways facilitate this transmission between contractile cells, consisting of three bands: anterior, middle, and posterior. **Bachmann's bundle**, also known as the **interatrial band**, is a specialized band of cardiac muscle fibers that serves as a key pathway for electrical conduction in the heart. It connects the right atrium to the left atrium and facilitates the rapid transmission of electrical impulses from the SA node to the left atrium. This allows for coordinated contraction of both atria, ensuring that the right and left atria contract simultaneously during the cardiac cycle. Bachmann's bundle plays a critical role in maintaining synchronized atrial activity, which is essential for efficient blood flow into the ventricles. It takes the impulse to travel between the SA node and the AV node approximately 50 milliseconds (ms).

Atrioventricular (AV) Node

The AV node constitutes another group of myocardial conductive cells situated in the lower portion of the right atrium, forming part of the atrioventricular septum. Upon reaching the atrioventricular septum, the fibrous skeleton, a connective tissue encircling the heart, prevents the impulse from extending into the ventricular myocardial cells, except for the AV node by acting as an

electrical insulator, separating the atria from the ventricles.

A delay arises in the propagation of depolarization from the AV node to the AV bundle (Figure 13, step 3). This deceleration in transmission is partially attributed to the diminutive size of the node's cells. Consequently, the impulse necessitates approximately 100 ms to traverse the node. This interval allows the atrial myocardium ample time to conclude its contraction, propelling blood into the ventricles before the propagation of the impulse to the ventricular cells.

Atrioventricular Bundle (Bundle of His), Bundle Branches, and Purkinje Fibers

The AV bundle, also known as the bundle of His, originates from the AV node and traverses the interventricular septum before branching into two distinct AV bundle branches, often referred to as the **left and right bundle branches**. Based on their respective locations, the left bundle branch supplies the left ventricle, while the right bundle branch supplies the right ventricle. Given the substantial difference between the left and right ventricles, the left bundle branch is notably more extensive than the right counterpart. Both bundle branches descend towards the apex of the heart, intersecting with the Purkinje fibers (Figure 12 and Figure 13, step 4). This journey is accomplished in approximately 25 ms.

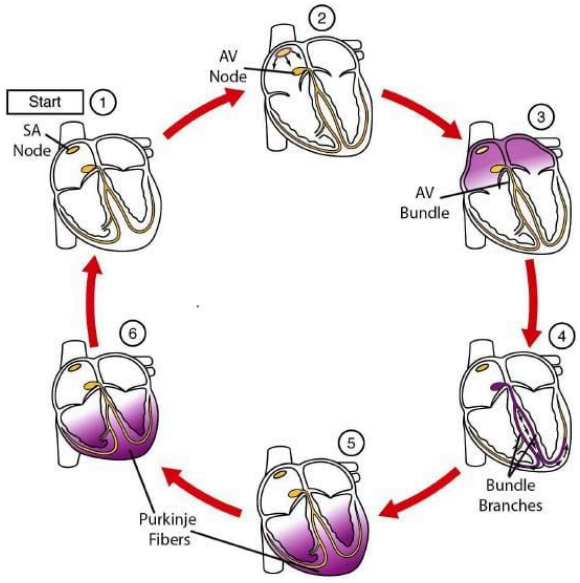


Figure 13 | Cardiac Conduction | [25] (1) The sinoatrial (SA) node and the remainder of the conduction system are at rest. (2) The SA node initiates the action potential, which sweeps across the atria. (3) After reaching the atrioventricular node (AV), there is a delay of approximately 100 ms that allows the atria to complete pumping blood before the impulse is transmitted to the atrioventricular bundle. (4) Following the delay, the impulse travels through the atrioventricular bundle and bundle branches to the Purkinje fibers (5 and 6).

The Purkinje fibers are specialized conductive cells within the heart that transmit the electrical impulse to the myocardial contractile cells in the ventricles. These fibers extend throughout the myocardium, originating from the apex of the heart and spanning toward the atrioventricular septum and the base of the heart (Figure 12). Notably, the Purkinje fibers possess a high conduction rate, enabling the electrical impulse to propagate to all ventricular muscle cells in approximately 75 ms. As the impulse reaches the apex via the bundle branches, the ensuing contraction initiates at the apex and travels towards the heart's base, like squeezing toothpaste from the bottom. This sequential contraction facilitates the ejection of blood from the ventricles into the aorta and pulmonary trunk. This process, from initiating the impulse at the SA node to the ventricular depolarization, takes around 225 ms [6]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 9.10: Conduction System of the Heart is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.11: Electrophysiology of Cardiac Pacemaker Cells

The resting membrane potential of the conducting muscle fibers within the heart varies between -50 and -60 mV. The characteristics of action potentials differ significantly between cardiac conduction cells, like the SA and AV nodes, and cardiac contractile cells (non-pacemaker cells), such as the Purkinje cells.

Cardiac conduction cells exhibit an unstable resting membrane potential due to the presence of sodium leak channels. They are referred to as **funny channels** (**If**) or **HCN channels**. These channels are found primarily in the SA node. Funny channels are unique as they open in response to the hyperpolarization phase of the previous action potential and allow a gradual influx of sodium ions, causing the membrane potential to slowly rise from an initial value of -60 mV to approximately -40 mV (as shown by the orange line). These channels are modulated by the autonomic nervous system, allowing the heart rate to adjust to physiological demands.

During this phase (**phase 4**), **slow calcium channels** are also active, leading to a spontaneous depolarization known as **prepotential depolarization**. Funny channels close slowly after the opening of the slow calcium ion channels. When the membrane potential reaches the threshold level of -40 mV, voltage-gated **fast calcium ion channels** open, permitting a significant influx of calcium ions. This influx of calcium ions causes the cell to depolarize rapidly, resulting in a membrane potential of around +5 mV (illustrated by the red line). This **rapid depolarization** phase is termed **phase 0**. The subsequent closure of calcium ion channels and the opening of voltage-gated potassium ion channels bring about a **repolarization** state, marking **phase 3**.

In phase 3, the membrane potential returns to its resting state through the outflow of potassium ions. Once the membrane potential reaches approximately -60 mV (the resting membrane potential), sodium ion channels open again, initiating the prepotential phase as seen in the previous cycle. This sequence of events underlies the autorhythmicity characteristics of cardiac muscle (Figure 14).

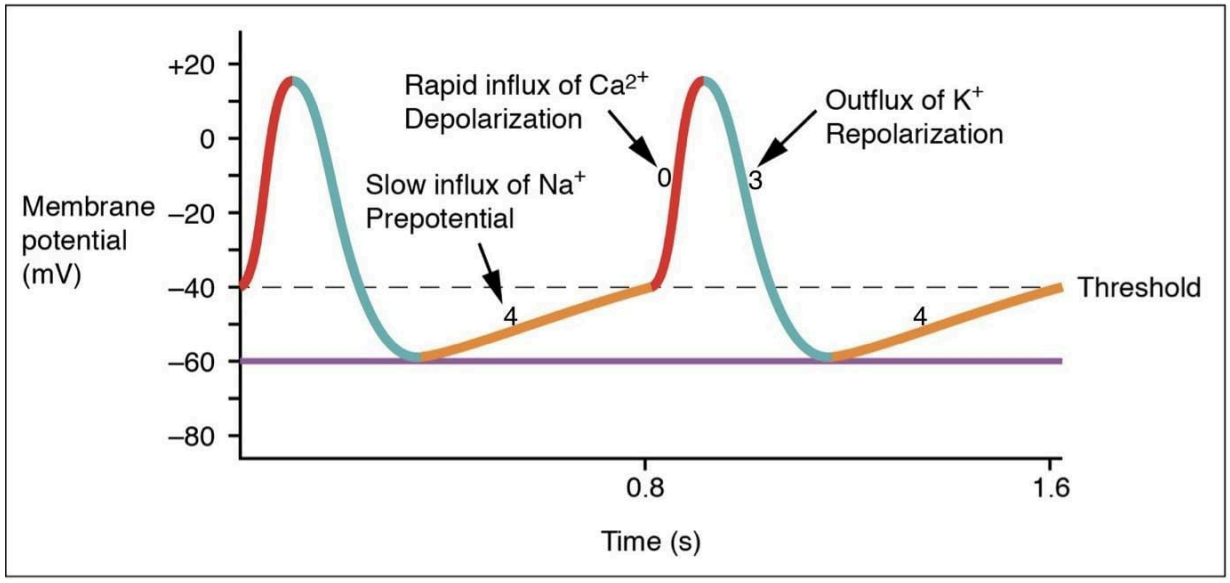


Figure 14 | Action Potential in the Sinoatrial Node | [26] The prepotential (phase 4) is due to a slow influx of sodium ions until the threshold is reached followed by a rapid depolarization (phase 0) and repolarization (phase 3). The prepotential accounts for the membrane reaching threshold and initiates the spontaneous depolarization and contraction of the cell. Note the lack of a resting membrane potential. The numbers 0, 3, 4 indicate the phase of the action potential.

This page titled 9.11: Electrophysiology of Cardiac Pacemaker Cells is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.12: Electrophysiology of Cardiac Contractile Cells

In cardiac contractile muscle fibers, the action potential pattern exhibits a more stable resting phase than conductive cells. The resting membrane potential for atrial myofibers is approximately -80 mV, while for ventricular muscle fibers, it is around -90 mV. The behavior of action potentials is quite distinct in cardiac contractile cells, featuring rapid depolarization followed by a **plateau phase** and eventual repolarization. This phenomenon contributes to the extended refractory periods essential for these cardiac muscle cells to pump blood before they can generate another action potential. These cardiac myocytes do not usually initiate their own electrical impulses; instead, they await a signal from a conductive cell (such as the SA node) to trigger an action potential.

Upon receiving an action potential from a pacemaker cell and the depolarization reaches the threshold of -75 mV, voltage-gated sodium channels open in a positive-feedback manner. This results in a rapid influx of sodium ions, raising the membrane potential to approximately +30 mV. At this point, the sodium channels close. This rapid depolarization phase typically lasts 3–5 ms (as indicated by the orange line; phase 0). Subsequently, the plateau phase follows. In the initial part of the plateau phase, only the slow potassium ion channels are open, leading to a gradual decline in the membrane potential (**phase 1**). Soon afterward, the L-type or slow calcium ion channels open, permitting the entry of calcium ions, which helps maintain a membrane potential of approximately 0 mV. During this phase, potassium ion channels are also open, allowing potassium ions to exit the cell while calcium ions enter. This period involves the inward movement of calcium ions and the outward movement of potassium ions, lasting approximately 175 ms (illustrated by the purple line; **phase 2**). Following this, the calcium ion channels close, while the potassium ion channels remain open, facilitating the exit of more potassium ions and initiating the repolarization phase (phase 3). The repolarization phase lasts about 75 ms. As the membrane potential drops to its resting levels, the potassium ion channels close again (phase 4), and the cycle repeats (Figure 15). The sequence takes place over 250 to 300 ms.

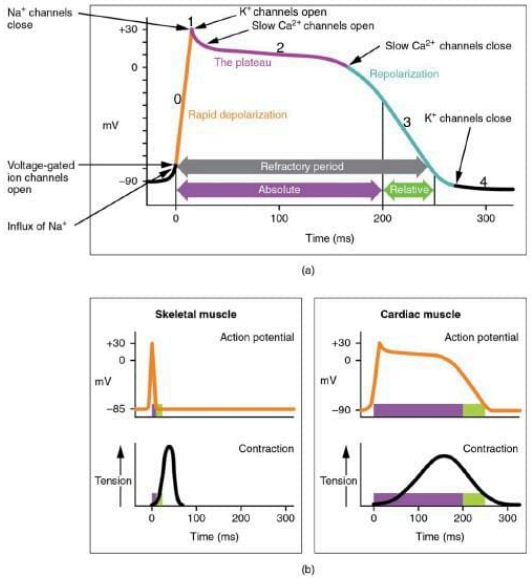


Figure 15 | Action Potential in the Cardiac Contractile Cells | [27] (a) Note the long plateau phase due to the influx of calcium ions. The extended refractory period allows the cell to fully contract before another electrical event can occur. The numbers 0, 1, 2. 3, 4 indicate the phase of the action potential. (b) The action potential for heart muscle is compared to that of skeletal muscle

Once an action potential is triggered, a cardiac muscle cell enters a period when it can not initiate another action potential for a specific duration. This safeguarding period is known as the **refractory period**, lasting approximately 250 ms, and is crucial for protecting the heart. The cardiac refractory period is divided into two phases: **absolute** and **relative refractory periods**. A new action potential cannot be generated during the absolute refractory period, ensuring a controlled rhythm. Conversely, the relative refractory period allows for a new action potential if a strong stimulus is applied.

A comparison of the action potential in the contractile cells of cardiac muscle and skeletal muscle fiber is illustrated in Figure 15b. The duration of an action potential and the refractory period is significantly shorter in skeletal muscle compared to cardiac muscle contractile cells. Figure 15b also shows the resulting contraction pattern following each action potential. Due to the

extended refractory period in cardiac muscle fibers, an entire contraction cycle must conclude before a new one can be initiated. This contraction pattern differs from skeletal muscle, where a further contraction might begin before the previous cycle ends, given the shorter refractory period. This occurrence is termed **tetanus**, common in skeletal muscle but not observed in cardiac muscle. Cardiac muscle cells undergo twitch-like contractions marked by prolonged refractory periods followed by brief relaxation periods. This relaxation period is crucial to allow the heart to fill with blood for the subsequent cycle. The lengthy refractory period prevents the risk of **tetany**, a condition where muscles involuntarily remain contracted. In the heart, tetany is incompatible with life as it impedes the heart's ability to pump blood effectively.

The sequence of gradual depolarization, followed by swift depolarization and repolarization, is observed in the SA node and selects other conducting cells within the heart. Serving as the primary pacemaker, the SA node surpasses the threshold for depolarization more rapidly than any other part of the conduction system. It launches impulses propagating to other conducting cells, orchestrating the heart's rhythm. Operating autonomously, the SA node triggers a heart impulse around 80 to 100 times per minute. While each component of the conduction system can generate its own impulse, the initiation rate gradually decreases from the SA node down to the Purkinje fibers.

Without the SA node's influence, the AV node would establish a heart rate ranging from 40 to 60 beats per minute. If the AV node lost its pacemaker role, the AV bundle would generate impulses approximately 30 to 40 times per minute. The bundle branches would exhibit an intrinsic rate of 20 to 30 impulses per minute, while the Purkinje fibers would fire at roughly 15 to 30 impulses per minute. Though some exceptionally trained aerobic athletes might showcase resting heart rates between 30 and 40 beats per minute (the lowest documented value being 28 beats per minute for cyclist Miguel Indurain), for most individuals, heart rates below 50 beats per minute would indicate **bradycardia**, a condition characterized by a slow heart rate. As rates dip significantly below this threshold, the heart's ability to supply essential tissues with sufficient blood becomes compromised, leading to organ failure, multisystem failure, and eventual death.[28]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 9.12: Electrophysiology of Cardiac Contractile Cells is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.13: Electrocardiogram (ECG)

Electrical signals produced by the heart can be captured through the strategic positioning of electrodes on specific areas of the body. This process of tracking the heart's electrical activity is referred to as an **electrocardiogram** (**ECG**), also sometimes abbreviated as **EKG** (with "K" representing "kardiology," the German term for cardiology). Unlike recording signals from individual muscle fibers, a standard ECG showcases the overall fluctuations in electrical current flow, offering a comprehensive view of heart function which makes it a crucial tool in clinical diagnosis.

The term "lead" describes the voltage difference between two electrodes. An electrocardiograph can vary with 3, 5, or 12 leads. The level of detail an ECG provides increases with the number of leads used. A 12-lead electrocardiograph employs ten electrodes placed strategically on the patient's body, as illustrated in Figure 16.

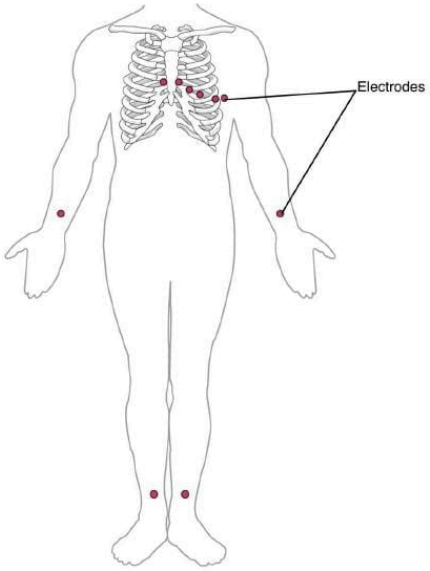


Figure 16 | Standard Placement of ECG leads in a 12-lead ECG| [29] six electrodes are placed on the chest, and four electrodes are placed on the limbs

In an ECG, the key features are the **P wave**, the **QRS complex**, and the **T wave** (Figure 17). The small P wave signifies **atrial depolarization**, while the larger QRS complex represents **ventricular depolarization**. The QRS complex has a more robust electrical signal due to the larger size of the ventricular cardiac muscle. The T wave corresponds to **ventricular repolarization**. Although atrial repolarization occurs during the QRS complex, it is concealed by the larger QRS complex on the ECG, which masks the **atrial repolarization** wave. The **segments** refer to the regions between two waves, **intervals** include a segment with one or more waves in an electrograph. For instance, the PR segment starts at the end of the P wave and extends until the start of the QRS complex. Meanwhile, the PR interval comprises the P wave and the PR segment. The P-R interval, lasting 0.16 seconds, thus measures the duration from the onset of the P wave to the onset of the QRS wave. It signifies the time elapsed between the initiation of atrial contraction and the commencement of ventricular contraction.

Q-T interval, spanning 0.35 seconds, indicates the timeframe from the onset of the Q wave to the conclusion of the T wave. It provides an approximation of the duration of ventricular contraction.

Atrial contractions commence approximately 25 ms after the onset of the P wave. Similarly, the ventricles begin their contraction around the peak of the R wave within the QRS complex. Clinically, the PR interval holds more significance as it measures the duration from the start of atrial depolarization (represented by the P wave) to the onset of the QRS complex.[30]

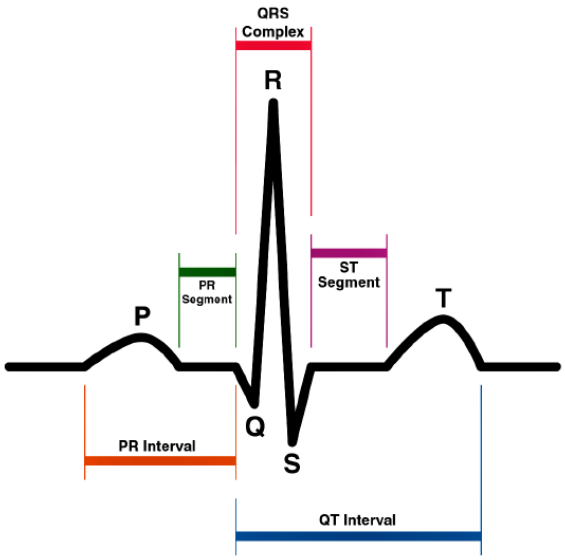


Figure 17 | Electrocardiogram | [31] A normal tracing shows the P wave, QRS complex, and T wave. Also indicated are the PR, QT, QRS, and ST intervals, plus the P-R and S-T segments.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 9.13: Electrocardiogram (ECG) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.14: Cardiac Cycle

The electrical activity leading to mechanical events unfolds cyclically, comprising sets of repeating events called cardiac cycles or heartbeats. Each cycle breaks down into two principal phases. **Systole** denotes the contraction phase when the heart pumps blood, while **diastole** signifies the relaxation phase when the chambers fill with blood. Although both atria and ventricles experience systole and diastole, the predominant events that truly impact pumping of blood are **ventricular systole** and **ventricular diastole**, as opposed to **atrial systole** and **atrial diastole**.

When understanding the heart as having two distinct pumps, right and left, it is essential to note that they both operate in sync. They fill, contract, and relax simultaneously, managing equivalent volumes of blood. However, there exists a difference in pressure between these two pumps. The left pump generates significantly higher pressure due to distributing blood throughout the body. By contrast, the right pump operates at one-third of the pressure of the left pump. While the left pump handles oxygenated blood, the right pump deals with deoxygenated blood.

Phases of the Cardiac Cycle

The cardiac cycle repeats automatically for as long as a person is alive. However, each cycle is divided into distinct phases based on specific physiological events to facilitate better understanding.

Atrial Filling

In this segment of the physiological process, both the atria and the ventricles are in a state of relaxation, and all four valves within the heart are closed. The ventricles hold the lowest blood volume, roughly 50-60 mL, termed the **end-systolic volume** (ESV). During this phase, the right atrium receives deoxygenated blood from the superior and inferior venae cavae as well as blood from the coronary sinus. Similarly, the left atrium welcomes oxygenated blood from the four pulmonary veins. The movement of blood from these veins into the atria hinges on the pressure discrepancies between them.

Ordinarily, the pressure within the atria remains lower than the pressure within the veins that transport blood into these chambers. As blood steadily fills the atria, the pressure within these chambers rises due to the accumulating blood volume. Consequently, this pressure increment prompts the AV valves to open, facilitating the passive filling of blood into the ventricles. Notably, gravity also plays a role in aiding this process. This mechanism of blood flow allows approximately 70 to 80 percent of the blood to fill the ventricles during this phase.

Atrial Systole and Diastole

The progression of depolarization through the atria, followed by the subsequent contraction of atrial muscle fibers, generates an increase in pressure within the atria. This surge in pressure prompts the atria to propel the remaining blood into the ventricles, constituting a phase known as atrial systole. As the atrial systole begins, the ventricles are already filled to about 70 to 80 percent of their capacity, courtesy of the passive inflow of blood. An additional contribution of 20 to 30 percent filling is attributed to atrial contraction, often called the "**atrial kick**". This phase of atrial systole has a duration of approximately 100 milliseconds. Following atrial systole, the atrial muscle fibers transition back to atrial diastole.

Ventricular Systole

Ventricular systole, as depicted in Figures 18 – 19, ensues after ventricular depolarization and encompasses a duration of 270 milliseconds. Initially, internal pressures within the ventricles rise during the contraction of the ventricular muscles. However, these pressures remain insufficient to prompt the opening of the semilunar valves. The opening of these valves necessitates pressures higher than those in the arteries they guard. Concurrently, the ventricular pressures exceed those in the now-relaxed and diastolic atria. The augmented ventricular pressure causes blood to retrograde towards the atria, instigating the sudden closure of the tricuspid and mitral valves. This swift valve closure results in an audible sound termed the **first heart sound**, recognized as "**lubb**."

As the ejection of blood from the ventricles is yet to commence during this initial stage, the blood volume within each chamber

remains unaltered with all four valves sealed. This specific blood volume is termed the **end-diastolic volume** (EDV) or **preload**, constituting the largest amount of blood within each ventricle during a cardiac cycle, approximately 130 mL. When all valves are closed, and the ventricles hold their maximum blood quantity, the primary ventricular systole phase is designated as **isovolumic** or **isovolumetric contraction** (Figure 19).

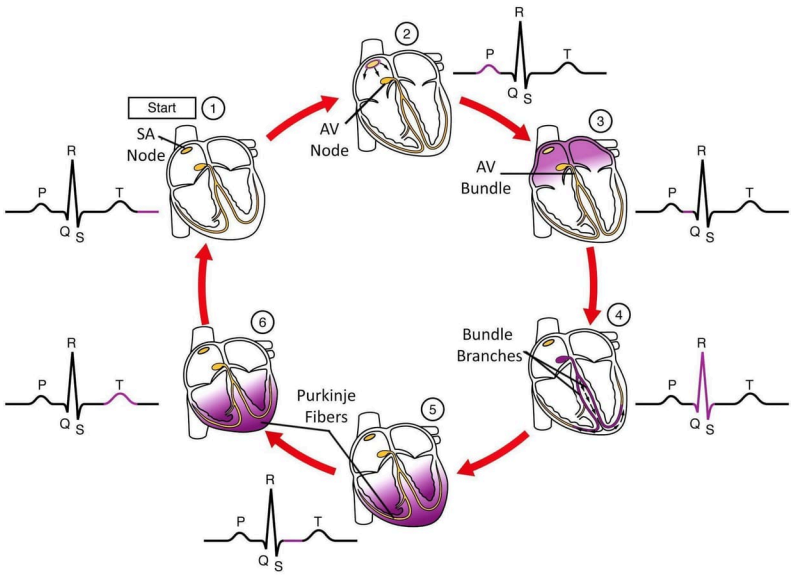


Figure 18 | ECG Tracing Correlated to the Cardiac Cycle | [32]

This diagram depicts the relationship between an ECG tracing and the electrical and mechanical events during one cardiac cycle. 1) Depolarization begins in SA node. 2) Atrial depolarization spreads from the SA node towards the AV node, 3) PR interval reflects the time the electrical impulse takes to travel from the SA node through the AV node, 4) The QRS complex represents the rapid depolarization of the right and left ventricles 5) The ST segment connects the QRS complex and the T wave; it represents the period when the ventricles are depolarized, 6) The T wave represents the repolarization of the ventricles.

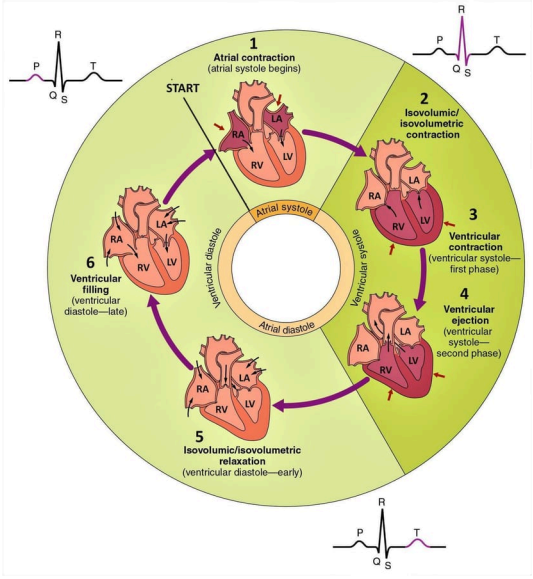


Figure 19 | Phases of the Cardiac Cycle | [33] The cycle diagram depicts one heartbeat of the continuously repeating cardiac cycle. 1) The cardiac cycle begins when atrial systole begins - Atrial contract forces a small amount of additional blood into relaxed ventricles. 2) Atrial systole ends and atrial diastole begins. 3) Ventricular systole - first phase: Ventricular contraction pushes AV valves closed but does not create enough pressure to open semilunar valves. 4) Ventricular systole second phase: As ventricular pressure rises and exceeds pressure in the arteries, the semilunar valves open and blood is ejected. 5) Ventricular

diastole early: As ventricles relax, pressure in ventricles drops; blood flows back against cusps of semilunar valves and forces them closed. Blood flows in the relaxed atria. 6) Ventricular diastole late: All chambers are relaxed. Ventricles fill passively. Correlations to the ECG are highlighted. RA, Right Atrium; LA, Left Atrium; RV, Right Ventricle; LV; Left Ventricle.

In the subsequent phase of ventricular systole, known as the **ventricular ejection phase**, the ongoing contraction of ventricular muscle fibers propels the internal pressures in these chambers to surpass those in the pulmonary trunk and aorta. This pressure increase facilitates the opening of the pulmonary and aortic semilunar valves. Notably, the force generated by the left ventricle surpasses that of the right ventricle due to the inherently higher pressure in the aorta. Specifically, the left ventricle generates an approximate pressure of 120 mm Hg, while the right ventricle exerts around 35 mm Hg. Despite this pressure discrepancy, both ventricles release the same amount of blood. This ejected blood volume from each ventricle is termed the **stroke volume (SV)**, commonly falling within the 70 to 80 mL range.

After ejection, each ventricle retains a residual blood volume of 50 to 60 mL, referred to as the ESV. The **ejection fraction** is the portion of blood expelled from the heart with each contraction. This fraction is determined by dividing the stroke volume by the EDV. Typically ranging from 55 to 70 percent, with an average of 58 percent, ejection fraction quantifies cardiac pumping efficiency.

Ventricular Diastole

Ventricular diastole constitutes the most prolonged cardiac cycle phase, lasting approximately 430 milliseconds. It follows the repolarization of the ventricles as depicted in Figures 19 & 21 and occurs immediately after the blood ejection phase. Diastole is categorized into two distinct stages: **early diastole** and **late diastole**. During the initial phase of ventricular diastole, as the ventricular muscle fibers unwind, the internal pressure within the ventricles begins to decline. As this pressure descends below that within the pulmonary trunk and the aorta, a tendency arises for blood to flow backward into the ventricles, leading to a slight dip, termed the **dicrotic notch**, in the blood pressure waveforms (Figure 22). To prevent this retrograde blood flow, the semilunar valves swiftly close, causing the **second heart sound**, often described as "**dub**." Since the AV valves remain shut during this period, no additional blood volume enters the ventricles. Hence, the initial phase of ventricular diastole is termed the **isovolumic** or **isovolumetric ventricular relaxation phase** (Figure 19).

During the subsequent stage of ventricular diastole, known as **late ventricular diastole**, the relaxation of the ventricular myocardium persists, leading to a further decrease in pressure within the ventricles. This pressure eventually falls below the pressure found within the atria. Consequently, blood initiates its flow from the atria into the ventricles, causing the tricuspid and mitral valves to open. Meanwhile, the semilunar valves remain shut (Figure 19).

A **left ventricular pressure-volume loop**, often referred to as **LV loop**, is a graphical representation to illustrate the dynamic changes in pressure and volume within the left ventricle throughout the cardiac cycle (Figure 20). This loop provides valuable insights into the mechanical function of the left ventricle and is particularly useful in assessing cardiac performance and diagnosing various heart conditions.[34]

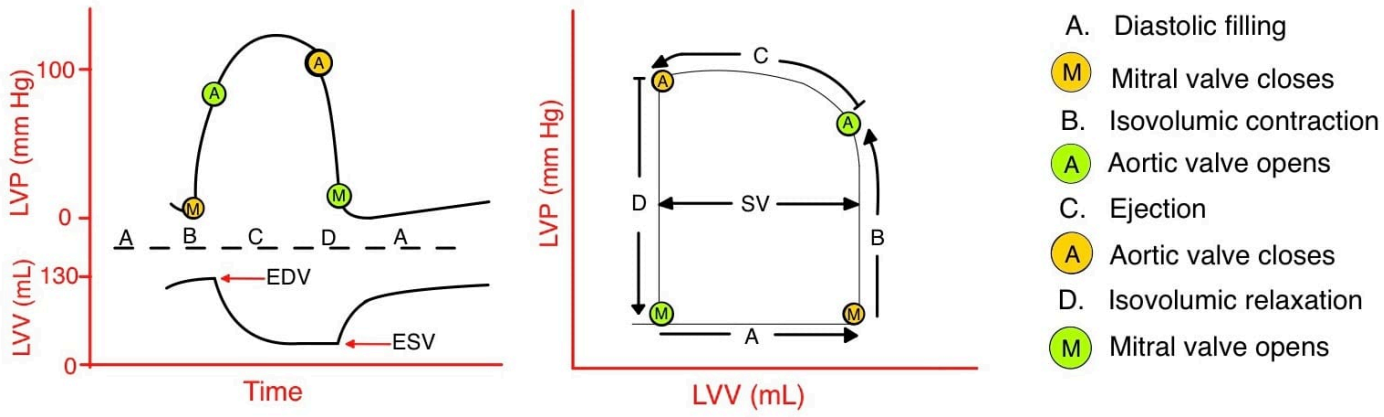


Figure 20 | Left Ventricular Pressure-Volume Loop | [35] Left Panel summarizes volume changes during a cardiac cycle in the bottom graph and pressure changes in the left ventricle in the upper illustration.

Right Panel: The horizontal axis of the loop represents ventricular volume in mL. The vertical axis represents left ventricular

pressure, usually measured in mmHg. Pressure values start at their lowest during ventricular diastole (relaxation) and increase as the ventricle contracts during systole (contraction). A. Ventricular Filling: The left ventricle continues to relax, and as pressure decreases, it falls below the left atrial pressure. The mitral valve opens, allowing blood to flow from the left atrium into the left ventricle. B. Isovolumetric Contraction: This phase begins at the lower right corner of the loop. During this phase, the ventricle contracts, causing an increase in pressure while the volume remains relatively constant. Both the mitral valve (bicuspid valve) and aortic valve are closed. C. Ejection Phase: The aortic valve opens as left ventricular pressure rises and exceeds aortic pressure. Blood is ejected from the left ventricle into the aorta, leading to a decrease in ventricular volume but a further increase in pressure. This phase forms the ascending portion of the loop. D. Isovolumetric Relaxation: After ejection, the aortic valve closes, marking the onset of ventricular relaxation. During this phase, the ventricular volume remains relatively constant while the pressure decreases (descending portion of the loop). Both the mitral and aortic valves are closed.

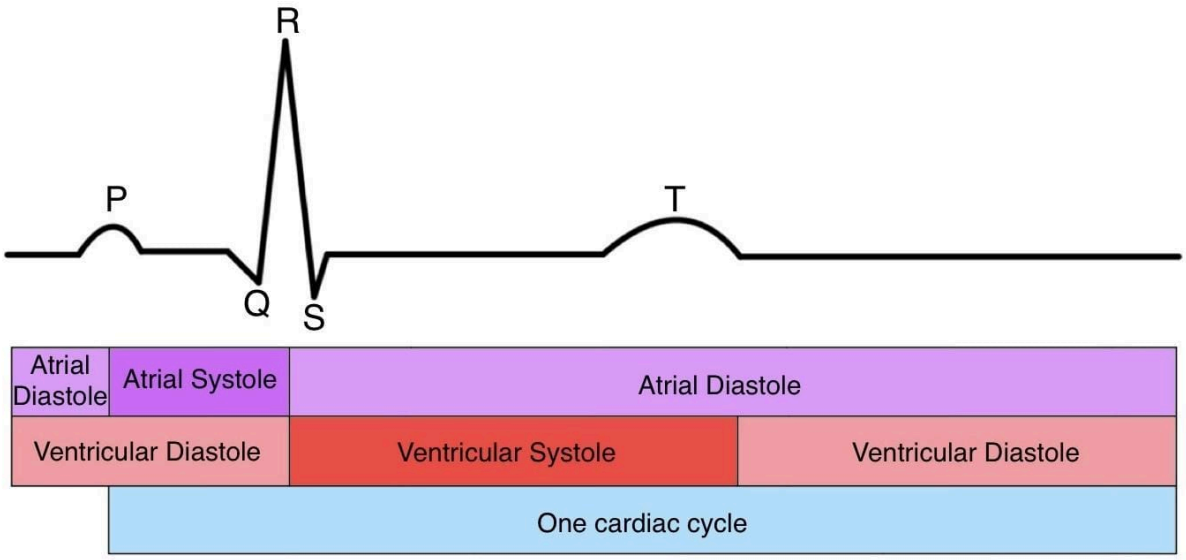


Figure 21 | The relationship between the cardiac cycle and the ECG | [36] This figure illustrates the relationship between the electrical activity of the heart, as recorded by an electrocardiogram (ECG), and the mechanical events of the cardiac cycle, specifically atrial and ventricular systole (contraction) and diastole (relaxation).

Heart Sounds

One of the straightforward yet valuable diagnostic methods employed to assess cardiac condition is **auscultation**, a process involving using a stethoscope to listen to heart sounds. Two distinct heart sounds can be heard within a healthy heart: **S1** and **S2**. S1 arises from the closure of the AV valves during ventricular contraction, often described as a "lubb" or the first heart sound. Conversely, the second heart sound, S2, emanates from the closure of the semilunar valves during ventricular diastole and is characterized as a "dub" (as depicted in Figure 22). In both instances, as the valves shut, the openings safeguarded by these valves reduce in size, and blood flow through the openings becomes more turbulent until the valves are completely sealed.

A **third heart sound**, **S3**, called the '**ventricular gallop**,' can sometimes be detected during early diastole, although it is rarely observed in healthy individuals. S3 is typically attributed to blood movement back and forth within a highly compliant left ventricle. It may be a normal variation in young individuals, certain athletes, and pregnant women. However, if S3 is detected later in life, it could indicate congestive heart failure, necessitating further investigation. Conversely, the **fourth heart sound**, **S4**, also known as the '**atrial gallop**,' arises from the atrial contractions pushing blood into either a rigid or hypertrophic ventricle, signifying left ventricular dysfunction. S4 occurs before S1.[37]

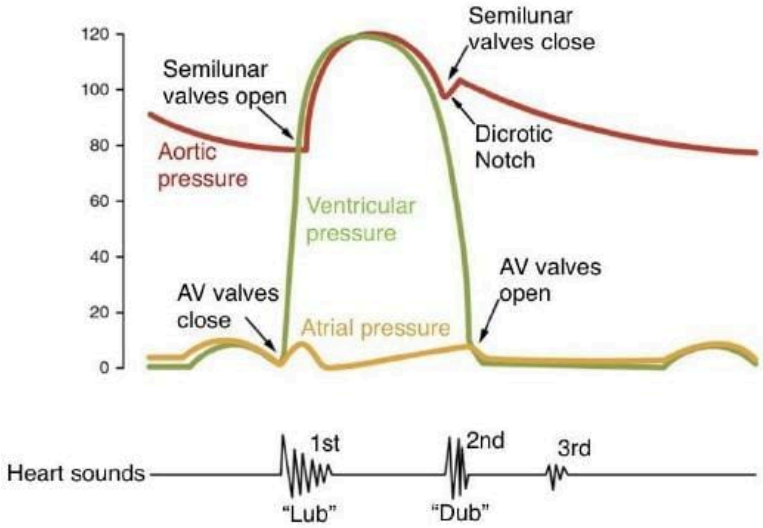


Figure 22 | The relationship between the heart sounds and the pressure changes within the left atrium, left ventricle and the aorta in one cardiac cycle. The x-axis reflects time with a recording of the heart sounds. The y-axis represents pressure | [38] This figure provides a comprehensive depiction of the events occurring throughout a single cardiac cycle within the left atrium, left ventricle, and the aorta, along with the behaviors of the mitral valve and aortic valve. The most remarkable alterations can be observed in the left ventricular pressure (illustrated by the green line), which begins at 0 mm Hg during early ventricular diastole, experiencing a slight elevation as it passively fills. After the closure of the AV valve and isovolumetric contraction, the pressure consistently rises to 120 mm Hg. Following the opening of the aortic valve and the release of blood into the aorta, the left ventricular pressure decreases to return to 0 mm Hg. The aorta's blood pressure ranges between 80 and 120 mm Hg (shown as red line). As blood moves away from the heart, the pressure diminishes; conversely, during ventricular ejection, the pressure ascends to 120 mm Hg. Comparatively, the pressure variations within the left atrium (yellow line) are notably more minor than the fluctuations in the aorta and the left ventricle. Atrial systole contributes to a minor increase in pressure.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 9.14: Cardiac Cycle is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.15: Heart Rate, Stroke Volume, and Cardiac Output

Heart Rate

Heart rate refers to the number of times the heart beats per minute (bpm). Heart rate exhibits significant variation, influenced by physical activity, fitness levels, and age. In newborns, the heart rate can reach 120 beats per minute, gradually declining until reaching young adulthood, and it starts to rise again with advancing age. On average, the resting heart rate hovers around 75 beats per minute, but it can range between 60 and 100 bpm. The maximum heart rate typically falls within 200 to 220 beats per minute. However, this upper limit diminishes as an individual grows older. A proper estimation of this decline can be derived by subtracting the individual's age from the maximal value of 220 beats per minute. For instance, a 40-year-old person would be anticipated to achieve a maximum rate of around 180 bpm, whereas a 60-year-old would attain a heart rate of approximately 160 bpm.

Pulse, a rhythmic expansion and recoiling of arterial wall, offers insights into the heart rate and the strength of its contractions, serving as a clinical indicator of a patient's well-being. An elevated or irregular pulse rate can result from physical activity or transient factors, but it may also signify an underlying cardiac anomaly. Pulse strength is reflective of ventricular contraction and cardiac output.

In most healthy individuals, pulse rate and heart rate are the same, as each heartbeat creates a pulse in the arteries. However, in certain medical conditions, such as **arrhythmias** (irregular heart rhythms) or **atrial fibrillation**, the pulse rate might not match the actual heart rate because not every heartbeat results in a pulse that can be felt at the artery.

Neural Regulation of Heart Rate

Even though the initiation of heart rate comes from the heart's pacemaker, the nervous system also plays a role in regulating it. Neural input influences and adjusts heart rate. Within the medulla oblongata, there exist two paired cardiovascular centers. The heart's activity is spurred by sympathetic activation and dampened by parasympathetic stimulation, conveyed to the heart through the vagus nerve (cranial nerve X) (Figure 24). Even during periods of rest, both centers contribute a baseline level of stimulation to the heart, establishing what's known as autonomic tone. Typically, the influence of vagal stimulation predominates, maintaining the heart rate within the range of 70 to 80 beats per minute. Without the restraining effect of the parasympathetic input, the sinoatrial node would dictate a sinus rhythm of approximately 100 beats per minute.

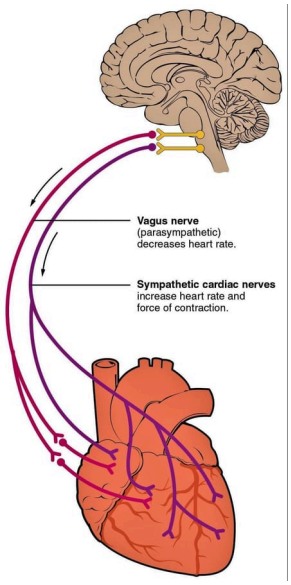


Figure 24 | Autonomic Innervation of the Heart | [39] This figure illustrates the dual innervation of the heart by the autonomic nervous system, highlighting the opposing effects of the parasympathetic and sympathetic divisions on heart rate and

contractility. The brain, depicted at the top, serves as the central control for these autonomic functions. The vagus nerve, representing the parasympathetic branch and shown in purple, originates in the brainstem and extends to the heart, releasing acetylcholine to decrease heart rate. Conversely, the sympathetic cardiac nerves, shown in red, also originate in the brainstem and travel to the heart, releasing norepinephrine to increase both heart rate and the force of contraction. This dual innervation allows for precise regulation of cardiac function, ensuring the heart can adapt to varying physiological demands. The arrows indicate the direction of nerve impulse flow from the brain to the heart, visually demonstrating the pathways of autonomic control.

The **cardiac nerves** influence the sinoatrial and atrioventricular nodes, sending additional fibers to the atria and ventricles. The ventricles experience a richer supply of sympathetic fibers than parasympathetic fibers. When sympathetic activation occurs, it triggers the release of NE and prompts the adrenal medulla to secrete both E and NE. NE shortens the repolarization period, allowing a faster occurrence of new depolarization and subsequent contractions than under normal circumstances, leading to an increased heart rate. The release of NE prompts the opening of sodium and calcium ion channels, ushering in a flow of positively charged ions as part of the depolarization phase of the action potential in the pacemaker cells. This action is facilitated by NE binding to beta-1 adrenergic receptors within the heart. Furthermore, these beta-1 adrenergic receptors stimulate heart rate and impact the cardiac muscle cell membrane. They heighten the metabolic rate and enhance the force of contraction. The combined effects of these actions result in an augmented SV and a reduced ESV. Certain cardiac medications, like beta blockers, exert their influence by blocking these receptors, leading to a deceleration in heart rate and a reduction in contraction force. Additionally, any sympathetic stimulation affecting the venous system contributes to increased venous return to the heart, which in turn aids in ventricular filling and contributes to the end-diastolic volume.

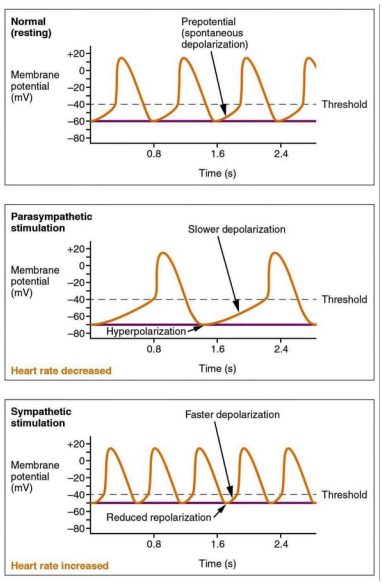


Figure 25 | Effects of Parasympathetic and Sympathetic Stimulation on Normal Sinus Rhythm | [40] This figure illustrates the effects of autonomic nervous system stimulation on the membrane potential of sinoatrial (SA) node cells and the resulting changes in heart rate. The top panel depicts a normal, resting state, showing the characteristic prepotential (spontaneous depolarization) that drives the rhythmic generation of action potentials and sets the baseline heart rate. The middle panel illustrates the effect of parasympathetic stimulation, mediated by the vagus nerve. This stimulation leads to hyperpolarization of the SA node cells and a slower rate of prepotential depolarization, resulting in a decreased heart rate. The bottom panel demonstrates the effect of sympathetic stimulation, mediated by sympathetic cardiac nerves. This stimulation causes a faster rate of prepotential depolarization and reduced repolarization, leading to an increased heart rate. Each panel includes a graph of membrane potential (mV) over time (s), with the threshold potential indicated by a dashed line, highlighting how autonomic influences alter the rate at which this threshold is reached and subsequently affect heart rate.

Parasympathetic impulses traverse through the vagus nerve, extending its branches to the sinoatrial and atrioventricular nodes and segments of the atria and ventricles. Parasympathetic stimulation initiates the release of acetylcholine as the neurotransmitter at the neuromuscular junction. The presence of acetylcholine slows down the heart rate by inducing the opening of potassium ion channels. This extension of the repolarization phase results in a prolonged interval before the subsequent spontaneous depolarization occurs. This delay in the rate of spontaneous depolarization leads to a reduction in heart rate, as the resting heart rate generally remains below 100 beats per minute. This response is known as a "negative chronotropic effect,"

with "chrono-" about time and "tropos" signifying "a turn" or change, in this context referring to heart rate alterations. It is akin to driving a car with one's foot on the brake pedal. One lifts off the brake to accelerate, allowing the engine to speed up.

Similarly, diminishing parasympathetic stimulation decreases acetylcholine release in the heart, leading to an elevation in heart rate up to approximately 100 beats per minute. Further escalations beyond this rate would necessitate sympathetic stimulation. The impact of parasympathetic and sympathetic stimulation on the normal sinus rhythm is depicted in Figure 25. As parasympathetic fibers have a broader distribution within the atria than the ventricles, their primary effects are observed in the atria. Parasympathetic stimulation within the atria curtails the atrial kick, reducing the end-diastolic volume. Consequently, this reduction in EDV diminishes ventricular stretch and preload. Accordingly, this further curbs the force of ventricular contraction.[41]

Stroke Volume

Stroke volume (SV) signifies the quantity of blood that the heart expels in a single heartbeat. Although numerous factors come into play, SV is chiefly influenced by the distinction between EDV and ESV. The trio of key components that impact SV encompasses preload, encompassing the ventricles' extent of stretch preceding contraction; **contractility**, denoting the vigor and intensity of the contraction; and **afterload**, which designates the effort required of the ventricles to propel blood against the resistance existing in the vessels.

Preload

Preload, an alternative term for EDV, holds significance in understanding cardiac dynamics. As end-diastolic volume increases, so does preload. Filling time, a crucial determinant marks the duration of ventricular diastole wherein filling transpires. Swift heart contractions diminish filling time, reducing preload. Although bolstering contractility can partially offset this effect, the heart eventually struggles to counteract the decline in filling time, ultimately reducing preload.

While at rest, the ventricular muscle undergoes minimal stretching, maintaining short sarcomeres. Augmented ventricular filling amplifies muscle stretching, elongating the sarcomeres and optimizing their length. In this state, sarcomeres contract with increased vigor, facilitated by more myosin heads binding to actin on the thin filaments, forming additional cross bridges. This escalation in contractile strength bolsters SV. Contraction force may diminish if this process continues unchecked, leading to excessive sarcomere stretching beyond optimal lengths. However, it is important to note that under normal circumstances, extreme stretching is rare due to the structural constraints of the heart's location.

Contractility

Contractility denotes the robustness of the heart muscle contraction, playing a vital role in SV and ESV. When contractions are forceful, SV increases while ESV decreases. Conversely, less intense contractions yield smaller SV and larger ESV.

The connection between ventricular stretch and contraction is encapsulated in the **Frank-Starling mechanism**, also known as **Starling's Law of the Heart**. This principle establishes that, within physiological boundaries, the strength of contraction is directly linked to the initial length of the muscle fiber. In essence, greater ventricular muscle stretch leads to more potent contractions, consequently boosting SV. Thus, greater preload corresponds to an increase in contractility.

Enhancements in contractility stem from **positive inotropic factors**, whereas reductions are associated with **negative inotropic agents**. For instance, sympathetic stimulation acts as a positive inotrope, while parasympathetic stimulation acts as a negative inotrope. Elevated levels of intracellular calcium ions intensify contraction strength. Excessive calcium ions (hypercalcemia) act as a positive inotropic agent. The drug **Digitalis** diminishes heart rate and bolsters contraction vigor. By obstructing calcium ion sequestration into the sarcoplasmic reticulum, it elevates intracellular calcium ion levels, ultimately enhancing contraction strength. Hormones norepinephrine, epinephrine, thyroid hormones, and glucagon exert positive inotropic effects. Negative inotropic agents comprise reduced oxygen supply (hypoxia), acidosis, excessive potassium ion levels (hyperkalemia), beta-blockers, and calcium ion channel blockers.

Afterload

Afterload pertains to the pressure that the ventricles must generate to propel blood against the resistance within the vascular system effectively. Situations that augment resistance necessitate a greater afterload to facilitate the opening of semilunar valves and the propulsion of blood. Conditions such as valve damage, as seen in **stenosis**, can intensify afterload by impeding valve

opening. Conversely, diminished resistance leads to reduced afterload.

Determination of SV involves recording both ESV and EDV using an echocardiogram and then computing the difference:

$$SV = EDV - ESV$$

The typical range for SV spans from 55 to 100 mL, with an average value of approximately 70 mL for a resting 70 kg (150 lb) individual. Numerous influential factors contribute to this value, including heart size, individual's physical condition, gender, contractility, contraction duration, preload, and afterload (or resistance) (Table 1).

Table 1 | *Factors Affecting Stroke Volume* |

Factors Affecting Stroke Volume			
	Preload	**Contractility**	**Afterload**
Raised due to:	• Longer filling time • Increasing venous return Increases and diastolic volume Increases stroke volume	• Sympathetic stimulation • Epinephrine and norepinephrine • High intracellular calcium ions • High blood calcium level • Thyroid hormones • Glucagon Decreases end systolic volume Increases stroke volume	• Increased vascular resistance • Semilunar valve damage Increases and systolic volume Decreases stroke volume
Lowered due to:	• Decreased thyroid hormones • Decreased calcium ions • High or low potassium ions • High or low sodium • Low body temperature • Hypoxia • Abnormal pH balance • Drugs (i.e., calcium channel blockers) Decreases end diastolic volume Decreases stroke volume	• Parasympathetic stimulation • Acetylcholine • Hypoxia • Hyperkalemia Increases end systolic volume Decreases stroke volume	• Decreased vascular resistance Decreases end systolic volume Increases stroke volume

Cardiac Output

Cardiac output is a crucial measure indicating the volume of blood ejected by each ventricle within a single minute. This value is derived by multiplying the SV by the heart rate (HR), signifying the frequency of cardiac cycles per minute (Figure 23). The average mean cardiac output is 5.25 L/min, ranging from 4.0 to 8.0 L/min. It is essential to recognize that these figures denote the cardiac output for each ventricle individually, not the cumulative output for the entire heart.

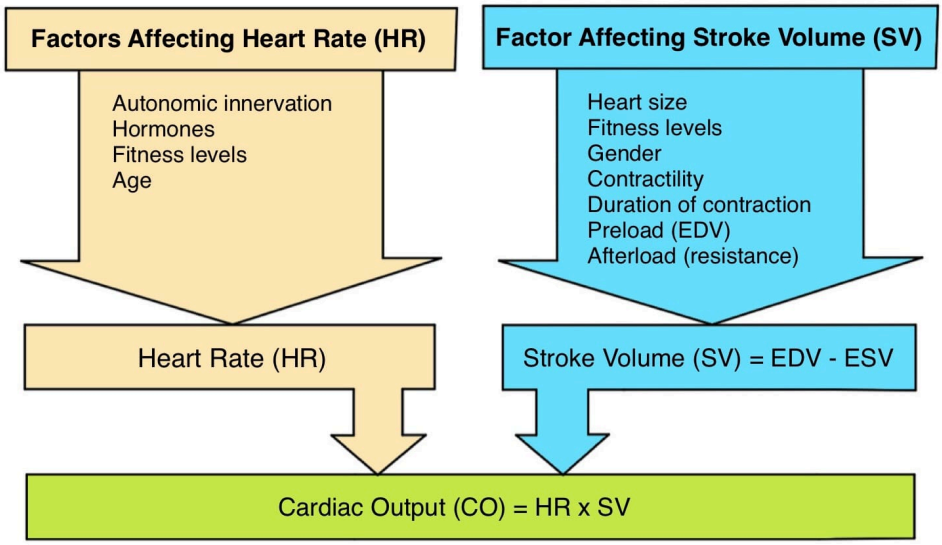


Figure 23 | Major Factors Influencing Cardiac Output | [42]

This figure illustrates the relationship between heart rate (HR), stroke volume (SV), and cardiac output (CO), and outlines the key factors that influence each. The upper left section of the figure lists the primary factors that influence heart rate: autonomic innervation, hormones, fitness levels, and age. The upper right section of the figure lists the primary factors that influence stroke volume: heart size, fitness levels, gender, contractility, duration of contraction, preload (EDV), and afterload (resistance). The lower section of the figure demonstrates the calculation of cardiac output: Stroke Volume (SV) = End-Diastolic Volume (EDV) - End-Systolic Volume (ESV), and Cardiac Output (CO) = Heart Rate (HR) x Stroke Volume (SV).

Several factors lead to variations in heart rate and stroke volume (Figure 23). On average, women tend to have a slightly higher resting heart rate than men. This is often attributed to women generally having smaller heart sizes, requiring more beats per minute to circulate blood efficiently throughout the body. Exercise increases heart rate. This increase in heart rate initially prompts an augmentation in stroke volume. During training, a heightened flow of blood returns to the heart, contributing to this effect. However, as the heart rate rises, there is an alteration in the time spent in diastole – the relaxation phase of the cardiac cycle. This modification leaves less time for the ventricles to fill adequately with blood. Interestingly, despite this reduction in filling time, SV persists at a higher level initially. Nonetheless, as the heart rate continues to surge, SV diminishes due to the decreasing opportunity for the ventricles to fill.

The interplay of heart rate and SV significantly influences cardiac output – the amount of blood pumped by the heart in a minute. Initially, cardiac output demonstrates an upward trend when the heart rate increases from a resting state to about 120 beats per minute. When the heart rate escalates further from 120 to 160 beats per minute, cardiac output stabilizes. This steadying occurs because the increase in heart rate is counterbalanced by the decline in ventricular filling time and, subsequently, SV. However, a notable shift transpires when the heart rate persists beyond 160 beats per minute. Cardiac output, contrary to the earlier pattern, starts to decrease. This decrease arises as stroke volume declines faster than the rise in heart rate. This dynamic becomes more evident during intense exertion.

For health-conscious individuals, especially those engaged in aerobic exercise, it is important to monitor heart rate levels. Keeping the heart rate within a target range of 120 to 160 beats per minute helps maintain balanced cardiac output. Athletes and those with strong cardiovascular health often have lower resting heart rates due to their heart's greater efficiency. Well-trained individuals often have higher stroke volumes due to increased cardiac efficiency and heart muscle strength. However, maximum heart rate during exercise tends to decrease with age.

Total blood volume affects stroke volume, as a higher blood volume enhances venous return and preload, while dehydration or blood loss can decrease stroke volume. Men generally maintain a higher stroke volume due to their larger heart size. However, highly trained women can have stroke volumes similar to or greater than less trained men, demonstrating that fitness level can greatly influence these differences.

Hormonal fluctuations, such as those occurring during pregnancy, menstruation, or menopause, can influence heart rate. Additionally, stress, anxiety, excitement, or fear can elevate heart rate due to the release of epinephrine and other stress hormones.[43]

This page titled 9.15: Heart Rate, Stroke Volume, and Cardiac Output is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.16: Cardiac Reserve

When healthy young individuals engage in physical activity, both their heart rate and SV increase significantly. Heart rate can rise to around 150 bpm, while the amount of blood ejected with each beat (SV) increases from its resting value of 70 mL to approximately 130 mL. This rise in SV leads to a substantial boost in overall cardiac output, which can reach about 19.5 liters per minute (L/min)—roughly 4 to 5 times higher than at rest. Exceptionally trained athletes can achieve even higher cardiac output levels, primarily influenced by their training intensity.

While resting cardiac output remains constant, it can increase dramatically during intense exertion, sometimes by as much as 7 to 8 times. This remarkable adaptability showcases the heart's ability to perform efficiently, largely due to its muscular structure. Exercise significantly improves the heart's effectiveness as a pump. The difference between maximum achievable cardiac output and resting cardiac output is known as **cardiac reserve**, a measure of the heart's capacity to circulate blood efficiently under varying levels of physical demand.[44]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 9.16: Cardiac Reserve is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

9.17: References

1. Mohrman, D. E., & Heller, L. J. (2018). *Cardiovascular physiology* (9th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.
2. Tortora, G. J., & Derrickson, B. H. (2020). *Principles of anatomy and physiology* (16th ed.). Wiley.
3. Blausen 0458 Heart ThoracicCavity.png. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated October 25, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/7b/Blausen_0458_Heart_ThoracicCavity.png
4. Drake, R. L., Vogl, W., Mitchell, A. W. M., & Gray, H. (2020). *Gray's anatomy for students* (4th ed.). Elsevier.
5. Blausen 0470 HeartWall.png. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated October 25, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/6f/Blausen_0470_HeartWall.png
6. Guyton, A. C., & Hall, J. E. (2020). *Textbook of medical physiology* (14th ed.). Elsevier.
7. 2006 Heart Musculature.jpg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated October 16, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/0e/2006_Heart_Musculature.jpg
8. Boron, W. F., & Boulpaep, E. L. (2017). *Medical physiology* (3rd ed.). Elsevier.
9. 2007 Ventricular Muscle Thickness.jpg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated October 5, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/89/2007_Ventricular_Muscle_Thickness.jpg
10. Marieb, E. N., & Hoehn, K. (2018). *Human anatomy & physiology* (11th ed.). Pearson.
11. ChatGPT generated image
12. Blood Circulation.gif. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated September 11, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/77/Blood_Circulation.gif
13. 2012 Blood Flow Relaxed Ventricles.jpg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated October 17, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/b0/2012_Blood_Flow_Relaxed_Ventricles.jpg
14. 2013 Blood Flow Contracted Ventricles.jpg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated October 20, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/a4/2013_Blood_Flow_Contracted_Ventricles.jpg
15. Sanchez Vaca F, Bordoni B. Anatomy, Thorax, Mitral Valve. [Updated 2023 Jul 24]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK549884/
16. Sundjaja JH, Bordoni B. Anatomy, Thorax, Heart Pulmonic Valve. [Updated 2023 Jul 24]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK547706/
17. Crawford PT, Arbor TC, Bordoni B. Anatomy, Thorax, Aortic Valve. [Updated 2023 Sep 4]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK559384/
18. Boundless. (n.d.). Fibrous Skeleton of the Heart. *Anatomy and Physiology (Boundless)*. Retrieved from https://med.libretexts.org/Bookshelves/Anatomy_and_Physiology/Anatomy_and_Physiology_(Boundless)/17%3A_Cardiovascular_System%3A_The_Heart/17.1%3A_The_Heart/17.1G%3A_Fibrous_Skeleton_of_the_Heart
19. Chaudhry R, Rahman S, Law MA. Anatomy, Thorax, Heart Arteries. [Updated 2023 Jul 24]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK470522/

20. Blausen 0260 CoronaryVessels Anterior.png. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated October 10, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/d3/Blausen_0260_CoronaryVessels_Anterior.png

Blausen 0260 CoronaryVessels Posterior.png. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated October 10, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/a9/Blausen_0261_CoronaryVessels_Posterior.png

21. Ripa R, George T, Shumway KR, et al. Physiology, Cardiac Muscle. [Updated 2023 Jul 30]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK572070/

22. 2017abc Cardiac Muscle.jpg. . Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated September 26, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://commons.wikimedia.org/w/index.php?title=File:2017abc_Cardiac_Muscle.jpg&oldid=471666846

23. Eisner DA, Caldwell JL, Kistamás K, Trafford AW. Calcium and Excitation-Contraction Coupling in the Heart. Circ Res. 2017 Jul 7;121(2):181-195. doi: 10.1161/CIRCRESAHA.117.310230. PMID: 28684623; PMCID: PMC5497788.

24. 2018 Conduction System of Heart.jpg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated September 18, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://commons.wikimedia.org/w/index.php?title=File:2018_Conduction_System_of_Heart.jpg&oldid=463222495

25. 2019 Cardiac ConductionN.jpg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated September 12, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/9/92/2019_Cardiac_ConductionN.jpg

26. 2020 SA Node Tracing.jpg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated September 26, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/a4/2020_SA_Node_Tracing.jpg

27. 2026 Action Potential Heart Contraction.jpg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated October 9, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/2/26/2026_Action_Potential_Heart_Contraction.jpg

28. Levy, M. N. (n.d.). Cardiac Action Potentials. *CV Physiology*. Retrieved from https://cvphysiology.com/arrhythmias/a010

29. 2021 ECG Placement of Electrodes.jpg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated October 15, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/1/16/2021_ECG_Placement_of_Electrodes.jpg

30. Sattar Y, Chhabra L. Electrocardiogram. [Updated 2023 Jun 5]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK549803/

31. SinusRhythmLabels.svg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated Septembe 19, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/9/9e/SinusRhythmLabels.svg

32. 2023 ECG Tracing with Heart ContractionN.jpg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated Septembe 5, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/b5/2023_ECG_Tracing_with_Heart_ContractionN.jpg

33. 2027 Phases of the Cardiac Cycle.jpg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated October 17, 2020. Accessed February 3, 2021. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/38/2027_Phases_of_the_Cardiac_Cycle.jpg

34. Pollock JD, Makaryus AN. Physiology, Cardiac Cycle. [Updated 2022 Oct 3]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK459327/

35. Cardiac Pressure Volume Loop.jpg .Wikimedia Commons. Updated January 1, 2008. Accessed October 6, 2024. [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Cardiac_Pressure_Volume_Loop.jpg]

36. 2028 Cardiac Cycle vs Electrocardiogram.jpg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated October 14, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/8d/2028_Cardiac_Cycle_vs_Electrocardiogram.jpg

37. Dornbush S, Turnquest AE. Physiology, Heart Sounds. [Updated 2023 Jul 17]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL):

StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK541010/

38. 2029 Cardiac Cycle vs Heart Sounds.jpg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated October 14, 2020. AccessedOctober 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/f3/2029_Cardiac_Cycle_vs_Heart_Sounds.jpg

39. 2032 Automatic Innervation.jpg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated October 12, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/4c/2032_Automatic_Innervation.jpg

40. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 19.33 Effects of Parasympathetic and Sympathetic Stimulation on Normal Sinus Rhythm. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240725.163813/resources/b9a57d16dff43945b303ea1ca29853dff1f8b473]

41. Gordan R, Gwathmey JK, Xie LH. Autonomic and endocrine control of cardiovascular function. World J Cardiol. 2015 Apr 26;7(4):204-14. doi: 10.4330/wjc.v7.i4.204. PMID: 25914789; PMCID: PMC4404375.

42. 2031 Factors in Cardiac Output.jpg. Wikimedia Commons, the free media repository. Updated October 12, 2020. Accessed October 6, 2024. https://commons.wikimedia.org/w/index.php?title=File:2031_Factors_in_Cardiac_Output.jpg&oldid=488143995

43. King J, Lowery DR. Physiology, Cardiac Output. [Updated 2023 Jul 17]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK470455/

44. Mangoni, A. A., & Neylon, C. B. A. (2015). New insights into cardiac pacemaker channel function in health and disease. *Cardiovascular Research*, *106*(2), 282–294. https://doi.org/10.1159/000369808

This page titled 9.17: References is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

10: BLOOD VESSELS AND CIRCULATION

10.1: Objectives
10.2: Introduction
10.3: Systemic and Pulmonary Circuits
10.4: Vascular Network
10.5: Blood Flow, Blood Pressure, and Resistance
10.6: Measurement of Blood Pressure
10.7: Factors Affecting Blood Flow
10.8: Relationships among Vessels in the Systemic Circuit
10.9: Capillary Exchange
10.10: Venous Return
10.11: Neural Regulation of the Vascular System
10.12: References

This page titled 10: Blood Vessels and Circulation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

10.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- Explain the structure and function of the two primary blood vessel circuits in the human body.
- Identify and differentiate the various types of blood vessels found within a typical circuit.
- Distinguish the histological features of arterial walls from those of veins and capillaries.
- Correlate the histological characteristics with the roles of these vessels in circulation.
- Describe the distinct characteristics of each type of blood vessel, including arteries, arterioles, capillaries, venules, and veins, and their functions.
- Explain the physical properties governing the flow of blood within the vascular system.
- Discuss the mechanisms responsible for blood movement from one region to another.
- Identify the relationships between blood flow rate, pressure gradients, resistance to flow, and vessel radius.
- Predict how changes in these variables affect arterial blood pressure and overall circulatory dynamics.
- Explain how the mean diameter of blood vessels influences Total Peripheral Resistance (TPR) in the circulatory system.
- Emphasize the significance of TPR in regulating blood flow and pressure.
- Define Korotkoff sounds and their relevance in blood pressure measurement.
- Elaborate on how these sounds provide insights into blood flow dynamics.
- Demonstrate how the values obtained from blood pressure measurements are used to calculate Mean Arterial Blood Pressure (MAP).
- Highlight the clinical significance of MAP in assessing cardiovascular health.
- Explain the mechanisms involved in local regulation of blood flow to tissues.
- Discuss how factors like oxygen demand and metabolic byproducts influence blood supply at the microcirculatory level.
- Describe how substances are exchanged at the capillary level, including nutrients, oxygen, and waste products. Illustrate the importance of these exchanges in tissue perfusion and cellular function.
- Predict how alterations in variables affecting net filtration pressure at capillaries may promote or resist the development of edema.
- Emphasize the pathological implications of edema in circulatory disorders.
- Analyze the two mechanisms responsible for maintaining venous return: the muscular and respiratory pumps. Justify the necessity of these mechanisms in ensuring adequate blood circulation through the venous system.
- Map the aortic and carotid artery baroreceptor reflexes in response to changes in blood pressure.
- Explain how heightened baroreceptor activity concurrently affects parasympathetic and sympathetic nervous system responses.

- Elaborate on the role of chemoreceptors in regulating vascular homeostasis.
- Discuss how chemical cues, such as oxygen and carbon dioxide levels, influence the cardiovascular system.
- Identify the key hormones involved in the regulation of vascular homeostasis, including their sources and mechanisms of action.
- Explore the interplay of hormones in modulating blood pressure, fluid balance, and overall circulatory function.

This page titled 10.1: Objectives is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

10.2: Introduction

Blood vessels serve as crucial conduits for the exchange of gases, nutrients, and various substances within the body. When the functionality of these vessels is compromised, the circulation of blood-borne substances becomes inefficient. Consequently, this inefficiency leads to tissue damage, disturbances in metabolic processes, and jeopardizes the integrity of all body systems.

This page titled 10.2: Introduction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

10.3: Systemic and Pulmonary Circuits

Blood vessels play a fundamental role in establishing two primary circulatory circuits, each with distinct roles and varying volumes of blood involved (Figure 1). The **Systemic Circuit**, comprising systemic arteries and veins, is tasked with the transport of oxygen-rich blood to nourish the body's diverse tissues. As it proceeds, the oxygen content of this blood diminishes as a significant portion of the oxygen carried by the arteries is dispensed to meet the metabolic demands of the body's cells. Systemic veins then return this partially deoxygenated blood back to the heart. Conversely, the **Pulmonary Circuit** specializes in a unique role. It is composed of arteries responsible for carrying oxygen-depleted blood exclusively to the lungs. This journey culminates in the lungs, where gas exchange occurs, replenishing the oxygen content of the blood. Pulmonary veins are the next link in this circuit, returning oxygenated blood from the lungs to the heart.[1]

Approximately 5-6 liters of blood circulate through each of these circuits per minute, ensuring a constant flow of blood. In spite of their structural and functional differences, arteries and veins exhibit common features that underpin their collective purpose within the circulatory system.

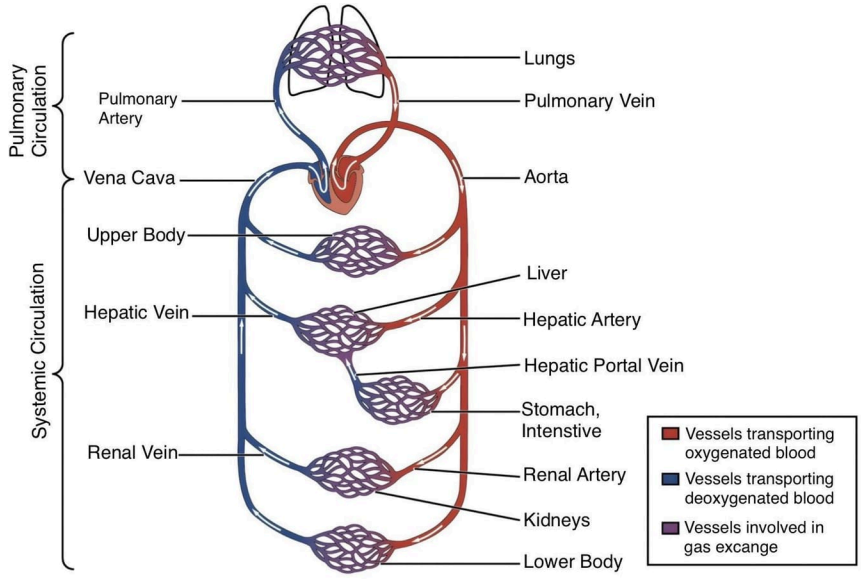


Figure 1 | Cardiovascular Circulation **|** [2] The pulmonary circuit moves blood from the right side of the heart to the lungs and back to the heart. The systemic circuit moves blood from the left side of the heart to the head and body and returns it to the right side of the heart to repeat the cycle. The arrows indicate the direction of blood flow, and the colors show the relative levels of oxygen concentration.

This page titled 10.3: Systemic and Pulmonary Circuits is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

10.4: Vascular Network

A complex network of blood vessels orchestrates blood circulation throughout the body, each type bearing a distinct nomenclature contingent upon their size and specialized functions. The arterial system encompasses vessels that transport blood away from the heart. Arteries subsequently divide into smaller branches. Within this branching framework, the smallest arteries, referred to as **arterioles**, further subdivide into the microscopic **capillaries**, which play a pivotal role in the exchange of gases, nutrients and metabolic waste products. The convergence of these capillaries forms **venules**, small-scale vascular conduits that direct blood towards veins. Veins, larger vessels within this intricate network, facilitate the return of blood to the heart.

Distinct features are observed when comparing arteries and arterioles to veins and venules (Figures 2, 3, and 6). Arteries and arterioles possess thicker walls, primarily because they are closer to the heart and experience higher blood pressure. This results in smaller lumens within arteries, a design that maintains blood pressure coursing through the vascular system. Consequently, arterial lumens typically appear rounded in cross-section. In contrast, veins have larger lumens and appear more oval or irregular in shape in cross-section.

Histology of the Blood Vessel Wall

The innermost layer of any blood vessel is the **tunica intima**, composed of both epithelial and connective tissues. This layer encompasses a specialized simple squamous epithelium, the **endothelium**, which spans the entire vascular system. The integrity of this endothelial layer is crucial as its damage and the exposure of blood to the collagenous fibers beneath can lead to clot formation. The endothelium actively participates in the regulation of capillary exchange and local blood flow by releasing **endothelins**, which can constrict the smooth muscle in the vessel walls, subsequently elevating blood pressure. In some cases, overproduction of endothelins can contribute to hypertension and other cardiovascular diseases. A **basement membrane** lies adjacent to the endothelium, anchoring it to the underlying connective tissue and permits the passage of various substances. The outermost layer of the tunica intima contains a fraction of loose connective tissue primarily consisting of elastic fibers to enhance vessel flexibility, along with some collagenous fibers for reinforcement. Larger arteries may exhibit a substantial layer of elastic fibers called the **internal elastic membrane** at the border with the tunica media, which is not present in veins. Additionally, several veins, particularly those in the lower limbs, feature **valves** formed by sections of thickened endothelium strengthened with connective tissue, which extends into the lumen. The valves are instrumental in preventing the backflow of blood. Under microscopic examination, the lumen and the entire tunica intima of a vein appear smooth, whereas those of an artery typically present a wavy appearance due to partial constriction of the smooth muscle in the subsequent **tunica media** layer.

The middle layer of the blood vessel wall, known as the tunica media, is generally thicker in arteries than in veins. It is composed of layers of smooth muscle supported by connective tissue, primarily composed of elastic fibers arranged in circular sheets. Longitudinal muscle layers are also present towards the tunic's outer section. The contraction and relaxation of circular muscles influence the lumen's diameter, a phenomenon observed in arteries and arterioles. **Vasoconstriction**, for example, narrows the lumen and elevates blood pressure by decreasing blood flow. **Vasodilation**, conversely, increases lumen diameter, thus reducing blood pressure.

The outermost tunic, referred to as the **tunica externa** or **adventitia**, is a sheath of connective tissue primarily composed of collagenous fibers. In veins, smooth muscle fibers are also found in this tunic, especially in larger veins, making it occasionally thicker than the tunica media of arteries. Regulation of vasoconstriction and vasodilation is also influenced by small vascular nerves known as **nervi vasorum**, (nerves of the vessel), embedded within the vessel walls. Typically consisting of sympathetic fibers, they either trigger vasodilation or vasoconstriction depending on neurotransmitters and receptors on the target cells. Parasympathetic stimulation is limited to the external genitalia inducing vasodilation during sexual arousal. In addition to neural regulation, hormones, and local chemical factors play pivotal roles in modulating blood vessel dynamics responding to the body's changing conditions. The outermost layers of the tunica externa gradually merge with the surrounding connective tissue outside the vessel, serving to secure the vessel in place, ensuring stability during movement to prevent any disruption of blood flow.

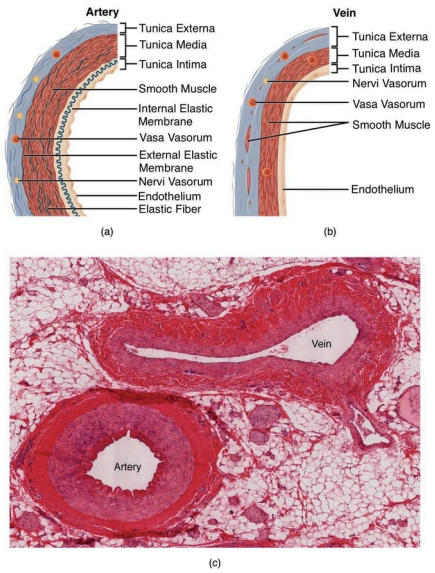


Figure 2 | Structure of Blood Vessels | [3] (a) Arteries and (b) veins share the same general features, but the walls of arteries are much thicker because of the higher pressure of the blood that flows through them. (c) A micrograph shows the relative differences in thickness. LM × 160.

Arteries

Arteries are fundamental components of the circulatory system, functioning as conduits to transport blood away from the heart. They exhibit distinctive structural characteristics that evolve as they move away from the heart, ultimately influencing their function in blood circulation.

Elastic Arteries

Arteries closest to the heart possess the most substantial walls, adept at enduring the intense pressure of blood propelled from the ventricles. Such arteries, named **elastic arteries**, typically exceed 10 mm in diameter. A defining feature of these arteries is the abundance of elastic fibers throughout their three tunics. This remarkable elastic component imparts a unique capability—the capacity to expand as blood surges forth from the heart, subsequently recoiling once the wave of blood has passed. Without this capacity, rigid walls would resist expansion and recoil, resulting in significantly elevated resistance to blood flow, thereby elevating blood pressure. Such elevated blood pressure would necessitate the heart to pump with even greater force to maintain an adequate blood volume and pressure. The arterial walls would consequently thicken in response to these heightened demands. The elastic recoil of the arterial walls serves to sustain the pressure gradient, which in turn propels blood throughout the arterial system.

Muscular Arteries

As blood courses farther from the heart and the force of the initial surge diminishes, a transformation in arterial composition occurs. The proportion of elastic fibers within the tunica intima of these arteries declines while the content of smooth muscle in their tunica media increases. This category of artery is termed **muscular arteries**. These arteries generally possess diameters ranging from 0.1 mm to 10 mm. The heightened thickness of their tunica media equips them for a pivotal role in vasoconstriction while their reduced elastic fiber content hinders their capacity to expand. Since blood pressure attenuates as it traverses these more distant vessels, elasticity becomes progressively less relevant.

Muscular arteries branch into an intricate network of arterioles, distributing blood to diverse regions of the body. Consequently, muscular arteries are also referred to as **distributing arteries**. By modulating their degree of constriction or relaxation, these arteries fine-tune blood distribution and, in doing so, play a crucial role in regulating blood flow to various tissues and organs.

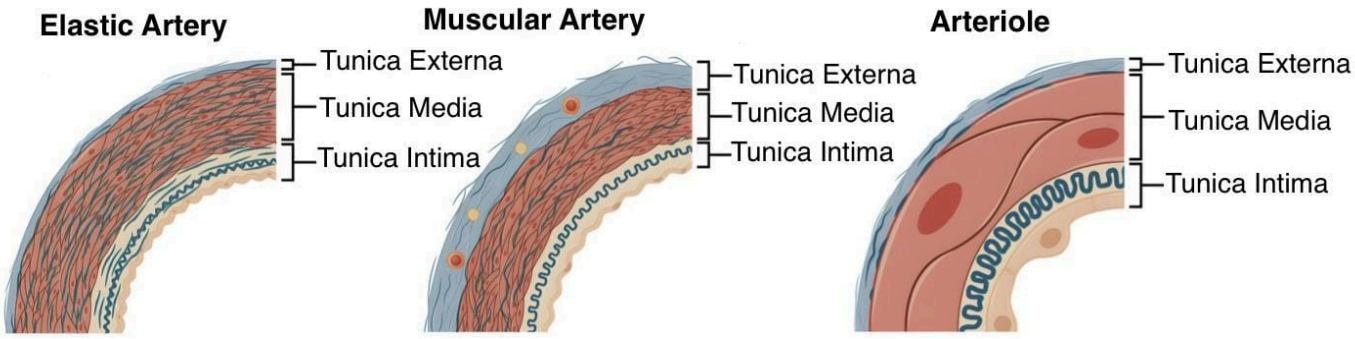


Figure 3 | Types of Arteries and Arterioles | [4] Comparison of the walls of an elastic artery, a muscular artery, and an arteriole. Each vessel consists of three primary layers: the tunica externa (outer layer, providing structural support), the tunica media (middle layer, composed of smooth muscle, regulating vessel diameter), and the tunica intima (inner endothelial layer, facilitating smooth blood flow). The elastic artery has a thick tunica media rich in elastic fibers, allowing it to accommodate pressure changes. The muscular artery has a more prominent smooth muscle layer for precise regulation of blood distribution. The arteriole, the smallest artery type, has a thinner structure but plays a crucial role in regulating blood flow and pressure.

Arterioles

Arterioles, commonly described as **precapillary vessels**, play a pivotal role in the circulatory system due to their distinctive features. These vessels exhibit a muscular coat with diameters ranging from 20 to 200 microns (Figure 3). Remarkably, despite their diminutive size, arterioles are instrumental in generating most systemic vascular resistance.

Arterioles mirror their larger counterparts by possessing the three essential tunics; however, the dimensions of these tunics are significantly reduced. The arterioles' lumens measure, on average, 30 micrometers or less in diameter, bestowing upon them a crucial function—profoundly impeding blood flow. As a consequence, arterioles are aptly referred to as **resistance vessels**. Within these vessels, smooth muscle fibers perpetually maintain a slight degree of contraction, endowing them with what is known as vascular tone. Indeed, all blood vessels exhibit vascular tone arising from the partial contraction of smooth muscle.

The singular importance of arterioles resides in their dual role as both the principal source of resistance and the central regulators of blood pressure. Neural and chemical mechanisms orchestrate the exact diameter of an arteriole's lumen at any given moment. Through these mechanisms, arterioles achieve vasoconstriction and vasodilation. In this capacity, arterioles preside over the intricate and precise regulation of blood flow to various tissues and organs within the body.

Capillaries

Capillaries are minuscule channels responsible for the delivery of blood to the tissues—a process aptly known as **perfusion**. These microvessels play host to the intricate exchange of gases and many other vital substances between the blood and the neighboring cells, as well as the surrounding tissue fluid or interstitial fluid. Capillaries, characterized by their diminutive lumen, measuring a mere 5–10 micrometers in diameter, push the envelope of what's physically possible as they barely accommodate the passage of a single erythrocyte. Microcirculation—the intricate flow of blood through the smallest vessels—occurs through these delicate capillary vessels.

The architecture of a capillary wall is unique and efficient, consisting of an endothelial layer enveloped by a basement membrane, occasionally supplemented with sporadic smooth muscle fibers. For capillaries to function effectively, their walls must exhibit a degree of "leakiness," allowing essential substances to traverse their barriers easily.

The capillaries can be categorized into three primary types, each distinguished by its unique level of "leakiness": **continuous**, **fenestrated**, and **sinusoid capillaries** (Figure 4). This classification based on permeability sets the stage for the astounding adaptability of the circulatory system in delivering precisely what each tissue requires, be it oxygen, nutrients, hormones, or waste removal.

Continuous Capillaries

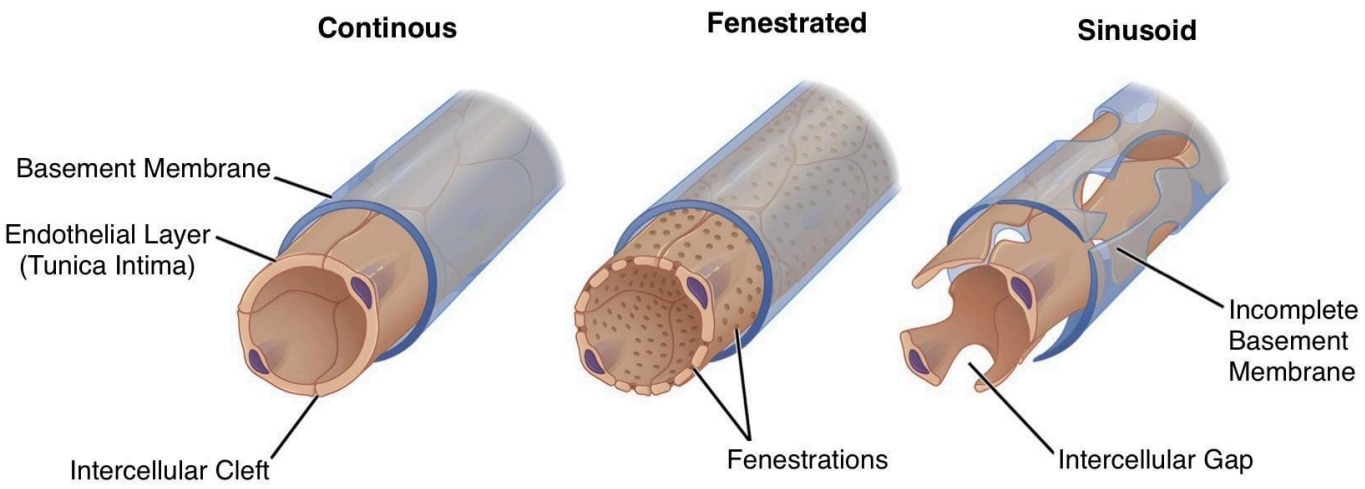


Figure 4 | Types of Capillaries | [5] Illustration of the three main types of capillaries: continuous, fenestrated, and sinusoid. Continuous capillaries have tightly connected endothelial cells with small intercellular clefts, allowing limited permeability, and are found in the brain, lungs, and muscles. Fenestrated capillaries contain small pores (fenestrations) in their endothelial layer, increasing permeability to larger molecules, and are commonly found in the kidneys, intestines, and endocrine glands. Sinusoid capillaries have large intercellular gaps and an incomplete basement membrane, allowing for extensive exchange of cells and macromolecules, and are located in the liver, spleen, and bone marrow.

Widely distributed throughout all vascularized tissues, continuous capillaries represent the most prevalent variety in the capillary realm. Their defining feature is a seamless endothelial lining with tight junctions that firmly bind neighboring endothelial cells. Typically, tight junctions serve as impenetrable barriers, allowing only water and ions to traverse. However, in the case of capillaries, these junctions exhibit a degree of leakiness, featuring intercellular clefts that serve as the gateways for the exchange of minuscule molecules between the blood plasma and the neighboring interstitial fluid. This unique quality renders continuous capillaries the primary conduits for exchanging essential substances, such as glucose, water, small hydrophobic molecules such as gases and hormones, and even white blood cells. Notably, continuous capillaries outside the brain also boast an abundance of transport vesicles, playing a pivotal role in facilitating endocytosis and exocytosis. Within the brain, continuous capillaries are part of the blood-brain barrier. Here, tight junctions between endothelial cells are complete, leaving no room for intercellular clefts. Further fortifying this barrier is a substantial basement membrane and extensions of astrocytes known as **end-feet**. These multi-layered defenses collectively serve as an impenetrable fortress, significantly limiting the movement of nearly all substances. This unique specialization safeguards the delicate and precise environment necessary for proper brain function and neurological stability.

Fenestrated Capillaries

Fenestrated capillaries are specialized vessels that feature tight junctions within the endothelial lining and remarkable pores known as **fenestrations**. These fenestrations set them apart, rendering them permeable to a distinct category of molecules. Notably, the number of fenestrations and their degree of permeability exhibit significant variability across different anatomical sites. Fenestrated capillaries play a pivotal role in locations where the selective transfer of larger molecules is essential. One notable example is the small intestine, a primary site for absorbing nutrients. A similar function is carried out in the kidneys, where fenestrated capillaries facilitate the filtration of blood. Beyond these vital functions, fenestrated capillaries make appearances in various key anatomical structures. They are notably found within the choroid plexus of the brain, where they play a role in cerebrospinal fluid production. Moreover, many endocrine structures, including the hypothalamus, pituitary gland, pineal gland, and thyroid, feature fenestrated capillaries where they assist in coordinating hormonal activities.

Sinusoids

The sinusoid capillary stands as the rarest and most distinctive among the diverse capillary types. Unlike other capillaries, sinusoids present extensive intercellular gaps and possess incomplete basement membranes. They also feature intercellular clefts and fenestrations, resulting in huge openings. These distinctive characteristics enable sinusoids to grant passage to large

molecules, including substantial plasma proteins and even whole cells. The slow blood flow within sinusoids allows for prolonged interactions, ensuring that essential processes can occur effectively.

Sinusoids are notably found in select locations, such as the liver, spleen, bone marrow, lymph nodes, and numerous endocrine glands, including the pituitary and adrenal glands. These organs depend on the presence of sinusoids to execute their specialized functions. For instance, the bone marrow relies on sinusoids as the entry point for newly formed blood cells into the bloodstream. The large openings in sinusoids are the sole means for these cells to gain access to the circulatory system, as they are unable to traverse the narrower spaces of continuous or fenestrated capillaries. In the liver, sinusoids play a pivotal role in processing materials transported by the hepatic portal vein, originating from both the digestive tract and the spleen. Furthermore, they facilitate the release of essential plasma proteins into circulation.[6]

Metarterioles and Capillary Beds

A **metarteriole** is a small blood vessel type that links arterioles to capillaries. It acts as a transitional vessel in the microcirculation system, regulating blood flow into capillary beds. Structurally, a metarteriole has some smooth muscle cells, which allow it to control the amount of blood that enters the capillaries.

Metarterioles serve as a pathway for blood to bypass the capillaries when necessary, particularly during periods of low tissue demand for blood. This regulation is important for maintaining efficient circulation and ensuring that blood flow matches the metabolic needs of tissues.

At the junction between the metarteriole and the capillaries, small smooth muscle rings called **precapillary sphincters** are present. These sphincters can contract to reduce or stop blood flow into the capillaries or relax to allow more blood to flow, further helping regulate tissue perfusion.

If all the precapillary sphincters in a capillary bed are sealed, blood takes a shortcut, flowing directly from the metarteriole into a **thoroughfare channe**l and onward into the venous circulation (Figure 5). This mechanism creates a vascular shunt, bypassing the capillary bed entirely. Moreover, the circulatory system occasionally features **arteriovenous anastomoses** that divert blood, avoiding the capillary bed and providing a direct route into the venous system.

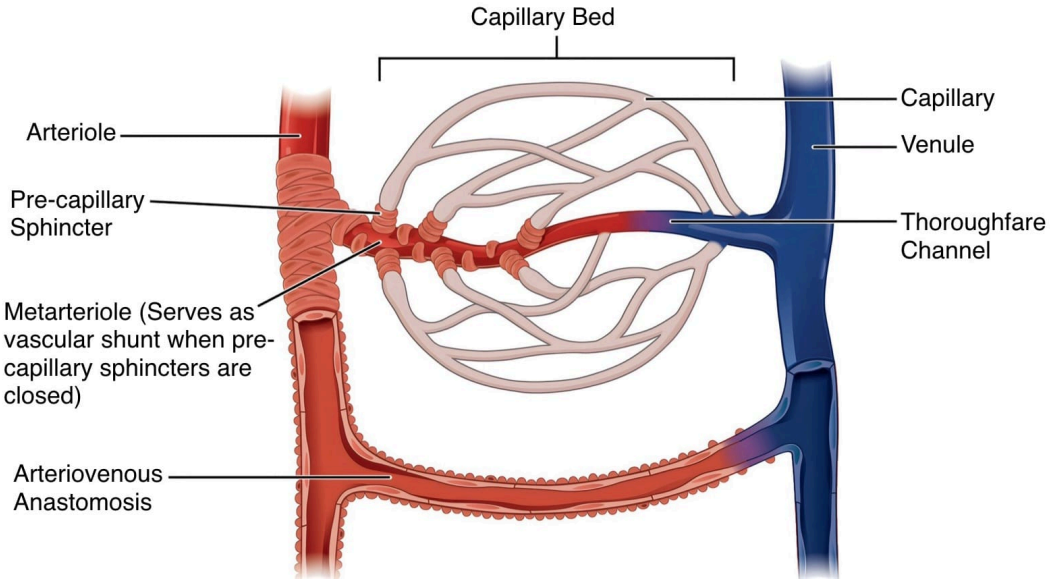


Figure 5 | Capillary Bed | [7] In a capillary bed, arterioles give rise to metarterioles. Precapillary sphincters located at the junction of a metarteriole with a capillary regulate blood flow. A thoroughfare channel connects the metarteriole to a venule.

The passage of blood through capillary beds is far from a steady stream. Instead, it takes on the rhythmic, pulsating character known as **vasomotion**. This dynamic flow pattern results from the precise orchestration of chemical signals responding to internal conditions, ultimately ensuring that vital substances reach their destinations. An array of chemical signals regulates vasomotion. These chemical cues are primarily responsive to internal conditions within the body, including levels of oxygen,

carbon dioxide, hydrogen ions, and lactic acid. During strenuous physical exertion, when oxygen levels are depleted, and the buildup of carbon dioxide, hydrogen ions, and lactic acid is considerable, capillary beds within skeletal muscle maintain an open state, facilitating the delivery of vital resources to support muscle function. In contrast, during periods of rest, when demands for oxygen and nutrients are minimal, the vessels within these areas are predominantly constricted. Occasionally, they will briefly open to permit the passage of oxygen and nutrients necessary to sustain essential life processes. Akin to the digestive system, where capillary beds are open when nutrients are present in the digestive tract, these mechanisms work to ensure the body's metabolic requirements are met.[8]

Venules

In the intricate vascular network, venules play a pivotal role, serving as the gateways to the microcirculatory system. These slender vessels, with diameters ranging from 8 to 100 micrometers, bridge the transition between the delicate capillary beds and the broader network of veins. Postcapillary venules receive blood from multiple capillaries within a specific capillary bed, representing the first step on the journey back to the heart. The walls of venules reflect their essential function as conduits for blood returning from the capillary beds. Their structure is simpler than that of arteries or arterioles, yet it is attuned to their purpose. The vascular layers consist of three primary components, endothelium**,** tunica media housing a modest number of smooth muscle cells and elastic fibers, and tunica externa, the outermost layer comprising delicate connective tissue fibers (Figure 6).

Venules, like capillaries, serve as primary sites for the process known as **emigration** or **diapedesis**. This phenomenon enables white blood cells to navigate from the bloodstream to the surrounding tissue. Emigration follows a coordinated sequence: white blood cells adhere to the endothelial lining within the venules, then skillfully squeeze through adjacent endothelial cells, gaining access to the surrounding tissue fluid. This intricate process is fundamental to the body's immune response, facilitating the movement of white blood cells to sites of infection or injury.

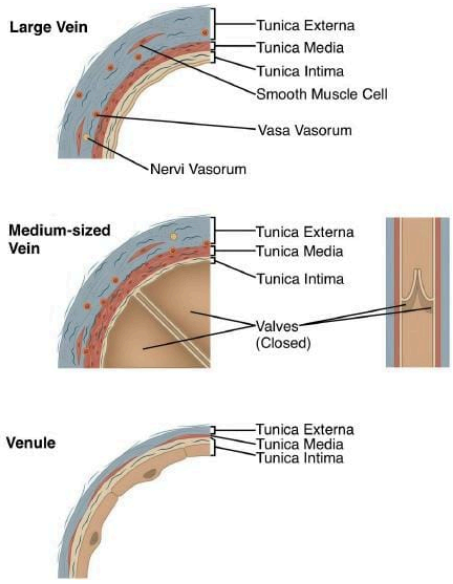


Figure 6 | Comparison of Veins and Venules | [9] Diagram illustrating the structural differences among a large vein, a medium-sized vein, and a venule. The large vein consists of three layers: tunica externa, tunica media, and tunica intima, with the presence of smooth muscle cells, vasa vasorum (small blood vessels supplying the vein wall), and nervi vasorum (nerve fibers regulating vessel function). The medium-sized vein also has three layers and contains valves, which prevent backflow of blood and aid in venous return. The venule has a thinner wall with less distinct layers, serving as a transition between capillaries and veins, facilitating blood return to the heart.

Veins

Veins form a critical component of the circulatory system, acting as the conduits responsible for guiding oxygen-depleted blood back to the heart. Unlike the thick-walled arteries, veins exhibit thin, flexible walls with large and somewhat irregular lumens.

Veins are in contrast to their muscular counterparts, the arteries. Their thin walls reflect their role as low-pressure vessels. Notably, the lumens of veins are sizable, providing ample room for blood flow. Due to the lower pressure in veins and the influence of gravity, many larger veins are equipped with specialized valves. These valves serve two crucial purposes: 1) unidirectional blood flow and 2) overcoming gravity. Particularly in veins of the lower body, these valves counteract the effects of gravity, preventing blood from pooling in the extremities and aiding its return to the heart.

Beyond their essential role in guiding blood home, veins offer an intriguing function as blood reservoirs. An astonishing 64 percent of the total blood volume in the body resides within the systemic veins at any given moment. This capacity to harbor a significant blood volume is attributed to their high capacitance, a quality that allows veins to distend or expand quickly to accommodate more blood earning them the designation of **capacitance vessels**. Table 1 summarizes the characteristic features of each blood vessel type in the body.

Table 1 | *Characteristics of Each Blood Vessel Type* | [10]

Arteries	Arterioles	Capillaries	Veins
• Pressure ranges from 120 to 90 mm Hg • Two types: elastic and muscular • Elastic arteries serve as pressure reservoirs	• Resistance vessels: Major resistance site of the circulation • Narrow lumen • Well innervated • Control site for blood flow • Mean arterial pressure decreases from 93-37 mm Hg	• Microscopic • Largest surface area creating a surface area of 500-700 m2 • Exchange vessels • Presence of precapillary sphincter • Lack of innervation	• Capacitance vessels • Have the greatest amount of blood than any other compartment • Highly distensible (8 times more distensible than arteries) • Equipped with valves

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 10.4: Vascular Network is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

10.5: Blood Flow, Blood Pressure, and Resistance

Blood flow is the force coursing through the body, an essential process quantified by the volume of blood moving through vessels per unit of time. Initiated by the rhythmic contractions of the ventricles of the heart, blood travels from higher to lower pressure areas. This concept is closely intertwined with hydrostatic pressure, a force exerted by fluids, typically against the walls of their containing structures, a phenomenon vividly illustrated by blood pressure. While blood pressure encompasses measurements across various components of the circulatory system, it generally alludes to **systemic arterial blood pressure**, which quantifies the blood pressure within the arteries of the systemic circulation. This vital parameter is expressed in millimeters of mercury (mm Hg) in clinical practice. Measurements are most commonly performed using the brachial artery situated in the arm. However, it is worth noting that blood pressure can also be assessed in capillaries, veins, and the vessels of pulmonary circulation. For ease and everyday usage, blood pressure without any specific context, refers to systemic arterial blood pressure. Its quantification is pivotal in diagnosing and managing various health conditions, making it a cornerstone of medical evaluation and the understanding of circulatory dynamics.[11]

Components of Arterial Blood Pressure

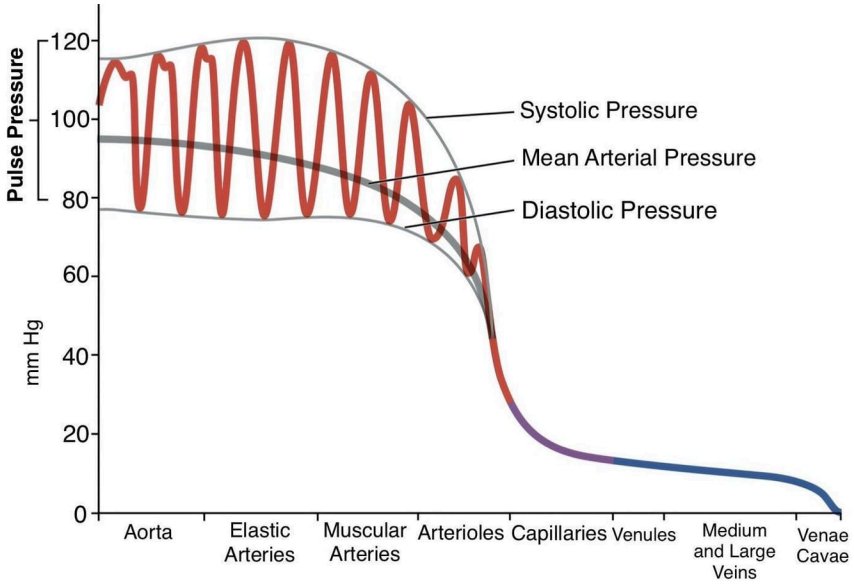


Figure 7 | Systemic Blood Pressure | [12] The graph shows the components of blood pressure throughout the blood vessels, including systolic, diastolic, mean arterial, and pulse pressures.

Every heartbeat sends approximately 80 mL of blood coursing through the arteries. Once the aortic valve closes, blood keeps moving forward due to its initial momentum and the rebound effect from the elastic arteries. In these larger vessels, blood flow occurs with ease as their wide lumens and minimal pressure differences allow for swift transport. This phenomenon can be elucidated using **Ohm's law**, where total conductance is the sum of individual organ conductances. An advantageous aspect of this arrangement is each organ's capacity to modulate its own blood flow through adjustments in resistance. This dynamic mechanism permits the redistribution of cardiac output across different organ beds with only slight alterations in arterial pressure.

Systemic arterial blood pressure is recorded as a ratio of two numbers, with a typical example being 120/80 for a normal adult. This figure denotes the **systolic pressure** over **diastolic pressure**. The systolic pressure is higher (typically around 120 mm Hg) and mirrors the arterial pressure when blood is forcefully ejected during ventricular systole. In contrast, at the lower value (usually approximately 80 mm Hg), the diastolic pressure reflects arterial pressure when the ventricles are relaxed.

Pulse Pressure

As seen in Figure 7, the differential between the systolic and diastolic pressure is known as the **pulse pressure**. For instance, if systolic pressure measures 120 mm Hg and diastolic pressure is 80 mm Hg, the pulse pressure equals 40 mm Hg. The pulse pressure should typically be at least 25 percent of the systolic pressure. It is characterized as low or narrow if it falls below this threshold, which may be observed in conditions such as congestive heart failure, aortic valve stenosis, or severe blood loss following trauma or surgery. In contrast, high or wide pulse pressure is common in healthy individuals after intense exercise, with their resting pulse pressure of 30-40 mmHg temporarily spiking to 100 mm Hg due to increased stroke volume. A persistently high pulse pressure, often at or above 100 mm Hg, may indicate excessive resistance in the arteries and can be associated with various medical conditions. Chronic high resting pulse pressures can detrimentally affect the heart, brain, and kidneys, necessitating medical intervention.

Mean Arterial Pressure

Mean arterial pressure (**MAP**) is the average blood pressure within the arteries, orchestrating the driving force propelling blood into vessels nourishing our tissues. Although measuring MAP directly is complex, it can be approximated by adding the diastolic pressure to one-third of the pulse pressure. In Figure 7, this approximate value equals 93.33 mm Hg, calculated as 80 + (120 - 80)/3. Typically, MAP falls within the range of 70-110 mm Hg. When it drops below 60 mm Hg for an extended period, blood pressure ceases to be sufficient for optimal tissue circulation, leading to ischemia or inadequate blood flow.

This page titled 10.5: Blood Flow, Blood Pressure, and Resistance is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

10.6: Measurement of Blood Pressure

In every healthcare setting and in virtually every patient, blood pressure remains a paramount physiological parameter. The genesis of modern blood pressure measurement, an invaluable tool in the medical world, traces back more than a century to the pioneering Russian physician Dr. Nikolai Korotkoff. These measurements are conducted using a **sphygmomanometer** – a blood pressure cuff connected to a measurement apparatus, in conjunction with a stethoscope. The process is initiated by snugly wrapping an inflatable cuff around the upper arm, approximately at the level of the heart. Air is gradually pumped into the cuff, escalating the pressure around the artery and momentarily halting blood flow into the patient's arm. A stethoscope is placed on the patient's antecubital region, and as air within the cuff is gently released, the listener awaits the characteristic **Korotkoff sounds**. Among the five recognized Korotkoff sounds, the first and last are typically recorded—the inaugural sound signals systolic pressure. As more air is permitted to escape from the cuff, the brachial artery ushers in unrestricted blood flow and all sounds vanish. The very point at which the final Korotkoff sound is detected marks the patient's diastolic pressure. Most medical facilities, however, employ automated devices based on the same principles for blood pressure measurement.

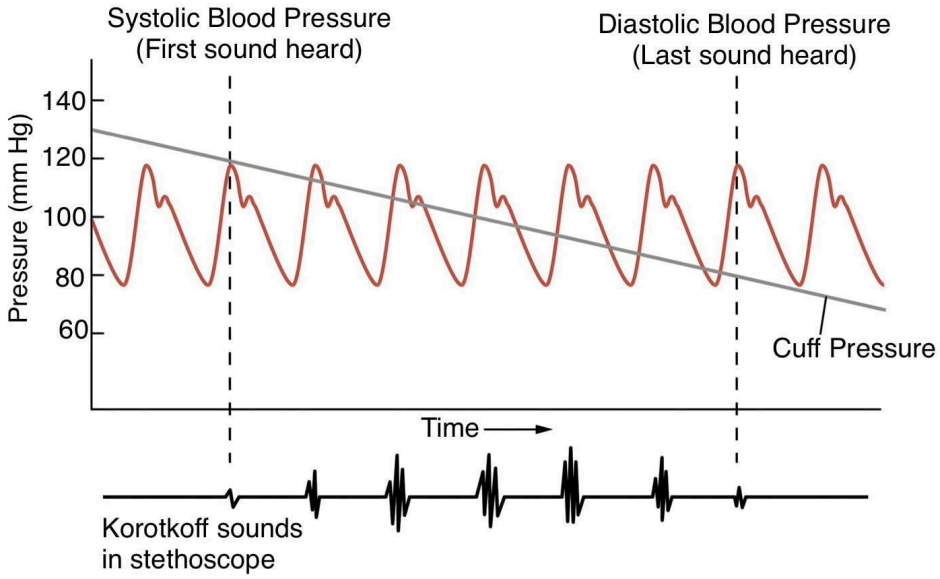


Figure 8 | Blood Pressure Measurement | [13] A blood pressure tracing is aligned to a measurement of systolic and diastolic pressures.

Pulse

The arteries are more than mere conduits for blood; they are dynamic channels that help maintain a high-pressure gradient. Elastic fibers within these arterial walls play a pivotal role in this hydraulic performance, allowing arteries to accommodate the surges of blood ejected from the heart and then promptly spring back to their original state. This rhythmic expansion and recoiling is referred to as the **pulse**. The pulse is not just a concept; it is a tangible sensation that can be manually felt or electronically measured. This phenomenon, emanating from the heart beat, resonates not only within the arteries but also as a critical element in understanding a patient's state of health. A robust pulse indicates high systolic pressure, while a weak one suggests a decrease, warranting medical evaluation.

Palpating the pulse manually involves placing one's fingertips on an accessible artery located close to the body's surface and applying gentle pressure. While the radial artery in the wrist and the common carotid artery in the neck are common sites for pulse assessment (Figure 8), any superficial artery that can be palpated may serve this purpose. Other sites to detect a pulse include the temporal and facial arteries in the head, brachial arteries in the upper arm, femoral arteries in the thigh, popliteal arteries behind the knees, posterior tibial arteries near the medial tarsal regions, and dorsalis pedis arteries in the feet. Moreover, a range of electronic devices is available for accurate and convenient pulse measurement.

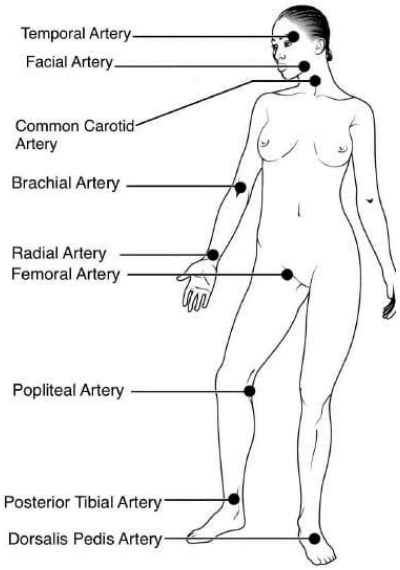


Figure 9 | Pulse Sites | [14] The pulse is most readily measured at the radial artery but can be measured at any of the pulse points shown.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 10.6: Measurement of Blood Pressure is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

10.7: Factors Affecting Blood Flow

Blood volume, pressure, and flow are fundamental components of the circulatory system and are intricately interconnected. A decrease in blood volume typically leads to a corresponding reduction in both blood pressure and flow, while an increase in blood volume results in elevated pressure and flow. Under normal physiological conditions, blood volume is maintained within a relatively stable range.

Viscosity is a critical determinant of blood flow, directly influencing resistance. An increase in blood viscosity raises resistance and impedes flow, whereas a decrease in viscosity reduces resistance and enhances flow. Under normal conditions, blood viscosity remains relatively stable over short periods. Blood viscosity is primarily governed by two factors: the formed elements and plasma proteins. Erythrocytes, the predominant component of the formed elements, significantly impact viscosity; thus, conditions affecting erythropoiesis, such as polycythemia or anemia, alter blood viscosity. The liver, responsible for producing most plasma proteins, also plays a role, and any disruption in liver function can slightly affect viscosity, consequently influencing blood flow. Although leukocytes and platelets typically make up a small proportion of the formed elements, certain pathological conditions leading to their overproduction can also impact viscosity.

Vessel length is directly proportional to resistance; the longer the vessel, the greater the resistance and the lower the flow. Conversely, shorter vessels reduce resistance and enhance flow. In adults, vessel length typically remains constant under normal physiological conditions. However, the distribution of blood vessels varies across tissues. For instance, adipose tissue has a less extensive vascular network compared to skeletal muscle. Approximately one pound of adipose tissue contains about 200 miles of vessels, while skeletal muscle contains twice that amount. Vessel length generally decreases only in cases of significant mass reduction, such as amputation.

In a 150-pound individual, the vascular system extends roughly 60,000 miles. Gaining 10 pounds can add 2,000 to 4,000 miles of vessels, depending on the type of tissue. Weight loss benefits the cardiovascular system by reducing the resistance the heart must overcome, relieving it of the additional burden posed by the increased vascular network.

The diameter of blood vessels is a highly dynamic parameter, varying based on vessel type and frequently changing throughout the day in response to neural and chemical signals that induce vasodilation or vasoconstriction. The vascular tone, determined by the contractile state of the vessel's smooth muscle, is the key factor influencing diameter, and consequently, resistance and blood flow. The relationship between vessel diameter and resistance is inversely proportional: with a constant blood volume, an increase in diameter leads to lower pressure against the vessel wall, reduced friction, decreased resistance, and enhanced flow. In contrast, a reduction in diameter increases the contact between blood and the vessel wall, elevating resistance and reducing flow.

The impact of lumen diameter on resistance is profound; even small changes in diameter can cause dramatic shifts in resistance. According to the principle that resistance is inversely proportional to the fourth power of the vessel radius ($R \propto 1/r^4$), if an artery or arteriole constricts to half its original radius, resistance increases 16-fold. Conversely, if the vessel dilates to twice its initial radius, resistance decreases to 1/16 of its original value, resulting in a 16-fold increase in blood flow.

This page titled 10.7: Factors Affecting Blood Flow is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

10.8: Relationships among Vessels in the Systemic Circuit

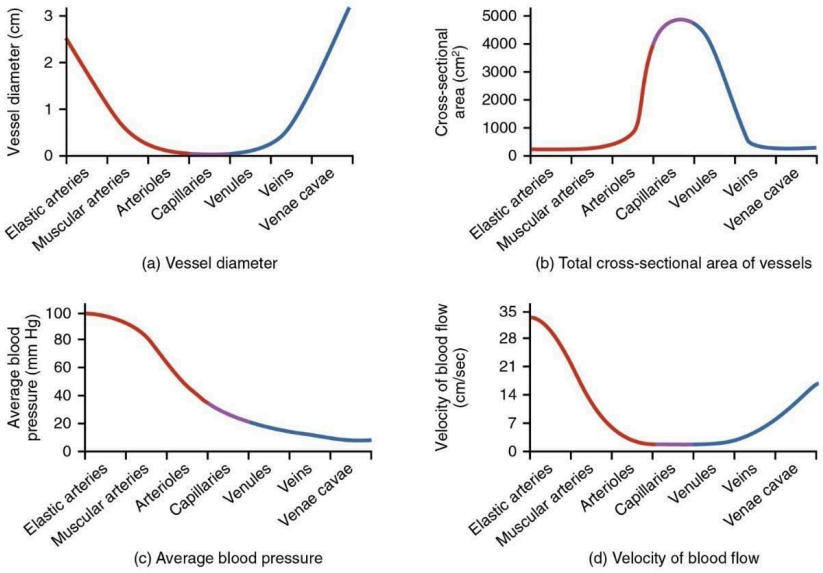


Figure 10 | Relationships among Vessels in the Systemic Circuit | [15] The relationships among blood vessels that can be compared include (a) vessel diameter, (b) total cross-sectional area, (c) average blood pressure, and (d) velocity of blood flow.

Figure 10 provides a comparative view of vessel diameter, total cross-sectional area, average blood pressure, and blood velocity across the systemic vessels. Each of these relationships among vessels will be discussed in detail here.

(a) Vessel Diameter: The primary factor in controlling vessel dynamics is vessel diameter, which exerts a significant influence on blood flow and resistance. Arteries, located closest to the heart, have relatively large diameters, but as blood moves further from the heart, vessel diameters progressively decrease. Arterioles, with their smaller radii, play a crucial role in regulating resistance and controlling blood flow. Capillaries, in contrast, are extremely small, with diameters much narrower than other vessels. This structure allows capillaries to efficiently facilitate the exchange of gasses, nutrients, and waste products with surrounding tissues. Due to their extensive network, capillaries serve as the primary site for these critical exchanges.

The regulation of vessel diameters through vasodilation and vasoconstriction enables the body to manage blood pressure and blood flow distribution. Vasoconstriction of arterioles increases resistance, reducing blood flow and raising blood pressure, while vasodilation decreases resistance, allowing for increased blood flow and lowering blood pressure. These adjustments ensure that the body maintains an appropriate blood supply, responding dynamically to various physiological needs and conditions.

(b) Total Cross-Sectional Area: An insight into the total cross-sectional area of various blood vessel types reveals the prominence of the body's capillary beds. These beds boast an expansive cross-sectional area, far surpassing other vessel types. While the diameter of an individual capillary is considerably smaller than its counterparts, the sheer number of capillaries dwarfs the quantities seen in other vessel types.

(c) Blood Pressure Distribution: The graph shows an uneven drop in blood pressure as it travels from arteries to arterioles, capillaries, venules, and veins. The arterioles take the spotlight as the site of the most abrupt pressure drop. Consequently, arterioles assume a pivotal role in blood pressure regulation, overshadowing the influence of vasodilation and vasoconstriction in other vessels.

(d) Blood Flow Velocity: The velocity of blood flow decreases progressively as it moves through arteries, arterioles, and capillaries, allowing sufficient time for essential exchange processes to occur. Upon reaching the veins, the velocity increases as blood returns to the heart.

A Mathematical Approach to Factors Affecting Blood Flow

Modified Ohm's law to explain blood flow:

$$Q = \frac{(P_1 - P_2)}{R}$$

Q= flow, R= resistance, P_1 = pressure in one end and P_2 = pressure in the other end which is also represented as δP

Jean Louis Marie Poiseuille, a renowned French physician and physiologist, formulated a fundamental mathematical equation that describes the relationship between blood flow and several key variables. While a detailed understanding of the equation's mathematical basis is not necessary for grasping the nature of blood flow, it can enhance the comprehension of these relationships. The equation is based on three primary factors: vessel radius (r), vessel length (γ), and blood viscosity (η).

$$\text{Blood flow } = \frac{\pi \Delta P r^4}{8\eta\lambda}$$

- π, the Greek letter pi, serves as the symbol for the mathematical constant representing the ratio of a circle's circumference to its diameter, often approximated as 3.14.
- ΔP symbolizes the pressure difference (in millimeters of mercury, mm Hg).
- r^4 is the vessel's radius (half its diameter) raised to the fourth power (in centimeters, cm).
- η, the Greek letter eta, signifies the blood's viscosity.
- γ, represented by the Greek letter lambda, denotes the length of a blood vessel (in centimeters, cm).

The relationship between blood flow and resistance is Blood flow = ΔP/Resistance. A slight rearrangement of this equation offers Resistance = ΔP/Blood flow. By substituting Pouseille's equation for blood flow:

$$\text{Resistance } = \frac{8\eta\lambda}{\pi r^4}$$

8 and π are constants. Two of the variables, viscosity and vessel length, will change slowly in the body. Only one of these factors, the radius, can be changed rapidly by vasoconstriction and vasodilation, thus dramatically impacting resistance and flow. Further, small changes in the radius will greatly affect the flow, since it is raised to the fourth power in the equation. In contrast, the radius can undergo rapid transformations through vasoconstriction and vasodilation, significantly altering resistance and flow. Even small modifications in the radius hold great sway as it is raised to the fourth power in the equation.

Laminar and Turbulent Blood Flow

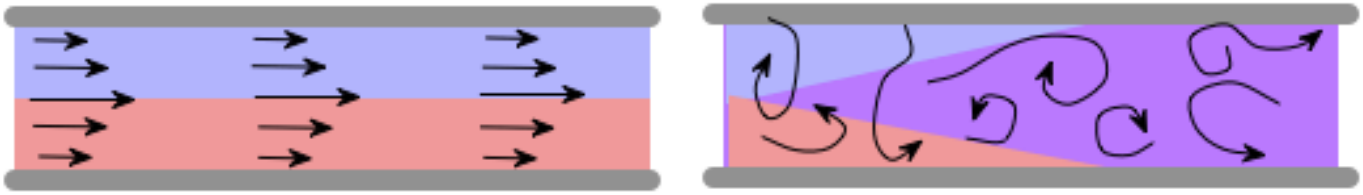


Figure 11 | Laminar and Turbulent Flow Patterns | [16] This illustration contrasts laminar and turbulent blood flow within a vessel. On the left, laminar flow is depicted, showing organized, parallel layers of fluid moving at consistent velocities, indicated by the uniform arrows. On the right, turbulent flow is depicted, showing disorganized, irregular flow patterns with eddies and mixing, indicated by the curved arrows. The gray bars represent the vessel walls.

In the circulatory system, blood typically flows through most major vessels in a **laminar pattern**, characterized by smooth, organized movement. A thin layer of plasma adheres to the vessel wall, held stationary by cohesive forces, resulting in zero movement and no friction against the wall. Beneath this stationary layer, successive layers of blood move progressively faster, with

the highest velocity occurring at the vessel's center, where the fluid layers overlap. The frictional resistance to flow arises from the lack of slippage between these adjacent layers. The heart's primary function is to generate the force necessary to overcome this resistance.

Laminar flow holds true up to a specific velocity threshold, after which this organized pattern disintegrates, and particles within the blood follow erratic and unpredictable trajectories, giving rise to **turbulent flow**. Laminar flow is silent, while turbulence generates audible sounds. Turbulence is generally an exception, seen only in the ascending aorta during the peak of systolic ejection. **Reynold's number** defines this transition from laminar to turbulent flow.

$$\text{Reynold's Number } = \frac{\text{flow velocity (cm/sec)} x \text{ vessel diameter (cm)} x \text{ liquid density } (\text{g/cm}^3)}{\text{Viscosity of liquid}}$$

Increasing the velocity or broadening the vessel encourages turbulence, while elevated viscosity discourages it. Furthermore, cuff blood pressure measurements can lead to turbulence when arteries are compressed. In anemia, for example, where the viscosity decreases, turbulence occurs, leading to the recognizable systolic murmurs. Nonetheless, it is important to note that these principles about flow types fundamentally apply to rigid tubes. One should remember that blood flow is pulsatile rather than constant when applied to blood vessels.[17]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 10.8: Relationships among Vessels in the Systemic Circuit is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

10.9: Capillary Exchange

Blood, as it circulates through the cardiovascular system, serves as the conduit for various substances necessary for the body's physiological functions. This intricate process involves the movement of gasses, nutrients, wastes, and many other molecules to and from the body's cells. Many transport mechanisms are employed in exchanging substances between the capillary and the nearby tissues.

Passive Diffusion: The exchange of smaller molecules, such as gasses (like oxygen and carbon dioxide), lipids, and lipid-soluble molecules, occurs by simple passive diffusion. These substances can move directly through the membranes of endothelial cells that make up the capillary wall, driven by their concentration gradients.

Facilitated Diffusion: For molecules like glucose, amino acids, and ions (including sodium, potassium, calcium, and chloride), specialized transporters are employed.

Intercellular Clefts and Fenestrations: Larger molecules, including glucose and ions, can traverse the capillary wall through intercellular clefts (gaps between endothelial cells). In the case of fenestrated capillaries with small pores or fenestrations in their walls, larger molecules can also pass through.

Sinusoids and Vesicular Transport: In sinusoid capillaries with extensive openings, large molecules like plasma proteins and even cells can pass through. Moreover, some large proteins can enter and exit endothelial cells packaged within vesicles via endocytosis and exocytosis.

Osmosis: Water, in particular, moves through the capillary walls via osmosis.

Bulk Flow: A more efficient mechanism than passive diffusion is required to facilitate the mass movement of fluids into and out of capillary beds. This is known as **bulk flow**, involving two pressure-driven processes: **filtration** and **reabsorption**.

1. **Filtration:** The primary force behind the movement of fluid out of capillaries and into surrounding tissues is hydrostatic pressure, particularly **capillary hydrostatic pressure** (**CHP**). The hydrostatic pressure in the capillaries forces plasma and nutrients out of the vessels and into the surrounding tissues, a process known as filtration. As fluid exits a capillary and enters the tissues, it raises the hydrostatic pressure in the interstitial fluid (**interstitial fluid hydrostatic pressure** or **IFHP**). Any increase in IFHP is negligible given the large volume of the interstitial fluid.

2. **Reabsorption:** Reabsorption, the movement of fluid from the interstitial fluid back into the capillaries, is driven by **osmotic pressure** (or **oncotic pressure**). It depends on the solute-to-water concentration gradients in the blood and interstitial fluid. The pressure created by the concentration of plasma proteins in the blood, known as the **blood colloid osmotic pressure** (**BCOP**), accounts for reabsorption. Since these proteins cannot cross the capillary cell membrane, they remain in the blood, creating a higher colloidal concentration and lower water concentration compared to interstitial fluid. This difference in colloidal osmotic pressure draws water from the interstitial fluid back into the capillary, carrying dissolved molecules with it.

Interaction between Hydrostatic and Osmotic Pressures: Blood pressure varies as blood moves from arterioles to the venous end of capillaries. The CHP starts high, around 35 mm Hg, but decreases as blood progresses through the capillary, reaching around 18 mm Hg at the venous end. In contrast, the BCOP remains relatively constant at about 25 mm Hg throughout the length of the capillary. This difference in hydrostatic and osmotic pressures across the capillary wall drives filtration and reabsorption, ensuring the exchange of substances between the blood and surrounding tissues.

The Net Filtration Pressure (**NFP**) is critical in understanding how fluid movement occurs across the capillary wall. It represents the balance between the forces driving fluid out of the capillary and the forces drawing it back into the capillary. NFP is the result of the interaction between CHP and BCOP. Mathematically, NFP can be calculated as:

$$NFP = CHP - BCOP$$

- **CHP** is the force exerted by the blood against the capillary walls, which tends to push fluid out of the capillary and into the surrounding tissues.

- **BCOP** is the osmotic pressure created by the concentration of plasma proteins in the blood. BCOP tends to draw water back into the capillary from the surrounding tissues.

The sign (positive or negative) of the NFP indicates the direction of fluid movement. A positive NFP suggests filtration, meaning fluid is moving out of the capillary. A negative NFP indicates reabsorption, where fluid moves from the surrounding tissues back into the capillary. NFP changes along the length of a typical capillary as follows:

1. **Arterial End:** Close to the arterial end of the capillary, the CHP is considerably higher than the BCOP, resulting in a positive NFP. For example, if CHP is 35 mm Hg and BCOP is 25 mm Hg, NFP equals 10 mm Hg. This positive NFP drives net filtration, meaning fluid is pushed out of the capillary into the surrounding tissues.

2. **Middle of the Capillary:** In the middle section of the capillary, the CHP decreases and approaches the BCOP, resulting in an NFP close to zero. At this point, there is no net change in the fluid volume. The rate of fluid movement out of the capillary is balanced by fluid moving back into the capillary.

3. **Venous End:** Near the venous end of the capillary, CHP has further decreased due to the loss of fluid, typically dropping below the BCOP. For example, with a CHP of 18 mm Hg and BCOP of 25 mm Hg, the NFP is -7 mm Hg. This negative NFP drives reabsorption, meaning fluid is drawn back into the capillary from the surrounding tissues.

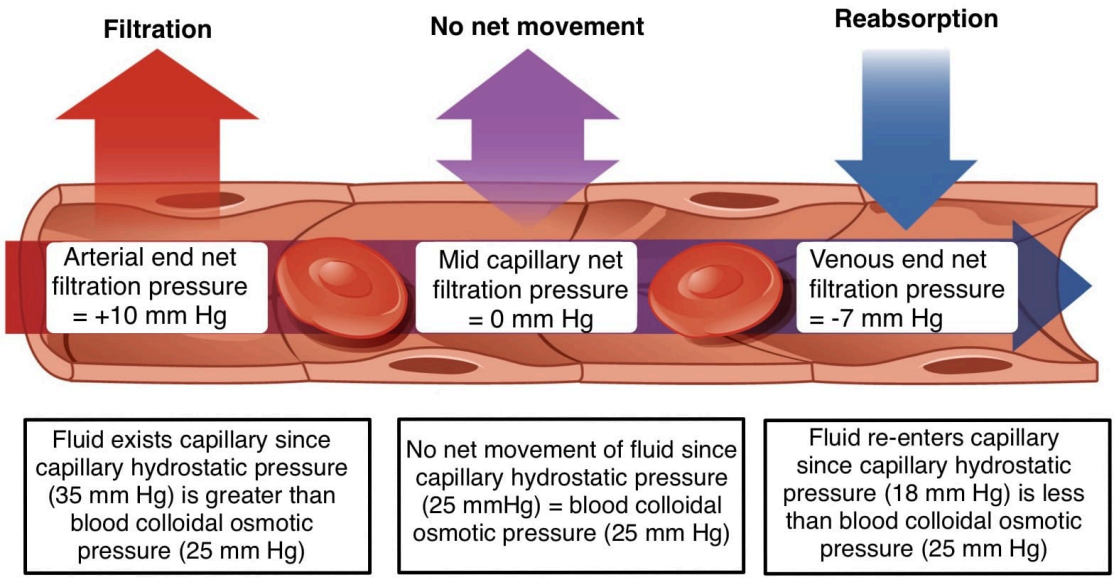


Figure 12 | Capillary Exchange | [18] Net filtration occurs near the arterial end of the capillary since capillary hydrostatic pressure (CHP) is greater than blood colloid osmotic pressure (BCOP). There is no net movement of fluid near the midpoint since CHP = BCOP. Net reabsorption occurs near the venous end since BCOP is greater than CHP.

The Role of Lymphatic Capillaries

The lymphatic system plays a crucial role in maintaining fluid balance. The net filtration of approximately 24 liters per day, compared to 20.4 liters of reabsorption, results in excess fluid that needs to be managed in the body. This excess fluid must be collected and returned to the circulatory system because it contains essential molecules, such as proteins, cells, and interstitial fluid, that must be transported back to the bloodstream for processing. The body accomplishes this task through the lymphatic system.

The lymphatic system consists of a network of **lymphatic capillaries** that run alongside the blood capillaries. They are extremely thin-walled and equipped with many one-way valves to ensure the unidirectional lymph flow.

An excess of filtered fluid typically remains in the interstitial space and is not immediately reabsorbed. This excess fluid is collected by the lymphatic vessels, forming **lymph**, a clear, colorless fluid similar to blood plasma but contains a lower concentration of proteins.

Lymphatic capillaries progressively merge into larger lymphatic vessels that eventually drain into the subclavian veins in the neck. Along their journey back to the vascular system, lymph nodes act as filters; they help remove pathogens, dead cells, and debris from the lymph. Once lymphatic fluid reaches the subclavian veins, it re-enters the bloodstream and becomes part of the blood

plasma. This process ensures that the excess filtered fluid and the valuable substances within it are returned to the circulatory system for processing and redistribution. Damage to lymphatic capillaries leads to the accumulation of fluid in the affected area, a condition known as **edema**.[19]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 10.9: Capillary Exchange is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

10.10: Venous Return

Blood flow through the veins is impeded by low blood pressure, and the thin walls of the veins contribute to the retention of blood within them. The **skeletal muscle pump** and **respiratory pump** are two essential mechanisms that assist in maintaining blood flow from the veins back to the heart. These pumps are particularly important in areas where the pressure in the veins must overcome the effects of gravity to facilitate blood return to the heart.

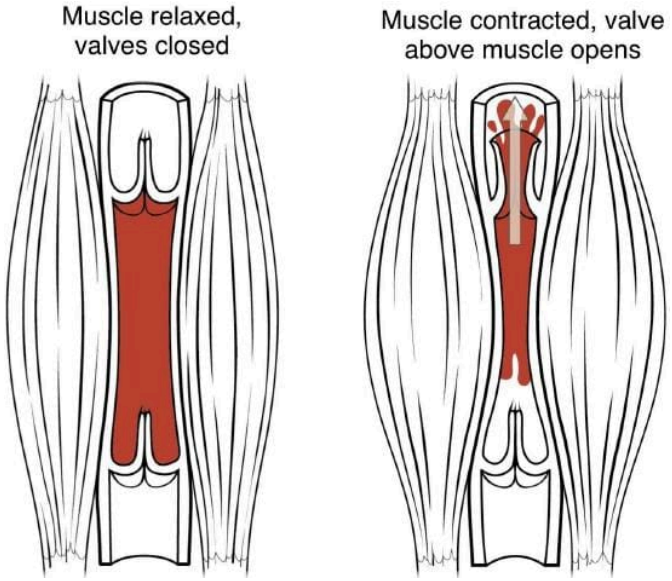


Figure 13 | Skeletal Muscle Pump | [20] The contraction of skeletal muscles surrounding a vein compresses the blood and increases the pressure in that area. This action forces blood closer to the heart where venous pressure is lower. Note the importance of the one-way valves to assure that blood flows only in the proper direction.

The skeletal muscle pump operates in regions of the body where the pressure in the veins must work against gravity to return blood to the heart, such as in the legs. This mechanism takes advantage of the fact that many veins have one-way valves. When leg muscles contract, such as walking or running, they exert pressure on the nearby veins. This pressure, coupled with the action of one-way valves, propels blood upward toward the heart. As the muscles contract, blood flows upward through the open valves located above the contracting muscles, while the valves below the contracting muscles remain closed, preventing the backflow of blood. This action helps counteract the pull of gravity and facilitates the return of blood to the heart.

The respiratory pump is active in the thoracic and abdominal regions of the body. It operates in coordination with the breathing process. During inhalation, also known as inspiration, a process of drawing air into the lungs, several changes occur. The diaphragm contracts and moves downward, increasing the volume of the thorax. Additionally, the contraction of the external intercostal muscles elevates the chest. As the thoracic volume increases, the pressure in the thorax decreases, facilitating the intake of air. This decreased pressure within the thorax also reduces the pressure in the thoracic veins. When the pressure in the thoracic veins falls below that in the abdominal veins, it promotes blood flow from veins below the thorax into the thoracic region, which helps return blood from the thoracic veins to the right atrium of the heart. Conversely, the pressure in the thoracic veins increases when the diaphragm and external intercostal muscles return to their original positions during exhalation. Simultaneously, the valves in the veins prevent blood from flowing backward into the abdominal veins. This creates a pressure gradient that encourages blood to flow efficiently into the heart, aiding in the return of blood from the upper body to the heart.[17]

Pressure Relationships in the Venous System

The changes in blood vessel diameter and the dynamics of blood flow play crucial roles in maintaining circulation through the venous system. While vessel diameter increases as blood moves from smaller venules to larger veins and eventually to the venae cavae, the total cross-sectional area decreases. This is because individual veins are larger in diameter than venules, but their total

number is lower. The reduction in the total cross-sectional area contributes to the increase in blood velocity. The average blood pressure drops as blood moves from venules to veins. However, the blood velocity increases. This pressure gradient, coupled with the increased velocity, drives blood back toward the heart. One-way valves within the veins, along with the skeletal muscle pump and respiratory pump, significantly contribute to maintaining blood flow back to the heart. These mechanisms help counteract the effects of gravity and facilitate venous return. **Venoconstriction** is a phenomenon where the smooth muscle in the walls of veins constricts. Unlike arteries, when veins constrict, the lumen becomes more rounded. This rounding reduces the surface area the blood encounters and decreases resistance. In the case of veins, venoconstriction increases pressure within the vein, leading to increased rather than decreased flow. This mechanism contributes to the return of blood to the heart and increases the stretch of the cardiac muscle, which can enhance cardiac contraction. The ability of veins to change their diameter via venoconstriction plays a critical role in regulating blood flow, and it is an example of the body's ability to finely tune circulation to meet the specific needs of various situations.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Homeostatic Regulation of the Vascular System

The distribution of blood throughout the body is a dynamic process controlled by the body's need to maintain homeostasis and adapt to different situations. Below is a summary of the distribution of blood during different situations (Table 2):

1. **Distribution at Rest:** At rest, the body distributes blood in a way that meets its basic metabolic needs. Blood flow to different organs and tissues is relatively balanced. The brain receives a continuous supply of blood, as it is vital for maintaining consciousness and life.

2. **Distribution During Exercise:** When a person engages in physical exercise, the body's demand for oxygen and nutrients increases. To meet this demand, more blood is redirected to the skeletal muscles that are actively working. Additionally, the heart and lungs receive an increased blood supply to support the increased workload during exercise. Blood is also directed to the body surface to dissipate excess heat generated during physical activity into the environment. These adjustments help ensure that active tissues receive the necessary resources for energy production and temperature regulation.

3. **Distribution After a Meal:** More blood is directed to the digestive system after consuming a meal, especially one that is rich in nutrients. This allocation of blood flow is essential for absorbing and processing nutrients from the ingested food. It allows for efficient digestion and nutrient absorption.

4. **Constant Blood Supply to the Brain:** The brain is unique in receiving a relatively constant blood supply regardless of the body's activity level. This is crucial because the brain has high metabolic demands and cannot tolerate interruptions in its blood supply for more than a few seconds without causing neural damage.

The capacity to redirect blood flow to various regions of the body according to its current needs ensures that cells receive essential oxygen, nutrients, and other resources, even as demands fluctuate due to factors such as exercise, digestion, or temperature regulation.

Table 2 | *Systemic Blood Flow During Rest, Mild Exercise, and Maximal Exercise in a Healthy Young Individual* | [21]

Organ	Resting (mL/min)	Mild Exercise (mL/min)	% Change	Maximal Exercise (mL/min)	% Change
Skeletal muscle	1200	4500	275%	12,500	942%
Heart	250	350	40%	750	200%
Brain	750	750	No change	750	No change
Integument	500	1500	200%	1900	280%
Kidney	1100	900	- 19%	600	- 45%
Gastrointestinal	1400	1100	- 21%	600	- 57%
Others (i.e. liver, spleen)	600	400	- 33%	400	- 33%
Total	**5800**	**9500**	**64%**	**17,500**	202%

Three homeostatic mechanisms ensure adequate blood flow, blood pressure, and ultimately perfusion. Those are **neural**, **endocrine**, and **autoregulatory mechanisms**. They are summarized in **Figure 14**.

This page titled 10.10: Venous Return is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

10.11: Neural Regulation of the Vascular System

Neural regulation of vascular homeostasis is essential for maintaining proper blood flow and pressure throughout the body and ensuring that different tissues receive the required oxygen and nutrients, depending on the body's needs and demands.

The Cardiovascular Center

Cardiovascular Center is situated in the medulla oblongata and regulates blood pressure and blood flow. It responds to various signals, including changes in blood pressure and the concentrations of oxygen, carbon dioxide, and hydrogen ions. The cardiovascular center is composed of three paired components:

1. **Cardioaccelerator Centers:** These centers stimulate cardiac function by regulating heart rate and stroke volume through sympathetic stimulation from the cardiac accelerator nerve. This results in an increase in heart rate and the force of heart contractions. When more blood is pumped with each beat, it can help raise blood pressure and increase blood flow to meet increased demand.

2. **Cardioinhibitor Centers:** In contrast, cardioinhibitor centers have the opposite effect. They slow down cardiac function by decreasing heart rate and stroke volume via parasympathetic stimulation from the vagus nerve. Reducing heart rate and the force of contractions is essential when the body needs to conserve energy or when lower blood pressure is required.

3. **Vasomotor Centers:** The vasomotor centers control the tone or contraction of the smooth muscle in the tunica media of blood vessels. Changes in the diameter of these blood vessels influence peripheral resistance, blood pressure, and blood flow, all of which impact cardiac output. The vasomotor centers primarily use the neurotransmitter norepinephrine to regulate vessel tone through sympathetic neurons and play a key role in regulating arteriolar constriction and dilation.

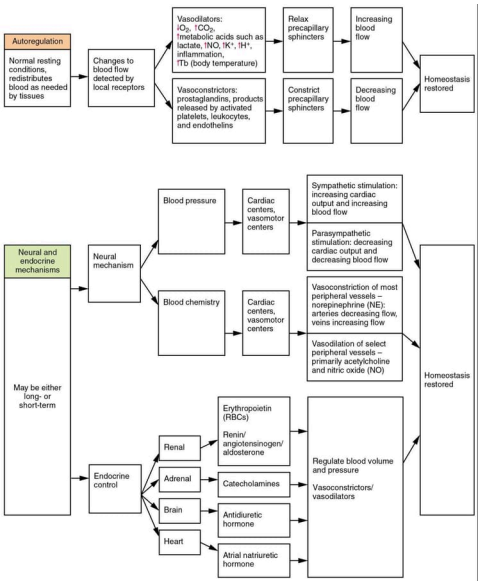


Figure 14 | Summary of Factors Maintaining Vascular Homeostasis | [22] This figure illustrates the complex interplay of local, neural, and endocrine mechanisms that regulate blood flow throughout the body. At the top, autoregulation is depicted, showing how tissues respond to changes in their local environment. Vasodilators, triggered by factors such as decreased oxygen or increased metabolites, relax precapillary sphincters, increasing blood flow and restoring homeostasis. Conversely, vasoconstrictors, like prostaglandins, constrict these sphincters, decreasing blood flow. The middle section outlines neural mechanisms, where blood pressure and chemistry are monitored by cardiac and vasomotor centers in the brain. Sympathetic stimulation increases cardiac output and blood flow, while parasympathetic stimulation decreases them. Additionally, vasoconstriction and vasodilation of peripheral vessels are mediated by neurotransmitters like norepinephrine and acetylcholine. The bottom section details endocrine control, featuring hormones such as erythropoietin, renin, catecholamines, antidiuretic hormone, and atrial natriuretic hormone, which regulate blood volume, pressure, and vessel tone, ultimately contributing to the

maintenance of overall circulatory homeostasis. These mechanisms, which can be either short-term or long-term, ensure that blood flow is precisely matched to the metabolic needs of tissues and organs.

Acetylcholine released as part of parasympathetic activation, stimulates the endothelial cells lining the blood vessels to release nitric oxide, a potent vasodilator. Nitric oxide relaxes the smooth muscle in vessel walls, causing vasodilation. This vasodilation is crucial for increasing blood flow in response to local metabolic demands, like during exercise.

Arterioles are normally partially constricted due to sympathetic stimulation. Maximal sympathetic stimulation can lead to arteriolar constriction, reducing their radius to half their resting state. The suppression of sympathetic stimulation is necessary for full arteriolar dilation. When sympathetic activation is reduced, arterioles can expand by as much as 150 percent, significantly impacting peripheral resistance, blood pressure, and blood flow.

Baroreceptor Reflexes

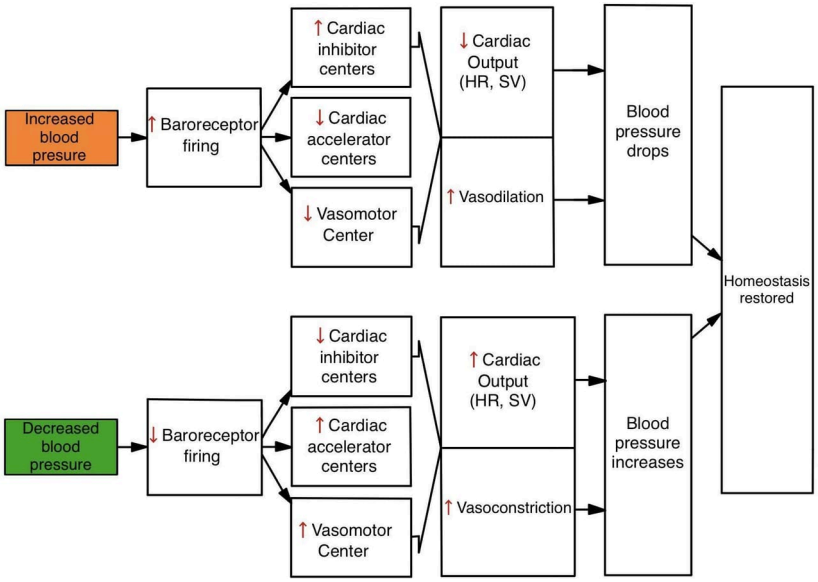


Figure 15 | Baroreceptor Reflexes for Maintaining Vascular Homeostasis | [23] This figure illustrates the baroreceptor reflex, a homeostatic mechanism that maintains blood pressure within a normal range. The top panel depicts the response to increased blood pressure. When blood pressure rises, baroreceptors in the aortic arch and carotid sinuses increase their firing rate. This increased signaling leads to decreased activity in the cardiac accelerator centers and the vasomotor center, while simultaneously increasing activity in the cardiac inhibitor centers. The result is a decrease in cardiac output (both heart rate and stroke volume) and vasodilation of blood vessels. These combined effects cause blood pressure to drop, restoring homeostasis. The bottom panel shows the response to decreased blood pressure. When blood pressure falls, baroreceptor firing decreases. This reduced signaling increases activity in the cardiac accelerator centers and the vasomotor center, while decreasing activity in the cardiac inhibitor centers. The consequent increase in cardiac output and vasoconstriction of blood vessels leads to a rise in blood pressure, again restoring homeostasis.

Baroreceptors are specialized stretch receptors that monitor and respond to changes in blood pressure. Their role is critical in maintaining blood pressure within the normal range. Baroreceptors are primarily found in small cavities called **sinuses** within the aorta and carotid arteries, **aortic sinuses** (the walls of the ascending aorta, just superior to the aortic valve) and **carotid sinuses** (situated at the base of the internal carotid arteries.) Additional baroreceptors are low-pressure receptors located in the walls of the venae cavae (large veins) and the right atrium of the heart. When blood pressure increases, baroreceptors are stretched more tightly, resulting in an increased rate of action potentials. In contrast, when blood pressure drops, the degree of stretch in the baroreceptors decreases, leading to a slower firing rate. Baroreceptors send their signals to the cardiovascular center. This feedback loop helps maintain homeostasis of blood pressure. When blood pressure rises too high, the increased rate of baroreceptor firing initiates a reflex that triggers the parasympathetic stimulation of the heart, which, in turn, reduces cardiac output and causes vasodilation in the peripheral arterioles, ultimately lowering blood pressure. Conversely, when blood pressure drops too low, decreased baroreceptor firing stimulates the sympathetic nervous system to increase heart rate and cardiac output. It also induces vasoconstriction in peripheral blood vessels, raising blood pressure.

Baroreceptors in the venae cavae and right atrium monitor blood pressure as blood returns to the heart from systemic circulation. Normally, blood flow into the aorta matches the flow returning to the right atrium. If more blood is returning to the right atrium than is being ejected from the left ventricle (imbalanced flow), the atrial baroreceptors initiate a response. The **atrial reflex** then stimulates the cardiovascular centers to increase sympathetic firing, leading to an increase in cardiac output. This adjustment continues until homeostasis is achieved. The same mechanism operates in reverse if there is an imbalance in blood flow.

Chemoreceptor Reflexes

Chemoreceptors play a crucial role in maintaining vascular homeostasis by monitoring the blood levels of oxygen, carbon dioxide, and hydrogen ions. They are located in close proximity to baroreceptors in the aortic and carotid sinuses. Chemoreceptors signal the cardiovascular and respiratory centers in the medulla oblongata. During increased physical activity or when tissues require more oxygen, oxygen levels in the blood decrease, while carbon dioxide levels and hydrogen ion concentrations rise due to increased cellular respiration to meet energy demands. This leads to a reduction in blood pH (more acidic). In response to elevated carbon dioxide levels and increased hydrogen ion concentrations (falling pH), the chemoreceptors stimulate the cardioaccelerator and vasomotor centers in the cardiovascular center. This results in an increase in cardiac output (heart rate and stroke volume) and peripheral vasoconstriction. Conversely, during periods of rest or when the body's oxygen levels are sufficient, carbon dioxide levels decrease, hydrogen ion levels are reduced, and blood pH increases (becomes more alkaline). In response to decreasing carbon dioxide and hydrogen ion levels (increasing pH), the chemoreceptors stimulate the cardioinhibitor centers and suppress the cardioaccelerator and vasomotor centers in the cardiovascular center. This leads to a decrease in cardiac output and peripheral vasodilation.

Several other neural mechanisms can significantly impact cardiovascular function. The limbic system connects physiological responses to psychological stimuli, such as stress, fear, or emotional reactions. Generalized sympathetic and parasympathetic stimulation can also influence heart rate, peripheral resistance, and blood pressure.

Endocrine Regulation

Endocrine control of the cardiovascular system involves various hormones that help regulate blood pressure, blood volume, and overall cardiovascular function (Figure 16). They are listed below:

Epinephrine and Norepinephrine are released by the adrenal medulla in response to the "fight-or-flight" response. They increase heart rate and the force of cardiac contraction and temporarily constrict blood vessels to non-essential organs while directing blood flow to the brain, muscles, and the heart.

Antidiuretic hormone (ADH) is released by the hypothalamus primarily in response to increasing osmolarity of tissue fluid, often due to significant decrease in blood volume. ADH signals the kidneys to reabsorb more water, preventing additional fluid loss in urine. It constricts peripheral blood vessels, helping to increase blood pressure.

Renin-Angiotensin-Aldosterone Mechanism has a major effect on the cardiovascular system. Renin, released by specialized kidney cells in response to decreased blood flow, converts angiotensinogen (produced by the liver) into angiotensin I. Angiotensin I is converted into angiotensin II in the lungs by the enzyme angiotensin-converting enzyme. Angiotensin II is a powerful vasoconstrictor, significantly increasing blood pressure. It stimulates the release of ADH and aldosterone, a hormone produced by the adrenal cortex. Aldosterone increases sodium reabsorption by the kidneys, leading to water reabsorption and increasing blood volume and pressure. Angiotensin II also stimulates the thirst center in the hypothalamus, promoting increased fluid consumption.

Erythropoietin (EPO) is released by the kidneys when blood flow and/or oxygen levels decrease. It stimulates the production of red blood cells (erythrocytes) in the bone marrow. Erythrocytes contribute significantly to blood volume, viscosity, resistance, pressure, and flow. EPO also acts as a vasoconstrictor.

Atrial Natriuretic Hormone (ANH) is secreted by cells in the atria of the heart when blood volume causes extreme stretching of cardiac cells. It acts as an antagonist to angiotensin II. ANH promotes the loss of sodium and water from the kidneys. It suppresses the production and release of renin, aldosterone, and ADH. These actions collectively lead to a reduction in fluid retention, causing blood volume and pressure to decrease.[24]

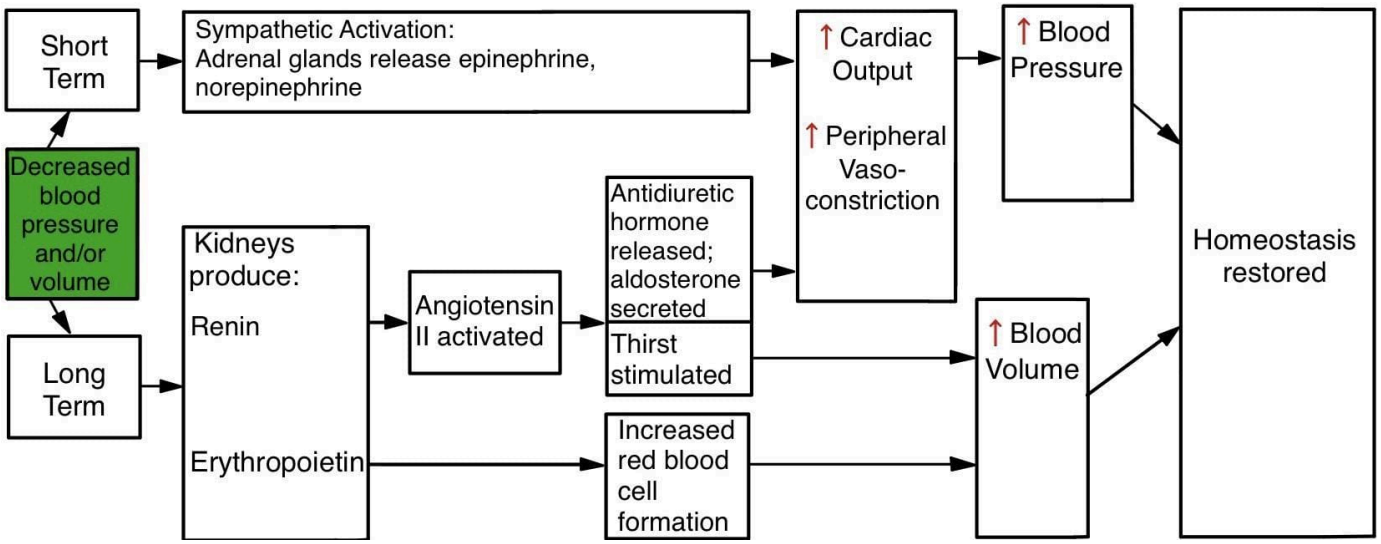


Figure 16 | Short-Term and Long-Term Responses to Decreased Blood Pressure and/or Volume | [25] This figure illustrates the physiological mechanisms activated in response to a decrease in blood pressure or blood volume, categorized by their temporal scale. The "Short Term" response involves sympathetic activation, where the adrenal glands release epinephrine and norepinephrine. This leads to an increase in cardiac output and peripheral vasoconstriction, ultimately raising blood pressure. The "Long Term" responses primarily involve the kidneys. Renin is produced, which activates Angiotensin II, leading to the release of antidiuretic hormone and aldosterone, as well as stimulating thirst. These actions increase blood volume. Additionally, erythropoietin is produced, stimulating increased red blood cell formation, further contributing to the restoration of blood volume.

Autoregulation of Perfusion

Autoregulation mechanisms require neither specialized nervous stimulation nor endocrine control. Rather, these are local self-regulatory mechanisms that allow each region of tissue to adjust its blood flow—and thus its perfusion. These local mechanisms include chemical signals and myogenic controls. The regulation of blood flow at the capillary level, primarily through the opening and closing of precapillary sphincters, is a critical mechanism to ensure that blood is directed to the tissues that need it most based on their metabolic requirements. Factors that trigger the opening or closing of these sphincters include low oxygen levels in the tissues that signal the need for increased blood flow to provide more oxygen. Elevated carbon dioxide levels indicate increased metabolic activity and the need for enhanced blood flow to remove carbon dioxide. The accumulation of waste products from cellular metabolism, like lactic acid, signals the need for more blood flow to remove these byproducts. Elevated potassium or hydrogen ion levels (lower pH) can indicate increased cellular activity and the need for more blood flow. Inflammatory responses trigger vasodilation to bring more blood and immune cells to the affected area. Elevated temperature is often associated with increased metabolic activity, and more blood flow is required to maintain tissue function. Nitric oxide is a potent vasodilator, relaxing the precapillary sphincters to allow more blood flow. On the other hand, high oxygen, low carbon dioxide, and low levels of metabolic byproducts signal reduced metabolic activity and the need for reduced blood flow. Release of endothelins, vasoconstricting peptides: Endothelins cause vasoconstriction, reducing blood flow. Platelet secretions and certain prostaglandins may also trigger vasoconstriction.

The myogenic response, on the other hand, is a mechanism that regulates blood flow in arterioles based on the stretching of the smooth muscle in their walls. It helps to maintain a stable blood flow in capillary networks. When blood flow is too low (ischemia) or too high, the smooth muscle in arterioles responds to maintain blood flow within the appropriate range. The smooth muscle relaxes in response to minimal stretching, leading to vasodilation and increased blood flow when needed. Conversely, when there is increased stretching, the smooth muscle contracts, causing vasoconstriction to reduce blood flow.[17]

Table 3 | *Summarizes the effects of nervous, endocrine, and local controls on arterioles* |

Control	Factor	Vasoconstriction	Vasodilation
Neural	Sympathetic	Arterioles within integument, abdominal viscera	Arterioles within heart and skeletal muscle
	Parasympathetic	No known innervation	Arterioles in external genitalia
	Epinephrine	Similar to sympathetic stimulation	Similar to sympathetic stimulation
	Norepinephrine	Similar to sympathetic stimulation	Similar to sympathetic stimulation
Endocrine	Atrial natriuretic peptide		Powerful vasodilator. Also promotes loss of fluid volume from kidneys, hence reducing blood volume, pressure and flow
	ADH	Moderately strong vasoconstrictor. Causes body to retain more fluid via kidneys increasing blood volume and pressure	
	Angiotensin II	Powerful vasoconstrictor. Also stimulates release of aldosterone and ADH	
Other Factors	Decreasing pH		Vasodilation and opening of precapillary sphincters
	Increasing levels of carbon dioxide		Vasodilation and opening of precapillary sphincters
	Increasing levels of potassium ions		Vasodilation and opening of precapillary sphincters
	Increasing levels of adenosine		Vasodilation
	Increasing levels of nitric oxide		Vasodilation and opening of precapillary sphincters

Control	Factor	Vasoconstriction	Vasodilation
	Increasing levels of lactic acid		Vasodilation and opening of precapillary sphincters
	Increasing levels of endothelin	Vasoconstriction	
	Hyperthermia		Vasodilation
	Stretching of vascular wall (myogenic)	Vasoconstriction	
	Increasing levels of histamine		Vasodilation

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 10.11: Neural Regulation of the Vascular System is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

10.12: References

1. InformedHealth.org [Internet]. Cologne, Germany: Institute for Quality and Efficiency in Health Care (IQWiG); 2006-. In brief: How does the blood circulatory system work? [Updated 2023 Nov 21]. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK279250/

2. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 20.2 Cardiovascular Circulation. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/8b8b0fbc51634078bbcf93b75762143a4a80cd47]

3. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 20.3 Structure of Blood Vessels. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/8b43899d27f37826ddbe8c7616ef67a25e5a625c]

4. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 20.4 Types of Arteries and Arterioles. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/f0a964f91ecd3ef9cf0f0323f66d5d266f9d71b9]

5. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 20.5 Types of Capillaries. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/e88ebb430077bb75e4c26eec40e05afd2ab928fd]

6. Hall, J. E., & Hall, M. E. (2021). *Guyton and Hall textbook of medical physiology* (14th ed.). Elsevier.

7. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 20.6 Capillary Bed. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/e88ebb430077bb75e4c26eec40e05afd2ab928fd]

8. Oregon State University. (n.d.). 20.1 Structure and Function of Blood Vessels. *Anatomy and Physiology*. Retrieved March 11, 2025, from https://open.oregonstate.education/aandp/chapter/20-1-structure-and-function-of-blood-vessels/

9. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 20.7 Comparison of Veins and Venules. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/28fdb799ddce54b0d796cd605508c3daf4ad930f4]

10. Tucker WD, Arora Y, Mahajan K. Anatomy, Blood Vessels. [Updated 2023 Aug 8]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK470401/

11. Lumen Learning. (n.d.). Blood Flow, Blood Pressure, and Resistance.

Anatomy & Physiology II. Retrieved March 11, 2025, from https://courses.lumenlearning.com/suny-ap2/chapter/blood-flow-blood-pressure-and-resistance-no-content/#:~:text=Chapter%20Review,or%20chambers%20of%20the%20heart.

12. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 20.10 Systemic Blood Pressure. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/56d8f978dd469b8748cd811145ee6fe62bf0e817]

13. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 20.12 Blood Pressure Measurement . In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/fdcac85ed1a77bc08ac2d0a29a2d68822a732d50]

14. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 20.11 Pulse Sites. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/b1d5a333807f4a41c3d26bd19c6264e3ad49b978]

15. Lumen Learning. (n.d.). *Blood flow, blood pressure, and resistance* (Figure 4). In *Anatomy and physiology II (Lumen)*. LibreTexts. [https://bio.libretexts.org/Courses/Lumen_Learning/Anatomy_and_Physiology_II_(Lumen)/06%3A_Module_4-_The_Cardiovascular_System-_Blood_Vessels_and_Circulation/6.03%3A_Blood_Flow_Blood_Pressure_and_Resistance]

16. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Laminar_and_turbulent_flow.png

17. Levy, M. N. (n.d.). *CV Physiology*. Retrieved March 11, 2025, from https://cvphysiology.com/textbook-3

18. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 20.16 Capillary Exchange . In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/054f7d3a7aa9ed183f3acdad7f2b678bdd6121e7]

19. Scallan J, Huxley VH, Korthuis RJ. Capillary Fluid Exchange: Regulation, Functions, and Pathology. San Rafael (CA): Morgan & Claypool Life Sciences; 2010. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK53447/

20. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 20.15 Skeletal Muscle Pump . In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/bb4f1be2e1e74ba296dbd0935cdabf78195a3d3c]

21. Joyner MJ, Casey DP. Regulation of increased blood flow (hyperemia) to muscles during exercise: a hierarchy of competing physiological needs. Physiol Rev. 2015 Apr;95(2):549-601. doi: 10.1152/physrev.00035.2013. PMID: 25834232; PMCID: PMC4551211.

22. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 20.17 Summary of Factors Maintaining Vascular Homeostasis . In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax.[https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240812.170248/resources/00377d120fbac1d5c83154019bd34861f4592fe1]

23. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 20.18 Baroreceptor Reflexes for Maintaining Vascular Homeostasis. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/1b7284700ddba531c57d4c91eef8edb82a5d9fbc]

24. Zhang Y, Shen X, Deng S, Chen Q, Xu B. Neural Regulation of Vascular Development: Molecular Mechanisms and Interactions. Biomolecules. 2024 Aug 8;14(8):966. doi: 10.3390/biom14080966. PMID: 39199354; PMCID: PMC11353022.

25. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 20.19 Hormones Involved in Renal Control of Blood Pressure. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/2d70d778e2a28ec731723ce860c6cb7b17a978ec]

This page titled 10.12: References is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11: RENAL PHYSIOLOGY

11.1: Objectives

11.2: Introduction

11.3: External Anatomy of the Kidney

11.4: Internal Anatomy of the Kidney

11.5: Blood Supply to the Kidneys

11.6: Nephrons

11.7: Renal Innervation

11.8: Filtration, Reabsorption, and Secretion

11.9: Endocrine and Paracrine Regulation of Kidney Function

11.10: Renal Electrolyte Regulation

11.11: Renal Regulation of Nitrogenous Wastes

11.12: Elimination of Drugs and Hormones by the Kidneys

11.13: Diuretics

11.14: Physical Characteristics of Urine

11.15: Measurement of Renal Plasma Flow

11.16: Renal Clearance

11.17: References

This page titled 11: Renal Physiology is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- Provide a comprehensive introduction to the anatomy of the kidneys, including their location and blood supply.
- Describe the microscopic structure and functions of nephrons and explain how they filter blood.
- Define and differentiate filtration, reabsorption, and secretion processes at the nephron level, elucidating their significance in renal function.
- Explain the mechanism of glomerular filtration and how it is regulated, emphasizing the role of hydrostatic and osmotic pressures.
- Explore the neural, hormonal, and autoregulatory mechanisms including the tubuloglomerular feedback mechanism that regulates glomerular filtration rate (GFR) to maintain blood pressure and fluid balance.
- Describe the role of the juxtaglomerular apparatus in GFR regulation involving the macula densa and juxtaglomerular cells.
- Detail the steps involved in transepithelial transport within renal tubules, including reabsorption and secretion of various solutes.
- Elaborate on the mechanisms and significance of solute and water reabsorption in the proximal tubule.
- Discuss the creation of medullary concentration gradients, the role of the loop of Henle, and the countercurrent multiplier and exchanger systems.
- Explain the importance of urea in urine concentration and its reabsorption processes.
- Describe the influence of antidiuretic hormone on fluid regulation in the body.
- Explore the role of renin, angiotensin, and aldosterone in regulating water and electrolyte balance.
- Detail how erythropoietin and atrial natriuretic hormone influence renal function and blood volume.
- Describe the kidney's role in maintaining acid-base balance by regulating hydrogen ion secretion and bicarbonate reabsorption.
- Explain the concept of renal clearance and how it is used to assess kidney function and diagnose renal diseases.

This page titled 11.1: Objectives is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.2: Introduction

The kidneys serve many essential functions within the body. One of their primary roles involves acting as a filtration system for blood. They sift metabolic waste products from the bloodstream, including urea, uric acid, creatinine, bilirubin, and hydrogen ions. Additionally, the kidneys efficiently remove foreign substances like drugs, toxins, pesticides, and food additives. Furthermore, kidneys are indispensable in the regulation of blood pH, collaborating with the respiratory system and physiological buffering mechanisms. Their role in blood volume and blood pressure regulation is equally pivotal. The kidneys actively participate in the fine-tuning of solute concentrations in the blood, thus contributing to the delicate balance of plasma osmolarity. Beyond these crucial functions, kidneys reveal their versatility by assuming an endocrine role. They secrete erythropoietin (EPO), a hormone essential for stimulating red blood cell production (see Chapter 8). Moreover, the kidneys contribute to the synthesis of vitamin D, playing a significant role in the body's calcium and phosphate homeostasis. In this multifaceted capacity, the kidneys are far more than filtration devices; they are intricate regulators, vital for the maintenance of homeostasis.

This page titled 11.2: Introduction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.3: External Anatomy of the Kidney

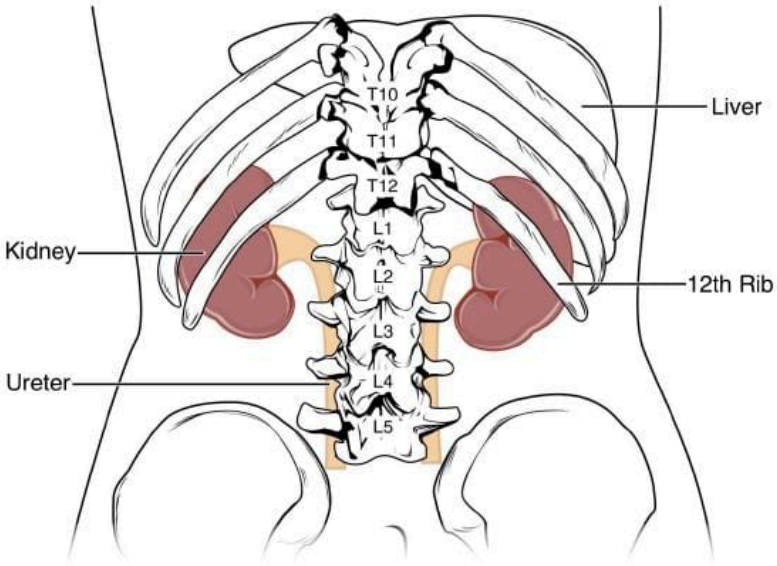


Figure 1 | The Kidneys | [1] An illustration of the posterior torso highlighting the position of the kidneys in relation to the vertebral column (T10-L2) and the 12th rib.

The kidneys are a pair of reddish-brown, bean-shaped organs. They are positioned behind the peritoneum, referred to as a **retroperitoneal** location. Although similar in function, they exhibit subtle variations in placement: the left kidney resides near the T12 to L3 vertebrae (Figure 1). In contrast, the right kidney sits somewhat lower due to its proximity to the liver. Each kidney weighs in the range of 125–175 grams for males and 115–155 grams for females. Their dimensions measure approximately 11–14 centimeters in length, 6 centimeters in width, and 4 centimeters in thickness.

A sturdy, fibrous tissue layer known as the **renal capsule** encapsulates each kidney, providing structural support and safeguarding the internal components. Adrenal glands are situated in the superior part of each kidney. The renal capsule encloses the adrenal gland along with the kidney on each side. Cushioning the kidneys is a layer of adipose tissue, which acts as a shock absorber, shielding them from harm.

This page titled 11.3: External Anatomy of the Kidney is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.4: Internal Anatomy of the Kidney

When dissected through a frontal section, the internal structure can be distinguished by an outer region called the **renal cortex** and an inner area termed the **renal medulla** (Figure 2). The renal medulla, in turn, consists of distinct sections known as **renal pyramids**, divided by connective tissue extensions termed **renal columns** that project from the cortex, traversing the medulla. These renal pyramids, resembling triangular wedges, possess a broader base bordering the cortex and a narrower apex referred to as the **renal papilla**. The papillae represent the termination point for several **collecting ducts** responsible for transporting urine, produced by nephrons, to the **minor calyces**, a segment of the urinary collection system (Figure 2).

The interplay between pyramids and renal columns creates kidney **lobes**. Multiple minor calyces converge to form **major calyces**, and these, in turn, merge to become **renal pelvis**, a more expansive cavity compared to each major calyx for the collection of urine. The **ureters** take on the role of funneling urine from the renal pelvis to the **urinary bladder**, thus facilitating the excretion of this waste from the body.

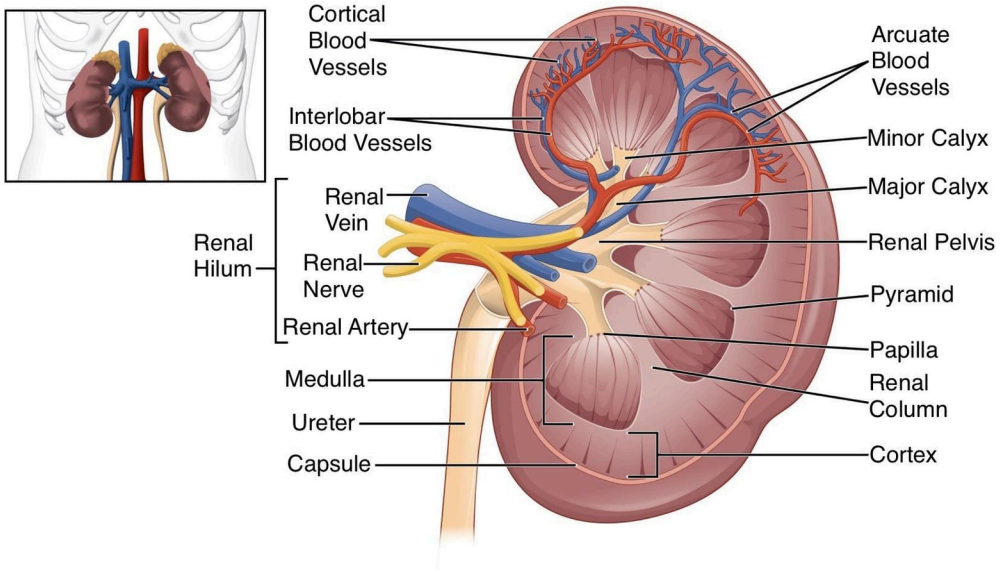


Figure 2 | The Anatomy of the Left Kidney | [2] This illustration depicts the internal and external structures of the kidney, highlighting its intricate vascular network and functional components. On the right, a cross-sectional view of the kidney reveals the distinct regions of the cortex and medulla. The cortex, the outer layer, contains renal corpuscles and is supplied by cortical blood vessels. The medulla, the inner region, features renal pyramids separated by renal columns. The pyramids terminate in papillae, which project into minor calyces. These minor calyces merge into major calyces, which in turn drain into the renal pelvis. The renal pelvis connects to the ureter, which carries urine to the bladder. The renal hilum, located on the medial side, serves as the entry and exit point for the renal artery, renal vein, renal nerve, and ureter.

This page titled 11.4: Internal Anatomy of the Kidney is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.5: Blood Supply to the Kidneys

The total renal blood supply is approximately 1.2 to 1.3 liters per minute, constituting one-fourth to one-fifth of the cardiac output. The **renal artery**, a branch of the abdominal aorta carrying oxygenated blood, undergoes a series of branching patterns. Initially, it divides into **segmental arteries** and then further branches into **interlobar arteries**, traversing through the renal columns to reach the renal cortex (Figure 3). Interlobar arteries further divide into **arcuate arteries** and, subsequently, into **afferent arterioles** which are known for their short and muscular nature serve about 1.2 million nephrons within each kidney. They give rise to a tuft of **glomerular capillaries**, which later rejoin to form the **efferent arterioles**. The subsequent path of the blood depends on the location of the glomeruli.

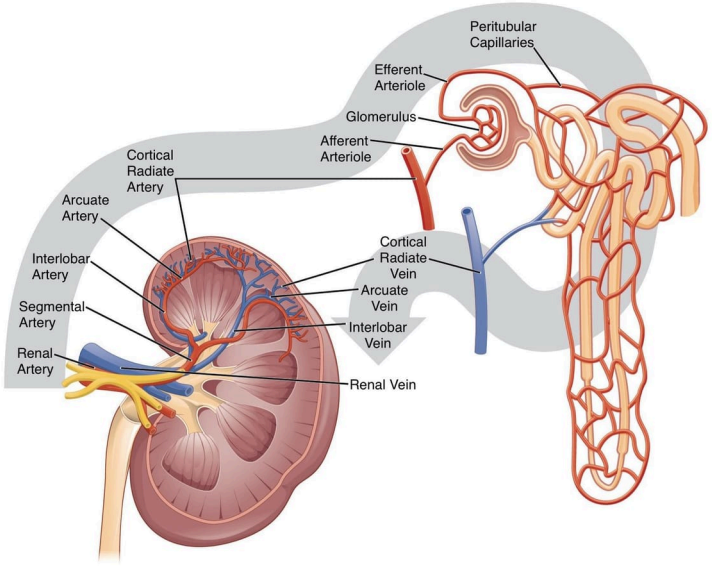


Figure 3 | Renal Circulation | [3] This illustration depicts the intricate blood supply of the kidney, showcasing both the macroscopic and microscopic vascular structures. On the left, a cross-section of the kidney highlights the arterial blood flow, beginning with the renal artery, which branches into segmental, interlobar, arcuate, and cortical radiate (interlobular) arteries. The venous drainage mirrors this pattern, with cortical radiate, arcuate, interlobar, and renal veins carrying blood away from the kidney. On the right, a detailed view of a nephron reveals the specialized capillary network. The afferent arteriole delivers blood to the glomerulus, where filtration occurs. The efferent arteriole carries blood away from the glomerulus, leading to the peritubular capillaries that surround the tubules of the nephron, facilitating reabsorption and secretion processes.

In the outer and mid cortex, the efferent arterioles branch into a capillary network that envelops the tubules of the same nephron, referred to as **peritubular capillaries**, before finally merging with the confluent veins. However, in the inner cortex, blood exiting the juxtamedullary glomeruli may follow one of two distinct pathways: 1) A course similar to the outer cortical peritubular capillaries, encircling the loop of Henle and the collecting ducts in the outer medulla and inner cortex, before returning to the **interlobular veins**; 2) A direct descent to the inner medulla via the long descending capillary referred to as **vasa recta**, followed by returning as the ascending vasa recta within the medullary bundles to the **arcuate veins**. Ultimately, **arcuate veins** unite to form **interlobar veins**, which in turn become **renal veins** responsible for draining deoxygenated blood back into the **inferior vena cava**.

In the human kidney, approximately three-quarters of the total renal blood flow is directed to the cortex, with the juxtamedullary cortex (the portion closest to the medulla) and the outer medulla receiving just one-fifth of this flow, and the remaining blood supply allocated to the inner medulla. Within the microcirculation of the renal cortex, fluid exchange transpires at exceptionally high rates through two anatomically and functionally distinct capillary systems connected in series by the efferent arteriole. The initial system operates at the glomeruli, where a net ultrafiltration rate of 125 ml per minute is achieved. Subsequently, 99 percent of this ultrafiltrate is reabsorbed during its passage along the renal tubules, ultimately returning to the circulatory system via the peritubular capillaries. Renal blood flow decreases 10% per decade of life after age 50.

Oxygen and nutrients are abundantly delivered to the kidneys due to the robust blood supply in the renal cortex, surpassing the

metabolic requirements of the kidneys. In fact, the kidneys receive twice as much oxygen as the brain. Notably, the blood flow is slower in the medulla than in the renal cortex.[4]

This page titled 11.5: Blood Supply to the Kidneys is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.6: Nephrons

The **nephrons**, as the fundamental structural and functional units of the kidneys, play a critical role in the filtration and processing of blood, ensuring the removal of waste and the regulation of essential substances. They serve as the kidneys' primary operational units responsible for maintaining homeostasis. Each kidney houses roughly 1,200,000 nephrons. This quantity remains consistent after birth, with no further increments throughout one's lifetime.

A nephron is organized into two principal segments: the **renal corpuscle** and the **renal tubule** (Figure 4). The renal corpuscle is composed of the **glomerulus** and **Bowman's capsule**, sometimes called the **glomerular capsule** (Figure 5). Glomerulus is the epicenter of filtration. The remainder of the nephron constitutes the renal tubule, consisting of three integral sections: the **proximal tubule**, the **loop of Henle**, and the **distal tubule** (Figure 3). Due to their spiraled configuration, the proximal and distal tubules are commonly referred to as the **proximal** and **distal convoluted tubules**. The loop of Henle exhibits a precise division into **descending** and **ascending limbs**, each fulfilling distinct roles within the nephron.

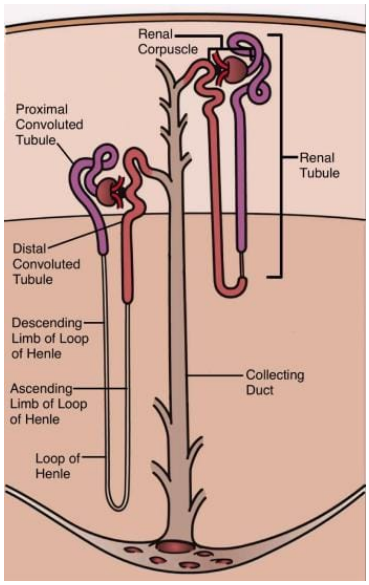


Figure 4 | Structure of a Juxtamedullary Nephron (left) and a Cortical Nephron (right) | [5] This illustration details the anatomical components of a nephron. The nephron begins with the renal corpuscle, which includes the glomerulus and Bowman's capsule. Following the renal corpuscle is the renal tubule, consisting of the proximal convoluted tubule (PCT), the loop of Henle (with descending and ascending limbs that extend into the medulla in juxtamedullary nephrons), and the distal convoluted tubule (DCT). The DCT empties into the collecting duct. Nephrons can be classified as cortical nephrons (with renal tubule structures mainly in the cortex) or juxtamedullary nephrons (with long loops extending deep into the medulla).

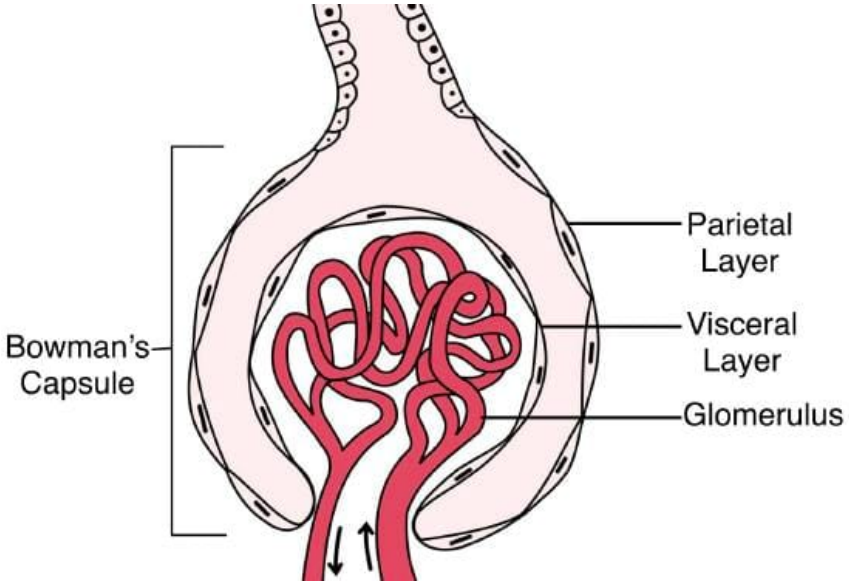


Figure 5 | The Renal Corpuscle | [6] This illustration depicts the structure of the renal corpuscle, the filtering component of the nephron. The glomerulus, a network of capillaries, is shown surrounded by Bowman's capsule, which consists of two layers: the parietal layer (outer) and the visceral layer (inner). The visceral layer is closely associated with the glomerular capillaries.

Cortical and Juxtamedullary Nephrons

The renal corpuscles, proximal tubules, and distal tubules are found within the renal cortex. Roughly 85 percent of nephrons feature a short loop of Henle, remaining within the cortex's boundaries. These are known as **cortical nephrons**. In contrast, the remaining 15 percent, the **juxtamedullary nephrons** have elongated loops of Henle that extend deep into the medulla, the inner region of the kidney (Figure 4). Each nephron segment plays a crucial role in urine formation, as will be discussed subsequently.

The Glomerulus

The glomerulus, composed of fenestrated capillaries with small pores approximately 1000 Å in diameter, is lined by a single layer of endothelial cells and supported by a delicate basement membrane (Figure 6). Unlike typical capillary beds, glomerular capillaries have a unique vascular structure, originating from an afferent arteriole and draining into an efferent arteriole (Figure 8). The branching of these capillaries is less extensive compared to other capillary networks, and the efferent arteriole is narrower than the afferent arteriole. This distinctive arrangement results in higher blood pressure within the glomerular capillaries, which can be modulated by adjusting the tone of the afferent and efferent arterioles.

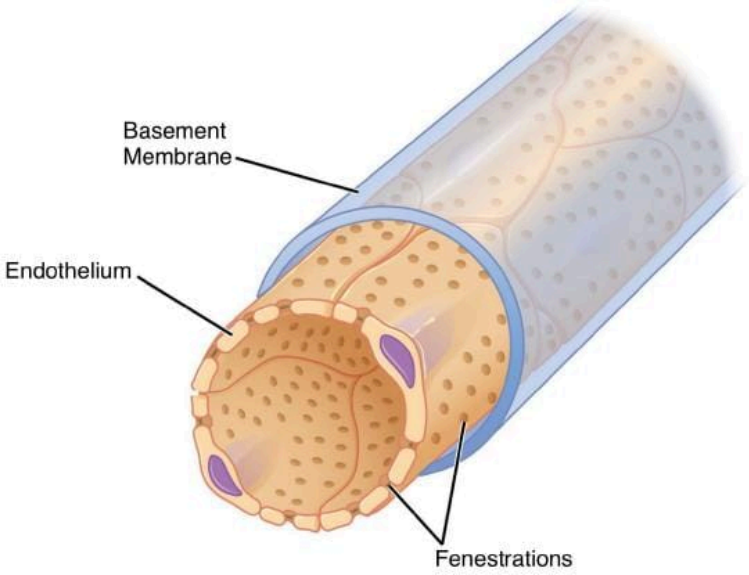


Figure 6 | The Structure of a Fenestrated Capillary | [7] This illustration depicts the detailed structure of a fenestrated capillary. The capillary wall comprises a single layer of endothelial cells and a basement membrane. Fenestrated capillaries are distinguished by the presence of fenestrations, or pores, between the endothelial cells, creating spaces that enhance permeability."

Bowman's Capsule

The Bowman's capsule encircles the glomerulus, comprising two layers: the **parietal** and **visceral** (Figure 5). The parietal layer is composed of a simple squamous epithelium. In contrast, the visceral layer consists of **podocytes**, which are specialized cells with finger-like extensions known as **pedicels** (Figure 7). The pedicels cover the basement membrane of the glomerular capillary and the arrangement of these projections results in the formation of **filtration slits**, creating small gaps between the digits, effectively serving as a sieve. Hence, three layers separate the ultrafiltrate in Bowman's capsule from the blood in the glomerulus: the glomerular endothelium, the basement membrane, and the visceral epithelium with its podocytes. The lumen of the Bowman's capsule refers to the space between the visceral and parietal epithelium which is directly connected to that of the proximal tubule.

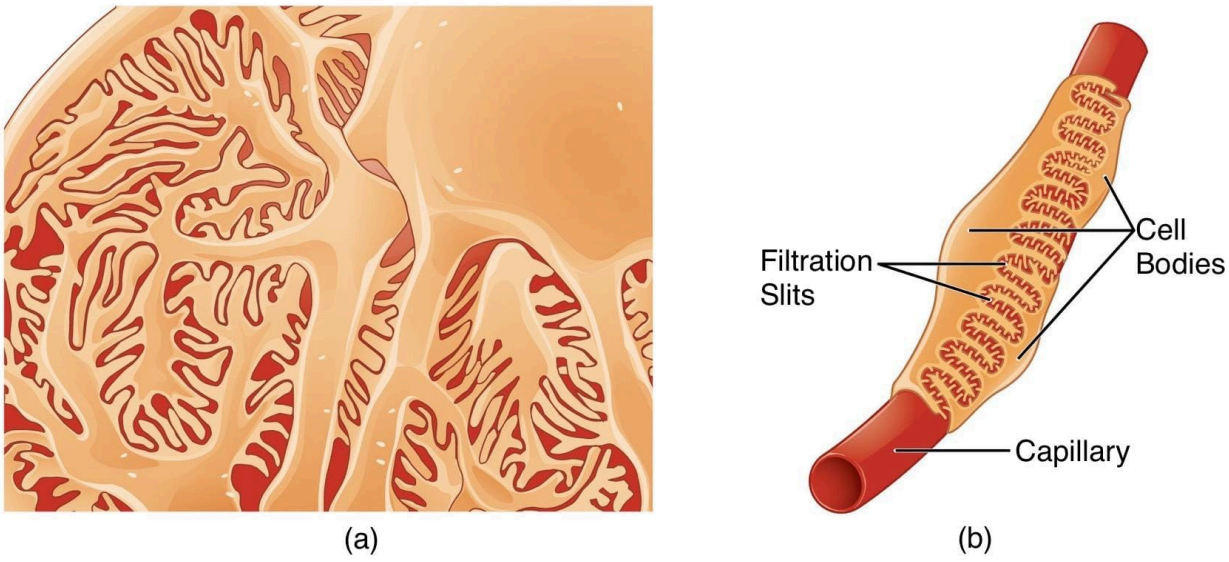


Figure 7 | Podocytes | [8] In (a), the large cell body can be seen at the top right corner, with branches extending from the cell body. The smallest finger-like extensions are the pedicels. (b) A capillary with three podocytes wrapped around it.

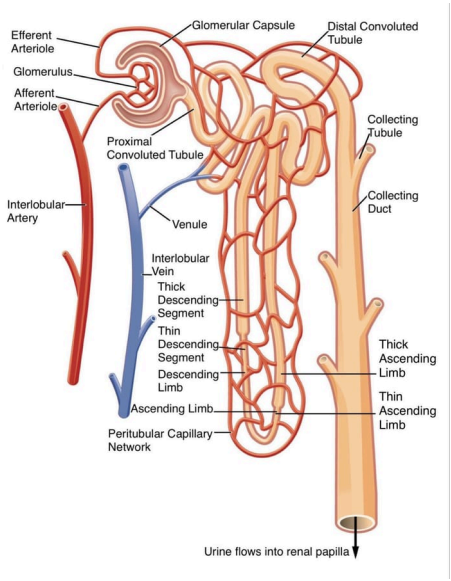


Figure 8 | Anatomical Details of a Nephron and its Blood Supply | [9] This illustration highlights the afferent and efferent arterioles associated with the glomerulus (within Bowman's capsule), and the segments of the renal tubule: proximal convoluted tubule, loop of Henle (with thin and thick segments of descending and ascending limbs), distal convoluted tubule, collecting tubule, and collecting duct. The interlobular artery and vein, along with the peritubular capillaries, are also shown.

Proximal Convoluted Tubule (PCT)

The proximal convoluted tubule (PCT) is a significant component of the nephron. Starting at the Bowman's capsule in the renal cortex, the PCT plays a vital role in reabsorbing essential substances and regulating urine composition (Figure 8). It is a convoluted tube with a simple cuboidal epithelium lined by a brush border of microvilli on its luminal (apical) surface. This brush border dramatically increases the surface area for absorption.

The PCT reabsorbs roughly two-thirds of the water from the ultrafiltrate, returning it to the bloodstream. Various essential solutes like glucose, amino acids, vitamins, and ions (e.g., sodium, potassium, calcium, and bicarbonate) are also reabsorbed in the PCT. This process ensures that essential substances are retained in the body. The PCT also participates in the secretion of specific organic molecules and waste products, such as drugs and hydrogen ions. The reabsorption of bicarbonate ions and the secretion of hydrogen ions help regulate the pH of the blood and, consequently, the body's overall acid-base balance. The PCT efficiently reabsorbs glucose from the filtrate under normal conditions, preventing glucose loss in the urine and maintaining blood glucose levels within the appropriate range. It is highly susceptible to damage from various toxins and medications, which can disrupt its reabsorptive functions, a consideration in clinical settings where drug-induced kidney damage may occur.

Loop of Henle

The Loop of Henle is divided into two segments: the descending and ascending limbs. The descending limb begins as a continuation of the proximal tubule, makes a U-turn at its lowest point, and then heads back up towards the cortex. The descending limb is further divided into a short, **thick portion** and a long, **thin portion** (Figure 8). The cells of the thick descending part are similar to those in the proximal tubule, characterized by simple cuboidal epithelium. They are relatively impermeable to sodium and chloride ions. The thin portion's length varies and is exposed to a hypertonic interstitial fluid in the medulla, causing water to exit, making the filtrate hypertonic.

The ascending limb begins with a short, thin segment followed by a long, thick segment (Figure 8). The cells of the thick ascending part are responsible for actively transporting sodium ions out of the filtrate, resulting in a hypotonic situation as the filtrate enters the DCT. Unlike the descending limb, the ascending limb is impermeable to urea and water. [10]

The Distal Convoluted Tubule (DCT)

The DCT is a coiled, narrow tubular structure with a diameter smaller than the PCT. Its epithelial cells are composed of simple cuboidal epithelium, but unlike the PCT, they have fewer microvilli on their apical surfaces. The distal tubule is located close to the afferent arterioles. Specialized **macula densa cells** in this tubule segment respond to changes in the flow rate and sodium ion concentration of the filtrate. The primary functions of the DCT include reabsorption of sodium ions from the tubular fluid. It can also exchange sodium ions for hydrogen ions. This exchange plays a role in maintaining the body's acid-base balance and helps regulate blood pH. Along with reabsorption, the DCT is responsible for the secretion of certain substances into the tubular fluid, which includes potassium ions and drugs or toxins.

Late Distal Tubule and Collecting Tubule

While the tubular epithelial cells exhibit functional uniformity throughout the renal tubule, the late distal tubule and the collecting tubule have specialized cells. **Principal Cells**, abundant in number, play a role in reabsorbing sodium ions and water while secreting potassium ions. **Intercalated Cells**, on the other hand, are fewer in number and are crucial for reabsorbing potassium ions and secreting hydrogen ions. The late DCT and early collecting tubules are sites where several hormones act, including PTH, which enhances calcium reabsorption. Aldosterone influences the DCT's ability to reabsorb sodium and excrete potassium ions, thus regulating blood pressure and electrolyte balance. The **renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system**, activated in response to low blood pressure or low blood volume, influences the DCT's sodium reabsorption and potassium excretion while indirectly retaining water.

Although the main site of water reabsorption occurs in the proximal tubule, the osmolality and volume of the luminal fluid in the late distal tubule and the collecting tubules are regulated by ADH. The epithelial lining of these segments of the nephron have receptors for ADH. When stimulated by ADH, these cells insert aquaporin channel proteins into their membranes to facilitate the movement of water from the lumen through the cells and into the interstitial spaces, where it is reabsorbed by the blood capillaries (Figure 9). In the absence of ADH, these channels are not inserted, leading to the excretion of water in the form of dilute urine. By increasing the permeability of the epithelium in these segments to water, ADH allows the production of a concentrated urine. In the absence of ADH, a large amount of fluid remains in the collecting ducts, leading to increased urinary output and a drop in fluid osmolality.

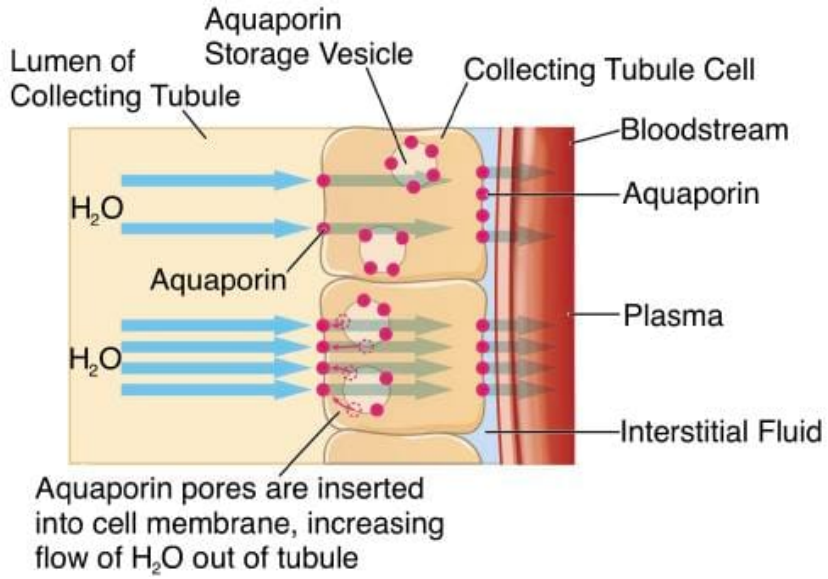


Figure 9 | Aquaporins | [11] This illustration details a collecting tubule cell, highlighting the location of aquaporin proteins within vesicles and within the cell membrane. The lumen of the collecting tubule, the interstitial fluid and plasma are shown in relation to the presence of aquaporins.

Collecting Duct

Multiple distal collecting tubules converge to form collecting ducts. They are not considered as part of individual nephrons but are continuous with them. They collect filtrate from several nephrons for final processing. These ducts merge as they descend into the medulla, forming terminal ducts that empty at the renal papilla. Movement of water and urea is observed in this part which will be discussed in subsequent sections.

Juxtaglomerular Apparatus

Just outside Bowman's capsule and the glomerulus lies the **juxtaglomerular apparatus** (**JGA**) (Figure 10). This specialized region is located at the juncture where the afferent and efferent arterioles enter and exit Bowman's capsule. The initial section of the DCT is in direct contact with these arterioles. A crucial component of the JGA is the **macula densa**, which forms part of the distal tubule's wall and consists of a cluster of cuboidal epithelial cells. These cells closely monitor the fluid composition as it flows through the distal tubule. In response to variations in the concentration of sodium ions within the fluid, the macula densa releases paracrine signals such as adenosine and ATP. These cells are also equipped with a single, non-motile cilium that senses the rate of fluid movement within the tubule. Another cell type present in the JGA is the **juxtaglomerular cell**. These cells are modified smooth muscle cells lining the afferent arteriole. They can contract or relax in response to ATP or adenosine signals released by the macula densa. The ability to contract and relax enables juxtaglomerular cells to regulate blood flow to the glomerulus. When the osmolarity of the filtrate is elevated (hyperosmotic), the juxtaglomerular cells contract. This constriction decreases the glomerular filtration rate (GFR), resulting in less plasma being filtered, reduced urine production, and greater fluid retention. Consequently, this action helps minimize blood osmolarity toward a normal physiological level. Conversely, if the osmolarity of the filtrate is too low, the juxtaglomerular cells relax leading to elevated filtration rate, increasing water loss in the urine and causing blood osmolarity to rise. The combined effects of these opposing actions help maintain a relatively constant filtration rate.[12]

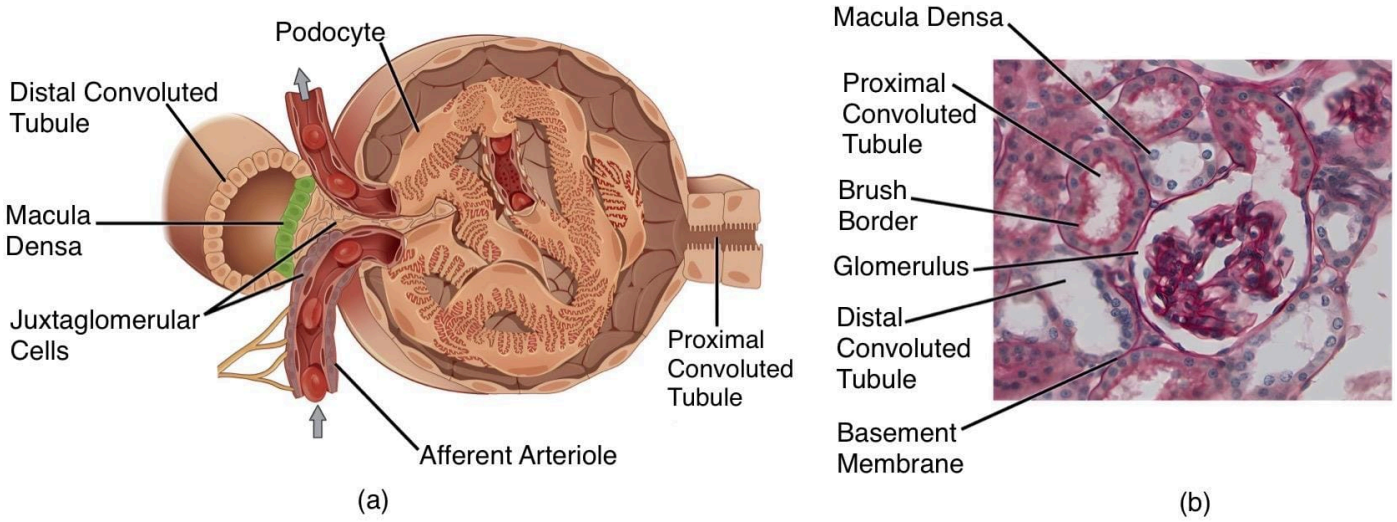


Figure 10 | Juxtaglomerular Apparatus (JGA) and Glomerulus | [13] (a) The JGA allows specialized cells to monitor the composition of the fluid in the DCT and adjust the glomerular filtration rate. (b) This micrograph shows the glomerulus and surrounding structures. LM × 1540.

The cells within the tunica media of the afferent arterioles in the JGA contain granules. These granules house **renin** and can be released into the circulation in response to conditions such as hypotension or renal ischemia, serving as the kidney's mechanism to restore blood flow. The release of renin is influenced by the activation of the sympathetic nervous system, which occurs through stimulation via beta-adrenergic receptors. Several other factors, including anesthesia, the sodium content of the tubular fluid, and the pressure within the afferent arterioles, can also trigger the release of renin. The **renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS)**, which plays a crucial role in regulating blood pressure and fluid balance, has been discussed in detail earlier (refer to Chapter 7).

This page titled 11.6: Nephrons is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.7: Renal Innervation

While the glomeruli, efferent arterioles, and renal tubules lack innervation, the kidneys themselves are intricately linked to the ANS. Sympathetic nerve fibers are extensively distributed near interlobar, arcuate, and interlobular arteries, afferent arterioles, and the vicinity of the vasa recta. Additionally, cholinergic fibers are present within the kidney. Interestingly, despite this robust neural network, there is no evidence supporting the existence of a basal sympathetic vascular tone in the kidneys, which implies that the renal denervation process does not lead to an increase in renal blood flow. However, intense stimulation of the sympathetic fibers can lead to marked cortical arteriolar vasoconstriction in highly stressful situations. Consequently, this constriction diverts blood flow to the juxtamedullary nephrons, playing a crucial role in maintaining kidney function during periods of extreme physiological stress.[14]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 11.7: Renal Innervation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.8: Filtration, Reabsorption, and Secretion

Nephrons perform a crucial role in the intricate process of transforming blood filtrate into urine. They execute four primary functions, **filtration**, **reabsorption**, and **secretion,** and **excretion** to maintain homeostatic equilibrium and eliminate potential toxins. Distinct segments of the nephron employ specific mechanisms to achieve these tasks. Filtration is the initial step involving the transfer of solutes and water from the glomerulus to the Bowman's capsule. This filtrate comprises waste products, nutrients, ions, and water. Before progressing through the rest of the nephron, it is imperative to reclaim these essential components. The substances preserved from the tubular lumen back into the bloodstream are referred to as reabsorption. While certain substances like water and salts are reabsorbed along the entire tubular length, others are reabsorbed at particular sites. For example, the proximal tubule exclusively reabsorbs 100 percent of the glucose. Secretion is the process of releasing substances into the filtrate either from the blood in the peritubular capillaries or by the tubular cells (Figure 11). Finally, excretion removes the processed urine from the nephron, allowing it to be transported through various structures, eventually exiting the body.

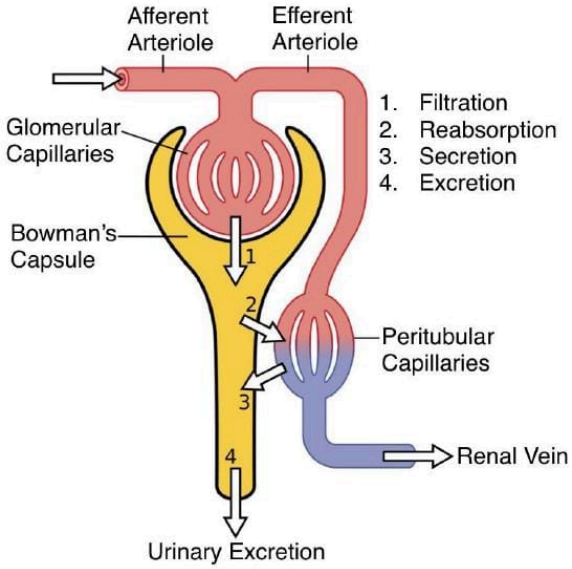


Figure 11 | Physiological processes at the nephron in the formation of urine | [15] This illustration depicts the key anatomical components of a nephron and their respective physiological functions. The afferent arteriole delivers blood to the glomerulus, a network of capillaries within Bowman's capsule, where filtration (1) occurs. The filtrate then flows through the renal tubule, where reabsorption (2) of essential substances takes place. Secretion (3) of additional waste products occurs along the tubule. The peritubular capillaries surround the renal tubule, facilitating these processes. Finally, the processed fluid, now urine, is excreted (4). The efferent arteriole carries blood away from the glomerulus.

Glomerular Filtration

The intricate anatomical arrangement of the glomerulus and Bowman's capsule acts as a specialized sieve for filtering blood, primarily based on particle size and polarity. Filtration, characteristic of the glomerulus, enables the separation of most solutes from the blood, except for blood cells and larger proteins. As a result, the composition of the filtrate closely resembles that of plasma, containing ions, amino acids, glucose, vitamins, and waste products. Remarkably, the glomeruli generate approximately 200 liters of this filtrate daily, while less than two liters are ultimately excreted as urine.

Within the glomerulus, as blood flows through, roughly 10 to 20 percent of the plasma is filtered through these sieve-like structures and collected by Bowman's capsule before continuing into the proximal tubule. When the fenestrations in the glomerular capillaries align with the gaps between the "fingers" of the podocytes, the only structure separating the capillary lumen from the Bowman's capsule lumen is their shared basement membrane. These three components collectively form the **filtration membrane**, which enables rapid passage of filtrate from the capillary to the capsule through 70-nanometer-wide pores. The glomerulus is exceptionally efficient at filtering substances, with a filtration capacity 100 to 500 times greater than most capillaries. This efficiency is due to the high-pressure capillary bed located between the afferent and efferent arterioles, which

allows for the rapid movement of fluid and solutes. The role of Bowman's capsule is to capture and direct this filtrate to the proximal tubule.

The fenestrations serve to prevent the filtration of blood cells and large proteins but permit the passage of most other constituents. Substances can easily traverse this barrier if they are smaller than 4 nanometers, and most can pass freely if they are up to 8 nanometers in size. Another factor influencing the ability of substances to cross this barrier is their electrical charge. The proteins lining these pores carry a negative charge, which leads to the repulsion of negatively charged substances, while promoting the passage of positively charged ones. Furthermore, the basement membrane acts as a barrier against the filtration of medium to large proteins, such as globulins. In addition, **mesangial cells** (specialized cells in the glomerulus that support capillary structure, regulate blood flow, and perform phagocytosis) within the filtration membrane can contract, helping to regulate the GFR. The outcome is the generation of a filtrate devoid of cells or large proteins, with a slight predominance of positively charged substances.

The hydrostatic pressure within the glomerular capillaries, approximately 55 mm Hg, is unusually high for a capillary bed, primarily because of the unique structure of the glomerulus. Unlike typical capillaries, the glomerulus is located between two arterioles: the afferent and efferent arterioles. The afferent arteriole, being wider than the efferent arteriole, allows blood to flow in under relatively low resistance, while the narrower efferent arteriole creates a greater resistance to outflow, helping to maintain this high pressure. Additionally, the glomerulus has fewer branches, which further supports the elevated pressure. This high glomerular capillary pressure is essential for driving the filtration of water and low-molecular-weight substances into Bowman's capsule. Proteins with molecular weights less than 40,000 can pass through the three filtration layers of the glomerulus, while larger proteins are restricted, mainly by the slits between the foot processes of the podocytes, which rest on the basement membrane. Filtration occurs when the glomerular hydrostatic pressure exceeds the opposing pressure within Bowman's capsule. A 20 percent increase in mean arterial pressure, for instance, can raise the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) by 50 percent.

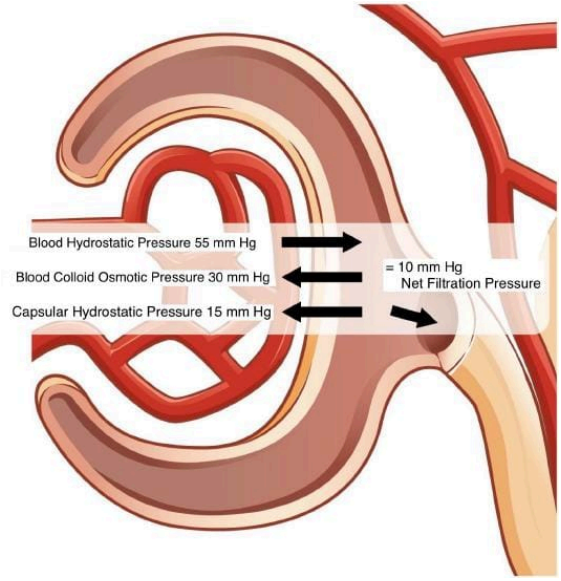


Figure 12 | Filtration Pressures | [16] This illustration explains the balance of pressures involved in the process of glomerular filtration, which determines the net filtration pressure (NFP) responsible for forming urine. Blood hydrostatic pressure (55 mmHg) drives fluid out of the glomerular capillaries, while two opposing forces, blood colloid osmotic pressure (30 mmHg) and capsular hydrostatic pressure (15 mmHg), resist filtration. The NFP is calculated by subtracting the opposing pressures from the driving force (55 - 30 - 15 = 10 mmHg). This results in a net outward pressure of 10 mmHg, which drives fluid from the blood into Bowman's capsule.

Colloid osmotic pressure is higher in the glomerular capillaries due to greater filtration of water from these capillaries compared to plasma elsewhere, which further affects filtration dynamics. Blood cells and medium-to-large proteins, unable to navigate between the podocyte processes or pass through the fenestrations of the endothelial cells, remain within the capillary. This situation results in an average colloid osmotic pressure of about 30 mm Hg within the capillary (Figure 12). At the afferent arterial end of the glomerulus, the osmotic pressure is slightly lower at 28 mm Hg compared to the efferent arteriolar end, where it reaches 33 mm Hg. In Bowman's space, however, the absence of proteins translates to an osmotic pressure near zero. Hence, the primary pressure propelling fluid across the capillary wall into Bowman's space is hydrostatic pressure. This hydrostatic pressure,

generated by the force of fluids, is potent enough to push water through the membrane despite the opposing osmotic pressure. Collectively, the interplay of these influences, both osmotic and hydrostatic, results in a net filtration pressure (NFP) of roughly 10 mm Hg. Specifically:

NFP = Glomerular Blood Hydrostatic Pressure (GBHP) – [Capsular Hydrostatic Pressure (CHP) +Blood Colloid Osmotic Pressure (BCOP)] = 10 mm Hg

Minor adjustments in blood osmolarity or capillary blood pressure can yield substantial variations in the quantity of filtrate produced at any given time. The kidneys possess the ability to adapt to a broad range of blood pressures, primarily due to the autoregulatory properties of their smooth muscle. When blood pressure increases, the smooth muscle within the afferent capillaries contracts, limiting the rise in blood flow and filtration rate. Conversely, if blood pressure decreases, these capillaries relax to sustain blood flow and filtration rate. Consequently, this results in a relatively stable flow of blood into the glomerulus and a consistent filtration rate, even in the presence of significant systemic blood pressure changes. Maintaining a mean arterial pressure above 60 mm Hg is essential for sustaining proper glomerular filtration. Blood pressure falling below this level can impair renal function and lead to severe systemic disorders that jeopardize an individual's survival.

Glomerular Filtration Rate (GFR)

GFR is defined as the volume of filtrate generated by both kidneys each minute. In typical resting conditions, the heart pumps approximately 5 liters of blood per minute. Of this blood flow, roughly 20 percent, which amounts to about one liter, enters the kidneys to undergo filtration every minute. On average, this one liter of blood forms approximately 125 mL of filtrate per minute in men, with a range typically spanning from 90 to 140 mL/min. In women, filtrate production is slightly lower at about 105 mL per minute, ranging from 80 to 125 mL/min. To put these figures in perspective, this process equates to approximately 180 liters per day in men and 150 liters per day in women. Crucially, nearly all this filtrate, accounting for 99 percent, is returned to circulation through reabsorption. Consequently, only 1 to 2 liters of urine are produced daily.

Maintaining an appropriate concentration of solutes in the blood is crucial for regulating osmotic pressure both within the glomerulus and throughout the body. Certain disorders can lead to excessive protein passing through the filtration slits into the kidney filtrate. This excess protein in the filtrate results in a deficiency of circulating plasma proteins. Consequently, the presence of protein in the urine elevates its osmolarity, causing it to retain more water, which, in turn, increases urine volume. With less circulating protein, especially albumin, the osmotic pressure in the blood decreases. The reduced osmotic pressure that typically draws water into the capillaries is outweighed by hydrostatic pressure, which tends to push water out of the capillaries. The net effect is the loss of water from the circulation into interstitial tissues and cells, a condition referred to as **systemic edema**.

Assessing the excretory function of the kidneys involves determining the GFR. Given that many drugs are excreted in the urine, a decline in renal function can lead to the accumulation of toxic substances and waste products. Accurately assessing GFR is also vital for administering appropriate dosages of drugs primarily excreted by the kidney. While GFR can be closely estimated through intravenous administration of **inulin**, a plant polysaccharide that is neither reabsorbed nor secreted by the kidney and directly proportional to the rate at which it is filtered by the glomerulus, measuring inulin clearance is impractical in a clinical context. As a result, GFR is most commonly estimated using naturally occurring **creatinine**, a protein-derived molecule produced during muscle metabolism that is minimally reabsorbed and secreted by the nephron.

Regulation of Glomerular Filtration

Blood must flow through the kidneys at an appropriate rate to allow for filtration. This rate dictates how much solute and water are retained or excreted, ultimately affecting the osmolarity of blood and the body's blood pressure. Several regulatory mechanisms exist to ensure that GFR is maintained at a normal rate.

Neural Regulation

The kidneys receive neural input from sympathetic neurons via the **celiac plexus** and **splanchnic nerves**. Reduced sympathetic stimulation leads to vasodilation and increased blood flow through the kidneys during rest. Conversely, increased action potential frequency in these nerves causes the smooth muscle in arterioles to constrict, reducing glomerular flow and filtration. For example, during a stressful situation, increased sympathetic activity results in direct vasoconstriction of afferent arterioles as well as the release of epinephrine, which causes generalized vasoconstriction, including the afferent arterioles, further reducing blood flow in the kidneys. Moreover, a drop in blood pressure at the kidneys is sensed by the juxtaglomerular cells, which act as

local baroreceptors, triggering the release of renin. A drop in systemic blood pressure results in sympathetic activity, which in turn activates beta-1 receptors in juxtaglomerular cells to release renin as well. Only a 10 mm Hg pressure differential across the glomerulus is required for normal GFR, so even small changes in afferent arterial pressure significantly impacts GFR.

Autoregulation

The autoregulation of GFR is crucial for maintaining kidney function despite fluctuations in blood pressure. This regulation occurs through two primary mechanisms:

Myogenic mechanism

Myogenic mechanism of autoregulation relies on the property shared by most smooth muscle cells in the body, which is their contractile response to stretch. It operates in the afferent arteriole that supplies the glomerulus. When blood pressure rises, the smooth muscle cells in the walls of the arterioles stretch and respond by contracting, which counteracts the elevated pressure and results in reduced blood flow. In contrast, when blood pressure drops, these same smooth muscle cells relax to lower resistance, allowing for a steady blood flow. Notably, this autoregulation occurs rapidly, with changes in blood flow occurring within seconds of alterations in pressure.

Tubuloglomerular Feedback Mechanism

The tubuloglomerular feedback mechanism involves the juxtaglomerular apparatus and a paracrine signaling system utilizing ATP, adenosine, and NO (Table 1). This mechanism stimulates the contraction or relaxation of afferent arteriolar smooth muscle cells. For example, an increase in GFR allows less time for sodium and chloride ions to be reabsorbed at the PCT. Therefore, the osmotic concentration of the filtrate is elevated. The increased osmolarity of the filtrate and the higher flow rate within the distal tubule activate the macula densa cells, causing them to release ATP and adenosine. These molecules act locally as paracrine factors, stimulating the myogenic juxtaglomerular cells of the afferent arteriole to constrict, which, in turn, slows blood flow and reduces GFR. Conversely, when GFR decreases, fewer sodium and chloride ions reach the distal tubule, resulting in reduced ATP and adenosine levels by the macula densa cells, which allows the afferent arteriole to dilate and increase GFR. NO, released by the endothelial cells, simultaneously stimulates afferent arteriolar dilation, fine-tuning the effects of adenosine and ATP on GFR.

Table 1 | *Paracrine Mechanisms Controlling Glomerular Filtration Rate* |

GFR	NaCl Absorption	Role of ATP, adenosine, and NO	Effect on GFR
↑ GFR	↑ Tubular NaCl	↑ ATP and adenosine and ↓ NO → vasoconstriction	↓ GFR
↓ GFR	↓ Tubular NaCl	↓ ATP and adenosine and ↑ NO → vasodilation	↑ GFR

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Tubular Reabsorption and Secretion

The renal tubules perform two primary functions, reabsorption and secretion. Reabsorption entails the movement of essential substances from the tubules back into the peritubular capillaries, and this occurs in the direction of the filtrate's flow. The pressure in the peritubular capillaries drops to around 13 mm Hg, while the blood osmotic pressure remains at about 30 mm Hg. This pressure gradient, along with the permeable nature of the peritubular capillaries, facilitates rapid reabsorption.

Reabsorbed substances can be transported through **transcellular** and **paracellular** mechanisms. Transcellular transport involves substances passing through the cells, including both the apical (luminal) and basolateral (opposite to the lumen) aspects of the cell membrane. In contrast, paracellular transport occurs between the epithelial cells lining the tubules.

With as much as 180 liters of filtrate passing through the nephrons daily, most of this filtrate is reabsorbed. This reabsorption occurs in the proximal tubule, the loop of Henle, the distal tubule, and the collecting ducts (Figure 13). Different segments of the nephron have varying capacities to reabsorb water and specific solutes. While much of reabsorption and secretion occurs passively based on concentration gradients, the regulation of water reabsorption is highly controlled. This regulation is directly influenced by hormones such as ADH and aldosterone and indirectly by renin. Most of the reabsorption of water occurs in the proximal tubule, loop of Henle, and distal tubule. Approximately 10 percent of the remaining filtrate, around 18 liters, reaches the collecting ducts. Here, ADH plays a significant role in recovering almost all the water when the body is dehydrated or allowing minimal water reabsorption when overhydrated.

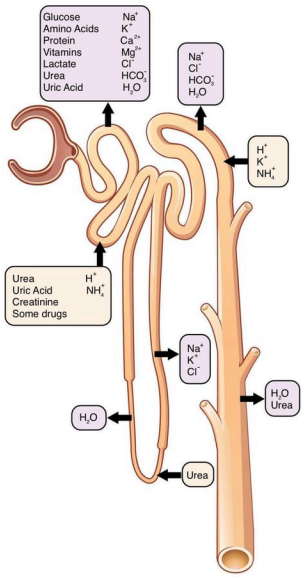


Figure 13 | Locations of Secretion and Reabsorption in the Nephron | [17] This diagram depicts the renal tubule segments and their roles in reabsorption and secretion. Reabsorption is prominent in the proximal convoluted tubule, while the loop of Henle concentrates the urine. The distal convoluted tubule and collecting duct further refine urine composition through reabsorption and secretion of various solutes.

Reabsorption and Secretion in the Proximal Convoluted Tubule

The renal tubules play a crucial role in modifying the filtrate, turning it into urine through reabsorption and secretion. The first segment where these modifications occur is the proximal tubule, where some substances are reabsorbed back into the blood while others are actively secreted into the tubular fluid. The proximal tubule is the site of the most extensive reabsorption and secretion in the nephron because it is the first part the filtrate passes through and the longest segment. Different mechanisms, such as symport, antiport, active transport, diffusion, and facilitated diffusion, are involved in the movement of various substances across the cell membranes.

Epithelial cells lining the proximal tubule have two surfaces: the apical (or luminal) surface facing the lumen and the basal (or basolateral) surface facing the interstitial space (Figure 14). A key mechanism for efficient function in the proximal tubule is the sodium-potassium pump located on the basolateral membrane, which actively transports sodium ions out of the cell, creating

a sodium gradient. This gradient facilitates the entry of sodium ions on the apical surface, allowing co-transport or counter-transport of various substances such as glucose, amino acids, and ions. For instance, glucose and sodium ions are transported using symporters on the apical surface. In contrast, sodium ions are actively transported out of the cell into the interstitial space on the basolateral surface. Chloride ions follow sodium ions passively to maintain electroneutrality, which creates an osmotic gradient that pulls water out of the tubule, a process known as **obligatory water reabsorption.**

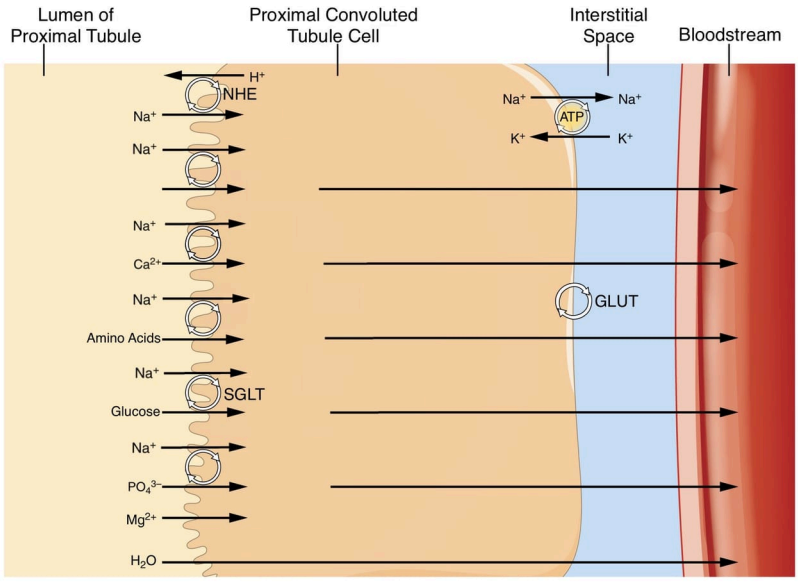


Figure 14 | Transport Mechanisms in the Proximal Convoluted Tubule Cell | [18] This illustration depicts the various transport mechanisms occurring across the membrane of a proximal convoluted tubule cell. Several transport proteins are shown, including NHE (Sodium-Hydrogen Exchanger), SGLT (Sodium-Glucose Cotransporter), and GLUT (Glucose Transporter). The movement of various ions (Na^+, K^+, $Ca_2{}^+$, H^+), molecules (glucose, amino acids), phosphate ($(PO_4{}^{3-})$), magnesium ($Mg_2{}^+$), and water (H_2O) across the cell membrane is indicated by arrows. Na^+/ K^+ -ATPase pump using ATP as the energy source creates a gradient for Na^+ to allow these transport processes.

Approximately 65 percent of water is reabsorbed in the PCT, leading to an increase in urea concentration, allowing the diffusion of urea into the peritubular capillaries. Around 60 to 80 percent of filtered sodium and chloride ions are reabsorbed in the PCT. Other substances such as glucose, amino acids, phosphate, bicarbonate, calcium, magnesium, sulfate, creatinine, uric acid, and ketones are also actively or passively reabsorbed in the PCT, each with their own threshold levels for reabsorption.

Amino acids are reabsorbed primarily via sodium ion-dependent transporters, with almost all filtered amino acids being reclaimed. Calcium ions are reabsorbed through both paracellular pathways and active transport mechanisms, while chloride ions are reabsorbed primarily via sodium-chloride co-transporters and paracellular diffusion. Magnesium ions are reabsorbed mainly through paracellular routes driven by the electrochemical gradient. Phosphate is primarily reabsorbed through sodium-phosphate co-transporters. Approximately 70-80% of filtered phosphate is reabsorbed here. Increased levels of PTH can decrease phosphate reabsorption, promoting its excretion in urine. The PCT is actively involved in the formation of hydrogen ions and ammonia (Figure 15). It also plays a role in secreting metabolic products of hormones and drugs into the urine. Throughout these processes, the osmolarity and concentration of the filtrate remain isotonic (300 mOsm).

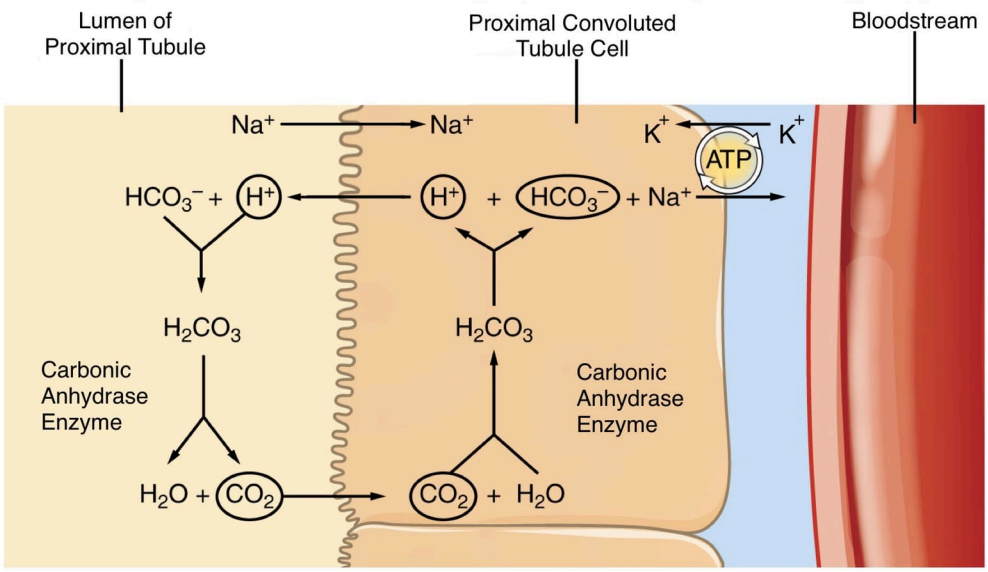


Figure 15 | Bicarbonate Reabsorption in the Proximal Convoluted Tubule Cell | [19] This illustration details the cellular mechanisms involved in bicarbonate ($HCO3^-$) reabsorption within a proximal convoluted tubule cell. Sodium ions (Na^+) are shown being transported across the cell membrane due to a gradient created by the Na^+/K^+-ATPase pump. Within the cell, carbonic anhydrase enzyme facilitates the conversion of carbon dioxide (CO_2) and water (H_2O) into carbonic acid (H_2CO_3), which then dissociates into hydrogen ions (H^+) and bicarbonate ions (HCO_3^-). The H^+ are exchanged for Na^+ via a transport mechanism, while HCO_3^- are transported into the interstitial space.

The proximal convoluted tubule is a primary regulator of acid-base homeostasis, utilizing two distinct mechanisms to buffer and excrete acid. First, because the luminal membrane is impermeable to bicarbonate, its reclamation requires an indirect loop. Luminal bicarbonate combines with secreted hydrogen ions to form carbonic acid, which apical membrane-bound **carbonic anhydrase** rapidly cleaves into carbon dioxide and water. The lipid-soluble carbon dioxise freely diffuses across the membrane into the cell, where it is converted back into bicarbonate and reabsorbed into the bloodstream (Figure 15).

Second, the PCT generates "new" bicarbonate through **glutamine metabolism**. Inside the tubule cells, glutamine is metabolized to yield ammonium ion and bicarbonate. The ammonium ion is secreted into the tubular lumen to be excreted in urine, while the newly synthesized bicarbonate is transported across the basolateral membrane into the blood via a sodium-bicarbonate cotransporter. Ultimately, the massive reabsorption of these solutes throughout the proximal tubule establishes the vital osmotic and electrochemical gradients required to drive water and ion recovery in the downstream segments of the nephron.

Reabsorption and Secretion in the Loop of Henle

The loop of Henle is a highly specialized structure in the nephron, responsible for facilitating the recovery of much of the water and salts that were initially filtered by the glomerulus. The loop consists of a descending and an ascending limb which are further organized into thin and thick segments.

Descending Limb of the Loop of Henle

The descending limb of the loop of Henle consists of both thin and thick segments, each serving distinct roles in the concentration of urine. The thin segment, lined by simple squamous epithelium, are equipped with aquaporin channels and are highly permeable to water but impermeable to solutes like sodium and chloride. As the filtrate moves deeper into the medulla, the osmotic gradient increases, drawing water out of the descending limb via osmosis. This allows water to be reabsorbed into the surrounding hypertonic medulla, concentrating the tubular fluid. Modest amounts of urea is reabsorbed in this portion. The thick segment, on the other hand, has a reduced role in water reabsorption and mainly transitions into the thicker portions of the loop that focus more on solute transport.

Ascending Limb of the Loop of Henle

The ascending limb of the loop of Henle consists of a thin and a thick portion. The thick portion, lined with simple cuboidal epithelium and lacking a brush border, is impermeable to water due to the absence of aquaporin proteins. Instead, it actively transports sodium ions via the sodium-potassium-ATPase pump, which creates an electrochemical gradient for chloride ion reabsorption through sodium-potassium-chloride symporters on the apical membrane. Chloride ions exit the epithelial cells on the basolateral surface through chloride channels. These channels allow chloride ions to passively move into the interstitial space, driven by the electrochemical gradient that forms due to active sodium transport by the sodium-potassium-ATPase pump. Most potassium ions reabsorbed through the symporter return to the lumen via leaky channels in the apical membrane. This creates a negative charge in the interstitial space relative to the lumen, which draws cations (such as sodium, potassium, calcium, and magnesium) from the lumen into the interstitium through a paracellular route, further contributing to electrolyte balance. As sodium and chloride ions are removed from the filtrate while water remains, the filtrate becomes hypotonic by the time it reaches the distal tubule. Concurrently, the removal of sodium into the interstitial space contributes to the hyperosmotic environment of the renal medulla.

Countercurrent Multiplier System

The countercurrent multiplier system is a crucial mechanism in the kidney for establishing concentration gradients and facilitating the reabsorption of both water and solutes. This system primarily involves the structure of the loop of Henle, the vasa recta, and the active transport of sodium ion and urea.

The loop of Henle, with its descending and ascending limbs, runs adjacent to each other, and the fluid within them flows in opposite directions. This countercurrent arrangement is the basis of the countercurrent multiplier system. The descending limb is permeable to water. In contrast, the ascending limb actively transports sodium ion out of the filtrate, creating a concentration gradient in the surrounding interstitial space of the renal medulla. This gradient increases osmolarity, particularly in the deep medullary regions (Figure 16).

Urea is essential for water recovery and maintaining the osmolarity of the medulla. It diffuses into the lumen of the descending limb. Some urea is reabsorbed from the filtrate when it reaches the collecting duct. Collecting ducts have urea transporters that actively move urea into the interstitial spaces, contributing to the high osmolarity of the medulla. This active urea transport is important in the countercurrent multiplier system as it aids in maintaining the concentration gradient.

The vasa recta are peritubular capillaries that run parallel to the loop of Henle particularly in the juxtamedullary nephrons. These capillaries play a vital role in the preservation of the countercurrent multiplier system. The vasa recta maintains hypertonicity in the renal medulla through a **countercurrent exchange mechanism**. As blood flows down the descending limb of the vasa recta, it encounters the hypertonic interstitial fluid of the medulla, which is rich in sodium chloride and urea. This causes water to diffuse out of the blood into the interstitium, while solutes like sodium chloride and urea diffuse into the blood, progressively increasing the osmolarity of the blood as it moves deeper into the medulla. On the ascending limb of the vasa recta, the process is reversed: water moves back into the blood, and sodium chloride and urea diffuse back into the interstitial fluid. This exchange is passive and gradual, allowing blood to return to the cortex without significantly altering the high osmolarity of the medullary interstitial fluid. Through this process, the vasa recta preserve the hypertonic environment of the medulla, which is essential for water reabsorption in the collecting ducts, thereby enabling the kidney to concentrate urine and conserve water.They recover both solutes and water at a rate that ensures the countercurrent mechanism's functionality. Notably, the flow rate in vasa recta is relatively slow, allowing time to exchange nutrients and wastes.

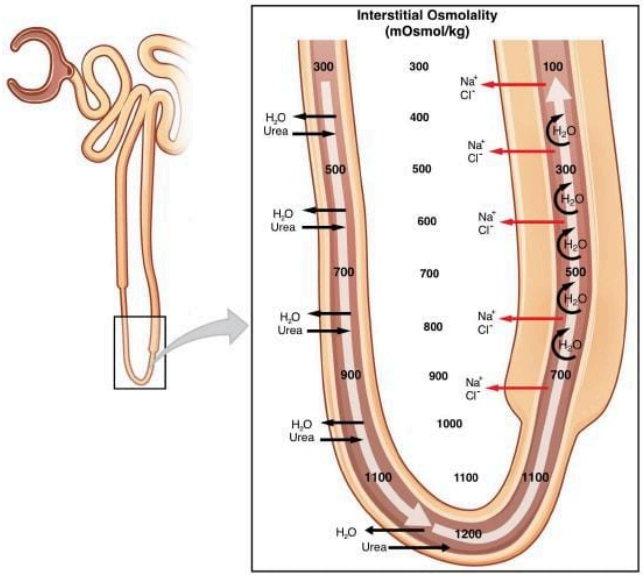


Figure 16 | Countercurrent Transport Mechanisms in the Loop of Henle | [20] This illustration focuses on the countercurrent transport processes crucial for concentrating urine. It depicts the loop of Henle and the interstitial osmolarity gradient, ranging from 300 mOsmol/kg in the cortex to 1200 mOsmol/kg in the deep medulla. The diagram emphasizes the countercurrent multiplier system, showing the differential permeability and transport of water (H_2O), sodium ions (Na^+), chloride ions (Cl^-), and urea in the descending and ascending limbs, which work together to create and maintain this gradient.

Reabsorption and Secretion in the Distal Convoluted Tubule

The distal tubule and collecting duct are critical sites for the final adjustments to the composition of the filtrate before it becomes urine. Here, the recovery of water and the reabsorption of specific ions are regulated to help maintain electrolyte balance and fluid volume. These segments of the nephron play a crucial role in fine-tuning the filtrate composition.

Approximately 10-15% of the filtered sodium is recovered in the distal tubule. Aldosterone plays a significant role in this process by increasing the amount of sodium-potassium ATPase pumps in the basal membrane of the distal tubule and collecting duct. These pumps actively transport sodium out of the tubular lumen and into the interstitial space, contributing to the reabsorption of sodium ions. This active reabsorption of sodium creates a negative charge in the lumen of the collecting duct, promoting the passive movement of chloride ions out of the lumen into the interstitial space across tight junctions.

The distal tubule is also involved in the recovery of calcium from the filtrate. Specialized cells in the distal tubule possess receptors for PTH. When PTH binds to these receptors, it induces the insertion of calcium channels on the luminal surface of these cells. These channels enhance the reabsorption of calcium ions from the filtrate into the cells. Additionally, as sodium is pumped out of the cell, the resulting electrochemical gradient attracts calcium ion into the cell. The active form of vitamin D, calcitriol, is vital for calcium recovery. It induces the production of **calcium-binding proteins** that help transport calcium ion into the cell. These binding proteins also facilitate the movement of calcium within the cell and promote the exit of calcium ions across the basolateral membrane back into the interstitial space. Any calcium not reabsorbed at this stage will be excreted in the urine. The recovered solutes and water are returned to the circulation via the peritubular capillaries.

Reabsorption and Secretion in the Collecting Duct

The collecting ducts, found in the last part of the nephron, are responsible for the regulation of urine volume and osmolarity, contributing significantly to maintaining the body's overall homeostasis. These ducts contain two distinct cell types: **principal cells** and **intercalated cells**, each of which plays a role in the final adjustments made to the urine.

Principal Cells

Principal cells possess channels for both the reabsorption of sodium ion and the excretion of potassium ion. They are pivotal

in regulating sodium and water balance. These cells are regulated primarily by ADH which acts via a cAMP second messenger system to insert aquaporin channels into the apical membrane of principal cells. These channels facilitate the osmotically driven movement of water from the collecting duct into the surrounding interstitial space. The presence of aquaporin channels determines the final concentration of urine, which is directly dependent on the presence of ADH. When ADH secretion decreases, fewer channels are inserted, resulting in dilute urine. Thus, by varying the number of aquaporin channels, the collecting ducts regulate the volume and osmolarity of the urine.

Principal cells also contain receptors for aldosterone. When aldosterone levels increase, these cells respond by manufacturing luminal sodium and potassium ion channels, along with Na^+/K^+ ATPase pumps on the basal membrane. The increase in sodium reabsorption is followed by water recovery, contributing to a rise in blood volume and blood pressure. Conversely, when aldosterone levels decrease, more sodium ion remains in the filtrate, and more potassium ion is reabsorbed, leading to a potential increase in blood potassium levels.

Intercalated Cells

Intercalated cells in the collecting duct are essential for fine-tuning blood pH through balanced ion transport. **Type A intercalated cells** respond to acidosis by reabsorbing bicarbonate and potassium while actively secreting hydrogen ions into the urine. This parallel action reduces blood acidity and lowers urinary pH. In contrast, **Type B intercalated cells** are activated during metabolic alkalosis to rid the body of excess base. These cells feature an inverted cellular polarity compared to Type A cells: their chloride-bicarbonate exchangers (pendrin) sit on the apical membrane to excrete bicarbonate, whereas their hydrogen-ATPase pumps reside on the basolateral membrane to retain acid.

Collecting ducts also play a crucial role in regulating urea. Urea escapes partially from the collecting duct and reenters the filtrate through the descending limb of the loop of Henle, contributing to the overall osmolarity in the medulla. Thus, the collecting ducts are critical for fine-tuning urine composition, maintaining water and electrolyte balance, and regulating blood osmolarity and pH levels in the body. They are influenced by various hormones, primarily ADH and aldosterone, to help maintain overall homeostasis.

The following Tables summarize the substances handled by the nephron (Tables 2-3).

Table 2 | *Substances Secreted or Reabsorbed in the Nephron and their locations* |

Substance	PCT	Loop of Henle	DCT	Collecting Ducts
Glucose	Almost 100% reabsorbed; secondary active transport with sodium ions			
Oligopeptides, Proteins, Amino Acids	Almost 100% reabsorbed; symport with sodium ions			
Vitamins	Reabsorbed			
Lactate	Reabsorbed			
Creatinine	Secreted			

Substance	PCT	Loop of Henle	DCT	Collecting Ducts
Urea	50% reabsorbed by diffusion: also secreted	Secretion, diffusion in descending limb		Reabsorption in medullary collecting ducts; diffusion

Table 3 | *Substances Filtered and Reabsorbed by the Kidney per 24 hours* |

Substance	Amount Filtered (grams)	Amount Reabsorbed (grams)	DCT
Water	180 L	179 L	1 L
Proteins	10 - 20	10 - 20	o
Chlorine	630	625	5
Sodium	540	537	3
Bicarbonate	300	299.7	0.3
Glucose	180	180	0
Urea	53	28	25
Potassium	28	24	4
Uric Acid	8.5	7.7	0.8
Creatinine	1.4	0	1.4

This page titled 11.8: Filtration, Reabsorption, and Secretion is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.9: Endocrine and Paracrine Regulation of Kidney Function

Specific hormones and paracrine agents help regulate renal function, blood pressure, and electrolyte balance. Renin–Angiotensin–Aldosterone Mechanism is a complex system that regulates blood pressure and kidney function (see Chapter 7). ADH is released from the posterior pituitary in response to dehydration and increased blood osmolarity. It promotes reabsorption of water in the collecting ducts. It does so by inserting aquaporin channels into the apical cell membrane of principal cells, allowing water to move from the collecting duct into the interstitial space via osmosis. This helps to conserve water and maintain plasma osmolarity and blood pressure.

Natriuretic hormones have effects opposite to aldosterone. They inhibit aldosterone release and sodium reabsorption in the collecting ducts, increasing sodium and water excretion. ANP and **B-type natriuretic peptide** (**BNP**) are released by the heart in response to elevated blood pressure or heart failure, and they promote increased loss of sodium and water in the urine. ANP has more potent effects than BNP due to its higher receptor affinity.

PTH, produced in response to low blood calcium levels, stimulates the kidneys to convert calcidiol to calcitriol in the PCT, which enhances calcium absorption in the small intestine as well as in the DCT. PTH not only stimulates calcium reabsorption at the DCT and collecting duct but also inhibits the reabsorption of phosphate at the PCT, leading to its loss in the urine. PTH has some influence on magnesium reabsorption in the proximal tubule, where around 25% of filtered magnesium is reabsorbed. PTH slightly enhances reabsorption by modulating sodium transport mechanisms that indirectly affect magnesium movement. The majority of magnesium (about 60-70%) is reabsorbed in the thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle.

PTH enhances magnesium reabsorption in this segment by stimulating the activity of paracellular pathways, which allow magnesium to move passively between cells, driven by the electrochemical gradient.

Endothelins are potent vasoconstrictors produced by various cells in the renal system. They can influence blood pressure, particularly in individuals with certain conditions like diabetic kidney disease, where endothelin levels are chronically elevated. Endothelins constrict both afferent and efferent arterioles, affecting renal function and blood pressure.[21]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 11.9: Endocrine and Paracrine Regulation of Kidney Function is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.10: Renal Electrolyte Regulation

Regulation of various electrolytes and substances is a vital function of the kidneys and related systems in the body. Although the handling of these ions is discussed in specific parts of the tubule, a summary of the regulation of key substances is as below.

Regulation of Sodium Ions

Sodium ion plays a significant role in the osmolarity of the plasma, and its concentration needs to be tightly regulated. An increase in sodium ion concentration can lead to increased blood volume and hypertension. The kidneys play a central role in regulating sodium ion balance. Sodium reabsorption occurs at multiple sites along the renal tubules, ensuring that the body maintains the appropriate sodium levels necessary for optimal physiological function. The reabsorption of sodium ions In the PCT is a crucial process. Sodium ions are cotransported alongside various solutes such as glucose, amino acids, phosphate, and lactate. Additionally, sodium ions are counter-transported via the sodium-hydrogen exchanger, a process that is intricately linked to the reabsorption of filtered bicarbonate ions. Sodium ions are reabsorbed along with chloride ions in the later part of PCT.

The thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle is responsible for the reabsorption of a substantial portion of filtered sodium ions. This is facilitated by the $Na^+/K^+/2Cl^-$cotransporter. While sodium ions are primarily reabsorbed, some potassium ions diffuse back into the tubule lumen, contributing to sodium conservation. The early DCT plays a role in the reabsorption of sodium ions through the sodium-chloride cotransporter. In the late DCT and the collecting duct, sodium ions continue to be reabsorbed, accounting for approximately 3% of the total reabsorption. This final reabsorption step is predominantly orchestrated by principal cells, which simultaneously reabsorb water. Only a small fraction of filtered sodium ions, less than 1 percent, is excreted in the urine under normal conditions.

Regulation of Potassium Ions

The kidneys play a pivotal role in maintaining potassium balance, crucial for normal muscle and cardiac function. Potassium ions are primarily reabsorbed in the early proximal tubule through passive transport. However, sodium-potassium exchange pumps play a pivotal role in potassium reabsorption in the late proximal tubule. The thick ascending limb further contributes to potassium regulation. Here, the $Na^+/K^+/2Cl^-$ cotransporter is engaged, ensuring potassium movement. Within the distal tubule, potassium reabsorption continues, primarily through sodium-chloride cotransport mechanisms. The final stages of potassium handling occur in the late distal tubule and collecting ducts. Principal cells within these segments actively reabsorb sodium and water while controlling potassium secretion.

Figure 17 illustrates the homeostatic regulation of potassium levels in response to increased dietary K^+ intake. When potassium intake rises, plasma K⃟ concentration increases, triggering the release of aldosterone from the adrenal cortex. It upregulates the expression and activity of Na^+/K^+ ATPase on the basolateral membrane, increasing sodium reabsorption and potassium secretion. Additionally, aldosterone enhances the activity of apical potassium channels, allowing more K⃟ to be secreted into the tubular lumen for excretion in the urine. This negative feedback mechanism helps maintain potassium homeostasis and prevents hyperkalemia, which could have detrimental effects on cellular function, particularly in excitable tissues like the heart and nervous system.

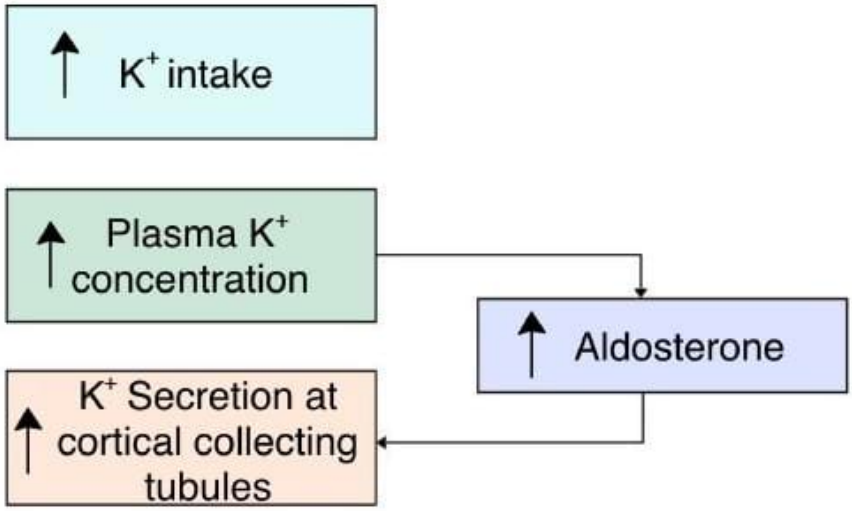


Figure 17 | Regulation of potassium homeostasis by aldosterone | An increase in potassium (K^+) intake leads to elevated plasma K^+ concentration, which stimulates the release of aldosterone. Aldosterone enhances K^+ secretion at the cortical collecting tubules, promoting its excretion and maintaining potassium balance.

Sodium reabsorption and potassium secretion in principal cells are driven by the Na^+/K^+-ATPase pump, which creates a gradient that facilitates the passive movement of sodium ions into the cells via ENaC channels and the active secretion of potassium ions into the tubular lumen (Figure 18).

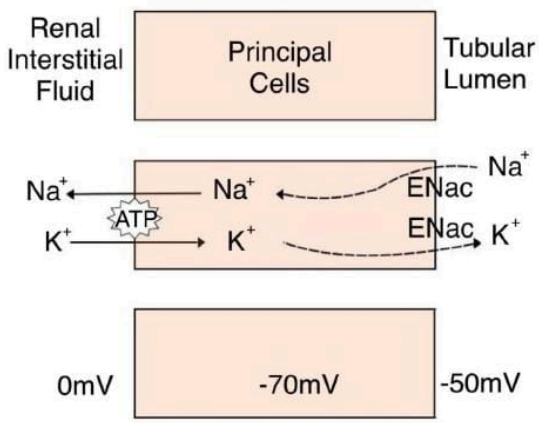


Figure 18 | Reabsorption of Sodium Ions and Secretion of Potassium Ions within the Principal Cells | This diagram illustrates the sodium (Na^+) and potassium (K^+) exchange that occurs in principal cells of the renal collecting duct. It shows the movement of ions between the tubular lumen and the renal interstitial fluid, facilitated by ENaC channels and the Na^+/K^+-ATPase pump.

Regulation of Chloride Ions

Chloride ion is closely associated with sodium in the extracellular environment. Its regulation closely mirrors that of sodium, particularly in maintaining acid-base balance in the extracellular space and its role in gastric acid production.

The kidneys play a central role in regulating the reabsorption of chloride ions, a pivotal component of overall electrolyte balance and renal function. In the early PCT, chloride ions are reabsorbed alongside sodium ions through the sodium-chloride cotransport mechanism. This process is highly efficient and contributes significantly to the reabsorption of chloride ions. In the late PCT, additional reabsorption of chloride ions occurs. Within the thick ascending limb of the Loop of Henle, chloride ions are reabsorbed by an active transport mechanism. This process, facilitated by the Na^+-K^+-2 Cl^- cotransporter, contributes to the overall conservation of chloride ions. In addition to active transport, chloride ions are reabsorbed through the paracellular route in the thick ascending limb, enhancing chloride ion retention. The early DCT is involved in reabsorbing chloride ions through the sodium-chloride cotransporter. In the late DCT and collecting duct, the final phase of chloride ion reabsorption occurs, accounting for approximately 15% of the total reabsorption. Under normal conditions, only a small fraction of filtered chloride ions are excreted in the urine, which represents the minimal amount necessary to maintain chloride ion balance in the body.

Regulation of Calcium and Phosphate

The parathyroid glands monitor and respond to circulating calcium levels in the blood. When calcium levels drop too low, PTH is released to stimulate the DCT to reabsorb calcium from the filtrate. Conversely, less PTH is released when calcium levels are adequate or high, and more calcium remains in the filtrate to be excreted. Phosphate levels in the blood move in the opposite direction to calcium levels. PTH inhibits the reabsorption of phosphate when calcium levels are low, allowing calcium levels to rise. Additionally, PTH stimulates the renal conversion of calcidiol into calcitriol, the active form of vitamin D, which, in turn, stimulates the intestines to absorb more calcium from the diet. PTH increases calcium reabsorption through the activation of adenylate cyclase and cAMP-mediated mechanisms.

The bulk of calcium reabsorption occurs in the proximal tubule and the thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle. Over 90% of the filtered calcium is reabsorbed in these two segments, and this process is coupled with sodium reabsorption through passive transport mechanisms. The thick ascending limb of the loop of Henle plays a critical role in calcium reabsorption. This segment provides two routes for calcium to be reabsorbed: the paracellular route and the transcellular route. The distal tubule and the collecting duct are involved in the final stages of calcium reabsorption. Here, calcium reabsorption occurs through an active transport process, which can be modulated by PTH and vitamin D. Vitamin D increases the expression of calcium channels, calcium-binding proteins (calbindin), and ATP-dependent calcium pumps that enhance calcium uptake from the filtrate back into the bloodstream (Figure 19).

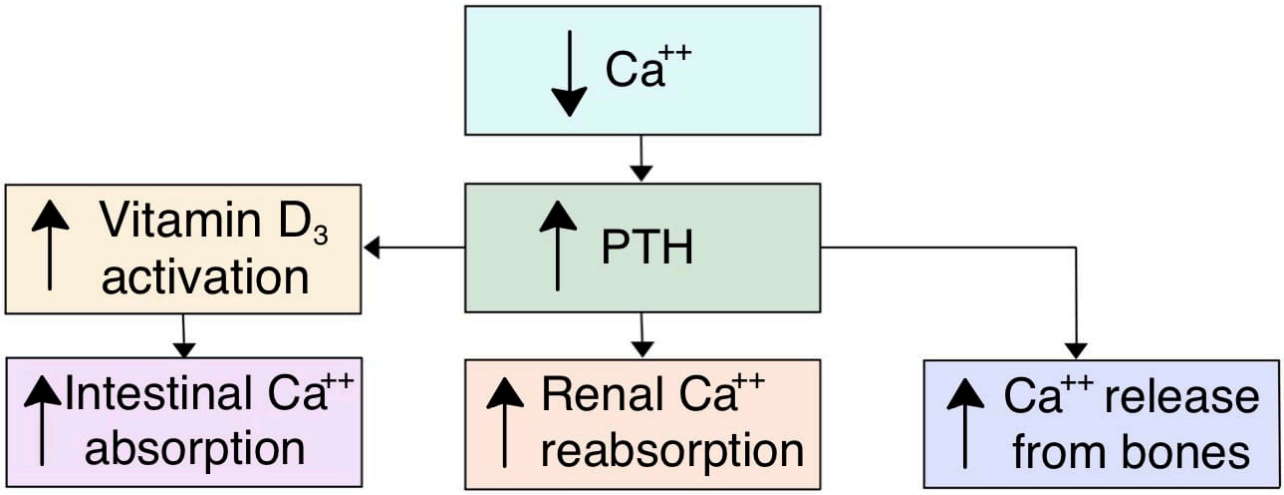


Figure 19 | The Role of Parathyroid Hormone (PTH) in Calcium Homeostasis | This illustration depicts the role of parathyroid hormone (PTH) and vitamin D in regulating calcium levels. PTH increases calcium reabsorption in the kidneys, stimulates calcium release from bones, and stimulates vitamin D activation. Activated vitamin D helps increase calcium absorption in the intestines.

The process of regulating phosphate levels within the body begins with the filtration of phosphate ions at the glomerulus. The primary site of reabsorption for phosphate ions is the proximal tubule. The reabsorption of phosphate in this segment occurs through the mechanism of sodium-phosphate cotransport. Approximately 85% of the filtered phosphate is reabsorbed in the proximal tubule. The remaining 15% of the filtered phosphate is excreted in the urine.[22]

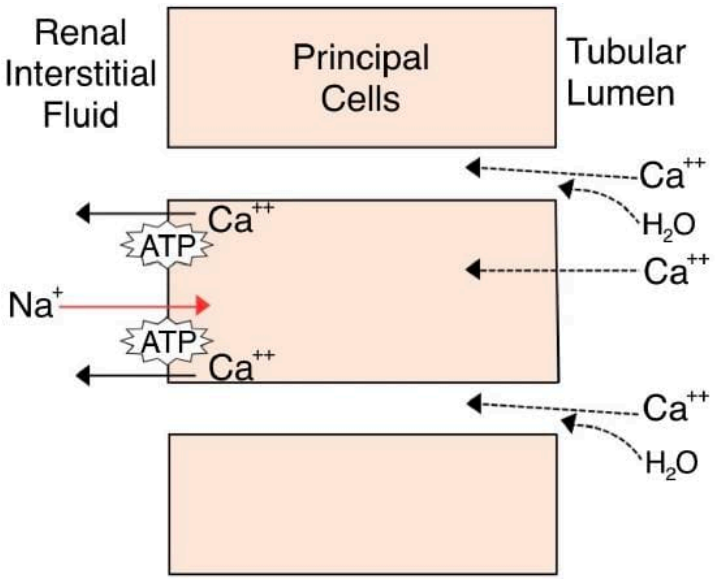


Figure 20 | Calcium Transport in Principal Cells of the Renal Tubule | This illustration depicts the mechanisms of calcium ion ($Ca_2{}^+$) transport in principal cells of the renal tubule, encompassing both transcellular and paracellular routes. ATP-dependent process such as $Ca_2{}^+$ ATPase activity is involved in the reabsorption of calcium. Water (H_2O) movement is driven by the osmotic gradient created by solute distribution.

In the principal cells of the collecting duct, the movement of sodium ions into the cell from the basolateral side is closely linked to calcium ion reabsorption through the action of the **sodium-calcium exchanger** (NCX1). This exchanger, located on the basolateral membrane, facilitates the movement of three Na^+ ions into the cell in exchange for one calcium ion being transported out into the interstitial fluid. The driving force for this exchange is the electrochemical gradient of sodium, which is maintained by the sodium-potassium ATPase pump. This pump actively transports Na out of the cell and K^+ into the cell, ensuring a low intracellular Na^+ concentration. As a result, sodium passively enters the cell via NCX1, allowing for the extrusion of calcium ions against its concentration gradient. This secondary active transport mechanism is essential for calcium reabsorption into the bloodstream, as the removal of intracellular calcium facilitates further uptake from the tubular lumen. Thus, the coordinated action of the Na^+/K^+ ATPase and NCX1 ensures efficient sodium and calcium transport in the collecting duct (Figure 20).

PTH is a critical regulator of phosphate balance. When the body senses an increase in phosphate levels, PTH secretion is stimulated. PTH, in turn, acts on the proximal tubule to decrease phosphate reabsorption. A cAMP-mediated mechanism controls the reabsorption of phosphate in the proximal tubule. The action of PTH increases cAMP levels, which, in turn, modulate the reabsorption of phosphate. Elevated levels of PTH lead to decreased phosphate reabsorption, enhancing its excretion in the urine.

Regulation of Magnesium Ions

The kidneys play a central role in regulating magnesium ion concentrations in the body. The renal regulation of magnesium ions begins with their filtration at the glomerulus. Approximately 25 percent of the filtered magnesium ions are reabsorbed in the proximal tubule. PTH, a key regulator of magnesium balance, controls this reabsorption. The majority of magnesium reabsorption, roughly 65 percent, occurs in the loop of Henle. It is essential to understand that magnesium reabsorption in the loop of Henle is competitive with calcium ions. This interaction between magnesium and calcium ions is pivotal. An increase in blood calcium levels, hypercalcemia, leads to an increased excretion of magnesium ions, while hypermagnesemia results in increased calcium excretion. This delicate balance ensures that the body maintains appropriate levels of both ions.

The distal and collecting tubules play a relatively minor role in the reabsorption of magnesium ions, accounting for less than 5 percent of total magnesium reabsorption. The extent of reabsorption in this segment is influenced by various factors, including the body's overall magnesium balance and the presence of certain hormones, such as aldosterone.

Regulation of Hydrogen Ions, Bicarbonate, and pH

Chemical buffers, the respiratory system, and the kidneys maintain the body's acid-base balance. The kidneys play a significant

role in regulating blood pH by actively secreting hydrogen ions into the filtrate in the proximal tubule and by having intercalated cells secrete hydrogen ions into the urine in the collecting ducts, which are often buffered by bicarbonate, dihydrogen phosphate ions, or ammonia (Table 4). This process helps regulate blood pH within a normal range.

This page titled 11.10: Renal Electrolyte Regulation is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.11: Renal Regulation of Nitrogenous Wastes

Nitrogenous wastes are produced during the breakdown of proteins in metabolism. These wastes include ammonia, ammonium ions, urea, and uric acid. Ammonia is rapidly converted into urea in the liver due to its extreme toxicity. Human urine typically contains mainly urea, with smaller amounts of ammonium and minimal uric acid.

Urea is a major waste product that reflects the balance between protein catabolism, renal reabsorption, and selective excretion. Urea handling in the nephron is an intricate process closely linked to the regulation of water reabsorption and excretion. Approximately 50% of the urea filtered through the glomerulus is reabsorbed in the proximal tubule. This reabsorption sets the stage for a dynamic process of urea handling throughout the nephron. ADH plays a significant role in regulating urea permeability within the medullary collecting ducts. When ADH levels are elevated, the urea becomes more permeable in these ducts, allowing for greater urea reabsorption. Conversely, lower ADH levels lead to reduced urea permeability, resulting in increased urea excretion.

Excretion of urea is closely linked to the flow rate of urine. During dehydration, more water is reabsorbed in the renal tubules, reducing flow and increasing the reabsorption of urea, leading to concentrated urine. Conversely, when water intake is high, increased urine flow occurs, reducing the reabsorption of urea and resulting in higher urea excretion in dilute urine.[23]

This page titled 11.11: Renal Regulation of Nitrogenous Wastes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.12: Elimination of Drugs and Hormones by the Kidneys

Glomerular Filtration is the initial step in drug excretion. Small, water-soluble drugs can freely pass through the glomerular capillaries and enter the renal tubules during the filtration process. However, larger molecules, such as proteins, are generally unable to pass through the filtration barrier. Some drugs can be transported from the blood into the renal tubules, especially for certain acidic or basic drugs. For example, specific carrier proteins for basic drugs (e.g., organic cation transporters) and acidic drugs (e.g., organic anion transporters) facilitate their secretion from the blood into the urine. This process helps to eliminate drugs from the body more efficiently.

While filtration and secretion work to eliminate drugs, there is a possibility for some drugs to be reabsorbed back into the bloodstream as the filtrate passes through the renal tubules (Table 4). It is more likely to happen with small, non-polar drugs and high lipid solubility. Passive reabsorption can occur when a concentration gradient favors drug movement from the tubules back into the blood. The net result of these processes determines the amount of the drug that is ultimately excreted in the urine.[24]

Table 4 | *Substances Secreted or Reabsorbed in the Nephron and Their Locations* |

Substance	PCT	Loop of Henle	DCT	Collecting Ducts
Sodium ion	65% actively reabsorbed	25% reabsorbed in thick ascending limb; active transport	5% reabsorbed; active	5% reabsorbed, stimulated by aldosterone; active
Chloride ion	Reabsorbed symport with sodium ions	Reabsorbed in thin and thick ascending limb; diffusion in ascending limb	Reabsorbed, diffusion	Reabsorbed, symport
Water	67% reabsorbed osmotically with solutes	15% reabsorbed in descending limb	8% reabsorbed in ADH; osmosis	Variable amounts reabsorbed, controlled by ADH; Osmosis
Bicarbonate	(80 - 90)% symport absorption with sodium ions	Reabsorbed Symport with sodium and chloride ions		Reabsorbed antiport with chloride ions
Hydrogen ions	Secreted; Diffusion		Secreted; active	Secreted; active
Ammonia	Secreted; Diffusion		Secreted; Diffusion	Secreted; Diffusion
Some Drugs	Secreted		Secreted; active	Secreted; active

Substance	PCT	Loop of Henle	DCT	Collecting Ducts
Potassium ions	65% reabsorbed; Diffusion	20% reabsorbed in thick ascending limb; symport	Secreted; active	Secretion controlled by aldosterone; active
Calcium ions	Reabsorbed; Diffusion	Reabsorbed in thick ascending limb; diffusion		Reabsorbed If parathyroid hormone; active
Magnesium ions	Reabsorbed; Diffusion	Reabsorbed in thick ascending limb; diffusion	Reabsorbed	
Phosphate ions	85% reabsorbed; inhibited by parathyroid hormone		Reabsorbed; Diffusion	

This page titled 11.12: Elimination of Drugs and Hormones by the Kidneys is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.13: Diuretics

Diuretics are substances or medications that increase urine production, and they can be used for various medical purposes such as managing high blood pressure and reducing edema (fluid retention). By increasing urine output, diuretics help lower blood volume and decrease the workload on the heart, which can reduce blood pressure.

Caffeine is a natural diuretic found in coffee and tea. It promotes diuresis by stimulating vasodilation, especially in the renal blood vessels. This dilation increases the GFR, leading to increased urine production. Alcohol is another diuretic that inhibits the release of ADH. When inhibited by alcohol, ADH reduces water reabsorption, leading to increased urine volume, which can contribute to dehydration if alcohol is consumed in excess.[25]

This page titled 11.13: Diuretics is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.14: Physical Characteristics of Urine

Understanding the composition and characteristics of urine is essential in assessing overall health and diagnosing certain medical conditions. Urine volume varies depending on factors such as water intake, exercise, temperature, and nutrient consumption. The normal range is one to two liters per day, but the kidneys must produce a minimum urine volume of about 500 mL/day to eliminate waste. **Oliguria** is a term for significantly reduced urine output, while **anuria** is the virtual absence of urine. **Polyuria**, excessive urine production, may be due to conditions like diabetes mellitus.

The pH of urine can vary widely, from 4.5 to 8.0. Diet can influence pH, with meats and citrus fruits lowering pH and vegetables and dairy products raising it. Only trace amounts of protein (approximately 10 mg/100 mL) should be found in the urine. Excessive protein in the urine (**proteinuria**) often indicates glomerular damage, allowing proteins to leak into the filtrate.

The presence of ketones in the urine (**ketonuria**) suggests that the body uses fat as an energy source in greater amounts than normal and can be associated with conditions like diabetes mellitus. **Nitrates and Nitrites**: Nitrates occur naturally in urine and can be converted to nitrites by certain bacteria. Nitrites in the urine may indicate infection, as it is an indirect sign of bacterial metabolism.

There should be no blood in the urine. However, menstrual contamination may sometimes lead to the presence of blood in urine samples, which is not considered abnormal. Monitoring these characteristics and their changes can be essential to assessing and diagnosing various health conditions (Table 5).[26]

Table 5 | *Normal Urine Characteristics* |

Characteristic	Normal Values
Color	Pale yellow to deep amber
Odor	Odorless
Volume	750 - 2000 mL / 24 hr
pH	4.5 - 8.0
Specific Gravity	1.003 - 1.032
Osmolarity	40 - 1350 m Osmol / kg
Urobilinogen	0.2 - 1.0 mg / 100 mL
WBC	0 - 2 HPF (per high-power field of microscope)
Leukocyte Esterase	None

Characteristic	Normal Values
Protein	None or Trace
Bilirubin	< 0.3 mg / 100 mL
Ketones	None
Nitrites	None
Blood	None
Glucose	None

This page titled 11.14: Physical Characteristics of Urine is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.15: Measurement of Renal Plasma Flow

Renal plasma flow could be determined by introducing a substance and its clearance from the plasma. A frequently used agent for this purpose is **para-aminohippuric acid** (**PAH**). Approximately 90% of a small dose of PAH is cleared (filtered and secreted) within a single circulation of the kidney. As the extraction ratio is known, adequate renal plasma flow can be calculated once arterial and urinary PAH levels are determined, alongside the measurement of urinary volume.

$$\text{Renal Plasma Flow } = \frac{\text{Urinary PAH Level (mg/ml)} \times \text{ Urine Volume (ml/min)}}{\text{Plasma PAH Level (mg/ml)}}$$

Knowledge of the hematocrit makes it possible to estimate the total renal blood flow based on the renal plasma flow calculation. In a normal physiological state, the total renal blood flow is estimated to be approximately 1.2 liters of blood per minute.[27]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 11.15: Measurement of Renal Plasma Flow is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.16: Renal Clearance

A fundamental concept in understanding renal function is the concept of **renal clearance**, which quantifies the kidney's ability to remove a substance from the plasma. A simplified example involves a substance initially present at 1 mg/mL concentration in the plasma. When 1 mg of this substance is excreted in 1 minute, it is considered to have undergone complete clearance. This concept is particularly useful for substances that are freely filtered and not reabsorbed or secreted. Inulin is a classic example of such a marker. The glomerulus freely filters it and is neither significantly secreted nor reabsorbed in the renal tubules, making it an ideal representation of GFR. In clinical practice, however, creatinine clearance is frequently used as a proxy for GFR, although the PCT secretes a small amount of creatinine. This minor secretion does not significantly affect its utility as a clinical marker for estimating GFR.

When assessing substances that are subject to tubular reabsorption, it is essential to recognize that their renal plasma clearance will be less than the GFR. The GFR represents the total volume of plasma cleared of a given substance solely through glomerular filtration. In contrast, substances undergoing reabsorption are reabsorbed back into the bloodstream, reducing their overall clearance. For example, glucose, amino acids, and bicarbonate are crucial for maintaining metabolic balance and overall health. In the renal tubules, they are freely filtered at the glomerulus but extensively reabsorbed to prevent their loss in the urine. This reabsorptive process ensures that the body retains these vital substances, even as waste products are eliminated.

For substances that undergo both glomerular filtration and tubular secretion, their renal plasma clearance will exceed the GFR. In this case, the substance is not only filtered at the glomerulus but actively secreted into the renal tubules, which increases the volume of plasma from which it is eliminated. This process results in a renal plasma clearance greater than the GFR. Notable example is PAH. PAH is freely filtered at the glomerulus and secreted into the renal tubules. Its high clearance allows it to serve as a marker for effective renal plasma flow and provides a measure of the nephron's secretory capacity. This dual clearance mechanism is a key factor in eliminating waste products from the body.

Understanding renal clearance is vital in diagnosing and managing various kidney and metabolic disorders—the differential clearance rates of specific substances aid in assessing renal function. Measurement of creatinine clearance, for instance, is a standard method to estimate GFR and identify potential renal dysfunction. Elevated clearance rates for certain substances, such as PAH, might indicate altered renal blood flow or secretory capabilities, serving as early indicators of renal disease.

In clinical practice, the concept of renal clearance extends to pharmacology. The renal clearance of drugs significantly impacts their pharmacokinetics. Medications highly cleared by the kidneys may require dosage adjustments in patients with renal impairment to avoid toxic accumulation. In contrast, those with low renal clearance may necessitate monitoring to ensure therapeutic drug levels.[28]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 11.16: Renal Clearance is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

11.17: References

1. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 25.7 Kidneys.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/f15bca75f9c7a67465765179b4e03749012f1a7d

2. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 25.8 Left Kidney.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/ffe5ed4530aa183540afdd1c9b995f5246660b05

3. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 25.9 Blood Flow in the Kidney.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/1e6d63f8cf32a70217618e2e8afba94d703bc3d5

4. Michel Baum, Jyothsna Gattineni, Lisa M. Satlin, Chapter 27 - Postnatal Renal Development, Editor(s): Robert J. Alpern, Orson W. Moe, Michael Caplan, Seldin and Giebisch's The Kidney (Fifth Edition), Academic Press, 2013, Pages 911-931,ISBN 9780123814623,https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-381462-3.00027-6.

5. Fischer, H. (n.d.). **Urinary Tract Slide 20, 26** [Image]. Adapted by Wikipedia contributors as *File: Kidney Nephron*. In *Second Look Series: Medical Education Resources*. Open Michigan. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://en.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Kidney_Nephron.png

6. Gray, H. (1918). **File: Gray1130.svg** [Image]. In *Anatomy of the Human Body*. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://en.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gray1130.svg

7. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 25.12 Fenestrated Capillary.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/dce633c8201980abb222cce08ce6000a0a32f237c

8. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 25.11 Podocytes.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/1c093fadb62536b2a70e180aa6639b4c9d04ad1a

9. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 25.10 Blood Flow in the Nephron.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/c59df88561d292414221607c6704114a64a28c6b

10. Smith, J. (2015). Role of the Ascending Limb in Urinary Concentration. In D. Johnson (Ed.), *Handbook of Renal Physiology* (3rd ed., pp. 345-367). Elsevier. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-801238-3.00202-6

11. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 26.12 Aquaporins.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/7b965fe5e6f495cbfe9981ab7ff608671db402b7

12. Barajas L. Anatomy of the juxtaglomerular apparatus. Am J Physiol. 1979 Nov;237(5):F333-43. doi: 10.1152/ajprenal.1979.237.5.F333. PMID: 386808.

13. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 25.13 Juxtaglomerular Apparatus and Glomerulus.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/823528b0bbfd3d0b6c55e2cf7ae4c14af304dd73

14. Anatomy and Physiology in Nephrology. *Huppert's Notes: Pathophysiology and Clinical Pearls for Internal Medicine* Eds. Laura A. Huppert, and Timothy G. Dyster. McGraw Hill, 2021.https://accessmedicine.mhmedical.com...onid=257402565.

15. Madhero88. (n.d.). **Physiology of Nephron** [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Physiology_of_Nephron.svg

16. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 25.16 Net Filtration Pressure.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/6cf8d111e51f220202111eb8555736eea44a87f0

17. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 25.17 Locations of Secretion and Reabsorption in the Nephron.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/8c01f10a5830a25ba02270484e85385ae87fef0e

18. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 25.18 Substances Reabsorbed and Secreted by the PCT.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/50b987db044d6e4744f0d3fe9edd829396c21a48

19. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 25.19 Reabsorption of Bicarbonate from the PCT.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/0b2171866e581602d5b1bf941dec2294196d08e8

20. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 25.20 Countercurrent Multiplier System.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/eba3777c71567633192ca0dee6cc558d283711f6

21. Sahay M, Kalra S, Bandgar T. Renal endocrinology: The new frontier. Indian J Endocrinol Metab. 2012 Mar;16(2):154-5. doi: 10.4103/2230-8210.93729. PMID: 22470848; PMCID: PMC3313729.

22. Knepper, M. A., Kwon, O., & Nielsen, S. (2015). Molecular physiology of water balance. *American Journal of Physiology-Renal Physiology*, *309*(12), F1207-F1223.

https://doi.org/10.1152/ajprenal.00273.2015

23. Hall, J. E. (2020). *Guyton and Hall textbook of medical physiology* (14th ed.). Elsevier.

24. Renal Handling of Organic Solutes. *Vander's Renal Physiology, 9e* Eds. Douglas C. Eaton, and John P. Pooler. McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, https://accessmedicine.mhmedical.com/content.aspx?bookid=2348&sectionid=185664057.

25. cvpharmacology.com. (n.d.). *Diuretics*. Retrieved from https://cvpharmacology.com/diuretic/diuretics

26. Queremel Milani DA, Jialal I. Urinalysis. [Updated 2023 May 1]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from:https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK557685/

27. Schück, O. (1984). Renal Plasma and Blood Flow. In: Examination of Kidney Function. Developments in Nephrology, vol 4. Springer, Dordrecht. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-94-009-5660-5_3

28. Clearance and measures of renal function. Eaton D.C., & Pooler J.P.(Eds.), *Vander's Renal Physiology, 10th Edition*. McGraw Hill. https://accessmedicine.mhmedical.com...onid=276338373

This page titled 11.17: References is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

12: RESPIRATORY PHYSIOLOGY

12.1: Objectives
12.2: Introduction
12.3: Respiratory Anatomy
12.4: Mechanics of Breathing
12.5: Ventilation and Perfusion
12.6: Gas Exchange
12.7: Transport of Gases
12.8: Control of Breathing
12.9: References

This page titled 12: Respiratory Physiology is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

12.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- Describe how the respiratory system enables gas exchange, regulates acid-base balance, aids in olfaction, and supports sound production.
- Differentiate between the conducting and respiratory zones, identify key structures within each, and explain their roles in air passage, filtration, humidification, and gas exchange.
- Outline the protective features of the respiratory system, including the mucous lining, nasal hair, and mucociliary transport, and explain their importance in respiratory health.
- Recognize and label the three main regions of the pharynx and the compartments of the larynx, and describe their functions in respiration, phonation, and airway protection.
- Identify different types of respiratory epithelium, their specialized roles, and how they support mucociliary clearance and trap foreign particles.
- Describe the location, structure, and role of the trachea, including its components like hyaline cartilage and the fibroelastic membrane.
- Explain the classification of the trachea and bronchi within the airway system, emphasizing the generation-based hierarchy leading to alveolar sacs.
- Discuss the anatomy of the primary and secondary bronchi, the significance of the carina, and the bronchial branching within the lungs.
- Outline the lung structure, focusing on lobes, the hilum, bronchioles, and the alveolar network essential for gas exchange.
- Differentiate between Type I and Type II alveolar cells, describing their contributions to surfactant production, alveolar stability, and gas exchange.
- Illustrate the dual blood supply system, detailing bronchial and pulmonary circulation and its role in respiratory and metabolic support.
- Explain factors like gravitational influence, vascular recruitment, and resistance affecting pulmonary blood flow and gas exchange efficiency.
- Describe the autonomic nervous system's role in controlling airway diameter through parasympathetic and sympathetic inputs.
- Describe the cellular structure of the gas exchange barrier in the lungs.
- Describe the sequence of events during inspiration and expiration.
- Explain how diaphragm contraction and Boyle's law predict normal breathing.
- Explain how pressure influences airflow during ventilation.
- Define lung volumes and lung capacities.
- Explain the importance of Forced Expiratory Volume in 1 second (FEV1) and provide normal values.
- Explain how surfactant presence affects forces related to lung inflation and deflation.

- Discuss whether surfactant increases or decreases these forces.
- Describe ventilation-perfusion coupling.
- Explain its importance in regulating blood flow and airflow locally.
- Explain the factors determining the partial pressure of gases.
- Provide normal values for PCO2 and PO2 in various physiological compartments.
- Trace the journey of an oxygen molecule from the atmosphere to a cell and back out as CO2.
- Describe factors favoring oxygen binding and dissociation by hemoglobin.
- Interpret the oxygen-hemoglobin dissociation curve, including the effects of pH, temperature, CO2, and O2. Explain the significance of P50.
- Explain the transport of oxygen and carbon dioxide within the blood.
- State the percentages of oxygen and carbon dioxide transported in different forms in the blood.
- Describe the fate of most hydrogen ions formed in erythrocytes from carbonic acid.
- Explain the chloride shift and the reverse chloride shift.
- Discuss their significance and the role of chloride in these processes.
- Discuss the neural centers that regulate breathing.
- Explain the roles of central and peripheral chemoreceptors in ventilation regulation, considering changes in pCO2, pO2, and pH.
- Discuss the Hering-Breuer reflex and its role in breathing regulation.
- Describe adaptations observed when a person is exposed to high altitudes.

This page titled 12.1: Objectives is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.2: Introduction

Every cell within the human body, except for red blood cells, demands a dedicated supply of oxygen to fuel the oxidative reactions of cellular respiration. Cellular respiration is the fundamental process through which the body generates energy in the form of ATP. Simultaneously, this process produces carbon dioxide as a metabolic waste product that must be efficiently eliminated from the body. The respiratory system fulfills a critical role by facilitating this intricate exchange of gases. It accomplishes this through a two-step process: **inspiration** (or **inhalation**), which allows the intake of oxygen, and **expiration** (or **exhalation**), which expels carbon dioxide.

While its primary function lies in the exchange of gases, the respiratory system also plays a vital role in maintaining the body's acid-base balance. The rate at which we breathe directly influences the level of carbon dioxide retained in the body, subsequently affecting the concentrations of hydrogen ions and the pH of bodily fluids. Beyond gas exchange and acid-base balance, the respiratory system boasts other important functions. For instance, it contributes to the sense of **olfaction** or the ability to smell. The epithelial lining in the upper nasal cavity contains olfactory receptors that allow for the perception of various scents. Furthermore, the respiratory system serves as an integral component in the production of sound. This process involves the **vocal cords**, which are situated within the larynx, a part of the respiratory tract. The mucous lining that coats the respiratory tract plays a crucial role in the body's defense mechanisms, as it continuously produces mucus to protect against foreign invaders. Additionally, the **tonsils**, located in the pharynx, contribute further to the body's immune defenses by providing an additional line of protection against microorganisms.

This page titled 12.2: Introduction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.3: Respiratory Anatomy

The respiratory system is comprised of a continuous tract, which is organized into two distinct areas: the **conducting zone** and the **respiratory zone**. The conducting zone comprises anatomical structures such as the **nose**, **pharynx**, **larynx**, **trachea**, and **bronchi**. These components serve to facilitate the passage of incoming and outgoing air, as well as to filter debris and pathogens. Moreover, they contribute to the warming and humidification of inhaled air. However, they are not directly involved in gas exchange. Conversely, the respiratory zone is the region where gas exchange takes place. It encompasses the deeper sections of the **bronchial tree**, housing the **respiratory bronchioles** and **alveoli**, which constitute the majority of the lung tissue (Figure 1). Yet another way to organize the respiratory tract is to divide the structures into upper and lower airways.

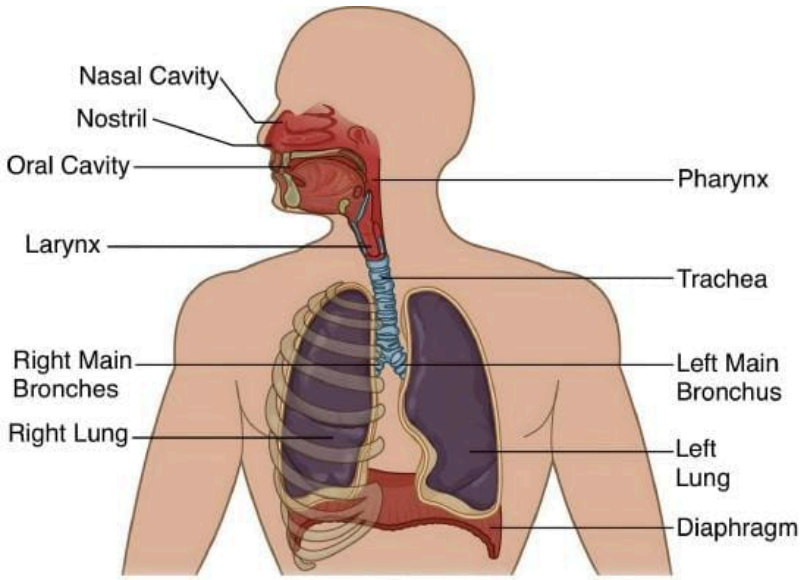


Figure 1 | Respiratory Tract |[1] The image illustrates the major structures of the human respiratory system. Air enters through the nostrils and passes into the nasal cavity and oral cavity before traveling through the pharynx. It then passes the larynx and flows into the trachea, which branches into the right and left main bronchi that lead to the respective right and left lungs. The diaphragm, located beneath the lungs, plays a key role in breathing by contracting and expanding the chest cavity, allowing air to be drawn in and expelled.

The Nose

The primary entry and exit points for the respiratory system are located in the nose.

The **external nose** comprises surface and skeletal structures contributing to its various functions. Between the eyebrows lies the root of the nose, connecting to the rest of the nose through the bridge. The length of the nose, known as the **dorsum nasi**, extends to the apex or tip. The **ala**, a cartilaginous structure, forms the lateral side of each naris (nostril), while the **philtrum** creates a concave surface linking the nose's apex to the upper lip. While the root and bridge of the nose comprise bone structures, the prominent part of the nose is primarily cartilage (Figure 2). The **alar cartilage** encompasses the nose's apex and the naris, while the **septal cartilage**, a flexible hyaline cartilage, forms the dorsum nasi, connecting to the nasal bone. **Nostrils** or **nares** are the anterior nasal apertures opening into the right and left nasal cavities.

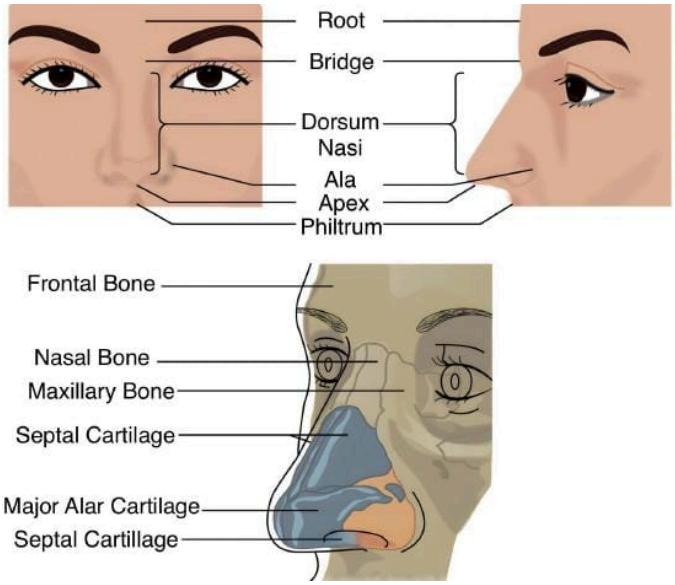


Figure 2 | Nose |[2] External and skeletal features of the nose. This illustration provides an anatomical overview of the external nose and nasal cartilage. The top panel highlights surface landmarks, including the root, which is located between the eyebrows, and the bridge that connects the root to the rest of the nose. The dorsum nasi runs down the middle of the nose, ending at the apex, or tip of the nose. The ala forms the outer walls of the nostrils, and the philtrum is the vertical groove between the nose and upper lip. The lower panel focuses on the skeletal structure and cartilage of the nose. It shows the frontal bone, nasal bone, and maxillary bone, which support the upper portion of the nose. The septal cartilage separates the nostrils, while the major alar cartilage shapes the nostrils and tip of the nose.

The nasal cavity is divided into left and right sections by the **nasal septum**, formed anteriorly by the septal cartilage and posteriorly by the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid bone and the vomer bones (Figure 3). The nasal cavity is organized into three distinct parts: the **vestibule** (dilated space inside the nares), the **respiratory zone** (large central portion), and the **olfactory region** (small superior part housing olfactory receptors). Lateral walls of the nasal cavity house three bony projections termed **nasal conchae**. These conchae, named **superior**, **middle**, and **inferior**, increase the nasal cavity's surface area and disrupt airflow for filtering and warming. The conchae and meatuses between them retain moisture and prevent dehydration. The floor of the nasal cavity is composed of the **palate**, consisting of the **hard palate** in the anterior region and the **soft palate** in the posterior part (Figure 3). Posterior nasal aperture, **choanae**, connects nasal cavities posteriorly with the nasopharynx.[3]

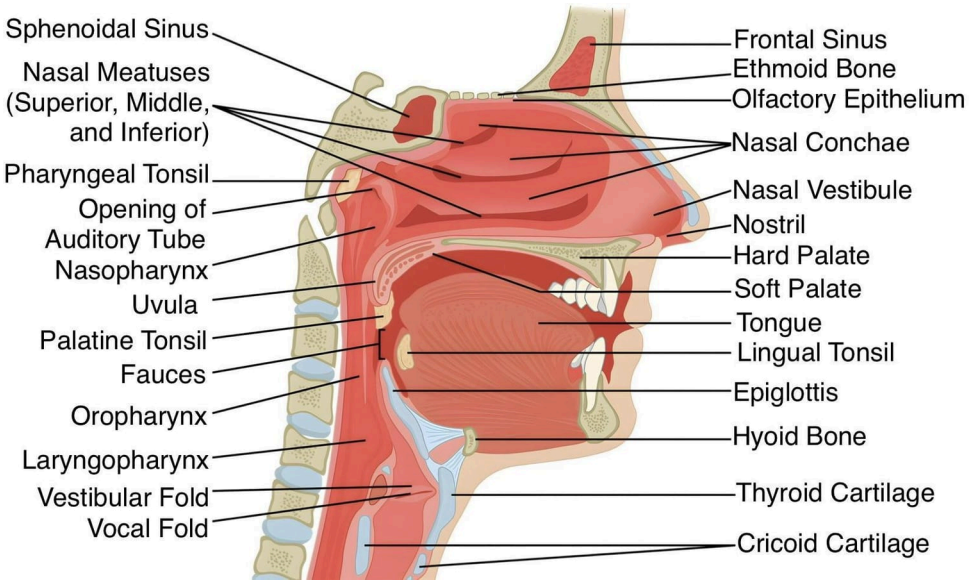


Figure 3 | Sagittal view of the Nose and Pharynx | [4] This diagram provides a sagittal view of the head and neck, highlighting key

structures of both the upper respiratory and digestive tracts. In the nasal cavity, the nasal vestibule, conchae, and the superior, middle, and inferior nasal meatuses are shown, illustrating the pathway for filtering and conditioning inhaled air. The oral cavity includes the hard and soft palate, tongue, and palatine tonsil, all of which are involved in both respiratory and digestive functions. The pharynx is divided into three regions: the nasopharynx, oropharynx, and laryngopharynx, serving as a shared passageway for air and food. In the larynx, structures such as the vestibular and vocal folds, along with the thyroid and cricoid cartilage, are essential for voice production and protecting the airway during swallowing. Additionally, the image includes the frontal and sphenoidal sinuses, olfactory epithelium for the sense of smell, and the opening of the auditory tube, which helps equalize pressure in the ear.

The nerve supply to the nasal cavity is chiefly governed by two branches of the trigeminal nerve: the **anterior ethmoidal nerve** and the **maxillary branch** (Figure 4). The anterior ethmoidal nerve, a part of the ophthalmic branch of the trigeminal nerve, supplies sensation to the anterior third of the septum and the lateral wall of the nasal cavity. Meanwhile, the posterior two-thirds of the septum and the lateral wall of the nasal cavity receives sensory innervation from the maxillary branch of the trigeminal nerve. This extensive innervation helps to regulate sensory perception and responses in various regions of the nasal cavity.

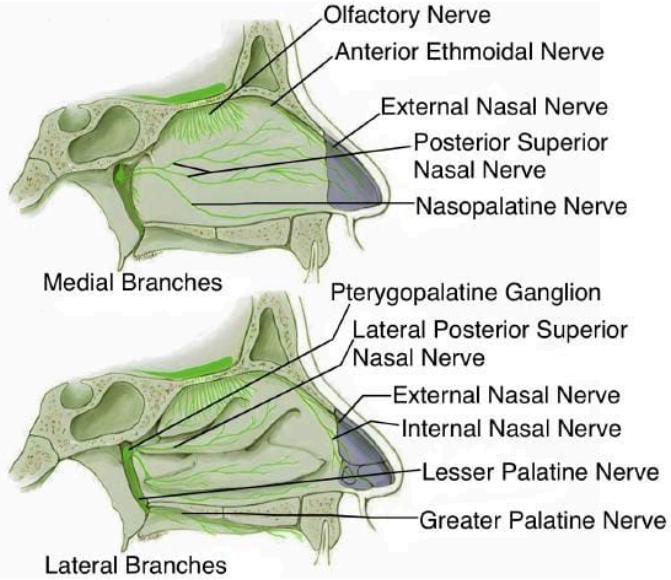


Figure 4 | Innervation of the Nasal Cavity | [5] Anatomical depiction of the nasal nerve innervations, showing both medial and lateral branches. In the top image, the medial branches are highlighted, including the olfactory nerve, anterior ethmoidal nerve, external nasal nerve, posterior superior nasal nerve, and nasopalatine nerve. The bottom image focuses on the lateral branches, displaying the pterygopalatine ganglion, lateral posterior superior nasal nerve, external nasal nerve, internal nasal nerve, lesser palatine nerve, and greater palatine nerve.

The nasal mucous membranes benefit from a complex vascular structure comprising the **ophthalmic**, **maxillary**, and **facial arteries**. The **anterior and posterior ethmoidal arteries**, stemming from the ophthalmic artery, provide circulation to the upper part of the nasal septum and the lateral nasal walls. Meanwhile, the **sphenopalatine artery**, a division of the maxillary artery, delivers blood flow to the rear portion of the nasal septum and the lateral nasal wall. Additionally, branches originating from the **greater palatine artery**, part of the maxillary artery, serve the lower rear section of the lateral nasal wall. Furthermore, the septal branch of the **superior labial artery**, which belongs to the facial artery, nourishes the front lower part of the septum. This extensive network ensures a robust and comprehensive blood supply throughout the nasal cavity.[6]

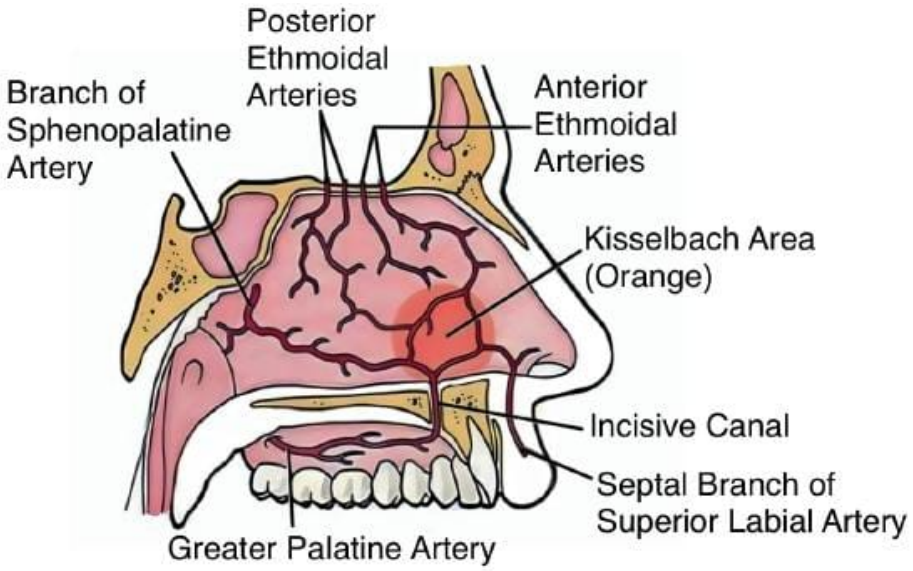


Figure 5 | Blood Supply to the Nasal Cavity |[7] Anatomical diagram illustrating the arterial supply to the nasal cavity. The image highlights key arteries, including the posterior ethmoidal arteries, anterior ethmoidal arteries, branch of sphenopalatine artery, greater palatine artery, and septal branch of the superior labial artery. The Kisselbach Area (Little's Area), marked in orange, is emphasized as a common site for anterior nosebleeds (epistaxis). The incisive canal is also labeled, indicating its anatomical relevance to arterial connections in the nasal septum.

Paranasal Sinuses

The paranasal sinuses are air-filled cavities within skull bones that contribute to the structure of the nasal cavity's walls, playing a role in the warming and humidification of incoming air. Each sinus is named after the specific skull bone in which it resides: the **frontal sinus**, **maxillary sinus**, **sphenoidal sinus**, and **ethmoidal sinus** (Figure 6). The linings of these sinuses, along with the conchae meatuses, consist of **pseudostratified ciliated columnar epithelium** (Figure 7). This epithelial lining includes goblet cells that generate mucus. In addition to mucus, serous and mucus-producing cells secrete **lysozyme** and **defensins**, proteins possessing antibacterial properties. These components are involved in protecting the respiratory system against potential infections and maintaining its optimal condition.[8]

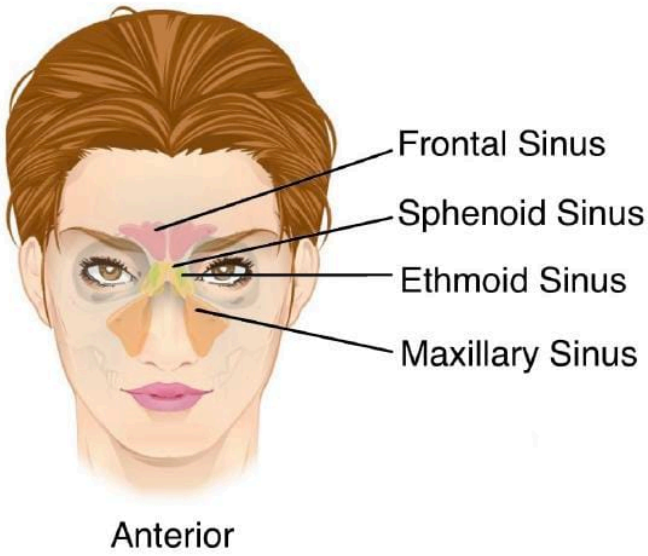


Figure 6 | Paranasal Sinuses | [9] The paranasal sinuses are air-filled spaces located within the bones surrounding the nasal

cavity, including the frontal, ethmoid, sphenoidal, and maxillary bones. These sinuses are shown in the anatomical diagram and are lined with a mucous membrane that helps humidify and warm inhaled air, as well as lighten the weight of the skull. Each sinus is connected to the nasal cavity through small openings, allowing mucus drainage and air circulation.

Humidification and Filtration of Inspired Gases

In addition to their primary role as passageways for air, the respiratory passages serve crucial functions for inspired air—warming, humidifying, and filtering. The epithelial lining contributes significantly to the warming and humidification of incoming air, where capillaries beneath the nasal epithelium help warm the air through convection. Consequently, by the time air reaches the alveoli, it is already at body temperature and fully saturated. However, these functions can be impacted by general anesthesia, causing dryness in the respiratory tract.

As air passes through the **nasal hair** (**vibrissae**), larger particles (over 10 microns) become impacted at the nasal septum and meatuses, while smaller particles (2 to 10 microns) are removed by impaction and sedimentation in the upper and lower airways. The ciliated columnar epithelial cells in the respiratory tract, each with around 200 cilia, create a wave-like motion that propels mucus toward the pharynx for swallowing. This mucociliary clearance is slower in the intrapulmonary airways compared to the major bronchi or trachea, especially in cold conditions. In the upper respiratory tract, the mucous layer moves in the opposite direction but is directed towards the pharynx, accelerated by movements such as coughing or sneezing.

The vital role of these mucoid layers becomes evident when the upper respiratory tract is bypassed by endotracheal tube insertion and administration of dry gasses, leading to **hyperemia** (increased blood flow) and degeneration of the respiratory epithelium. Dryness and increased mucus viscosity result in crust formation and airway obstruction, potentially causing **atelectasis** (collapse) and increased lung blood shunting. General anesthetics, dry gasses, cuffed endotracheal tubes, or dehydration can depress the mucociliary transport mechanism, which can also be impacted by cold air, high oxygen concentrations, noxious gases, and respiratory infections. Prolonged nasotracheal intubation might lead to sinus infections due to subsequent nasal sinus obstruction. On the other hand, mucus secretion is inhibited by anticholinergic agents to increase the effectiveness of local anesthesia.[10]

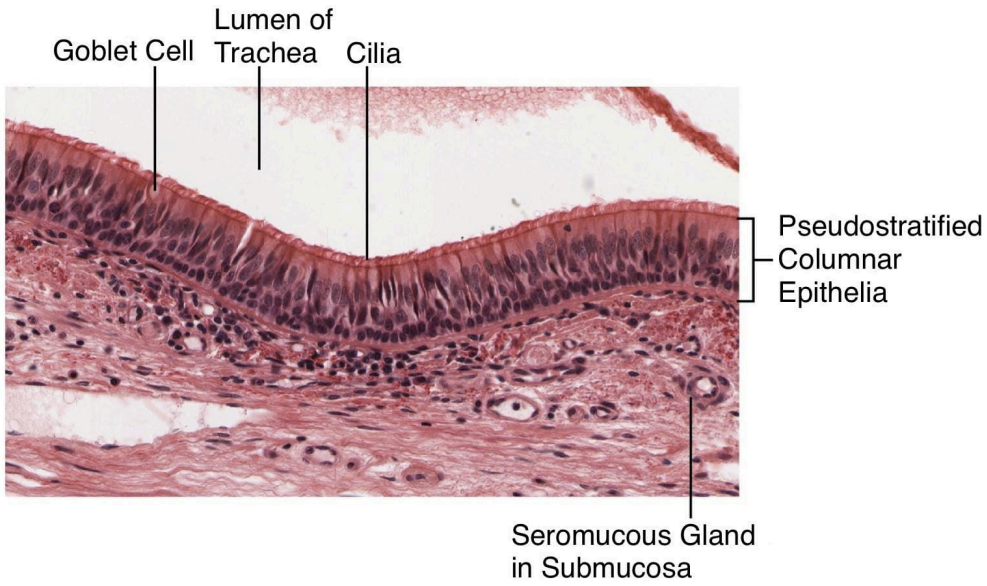


Figure 7 | Pseudostratified Ciliated Columnar Epithelium | [11] Histological section of the tracheal wall showing its characteristic layers. The pseudostratified columnar Epithelia line the lumen, with cilia on the apical surface aiding in mucociliary clearance. Goblet cells are interspersed among the epithelial cells, secreting mucus into the lumen of the trachea. Below the epithelium, seromucous glands in the submucosa contribute to mucus production.

The Pharynx

The pharynx is a continuous cavity surrounded by skeletal muscles and lined with a mucous membrane that connects to the nasal cavities (see Figure 3). It extends from the base of the skull to the level of the C6 vertebra and consists of three main regions:

the **nasopharynx**, **oropharynx**, and **laryngopharynx**.

The nasopharynx primarily functions as an airway. The pharyngeal tonsil, also known as the **adenoid**, lies at the upper portion of the nasopharynx. It tends to be more prominent in children but regresses with age. The **uvula**, a teardrop-shaped structure, is the continuation of the soft palate and moves during swallowing to close off the nasopharynx and prevent material from entering the nasal cavity. Additionally, the **auditory** (**Eustachian** or **oropharyngeal**) tubes connect the middle ear cavity to the nasopharynx.

The oropharynx, adjacent to the oral cavity, serves as a passage for both air and food. This region experiences a transition from pseudostratified ciliated columnar epithelium to stratified squamous epithelium. It houses two tonsil sets, the **palatine** and **lingual tonsils**, which trap and destroy pathogens from the oral or nasal cavities. The palatine tonsils are situated laterally at the fauces, while the lingual tonsils are located at the base of the tongue.

The laryngopharynx is located beneath the oropharynx and behind the larynx, acting as a shared passage for both air and food until it reaches its endpoint, where the digestive and respiratory systems separate. The stratified squamous epithelium of the oropharynx extends into the laryngopharynx. This region opens into the larynx anteriorly and connects to the esophagus posteriorly.[3]

The Larynx

The larynx, a complex anatomical structure critical for respiration, vocalization, and airway protection, extends from the anterior aspect of the C3 to C6 vertebrae. Its primary function includes protecting the lower airway by closure to prevent the ingress of foreign matter. Swallowing prompts the pharynx and larynx to elevate, expanding the pharynx while the epiglottis moves downward, effectively sealing the tracheal opening and avoiding food entry into the larynx. Although not a part of the larynx, the hyoid bone provides essential support for laryngeal motion during respiration and phonation, serving as a pivotal landmark for laryngoscopy evaluation. The **vallecula**, situated between the base of the tongue and the epiglottis, serves as a crucial reference point during medical procedures involving laryngoscope insertion. The **pyriform fossa** is a sinus in the orifice of the larynx where lodging of foreign bodies or a non-centered endotracheal tube is common.

The larynx is divided into three compartments: **supraglottic**, **glottic**, and **subglottic**. Supraglottic (vestibule) portion is above **false vocal cords** to the tip of the epiglottis. The **glottis** is the opening at the superior part of the larynx and is composed of **vestibular folds**, or a false vocal cord. Subglottic portion is below the **true vocal cords** and above the beginning of the trachea. The lining transitions from stratified squamous epithelium in the superior region to pseudostratified ciliated columnar epithelium, aiding mucus production to trap foreign elements entering the trachea. The specialized epithelium, similar to the nasal cavity and nasopharynx, helps clear debris and pathogens by moving mucus toward the laryngopharynx for swallowing.

The larynx is made of three single cartilages and three small paired cartilages (Figure 8). The **thyroid cartilage** is the largest cartilage that makes up the larynx and is referred to as the **Adam's apple**. The **epiglottis** is a fibroelastic cartilage that is attached to the thyroid cartilage through thyroepiglottic ligament above vocal cords and to the base of the tongue by glossoepiglottic fold and covers the opening of the trachea. When it is in the "closed" position, the unattached end of the epiglottis rests on the glottis. **Cricoid cartilage** forms a ring around the larynx with a wide posterior region and a thinner anterior region. It is palpable just below the thyroid gland. The position of the cricoid cartilage matches the beginning of the trachea and esophagus and is a landmark for laryngotracheal anesthesia (local anesthesia) and surgical airway for tracheostomy. Any incisions or needle punctures to the cricothyroid membrane should be made in its inferior third and be directed posteriorly because of the neurovascular bundle that runs along the superior margin of the cricoid cartilage. The three smaller, paired cartilages are the **arytenoids**, **corniculates**, and **cuneiforms**. The arytenoid cartilages articulate on the superior posterior aspect of the cricoid cartilage. They are attached to the posterior ends of the vocal cords and move them up and down and rotate. Corniculate cartilages are positioned more medially and cuneiform cartilages are situated more laterally and are embedded in the aryepiglottic folds.[3]

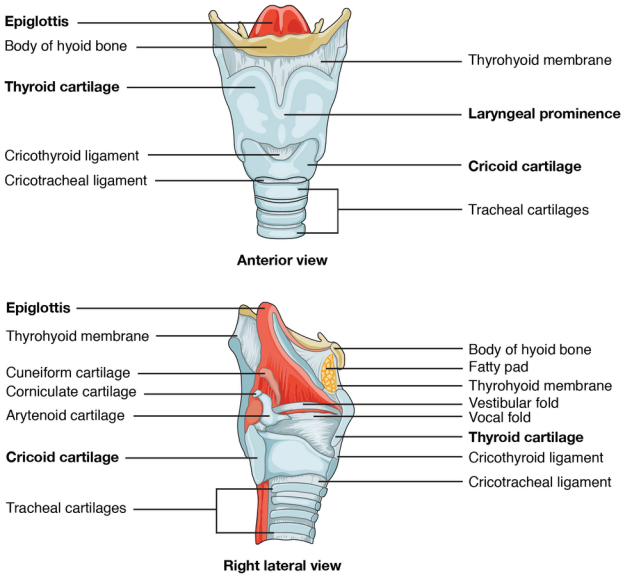


Figure 8 | Anterior and Lateral Views of the Larynx |[12] This diagram illustrates the key anatomical structures of the larynx including cartilages, ligaments, highlighting their arrangements and relationships, presented in both anterior and right lateral views.

The true vocal cord, a membranous fold connecting to the thyroid and arytenoid cartilages (Figure 9), allows for sound production by oscillation. Variations in the size of these folds among individuals contribute to different pitch ranges of voices. The narrowest portion of the adult airway is between the vocal cords. In children below 10 years of age, the narrowest part is just below the vocal cords at the cricoid cartilage. Folds in males tend to be larger compared to those in females, which creates a deeper voice. Anterior-posterior dimension is 23 mm in the male and 17 mm in the female. Mechanoreceptors play a role in regulating air pressure by influencing vocal cord abduction during inhalation and adduction during exhalation to prevent alveolar collapse.

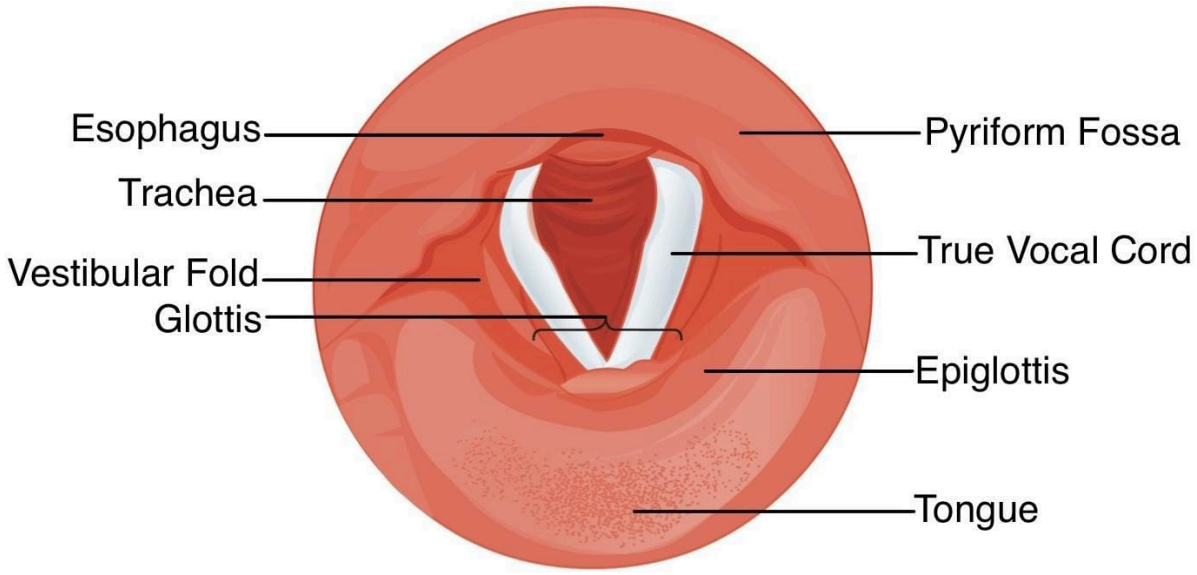


Figure 9 | Vocal Cords | [13] The true vocal cords and vestibular folds of the larynx are viewed inferiorly from the laryngopharynx.

Numerous intrinsic and extrinsic ligaments, along with skeletal muscles within the larynx, maintain the positioning of laryngeal cartilages. Intrinsic muscles of the larynx include **aryepiglottic** and **oblique arytenoid** muscles which help close the laryngeal inlet whereas **thyroepiglottic muscle** helps open the same. The glottic opening is through **posterior cricoarytenoid muscles** and its closing is by the **transverse arytenoid** and the **lateral** cricoarytenoid muscles. **Cricothyroid muscles** are important in lengthening the true vocal cords and thyroarytenoid muscles help reduce the length of these folds. The muscles within the

larynx include **aryepiglottic**, **thyroepiglottic**, **cricoarytenoid**, **interarytenoid**, **cricothyroid**, and **thyroarytenoid**. Their roles are summarized in the table below (**Table 1**).

Table 1 | *Skeletal Muscles of the Larynx and Their Functions* |

Intrinsic Muscle	Function
Aryepiglottic	Closes laryngeal inlet
Thyroepiglottic	Opens laryngeal inlet
Posterior cricoarytenoid	Widens cricoid opening (abducts vocal cords)
Lateral cricoarytenoid	Adducts vocal cords
Interarytenoid	Closes cricoid opening
Cricothyroid	Alter tension by lengthening vocal cords
Thyroarytenoid	reduce tension by shortening vocal cords (relaxation)

The nerves responsible for laryngeal function include the **superior** and **recurrent laryngeal nerves**, branches of the vagus nerve. Superior laryngeal nerve branches as **internal** and **external** where the external branch supplies the inferior constrictor muscle of the pharynx and also to the cricothyroid muscles (Figure 10). The internal branch innervates the interarytenoid muscles which are important in phonation. It carries sensory signals from the epiglottis, base of the tongue, supraglottic mucosa, aryepiglottic folds, arytenoids, thyroepiglottic joint, and cricothyroid joint.

The recurrent laryngeal nerve gets its name due to its nature of forming a loop. The **left branch** loops around the aorta whereas the **right branch** loops around the brachiocephalic artery (Figure 10). The recurrent laryngeal nerve supplies sensation to the larynx below the level of the vocal cords and innervates all the muscles of the larynx except the cricothyroid and part of the interarytenoid muscles. Both superior and recurrent laryngeal nerves can be vulnerable to injury during certain procedures due to their proximity to the thyroid gland. Damage to these nerves could lead to issues such as hoarseness. Airway devices or anesthetic blocks can lead to damage to recurrent laryngeal nerves which in turn could cause unilateral or bilateral vocal cord paralysis, hoarseness and dyspnea.

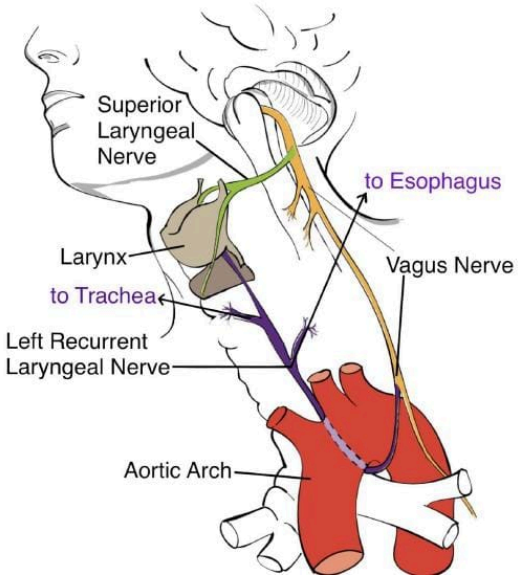


Figure 10 | Innervation of the Larynx | [14] The diagram illustrates the pathway of the vagus nerve and its branches, specifically highlighting the superior and recurrent laryngeal nerves and their role in innervating the larynx. The looping of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve around the aortic arch is also clearly depicted.

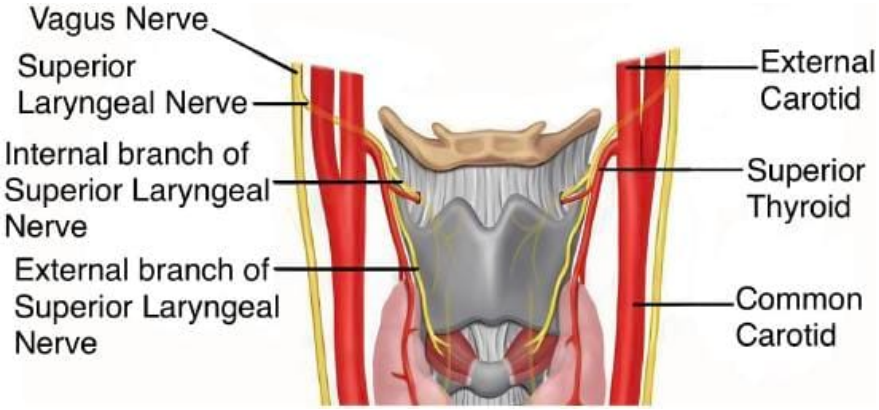


Figure 11 | Nerve Supply to the Larynx showing Branches of the Superior Laryngeal Nerve | [15] The diagram illustrates the role of the vagus nerve and its superior laryngeal branches in controlling laryngeal function. It highlights the distinct sensory and motor functions of the internal and external branches, respectively.

Table 2 | *Motor and Sensory Innervation of the Larynx* |

Nerve	Sensory	Motor
Superior laryngeal nerve (SLN; internal division)	A branch of the vagus nerve; provides sensation to the epiglottis, base of the tongue, supraglottic mucosa, aryepiglottic folds, arytenoids, thyroepiglottic joint, and cricothyroid joint; important in phonation	
SLN (external division)		A branch of the vagus nerve; supplies cricothyroid muscle

Nerve	Sensory	Motor
Recurrent (inferior) laryngeal nerve	A branch of the vagus nerve; provides sensation to the subglottic mucosa and trachea	Supplies all muscles of the larynx except cricothyroid muscle

The larynx receives blood from the **superior thyroid artery**, a branch of the external carotid artery, and the **cricothyroid artery**, a branch of the superior thyroid artery, both of which run through the upper part of the cricothyroid membrane. Stretching these vessels can lead to hoarseness.[16]

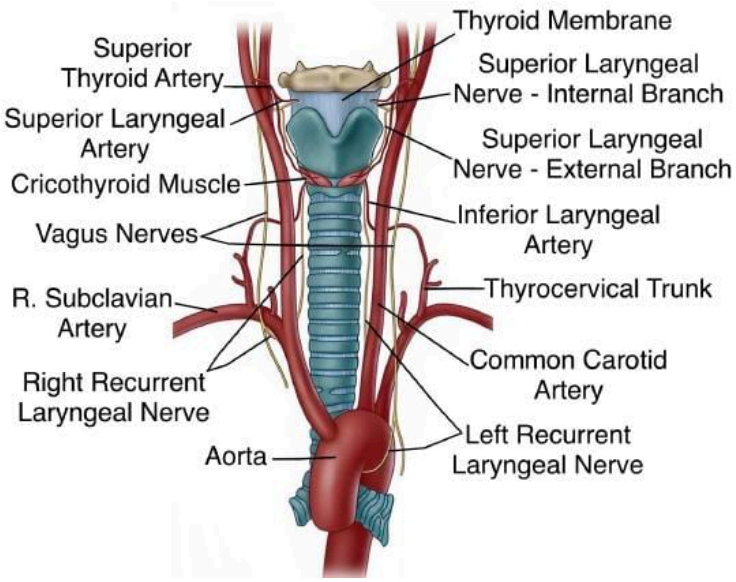


Figure 12 | Blood Supply to the Larynx | [17] This diagram illustrates the arterial blood supply to the larynx and its associated structures.

The Trachea

The trachea, commonly known as the windpipe, extends from the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage, aligning with the level of the sixth cervical vertebra, and extends towards the lungs, slightly inclining to the right. Measuring approximately 12 centimeters in length with an internal diameter of 12 millimeters, it displays variations between genders, being narrower in females than in males. Its structural integrity is attributed to 16 to 20 C-shaped hyaline cartilages interconnected by connective tissue (Figure 13).

Crucial to the trachea's design is the fibroelastic membrane, constituted by the **trachealis muscle** and elastic connective tissue, effectively closing the trachea's posterior surface. This membrane allows the trachea to stretch and contract slightly during the breathing cycle. The C-shaped cartilages primarily offer structural reinforcement, preventing the trachea from collapsing while maintaining an open passageway for air. Additionally, the trachealis muscle can contract to propel air during exhalation.[18]

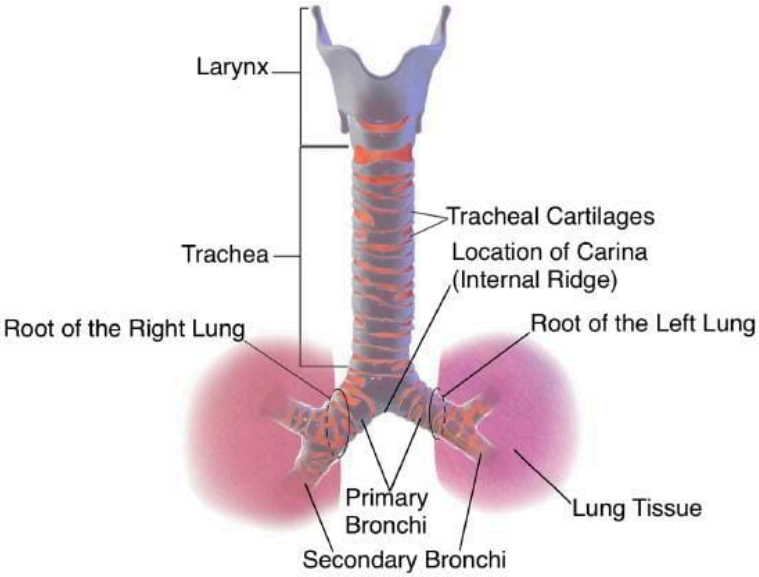


Figure 13 | Trachea and Primary Bronchi | [19] This diagram illustrates the structural features of the upper respiratory tract, including the cartilaginous rings of the trachea and the branching pattern of the primary and secondary bronchi.

The trachea, considered part of the lower respiratory tract, forms the base of the airway hierarchy. It is designated as the "zero generation," while the **primary bronchi**, branching from it, are classified as the first generation in the airway system. With subsequent branchings into bronchi and bronchioles, the terminal generation is represented by the **alveolar sacs**, forming the twenty-third generation (Figure 14). This hierarchical classification illustrates the progressive branching of the airway, highlighting the trachea's fundamental role as a conduit for the subsequent generations in the respiratory system.|[20]

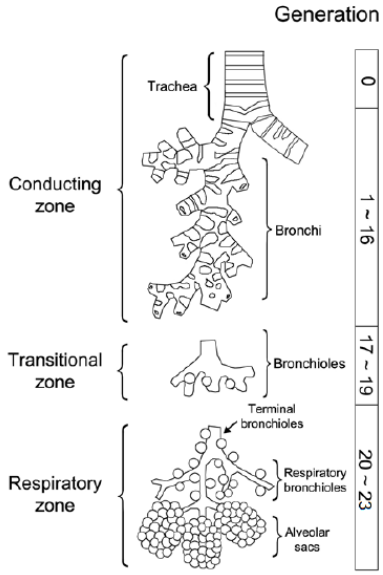


Figure 14 | Schematic representation of the subdivisions of the conducting airways and respiratory Units |[21] The diagram illustrates the hierarchical branching of the airways and the functional differences between the conducting, transitional, and respiratory zones. The generation numbers provide a quantitative representation of the airway branching pattern.

Bronchial Tree

Primary Bronchi

The bronchial tree is an intricate branching system that facilitates air passage from its appearance as the bifurcation of the trachea and extending throughout the lungs. At the critical junction known as the **carina** (Figure 13), at the level of T4 to T5, the trachea divides into two **primary bronchi**, demarcating the commencement of the lower respiratory pathways. The anatomical structure at this point of bifurcation exhibits notable asymmetry. The right primary bronchus tends to be broader and more aligned with the tracheal axis than its left counterpart. Consequently, foreign bodies, endotracheal tubes, or suction catheters are predisposed to follow a path into the right bronchus more readily than the left. Notably, the carina, a raised ridge marking this division, contains specialized nerve tissue, contributing to a potent cough reflex if any foreign body, such as food, intrudes into the airway.

The lining of the trachea and primary bronchi is composed of pseudostratified ciliated columnar epithelium (Figure 7). Goblet cells in this lining secrete mucus, playing a role in entrapping and expelling foreign particles. Like the trachea, the primary bronchi are fortified by rings of cartilage that confer structural reinforcement, thereby averting their collapse.[3]

Bronchial Tree and the Lungs

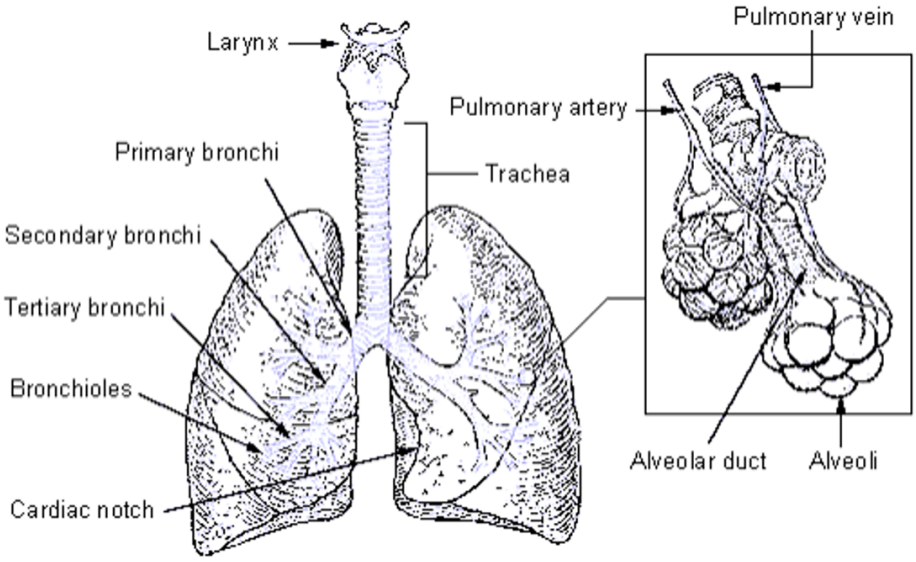


Figure 15 | The Bronchial Tree and the Lungs |[22] The diagram emphasizes the hierarchical branching of the bronchial tree, which facilitates the efficient delivery of air to the alveoli. The inset box provides a magnified view of the alveoli, highlighting their role in gas exchange.

The lungs are the primary organs for gas exchange, enabling the vital process of respiration. They consist of a complex network of airways, conducting passages, and specialized tissue essential for efficient pulmonary function. **The hilum** is situated on the medial aspect of each lung. It is a concave region where the primary bronchi, blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, and nerves enter or exit the lungs. The lungs are divided into distinct lobes: the right lung contains three lobes (upper, middle, and lower), while the left has two lobes (upper and lower). Each lobe has one branch of the secondary bronchi. As primary bronchi continue through the lungs, they are referred to as **secondary bronchi**, which will subsequently branch into **tertiary bronchi** and **bronchioles**. As branching continues, the bronchi become progressively smaller. The tertiary bronchi exhibit a reduction in cartilage and goblet cells, transitioning to a columnar epithelium without cilia, allowing greater air exchange.

Bronchioles are minute airways of about 1 mm in diameter that lack cartilage and are primarily composed of smooth muscle. This muscular wall can change the size of the tubing to increase or decrease airflow through the tube. Because of the loss of the cartilage layer, they would likely be compressed were it not for the fact that they are embedded in the lung parenchyma in which the elastic recoil of the alveolar septa keeps them open. Therefore, the caliber of the bronchioles is directly related to

lung volumes. Bronchioles branch further until they become very small **terminal bronchioles**. There are more than 1000 terminal bronchioles in each lung. The terminal bronchioles mark the conclusion of the conducting airways, as beyond this point, the **respiratory bronchioles** emerge, which participate in gas exchange. The terminal ends of the bronchial tree lead to an **alveolar duct** opening into a cluster of alveoli, where the crucial exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide occurs (Figure 15). These tiny air sacs are surrounded by an extensive capillary network, providing an environment conducive to efficient gas exchange (Figure 16).

The diameter of the air passages is about 1 mm at the level of the twelfth generation. It is estimated that the total cross-sectional area of the terminal bronchioles is about thirty times that of the bronchi. The **transitional zone** (generations 17 to 19) is between the bronchioles and the alveolar ducts. The epithelium of the early generations of the bronchioles is cuboidal and becomes flatter in the alveolar ducts. As the bronchioles proceed toward the alveoli, the surrounding muscular layer becomes thinner, though some smooth muscles can still be found in the walls of the alveolar ducts.

Alveolar Ducts and Alveolar Sacs

Both alveolar ducts (generations 20 to 22) and alveolar sacs (generation 23), lined by alveolar epithelium, participate in gas exchange. The alveolar sacs are the last stage of division and terminate at the alveoli (Figure 15). On the other hand, the walls of the alveolar ducts are made of alveoli that communicate with the ducts and are separated by septa. These septa contain smooth muscle cells that form rings across the length of the alveolar ducts. These muscles, by their contractions, can affect the caliber of the ducts. About half the total number of alveoli arise from the alveolar ducts and half from the alveolar sacs; approximately 17 alveoli arise from each alveolar sac. The branching of bronchopulmonary segments is completed *in utero*, and any growth of conduction airways after birth is through an increase in size. However, the number of alveoli continues to proliferate in the first decade of life; after that, the alveoli do not increase in number but increase only in size.

Alveoli

Alveoli, the fundamental units of gas exchange in the lungs, present as numerous small, grape-like sacs interconnected to the alveolar ducts (Figures 15 and 16). These structures, forming clusters of individual alveoli, are primarily responsible for gas exchange. An alveolus, approximately 250 micrometers in diameter, features elastic walls that exhibit substantial stretching during inhalation, significantly augmenting the available surface area for gas exchange. The size of alveoli varies across different regions of the lung due to gravitational influences, with larger alveoli predominantly found in the upper lung segments. Alveoli interconnect through alveolar pores, facilitating equalization of air pressure throughout the lung and within the alveolar units. These pores play a pivotal role in maintaining uniform air pressure and promoting optimal gas exchange across the respiratory surfaces.

The lungs house an astounding 300 million alveoli, and each alveolus is encompassed by an intricate network of approximately 1,000 pulmonary capillaries. This arrangement provides an extensive surface area of nearly 100 square meters, optimizing the exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide through diffusion. The remarkable efficiency of these microscopic structures in the alveoli enables the vital process of gas exchange fundamental to respiration.[10]

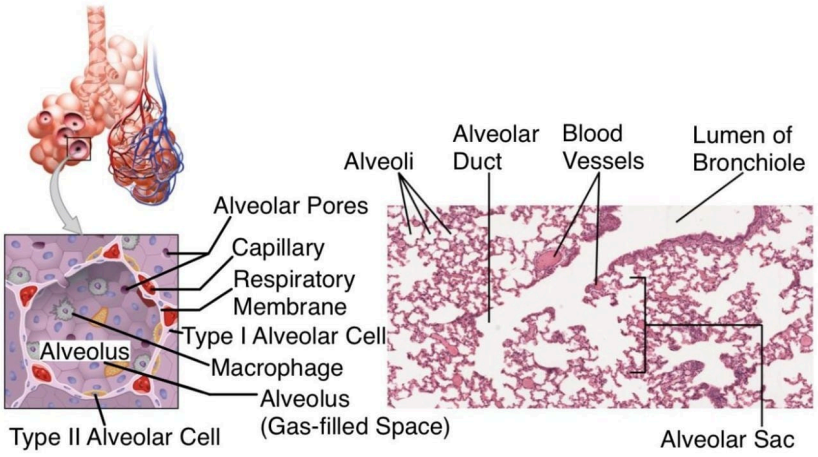


Figure 16 | Structures of the Respiratory Zone |[23] The diagram emphasizes the close proximity of the alveolar air space to the capillary blood, highlighting the structural adaptations that facilitate efficient gas exchange across the respiratory membrane. The inset images provide both a macroscopic and microscopic perspective of the alveolar structure.

The alveolar wall, a pivotal component of the respiratory system, comprises three distinct cell types: **Type I alveolar cells**, **Type II alveolar cells**, and **alveolar macrophages**. Type I alveolar cells represent the predominant cell type in the alveoli, accounting for approximately 97% of the alveolar surface area. They are exceedingly thin, approximately 25 nm thick, and are constituted by squamous epithelial cells. Their ultra-thin structure renders them highly permeable to gases, enabling efficient gas exchange between the alveoli and pulmonary capillaries. Scattered amidst the Type I cells, Type II alveolar cells play a crucial role by secreting a substance called **pulmonary surfactant**. The surfactant, composed of phospholipids and proteins, serves two vital functions. Firstly, it significantly reduces the surface tension within the alveoli. Secondly, it enhances compliance, which decreases the force required for lung ventilation. This decrease in surface tension is instrumental in stabilizing the alveoli, preventing their collapse. The role of surfactant in the **law of Laplace** elucidates that, in the absence of surfactant, smaller alveoli with increased tension would collapse due to surface tension. Surfactant reduces surface tension, balancing pressure across alveoli of different sizes and preventing collapse. However, surfactant mitigates this scenario by diminishing surface tension, particularly in smaller alveoli, thereby preventing their collapse. It is crucial in conditions such as **neonatal respiratory distress syndrome**, where the deficiency of surfactant can lead to severe breathing difficulties in newborns.

Respiratory Membrane

The alveolar and capillary membranes together form the respiratory membrane, which is approximately 0.5 mm thick. It acts as the interface where gas exchange occurs. Gases, like oxygen and carbon dioxide, diffuse across this membrane. To traverse from the alveoli to the blood plasma, gas molecules must first dissolve in the alveolar fluid, then cross the alveolar epithelium with the basement membrane, navigate through the interstitial space containing elastic and collagenous connective tissues, and finally traverse the basement membranes and endothelial cells of the capillaries before entering the plasma. This complex journey allows for the exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide necessary for cellular respiration and vital metabolic functions.10

Pleura

Each lung is enveloped within a cavity encased by a serous membrane known as the **pleura**. The right and left pleurae, which encompass the respective right and left lungs, are separated by the mediastinum. The pleurae consist of two layers (Figure 17). **The Visceral Pleura** is situated superficially and envelops the lungs, extending into and lining the lung fissures. Its closeness to the lung tissue aids in providing structural support. **The Parietal Pleura** is the outer layer of the pleura that attaches to the thoracic wall, the mediastinum, and the diaphragm, essentially lining the thoracic cavity. At the hilum, the visceral and parietal pleurae interconnect, forming the **pleural cavity**, which is the space between these two layers. The pleurae secrete a small amount of pleural fluid. This fluid lubricates the surfaces, significantly reducing friction between the layers during breathing which helps prevent any trauma caused by friction.The pleurae also act as a protective barrier, delineating different organs to prevent

interference caused by organ movements. Additionally, they serve as a barrier against the spread of infection.[24]

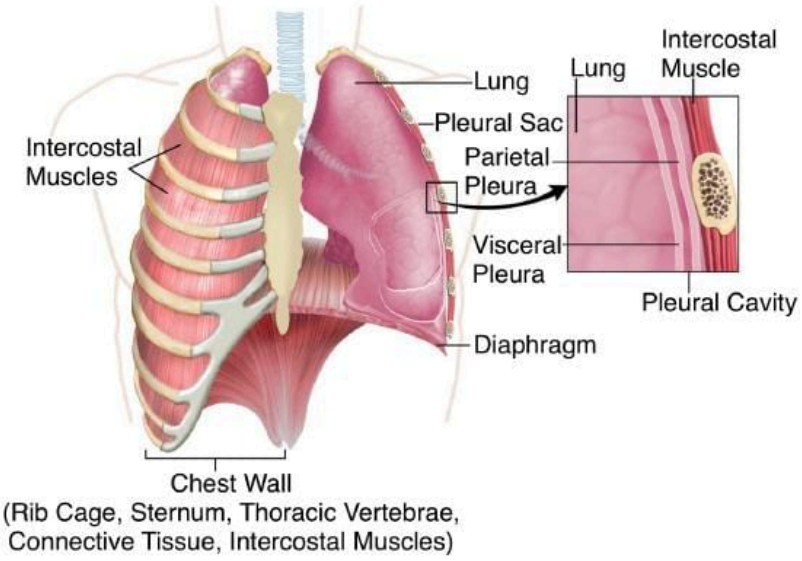


Figure 17 | Parietal and Visceral Pleura of the Lungs |[25] The diagram highlights the arrangement of the pleural membranes and the importance of the pleural cavity in allowing smooth lung movement during respiration. It also emphasizes the role of the intercostal muscles and diaphragm in the mechanics of breathing.

Pulmonary Blood Supply

Until the sixteenth generation, the blood supply of the bronchi is derived from the systemic vascular tree via the **bronchial circulation**. The main function of the respiratory passages at these levels is the conduction of air and humidification. Beyond this level, the **pulmonary circulation** nourishes the respiratory passages where gas exchange occurs.

The lungs, responsible for the critical process of gas exchange, receive a dual blood supply that contributes to their functional support and maintenance. The first source of blood is oxygenated blood derived from the **bronchial arteries**, representing branches of the descending aorta. While these arteries supply approximately two percent of the total cardiac output, their main function is providing blood to the non-gaseous exchange portions of the lungs. The principal blood supply necessary for gas exchange is sourced from the deoxygenated blood within the **pulmonary arteries** (Figure 18). The primary role of pulmonary circulation is to facilitate the exchange of gases, delivering deoxygenated blood to the lungs, where it becomes oxygenated for subsequent distribution to the body tissues by erythrocytes.

As the pulmonary artery traverses along the bronchi, it progressively branches into smaller vessels. Each arteriole, accompanied by a venule, supplies and drains a single pulmonary lobule. Upon nearing the alveoli, the pulmonary arterioles evolve into the pulmonary capillary network. These capillaries, with extremely thin walls, follow the branching of the bronchioles and the intricate structure of the alveoli, where the capillary wall converges with the alveolar wall, forming the respiratory membrane – the site where gas exchange takes place. Upon oxygenation, blood exits the alveoli via multiple pulmonary veins, which exit the lungs through the hilum. The venous blood from the bronchi's initial segment returns via **bronchial veins**, which then drain into vessels such as the **azygos**, **hemiazygos**, or **posterior intercostal veins**. The remaining deoxygenated blood is carried back via the pulmonary veins. This distinctive venous system not only carries oxygenated blood from the respiratory units but also transports deoxygenated blood from the visceral pleura and distal bronchi. This bronchopulmonary anastomosis is instrumental in contributing to the normal anatomic shunt.

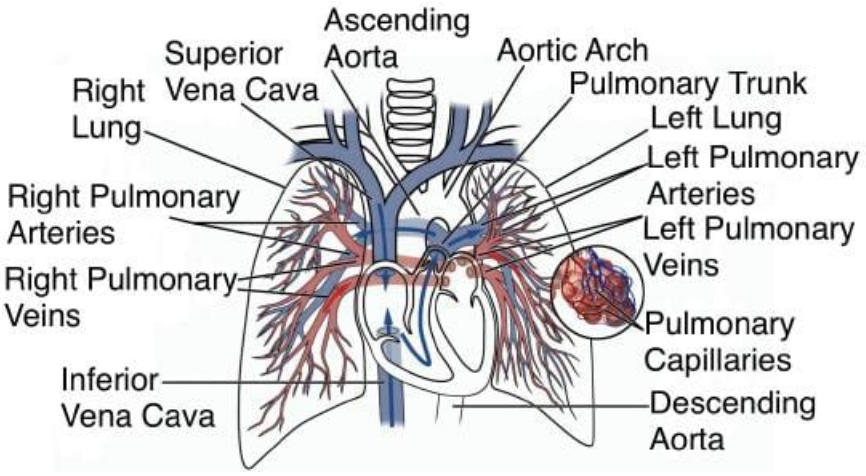


Figure 18 | Pulmonary Circulation |[26] The image depicts the heart and lungs, highlighting the major blood vessels involved in pulmonary circulation.

The pulmonary circulation is a unique low-pressure, low-resistance system, primarily due to the dense microcirculation and shorter vessels within the lungs. Unlike systemic circulation, which faces higher pressures and resistance, the pulmonary circulation accommodates the entire cardiac output, making it the only vascular bed that receives all of the blood pumped by the heart. The mean arterial pressure in the pulmonary circulation is about 15 mm Hg, and the mean pressure within the pulmonary capillaries is even lower, averaging around 10 mm Hg. The pulmonary blood volume is approximately 600 milliliters, with about 100 milliliters contained within the capillaries at any given time.

One of the critical factors influencing pulmonary blood flow is gravity, which affects the distribution of blood perfusion in the lungs. Since the apex of the lung is positioned roughly 15 centimeters higher than the pulmonary artery, and the base is a similar distance below, pressure in the capillaries at the apex is significantly lower, often resulting in these capillaries remaining closed due to insufficient pressure to keep them open. In contrast, the capillaries at the base of the lung are better perfused due to the gravitational effect increasing the pressure there.

Additionally, the pulmonary system has mechanisms to respond to changes in blood flow or pressure. When the pressure in the pulmonary artery increases, recruitment and distension of pulmonary capillaries occur, which opens previously closed vessels and allows for greater blood flow. However, an increase in lung volume can compress the alveolar vessels, leading to a rise in resistance. This dynamic relationship between vessel recruitment, distension, and resistance helps maintain an efficient system for gas exchange while accommodating changes in blood flow and lung volume during respiration.[27]

Pulmonary Nerve Supply

The control of airway diameter, regulated by the parasympathetic and sympathetic nervous systems, is pivotal in modulating respiratory function. The parasympathetic nervous system, mainly through the vagus nerve, orchestrates bronchoconstriction. Primarily, the cholinergic stimulation activates muscarinic M3 ACh receptors, resulting in bronchoconstriction through G-protein-mediated activation of phospholipase C, which elevates IP3 levels and increases the release of calcium ions. receptors targeted by this system are concentrated in the larger airways, where their activation leads to the narrowing of the air passages. In contrast, the sympathetic nervous system acts on $\beta 2$ receptors, leading to bronchodilation via a G-protein-mediated increase in cAMP, which reduces the release of calcium ions.

The influence of the ANS on the lungs is critical for the precise regulation of oxygen and carbon dioxide levels. Sensory nerve fibers originate from the vagus nerve and the second to fifth thoracic ganglia. These nerves form the **pulmonary plexus** at the lung root, situated at the hilum. From this plexus, nerves follow the bronchial tree into the lungs, extensively branching to innervate muscle fibers, glands, and blood vessels within the lung tissue.

Additionally, humoral factors can influence bronchial tone: histamine, leukotrienes, thromboxane A2, serotonin, α-adrenergic agonists, vasoactive intestinal peptide, and endothelin contribute to bronchoconstriction, while nitric oxide, $\beta 2$-agonists, and prostacyclin promote bronchodilation.[28]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 12.3: Respiratory Anatomy is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.4: Mechanics of Breathing

The mechanics of breathing involve a sophisticated interplay of physical and chemical processes that guarantee the continuous exchange of gases between the lungs, blood, and tissues, thereby maintaining homeostasis and sustaining life.

Pressure Relationships

Pulmonary ventilation relies on the interplay between three key pressures.

Atmospheric Pressure: This is the force exerted by gases in the air encompassing any surface, such as the body. It is usually expressed in atmospheres (atm) or millimeters of mercury (mm Hg). At sea level, atmospheric pressure is 1 atm or 760 mm Hg. In respiratory discussions, pressure is usually discussed in relation to atmospheric pressure. Negative pressure is lower than atmospheric pressure, positive pressure is higher than atmospheric pressure, and pressure equivalent to atmospheric pressure is referred to as zero.

Intraalveolar Pressure or Intrapulmonary Pressure: This pressure exists within the alveoli and fluctuates with various phases of breathing. During inspiration, it is negative in comparison to atmospheric pressure, allowing air to enter the lungs. Conversely, during expiration, it is positive relative to atmospheric pressure, expelling air from the lungs. The pressure within the alveoli always aligns with atmospheric pressure since the alveoli are connected to the atmosphere via airway tubing.

Intrapleural Pressure: Intrapleural pressure—the pressure within the pleural cavity between the visceral and parietal pleura—remains consistently sub-atmospheric. Maintaining a value of approximately –4 mmHg relative to intra-alveolar pressure throughout the respiratory cycle, this negative pressure creates the necessary transpulmonary gradient to keep the lungs inflated.

The negative intrapleural pressure is the result of competing forces within the thorax. The elasticity of the lungs causes them to recoil inwards, while the surface tension of alveolar fluid further aids this inward pull. These forces are counteracted by the pleural fluid and the elasticity of the thoracic wall, ensuring that the inward tension from the lungs is slightly surpassed by the outward pull. This discrepancy results in the -4 mmHg intrapleural pressure relative to intra-alveolar pressure.

Transpulmonary pressure is the variance between alveolar and intrapleural pressure.This pressure gradient maintains lung expansion and opposes the elastic recoil of the lungs.

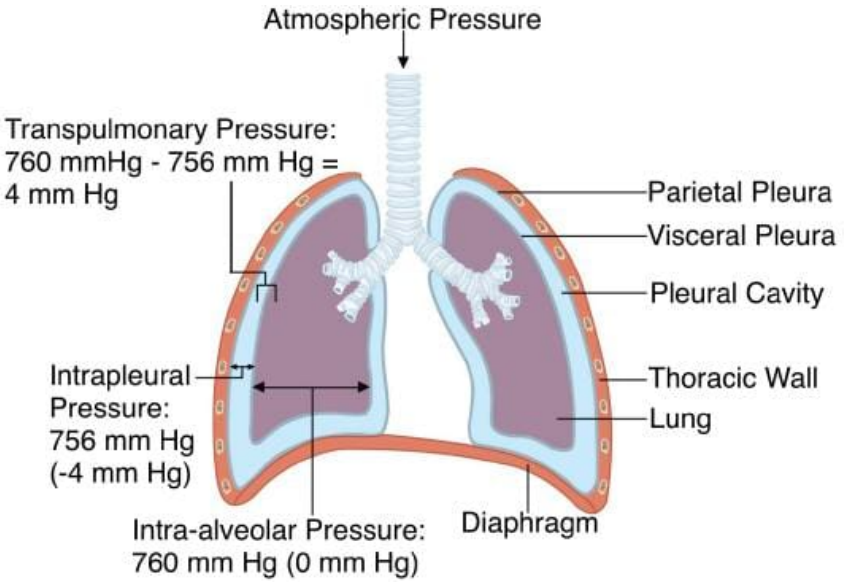


Figure 19 | Intrapulmonary and Intrapleural Pressure Relationships |[29] The diagram visually represents how the negative intrapleural pressure and the resulting transpulmonary pressure gradient maintain lung inflation against the elastic recoil of the lungs.

Pressure within a gas results from the kinetic motion of confined gas molecules. A specific quantity of gas molecules contained in a two-liter space, for example, generates less pressure versus the same number of molecules confined within a one-liter space. The gas molecules in the larger two-liter volume have more space than those in the smaller one-liter space, causing a discrepancy in the force exerted by these gas molecules against their respective container walls. This pressure discrepancy stems from alterations in the volume occupied by the gas and changes in the number of gas molecules while the temperature remains constant.[10]

Boyle's law delineates the inverse relationship between the volume and pressure of a gas, upheld at a consistent temperature. An expansion in volume correlates to a reduction in pressure, while a reduction in volume corresponds to an escalation in pressure (Figure 20). Hence, in the scenario of the two-liter and one-liter containers, if the two-liter space increases in volume, the pressure diminishes. Comparatively, the one-liter space's pressure is predicted to be twice that of the two-liter container due to its reduced volume.

This principle is encapsulated by the Boyle's law equation: $P_1V_1 = P_2V_2$. The formula represents the initial pressure (P_1) and volume (V_1) and their subsequent values (P_2 and V_2) following any volume alterations. In a hypothetical scenario where these containers are interconnected by a tube, and the volume in one container is modified, the gas would migrate from higher pressure (smaller volume) to lower pressure (larger volume) to equalize the pressure differential.[30]

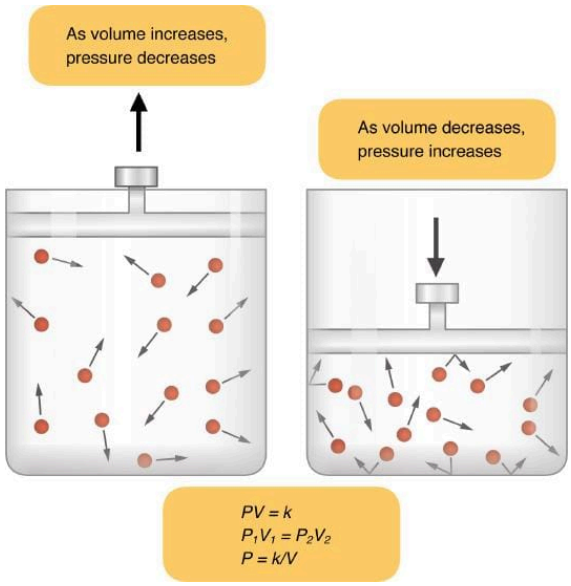


Figure 20 | Boyle's Law |[31] This diagram illustrates Boyle's Law, which describes the inverse relationship between the volume and pressure of a gas at constant temperature. Left Panel depicts a container where the piston has been raised, increasing the volume. The gas molecules (red circles) are more spread out, resulting in lower pressure. Right Panel shows the container where the piston has been lowered, decreasing the volume. The gas molecules are more compressed, resulting in higher pressure. Bottom Text Box presents the mathematical representations of Boyle's Law. $PV = k$: The product of pressure (P) and volume (V) is a constant (k) at constant temperature. $P_1V_1 = P_2V_2$: For a given amount of gas at constant temperature, the initial pressure and volume (P_1, V_1) are related to the final pressure and volume (P_2, V_2). $P = k/V$: Pressure is inversely proportional to volume.

Compliance of the Thoracic Wall

Thoracic Wall Compliance refers to the ability of the chest wall to expand in response to changes in pressure. As the thoracic wall stretches, it helps to pull the lungs outward, aiding lung expansion during inspiration. The compliance of the thoracic wall is important for normal respiratory mechanics—when it is reduced (as in cases of chest wall rigidity or obesity), more muscular effort is required to breathe.

Compliance is mathematically expressed as **C = V/P**, where **C** is compliance, **V** is the change in volume, and **P** is the change in pressure. The compliance of the chest wall adds to the overall ability of the respiratory system to accommodate changes in lung volume with relatively small changes in pressure.[32]

Pulmonary compliance

Pulmonary Compliance refers to the ability of the lungs themselves to stretch and expand in response to pressure changes. Compliance is maximal when lung distensibility is at its peak and is lowest when the lungs are the least distensible. Healthy lung tissue is highly elastic and can stretch easily during inspiration and recoil during expiration. Diseases like emphysema reduce elasticity, increasing compliance but making it harder for the lungs to recoil and expel air. Surface tension at the alveolar level is another factor affecting pulmonary compliance. The fluid lining the alveoli creates surface tension, which resists lung expansion. However, the presence of **surfactant**, a substance produced by alveolar cells, reduces surface tension and makes lung inflation easier.

Pulmonary compliance is typically constant during quiet breathing but can decrease under certain conditions, such as during high chest expansion or when there is a restriction in lung volume (e.g., **pulmonary fibrosis** or **pulmonary edema**). Loss of elasticity, as seen in conditions like **emphysema**, means the lungs cannot return to their original shape as effectively, making exhalation more difficult. A reduction in lung compliance means the respiratory system requires a higher pressure difference to achieve the same lung volume.[33]

Resistance to airflow occurs mainly in the airways, particularly in the upper respiratory tract (nose, mouth) and in the smaller airways (bronchioles). Airway resistance is inversely related to the radius of the airway, meaning that as airways constrict (as in asthma), resistance increases, and more effort is required to move air through the lungs. Airway resistance is governed by **Poiseuille's law**, where small changes in airway diameter can have a large effect on resistance.

Inspiration and Expiration

Ventilation, the rhythmic exchange of air between the atmosphere and lungs, comprises inspiration and expiration. Inspiration, an active process, begins with the contraction of the diaphragm and external intercostal muscles. The diaphragm's descent and the rib cage's expansion increase thoracic volume, lowering intra-alveolar pressure and drawing air into the lungs. Conversely, expiration is typically passive, relying on the elastic recoil of lung tissue as the respiratory muscles relax. This recoil reduces thoracic volume, raising intra-alveolar pressure and expelling air. A complete respiratory cycle involves these coordinated muscle actions, facilitated by the pleural fluid's role in lung expansion, ensuring efficient oxygen intake and carbon dioxide removal. While normal expiration is passive, forced expiration, such as during exercise or coughing, recruits abdominal and internal intercostal muscles to actively compress the lungs, further aiding in air expulsion. This intricate process of ventilation is vital for maintaining gas exchange and supporting cellular respiration.[34]

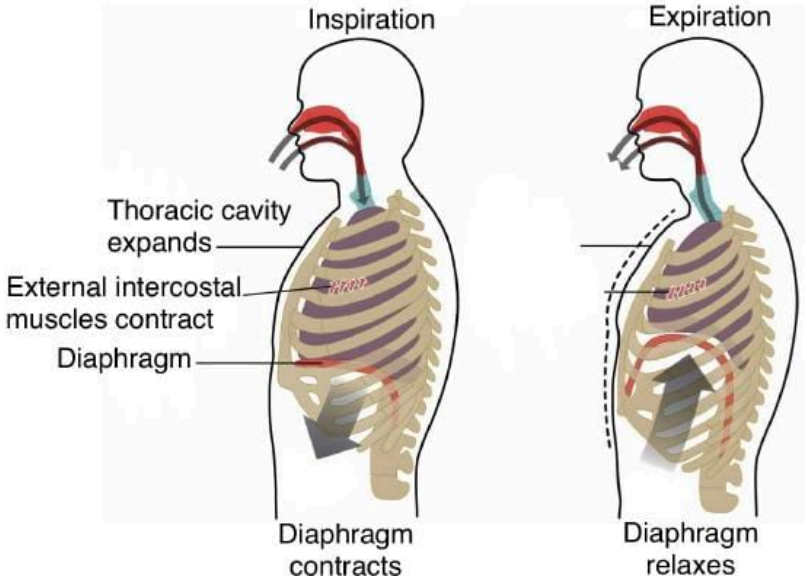


Figure 21 | Inspiration and Expiration |[35] This diagram illustrates the key muscular movements and volume changes that occur during the processes of inspiration (inhalation) and expiration (exhalation). Left Panel (Inspiration) depicts the process of inhalation. During inspiration, the external intercostal muscles contract, causing the rib cage to expand. Simultaneously, the

diaphragm contracts and moves downward, further increasing the volume of the thoracic cavity. This expansion of the thoracic cavity creates a negative pressure, drawing air into the lungs. Right Panel (Expiration) illustrates the process of exhalation. During expiration, the external intercostal muscles relax, and the rib cage returns to its resting position. The diaphragm relaxes and moves upward, decreasing the volume of the thoracic cavity. This reduction in volume increases the pressure within the lungs, forcing air out. The arrows in the diagrams indicate the direction of movement of the diaphragm and the overall change in thoracic cavity size.

Different modes of breathing involve variations in the contraction and relaxation of specific muscles to adjust the depth and rate of respiration, facilitating a diverse range of respiratory actions. During **quiet breathing** or **eupnea**, the diaphragm and external intercostal muscles contract without conscious effort. **Diaphragmatic breathing** involves a deep breath, wherein the diaphragm contracts.[36] **Costal breathing**, a shallow breath, involves the contraction of the intercostal muscles. **Forced breathing**, or **hyperpnea**, occurs during activities requiring active control of breathing, like exercise or singing. Both inspiration and expiration involve muscle contractions. Accessory neck muscles like the scalene muscles during forced inspiration, and abdominal muscles, such as the obliques, assist in forced expiration by further compressing the thoracic cavity and pushing air out. Additionally, internal intercostal muscles aid in reducing thoracic volume by compressing the rib cage.

Respiratory Volumes and Capacities

Respiratory volumes refer to the different amounts of air associated with lung function within the respiratory cycle. These volumes offer critical insights into an individual's respiratory health (refer to Table 3). There are four primary respiratory volumes (Figure 22):

Tidal volume (TV): This represents the standard amount of air naturally entering the lungs during calm breathing, typically around 500 milliliters.

Expiratory reserve volume (ERV): This is the maximum volume of air forcefully exhaled beyond a standard tidal expiration, which can reach up to 1200 milliliters in men.

Inspiratory reserve volume (IRV): This volume reflects the additional air that can be inhaled past a regular tidal inspiration during forced inspiration.

Residual volume (RV): This air remains in the lungs even after maximal exhalation. It is vital for preventing alveolar collapse and making breathing easier.

Forced expiratory volume (FEV1) measures the volume of air expelled during the first second of a maximal forced expiration, usually constituting 80 percent of the **forced vital capacity** (FVC), expressed as FEV1/FVC = 0.8.

Respiratory capacity combines specific volumes to provide a more comprehensive depiction of lung air amounts during a given time.

Total lung capacity (TLC) encompasses all lung volumes (TV, ERV, IRV, and RV), representing the total air volume an individual can hold in their lungs after a forceful inhalation. TLC is approximately 6,000 mL in men and around 4,200 mL in women.[37]

Vital capacity (VC) signifies the maximum air movement in and out of the lungs. It includes all volumes except the residual volume (TV, ERV, and IRV), typically ranging between 4,000 and 5,000 milliliters.

Inspiratory capacity (IC) indicates the maximum air intake beyond a standard tidal expiration and is the sum of tidal volume and inspiratory reserve volume.

Functional residual capacity (FRC) illustrates the air that remains in the lungs after a regular tidal expiration and includes the sum of expiratory reserve volume and residual volume.

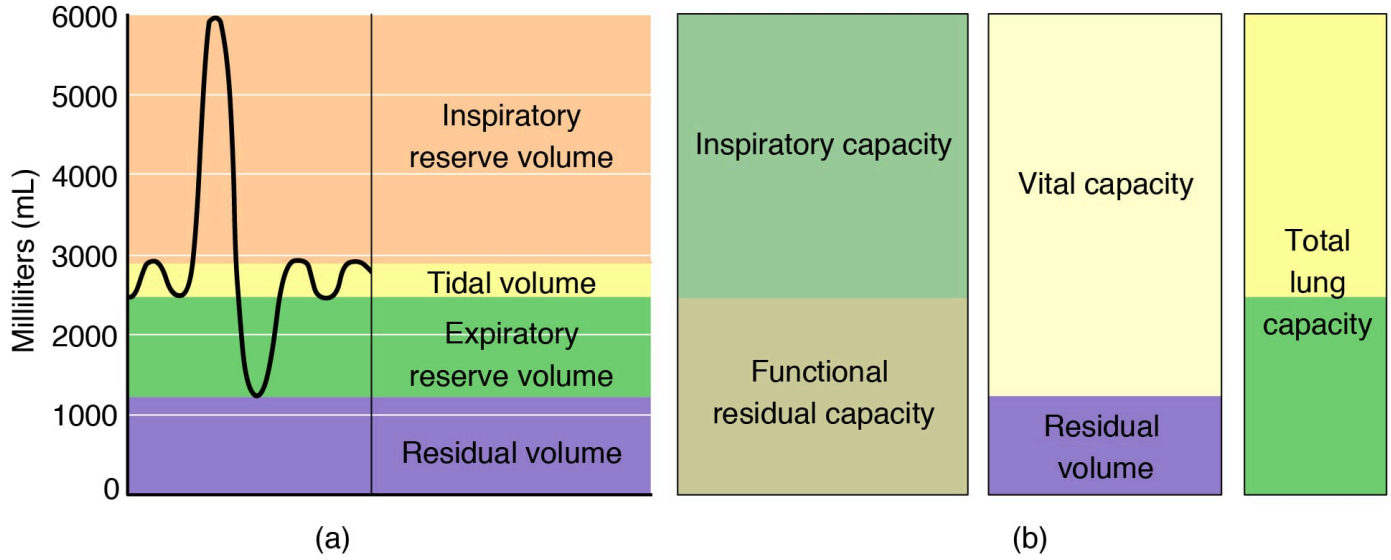


Figure 22 | Respiratory Volumes and Capacities |[38] These two graphs show (a) respiratory volumes and (b) the combination of volumes that results in respiratory capacity.

Table 3 | *Pulmonary Function Testing* |

Pulmonary Function Test	Instrumental	Measures	Function
Spirometry	Spirometer	Forced vital capacity (FVC)	Volume of air exhaled after maximum inspiration
		Forced expiratory volume (FEV)	Volume of air exhaled in one breath
		Forced expiratory flow, 25 to 75 percent	Air flow in the middle of exhalation
		Peak expiratory flow (PEF)	Rate of exhalation
		Maximum voluntary ventilation (MVV)	Volume of air that can be inspired and expired in 1 minute
		Slow vital capacity (SVC)	Volume of air that can be slowly exhaled after inhaling past the tidal volume
		Total lung capacity (TLC)	Volume of air in the lungs after maximum inhalation

Pulmonary Function Test	Instrumental	Measures	Function
		Functional residual capacity (FRC)	Volume of air left in the lungs after normal expiration
		Residual volume (RV)	Volume of air in the lungs after maximum expiration
		Expiratory reserve volume (ERV)	The volume of air that can be exhaled beyond normal expiration
Gas diffusion	Blood gas analyzer	Arterial blood gases	Concentration of oxygen and carbon dioxide in the blood

The induction of general anesthesia, whether or not accompanied by muscle paralysis, induces significant alterations in the structural mechanics and motion of the chest wall. These changes consequently impact the mechanical properties of the chest wall and, by extension, the lung function. One prominent manifestation of this shift is the reduction in functional residual capacity, attributed to an increase in lung recoil and a decrease in lung compliance.[39]

Flow-Volume Loop

The flow-volume loop plots inspiratory and expiratory flow during forced inspiratory and expiratory maneuvers. It is obtained by performing a maximum expiratory maneuver of the vital capacity while two transducers at the mouth record the simultaneous changes in flow and volume. The flow during inspiration is on the negative side of the graph, and the flow during expiration is on the positive side. Generally, a diminution in flow rates will result from an obstructive lesion such as emphysema (Figure 23). The flow-volume curve provides a graphical representation of the rate of airflow during different phases of breathing. It plots the relationship between the volume of air exhaled or inhaled (y-axis) and the rate of flow (x-axis) and illustrates different lung volumes and airflow rates throughout the respiratory cycle. The cycle starts with expiration, which progresses from the point of functional residual capacity to residual volume. From residual volume, the inspiration phase begins. Airflow moves from residual volume through inspiration to total lung capacity, representing the maximum volume the lungs can hold after a forceful inspiration. The expiratory maneuver follows inspiration. This phase involves a forceful expiration where the individual starts from total lung capacity and exhales to residual volume. The curve outlines the rate of air exhalation as the individual breathes out with maximal effort, demonstrating the maximal expiratory flow.[40]

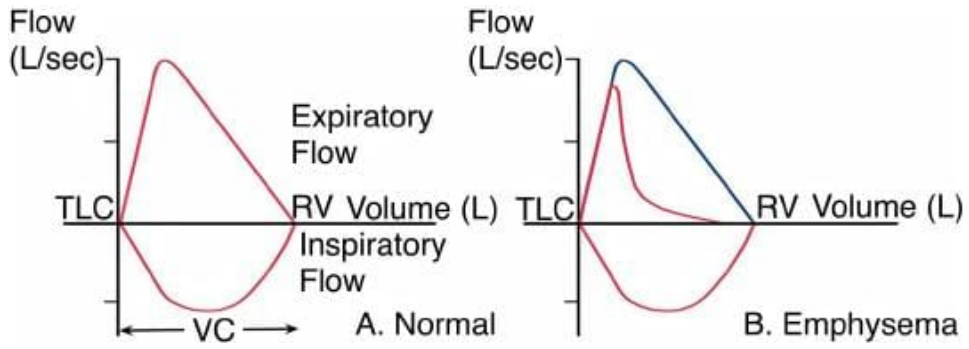


Figure 23 | Flow-Volume Loops Comparing Normal Lung Function and Emphysema |10 Panel A (Normal) shows a typical flow-volume loop with a rapid rise in expiratory flow to a peak, followed by a gradual decline. The inspiratory flow curve is symmetrical

and forms a rounded loop. The vital capacity (VC) is clearly defined, representing the maximum volume of air that can be exhaled after a maximal inhalation. TLC (Total Lung Capacity) and RV (Residual Volume) are marked, indicating the limits of lung volume. Panel B (Emphysema) illustrates a characteristic flow-volume loop in emphysema. The expiratory flow curve shows a significantly reduced peak flow and a concave shape, indicating airflow obstruction. The total lung capacity (TLC) is often increased due to air trapping, and the residual volume (RV) is also elevated. The overall loop appears wider and flatter compared to the normal loop.

The evaluation of lung volumes is a valuable diagnostic tool in distinguishing between restrictive and obstructive pulmonary diseases. Restrictive conditions, like alveolar fibrosis, notably impair lung compliance, resulting in reduced lung volumes such as vital capacity, functional residual capacity, and total lung capacity. Even the tidal volume may decrease to alleviate the work of breathing. Conversely, obstructive diseases like chronic bronchitis or emphysema create increased resistance to airflow, often leading to airway collapse or obstruction due to mucus plugs. In such cases, the residual volume and functional residual capacity are increased, while the vital capacity, timed vital capacity, and expiratory reserve volumes tend to decrease.

In a patient with obstructive lung disease, the flow-volume curve often shows specific alterations, reflecting the obstructive nature of the condition (Figure 23). The effort-independent portion of the curve, which typically corresponds to the mid-to-late phase of expiration, tends to be depressed inward. This inward depression indicates a reduced or limited expiratory flow during the latter part of exhalation, a characteristic feature of obstructive lung diseases such as chronic obstructive pulmonary disease or asthma. In these conditions, airflow restriction occurs due to narrowed airways, obstructed passages, or increased resistance in the smaller airways. The reduced expiratory flow rate in the mid-to-late expiration phase reflects the difficulty in exhaling air effectively and completely from the lungs due to airway obstruction. This restricted airflow during this phase is a hallmark of obstructive lung diseases and is typically observed in the flow-volume curve, highlighting the challenges the patient faces in expelling air during expiration.[10]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Anatomic and Physiologic Dead Space

The respiratory system includes not only the air contributing to respiratory volumes but also the **anatomical dead space**. This space refers to the air within the airways that never reaches the alveoli and consequently does not partake in the gas exchange process.[41] **Alveolar dead space** encompasses the air within alveoli that are non-functional due to conditions like disease or irregular blood flow. The total dead space combines both anatomical dead space and alveolar dead space, representing all the air present in the respiratory system that does not contribute to gas exchange. In contrast, **physiological dead space** is a functional measurement defining the volume of the lungs that does not participate in gas exchange. In normal lungs, physiological dead space is approximately equal to anatomical dead space.[42]

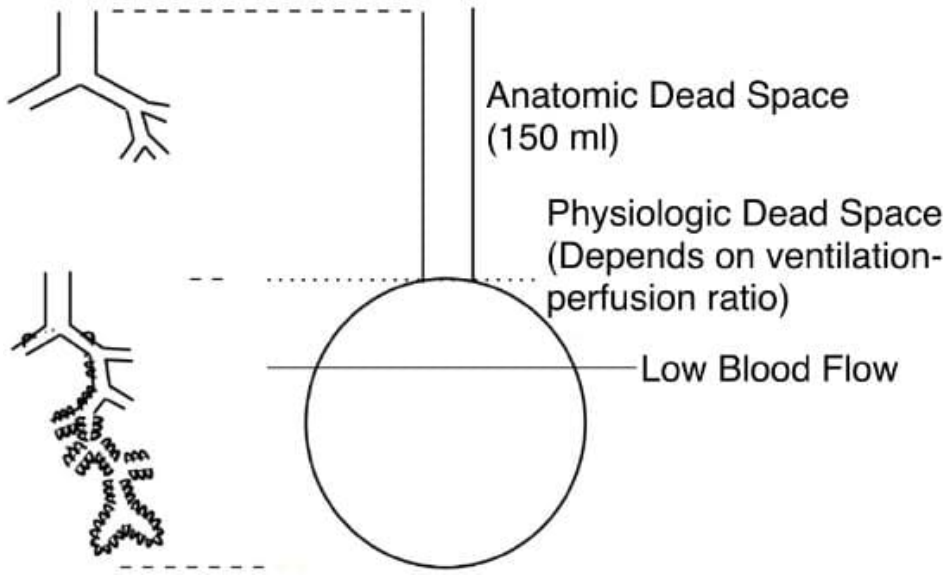


Figure 24 | Anatomic and Physiologic Dead Space | This diagram illustrates the concepts of anatomic and physiologic dead space within the airway. Anatomic dead space, represented by the conducting airways, accounts for approximately 150 ml of the respiratory volume where no gas exchange occurs. Physiologic dead space includes poorly perfused alveoli, is variable and depends on the ventilation-perfusion ratio. Areas with low blood flow relative to ventilation, as indicated by the "Low Blood Flow" line, contribute to an increase in physiologic dead space, effectively reducing the efficiency of gas exchange.

Various conditions and interventions can impact anatomic dead space. **Tracheostomy/Intubation** procedures typically decrease anatomic dead space. Tracheostomy involves creating an opening in the windpipe to facilitate breathing. Intubation involves inserting a tube into the windpipe to help maintain an open airway. Both these procedures help to bypass upper airway obstructions, which can reduce the amount of air trapped in the anatomical dead space. During general anesthesia, the pulmonary artery pressure decreases while alveolar dead space increases. Alveolar dead space refers to the part of the lung where gas exchange does not occur due to poor blood flow or inadequate ventilation. It could lead to underperfusion in areas that are not well-ventilated. At the same time, an endotracheal tube in the airway can diminish anatomic dead space. Actions such as extending the neck, protruding the jaw, or using an oral airway device can increase anatomic dead space. These adjustments could alter the natural airflow pathways, potentially leading to an increase in air that does not contribute to gas exchange. **Atropine**, by causing smooth muscle relaxation and decreasing mucus secretion, can increase anatomic dead space. Smooth muscle relaxation could lead to airways expanding further than normal, potentially increasing the anatomical dead space volume.[43]

In the normal resting state, the energy consumed by the respiratory muscles represents a minor portion of the overall metabolic rate, accounting for about two percent. A considerable portion of this energy (90 percent) is dissipated as heat within the respiratory muscles, while only 10 percent is actively utilized in moving gas. The muscles involved in breathing must combat two primary forms of resistance: static and dynamic. To counter static resistance, the respiratory muscles counteract lung parenchyma elasticity, chest wall recoil, and alveolar surface tension.

Under the effect of anesthesia, patients in a supine position experience a decrease in resting lung volume and compliance. There is a consistent reduction in functional residual capacity by about 15 to 20 percent. This decrease in lung volumes enhances airway resistance and susceptibility to airway collapse, potentially exacerbated by additional factors such as partial airway obstruction or external compression.

This page titled 12.4: Mechanics of Breathing is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.5: Ventilation and Perfusion

Gas exchange in the lungs involves two vital components: ventilation and perfusion. Ventilation pertains to the process of moving air into and out of the lungs, while perfusion refers to the circulation of blood through pulmonary capillaries. In order for efficient gas exchange to occur, the volumes associated with both ventilation and perfusion should be balanced. Factors such as gravity, obstructions in the alveolar ducts, or certain diseases can lead to an imbalance between ventilation and perfusion.

Under normal resting conditions in adults, approximately 4 liters of alveolar air are ventilated and perfused by 5 liters of blood each minute, maintaining a **ventilation/perfusion ratio** (**VA/Q**) of 0.8. This ratio is optimal for oxygenating blood with minimal energy expenditure, resulting in an **arterial oxygen tension** (PaO2) of around 105 mm Hg and an **arterial carbon dioxide tension** (PaCO2) of 40 mm Hg. When ventilation is adequate, oxygen enters the alveoli at a rapid pace, maintaining high oxygen levels. Conversely, if ventilation is insufficient, the partial pressure of oxygen in the alveoli decreases, hindering efficient diffusion of oxygen across the respiratory membrane. The body has built-in mechanisms to counter this issue. When the ventilation for an alveolus is insufficient, the body redistributes blood flow to other alveoli that are receiving adequate ventilation, which is accomplished by constricting the pulmonary arterioles supplying the dysfunctional alveolus. Simultaneously, pulmonary arterioles serving the adequately ventilated alveoli dilate, increasing blood flow. This adjustment of blood flow from one region to another is called **shunting**. Carbon dioxide, oxygen, and pH levels can act as stimuli for altering blood flow in the capillary networks related to the alveoli. For example, a higher partial pressure of carbon dioxide causes the bronchioles to expand, as does a reduced oxygen level in the blood supply. This process allows for increased elimination of carbon dioxide from the body.[44]

Regional Distribution of Ventilation

During spontaneous breathing in an upright position, lung ventilation is unevenly distributed, with the upper lung regions being better ventilated than the lower (dependent) regions. This unequal distribution of ventilation results from the lung's weight, which causes compression of alveoli at the base and overexpansion of alveoli at the apex of the lung due to their relative positions. While alveolar pressure is relatively uniform throughout the lung, intrapleural pressure is more negative at the apex than at the base. The greater transpulmonary pressure, the difference between alveolar and intrapleural pressures, contributes to the overexpansion of apical alveoli. This negative intrapleural pressure creates higher distending pressures at the apex, leading to greater expansion of apical alveoli compared to those at the base.

When breathing in an upright position, gravity affects the distribution of ventilation. Since alveoli at the base of the lungs are less expanded compared to those at the apex in an upright position, basal alveoli are more compliant and capable of expanding more during inspiration, thus receiving more ventilation compared to apical alveoli. This creates a gradient, where gas distribution favors the base of the lungs during quiet breathing. When lying supine, the vertical gradient of ventilation shifts, and gravity now affects the posterior and anterior regions differently. In this position, the posterior (dependent) regions of the lungs are compressed more than the anterior (non-dependent) regions, making the posterior lung regions more compliant and able to expand more. As a result, the posterior regions receive more ventilation than the anterior regions. In the lateral position, gravity once again affects ventilation distribution, with the dependent (lower) parts of the lung receiving more ventilation than the non-dependent (upper) regions of the lung. This shifting of ventilation distribution due to gravity and body position is critical in clinical settings, as it affects how patients are positioned, especially in cases of respiratory distress or ventilation support, to optimize gas exchange.[45]

Regional Distribution of Pulmonary Blood Flow

In a standing individual, blood flow per unit of lung tissue tends to increase from the top (apex) to the bottom (base) of the lung due to the influence of gravity. This preference occurs because the pressure in the pulmonary arteries and arterioles is low, prompting blood to move more toward the lower segments due to gravitational effects. As the intravascular pressures in the lower lung regions are greater than those in the upper regions, the resistance in the pulmonary vessels diminishes because of their expansion or recruitment. However, this phenomenon is reversed when an individual is inverted or suspended upside down.

The regional distribution of pulmonary blood flow in a standing adult can be conveniently classified into three zones, as depicted in Figure 25.[46]

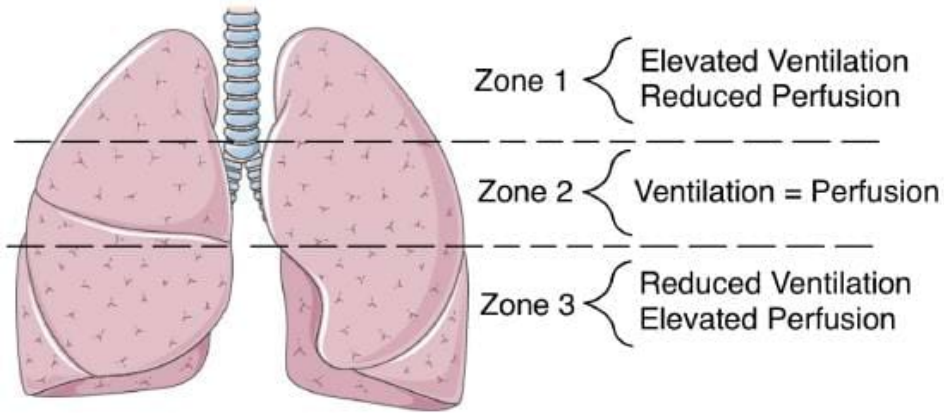


Figure 25 | Organization of the Lung based on Ventilation and Perfusion |[47] This diagram illustrates the three zones of the lung, categorized based on the balance between ventilation (airflow) and perfusion (blood flow). Zone 1 (Apex): Located at the top of the lungs, Zone 1 is characterized by elevated ventilation (more air entering the alveoli) but reduced perfusion (less blood flow through the capillaries). This occurs because the alveolar pressure is greater than the pulmonary arterial pressure in this region, leading to potential capillary collapse. Zone 2 (Middle): In the middle region of the lungs, Zone 2 represents a more balanced state where ventilation is approximately equal to perfusion. The pulmonary arterial pressure is intermittently greater than the alveolar pressure, allowing for gas exchange. Zone 3 (Base): Situated at the bottom of the lungs, Zone 3 experiences reduced ventilation (less air reaching the alveoli) but elevated perfusion (increased blood flow). This is due to the hydrostatic pressure of blood being highest in this region, resulting in distended capillaries.

Zone 1

This is the upper part of the lung, where alveolar pressure is higher than the pressure in the pulmonary arteries. As a result, the capillaries in this zone can collapse, stopping blood flow. Normally, Zone 1 doesn't exist, but it can appear when alveolar pressure is high (like with positive-pressure ventilation) or when blood pressure is low.

Zone 2

This area demonstrates the ideal situation where the pulmonary arterial pressure exceeds the alveolar pressure. The difference between these pressures determines blood flow in this zone. The alveolar pressure compresses the venules in this area.

Zone 3

Located at the base of the lung, both arterial and venous pressures exceed the alveolar pressure. The arteriovenous pressure difference controls blood flow in the capillaries. Despite appearances of collapsed alveoli, those in Zone 3 have greater compliance than those in Zone 1.

It is crucial to recognize that the demarcation between these zones is variable and can change based on physiological or pathological conditions. For instance, during exercise, increased cardiac output and pulmonary arterial pressure can recruit any existing Zone 1 to Zone 2, shifting the boundaries between Zone 2 and Zone 3. Changes in posture will also alter the relationship of these zones with respect to their anatomic locations in the lung. However, their associations with gravity, pulmonary flow, and alveolar pressure persist despite the change in posture. In addition to the gravitational pattern of pulmonary blood flow, local factors can influence the relationship between flow and ventilation. Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction is an important local factor that contributes to these relationships.

Regional Differences in Ventilation/Perfusion Ratios

The gas tension in the alveoli of the lung is influenced not solely by ventilation or perfusion but by the ratio of ventilation to perfusion (VA/Q). This ratio is variable, spanning from zero to infinity. With a zero ventilation/perfusion ratio, there is perfusion but no ventilation. Conversely, if there is ventilation but no perfusion (creating a dead space effect), the expired gas resembles the inspired gas (Figure 26). Since alveolar pressure is greater than both arterial and venous pressures in zone 1, the alveolar pressure compresses the capillaries, causing them to collapse. This restricts blood flow, and, therefore, there is minimal or no flow in this zone. In zone 2, the arterial pressure exceeds the alveolar pressure, so blood can enter the capillaries. However,

because alveolar pressure is still higher than venous pressure, blood flow depends on the difference between arterial and alveolar pressures (not arterial and venous pressures as in typical circulation). This leads to intermittent flow. Both arterial and venous pressures are higher than alveolar pressure in zone 3, and, therefore, there is continuous blood flow in this zone.

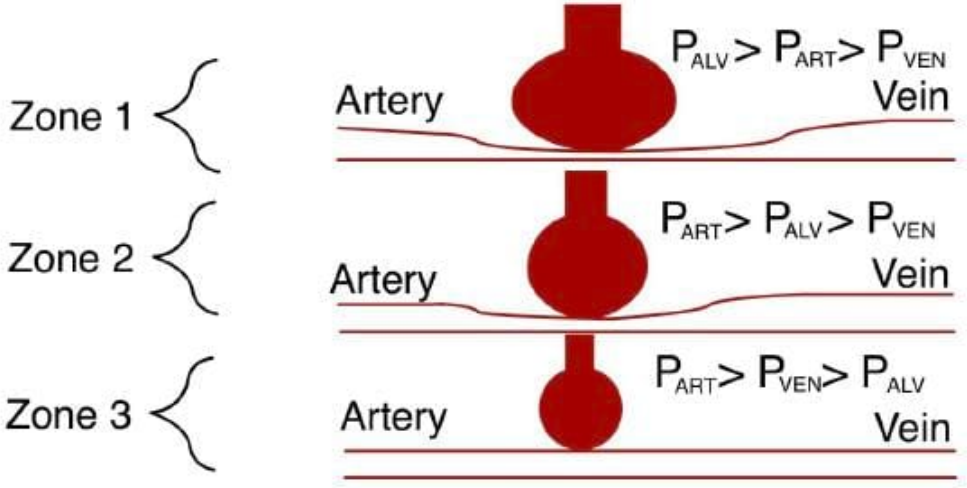


Figure 26 | V/Q Mismatch | Normal V/Q ratio 0.8. This is determined based on the volume of air moving into the lung (4 L) compared to the volume of blood the lung receives (5 L). V/Q = 0 when there is no ventilation. V/Q = ∞ when there is no perfusion (dead space).

In the vertical gradient of the lung, ventilation is higher in the upper portion than at the base. In contrast, perfusion is greater at the base than at the top. In resting conditions, the apex of the lung serves as a reservoir for gas exchange due to its relatively poor blood perfusion. During exercise, the pulmonary flow significantly increases, resulting in a more uniform distribution of blood flow.[44]

Pulmonary Circulatory Shunts and Ventilation-Perfusion (V/Q) Abnormalities

Right-to-left shunt denotes a portion of the heart's output that bypasses pulmonary gas exchange. It arises from the mixture of venous (deoxygenated) blood with the oxygenated blood of the arterial system. An example is a transposition of the great arteries, where the aorta connects to the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery links to the left ventricle. Other instances include patent foramen ovale and patent ductus arteriosus.

Anatomic shunt refers to a fraction of the heart's output bypassing the pulmonary capillaries, primarily due to the drainage of bronchial and pleural veins into the pulmonary veins.

Capillary shunt represents a portion of the heart's output perfusing non-ventilated alveoli, caused by pulmonary blood flow through non-ventilated or collapsed alveoli or to the perfusion of under-ventilated alveoli.

Dead space ventilation encompasses the segment of ventilation not involved in gas exchange. It comprises anatomic dead space (the volume of conducting airways) and alveolar dead space (the portion of the tidal volume spent ventilating non-perfused alveoli).

Alveoli at the apex have a higher-than-normal VA/Q ratio, leading to higher oxygen and lower carbon dioxide levels; this represents a **dead space effect** where ventilation is wasted due to underperfusion. Conversely, alveoli at the base have a lower-than-normal VA/Q ratio, contributing to a shunt effect where perfusion is 'wasted' because ventilation is insufficient to fully oxygenate the high volume of blood flow. Common causes of V/Q abnormalities include pneumonia, pulmonary embolism, pulmonary hypertension, COPD, fibrosis, and asthma.[48]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 12.5: Ventilation and Perfusion is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.6: Gas Exchange

Gas exchange is a complex and elegantly orchestrated process that ensures cells receive the oxygen necessary for energy production and efficiently eliminates the waste product, carbon dioxide. **External respiration** denotes the exchange of gases with the external environment, transpiring in the alveoli of the lungs. Here, oxygen is absorbed, and carbon dioxide is discharged at the respiratory membrane. **Internal respiration**, on the other hand, is the exchange of gases within the tissues. This process occurs at the tissue level, where oxygen is released and carbon dioxide is absorbed.

The exchange of gases occurs through simple diffusion without the need for energy. Oxygen and carbon dioxide move across membranes according to pressure gradients, facilitating their diffusion. Alveoli are optimized for efficient gas exchange, boasting a highly permeable respiratory membrane, thin membranes in both respiratory and blood capillaries, and an expansive surface area throughout the lungs.

Gas Laws and Air Composition

Gas laws are essential in explaining the behavior of gases and the fundamental principles underlying gas exchange in the lungs.

Gas molecules exert a force on the surfaces they contact, known as pressure. Gases typically exist as mixtures of different molecules in natural systems, such as the atmosphere containing oxygen, nitrogen, carbon dioxide, and other gases. The collective force of this gaseous mixture is termed atmospheric pressure.

Partial pressure signifies the individual pressure exerted by a specific gas within a mixture of gases. In any gas blend, each gas type, like oxygen or nitrogen, asserts its distinct partial pressure independent of the pressures of other gases coexisting in the same space (Figure 27). The collective pressure within a gaseous blend is termed the total pressure, which is the cumulative sum of all the individual partial pressures in the gas mixture.



Figure 27 | Partial Pressures of Gases in a Mixture | [49] This diagram illustrates the concept of partial pressures using a simplified model of gas molecules in containers. The image shows three containers: **Left:** A container filled with oxygen molecules (represented by blue and white dashes). The pressure gauge indicates a partial pressure of 159 mm Hg for oxygen. **Middle:** A container filled with nitrogen molecules (represented by yellow and orange dashes). The pressure gauge indicates a partial pressure of 593 mm Hg for nitrogen. **Right:** A container filled with a mixture of both oxygen (blue and white dashes) and nitrogen (yellow and orange dashes) molecules. The pressure gauge indicates a total pressure of 752 mm Hg, which is the sum of the partial pressures of oxygen and nitrogen.

Dalton's law aptly defines the behavior of gases in a gas blend, stipulating that each gas type present in the mixture exerts its own pressure. Therefore, the overall pressure contributed by the gases collectively in the mixture is the sum of their respective partial pressures (Figure 27). Partial pressure holds immense importance in foreseeing gas movement. A gas tends to move from an area where its partial pressure is higher to an area where its partial pressure is lower until equilibrium is achieved, whether in

a dissolved state within a liquid or as a component in the air. The greater the disparity in partial pressures between the two areas, the swifter the movement of gasses occurs.

Table 4 | *Partial Pressures of Atmospheric Gases* |

Gas	% of Total Composition	Partial Pressure (mm/Hg)
Nitrogen	78.62	597.5
Oxygen	20.84	158.4
Water	0.5	3.8
Carbon dioxide	0.04	0.3
Total composition/total atmospheric	100%	760.0

Fick's law of diffusion describes how easily a gas diffuses in a medium, such as in the alveoli or across membranes.

$$\text{Gas Diffusion} = \frac{\text{Area} \times \text{Difference in Pressure} \times \text{Diffusion Coefficient}}{\text{Distance}}$$

Diffusion coefficient represents the rate at which a gas diffuses through a medium (like air or liquid). A higher diffusion coefficient means that the gas diffuses faster. It depends on solubility and molecular weight. Gasses with higher solubility tend to diffuse more readily, and smaller molecules move more quickly than larger ones, given the same conditions.

Solubility of Gases in Liquids

Henry's law provides insights into gas behavior upon interacting with a liquid medium such as blood. According to this principle, the concentration of a gas within a liquid is directly proportional to both its solubility and partial pressure. In simpler terms, the higher the partial pressure of a gas, the greater the quantity of gas molecules that will dissolve into the liquid. Gas concentration within a liquid is also determined by the solubility of the gas in that particular liquid. To illustrate, although nitrogen is abundant in the atmosphere, very little nitrogen dissolves in the blood due to its significantly low solubility. However, under certain circumstances, a gas with low solubility may exhibit increased dissolution based on a higher partial pressure. For instance, in compressed air used by Scuba divers, the elevated partial pressure of nitrogen can lead to its heightened dissolution in the blood despite its low natural solubility. However, excessive nitrogen dissolved in the bloodstream can lead to a severe condition that can be life-threatening if left unaddressed.

Table 5 | *Composition and Partial Pressures of Alveolar Air* |

Gas	% of Total Composition	Partial Pressure (mm/Hg)
Nitrogen	74.9	569.2
Oxygen	13.6	103.4

Gas	% of Total Composition	Partial Pressure (mm/Hg)
Water	6.2	47.1
Carbon dioxide	5.3	40.3
Total composition/total atmospheric	100%	760.0

The composition of atmospheric and alveolar air varies in terms of gas concentrations. In both environments, the relative presence of gasses follows the order of nitrogen> oxygen > water vapor > carbon dioxide. Notably, the alveolar air contains a higher proportion of water vapor than the atmosphere due to the humidification process when air enters the lungs (Table 5). Throughout the respiratory cycle, there are fluctuations in the concentrations of oxygen and carbon dioxide. Inhalation leads to an increase in oxygen concentration and a decrease in carbon dioxide levels within the alveoli.[50]

Gas Exchange between the Alveolus and the Blood

The pulmonary artery is responsible for transporting deoxygenated blood from the heart to the lungs. As it divides and extends, it transforms into the pulmonary capillary network, which forms the respiratory membrane together with the alveoli. The gas exchange process unfolds as blood flows through this capillary network. In the alveoli, the partial pressure of oxygen (PO_2) is approximately 100 mmHg, while the partial pressure of carbon dioxide (PCO_2) is about 40 mmHg. In the deoxygenated blood arriving at the alveoli (via the pulmonary arteries), the PO_2 is around 40 mmHg, and the PCO_2 is about 45 mmHg. Oxygen diffuses from the alveolus into the blood because the PO_2 in the alveolus (100 mmHg) is higher than the PO_2 in the capillary blood (40 mmHg). Once O_2 diffuses across the alveolar and capillary walls into the blood, it binds to hemoglobin in red blood cells. Each hemoglobin molecule can carry up to four oxygen molecules. Carbon dioxide diffuses from the blood into the alveolus because the PCO_2 in the blood (45 mmHg) is higher than the PCO_2 in the alveolus (40 mmHg; Figure 28).

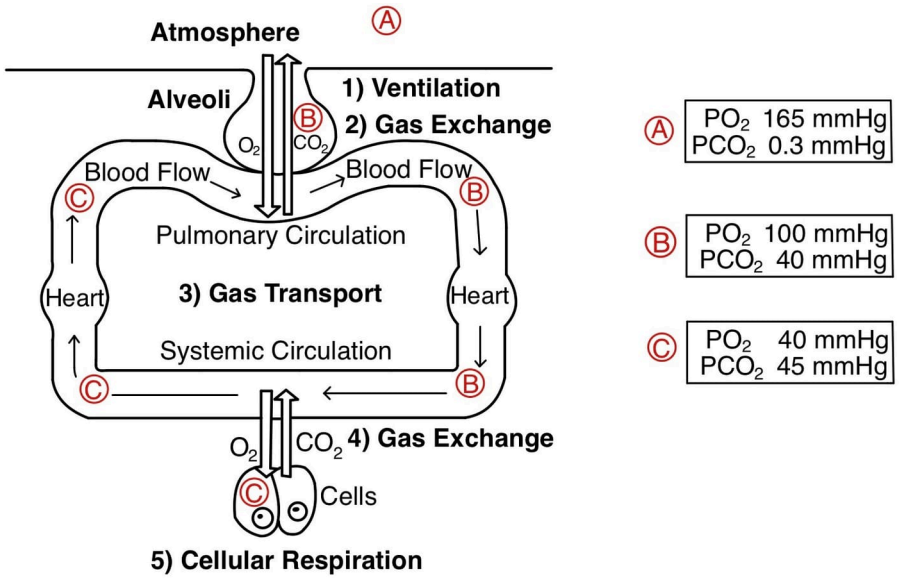


Figure 28 | Overview of Gas Exchange and Transport in the Body| [51] This diagram illustrates the interconnected processes of ventilation, gas exchange, and gas transport, and cellular respiration. (1) Ventilation: Air is inhaled from the atmosphere into the alveoli of the lungs. (2) Gas Exchange (Lungs): Oxygen (O_2) diffuses from the alveoli into the blood in the pulmonary capillaries, while carbon dioxide (CO_2) diffuses from the blood into the alveoli for exhalation. Partial pressures of O_2 (PO_2) and CO_2 (PCO_2) are shown at points A and B, illustrating the changes in gas concentrations. (3) Gas Transport: Oxygenated blood is transported

from the lungs to the heart via the pulmonary circulation, and then pumped through the systemic circulation to deliver oxygen to the body's tissues. (4) Gas Exchange (Tissues): Oxygen diffuses from the blood into the cells of the body's tissues, while carbon dioxide diffuses from the cells into the blood. Partial pressures of O_2 and CO_2 are shown at point C, reflecting the gas exchange at the tissue level. (5) Cellular Respiration: Cells utilize oxygen and produce carbon dioxide as a byproduct during cellular respiration.

Gas Exchange between the Blood and the Tissues

Oxygen in the tissues exhibits a low partial pressure, approximately 40 mm Hg, owing to its continual utilization in cellular respiration. In arterial blood transported to the tissues through capillaries, the partial pressure of oxygen is about 100 mm Hg. This difference in pressure prompts oxygen to dissociate from hemoglobin and diffuse out of the blood, traversing the interstitial space to reach the tissue (Figure 29). Hemoglobin with limited bound oxygen loses its bright appearance, resulting in darker, less oxygenated blood returning to the heart. Conversely, as cellular respiration generates carbon dioxide continuously, the partial pressure of carbon dioxide is higher in the tissues (45 mm Hg) than in the systemic arterial system, causing carbon dioxide to diffuse from the tissue, traverse the interstitial fluid, and enter the blood.

By the time the blood returns to the heart, the partial pressure of oxygen has decreased to around 40 mm Hg, while the partial pressure of carbon dioxide has increased to about 45 mm Hg. The blood is then pumped back to the lungs for renewed oxygenation during the process of external respiration.[10]

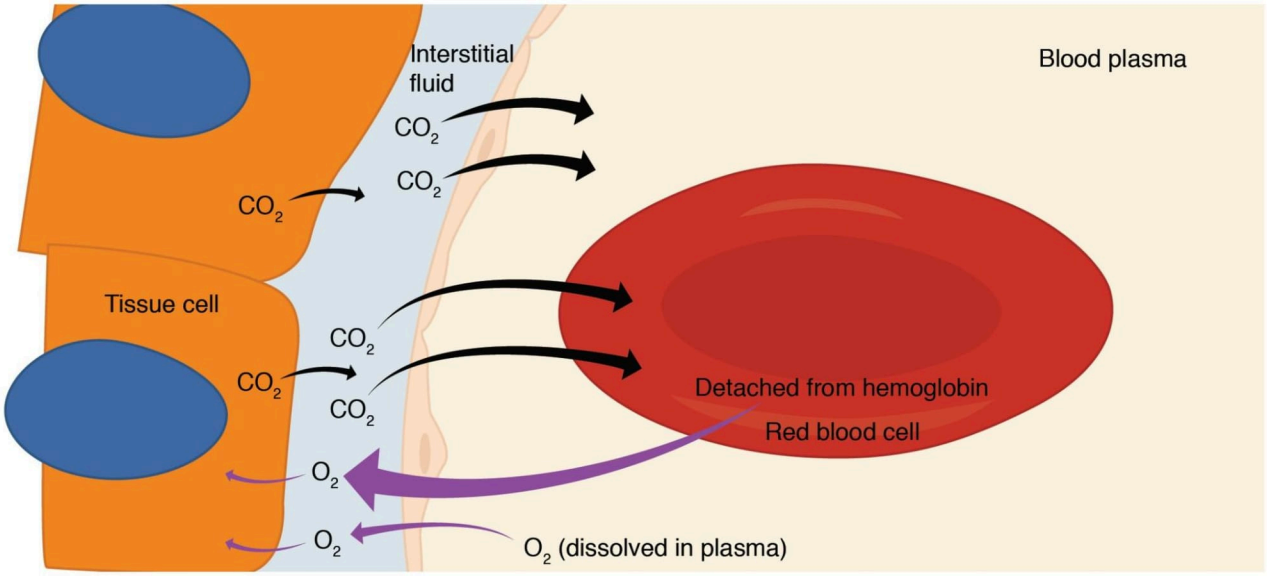


Figure 29 | Capillary Gas Exchange at the Tissue Level |[52] This diagram illustrates the exchange of gases between tissue cells, interstitial fluid, blood plasma, and red blood cells within a capillary. Carbon dioxide (CO_2), produced by tissue cells as a byproduct of cellular respiration, diffuses into the interstitial fluid and then into the blood plasma. From the plasma, some CO_2 enters red blood cells, where it attaches to hemoglobin. Simultaneously, oxygen (O_2), detached from the hemoglobin or dissolved in the plasma, diffuses out of the blood plasma and into the interstitial fluid. From there, O_2 enters the cells. The arrows indicate the direction of gas movement, highlighting the concentration gradients that drive diffusion.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 12.6: Gas Exchange is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.7: Transport of Gases

Although carbon dioxide is more soluble in blood than oxygen, both gasses rely on a specialized transport system to facilitate the movement of most gas molecules between the lungs and various tissues in the body.

Oxygen Transport in the Blood

About 98% of oxygen is transported from the lungs to the body's tissues by erythrocytes using hemoglobin. A small fraction of oxygen (~2 percent) can directly dissolve into the plasma from the alveoli. Hemoglobin, a metalloprotein found in red blood cells, plays a crucial role in binding oxygen molecules. Comprising four subunits, hemoglobin has a quaternary structure where each subunit encases an iron atom within the heme (See Chapter 8, Figure 5). As oxygen binds to the first site in the heme, it triggers a conformational shift in hemoglobin, enhancing the affinity for subsequent oxygen molecules. With each binding, the affinity for more oxygen increases until all four heme sites are occupied. At this stage, hemoglobin is referred to as fully saturated with oxygen. Partial saturation occurs when one to three heme sites are occupied. The percentage of available heme units bound to oxygen at a given time defines hemoglobin saturation. Hemoglobin saturation of 100% means every heme unit in all erythrocytes is bound to oxygen. In a healthy individual with normal hemoglobin levels, hemoglobin saturation typically falls between 95% and 99%.[53]

Oxygen Dissociation from Hemoglobin

The reversible chemical reaction depicting the production of oxyhemoglobin (Hb–O2) occurs when oxygen binds to hemoglobin and is articulated as follows:

$$\mathrm{Hb} + \mathrm{O_2} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{Hb{-}O_2}$$

Partial pressure plays a vital role in the binding and release of oxygen from heme. The **oxygen–hemoglobin dissociation curve** describes the relationship between partial pressure and the binding and subsequent dissociation of oxygen from heme. The graph in Figures 30 and 31 shows the oxygen-hemoglobin dissociation curve, which plots oxygen saturation of hemoglobin (%) on the y-axis against the partial pressure of oxygen (mmHg) on the x-axis. The curve demonstrates how hemoglobin binds to oxygen at different partial pressures. At high oxygen partial pressures (found in the lungs), hemoglobin saturation approaches 100%, indicating maximum oxygen binding. At lower oxygen partial pressures (found in tissues), hemoglobin releases oxygen to meet tissue demand. The volume of oxygen unloaded to tissues is shown as the vertical difference between the saturation at the lung and tissue levels.

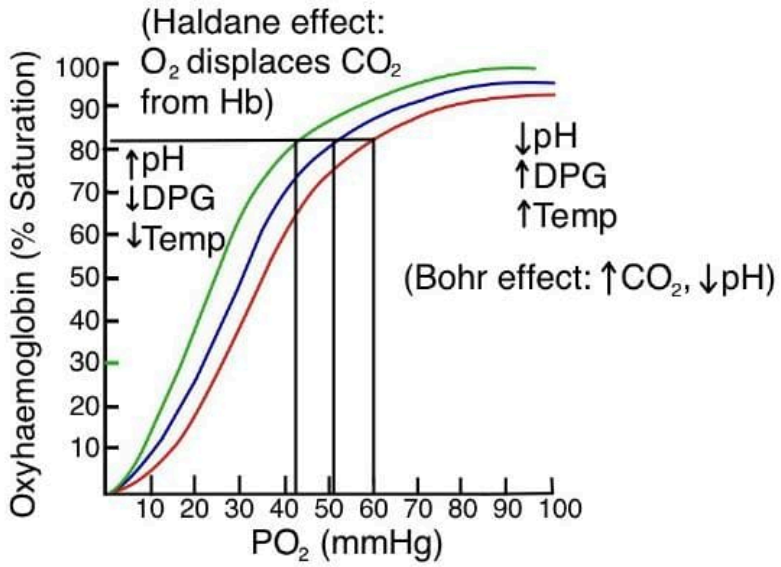


Figure 30 | Oxygen-Hemoglobin Dissociation and Effects of pH, 2,3-bisphosphoglycerate (BPG), and Temperature |[10] This graph illustrates the oxygen-hemoglobin dissociation curve and the influence of several factors. The curve shows the relationship between oxygen partial pressure and hemoglobin saturation. Factors such as CO_2, pH (Bohr effect), DPG, and temperature can shift the curve, altering hemoglobin's oxygen affinity.

Figure 30 also illustrates the effect of pH (**Bohr effect**) on hemoglobin's affinity for oxygen. The Bohr effect refers to the influence of pH on hemoglobin's affinity for oxygen. It describes how changes in pH, typically caused by changes in carbon dioxide concentration, affect the binding of oxygen to hemoglobin. When carbon dioxide levels increase (resulting in a decrease in pH), the hemoglobin's affinity for oxygen decreases, allowing for more efficient unloading of oxygen to the tissues that need it. Higher pH (alkalinity) increases hemoglobin's affinity for oxygen, shifting the curve leftward, resulting in higher saturation at a given partial pressure. Conversely, a lower pH (increased acidity) decreases hemoglobin's affinity for oxygen, shifting the curve rightward, facilitating oxygen release to tissues. This mechanism helps tissues receive more oxygen when they are metabolically active and produce more carbon dioxide, which lowers pH.

The oxygen – hemoglobin saturation/dissociation curve can be influenced by factors beyond partial pressure. Certain hormones (e.g., androgens, epinephrine, thyroid hormones, and growth hormone) stimulate erythrocytes to produce **2,3-bisphosphoglycerate** (**BPG**), a byproduct of glycolysis. BPG facilitates oxygen dissociation from hemoglobin. Higher concentrations of BPG expedite oxygen release from hemoglobin, despite its partial pressure (Figure 30).

Temperature variation can impact the rate of dissociation; higher temperatures accelerate dissociation, aiding in oxygen release, while lower temperatures inhibit dissociation (Figure 30). The human body, though, tightly regulates temperature, except in highly active tissues that generate more heat due to increased energy expenditure, consequently promoting oxygen release from hemoglobin and aiding oxygen delivery.

Oxygen Dissociation from Hemoglobin of the Fetus

In the fetal stage, despite having its own circulation and erythrocytes, the fetus relies on the mother for oxygen supply. Blood is delivered to the fetus through the umbilical cord, connected to the placenta, separated from the maternal blood by the chorion. Gas exchange at the chorion is akin to the respiratory membrane. The partial pressure of oxygen in maternal blood at the placenta (35 to 50 mm Hg) is lower than in maternal arterial blood due to the unique structural and metabolic environment of the intervillous space. This drop in pressure begins as oxygenated maternal blood from the spiral arteries enters the intervillous space, where it immediately mixes with deoxygenated blood. This mixing effectively dilutes the oxygen concentration within the pool. There is still a difference in oxygen partial pressures between maternal and fetal blood, around 20 mm Hg in fetal blood (Figure 31). Consequently, there is diffusion of oxygen into the fetal bloodstream.The fetus's hemoglobin has a higher affinity for oxygen than maternal hemoglobin, aiding in oxygen transfer to the fetal circulation.

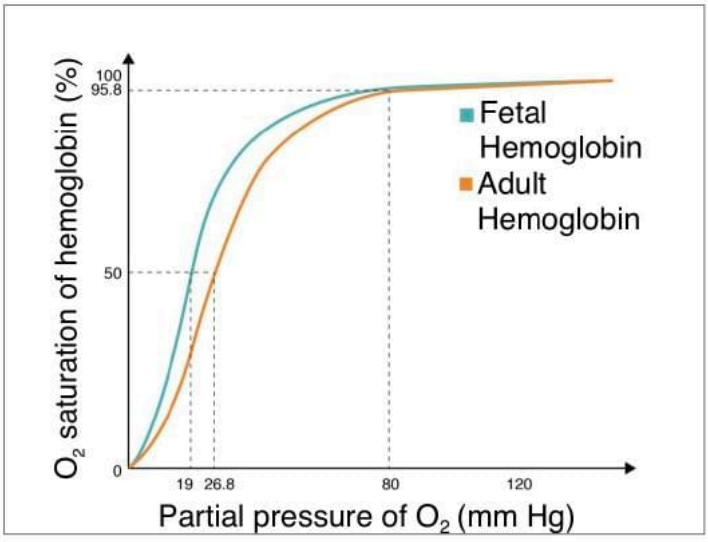


Figure 31 | Oxygen-Hemoglobin Dissociation Curves in Fetus and Adult |[54] Fetal hemoglobin has a greater affinity for oxygen than adult hemoglobin.

The **p50** value of hemoglobin occurs when hemoglobin is 50% saturated with oxygen. The typical p50 value is around 27 mmHg. A rightward shift increases p50, leading to reduced hemoglobin affinity for oxygen and, subsequently, the release of oxygen from hemoglobin. This curve governs automatic control mechanisms that regulate oxygen delivery to various tissues based on their metabolic demands. Highly active tissues like muscles have lower tissue oxygen partial pressures, about 20 mm Hg, due to rapid oxygen utilization for ATP production. The disparity between the capillary and tissue oxygen pressures allows a substantial release of oxygen from hemoglobin into these tissues. Conversely, tissues with lower metabolic rates, such as adipose tissue, maintain relatively higher oxygen partial pressures, leading to a limited release of oxygen from hemoglobin.

Effects of Carbon Monoxide (CO) on Hemoglobin and Oxygen Transport

CO binds to hemoglobin with an affinity that is 250 times that of oxygen to form carboxyhemoglobin. When the partial pressure of CO is only 1/250 that of oxygen, equal amounts of CO and oxygen will bind to hemoglobin. Because oxygen cannot bind to heme groups that are bound to CO, the presence of CO decreases the number of oxygen-binding sites available on hemoglobin. Hemoglobin bound to oxygen is reduced to 50%, which means that one half the binding sites would be bound to CO and one half the binding sites would be available for oxygen. The implications for oxygen transport are obvious: This effect *alone* would reduce oxygen content of blood and oxygen delivery to tissues by 50 percent. CO causes a left shift of the oxygen-hemoglobin dissociation curve. Those heme groups *not* bound to CO have an increased affinity for oxygen. Thus, P50 is decreased, making it more difficult for oxygen to be unloaded in the tissues. Together, these two effects of CO on oxygen binding to hemoglobin are catastrophic for oxygen delivery to tissues. Not only is there reduced oxygen-binding capacity of hemoglobin, but the remaining heme sites bind oxygen more tightly.[55]

Carbon Dioxide Transport in the Blood

Carbon dioxide is transported via three primary mechanisms. Initially, some carbon dioxide molecules dissolve in the blood plasma. Secondly, it is transported in the form of bicarbonate, which also dissolves within the plasma. Lastly, carbon dioxide is transported in a manner similar to the transportation of oxygen by erythrocytes (Figure 32).

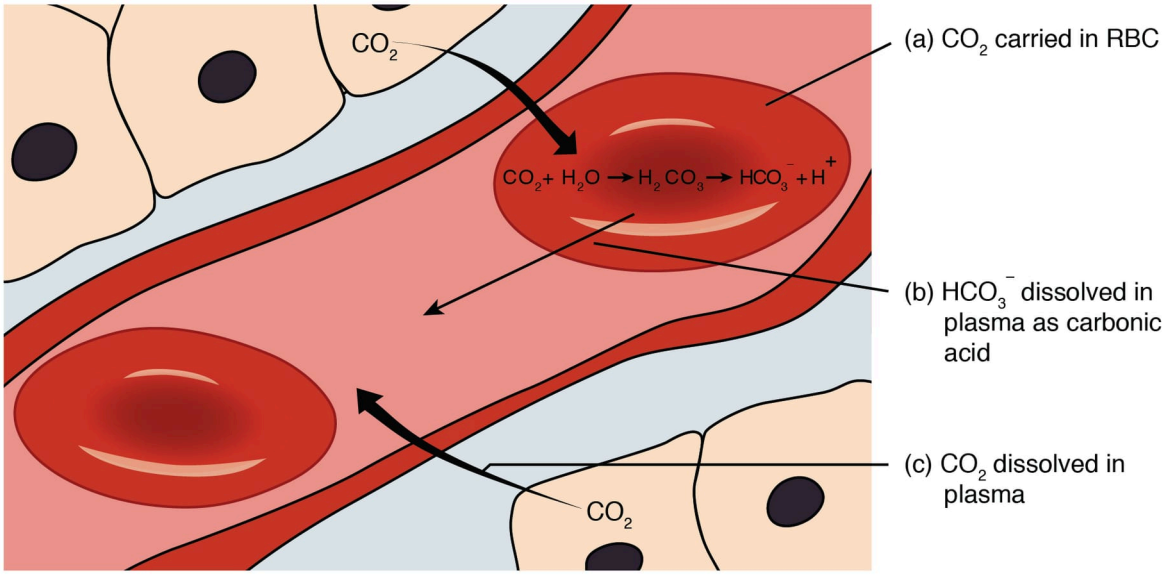


Figure 32 | Carbon Dioxide Transport |[56]

This diagram illustrates the three pathways by which carbon dioxide (CO2) produced by tissue cells enters the blood for transport to the lungs. **a. Formation of Carbaminohemoglobin:** CO2 diffuses into the red blood cell (RBC) and binds directly to hemoglobin (Hb), forming carbaminohemoglobin (HbCO2). b. **Bicarbonate Buffer System:** The majority of CO2 enters the RBC and undergoes a chemical transformation: CO2 reacts with water (H2O) to form carbonic acid (H2CO3), a process catalyzed by the enzyme carbonic anhydrase. Carbonic acid quickly dissociates into hydrogen ions (H+) and bicarbonate ions (HCO3–). The H+ ions bind to hemoglobin (Hb) to maintain pH, while the bicarbonate (HCO3–) diffuses out of the RBC into the plasma. **c. Dissolved in Plasma:** A small portion of the CO2 diffuses from the tissue cells into the capillary and remains physically dissolved in the blood plasma.

The transportation of carbon dioxide within the blood primarily occurs through three significant mechanisms. Approximately seven percent of carbon dioxide molecules that diffuse into the blood from tissues dissolve in plasma. This dissolved carbon dioxide travels in the bloodstream and, upon reaching the pulmonary capillaries, diffuses into the alveoli and is exhaled during respiration.

The largest portion, roughly 70 percent, of carbon dioxide entering the blood from tissues is transported as bicarbonate. Most bicarbonate is formed in red blood cells following the diffusion of carbon dioxide into capillaries. An enzyme within red blood cells, **carbonic anhydrase**, catalyzes the reaction of carbon dioxide and water to form **carbonic acid**. This compound dissociates into two ions: bicarbonate and hydrogen ions. There is a higher concentration of bicarbonate within red blood cells compared to the surrounding blood plasma, leading to its movement into the plasma in exchange for chloride ions, a process termed the **chloride shift**. This exchange occurs via a protein called **bicarbonate chloride exchanger** which maintains the electrical charge of the cells and plasma.[57]

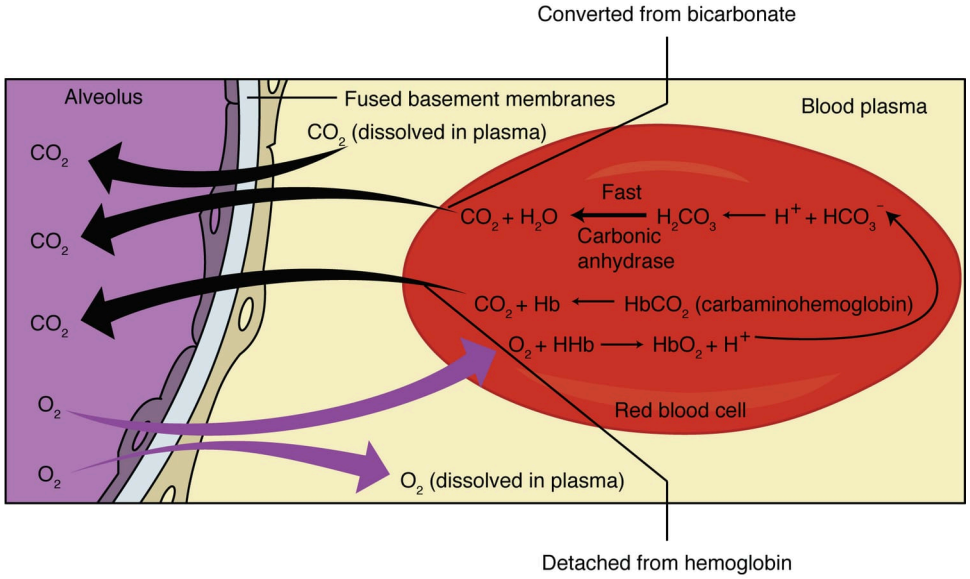


Figure 33 | Gas Exchange Between the Alveolus and Blood |[58] This figure illustrates the complex process of gas exchange in the lungs, including the diffusion of gases across the alveolar-capillary membrane, the role of hemoglobin in oxygen transport, and the bicarbonate buffer system in regulating blood pH. H_2CO_3 - carbonic acid; HCO_3^- - bicarbonate.

Upon reaching the pulmonary capillaries, oxygen enters the red blood cell and binds to hemoglobin. Hydrogen ions are released by oxyhemoglobin. Much of the bicarbonate reenters the erythrocytes, exchanging with chloride ions (**reverse chloride shift**). The hydrogen ions and bicarbonate then form carbonic acid, which, with the help of carbonic anhydrase, converts back into carbon dioxide and water (Figure 33). This carbon dioxide diffuses from the red blood cells into the plasma and further moves across the respiratory membrane into the alveoli for exhalation during respiration.

Around 20 percent of the total carbon dioxide binds to hemoglobin and is transported to the lungs. This binding occurs not with the iron as in the case of oxygen but with amino acid moieties on the globin portions of hemoglobin. The resulting compound, **carbaminohemoglobin**, gives deoxygenated blood its characteristic dark red color.

The binding and release of carbon dioxide by hemoglobin are dependent on the partial pressure of carbon dioxide. When blood reaches the tissues, the lower partial pressure of carbon dioxide causes carbon dioxide to leave the tissues and enter the blood. Subsequently, it moves into red blood cells and binds to hemoglobin. Conversely, at the pulmonary capillaries, the high partial pressure of carbon dioxide in the blood causes carbon dioxide to readily dissociate from hemoglobin and pass into the alveoli for exhalation.

Ventilatory Response to Carbon Dioxide

In a healthy individual with adequate oxygen levels, minute ventilation shows an increase of 2 to 5 liters per minute (averaging at 2.5 liters per minute) for every one-millimeter increase in alveolar PCO_2. This response holds true within the PCO_2 range of 40 to 70 mm Hg. However, higher concentrations of carbon dioxide beyond this range would cause direct respiratory

depression, resulting in symptoms such as dyspnea, intense headaches due to cerebral vasodilation, restlessness, faintness, and, at PCO_2 levels above 100 mm Hg, loss of consciousness. Narcotic and anesthetic agents can reduce the response to carbon dioxide, leading to a dose-related increase in end-tidal carbon dioxide. Additionally, surgical stimulation counteracts respiratory depression and lowers arterial PCO_2. Furthermore, anesthetic agents significantly depress the function of peripheral chemoreceptors, in addition to reducing the response to carbon dioxide in ventilation. At lower doses, narcotics depress the respiratory rate without altering the tidal volume. However, increased narcotic doses result in reductions of both the tidal volume and the respiratory rate by diminishing the sensitivity of the central respiratory centers to carbon dioxide stimulation. This reduced sensitivity is observed through a decrease in the slope of the arterial PCO_2 alveolar ventilation response curve and shifts to the right. Narcotics also suppress the hypoxic drive. The impact of narcotics is more pronounced in patients who are sleeping compared to those who are awake.[59]

The **Haldane effect** outlines the relationship between the oxygenation state of hemoglobin and its capacity to carry carbon dioxide (Figure 34). It describes how oxygenation and deoxygenation of hemoglobin affect its ability to carry carbon dioxide. Deoxygenated hemoglobin has a higher capacity to carry carbon dioxide compared to oxygenated hemoglobin. As hemoglobin releases oxygen in tissues, it has a higher affinity for carbon dioxide.

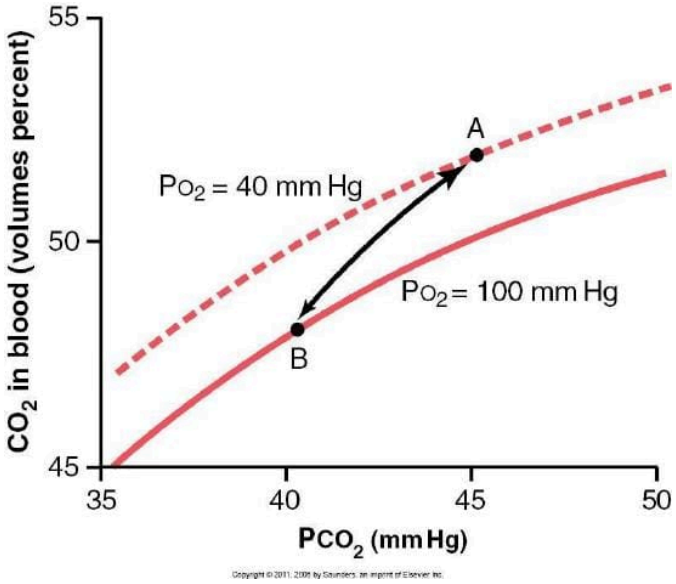


Figure 34 | The Haldane Effect |[10] This graph describes the relationship between the partial pressure of oxygen (PO_2) and the carbon dioxide (CO_2) content in the blood. The x-axis represents the partial pressure of CO_2 (PCO_2) in mmHg, and the y-axis represents the CO_2 content in the blood as volumes percent. Two curves are shown: one representing blood with a PO_2 of 40 mmHg (dashed line) and the other representing blood with a PO_2 of 100 mmHg (solid line). The curve with PO_2 of 100 mmHg is higher than the curve with PO_2 of 40 mmHg, indicating that at any given PCO_2, blood with a higher PO_2 carries less CO_2. The arrow from point B to point A represents the change in CO_2 content as blood transitions from a lower PO_2 (40 mmHg) to a higher PO_2 (100 mmHg). This demonstrates that as PO_2 increases, the CO_2 content in the blood decreases, illustrating the Haldane effect. This effect is crucial for enhancing CO_2 release in the lungs where PO_2 is high.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 12.7: Transport of Gases is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.8: Control of Breathing

During moments of rest, the respiratory system maintains a steady, rhythmic pattern directed by the brain's respiratory centers. This regulated pace ensures that the oxygen supply adequately meets the body's tissue requirements. However, there are occasions when the respiratory system needs to adjust its functions to match the body's increased demand for oxygen.

Respiratory Rate and Control of Ventilation

Breathing typically occurs involuntarily, but there are instances where one can consciously control it, like when swimming underwater, singing, or blowing bubbles. The rate of breathing is governed by respiratory centers situated in the pons and medulla oblongata, primarily responding to alterations in carbon dioxide, oxygen, and blood pH levels.

A child's normal breathing rate undergoes changes from birth to adolescence. An infant might breathe 30 to 60 times per minute, while a 10-year-old might average 18 to 30 breaths per minute. As they reach adolescence, their normal breathing rate aligns more closely with that of adults, around 12 to 18 breaths per minute.

Neural Control of Ventilation

The regulation of ventilation involves an intricate coordination among various brain regions, which signal the muscles responsible for pulmonary ventilation to contract (Figure 36, Table 6). This coordination typically leads to a regular and rhythmic pattern of breathing, ensuring adequate intake of oxygen and effective removal of carbon dioxide from the body.

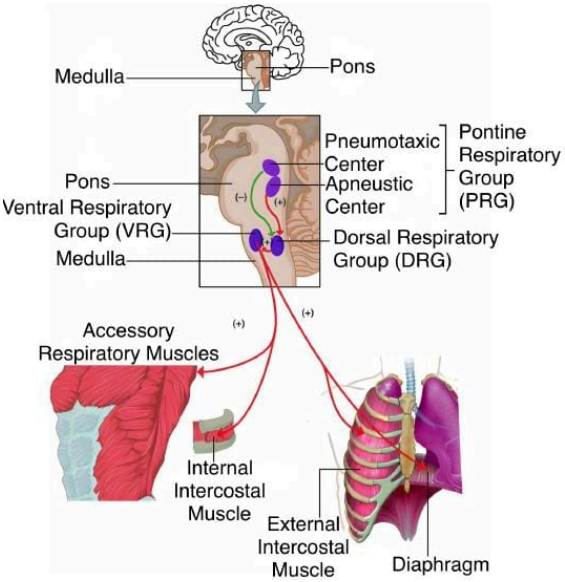


Figure 35 | Neural Control of Respiration |[60] This illustration depicts the hierarchical neural control of respiration, highlighting the key brainstem centers and their connections to respiratory muscles. At the top, a simplified brain diagram shows the location of the pons and medulla oblongata, the primary regions involved in respiratory regulation. An inset image provides a magnified view of these brainstem structures. Within the pons, the pneumotaxic center and apneustic center, collectively known as the pontine respiratory group (PRG), are shown. The PRG modulates respiratory rhythm and depth. In the medulla oblongata, the dorsal respiratory group (DRG) and the ventral respiratory group (VRG) are depicted. The DRG primarily controls inspiration, while the VRG is involved in both inspiration and expiration, especially during forceful breathing. Descending pathways from these brainstem centers are illustrated, showing their connections to the respiratory muscles. These include the diaphragm, the primary muscle of inspiration, as well as the external and internal intercostal muscles, which assist in breathing by expanding and contracting the rib cage. Accessory respiratory muscles, shown on the left, are recruited during increased respiratory demand. The red lines indicate the neural pathways, with (+) symbols denoting excitatory signals, indicating that these pathways stimulate muscle contraction. The inset shows inhibitory signals (-) indicating that the pontine respiratory group modulates the

medullary respiratory centers.

Neurons that innervate the respiratory muscles play a crucial role in controlling and regulating pulmonary ventilation. The primary brain centers responsible for this process are located in the medulla oblongata and the pontine respiratory group (Figure 35). The medulla oblongata contains the **dorsal respiratory group** (DRG) and the **ventral respiratory group** (VRG). The DRG helps maintain a steady breathing rhythm by stimulating the diaphragm and intercostal muscles to contract during inhalation. When DRG activity decreases, it ceases to prompt these muscles, allowing them to relax, thereby causing exhalation. DRG initiates breathing through intrinsic nerve activity, acting like a pacemaker for respiration. It generates a ramp signal, which begins with a weak impulse that gradually strengthens in a ramp-like manner over approximately 2 seconds. This steady increase in nerve activity stimulates the diaphragm to contract and initiate inhalation. After 2 seconds, the ramp signal ceases abruptly for about 3 seconds, which stops diaphragm excitation and allows the lungs to undergo passive elastic recoil, leading to exhalation. Following this period, a new inspiratory cycle begins as the DRG reactivates, maintaining a rhythmic breathing pattern. In contrast, the VRG is involved in forced breathing. Neurons within the VRG stimulate the accessory muscles for forced inhalation and exhalation, facilitating these specific breathing actions.

The pontine respiratory group includes the **apneustic** and **pneumotaxic centers**, essential parts of the breathing control mechanism. The apneustic center, a dual cluster of neuronal cell bodies, stimulates the neurons in the DRG, regulating the depth of inspiration, particularly for deeper breaths. On the other hand, the pneumotaxic center, comprising a network of neurons, suppresses the activity of the neurons in the DRG. It facilitates the relaxation phase after inspiration, thereby managing the overall rate of breathing.

The respiratory system's neural connections are organized into afferent and efferent pathways that facilitate breathing regulation. Afferent pathways carry sensory signals to the respiratory centers from various receptors. Chemoreceptor and baroreceptor signals travel through cranial nerves IX and X, while signals from thermoreceptors, pain receptors, and proprioceptors also contribute to respiratory adjustments based on temperature, pain, and body position. Efferent pathways carry motor signals from the brain to the respiratory muscles. These signals descend through the anterior portion of the lateral column of the spinal cord, reaching the cervical and thoracic segments. The phrenic nerve, originating from spinal levels C3 to C5, innervates the diaphragm, and the intercostal nerves, from T1 to T11, supply the intercostal muscles. Together, these pathways coordinate respiratory muscle activity to maintain effective breathing.[10]

The brain centers respond to systemic stimuli like carbon dioxide, oxygen, and pH levels in the blood. The primary stimulant for the medulla oblongata and pons is carbon dioxide concentration, not oxygen. **Chemoreceptors**, namely the central and peripheral receptors, sense these chemical changes. **Central chemoreceptors** are located on the ventrolateral surface of the medulla oblongata. They are sensitive primarily to changes in the pH of the cerebrospinal fluid, which reflects carbon dioxide levels in the blood. When blood carbon dioxide levels rise, it diffuses across the blood-brain barrier into the CSF, where it forms hydrogen ions and lowers the pH. This decrease in pH stimulates the central chemoreceptors to increase the respiratory rate and depth, helping to expel excess carbon dioxide and restore pH balance. Conversely, decreased carbon dioxide in the blood causes decreased hydrogen ions, resulting in shallower and slower breathing. Furthermore, peripheral chemoreceptors located in the aortic arch and carotid arteries are sensitive to hydrogen ion levels in the blood, adjusting ventilation to reduce carbon dioxide levels and balance hydrogen ions, thus regulating pH. They also sense drastic changes in dissolved oxygen. A significant drop in dissolved oxygen triggers these receptors to increase the respiratory rate. However, most oxygen is carried by hemoglobin, and these receptors sense dissolved oxygen only.

The **peripheral chemoreceptors** that are situated in the carotid bodies and aortic bodies, respond differently to changes in blood gases. They respond to decreased PaO2 and changes in pH. Moreover, the hypoxic drive originating from the peripheral chemoreceptors is crucial in advanced hypoxic states, where these receptors sustain respiration when other respiratory centers are unresponsive to direct chemical stimulation. Additionally, various brain regions, such as the hypothalamus and the limbic system, interact with the respiratory centers. The hypothalamus and other limbic regions influence breathing rates in response to emotions, pain, and changes in body temperature. For example, increased body temperature often leads to heightened respiratory rates. Feelings of excitement or fight-or-flight responses also prompt increased breathing rates. In chronic acidosis, the pH of cerebrospinal fluid is maintained close to normal through adjustments in bicarbonate ion concentrations, regulated by an ion pump at the blood-brain barrier.

Pulmonary Reflexes

The **Hering-Breuer inflation reflex**, attributed to Josef Breuer and Ewald Hering, is a protective reflex that prevents excessive lung inflation. Pulmonary stretch receptors, present in the airway smooth muscles, respond to overstretching of the lung during deep inhalation. When activated, they send signals via the vagus nerve to the inspiratory area in the brainstem, inhibiting further

inspiration and allowing expiration (Figure 36). However, the exact role of this reflex in normal breathing patterns is not entirely clear. It appears inactive during shallow breathing but is activated when lung volumes reach around 800 ml above functional residual capacity, potentially preventing alveolar overdistention.

Apart from these slowly adapting receptors, rapidly adapting receptors are found between the epithelial cells of the respiratory tract, primarily in larger airways, and respond rapidly to sudden mechanical stimuli. Their strategic locations make them sensitive to inhaled irritants or gases, leading to protective reflex actions such as coughing, bronchoconstriction, or hyperventilation.

C-fiber endings, also known as **J receptors**, are found near the pulmonary-capillary region. They are sensitive to various substances and are activated by factors like pulmonary congestion, edema, and microembolism. These endings respond to specific chemical agents, contributing to bronchoconstriction or dilation.[61]

Nasal airways contain receptors connected to the trigeminal and olfactory nerves. Stimulating these receptors leads to **sneezing**. Similarly, mechanical or chemical stimulation of the larynx, trachea, or bronchi triggers the cough reflex, which involves a deep inhalation followed by forced expiration to clear the airways of irritants.

Hiccups, sudden diaphragm spasms with glottis closure, are controlled by a mechanism separate from regular respiratory rhythm. Each of these reflexes plays a critical role in maintaining airway integrity and responding to potential threats or irritants encountered in the respiratory tract.

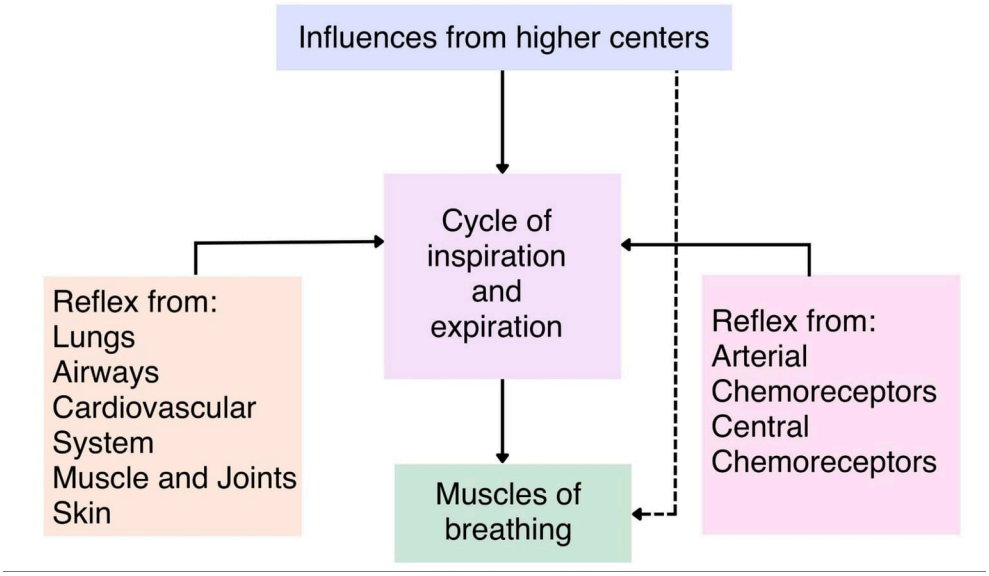


Figure 36 | Overview of the Regulation of Breathing | The cycle of inspiration and expiration is influenced by higher brain centers and multiple reflex pathways. Reflexes originating from the lungs, airways, cardiovascular system, muscles, joints, and skin provide sensory feedback to modulate respiration. Additionally, arterial and central chemoreceptors detect changes in blood gases, such as oxygen and carbon dioxide levels, and contribute to respiratory control. The cycle of breathing directly regulates the activity of respiratory muscles to maintain proper ventilation and gas exchange. Dashed and solid arrows indicate direct and indirect regulatory pathways in respiratory control.

Hyperpnea

Hyperpnea refers to the increased rate and depth of breathing that accommodates the higher oxygen demand required during certain conditions like exercise or specific diseases that target the respiratory system. It is distinct from hyperventilation, which leads to low blood carbon dioxide levels and higher blood pH and is not necessarily related to meeting the cellular need for oxygen. During exercise, the muscles require more oxygen. While one might expect hyperpnea to be triggered by this increased demand, it actually precedes a drop in oxygen levels in the muscles which suggests that other mechanisms, apart from a decline in oxygen levels, are at play. The exact triggers behind exercise-related hyperpnea remain unclear but involve various factors related to the nervous system and the brain's respiratory centers.

The decision to engage in physical activity initiates a psychological stimulus that influences the brain's respiratory centers.

Additionally, the activation of motor neurons controlling the muscles involved in the activity also stimulates these centers. The movement and stretching detected by proprioceptors located in the muscles, joints, and tendons represent another signal to the brain's respiratory centers. These neural factors align with the rapid and immediate rise in ventilation observed at the start of exercise and the subsequent swift decrease upon its conclusion, indicating a strong correlation between neural inputs and changes in ventilation throughout the activity.

Table 6 | *Summary of Regulation of Ventilation* |

System Component	Function
Medullary Respiratory Center	Sets the basic rhythm of breathing
Ventral Respiratory Group	Generates the breathing rhythm and integrates data coming into the medulla
Dorsal Respiratory Group	Integrates input from the stretch receptors and the chemoreceptors in the periphery
Pontine Respiratory Group	Influences and modifies the function of the medulla oblongata
Aortic Body	Monitors blood pCO2 and pO2
Carotid Body	Monitors blood pCO2, pO2 and pH
Hypothalamus	Monitors emotional state and body temperature
Cortical Areas of the Brain	Control voluntary breathing
Proprioceptors	Send impulses regarding joint and muscle movements
Pulmonary Irritant Reflexes	Protect the respiratory zones from foreign material
Inflation Reflex	Protects the lungs from overinflating

High Altitude Effects

At higher altitudes, the reduced atmospheric pressure affects the ability of the body to achieve the same level of oxygen saturation compared to lower altitudes. While the proportion of oxygen in the atmosphere remains constant at approximately 21 percent, the decreased pressure causes a decline in the partial pressure of oxygen. Consequently, individuals at higher altitudes find it more challenging to achieve the same level of oxygen saturation as those at sea level. The reduced atmospheric pressure impacts the saturation of hemoglobin in the blood. At 19,000 feet above sea level, hemoglobin saturation can be around 67 percent, contrasting with the approximately 98 percent saturation observed at sea level.

Table 7 | *Partial Pressure of Oxygen at Different Altitudes* |

Example Location	Altitude (Feet Above Sea Level)	Atmospheric Pressure (mmHg)	Partial Pressure of Oxygen (mmHg)
New York City, New York	0	760	159
Boulder, Colorado	5,000	632	133
Aspen, Colorado	8,000	565	118
Pike's Peak, Colorado	14,000	447	94
Denali (Mt. McKinley), Alaska	20,000	350	73
Mt. Everest, Tibet	29,000	260	54

At higher altitudes, the diminished partial pressure of oxygen reduces the diffusion of oxygen across the respiratory membrane, leading to a decreased saturation of hemoglobin. However, despite this reduced saturation, the body's tissues continue to receive a sufficient oxygen supply, particularly during periods of rest. This phenomenon is attributed to two primary mechanisms.

Primarily, the volume of oxygen molecules entering the tissues from the blood is almost equivalent between sea level and high altitudes. Although hemoglobin saturation is greater at sea level, only a quarter of the oxygen molecules are actually released into the tissues. Conversely, at high altitudes, a larger proportion of oxygen molecules is liberated into the tissues.

Furthermore, at high altitudes, erythrocytes produce an increased amount of BPG, which facilitates the detachment of oxygen from hemoglobin. However, strenuous physical activities like skiing or hiking at high altitudes may provoke altitude sickness due to the diminished oxygen reserves in the blood. At sea level, a significant reserve of oxygen is present in venous blood, which muscles can utilize during physical exertion.

Given the considerably lower oxygen saturation at higher altitudes, this venous reserve becomes small, contributing to symptoms indicative of diminished blood oxygen levels. In response to the oxygen-deprived environment at high altitudes, the body increases erythropoietin secretion, resulting in a higher count of red blood cells.[62]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 12.8: Control of Breathing is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.9: References

1. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 22.2 Major Respiratory Structures.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/a20b8077aaf4688018122bf8f59ecfea069ed3b0

2. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 22.3 Nose.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/a97155291e8ffc669518800b731f25200b9203b6

3. Drake, R. L., Vogl, A. W., & Mitchell, A. W. M. (2020). *Gray's anatomy for students* (4th ed.). Elsevier.

4. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 22.4 Upper Airway.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/dbbae187749a6cc16b96e3221925513794698cf8

5. FrozenMan. (2014). **Posterior Superior Nasal Nerve** [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/5/56/Posterior_Superior_Nasal_Nerve.png

6. Galarza-Paez L, Marston G, Downs BW. Anatomy, Head and Neck, Nose. [Updated 2023 Jul 24]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK532870/

7. Mishejil, A. A. (2018). [Image]. In *Endoscopic Septoplasty versus Conventional Septoplasty*. ResearchGate. https://doi.org/10.13140/RG.2.2.34732.36486

8. Cappello ZJ, Minutello K, Dublin AB. Anatomy, Head and Neck, Nose Paranasal Sinuses. [Updated 2023 Feb 11]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK499826/

9. OpenStax College. (2013). **Paranasal Sinuses** [Image]. In *Anatomy & Physiology*. Connexions. http://cnx.org/content/col11496/1.6/

10. Hall, J. E. (2021). *Guyton and Hall textbook of medical physiology* (14th ed.). Elsevier.

11. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 22.5 Pseudostratified Ciliated Columnar Epithelium.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240506.185246/resources/3561174e6520b7b03c47275b51b2f0f26af8a64a

12. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 22.7 Larynx.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/cbef6fd77f1e4b1fd1c4ab67937f510b3fae9664

13. OpenStax College. (2013). **2307 Cartilages of the Larynx** [Image]. In *Anatomy & Physiology*. Connexions. http://cnx.org/content/col11496/1.6/

14. Jkwchui. (2014). **Drawing of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve** [Image]. Based on a drawing by Truth-seeker2004. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/64/Recurrent_laryngeal_nerve.svg

15. Arrangoiz, R., Cordera, F., Caba, D., Muñoz, M., Moreno, E., & Luque de León, E. (2018). **Figure 5: Anatomy of the recurrent laryngeal nerve and its relationship to the inferior thyroid artery and recurrent laryngeal nerve.** In *Comprehensive Review of Thyroid Embryology, Anatomy, Histology, and Physiology for Surgeons*. Scientific Research Publishing. https://www.scirp.org/pdf/ijohns_2018071317420392.pdf

16. Hoerter JE, Fakoya AO, Chandran SK. Anatomy, Head and Neck: Laryngeal Muscles. [Updated 2024 Jul 17]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK545265/

17. McCullagh, Kassie L, Rupali N Shah, and Benjamin Y Huang. "Anatomy of the Larynx and Cervical Trachea." *Neuroimaging clinics of North America*. 32.4 (2022): 809–829. Web.

18. Mieczkowski B, Seavey BF. Anatomy, Head and Neck, Trachea. [Updated 2023 Aug 7]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK448070/

19. Blausen.com staff. (2014). **Trachea** [Image]. In *Medical gallery of Blausen Medical 2014*. *WikiJournal of Medicine*, 1(2). https://doi.org/10.15347/wjm/2014.010

20. Amador C, Weber C, Varacallo MA. Anatomy, Thorax, Bronchial. [Updated 2023 Aug 8]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK537353/

21. Unknown author. (n.d.). **Illustration of bronchi and lungs** [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/db/Illu_bronchi_lungs.jpg

22. NIH: National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute. (2014). *Illu bronchi lungs.jpg* [Illustration]. Wikimedia Commons. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Illu_bronchi_lungs.jpg

23. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 22.11 Structures of the Respiratory Zone. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/f952b574f8274066d24917980386cd90970675b3

24. Mahabadi N, Goizueta AA, Bordoni B. Anatomy, Thorax, Lung Pleura And Mediastinum. [Updated 2024 Mar 24]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK519048/

25. Betts, J. G. et al. (2013). **Figure 22.14 Parietal and Visceral Pleurae of the Lungs.** In *Anatomy and Physiology*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/books/anatomy-and-physiology/pages/22-2-the-lungs

26. Betts, J. G. et al. (2013). **Figure 20.23 Pulmonary Circuit Blood.** In *Anatomy and Physiology*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/books/anatomy-and-physiology/pages/22-2-the-lungs

27. Jain V, Bordes SJ, Bhardwaj A. Physiology, Pulmonary Circulatory System. [Updated 2023 May 1]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK525948/

28. Chaudhry R, Omole AE, Bordoni B. Anatomy, Thorax, Lungs. [Updated 2024 Apr 20]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK470197/

29. OpenStax College. (2017). **2315 Intrapulmonary and Intrapleural Pressure** [Image]. Modified version. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/04/2315_Intrapulmonary_and_Intrapleural_Pressure_es.png

30. Kenny BJ, Ponichtera K. Physiology, Boyle's Law. [Updated 2022 Oct 10]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK538183/

31. Betts, J. G. et al. (2013). **Figure 22.15 Boyle's Law.** In *Anatomy and Physiology*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/books/anatomy-and-physiology/pages/22-3-the-process-of-breathing

32. Strohl KP, Butler JP, Malhotra A. Mechanical properties of the upper airway. Compr Physiol. 2012 Jul;2(3):1853-72. doi: 10.1002/cphy.c110053. PMID: 23723026; PMCID: PMC3770742.

33. Desai JP, Moustarah F. Pulmonary Compliance. [Updated 2022 Sep 12]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK538324/

34. Davies, S., & Misra, U. (2011). Respiration: Ventilation. *Anaesthesia & Intensive Care Medicine*, *12*(10), 450-452. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mpaic.2011.07.006

35. Betts, J. G. et al. (2013). **Figure 22.17 Inspiration and Expiration.** In *Anatomy and Physiology*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/books/anatomy-and-physiology/pages/22-3-the-process-of-breathing

36. Higashino M, Miyata K, Kudo K. Coordination dynamics of thoracic and abdominal movements during voluntary breathing. Sci Rep. 2022 Aug 2;12(1):13266. doi: 10.1038/s41598-022-17473-9. PMID: 35918415; PMCID: PMC9345990.

37. Delgado BJ, Bajaj T. Physiology, Lung Capacity. [Updated 2023 Jul 24]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL):

StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK541029/

38. Betts, J. G. et al. (2013). **Figure 22.18 Respiratory Volumes and Capacities.** In *Anatomy and Physiology*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/4c87f180f435531cbb43bfc7235e305ed339bd78

39. Hopkins E, Sharma S. Physiology, Functional Residual Capacity. [Updated 2022 Dec 26]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK500007/

40. Babb TG. Exercise ventilatory limitation: the role of expiratory flow limitation. Exerc Sport Sci Rev. 2013 Jan;41(1):11-8. doi: 10.1097/JES.0b013e318267c0d2. PMID: 23038244; PMCID: PMC3529766.

41. Quinn M, St Lucia K, Rizzo A. Anatomy, Anatomic Dead Space. [Updated 2023 Feb 19]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK442016/

42. Intagliata S, Rizzo A, Gossman W. Physiology, Lung Dead Space. [Updated 2023 Jul 4]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK482501/

43. Praetel C, Banner MJ, Monk T, Gabrielli A. Isoflurane inhalation enhances increased physiologic deadspace volume associated with positive pressure ventilation and compromises arterial oxygenation. Anesth Analg. 2004 Oct;99(4):1107-1113.

44. Powers KA, Dhamoon AS. Physiology, Pulmonary Ventilation and Perfusion. [Updated 2023 Jan 23]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK539907/

45. Galvin, G. B. Drummond, M. Nirmalan, Distribution of blood flow and ventilation in the lung: gravity is not the only factor, *BJA: British Journal of Anaesthesia*, Volume 98, Issue 4, April 2007, Pages 420–428, https://doi.org/10.1093/bja/aem036

46. Hall ET, Sá RC, Holverda S, Arai TJ, Dubowitz DJ, Theilmann RJ, Prisk GK, Hopkins SR. The effect of supine exercise on the distribution of regional pulmonary blood flow measured using proton MRI. J Appl Physiol (1985). 2014 Feb 15;116(4):451-61. doi: 10.1152/japplphysiol.00659.2013. Epub 2013 Dec 19. PMID: 24356515; PMCID: PMC3921353.

47. Laboratoires Servier. (2016). **Respiratory system - Lungs** [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/e9/Respiratory_system_-_Lungs_--_Smart-Servier.png

48. Raimondi Cominesi, D., Forcione, M., Pozzi, M. *et al.* Pulmonary shunt in critical care: a practical approach with clinical scenarios. *J Anesth Analg Crit Care* 4, 18 (2024). https://doi.org/10.1186/s44158-024-00147-5

49. Betts, J. G. et al. (2013). **Figure 22.21 Partial and Total Pressures of a Gas.** In *Anatomy and Physiology*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/73d4c0445ad4852b20f98c5d64d65c1c5e589d56

50. Chandan G, Cascella M. Gas Laws and Clinical Application. [Updated 2023 Aug 28]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK546592/

51. https://biosiva.50webs.org/respiration.html

52. https://courses.lumenlearning.com/su.../gas-exchange/

53. Rhodes CE, Denault D, Varacallo MA. Physiology, Oxygen Transport. [Updated 2022 Nov 14]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK538336/

54. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 22.27 Oxygen-Hemoglobin Dissociation Curves in Fetus and Adult.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/4327801a93c73cbacc598163ab87b242545c64da

55. Patel S, Jose A, Mohiuddin SS. Physiology, Oxygen Transport And Carbon Dioxide Dissociation Curve. [Updated 2023 Mar 27]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK539815/

56. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 22.28 Carbon Dioxide Transport.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/0a5914bd4c88ad10cfa14f60d326a729fc88f7a4

57. Bonar PT, Casey JR. Plasma membrane Cl⦰/HCO_3⦰ exchangers: structure, mechanism and physiology. Channels (Austin). 2008 Sep-Oct;2(5):337-45. doi: 10.4161/chan.2.5.6899. PMID: 19066446.

58. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 22.22 External Respiration.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/e9f09bac9f50684bda8170444b458a66ad9af447

59. Benner A, Lewallen NF, Sharma S. Physiology, Carbon Dioxide Response Curve. [Updated 2023 Jul 17]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK538146/

60. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). **Figure 22.20 Respiratory Centers of the Brain.** In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/171baf4f46c4c283037fc7cf4366cde5f2c3d6b4

61. Brinkman JE, Toro F, Sharma S. Physiology, Respiratory Drive. [Updated 2023 Jun 5]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK482414/

62. Taylor, A.T. (2011). **High-altitude illnesses: Physiology, risk factors, prevention, and treatment.** *Rambam Maimonides Medical Journal, 2*(1), e0022. https://doi.org/10.5041/RMMJ.10022

This page titled 12.9: References is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13: FLUID, ELECTROLYTE, AND ACID-BASE BALANCE

13.1: Objectives
13.2: Introduction
13.3: Water Content Within the Body
13.4: Fluid Compartments in the Body
13.5: Composition of Body Fluids
13.6: Water Balance
13.7: Electrolyte Balance
13.8: Acid-Base Balance
13.9: References

This page titled 13: Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Balance is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

13.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- Explain how water facilitates chemical reactions in the body and supports physiological functions through its unique properties.
- Describe the major fluid compartments (intracellular and extracellular) and discuss their respective roles in physiological function.
- Explain how body water content changes across different life stages and body types, and the significance of these variations.
- Discuss how osmosis and the balance of solutes across cellular membranes maintain cellular and systemic homeostasis.
- Describe how the body regulates water intake and output, including mechanisms such as thirst response, ADH, and the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system.
- Identify how changes in fluid compartments affect the body and recognize conditions that alter volume and osmolality, including hyperosmotic and hyposmotic conditions.
- Describe the role of key electrolytes in maintaining fluid balance across plasma, interstitial fluid, and intracellular fluid, and the physiological consequences of electrolyte imbalances.
- List the primary electrolytes in the body and explain their major roles in physiological processes.
- Understand the mechanisms involved in maintaining electrolyte homeostasis, including dietary intake, absorption, and renal excretion.
- Identify clinical conditions (e.g., hyponatremia, hypernatremia, hypokalemia) and explain their causes, symptoms, and implications for cellular function.
- Explain the concept of the anion gap and its significance in diagnosing metabolic disturbances.
- Describe the role of hormones in the regulation of calcium, phosphate, sodium, and potassium levels.
- Elucidate the correlation between hydrogen ions and the concept of pH, outlining their significance in physiological systems.
- Identify the three major acid-base regulatory mechanisms that exist in the body.
- Explain how the chemical buffer systems function.
- List the three chemical buffer systems and their approaches in regulating pH.
- Examine the role of respiration in maintaining acid-base equilibrium within the body and how breathing influences this balance.
- Describe the mechanisms related to hydrogen ion secretion and bicarbonate ion reabsorption in renal tubules, highlighting their impact on acid-base balance.
- Explain the functions of phosphate and ammonia buffers in the renal tubule, focusing on their roles in producing new bicarbonate and buffering hydrogen ions.
- Explain how the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation relates to acid/base disturbances.

- Explore the physiological changes observed during the progression of respiratory acidosis and respiratory alkalosis, including compensatory mechanisms.
- Investigate the physiological changes observed during metabolic acidosis and metabolic alkalosis and the compensatory mechanisms involved.

This page titled 13.1: Objectives is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.2: Introduction

Chemical reactions in the body occur within aqueous solutions, whether within the plasma, interstitial fluid, or intracellular environments. Water, the primary constituent, not only facilitates these chemical reactions but also plays critical roles attributed to its unique properties. Substances dissolved in these solutions are termed solutes and encompass a broad spectrum, including proteins, carriers of lipids and carbohydrates, and, notably, electrolytes – minerals dissociated from salts that carry electrical charges.

Water traverses cellular membranes and moves between bodily compartments primarily through osmosis where water shifts from areas of lower solute concentration to those of higher solute concentration. Maintaining an optimal balance of solutes both inside and outside the cells is essential to uphold normal physiological functions and ensure cellular homeostasis.

This page titled 13.2: Introduction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.3: Water Content Within the Body

The sustenance of life in the human body heavily depends on water, a universal solvent, acting as the primary medium for metabolic reactions and functioning as a crucial solvent for essential nutrients and solutes. Additionally, the molecular configuration of water allows it to generate surface tension, a result of the cohesive forces at the liquid's surface stemming from the polar nature of water molecules. This unique property is fundamental in various physiological functions such as fat emulsification, the protective role of mucus, and the structural integrity of cell membranes, all of which rely on surface tension. Despite its continuous turnover, maintaining a stable body water content is vital for the proper operation of physiological processes.[1]

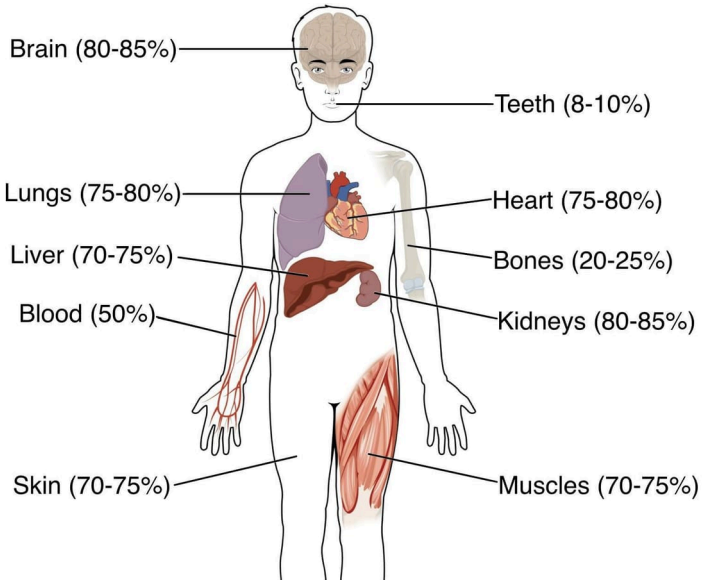


Figure 1 | Water Content in the Major Body Structures |[2] This illustration emphasizes the high water composition in organs essential for metabolic and physiological processes, such as the brain, lungs, heart, kidneys, and muscles, while also indicating lower water content in structures like bones and teeth.

In healthy individuals, the percentage of water content varies across different stages of life. Infants possess the highest water content, constituting approximately 75 percent of their body mass. As individuals mature into adulthood, the percentage decreases to around 50-60 percent for both men and women. Notably, as age progresses, the body water percentage can drop to as low as 45 percent in older individuals. This variability in water content is attributed to the changing proportions of different bodily tissues and organs, ranging from infancy through adulthood and into old age. The allocation of water content differs among organs, muscles, fat, bones, and various tissues, influencing the overall body water percentage (Figure 1, Table 1). The brain and kidneys display the highest proportions of water content, comprising approximately 80 to 85 percent of their total masses. In contrast, the ratio of water is notably lower in teeth, representing only 8 to 10 percent of their mass. The varied water content across organs and tissues influences the overall physiological balance and functions in individuals of different age groups.[3]

Table 1 | *Total body water in relation to body weight* |

Body Type	Total Body Water % Adult Male	Total Body Water % Adult FeMale	Total Body Water % Infant
Normal	60	50	70
Lean	70	60	80
Obese	50	42	60

This page titled 13.3: Water Content Within the Body is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.4: Fluid Compartments in the Body

The human body is organized into distinct fluid compartments, each characterized by its own unique properties and functions. These compartments are separated by physical barriers, maintaining the integrity and segregation of the fluids.

Intracellular Fluid (ICF)

The ICF constitutes the fluid enclosed within cell membranes, existing within the cellular boundaries (Figure 2). It represents the primary component of the cytosol or cytoplasm. Approximately 60 percent of the body's total water content is allocated to the ICF. In an average-sized adult male, the ICF accounts for around 25 liters (equivalent to seven gallons) of fluid (Table 2). The volume of ICF remains relatively stable due to precise regulatory mechanisms. Maintaining the ICF within a balanced range is vital, as an imbalance may lead to cellular **dehydration** or **overhydration**, impacting cellular activities or causing hemolysis.

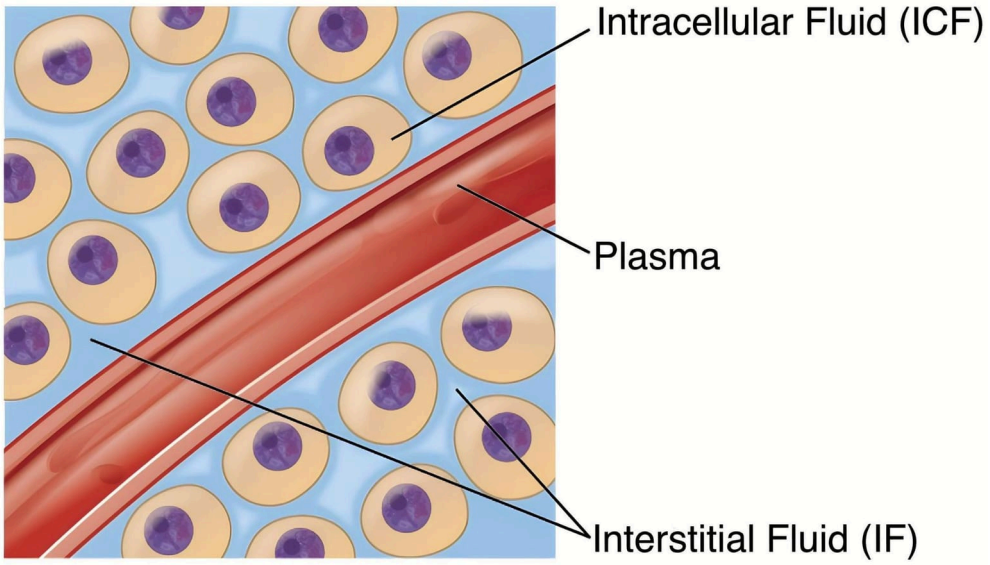


Figure 2 | Fluid Compartments in the Human Body |[4] This diagram illustrates the distribution of body fluids in different compartments. The image illustrates the three major fluid compartments in the body: Intracellular Fluid (ICF), which is contained within the cells (beige-colored structures with purple nuclei); Interstitial Fluid (IF), which surrounds the cells in the extracellular space (blue background); and Plasma, the fluid component of blood within the blood vessel (red structure). These compartments play a crucial role in maintaining fluid balance and homeostasis in the body.

Extracellular Fluid (ECF)

The ECF encompasses the remaining one-third of the body's total water content. Around 20 percent of the ECF is represented by plasma, which plays a vital role in transporting various substances, including blood cells, proteins, electrolytes, nutrients, gasses, and waste products throughout the body. Interstitial fluid (IF) or tissue fluid represents a significant portion of the ECF. It is the fluid surrounding cells and serves as a medium for the exchange of gasses, nutrients, and waste products between the bloodstream and cells (Figure 2). The passage of materials between the IF and cells is regulated by selectively permeable cell membranes. Additionally, the ECF contains small amounts of other fluids, approximately 1 to 2 percent of body weight. These fluids are located in body cavities, including secretions of the gastrointestinal tract, urine, cerebrospinal fluid, and synovial fluid.

Table 2 | *Fluid Compartments in the Human Body* |

Total Body Water (100%, 42 L)	
Intracellular Fluid (ICF; 67%; 28L)	Extracellular Fluid (ECF; 33%; 14L)

Total Body Water (100%, 42 L)		
	Interstitial Fluid (IF; 80% of ECF); 11L)	Plasma (20% of ECF); 3L

ECF acts as an intermediary between the body's internal and external environments, serving as a critical buffer zone. To maintain the standard composition of the ECF, numerous physiological mechanisms are in place. Whenever there is a deviation in the ECF composition from its normal state, compensatory mechanisms are triggered to restore equilibrium. For instance, a surge in blood glucose levels post-meal stimulates the release of insulin, aiding in the regulation of blood glucose levels by enhancing the uptake of glucose by the cells, thereby returning levels to their standard range.[5]

This page titled 13.4: Fluid Compartments in the Body is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.5: Composition of Body Fluids

The components of the ECF — plasma and IF — bear greater resemblance to each other compared to the ICF (Table 3). Plasma contains elevated concentrations of sodium, chloride, bicarbonate ions and proteins. The composition of these solutes are similar in the IF, except for significantly lower protein levels. On the other hand, the ICF demonstrates higher levels of potassium, phosphate, and magnesium ions, with notably increased protein concentrations compared to the ECF.

Body fluids generally maintain a neutral charge. This equilibrium in fluids involves a balance of cations and anions. Although sodium and potassium ions can move through leak channels with sodium ions entering cells and potassium ions leaving cells, the high levels of potassium ions and low levels of sodium ions within the ICF are upheld by sodium-potassium exchange pumps located in cell membranes.[5]

Table 3 | *The Concentrations of Electrolytes in the Body Fluids* |

Electrolytes	Plasma (mEq/L)	Interstitial fluid (mEq/L)	Intracellular fluid (mEq/L)
Sodium	142	145.1	12.0
Potassium	4.3	4.4	150
Chloride	104	117.4	4.0
Bicarbonate	24.0	27.4	12.0

This page titled 13.5: Composition of Body Fluids is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.6: Water Balance

The body's water balance is maintained through a continuous exchange between water intake and output, with a typical daily intake of about 2500 mL (nearly 3 quarts) for an average adult. Drinking fluids constitutes the primary source of water intake, contributing roughly 60 percent of the total, or around 1400–1800 mL per day. Additionally, water in food accounts for about 30 percent of intake, adding approximately 700–1000 mL daily. The body also generates water internally through metabolic processes, which makes up around 10 percent of intake, or between 300–400 mL each day.

Each day, approximately 2500 mL of water leaves the body through multiple routes to maintain a balance with daily intake. The largest portion of this output, around 60 percent, occurs through urine, matching intake and amounting to 1400–1800 mL daily. **Insensible water loss**, which includes evaporation from the skin and moisture in exhaled breath, accounts for about 500 mL in adults. This type of water loss is typically unnoticed as it does not involve active sweating. **Evaporation**, a key cooling mechanism, expends roughly 575 calories per mL of water evaporated. During febrile states, the body's demand for evaporation increases by approximately 12 percent per degree Celsius rise in temperature, necessitating a proportional increase in fluid intake. Insensible water loss is especially important in infants, who have a higher body surface area relative to volume. Distinct from this process, sweat produced by sweat glands contains water, electrolytes, and urea. Sweat is hypotonic, and excessive sweating—if not balanced with adequate fluid intake—can lead to hypertonicity in body fluids. Under cool, restful conditions, sweat loss is minimal, but during vigorous activity in hot environments, sweat production can surge to 2 liters per hour. Water loss through respiration comprises about 28 percent of total output, averaging between 600–800 mL daily, while only about 2 percent of output occurs through the stool, totaling roughly 100 mL daily. Overall, daily water intake and output typically balance, ranging from 2400–3200 mL, ensuring that essential physiological functions are maintained.[6]

Table 4 | *Normal Daily Water Gains and Losses* |

Daily Intake (mL)	Daily Output (mL)
Drinking: 60% (1400-1800)	Urine: 60% (1400-1800)
Water in food: 30% (700-1000)	Stool: 2% (100)
Water produced by metabolic activity: 10% (300-400)	Skin: 10% (300-500)
	Lungs: 28% (600-800)
Total = 2400-3200	**Total** = 2400-3200

Regulation of Water Intake

Plasma osmolality measures the ratio of solutes to water in the blood. An individual's plasma osmolality value reflects their hydration status. A healthy body regulates plasma osmolality within a narrow range by deploying multiple mechanisms that manage both water intake and output.

Short-term water regulation involves fluid shifts between ICF and ECF and is influenced by baroreceptor activation. In contrast, **long-term water regulation** relies on hormonal control, impacting thirst stimulation and management of fluid balance by the kidneys.

Dehydration occurs due to a net loss of water, resulting in inadequate water levels in the blood and other tissues. The water exiting the body, such as through exhaled air, sweat, or urine, is primarily withdrawn from the plasma. As the blood becomes more concentrated, a series of physiological processes trigger the thirst response (Figure 3). **Osmoreceptors**, sensory receptors in the thirst center of the hypothalamus, monitor the blood's solute concentration (osmolality). When blood osmolality rises beyond optimal levels, the hypothalamus transmits signals that raise conscious awareness of thirst, prompting the individual to drink water. Changes related to aging, such as shifts in total body water, the perception of thirst, regulation of renal tubular concentration, and variations in ADH and aldosterone levels, may contribute to dehydration vulnerability.[5]

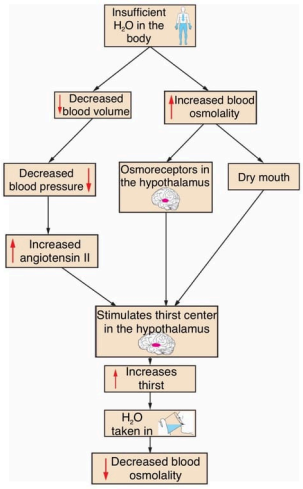


Figure 3 | The Thirst Mechanism in Response to Dehydration |[7] This diagram illustrates the physiological processes triggered by insufficient water (H_2O) in the body, leading to the sensation of thirst. A decrease in body water results in both decreased blood volume and increased blood osmolality. Decreased blood volume leads to decreased blood pressure and subsequently an increase in angiotensin II. Increased blood osmolality is detected by osmoreceptors in the hypothalamus. Both increased angiotensin II and signals from the osmoreceptors, along with the sensation of dry mouth, stimulate the thirst center in the hypothalamus. This stimulation increases the feeling of thirst, prompting the intake of H_2O. The consumption of H_2O then leads to a decrease in blood osmolality, restoring fluid balance in the body.

In a dehydrated individual, the hypothalamus triggers the release of ADH via the posterior pituitary gland (see Chapter 7). ADH carries two primary effects: it constricts the arterioles in the peripheral circulation, lessening blood flow to the extremities and increasing blood supply to the body's core. Additionally, ADH prompts the insertion of aquaporins within the epithelial cells lining the renal collecting tubules. As a consequence, the water permeability of these cells increases significantly, facilitating a substantial passage of water from the urine through the walls of the collecting tubules, leading to the increased reabsorption of water back into the bloodstream. As the concentration of the blood plasma reduces and the ADH level decreases, aquaporins are removed from the cell membranes of the collecting tubules. Consequently, the movement of water from urine to the bloodstream diminishes.[8]

During dehydration, the hypothalamus communicates via the sympathetic nervous system to the salivary glands in the mouth. This signal prompts a reduction in watery, serous output while increasing the production of stickier, thicker mucus. These alterations in secretions lead to a dry sensation in the mouth and trigger the feeling of thirst.

As water loss causes a decline in blood volume, two additional responses occur. Firstly, baroreceptors in the aortic arch and carotid sinus sense the decrease in blood pressure due to the reduced blood volume, which prompts the heart to increase its rate and the strength of contractions to offset the lowered blood pressure.[9] Secondly, the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system is activated, leading to the release of the hormone aldosterone from the adrenal cortex. Aldosterone plays a role in enhancing not only thirst but also the reabsorption of sodium ions in the distal tubules of the nephrons within the kidneys. This reabsorption of sodium causes water to follow, being reabsorbed back into the bloodstream.[10]

Regulation of ECF Volume and Osmolality

The body regulates extracellular volume by monitoring changes in volume and osmolality. If an individual consumes a moderate amount of salt, absorption leads to an increase in plasma and extracellular osmolality. This change prompts the movement of water from the intracellular to the extracellular space, following osmotic principles. The resulting shrinkage of cells in the hypothalamic osmoreceptors triggers the release of ADH from the posterior pituitary, increasing water absorption at the renal tubule. As a result, urine osmolality rises, and urine volume decreases, contributing to an increase in extracellular volume while maintaining osmolality.[11]

The increase in ECF volume is rectified by another mechanism. Atrial receptors respond to atrial stretching, stimulating the release of ANP. ANP production decreases aldosterone secretion, causing an increase in the loss of sodium ions. Additionally, changes in renal perfusion, such as reduced blood flow, are detected by juxtaglomerular cells in the kidney, triggering the release of renin and stimulating the production of angiotensin II, which, in turn, stimulates aldosterone secretion. Tables 5 and 6 outline conditions causing changes in volume and osmolality of body fluids and factors contributing to edema, respectively.[12]

Table 5 | *Examples of Changes in Volume and Osmolarity of Body Fluids* |

Type	Examples	ECF Volume	ICF Volume	ECF Osmolarity	Na^+
Isosmotic volume expansion	Isotonic NaCl infusion	↑	No change	No change	-
Isosmotic volume contraction	Diarrhea	↓	No change	No change	-
Hyperosmotic volume expansion	High NaCl intake	↑	↓	↑	↑
Hyperosmotic volume contraction	Sweating, Fever, Diabetes insipidus	↓	↓	↑	↑
Hyposmotic volume expansion	SIADH	↑	↑	↓	↓
Hyposmotic volume contraction	Adrenal insufficiency	↓	↑	↓	↓

The body's fluid and electrolyte balance adjusts dynamically depending on specific changes in volume and osmolarity, influencing both ECF and ICF compartments. In **isotonic volume expansion**, as seen with an isotonic NaCl infusion, ECF volume increases without affecting ICF volume or ECF osmolarity since the solution is isotonic, leaving sodium levels unchanged and causing no osmotic fluid shifts. Conversely, **isotonic volume contraction**, such as in diarrhea, leads to a reduction in ECF volume while maintaining stable osmolarity and ICF volume because both compartments remain isotonic relative to each other. In cases of **hyperosmotic volume expansion**, such as with high NaCl intake, ECF volume and osmolarity rise as sodium draws water from the ICF to the ECF, resulting in decreased ICF volume and increased sodium concentration. Conditions like sweating, fever, or diabetes insipidus lead to **hyperosmotic volume contraction**, where water loss causes decreases in both ECF and ICF volumes. With sodium retained relative to water, ECF osmolarity and sodium concentration increase, creating a hyperosmotic environment.

Hyposmotic volume expansion occurs in Syndrome of Inappropriate Antidiuretic Hormone (SIADH), where excess ADH leads to water retention, increasing both ECF and ICF volumes as water shifts into cells. This dilutes the ECF, reducing osmolarity and sodium concentration. In contrast, **hyposmotic volume contraction** is seen in adrenal insufficiency, where aldosterone deficiency results in sodium loss, lowering both ECF volume and osmolarity. As water shifts into the ICF to balance osmolarity, ICF volume increases while sodium concentration and ECF osmolarity decrease. Together, these mechanisms demonstrate the body's intricate processes for maintaining fluid and electrolyte equilibrium across compartments.[5]

Edema develops when excess fluid accumulates in the interstitial spaces, and this process can arise through several mechanisms, each associated with specific underlying etiologies. One common cause of edema is **elevated capillary hydrostatic pressure**, where increased pressure within the capillaries pushes fluid out into the surrounding tissue. This mechanism is often seen in conditions like renal failure and heart failure, where fluid retention and blood pooling raise pressure within the capillaries, leading to fluid leakage.

Another pathway to edema is **low plasma oncotic pressure**, which normally helps retain fluid within blood vessels. When oncotic pressure is decreased, fluid more readily moves into the interstitial space. This decrease often occurs in cases of liver failure, malnutrition, and nephrotic syndrome. In liver failure, the liver's reduced protein production (such as albumin) diminishes oncotic pressure, while in malnutrition, the overall lack of protein in the diet

contributes to lower plasma protein levels. Nephrotic syndrome similarly leads to protein loss through urine, reducing oncotic pressure and predisposing individuals to edema.

Lymphatic obstruction is one of the mechanisms contributing to edema. When lymphatic flow is blocked or compromised, fluid that would normally be drained by the lymphatic system accumulates in tissues, resulting in **lymphedema**. This condition is often seen with infections, surgeries, or certain cancers that affect the lymphatic system.

Sodium retention is another critical factor in edema development, as excess sodium draws water into the vascular and interstitial spaces. Sodium retention can occur in conditions like **renal hypoperfusion**, where decreased kidney blood flow triggers mechanisms to retain sodium, and with excessive salt intake, which directly increases sodium levels in the body and can lead to fluid overload and edema.

Inflammation can also cause edema, as inflammatory processes increase capillary permeability, allowing fluid and proteins to escape into surrounding tissues. This process is prominent in systemic inflammatory responses such as **sepsis**, where widespread inflammation throughout the body can result in significant fluid leakage into tissues, contributing to generalized edema.[5]

Table 6 | *Development of Edema* |

Mechanism	Etiologies
Elevated capillary hydrostatic pressure	Renal failure, Heart failure
Low plasma oncotic pressure	Liver failure, Malnutrition, Nephrotic syndrome
Lymphatic obstruction	Lymphedema
Sodium retention	Renal hypoperfusion, Excessive salt intake
Inflammation	Sepsis

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 13.6: Water Balance is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.7: Electrolyte Balance

Ions, classified as electrolytes, play pivotal roles in various bodily functions. They facilitate the conduction of electrical signals across cell membranes in neurons and muscles, contribute to the structural stability of enzymes, and aid in the regulation of hormone release from endocrine glands. Moreover, the collective balance of ions in plasma substantially impacts osmotic equilibrium, critically governing the movement of water between cellular and extracellular environments.

The human body contains many major electrolytes, including sodium, potassium, chloride, bicarbonate, calcium, phosphate, magnesium, zinc, iron, manganese, and copper. However, six of these are primary electrolytes—sodium, potassium, chloride, bicarbonate, calcium, and phosphate. These electrolytes are fundamental in governing nerve excitability, endocrine secretion, cellular membrane permeability, fluid buffering, and regulating fluid movement between body compartments.

The intake of these critical ions occurs primarily through the diet. Upon entry into the body, over 90% of calcium and phosphate become integrated into the bone structure, serving as a mineral reservoir. In times of necessity, such as for maintaining blood and tissue mineral levels, bone tissues can be dissolved to supply the required calcium and phosphate. Notably, increased levels of phosphate manifest when nucleic acids are metabolized, as it is an inherent constituent of these cellular structures. Excretion of excess ions primarily occurs through the kidneys, while lesser amounts are eliminated in sweat and feces. Profuse sweating, notably in situations like intense physical activity, may lead to considerable loss, primarily of sodium and chloride ions. Similarly, severe vomiting or diarrhea may result in the loss of chloride and bicarbonate ions. The body effectively manages the levels of these ions within the ECF through regulatory mechanisms involving adjustments in respiratory and renal functions.[13]

Anion Gap

The anion gap serves as a vital indicator in assessing the differences between major cations, such as sodium and potassium ions, and predominant anions, namely chloride and bicarbonate, within the plasma. Although it is termed a "gap," it denotes the variation between the measured cationic and anionic components. As potassium ion concentration in the extracellular environment is relatively low, the anion gap computation primarily relies on sodium ions as the major cation.

The anion gap, often expressed as $\mathrm{Na}^{+} - (\mathrm{Cl}^{-} + \mathrm{HCO}_3-)$, offers valuable insights into the overall plasma composition. For instance, with a typical sodium ion value of 142 mEq/L and the summation of chloride and bicarbonate amounting to 104 and 24 mEq/L, respectively, the calculated anion gap would stand at 14 mEq/L.

Approximately two-thirds of the undetermined anions forming this gap originate from plasma proteins, while the remaining portion is constituted by organic acids, phosphate, and sulfate. Under normal conditions, the anion gap typically ranges between 8 to 16 mEq/L. Anion gap values surpassing 30 mEq/L often stem from organic acids such as lactic acid or keto acids. They can also arise due to the accumulation of anions associated with inorganic acids such as sulfate or phosphate. An augmented anion gap is observed in several scenarios, such as increased blood cation concentration in **hyperkalemia**, **hypermagnesemia**, or **hypercalcemia** and accumulation of abnormal proteins or gamma globulins in the blood, evident in conditions like multiple myeloma and hypoalbuminemia.[14]

Sodium Ions

Sodium ion is the predominant cation in the extracellular fluid, playing a pivotal role in maintaining osmotic pressure gradients between cells and their surrounding environment. While humans require merely 1 to 2 mmol/day of sodium ions, a typical Western diet high in sodium chloride makes individuals intake 130 to 160 mmol/day. This surplus sodium intake is increasingly linked to hypertension in some individuals. The kidneys predominantly facilitate sodium excretion.

Hyponatremia, a condition marked by lower-than-normal sodium ion concentration, often results from excessive water accumulation, diluting the sodium content in the body. Absolute sodium loss may stem from reduced intake combined with continual urinary excretion. Conditions such as excessive sweating, vomiting, diarrhea, diuretic use, increased urine production (as in diabetes), and metabolic acidosis can lead to abnormal sodium loss. This deficiency, whether absolute or relative, could lead to an imbalance in other body fluid compartments, impacting intracellular fluid or causing a dilution of sodium due to water retention linked with edema or congestive heart failure. At a cellular level, hyponatremia causes an influx of water into cells due to an osmotic gradient, leading to cell swelling. Such swelling can affect the functionality of RBCs, decreasing their oxygen-carrying

efficiency and potentially obstructing capillary passage. Moreover, swelling of the neuronsposes the risk of brain damage or even fatal outcomes.

Hypernatremia, an abnormal elevation in blood sodium ions, often results from blood water loss, leading to hemoconcentration of all blood components. Hormonal imbalances concerning ADH and aldosterone may contribute to the abnormal elevation of sodium levels, emphasizing the intricate relationship between hormone regulation and sodium concentration.[15]

Potassium Ions

Potassium ion stands as the primary intracellular cation, significantly contributing to the establishment of the resting membrane potential in neurons and muscle fibers and action potentials. Despite its minor role in osmotic pressure in comparison to sodium, potassium ion regulation is crucial for maintaining normal concentration gradients between the intracellular and extracellular fluid.

Hypokalemia refers to an abnormally low blood potassium level and can occur due to both absolute and relative reductions of potassium ion in the body. Absolute potassium loss may result from inadequate intake, often linked with conditions like starvation, vomiting, diarrhea, or alkalosis. Relative hypokalemia can manifest in insulin-dependent diabetic patients due to insulin administration, causing the translocation of potassium ions into cells and reducing its concentration in the blood and intracellular fluid. This depletion can provoke cellular hyperpolarization, impacting the responses of neurons and leading to complications such as QT prolongation, ventricular fibrillation, and sudden death.[16]

Hyperkalemia, an elevation in blood potassium level, on the other hand, can have severe implications on skeletal muscles, the nervous system, and cardiac function. Elevated potassium levels, often stemming from increased dietary intake, create abnormally high concentrations of potassium ions in the extracellular fluid. This elevation results in partial depolarization of the plasma membrane, affecting skeletal muscle fibers, neurons, and the heart, leading to an inability of cells to repolarize. This condition can halt the heart's pumping function, inducing cardiac arrest within minutes. Mental confusion, numbness, and weakened respiratory muscles can also result from this condition, along with effects on the nervous system due to the elevated extracellular potassium levels. These imbalances can be observed in ECG tracings, typically showing peaked T waves, wide QRS complexes, bradycardia, or asystole.[17]

Chloride Ions

Chloride is the primary extracellular anion, significantly contributing to the osmotic pressure gradient between the intracellular and extracellular fluids. Chloride helps balance the cations in the extracellular fluid, thereby ensuring the electrical neutrality of this fluid. Its pathways of secretion and reabsorption in the renal system often align with those of sodium ions.

Hypochloremia denotes lower-than-normal blood chloride levels and may result from defective renal tubular absorption and conditions such as cystic fibrosis. In individuals with cystic fibrosis, the levels of chloride in sweat can be markedly higher—two to five times more than the normal range—and the analysis of sweat is frequently utilized in the diagnosis of this disease. Conversely, **hyperchloremia**, characterized by higher-than-normal blood chloride levels, can be attributed to diverse conditions. Dehydration, excessive dietary salt intake, ingestion of seawater, aspirin intoxication, congestive heart failure, and chronic lung disease are among the factors that may lead to this imbalance.[18]

Bicarbonate Ions

Bicarbonate stands as the second most abundant anion present in the blood, performing a critical role in preserving the body's acid-base equilibrium by serving as a key element in buffer systems. The generation of this ion stems from a chemical reaction initiated by the combination of carbon dioxide and water. This reaction forms carbonic acid, a weak acid, which subsequently dissociates to produce bicarbonate and hydrogen ions.

The reactions involving bicarbonate and carbonic acid are bidirectional, where the concentrations of the reactants and products influence the direction taken. Carbon dioxide, a by-product generated extensively in high metabolic rate tissues, is converted into bicarbonate within the RBC, facilitated by the enzyme carbonic anhydrase. Subsequently, the produced bicarbonate is transported via the bloodstream. Once in the lungs, these reactions reverse their course, leading to the regeneration of carbon dioxide from bicarbonate, allowing for its elimination as metabolic waste during exhalation.[5]

Calcium Ions

Approximately two pounds of calcium in the human body is within the skeletal system, contributing to bone hardness and serving as a mineral reservoir for calcium and its salts across various tissues. Alongside bones, teeth also exhibit a high concentration of calcium. A significant portion of blood calcium is bound to proteins, while the remainder exists in its ionized form. Calcium is indispensable for crucial physiological functions such as muscle contraction, enzyme activity, and the coagulation of blood. Moreover, it plays a pivotal role in the release of neurotransmitters in neurons and hormones from endocrine glands. The absorption of calcium through the intestines is regulated by vitamin D. A deficiency in vitamin D leads to decreased calcium ion and, eventually, depletion of calcium reserves from the skeletal system, potentially resulting in rickets among children or osteomalacia in adults, which can contribute to the development of osteoporosis.

Hypocalcemia, an abnormal decrease in blood calcium levels, is observed in conditions like hypoparathyroidism, often arising after thyroid gland removal, as the parathyroid glands are closely associated with the thyroid gland.[19] On the other hand, **hypercalcemia**, or abnormally high blood calcium levels, is encountered in primary hyperparathyroidism. Some malignancies can also lead to hypercalcemia.[20]

Phosphate Ions

Phosphate exists in three ionic forms within the body: **dihydrogen phosphate** (H_2PO_4), **monohydrogen phosphate** (HPO_4^{2-}), and **phosphate ion** (PO_4^{3-}). The prevailing form is monohydrogen phosphate. Approximately 85 percent of the body's phosphate is sequestered in bones and teeth, primarily as calcium-phosphate salts. Phosphate plays a vital role in various biological compounds, such as phospholipids constituting cell membranes, ATP, nucleotides, and acting as a component in buffering systems.

Hypophosphatemia, characterized by lower-than-normal phosphate blood levels, can result from the excessive use of antacids. Some antacids bind to phosphate in the gastrointestinal tract, forming insoluble complexes that prevent phosphate absorption. As a result, less phosphate is absorbed into the bloodstream, gradually reducing serum phosphate levels. Malnourishment could be another cause of hypophosphatemia. .In instances of phosphate depletion, the kidneys typically conserve phosphate. However, during periods of starvation, this conservation process is markedly impaired.[21]

Conversely, **hyperphosphatemia**, abnormally increased phosphate levels in the blood, may occur due to reduced renal function or in cases of acute lymphocytic leukemia resulting in increased lysis of cells and the release of phosphate into the ECF.[22]

Regulation of Sodium and Potassium Ions

The sodium ion is reabsorbed from the renal filtrate, and the potassium ion is excreted into the filtrate in the renal collecting tubule. The control of this exchange is governed principally by two hormones—aldosterone and angiotensin II.

Aldosterone is a key hormone controlling the exchange of sodium and potassium ions in the renal collecting tubules. Its primary role involves enhancing the reabsorption of sodium ions and excretion of potassium ions. This hormonal control is initiated in response to alterations in blood concentrations of potassium and sodium ions or changes in blood pressure. In the distal convoluted tubules and collecting ducts, aldosterone stimulates the synthesis and activation of the sodium-potassium ion exchange pump. This pump drives sodium ions from the renal filtrate through the cells of the tubules into the extracellular fluid and finally into the capillaries. Water, drawn by osmosis, follows the movement of sodium ions. Consequently, aldosterone contributes to an elevation in blood sodium levels and blood volume. Conversely, under the influence of aldosterone, excess potassium ion is pumped into the renal filtrate for elimination from the body. However, a rise in the extracellular fluid osmolality, caused by the absorption of sodium ions stimulated by aldosterone, inhibits the release of this hormone in a negative feedback loop.

Angiotensin II plays a pivotal role in vasoconstriction, which increases systemic blood pressure, which leads to a rise in the glomerular filtration rate, promoting the filtration of materials from the glomerular capillaries into Bowman’s capsule. Sodium and potassium ion reabsorption take place downstream in the nephron, largely influenced by aldosterone. Angiotensin II directly stimulates the release of aldosterone from the adrenal cortex. Aldosterone acts primarily on the distal tubules and collecting ducts of the kidney, promoting the reabsorption of sodium and the excretion of potassium ions.[5]

Regulation of Calcium and Phosphate Ions

The homeostasis of calcium and phosphate in the body is controlled by three key hormones: PTH, dihydroxyvitamin D, and calcitonin. PTH is secreted from the parathyroid glands when the concentration of blood calcium ion levels decreases. PTH indirectly stimulates osteoclasts to break down the bone matrix, releasing inorganic calcium and phosphate ions into the bloodstream. Furthermore, PTH facilitates the conversion of vitamin D into its active form, dihydroxyvitamin D (calcitriol). Calcitriol is essential for the absorption of calcium ions by the intestinal epithelial cells from dietary sources. In addition to enhancing calcium absorption, PTH reduces the excretion of calcium ions in the urine while promoting the excretion of phosphate through the kidneys. These coordinated actions help to elevate blood calcium ion levels while simultaneously managing phosphate concentrations.

Calcitonin is released from the thyroid gland in response to elevated blood levels of calcium ions. The primary role of calcitonin is to maintain calcium homeostasis by countering excessive levels of calcium ions. This hormone enhances the activity of osteoblasts, the bone-forming cells that are responsible for drawing calcium ions from the blood and incorporating them into the bone matrix. By this process, calcitonin assists in reducing blood calcium ion concentrations and contributes to the maintenance of bone health and density.[23]

Regulation of Magnesium Ions

Magnesium, an intracellular cation primarily found in muscle and bone tissue, is essential for numerous enzymatic reactions crucial for cellular function. Blood magnesium levels typically range from 1.8 to 2.4 mg/dL. In addition to its structural role, magnesium acts as a vital cofactor in various enzymatic processes, including the synthesis and release of PTH. Low magnesium levels can lead to reduced PTH production, which in turn decreases blood calcium levels. Magnesium also stabilizes ATP within cells, is key in regulating muscle contraction, and plays an important role in forming and maintaining healthy bones and teeth.[24]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 13.7: Electrolyte Balance is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.8: Acid-Base Balance

pH is a measure of the **acidity** or **alkalinity** of a solution. It is defined as the negative logarithm to the base 10 of the hydrogen ion concentration in a given aqueous solution.

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{pH} &= \log 1/[\mathrm{H}^+] \\ &= -\log[\mathrm{H}^+] \\ &= -\log[0.00000004] \\ &= 7.4\end{aligned}$$

Hydrogen ions in the body have several sources. These include dietary intake through food, digestive secretions, and various metabolic activities. Metabolism generates both **volatile** and **nonvolatile** or **fixed acids**. Volatile acid, primarily carbonic acid, contributes significantly to the acid load, producing over 10,000 mEq per day, which is expelled from the body through the exhalation of carbon dioxide. In contrast, nonvolatile acids, amounting to about 100 mEq per day, are managed by the kidneys, which help to maintain acid-base balance by excreting these acids. One of the physiological factors rigorously regulated within the body is the maintenance of hydrogen ion concentration. This parameter significantly impacts the three-dimensional structure of tissue proteins, thereby influencing their functionalities. Enzymes, in particular, exhibit extreme sensitivity to pH variations, performing optimally within a specific pH range. Any deviation from this optimal pH drastically diminishes their activity.

The pH scale, representing the power of hydrogen ions, operates logarithmically. In the dissociation of water, hydrogen and hydroxyl ions form with concentrations of 10-7 moles per liter at 20°C. Their product, the ionic product of water, remains constant at 10-14. To conveniently express the vast range of laboratory values without negative figures, the negative logarithm is employed, denoted by $\mathrm{pH} = -\log[\mathrm{H}^+]$. Hence, neutral pH is set at 7, equivalent to 0.00000001 mol per liter. A tenfold increase in hydrogen ion concentration decreases the pH by one unit (pH=6), while a tenfold decrease elevates the pH by one unit (pH=8). Arterial blood typically maintains a normal pH of 7.4 (40 nmol per liter), with a healthy range of arterial plasma pH spanning from 7.38 to 7.42. The survivable boundaries for pH are between 7.7 (maximum) and 6.9 (minimum), within which life can be sustained. Intracellular pH differs from extracellular pH, usually ranging from 6 to 7.4. pH of urine is 4.5 to 8.

Despite its significance, the hydrogen ion concentration in plasma is minimal compared to other ions. For instance, while the concentration of sodium ion is 140 mmol per liter, the hydrogen ion concentration remains notably low at 40 nmol per liter. Due to this million-fold discrepancy in concentration, the osmotic influence of hydrogen ion is typically omitted in blood osmolality calculations.[25]

Acids, Bases, and Buffers

Universally, an acid is a provider of protons or hydrogen ions, whereas a base is recognized as a receptor of protons. **Strong acids** like hydrochloric acid rapidly dissociate into hydrogen and chloride ions, whereas **weak acids** like carbonic acid exhibit less complete dissociation into hydrogen and bicarbonate ions. Various buffering systems within the body enable blood and bodily fluids to uphold a tightly regulated pH range even when faced with disturbances. At a pH of 6.1, carbonic acid and bicarbonate ions exist in solutions at nearly equivalent concentrations. In a normal state at pH 7.4, there are 20 bicarbonate ions for every molecule of carbonic acid.

Acidosis refers to a condition where the blood becomes acidic, while alkalosis is when the blood is alkaline. In clinical terms, **acidemia** is when arterial blood pH falls below 7.35, and **alkalemia** is when it rises above 7.45.

A **buffer** acts as a chemical system that helps mitigate sudden shifts in fluid pH by moderating the changes in hydrogen ion concentrations in cases of excessive acid or base presence. Typically, the substance responsible for absorbing ions is a weak acid, which absorbs hydroxyl ion, or a weak base, which absorbs hydrogen ions. Despite their effectiveness, buffer systems have their limitations. When faced with excessive acid, a buffer may become overwhelmed, resulting in a substantial rise in hydrogen ion concentration due to its exhaustion.

The body maintains pH balance through several mechanisms. **Chemical buffer systems** in body fluids act immediately but temporarily, trapping hydrogen ions without eliminating or creating them. Examples of these buffers include bicarbonate, ammonia, proteins, and phosphate. The respiratory center provides a second line of defense by eliminating carbon dioxide within seconds to minutes. An increase in hydrogen ion concentration stimulates increased ventilation, leading to carbon dioxide loss,

and vice versa. The kidneys, a more powerful regulator, manage non-volatile acids by secreting hydrogen ions, reabsorbing bicarbonate, and generating new bicarbonate over hours to days.

In bodily fluids, buffer systems serve as the primary line of defense against alterations in hydrogen ion concentration. These systems are remarkably efficient, functioning at varying rates. The chemical buffers in the blood can swiftly compensate for any changes in pH within seconds. Chemical buffer systems in blood plasma mainly consist of bicarbonate ions and plasma proteins, while buffers within cells predominantly involve hemoglobin and phosphate. Specifically, bicarbonate ions account for 53 percent, hemoglobin 35 percent, and the remaining 12 percent is distributed between phosphates and plasma proteins.[26]

Bicarbonate-Carbonic Acid Buffer System

The bicarbonate-carbonic acid buffer system serves as the primary buffer in interstitial fluid. In this system, carbon dioxide produced by cells combines with water to form carbonic acid, which then dissociates into hydrogen and bicarbonate ions. This crucial reaction is facilitated by the enzyme carbonic anhydrase, which is present in locations such as kidney tubules, red blood cells, endothelial cells, and parietal cells.

$$\mathrm{H_2O + CO_2 \longleftrightarrow H_2CO_3 \longleftrightarrow H^+ + HCO_3^-}$$

The **Henderson-Hasselbalch equation** explains the relationship between the pH of a solution containing a weak acid and its conjugate base, and the acid dissociation constant of that acid (PKa). In the bicarbonate buffer system, pH depends on the balance between carbonic acid and bicarbonate in the blood. At normal body temperature, carbon dioxide dissolves in blood with a constant of 0.03, allowing carbonic acid and dissolved carbon dioxide to stay balanced. With a usual PCO2 of 40 mm Hg and bicarbonate level of 24 mmol/L, the blood maintains a 1:20 ratio of carbonic acid to bicarbonate, helping to buffer against increases in acidity (Figure 4).[27]

The Henderson-Hasselbalch equation is written as:

$$\mathrm{pH = pK_a + \log\left(\frac{[A^-]}{[HA]}\right)}$$

In the case of the bicarbonate buffer system:

$$\mathrm{pH = 6.1 + \log\left(\frac{[HCO_3^-]}{0.03 \times PCO_2}\right)}$$

where:

- pH = the acidity or alkalinity of the solution,
- $\mathrm{pK_a}$ (6.1 for bicarbonate) is the dissociation constant of carbonic acid,
- $[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]$ = bicarbonate ion concentration,
- $\mathrm{PCO_2}$ = partial pressure of carbon dioxide in mm Hg,
- 0.03 = solubility coefficient of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ at body temperature.

The bicarbonate buffer system primarily buffers against metabolic wastes, such as lactic acid and ketones. Control over carbonic acid levels in the blood is regulated by carbon dioxide exhalation through the lungs. Inside RBCs, carbonic anhydrase prompts acid dissociation, decreasing blood acidity and leading to carbon dioxide exhalation. Typical reference points for assessing the acid-base balance in the blood and can be used to evaluate a person's respiratory and metabolic status. $[\mathrm{H^+}]$ = 40 nmol/L for a pH of 7.4 (range: 35 – 45 nmol/L); $\mathrm{PaCO_2}$ = 40 mm Hg; $[\mathrm{HCO_3^-}]$ = 24 mEq/L (range: 22-26 mEq/L).[5]

The kidneys regulate blood bicarbonate by reabsorbing it from the renal filtrate back into the bloodstream. About one-third of the buffering reaction also occurs within red blood cells, making this system effective beyond just the plasma.

When sodium bicarbonate $(\mathrm{NaHCO_3})$ encounters strong acids or bases, it reacts in a reversible way, forming either carbonic acid (a weak acid) and salt or producing sodium bicarbonate and water.[28]

$$\mathrm{NaHCO_3 + HCl \rightarrow H_2CO_3 + NaCl}$$
$$\mathrm{(Sodium\ bicarbonate)\ + (\ Strong\ acid\ ) \rightarrow (\ Weak\ acid\ ) + (\ Salt\ )}$$
$$\mathrm{H_2CO_3 + NaOH \rightarrow NaHCO_3 + H_2O}$$
$$\mathrm{(Weak\ acid)\ + (\ Strong\ base\ ) \rightarrow (\ Sodium\ bicarbonate\ ) + (\ Water\ )}$$

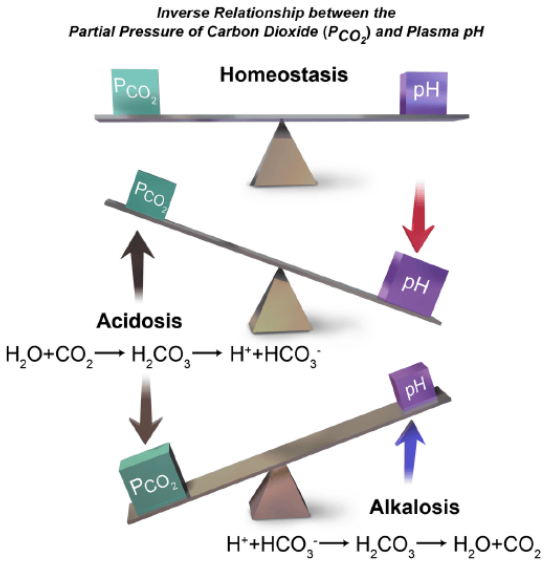


Figure 4 | Relationship between Carbon Dioxide (CO_2) and Blood pH in Respiratory Acidosis and Alkalosis |[29] This figure illustrates the effects of carbon dioxide (CO_2) levels on blood pH through the mechanisms of respiratory acidosis and alkalosis. In respiratory acidosis (left side of the diagram), CO_2 levels increase due to hypoventilation or other factors that impair gas exchange, leading to an increase in hydrogen ion (H^+) concentration and a decrease in blood pH, resulting in a more acidic environment. In respiratory alkalosis (right side of the diagram), CO_2 levels decrease due to hyperventilation, which reduces H^+ concentration and raises blood pH, creating a more alkaline environment. The balance of CO_2 is a primary factor influencing blood pH in respiratory conditions, with homeostatic mechanisms working to maintain optimal pH levels for cellular function.

Protein Buffer System

Proteins exhibit remarkable buffering properties within the body due to their complex amino acid structure. The primary mechanism by which proteins buffer changes in pH involves their amino and carboxyl groups, as well as side chains of certain amino acids. Amino groups ($-NH_2$) can accept H^+ ions to form $-NH_3{}^+$, while carboxyl groups ($-COOH$) can donate H^+ ions to form $-COO-$. When the pH in the surrounding environment becomes too acidic, the protein's amino groups act as bases, binding with excess H^+ ions to help reduce acidity. Conversely, when the environment becomes too basic, carboxyl groups can release H^+ ions to increase the concentration of H^+, thus lowering pH. Proteins serve as two-thirds of the buffering power in blood and are the primary source of cellular buffering.

Hemoglobin is a key buffering agent within red blood cells. When blood is slightly alkaline, proteins, especially the histidine residues in hemoglobin, act as weak acids. This buffering effect is stronger in deoxygenated blood compared to oxygenated blood due to its higher affinity for hydrogen ions, the effects of increased carbon dioxide concentration and the resulting pH changes in tissues, as well as structural changes that occur during oxygen binding and release. Hemoglobin is much more concentrated than plasma proteins and has a greater ability to act as a buffer (about three times more). Therefore, it plays a big role in helping to maintain the pH of blood. Oxyhemoglobin acts as a stronger acid than deoxyhemoglobin as it can release more hydrogen ions.[5]

$$\mathrm{H^+ + Hb \longleftrightarrow HHb}$$

Phosphate Buffer System

Phosphate, another significant buffer system, presents a distinct advantage due to its more balanced nature at a normal blood pH. Yet, despite its theoretically higher effectiveness than the bicarbonate buffer system, phosphate contributes only a small fraction, approximately 1 to 3 percent, to the blood's buffering capacity. Phosphates exist in two forms in blood:

sodium dihydrogen phosphate and **sodium monohydrogen phosphate**. These compounds can transform into weaker acids or bases when reacting with strong acids or bases. The phosphate buffer system becomes far more efficient intracellularly, where phosphate concentrations are notably higher, especially in bones. These intracellular concentrations are crucial in buffering the acids originating from metabolic processes. In the intracellular compartment, proteins rich in histidine groups and compounds like adenosine phosphate and glucose-1-phosphate effectively buffer excess hydrogen ions. Any surplus hydrogen ions then diffuse into the extracellular spaces.

$$\mathrm{HPO_4^- + H^+ \longleftrightarrow H_2PO_4^-}$$

The extracellular fluid interacts with blood plasma and has a similar ability to maintain pH balance. This includes using bicarbonate and phosphate systems to help buffer acids and bases. Intracellular pH remains closely regulated within the narrow physiological range, whereas during acute disturbances or chronic acid-base alterations, intracellular buffering efficiency may fluctuate. Nonetheless, intracellular buffering becomes more effective over time, particularly in chronic acid-base disturbances.[5]

Regulation of Acid-Base Balance

The body deploys three primary lines of defense to achieve this precise control: buffer systems, which are immediate, first-line responders comprising weak acids and their conjugate bases that rapidly bind to or release hydrogen ions; the respiratory system, acting as a rapid, second-line defense by controlling the exhalation of carbon dioxide to manage carbonic acid levels; and the renal system, serving as the long-term, most powerful, and definitive regulator, primarily managing blood bicarbonate levels and hydrogen ion excretion through reabsorption, new bicarbonate generation, and direct hydrogen ion removal. These three systems work in a highly integrated and compensatory fashion, ensuring that if a metabolic disturbance pushes the pH in one direction, the respiratory system will attempt rapid compensation, followed by the kidneys providing a more sustained and powerful metabolic adjustment, thereby maintaining overall pH homeostasis.

Respiratory Regulation of Acid-Base Balance

The respiratory system plays a crucial role in maintaining the body's acid-base balance by managing the levels of carbon dioxide and carbonic acid in the blood. When carbon dioxide levels rise in the blood, such as during breath-holding, excess carbon dioxide reacts with water to form additional carbonic acid, leading to a decrease in blood pH. By increasing the rate or depth of respiration, the body can expel excess carbon dioxide, thereby lowering the levels of carbonic acid and readjusting the blood pH towards normal. Conversely, excessive rapid breathing, like hyperventilation, causes the body to eliminate carbon dioxide excessively, leading to a reduction in carbonic acid levels and an overly alkaline state in the blood (Figure 4). This transient alkalosis can be corrected by rebreathing exhaled air contained in a paper bag, which helps rapidly restore blood pH to normal levels. These chemical reactions occur in the pulmonary capillaries of the lungs when blood is oxygenated. Minor adjustments in breathing, altering the amount of exhaled carbon dioxide, typically suffice to regulate blood pH. For instance, a brief doubling of the respiratory rate for less than a minute results in a 0.2 increase in blood pH. This adjustment often occurs during strenuous exercise, where increased energy production leads to excess carbon dioxide and lactic acid production. The body, therefore, elevates respiration to expel the surplus carbon dioxide and maintain acid-base balance to prevent acidosis (Figure 5).

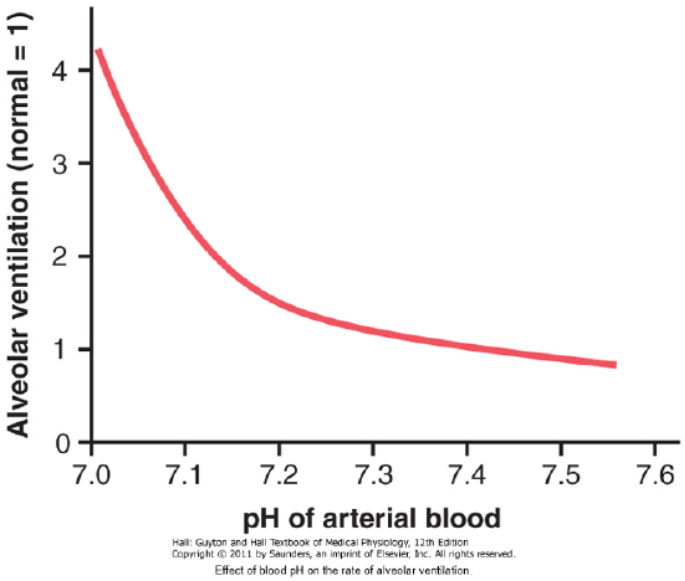


Figure 5 | Relationship between pH and Alveolar Ventilation |[5] This graph illustrates the relationship between arterial blood pH and the rate of alveolar ventilation, with normal ventilation represented as 1. As blood pH decreases (becomes more acidic), alveolar ventilation increases significantly. Conversely, as blood pH increases (becomes more alkaline), alveolar ventilation decreases. This demonstrates the body's homeostatic mechanism to regulate pH through adjustments in breathing rate.

The respiratory rate is regulated by chemoreceptors, primarily responding to changes in carbon dioxide levels. Peripheral sensors in major arteries, such as the aorta and carotids, alert the brain to prompt immediate adjustments in respiratory rate upon carbon dioxide level fluctuations (Figure 6). Furthermore, the brain houses sensors that detect pH changes in the CSF, affecting the respiratory center in the medulla oblongata, thereby modulating breathing rates to maintain pH within normal ranges.

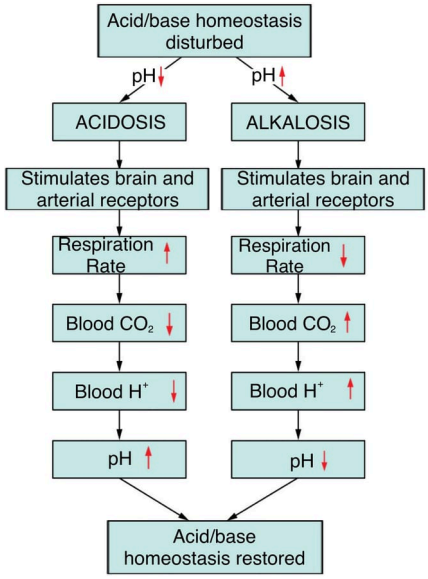


Figure 6 | Respiratory Regulation of Blood pH | [30] This diagram illustrates the body's respiratory response to disturbances in acid-base homeostasis. When acid-base balance is disturbed, leading to either acidosis (decreased pH) or alkalosis (increased pH), chemoreceptors in the brain and arterial system are stimulated. In acidosis, this stimulation results in an increased respiration rate, leading to a decrease in blood carbon dioxide ($\mathrm{CO_2}$) levels and a subsequent decrease in hydrogen ion ($\mathrm{H^+}$) concentration, ultimately raising the pH back towards normal. In alkalosis, the opposite occurs; the respiration rate decreases, leading to an increase in blood $\mathrm{CO_2}$ levels and a subsequent increase in H$\diamondsuit$ concentration, lowering the pH back towards normal. Both pathways lead to restore acid-base homeostasis.

Abnormal elevation of blood carbon dioxide, known as **hypercapnia**, occurs due to conditions that impair respiratory functions, like pneumonia or congestive heart failure. Conversely, abnormally low carbon dioxide levels, called **hypocapnia**, are witnessed in situations of hyperventilation, whether due to factors like salicylate toxicity, elevated room temperatures, fever, or even hysteria.

Renal Regulation of Acid-Base Balance

While the respiratory system controls carbonic acid levels by managing carbon dioxide exhalation, the renal system oversees blood bicarbonate levels. Various factors can lead to a decrease in blood bicarbonate levels, including inhibition of carbonic anhydrase by certain diuretics, excessive bicarbonate ion loss from diarrhea, conditions like Addison's disease, and renal damage, resulting in reduced aldosterone levels.

The kidneys play a primary metabolic role in maintaining the body's acid-base balance by adjusting urine pH, either acidifying or alkalizing it, and crucially managing blood bicarbonate levels. Since renal tubule cells are impermeable to bicarbonate, a specialized mechanism, largely occurring in the proximal tubular cells and aided by carbonic anhydrase, is employed both to reabsorb existing bicarbonate and to generate new bicarbonate. As Figure 7 illustrates, $\mathrm{CO_2}$ diffuses from the renal interstitial fluid into the tubular cell, where carbonic anhydrase catalyzes its reaction with water to form carbonic acid, which then dissociates into bicarbonate and hydrogen ions. To sustain the blood's bicarbonate buffering system, bicarbonate ions are transported out of the cell into the renal interstitial fluid and returned to the bloodstream, while hydrogen ions are simultaneously secreted into the tubular lumen, often via an antiport mechanism in the apical membranes that exchanges them for sodium ions. To maintain electrochemical neutrality during bicarbonate reabsorption, chloride ions are also exchanged across the cell membrane in opposite directions—moving from the renal interstitial fluid into the tubular cell and from the tubular lumen into the cell—a process known as the "chloride shift." All these transport processes are powered by ATP, ensuring that the kidneys continuously process bicarbonate and hydrogen ions to maintain effective pH balance.[5]

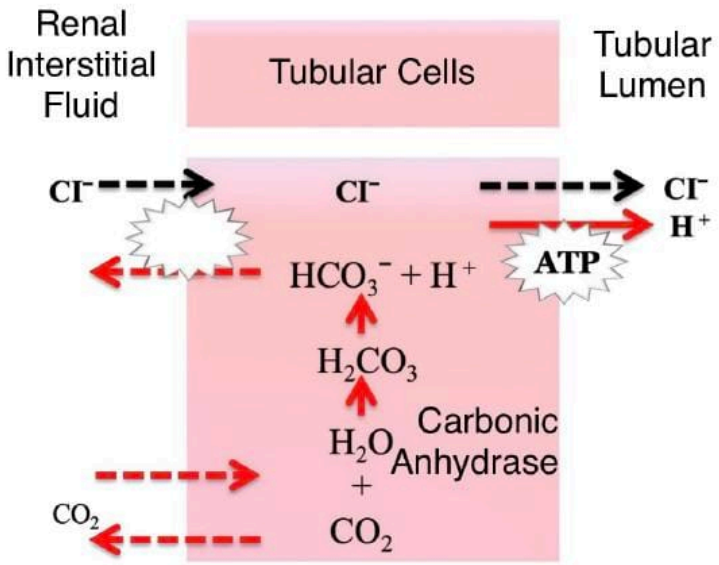


Figure 7 | Production of Bicarbonate in the Proximal Tubule | This diagram illustrates the exchange of chloride ($\mathrm{Cl^-}$) and bicarbonate ($\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$) ions across the renal tubule cell membrane, a key process in bicarbonate reabsorption and acid-base regulation. Carbon dioxide ($\mathrm{CO_2}$) diffuses from the renal interstitial fluid into the tubular cell. Inside the cell, carbonic anhydrase catalyzes the reaction between $\mathrm{CO_2}$ and water ($\mathrm{H_2O}$) to form carbonic acid ($\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$). $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$ then dissociates into bicarbonate ($\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$) and hydrogen ions ($\mathrm{H^+}$). Bicarbonate is transported out of the cell into the renal interstitial fluid, while $\mathrm{H^+}$ are secreted into the tubular lumen. To maintain electrochemical neutrality, $\mathrm{Cl^-}$ are exchanged across the cell membrane in opposite directions: $\mathrm{Cl^-}$ moves from the renal interstitial fluid into the tubular cell and from the tubular lumen into the cell. This "chloride shift" ensures the proper balance of ions during bicarbonate reabsorption. ATP is utilized to power the transport processes involved.

Figure 8 provides a quantitative overview of this bicarbonate reabsorption process along the nephron. Specifically, it illustrates that approximately 4320 mEq/day of bicarbonate enters the proximal tubule. A significant 85% (3672 mEq/day) of this bicarbonate is reabsorbed in the proximal tubule, highlighting its critical role in bicarbonate conservation. A further 10% (432 mEq/day) is reabsorbed in the loop of Henle. The distal tubule and collecting duct contribute to the fine-tuning of bicarbonate

levels, with a variable amount, indicated as greater than 4.9% (215 mEq/day), being reabsorbed. Only a minimal amount, approximately 1 mEq/day, is excreted in the final urine.

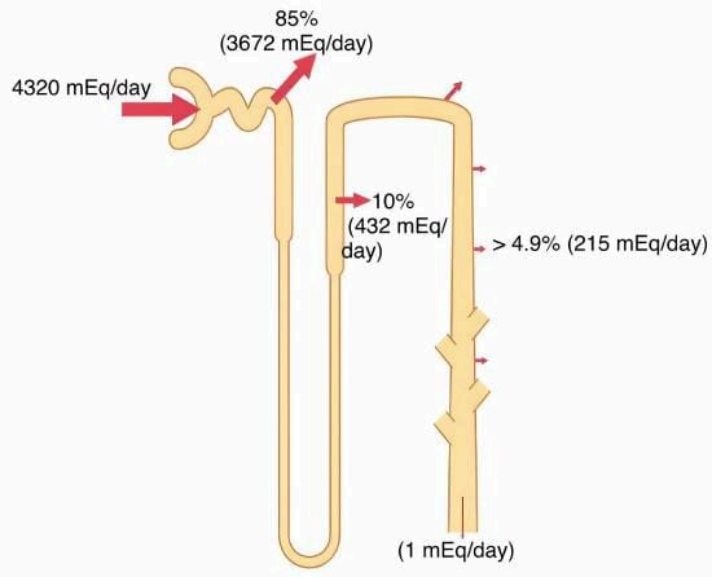


Figure 8 | Reabsorption of Bicarbonate at the Renal Tubule |[5] This diagram illustrates the reabsorption of bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) along different segments of the nephron. Starting with 4320 mEq/day of bicarbonate entering the proximal tubule, approximately 85% (3672 mEq/day) is reabsorbed in this section. A further 10% (432 mEq/day) is reabsorbed in the thick limb of the loop of Henle. In the distal tubule and collecting duct, a variable amount, indicated as greater than 4.9% (215 mEq/day), is reabsorbed, demonstrating the fine-tuning of bicarbonate balance. A minimal amount, approximately 1 mEq/day, is excreted in the final urine. The arrows indicate the direction of bicarbonate movement, with red arrows signifying reabsorption from the tubular fluid back into the bloodstream.

The **ammonia buffer system** facilitates the excretion of excess hydrogen ions by the kidneys and the generation of new bicarbonate. The generation of new bicarbonate ions by the ammonia buffer system is a key renal process that helps the body maintain acid-base balance, particularly in conditions of acidosis when there is an excess of hydrogen ions. This mechanism begins in the proximal tubule, distal tubule, and the thick segment of the ascending limb of the loop of Henle tubular cells, where the amino acid glutamine is broken down into ammonia (NH_3) and bicarbonate. The ammonia is then secreted into the tubular fluid. In this environment, NH_3 binds with hydrogen ions to form ammonium (NH_4^+), which is subsequently excreted in urine. This reaction not only removes hydrogen ions but also helps generate new bicarbonate ions. Buffering hydrogen ion within the tubule helps maintain acidity above 4.5 in order to protect it from being exposed to very low pH. For each H^+ ion neutralized and excreted as NH_4^+, a new HCO_3^- ion is produced and returned to the bloodstream. Importantly, this new bicarbonate is freshly generated rather than coming from any existing bicarbonate pool, thus enhancing the blood's buffering capacity. During acidosis, the kidneys ramp up glutamine breakdown, increasing NH_3 production and allowing more HCO_3^- generation to counteract the low pH. Approximately 80-90 percent of the newly generated bicarbonate is reabsorbed into the peritubular blood.

Hydrogen ion excretion occurs mainly in the form of titratable acid such as phosphate or ammonium ion, equating to the amount of bicarbonate reabsorbed into the circulation. By continuously generating new bicarbonate ions, the ammonia buffer system serves as a powerful mechanism for long-term pH stabilization and acid-base regulation.

Phosphate ions act as a buffer, combining with the excess hydrogen ions to form dihydrogen phosphate ions, $H_2PO_4^-$ (Figure 9). Monohydrogen phosphate is the stronger base compared to dihydrogen phosphate, which is a weak acid. This difference in strength is due to the fact that monohydrogen phosphate can accept a proton (acting as a base), while dihydrogen phosphate can donate a proton (acting as an acid) in solution.

$$H^+ + HPO_4^{-2} \rightleftharpoons H_2PO_4^-$$

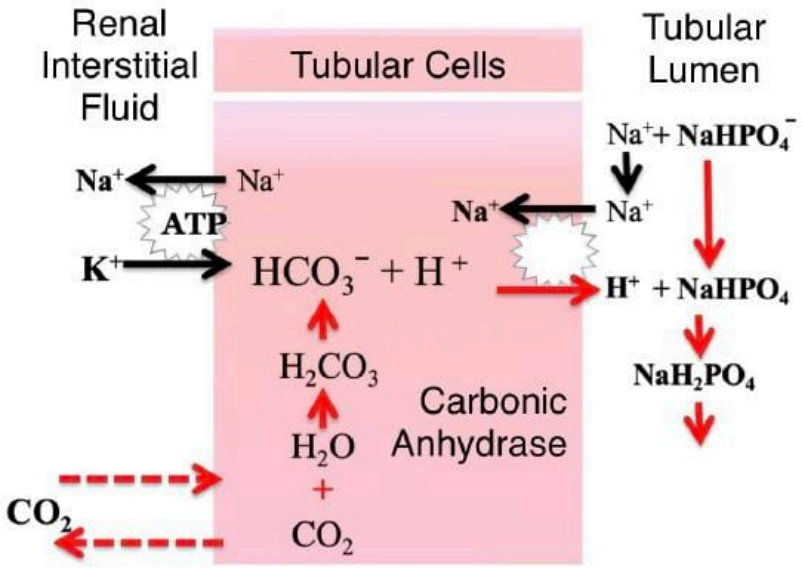


Figure 9 | Phosphate Buffering in the Renal Tubule | This diagram illustrates the phosphate buffering system within the renal tubular cells, contributing to acid-base balance. Carbon dioxide (CO_2) diffuses from the renal interstitial fluid into the tubular cells. Within the cell, CO_2 combines with water (H_2O) to form carbonic acid (H_2CO_3) through the action of carbonic anhydrase. Carbonic acid dissociates into bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) and hydrogen ions (H^+). Bicarbonate is transported out of the cell into the renal interstitial fluid, while hydrogen ions are secreted into the tubular lumen via a sodium-hydrogen antiport mechanism. In the lumen, hydrogen ions combine with monohydrogen phosphate ($NaHPO_4^-$) to form dihydrogen phosphate (NaH_2PO_4), which is then excreted in the urine. This process effectively buffers excess hydrogen ions in the tubular fluid and contributes to the regulation of blood pH. Additionally, sodium ions are actively transported out of the tubular cells into the renal interstitial fluid using ATP, maintaining the electrochemical gradient necessary for these transport processes.

The dihydrogen phosphate reacts with bicarbonate, resulting in the formation of phosphate ions and water.

$$H_2PO_4^- + HCO_3^- \rightleftharpoons HPO_4^{-2} + H_2O$$

Extracellular volume significantly influences bicarbonate reabsorption. In situations like congestive heart failure, expanded extracellular space inhibits sodium and bicarbonate ion reabsorption. Conversely, decreased extracellular volume increases sodium ion concentration and bicarbonate reabsorption. Furthermore, potassium ions also influence bicarbonate reabsorption, affecting it similarly to sodium ions.

When chloride is lost, the body relies on bicarbonate to balance the positive ion charges and maintain neutrality. The typical human diet leans acidic due to nonvolatile acids like phosphoric and sulfuric acids that result from metabolic processes. To regulate these acid levels, the kidneys excrete an amount of acid equivalent to the dietary acid load, although this amount is much smaller than the pulmonary acid load from carbon dioxide produced by tissues.[5]

Disorders of Acid-Base Balance

The human body maintains arterial blood pH within an incredibly narrow range of 7.35 to 7.45. Deviation outside this range results in either acidosis or alkalosis, both of which can have severe health implications. Acidosis, identified by a blood pH below 7.35, signifies a critical condition. A continuous decrease below 7.0 can be fatal. Symptoms of acidosis include headaches, confusion, lethargy, and persistent fatigue. Conversely, alkalosis, indicated by a blood pH above 7.45, is equally serious, with a pH above 7.8 considered fatal. Symptoms include cognitive impairment, which can progress to unconsciousness, tingling or numbness in the extremities, muscle twitching, and even nausea and vomiting (Figure 5).

Both acidosis and alkalosis can arise from either metabolic or respiratory disorders, complicating the body's delicate acid-base balance. The concentration of carbonic acid in the blood, closely linked to carbon dioxide levels and exhalation from the lungs, underscores the vital respiratory contribution to maintaining this balance. Understanding the significance of carbon dioxide - for every molecule of exhaled carbon dioxide, a molecule of carbonic acid is lost, while retention of carbon dioxide forms a molecule of carbonic acid - illustrates the critical role of respiration in managing the body's acid-base equilibrium.

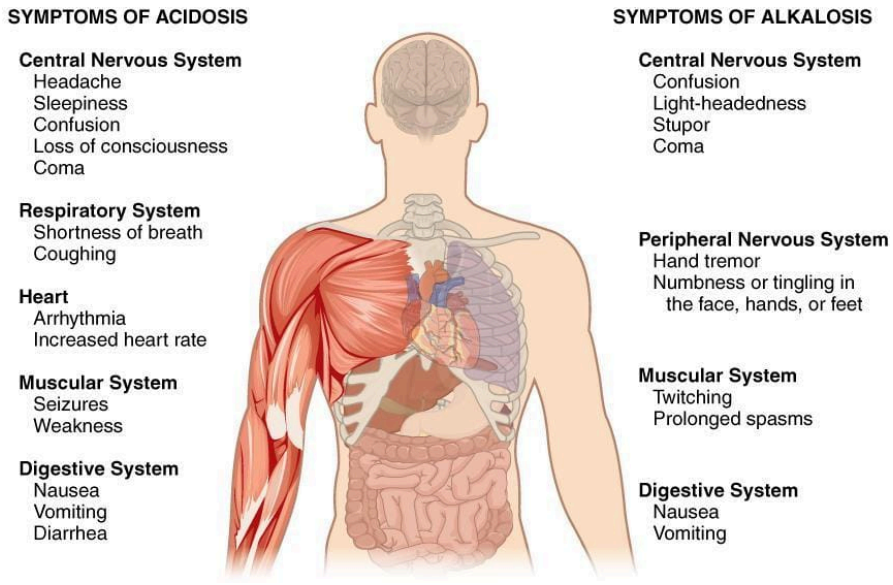


Figure 10 | Symptoms of Acidosis and Alkalosis | [31] This illustration depicts the diverse symptoms associated with acidosis (left) and alkalosis (right) across various body systems.

Metabolic Acidosis: Primary Bicarbonate Deficiency

Metabolic acidosis manifests when the blood becomes overly acidic, exhibiting a pH below the normal range of 7.35. This reduction in pH often stems from a decrease in bicarbonate, altering the typical ratio of bicarbonate to the carbonic acid buffer from 20:1 at the standard pH of 7.40. Various factors lead to this condition, with the most common cause attributed to the presence of organic acids or an excess of ketones in the blood.

In addition to the predominant causes, several other conditions can induce metabolic acidosis. Intense physical exertion may provoke temporary metabolic acidosis due to the generation of lactic acid. Certain substances, when ingested in large quantities, can also contribute to this acid-base imbalance. For instance, an overdose of aspirin results in acidosis due to the acidity of its metabolite, **salicylate**. **Uremia**, characterized by the retention of urea and uric acid, is another condition that can lead to metabolic acidosis. Moreover, diabetic ketoacidosis, characterized by an excessive presence of ketones in the blood, is a significant contributor to metabolic acidosis. Other factors that can lead to this condition include a decrease in hydrogen ion excretion, hindering bicarbonate conservation, and excessive loss of bicarbonate ions due to diarrhea. Table 7 provides a comprehensive list of the multiple causes of metabolic acidosis, encompassing both medical conditions and instances induced by certain physiological activities or substance ingestion.

Table 7 | *Common Causes of Metabolic Acidosis and Blood Metabolites* |

Cause	Metabolic
Diarrhea	Bicarbonate
Uremia	Phosphoric, Sulfuric, and Lactic Acids
Diabetic Ketoacidosis	Increased Ketones
Strenuous Exercise	Lactic Acid
Salicylate/aspirin	Sulfasalicylic Acid (SSA)*

* acid metabolites from an ingested chemical.

Metabolic Alkalosis: Primary Bicarbonate Excess

Metabolic alkalosis presents the converse of metabolic acidosis, arising when the blood becomes excessively alkaline, with a pH above 7.45, often due to an overabundance of bicarbonate (referred to as primary bicarbonate excess).

An increase in bicarbonate ions in the blood can occur temporarily following the ingestion of excessive quantities of bicarbonate, citrate, or antacids, frequently taken for conditions like stomach acid reflux. Chronic metabolic alkalosis may result from Cushing's disease, a condition marked by the chronic hypersecretion of ACTH from the anterior pituitary. The excessive ACTH secretion elevates aldosterone levels, leading to heightened urinary potassium excretion which in turn trigger increased secretion of hydrogen ions. Other factors that contribute to metabolic alkalosis include the loss of hydrochloric acid from the stomach due to vomiting, depletion of potassium ions due to the use of diuretics for hypertension, and the excessive use of laxatives. Laxative overuse disrupts the electrolyte and fluid balance, leading to chloride, potassium, and sodium losses that drive the body toward metabolic alkalosis by increasing bicarbonate retention and hydrogen ion excretion.These factors contribute to an increased bicarbonate level in the blood, resulting in the pH shifting to an alkaline state.

Respiratory Disorders

Respiratory Acidosis: Primary Carbonic Acid/Carbon Dioxide Excess

Respiratory acidosis manifests when the blood becomes excessively acidic due to heightened levels of carbonic acid, which results from an excess of carbon dioxide in the bloodstream. This condition can be prompted by various factors that disrupt normal breathing patterns and carbon dioxide elimination mechanisms. Underlying causes may include respiratory ailments like pneumonia, emphysema, or congestive heart failure, all of which impede normal respiratory processes. These disorders can negatively impact the lungs' ability to exchange gasses efficiently, leading to the accumulation of carbon dioxide and the subsequent elevation of carbonic acid levels in the blood, ultimately resulting in respiratory acidosis.

Respiratory Alkalosis: Primary Carbonic Acid/Carbon Dioxide Deficiency

Respiratory alkalosis arises when the blood becomes excessively alkaline due to reduced carbonic acid and carbon dioxide levels. This condition typically occurs when an excessive amount of carbon dioxide is exhaled from the lungs, commonly observed during hyperventilation. The escalated respiratory rate inducing hyperventilation can stem from various triggers such as intense emotional distress, fear, fever, infections, oxygen deprivation (hypoxia), or abnormally high levels of stress hormones like epinephrine and norepinephrine. Unexpectedly, an overdose of aspirin or salicylate toxicity can lead to respiratory alkalosis, as the body endeavors to counterbalance an initial acidotic state.[32]

Compensatory Mechanisms

Several compensatory mechanisms are in place to finely regulate blood pH, employing buffers, respiratory adjustments, and renal functions. While these mechanisms typically function effectively, their effectiveness may be hindered if one of these systems malfunctions, such as in the case of kidney failure or respiratory disorders. When the pH and the ratio of bicarbonate to carbonic acid are altered significantly, the body's ability to compensate may be limited. Moreover, substantial deviations in pH levels have the potential to denature proteins. Extensive protein damage can lead to the disturbance of regular metabolic processes, severe tissue impairments, and potentially fatal outcomes.

Respiratory Compensation

In response to metabolic acidosis, the respiratory system ramps up the breathing rate to eliminate excess carbon dioxide and restore the bicarbonate to carbonic acid ratio to the optimal 20:1 level. This adjustment can occur rapidly, often within minutes. Conversely, when dealing with metabolic alkalosis, the respiratory system's ability to compensate is less efficient than in the case of acidosis. Typically, when faced with elevated pH levels, the respiratory system seeks to elevate carbon dioxide levels in the blood by reducing the respiratory rate to retain carbon dioxide. However, there is a limit as to how much the body can tolerate reduced respiration. As a result, the respiratory mechanism is less effective at compensating for metabolic alkalosis compared to its response to acidosis.

Metabolic Compensation

In response to respiratory diseases causing acidosis, the body employs metabolic and renal compensation strategies centered on the preservation of bicarbonate. In instances of respiratory acidosis, the kidneys augment the conservation of bicarbonate and the excretion of hydrogen ions through the exchange mechanism previously described. These actions work to elevate the

concentration of bicarbonate in the blood, thereby restoring the appropriate balance between bicarbonate and carbonic acid. Conversely, in situations of respiratory alkalosis, the kidneys reduce the generation of bicarbonate and reabsorb hydrogen ions from the tubular fluid. However, these mechanisms may face limitations due to the exchange of potassium ions by renal cells, which employ a potassium-hydrogen ion exchange mechanism (antiporter).[33]

Diagnosing Acidosis and Alkalosis

Laboratory tests analyzing pH, carbon dioxide, PCO2, and bicarbonate are critical in identifying acidosis and alkalosis, shedding light on whether the imbalance is of respiratory or metabolic origin and assessing the efficiency of compensatory mechanisms. These metrics help gauge the condition of the blood—whether it is in an acidotic state, within the normal range, or exhibiting signs of alkalosis. Moreover, the values of PCO2 and total bicarbonate play a significant role in distinguishing between metabolic or respiratory imbalances, providing insights into the body's compensatory efforts. Table 8 enumerates the distinct conditions and their corresponding laboratory results used to categorize these disorders. Typically, metabolic acid-base imbalances stem from kidney-related issues, and the body's respiratory system works to counteract these effects.

Metabolic acidosis arises from lower-than-normal bicarbonate levels in the blood. Initially, the PCO2 may register as normal, but following compensation, it will likely decrease as the body strives to restore the appropriate equilibrium between bicarbonate and carbonic acid/carbon dioxide.

In contrast, respiratory acidosis manifests when an excessive amount of carbon dioxide is present in the bloodstream. Initially, bicarbonate levels may remain normal, but compensatory actions might cause them to increase as an attempt to re-establish the proper balance of bicarbonate and carbonic acid/carbon dioxide.

Metabolic alkalosis indicates an elevated pH due to an excess of bicarbonate in the blood. At first, PCO2 might appear normal, yet if compensation occurs, it may elevate as the body endeavors to restore the proper ratios of bicarbonate and carbonic acid/carbon dioxide.

Respiratory alkalosis is characterized by a deficit of carbon dioxide in the bloodstream. Initially, the bicarbonate concentration could remain within the normal range. Subsequent renal compensation might lead to a decrease in the blood's bicarbonate concentration, reflecting the kidneys' efforts to restore the proper bicarbonate and carbonic acid/carbon dioxide ratios, thereby aiming to regulate pH within the physiological range.[34]

Table 8 | *Types of Acidosis and Alkalosis | (Reference values [arterial]: pH 7.35-7.45; PCO2: 35-45 mm Hg; total venous bicarbonate: 22-26 mEq. N denotes normal; ↑ denotes a rising or increased value; and ↓ denotes a falling or decreased value)*

Type	pH	PCO2	$\mathrm{HCO_3^-}$
Metabolic acidosis	↓	N, then ↓	↓
Respiratory acidosis	↓	↑	N, then ↑
Metabolic alkalosis	↑	N, then ↑	↑
Respiratory alkalosis	↑	↓	N, then ↓

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 13.8: Acid-Base Balance is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

13.9: References

1. Riveros-Perez, E., & Riveros, R. (2018). Water in the human body: An anesthesiologist's perspective on the connection between physicochemical properties of water and physiologic relevance. *Annals of Medicine and Surgery*, *26*, 1-8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amsu.2017.12.007

2. Betts, J. G. et al. (2013). **Figure 26.2 Water Content of the Body's Organs and Tissues.** In *Anatomy and Physiology*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240910.161227/resources/051444feb07a538a338be9af217dbb3a5842db68

3. Popkin BM, D'Anci KE, Rosenberg IH. Water, hydration, and health. Nutr Rev. 2010 Aug;68(8):439-58. doi: 10.1111/j.1753-4887.2010.00304.x. PMID: 20646222; PMCID: PMC2908954.

4. Betts, J. G. et al. (2013). **Figure 26.3 Fluid Compartments in the Human Body.** In *Anatomy and Physiology*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240910.161227/resources/345d0f0cc0cf0046b43b44cb2195ade1c0e4d57b

5. Hall, J. E. (2021). *Guyton and Hall textbook of medical physiology* (14th ed.). Elsevier.

6. Tortora, G. J., & Derrickson, B. (2018). *Principles of anatomy and physiology* (15th ed.). John Wiley & Sons.

7. Betts, J. G. et al. (2013). Figure 26.10 A Flowchart Showing the Thirst Response. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20...8de13a73666a2c

8. Cuzzo B, Padala SA, Lappin SL. Physiology, Vasopressin. [Updated 2023 Aug 14]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK526069/

9. Armstrong M, Kerndt CC, Moore RA. Physiology, Baroreceptors. [Updated 2023 Mar 6]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Pub

10. Sherwood, L. (2016). *Human physiology: From cells to systems* (9th ed.). Cengage Learning.

11. Najem, O., Shah, M. M., Zubair, M., & De Jesus, O. (2024, February 27). *Serum Osmolality*. In StatPearls [Internet]. StatPearls Publishing. Retrieved from https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK567764/

12. Rao S, Pena C, Shurmur S, Nugent K. Atrial Natriuretic Peptide: Structure, Function, and Physiological Effects: A Narrative Review. Curr Cardiol Rev. 2021;17(6):e051121191003. doi: 10.2174/1573403X17666210202102210. PMID: 33530911; PMCID: PMC8950497.

13. Open Resources for Nursing (Open RN); Ernstmeyer K, Christman E, editors. Nursing Fundamentals [Internet]. Eau Claire (WI): Chippewa Valley Technical College; 2021. Chapter 15 Fluids and Electrolytes. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK591820/

14. Pandey DG, Sharma S. Biochemistry, Anion Gap. [Updated 2023 Jul 10]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK539757/

15. Friedler RM, Koffler A, Kurokawa K. Hyponatremia and hypernatremia. Clin Nephrol. 1977 Apr;7(4):163-72. PMID: 870270.

16. Castro D, Sharma S. Hypokalemia. [Updated 2025 Jan 19]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK482465/

17. Simon LV, Hashmi MF, Farrell MW. Hyperkalemia. [Updated 2023 Sep 4]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK470284/

18. Morrison G. Serum Chloride. In: Walker HK, Hall WD, Hurst JW, editors. Clinical Methods: The History, Physical, and Laboratory Examinations. 3rd edition. Boston: Butterworths; 1990. Chapter 197. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK309/

19. Schafer AL, Shoback DM. Hypocalcemia: Diagnosis and Treatment. [Updated 2016 Jan 3]. In: Feingold KR, Ahmed SF, Anawalt B, et al., editors. Endotext [Internet]. South Dartmouth (MA): MDText.com, Inc.; 2000-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK279022/

20. Sadiq NM, Anastasopoulou C, Patel G, et al. Hypercalcemia. [Updated 2024 May 7]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK430714/

21. Sharma S, Hashmi MF, Kaur J, et al. Hypophosphatemia. [Updated 2024 Feb 12]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK493172/

22. Rout P, Jialal I. Hyperphosphatemia. [Updated 2023 Jun 12]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK551586/

23. Taylor JG, Bushinsky DA. Calcium and phosphorus homeostasis. Blood Purif. 2009;27(4):387-94. doi: 10.1159/000209740. Epub 2009 Mar 23. PMID: 19299893.

24. Curry JN, Yu ASL. Magnesium Handling in the Kidney. Adv Chronic Kidney Dis. 2018 May;25(3):236-243. doi: 10.1053/j.ackd.2018.01.003. PMID: 29793662; PMCID: PMC6932629.

25. Shaw I, Gregory K. Acid-base balance: a review of normal physiology. BJA Educ. 2022 Oct;22(10):396-401. doi: 10.1016/j.bjae.2022.06.003. Epub 2022 Aug 18. Erratum in: BJA Educ. 2023 Jan;23(1):39. doi: 10.1016/j.bjae.2022.11.004. PMID: 36132879; PMCID: PMC9482868.

26. Bobulescu IA. The Old West analogy for acid-base buffering. Adv Physiol Educ. 2020 Jun 1;44(2):210-211. doi: 10.1152/advan.00033.2020. PMID: 32243219; PMCID: PMC7410069.

27. Shakhashiri, B. Z., & Dirreen, G. E. (2001). Chemical demonstrations: A handbook for teachers of chemistry. *Journal of Chemical Education, 78*(11), 1499. https://doi.org/10.1021/ed078p1499

28. Chang, R., & Goldsby, K. A. (2016). *Chemistry* (12th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.

29. BruceBlaus. (2017). CO2 & pH [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/2/20/CO2_%26_pH.png

30. Betts, J. G. et al. (2013). Figure 26.16 Respiratory Regulation of Blood pH. In Anatomy and Physiology. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240910.161227/resources/83c9f50ee9c3c686b4cc22f943cb7e2c43ad55b4

31. Betts, J. G. et al. (2013). Figure 26.18 Symptoms of Acidosis and Alkalosis. In *Anatomy and Physiology*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240910.161227/resources/5bc039ce55ce4bd2bf12dc327f95a60ed69fa822

32. Hopkins E, Sanvictores T, Sharma S. Physiology, Acid Base Balance. [Updated 2022 Sep 12]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK507807/

33. Ignatavicius, D. D., Workman, M. L., Rebar, C. R., & Heimgartner, E. L. (2021). *Medical-surgical nursing: Concepts for interprofessional collaborative care* (10th ed.). Elsevier.

34. Clarke, W., & Dufour, D. R. (Eds.). (2018). *Clinical chemistry: Concepts and applications* (2nd ed.). Elsevier.

This page titled 13.9: References is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14: PHYSIOLOGY OF THE IMMUNE SYSTEM

14.1: Objectives
14.2: Introduction
14.3: Lymphocytes
14.4: Primary (Central) Lymphoid Organs and Lymphocyte Development
14.5: Secondary (Peripheral) Lymphoid Organs
14.6: Barrier Defenses and Innate Immune Responses
14.7: The Adaptive Immune Response
14.8: References

This page titled 14: Physiology of the Immune System is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

14.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- Define key immunological terms: immunity, antigens, immunogens, and antibodies (immunoglobulins).
- Clarify the distinction between allergens and antigens in the context of immune reactions.
- Describe epitopes or antigenic determinants and their significance in immune recognition.
- Explore the key components of innate immunity and their crucial functions in the early defense against pathogens.
- Identify and describe the physical and chemical barriers (e.g., skin, mucosal layers, stomach acid) that prevent pathogen entry.
- Explain how each barrier functions to neutralize or expel pathogens.
- Compare and contrast the speed, specificity, and functions of innate and adaptive immune responses.
- Define pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) and explain their role in identifying pathogens.
- Describe phagocytosis and the function of key phagocytic cells like macrophages, neutrophils, and dendritic cells.
- Discuss the roles of other innate immune cells, such as eosinophils, basophils, and natural killer (NK) cells.
- Outline the complement system's pathways (classical, alternative, lectin) and how they contribute to immune defense.
- Describe interferons and other early-induced proteins, explaining their roles in combating viral infections and pathogen tagging (opsonization).
- Define antigen-presenting cells (APCs) and explain their pivotal role in the immune system.
- Characterize key cellular interactions within the immune response, including TH cells, TC cells, natural killer cells, plasma cells, and memory cells.
- Detail the activation process of helper T cells and their role in adaptive immunity.
- Explain the activation and effector functions of cytotoxic T cells in combatting infections.
- Describe the role of B cells in humoral (antibody-mediated) immunity and their specific mechanisms of action against infections.
- Identify the structure and major functions of each of the five classes of immunoglobulins (antibodies): IgG, IgM, IgE, IgA, and IgD.
- Compare cell-mediated and antibody-mediated immunity, highlighting their respective roles and mechanisms.

This page titled 14.1: Objectives is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.2: Introduction

The immune system is a highly complex and specialized network designed to identify, recognize, and protect the body from antigens to support overall health. **Antigens** are substances that provoke an immune response by prompting the production of **antibodies** or activating other defense mechanisms to counter their presence. These antigens can include pathogens, toxins, foreign cells, or any molecules perceived as threats. An **allergen** is a typically harmless substance that triggers an immune response in certain individuals, leading to allergic reactions. When someone with an allergy encounters an allergen (such as pollen, pet dander, certain foods, or dust mites), their immune system mistakenly identifies it as a threat, resulting in the release of chemicals like histamines.

Comprising a vast array of cells, tissues, and biochemical molecules, the immune system continuously monitors for signs of infection or abnormal cell activity. When a threat is detected, immune cells, antibodies, and signaling molecules work together to neutralize or eliminate it. Moreover, the immune system has a memory component, allowing it to respond more swiftly and effectively to repeated encounters with the same pathogen.

The immune system consists of two main branches, the **innate immune system**, which provides immediate, non-specific defense, and the **adaptive immune system**, which delivers targeted responses based on past encounters with pathogens. Together, these systems coordinate to protect the body against a wide range of potential threats.

The immune response has three key phases, each distinct in timing and function. First, barrier defenses, like skin and mucous membranes, act immediately to block pathogens as the body's first line of defense. The next phase, the innate immune response, is rapid and nonspecific, deploying specialized cells and molecules to limit pathogen spread. Finally, the adaptive immune response is slower but highly targeted, involving **lymphocytes**—a specific type of white blood cell—that coordinate a tailored defense against specific threats, fine-tuning the immune response.

All blood cells, including those essential to the immune system, originate in the bone marrow through complex differentiation processes (see Chapter 8). Immune cells fall into three main functional categories: lymphocytes, which coordinate adaptive immune responses to specific threats; phagocytic cells, specialized for engulfing and destroying pathogens; and granulocytes, which help combat parasites and intracellular pathogens, like viruses.

This page titled 14.2: Introduction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.3: Lymphocytes

Lymphocytes are categorized into two fundamental types: **B lymphocytes**, or **B cells**, and **T lymphocytes**, also known as **T cells**. Morphologically, both B and T cells exhibit similar characteristics, boasting a prominent central nucleus encircled by a thin rim of cytoplasm. Their differentiation, however, is discerned through distinct surface protein markers and the specific molecules they produce. While both B and T cells originate in the red bone marrow, B cells continue to mature there. In contrast, T cells undergo a maturation process within the **thymus**. Upon reaching maturity, they enter circulation, distributing themselves throughout various body compartments. B and T cells can be found in the blood and lymph and reside in secondary lymphoid organs such as the spleen and lymph nodes. T cells make up about 70-85 percent of the lymphocyte population in peripheral blood, while B cells represent a smaller percentage.

B Lymphocytes

B lymphocytes primarily function as antibody producers. Antibodies are specialized proteins that selectively bind to antigens, aiding in infection defense. When B lymphocytes identify an antigen and become activated, they differentiate into a distinct cell type responsible for antibody secretion. These activated B lymphocytes are referred to as **plasma cells**. Morphologically distinct from B and T lymphocytes, plasma cells contain a large amount of cytoplasm and an extensive rough endoplasmic reticulum—structures specialized for high levels of antibody synthesis.

T Lymphocytes

T lymphocytes, while not engaged in antibody secretion, can release soluble signaling molecules that facilitate communication with other components of the adaptive immune response. Additionally, they possess the capacity to eliminate cells infected by intracellular pathogens. T lymphocytes can be categorized into two principal subtypes: **helper T cells** and **cytotoxic T cells**, each with distinct roles in orchestrating immune responses.

Natural Killer Cells

Natural killer (**NK**) **cells** play a key role in the innate immune response. These specialized lymphocytes circulate in the blood, containing cytotoxic granules similar to those in cytotoxic T cells. NK cells act as a first line of defense against viral infections and certain cancers, using these granules to destroy infected or abnormal cells.[1] Different lymphocyte types and their main functions are outlined in Table 1.

Table 1 | *Types of Lymphocytes* |

Lymphocyte Type	Primary Function
B lymphocyte	Generates diverse antibodies
T lymphocyte	Secretes chemical messengers
Plasma cell	Secretes antibodies
Natural Killer (NK) Cell	Destroys infected cells

This page titled 14.3: Lymphocytes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.4: Primary (Central) Lymphoid Organs and Lymphocyte Development

The primary lymphoid organs, **bone marrow** and **thymus**, are specialized sites where lymphocytes undergo maturation, proliferation, and selection for survival. These processes ensure that lymphocytes can effectively distinguish between self and non-self, a critical factor for their development and function in the immune system.

The Bone Marrow

Red bone marrow, characterized by its collection of loosely arranged cells, serves as the site for hematopoiesis—the process of blood cell formation (Figure 1). In contrast, **yellow bone marrow** primarily functions as an energy reservoir, predominantly composed of fat cells.

During embryonic development, the initial site for blood cell production is situated within the yolk sac. As embryogenesis progresses, the responsibility for blood cell formation is gradually assumed by various organs, including the spleen, lymph nodes, and the liver. The bone marrow emerges as the predominant site for most hematopoietic functions. While the bone marrow oversees most cell differentiation processes, some final stages of maturation for select cell types may occur in organs such as the thymus. For instance, B cells predominantly develop within the red bone marrow, while specific immature lymphocytes depart from the bone marrow and undergo maturation primarily within the thymus.

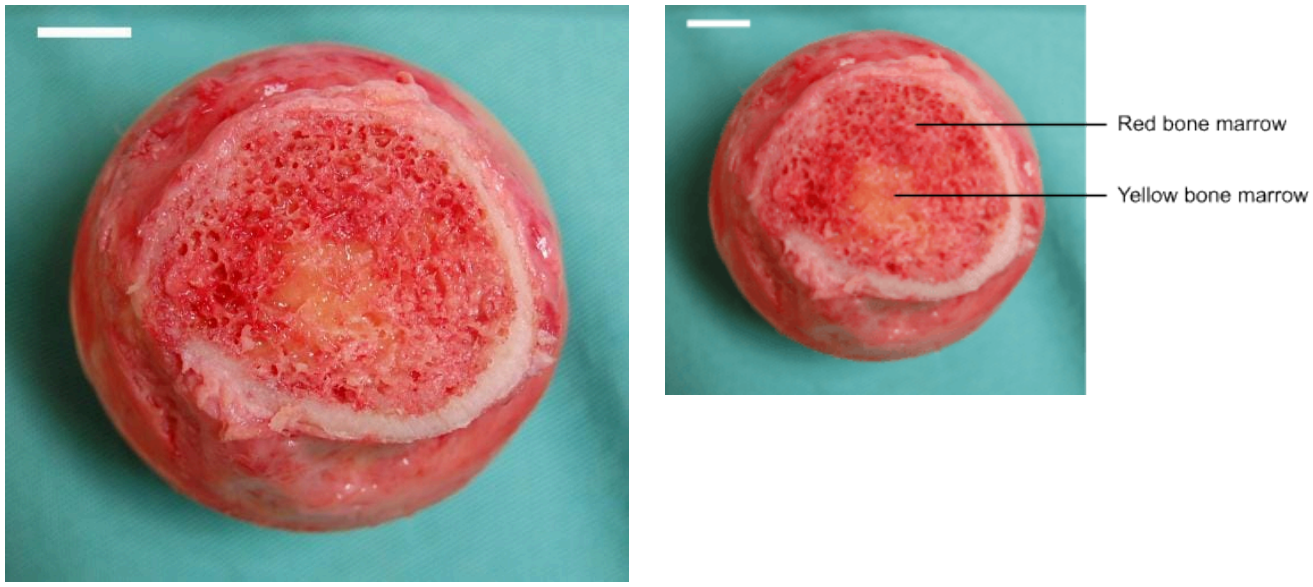


Figure 1 | Bone Marrow | [2] Red bone marrow fills the head of the femur, and a spot of yellow bone marrow is visible in the center.

The Thymus

The thymus is a bilobed organ located in the mediastinum, above the heart and behind the sternum, encased in a connective tissue capsule. This capsule extends inward as **trabeculae**, dividing the thymus into smaller **lobules**. The outer region, or **cortex**, is rich in **thymocytes**, epithelial cells, macrophages, and dendritic cells, while the inner **medulla** contains a more sparsely arranged collection of these cells (Figure 2). Thymic **involution**, the gradual reduction in the thymus size, is a natural process. This process commences within the first year of life.

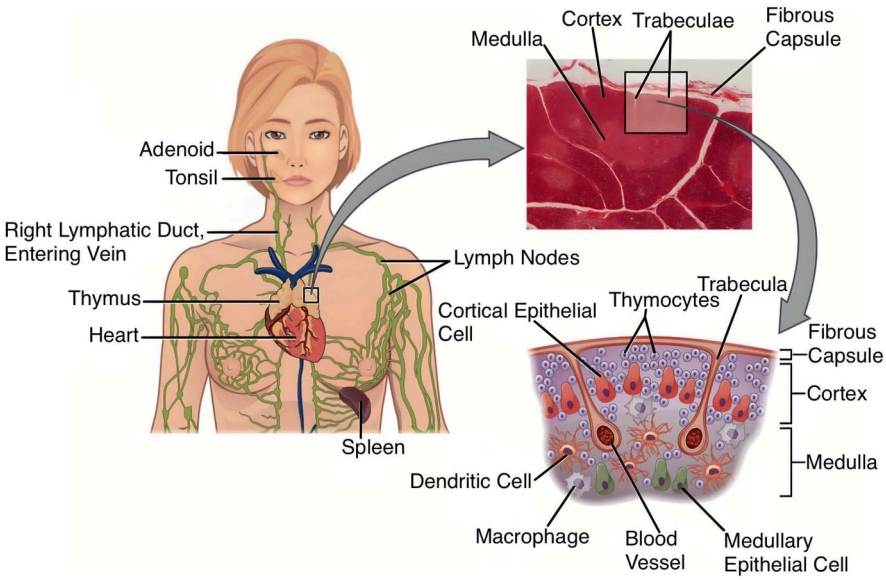


Figure 2 | Location, Structure, and Histology of the Thymus | [3] The thymus, located anterior to the heart, is the primary site of T cell maturation. Histological sections show a dark-staining cortex with densely packed thymocytes and cortical epithelial cells, separated into lobules by trabeculae (extensions of the fibrous capsule). The lighter-staining medulla contains dendritic cells, macrophages, and medullary epithelial cells. T cells are transported via lymphatic ducts to lymph nodes and other peripheral lymphoid organs for immune surveillance.

This page titled 14.4: Primary (Central) Lymphoid Organs and Lymphocyte Development is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.5: Secondary (Peripheral) Lymphoid Organs

Lymphocytes develop and mature in the **primary** or **central lymphoid organs** but exert their immune responses within the **secondary** or **peripheral lymphoid organs**. A lymphocyte that has left the primary organ and has either entered a secondary lymphoid organ or is in circulation is termed "naïve." These naïve lymphocytes possess full immunological functionality but have not encountered any antigens. In addition to circulating in the bloodstream and lymphatic system, naïve lymphocytes accumulate in secondary lymphoid organs. These secondary lymphoid organs encompass **lymph nodes**, the **spleen**, and **lymphoid nodules**. These tissues share several common features, such as the presence of lymphoid follicles where lymphocytes are generated, composed of reticular fibers, which are accompanied by fixed macrophages, and possessing **germinal centers** that serve as sites for the rapid proliferation of B lymphocytes and the generation of plasma cells.

Lymph Nodes

Lymph nodes are clusters of lymphatic tissue located alongside the major lymph vessels. Much like the thymus, these small, bean-shaped structures are encased by a connective tissue capsule and divided into compartments by extensions known as trabeculae. Apart from the support provided by the capsule and trabeculae, the lymph node's structural framework includes reticular fibers.

The primary pathways into the lymph node are through **afferent lymphatic vessels**, as depicted in Figure 3. Exiting the lymph node, cells and lymph typically utilize another set of vessels called **efferent lymphatic vessels**. Lymph enters the lymph node through the **subcapsular sinus**, a space populated by dendritic cells, macrophages, and reticular fibers.

Within the cortex of the lymph node are lymphoid follicles, each consisting of germinal centers where B cells undergo rapid division, surrounded by a layer of T cells and other accessory cells. As lymph continues its course through the node, it proceeds into the medulla, which houses medullary cords composed of B cells, and medullary sinuses, where lymph gathers before departing the node via the efferent lymphatic vessels. Lymph nodes are important in cleansing lymphatic fluid by removing debris and pathogens, earning them the name "lymph filters". Whenever bacteria infiltrate the interstitial fluid, lymphatic capillaries act, capturing and conveying them to a nearby regional lymph node. Within these nodes, dendritic cells and macrophages engulf and neutralize many pathogens that traverse the lymph node, effectively eliminating them from the body. Additionally, the lymph node serves as a central place for adaptive immune responses by T cells and B cells.

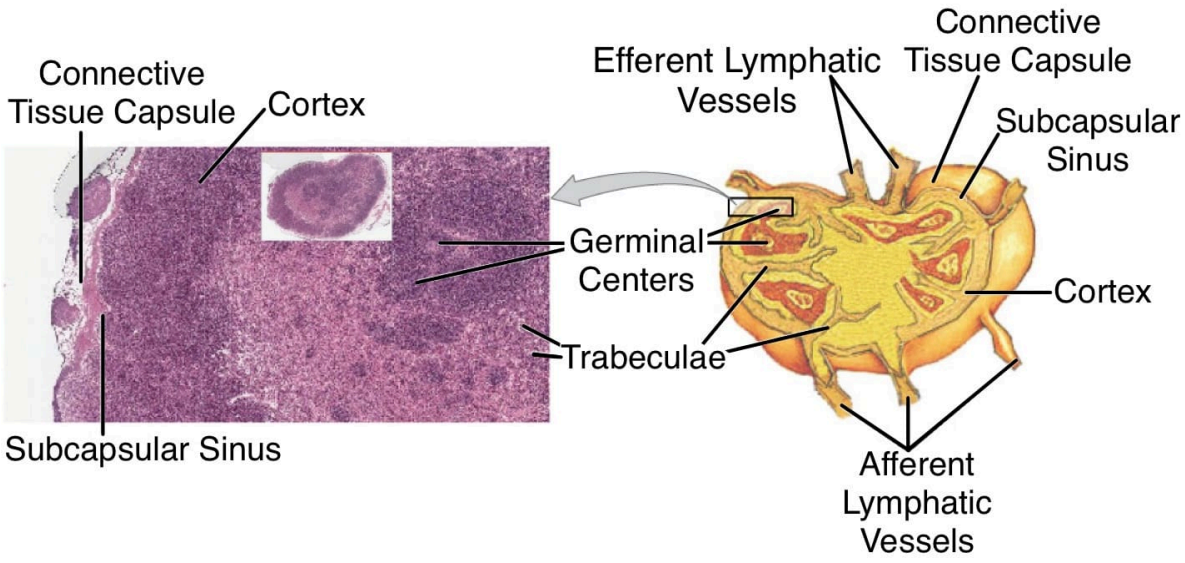


Figure 3 | Structure and Histology of a Lymph Node **|** [4] A histological image shows the subcapsular sinus where the lymph first collects. Lymphocytes in the cortex and follicles interact with lymph and undergo rapid mutation and proliferation in the region of the germinal centers. Finally they exit the lymph node by efferent lymphatic vessels.

The Spleen

The spleen, characterized by its delicate structure and rich vascularization, lacks a capsule and presents a dark red appearance due to its extensive blood supply. This organ plays a key role as a major secondary lymphoid organ (Figure 4). Measuring approximately 12 cm (5 inches) in length, it is anchored to the stomach's lateral border via the gastrosplenic ligament.

Trabeculae of connective tissue subdivide the spleen, creating distinct regions. Each splenic nodule comprises the **red pulp**, primarily composed of red blood cells, and the **white pulp**, which resembles the lymphoid follicles found in lymph nodes. The marginal zone, positioned between the red and white pulp, serves as a boundary where antigens from circulation are captured and presented to lymphocytes in the white pulp.

The red pulp encompasses reticular fibers, fixed macrophages, free macrophages, and various blood cells, including some lymphocytes. In contrast, the white pulp surrounds a central arteriole and is composed of germinal centers rich in dividing B cells. This area is enveloped by T cells and accessory cells such as macrophages and dendritic cells. As a result, the red pulp predominantly operates as a filtration system for the blood, employing elements of the relatively nonspecific immune response. In contrast, the white pulp serves as the initiation site for adaptive T and B cell responses.

The spleen is often called the "blood filter" due to its extensive vasculature and the presence of macrophages and dendritic cells that clear microbes and other substances from the blood, including aging red blood cells. The spleen contributes to the recycling of red blood cells, along with the liver and bone marrow. Its rich vascularization and slow blood circulation allow it to store a significant volume of red blood cells, which can be released in scenarios like hypovolemia. Additionally, the spleen stores platelets and facilitates the removal of aged platelets from circulation. Approximately one-fourth of the total lymphocyte population can be harbored within the spleen. Moreover, the spleen serves as a hub for immune responses against blood-borne pathogens.

While the spleen assumes a crucial role in various functions, it is not indispensable for survival, and individuals can lead healthy lives without it. In its absence, other organs in the body, particularly the liver, adapt and enhance their capabilities to combat infections and eliminate aged red blood cells.

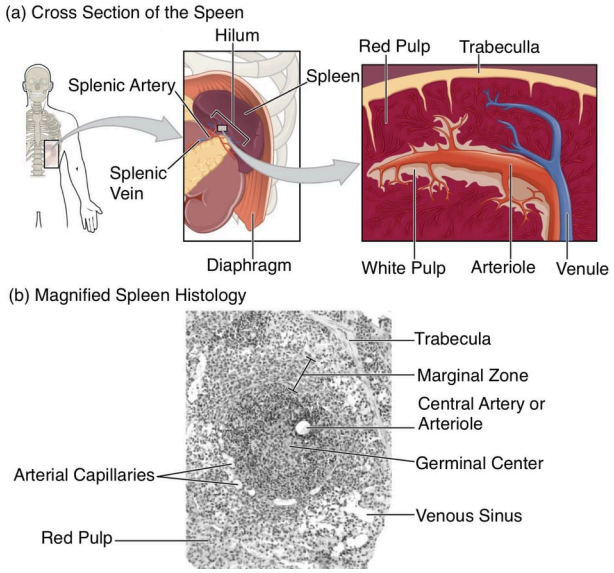


Figure 4 | The Spleen | [5] (a) The spleen is organized into red pulp and white pulp based on the distribution of blood and lymphocytes. Lymphocytes enter the spleen via the splenic artery and exit by the splenic vein. (b) A micrograph of spleen tissue shows the germinal center.

Lymphoid Nodules

Lymphoid tissues, known as **lymphoid nodules**, exhibit a simpler structure than the spleen and lymph nodes. These nodules consist of densely packed lymphocytes without a surrounding fibrous capsule. Typically, they are situated in the respiratory and digestive tracts, regions frequently exposed to environmental pathogens. One significant example of lymphoid nodules is the

tonsils, strategically positioned along the inner lining of the pharynx (Figure 5). Tonsils play a crucial role in developing immunity against oral pathogens. Among these tonsils, the **pharyngeal tonsil**, located at the rear of the throat, is sometimes referred to as the **adenoid** when it becomes swollen—a sign of an active immune response to infection. Additionally, there are paired **lingual** and **palatine tonsils**.

Histologically, the epithelial layer extends deeply into the tonsillar tissue to form **tonsillar crypts**. These structures accumulate various materials introduced into the body through ingestion and inhalation. Interestingly, these crypts serve as a "welcome mat" for pathogens, encouraging them to penetrate deep into the tonsillar tissues, where they encounter numerous lymphoid follicles and are subsequently eliminated. Thus, tonsils aid in identifying, eliminating, and developing immunity against common environmental pathogens, particularly during youth, to provide protection in later years. In cases where children experience recurrent throat infections, particularly involving the palatine tonsils located on either side of the pharynx, their tonsils may be removed, especially since the enlargement of these tonsils can obstruct breathing and swallowing.

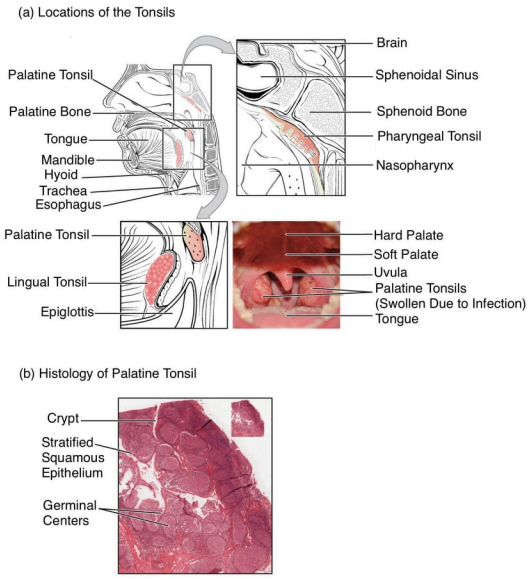


Figure 5 | Locations and Histology of the Tonsils | [6] (a) The pharyngeal tonsil is located on the roof of the posterior superior wall of the nasopharynx. The palatine tonsils lay on each side of the pharynx. Lingual tonsils are situated on the posterior part of the back of the tongue on either side (b) A micrograph shows the palatine tonsil tissue.

Mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) comprises collections of lymphoid follicles directly associated with the epithelial mucous membranes. MALT forms dome-shaped structures beneath the mucosa of various body regions, including the gastrointestinal tract, breast tissue, lungs, and eyes. **Peyer's patches,** a specific type of MALT found in the small intestine (Figure 6), are significant in initiating immune responses against substances ingested through the digestive system.[1]

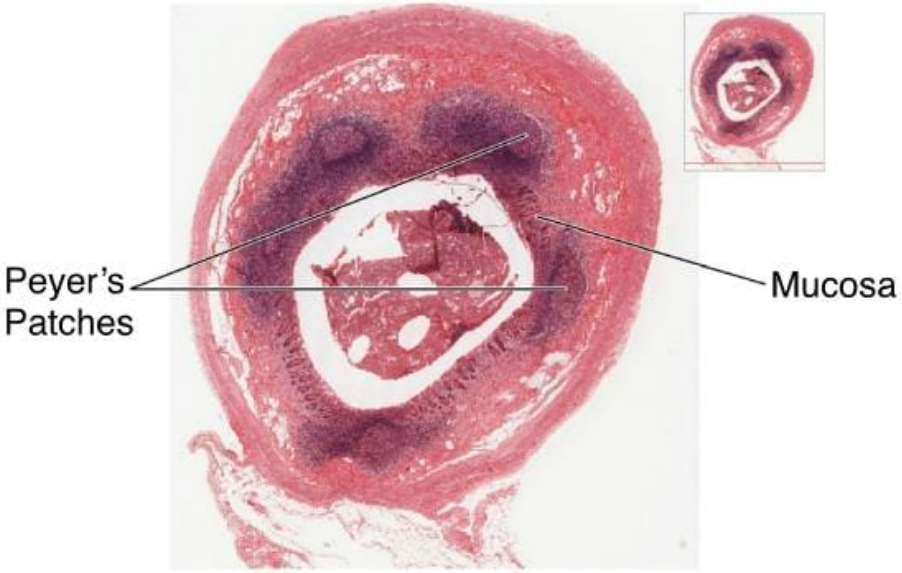


Figure 6 | Mucosa-associated Lymphoid Tissue (MALT) Nodule | [7] A section of the intestinal mucosa shows Peyer's patches which are organized lymphoid aggregates that form part of MALT.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 14.5: Secondary (Peripheral) Lymphoid Organs is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.6: Barrier Defenses and Innate Immune Responses

The immune system can be organized into two interrelated mechanisms designed to combat pathogens: the i**nnate immune response** and the **adaptive immune response**. The innate immune response, characterized by its relative speed but lack of specificity, represents the initial line of defense against various pathogens. On the other hand, the adaptive immune response unfolds at a slower pace during an initial encounter with a pathogen but exhibits remarkable specificity and effectiveness against a broad spectrum of pathogens.

There are physical barriers that deter pathogens from entering, neutralize them upon entry, or expel them before they can establish themselves within the body's soft tissues. Barrier defenses operate proactively, continuously safeguarding against an extensive array of pathogens. These defensive mechanisms are associated with the external surfaces of the body where pathogens might attempt to gain entry. The skin, for instance, serves as the primary barrier, boasting a dry, keratinized epithelial layer that inhibits bacterial growth. As these cells are consistently shed from the skin, they carry bacteria and other pathogens along with them. Moreover, the skin is equipped with multiple protective attributes such as sweat and other secretions that adjust pH levels, secrete **lysozyme**—an enzyme responsible for breaking down bacterial cell walls—contain antimicrobial lipids, and physically wash away microbes, further fortifying this critical defense. Another essential barrier is found in the oral cavity, where saliva, rich in the antimicrobial enzyme lysozyme, plays a key role. The stomach presents a hostile, acidic environment that effectively neutralizes many pathogens, serving as a formidable barrier as well. Additionally, the mucous layer lining various body parts, such as the gastrointestinal, respiratory, and reproductive tracts, acts as a trap for microbes and debris, aiding in their removal. In the upper respiratory tract, ciliated epithelial cells help move contaminated mucus upwards into the oral cavity, where it is swallowed and eventually reaches the stomach's acidic environment [1](see Figure 7 and Table 2).

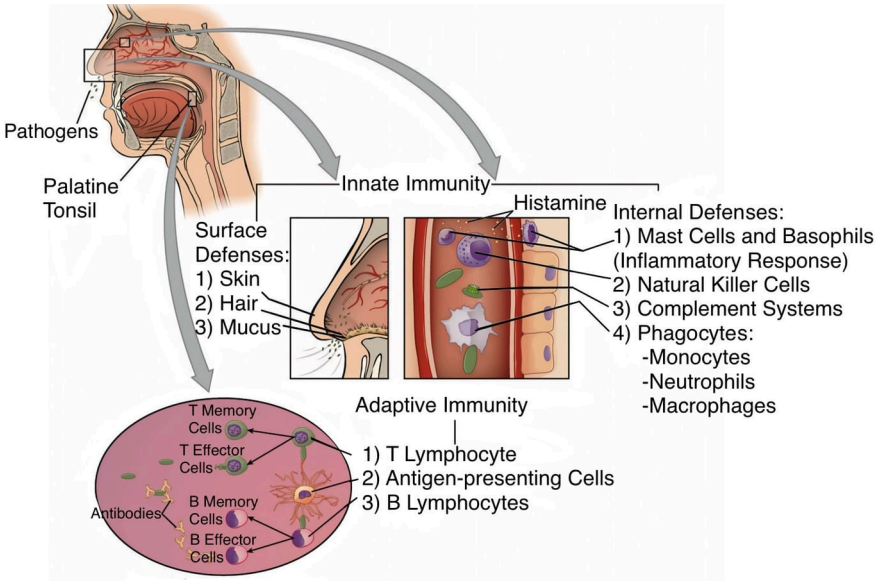


Figure 7 | Cooperation between Innate and Adaptive Immune Responses | [8] The immune system defends against pathogens through natural physical barriers such as skin, hair, and mucus, as well as through a variety of innate immune cells in the bloodstream. Innate immunity includes mast cells, basophils, natural killer (NK) cells, the complement system, and phagocytes such as macrophages and neutrophils. The adaptive immune system involves T and B lymphocytes, which differentiate into effector and memory cells. Antigen-presenting cells (APCs) are involved in initiating adaptive responses by processing and presenting antigens to lymphocytes.

Table 2 | *Barrier Defenses* |

Site	Specific defense	Protective aspect
Skin◈	Epidermal surface	Keratinized cells of surface, Langerhans cells

Site	Specific defense	Protective aspect
Skin (sweat/secretions)	Sweat glands, sebaceous glands	Low pH, washing action
Oral cavity	Salivary glands	Lysozyme
Stomach	Gastrointestinal tract	Low pH
Mucosal surfaces	Mucosal epithelium	Non-keratinized epithelial cells
Normal flora (nonpathogenic bacteria)	Mucosal tissues	Prevent pathogens from growing on mucosal surfaces

Recognition of Pathogens

Phagocytic cells and cytotoxic NK cells can identify unique patterns found in pathogenic molecules, such as bacterial cell wall components and flagellar proteins. These patterns are recognized by **pattern recognition receptors** (**PRRs**), which are membrane-bound structures on cells that detect distinct features of pathogens and stress-related molecules. In contrast to the adaptive immune system, which utilizes a diverse array of highly specific receptors, the innate immune system relies on a more restricted set of receptors to combat a wide range of pathogens. When they recognize a pathogen, innate immune cells quickly bind and initiate phagocytosis or apoptosis to eliminate the threat, using receptors tailored for bacterial components and those that interact with the complement system.

Phagocytosis represents a pivotal and effective mechanism for eliminating pathogens during innate immune responses. In this process, the phagocyte engulfs the pathogen, creating a structure known as a **phagosome**. Subsequently, this phagosome fuses with a lysosome containing digestive enzymes, culminating in effectively destroying numerous pathogens (Figure 8). However, certain bacteria, such as *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, the causative agent of tuberculosis, exhibit resistance to these enzymes, rendering their clearance from the body more challenging.[9]

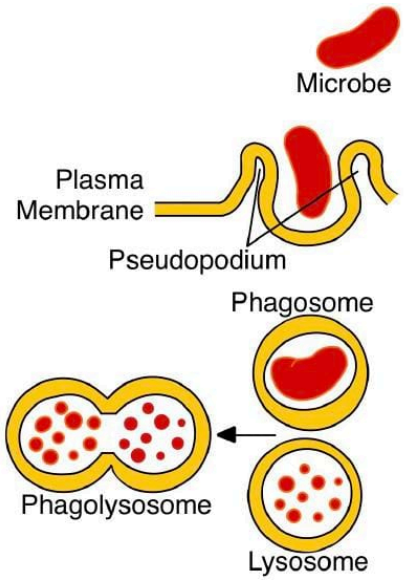


Figure 8 | Phagocytosis |[10] In this figure, the plasma membrane of the phagocyte extends around the microbe by pseudopodia to engulf it, forming a phagosome. The phagosome then fuses with a lysosome forming a phagolysosome , allowing digestive enzymes to degrade and eliminate the pathogen.

Cells of the Innate Immune Response

Monocytes and Macrophages

Among the immune system's phagocytes, macrophages, neutrophils, and dendritic cells are the primary participants. Monocytes, circulating precursor cells, can differentiate into either macrophages and are rapidly recruited to sites of infection through signaling molecules associated with inflammation. Macrophages, characterized by their irregular shape and amoeboid nature, are the most versatile phagocytes in the body (Figure 9). They navigate through tissues, employing pseudopodia to traverse capillary walls. While actively contributing to innate immune responses, they have evolved to collaborate with lymphocytes as an integral component of the adaptive immune response. Macrophages can be found in various body tissues, either freely roaming within connective tissues or anchored to reticular fibers within specific tissues, such as lymph nodes. When pathogens breach the body's barrier defenses, macrophages serve as the frontline defense. They adopt different names based on their location, such as Kupffer cells in the liver, histiocytes in connective tissues, and alveolar macrophages in the lungs.[11]

Neutrophils

Neutrophils are phagocytic leukocytes that utilize chemotaxis to migrate from the bloodstream into infected tissues. Functioning as rapid-response units, they are deployed to promptly eliminate pathogens through phagocytosis. Distinct from macrophages, which maintain a resident sentinel role, neutrophils possess the unique capacity to form Neutrophil Extracellular Traps (NETs), a key component of pus, which aids in pathogen immobilization and destruction.[12]

Table 3 | *Phagocytic Cells of the Innate Immune System* |

Cell	Cell type	Primary location	Function in the innate immune response
Macrophage	Differentiated monocyte	Body cavities/organs	Phagocytosis
Neutrophil	Granulocyte	Blood	Phagocytosis
Monocyte	Agranulocyte	Blood	Precursor of macrophage/dendritic cell
Eosinophil	Granulocyte	Blood	Combat parasitic infection
Basophil	Granulocyte	Blood	Release histamine in allergic reactions; inflammation
Natural killer cell	Lymphocyte	Blood, spleen, tissues	Target and destroy virus-infected and cancer cells

Eosinophils

Eosinophils constitute another significant component of the innate immune response. While they possess the capacity for phagocytosis, their efficiency in this regard is notably lower than that of neutrophils. Consequently, their predominant role in the immune system is rooted in their distinctive properties. Eosinophils are equipped with granules containing toxic proteins that can be secreted to counteract parasitic infections effectively. However, it is essential to note that elevated eosinophil levels can trigger allergic reactions.

Basophils

Basophils serve as a natural source of endogenous heparin, which acts as an anticoagulant. Additionally, they contribute to both inflammatory responses and the development of allergic reactions.[11]

Mast Cells

Mast cells are tissue-resident granulocytes densely packed with mediators like histamine, crucial for initiating inflammation and allergic reactions. They are present from birth, provide immediate defense, and recognize broad patterns associated with threats, rather than highly specific, previously encountered antigens in the way adaptive immunity does. Found abundantly in connective tissues, particularly near surfaces exposed to the environment, they rapidly degranulate upon activation, releasing substances that cause vasodilation, increased permeability, and other inflammatory symptoms. They also synthesize new mediators, making

them key players in immediate immune defense and hypersensitivity disorders.[1]

Natural Killer Cells

Natural Killer (NK) cells are potent effector cells of the innate immune system, targeting and eliminating abnormal cells, particularly those that are virally infected or cancerous. Their primary recognition mechanism involves detecting the *absence* of **Major Histocompatibility Complex** (**MHC**) **Class I** molecules on the target cell surface. While MHC Class I, expressed on most nucleated cells, normally delivers an inhibitory signal to NK cells (preventing self-attack), its downregulation or loss in abnormal cells removes this brake, leading to NK cell activation. Contrastingly, **cytolytic T cells** (a specific subtype of lymphocytes) rely on the *presence* of specific pathogenic antigens presented by MHC Class I for activation. In addition to this 'missing self' recognition, NK cells induce apoptosis through other pathways: they express **Fas ligand**, which engages the **Fas receptor** on infected cells, and they release cytotoxic granules. These granules contain **perforin**, which forms pores in the target cell membrane, allowing **granzymes** to enter and trigger programmed cell death (Figure 9). Both mechanisms are highly effective in controlling intracellular pathogens by halting viral replication.[1]

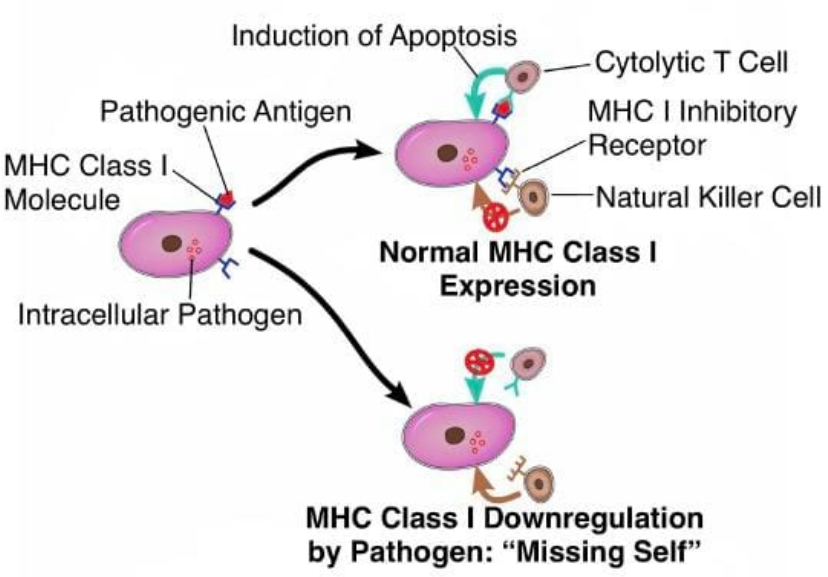


Figure 9 | Natural Killer Cell and its Response to Infected Cells |[13] Natural killer cells induce apoptosis in abnormal cells that lack MHC I expression. In normal cells, MHC I inhibitory receptors engage NK cells to prevent activation. Without this inhibitory signal, NK cells recognize the cell as abnormal and initiate cell death. In contrast, cytolytic T cells recognize pathogenic antigens presented on MHC I and target the infected cells.

Chemical Mediators and Processes Involved in the Innate Immunity

Cytokines

Leukocytes release a variety of chemical mediators, often referred to as **cytokines**, including **interleukins** (such as **IL-1**, **IL-2**, **IL-3**, **IL-4**, and **IL-5**) and **tumor necrosis factor** (**TNF-α**). Interleukins play critical roles in immune regulation, including promoting the activation and differentiation of immune cells, facilitating communication between them, and coordinating inflammatory responses. TNF-α has multiple functions, such as directly lysing certain tumor cells and acting as a potent pyrogen that induces fever, either directly or by stimulating IL-1 secretion, while also contributing to cell proliferation and differentiation under specific conditions.[1]

Early-induced Proteins

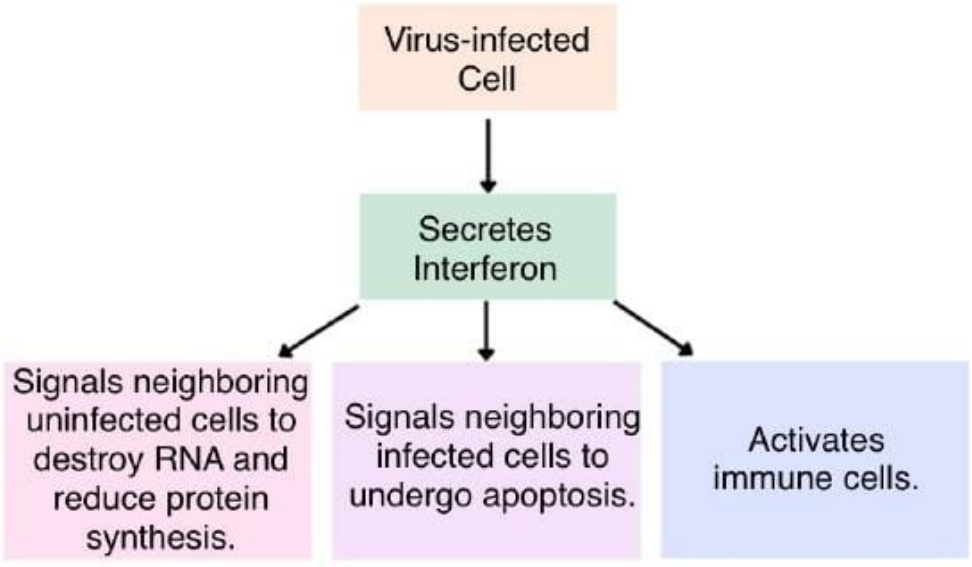


Figure 10 | The Role of Interferons in Defending the Body Against Viral Infection | Interferon proteins limit the spread of viral pathogens by inducing antiviral states in nearby cells, reducing protein synthesis, activating immune cell responses, and promoting apoptosis of neighboring infected cells.

In the innate immune response, **early-induced proteins** are synthesized as needed rather than being continuously present. **Interferons**, for example, are produced by cells upon viral infection and released to act on neighboring cells, prompting them to produce **antiviral proteins**. Although the infected cell may be lost, this response protects surrounding cells from viral invasion (Figure 10). Other early-induced proteins such as **mannose-binding** and **C-reactive proteins**, target bacterial components. Produced in the liver, they bind to bacterial cell walls and facilitate phagocytosis by allowing macrophages to recognize and engulf tagged bacteria. This tagging process, called **opsonization**, enhances the efficiency of pathogen clearance.[1]

Complement System

The complement system is a group of proteins that are naturally present in the bloodstream. While they share certain characteristics with antibacterial proteins involved in the early-induced immune response, these complement proteins are constitutively present and do not fall into the category of early-induced immune factors. Produced in the liver, these proteins play diverse roles in the innate immune response through what is known as the **alternative pathway** of complement activation. Furthermore, the complement system also contributes to the adaptive immune response, operating via the **classical pathway**.

When activated, the complement system undergoes sequential enzymatic modifications and fragmentation. Some fragments attach to the pathogen's cell membrane, marking it for phagocytosis in a process known as opsonization. Others disperse away from the pathogen and serve as chemotactic agents, drawing phagocytic cells to the site of inflammation. Additionally, some fragments create destructive pores in the pathogen's plasma membrane, leading to its destruction.

The classical pathway relies on the presence of antibodies from the adaptive immune response. In contrast, the alternative pathway can be activated independently of antibodies. In the alternative pathway, C3 undergoes spontaneous low-level hydrolysis in the plasma, a process known as "tickover." This hydrolyzed form of C3 can initiate the complement cascade if it encounters a foreign surface, such as a microbial cell wall, which stabilizes it and allows the formation of **C3 convertase**. However, in the absence of pathogens or other activating surfaces, natural regulatory proteins in the body prevent unchecked complement activation, maintaining immune balance.

The larger **C3b** fragment binds to the pathogen's surface, while the smaller **C3a** fragment diffuses outward from the activation site, attracting phagocytes to the site of infection. **C5a** is a small protein fragment generated during the activation of the complement system. It acts as a chemotactic factor, recruiting immune cells like neutrophils and macrophages to sites of infection or injury. It also enhances vascular permeability and promotes the release of pro-inflammatory cytokines, which helps to

amplify the inflammatory response, allowing for an effective immune defense. Surface-bound C3b subsequently triggers the rest of the cascade, with the final five proteins, **C5** to **C9**, forming the **membrane-attack complex** (**MAC**). The MAC can eliminate specific pathogens by disrupting their osmotic balance.

The **lectin pathway** is activated when **mannose-binding lectin** (**MBL**), a protein in the blood, recognizes and binds to specific carbohydrate patterns found on the surface of many pathogens, like bacteria, fungi, and viruses. When MBL binds to these carbohydrates, it forms a complex with other proteins that, in turn, activate the complement protein **C4**, leading to the formation of C3 convertase. This enzyme amplifies the cascade, promoting opsonization, inflammation, and membrane attack, helping the immune system target and eliminate pathogens (Figure 11).

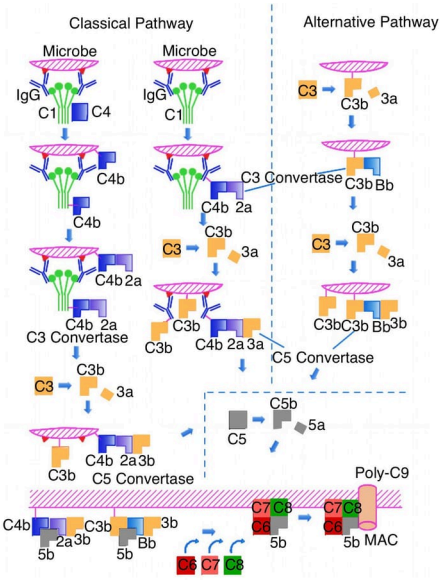


Figure 11 | Complement Cascade and Function | [14] The classical pathway is initiated by binding of C1 to the constant regions of IgG or IgM antibodies. This induces a conformational change that forms the C1 complex, which first cleaves C4. C4b binds to the membrane, followed by C1-mediated cleavage of C2. C2b is released, and C2a binds with C4b to form C3 convertase (C4b2a). C3 convertase cleaves multiple C3 proteins; some C3b binds to the convertase to form C5 convertase (C4b2a3b), while additional C3b deposits on cell surfaces for opsonization. C5 convertase cleaves C5, depositing C5b on the membrane to initiate formation of the membrane attack complex (MAC). C6, C7, C8, and C9 assemble into a pore-forming structure that leads to cell lysis. C4a, C3a, and C5a are also released during this process as inflammatory mediators known as anaphylatoxins. The alternative pathway is initiated by spontaneous hydrolytic cleavage of C3 in the serum, generating C3b. C3b binds Factor B, which is then cleaved to form C3 convertase (C3bBb). This unstable membrane-bound C3 convertase is stabilized by the serum protein properdin. The alternative C3 convertase cleaves additional C3 molecules, and together with surface-bound C3b, forms C5 convertase. This enzyme cleaves C5, initiating MAC formation through deposition of C5b, followed by assembly of C6, C7, C8, and C9.

Inflammation

Inflammation is a complex protective response to various types of harm, including infections, injuries, oxygen or nutrient deprivation, immune dysfunction, chemical exposure, extreme temperatures, or radiation. This process involves the coordinated action of cellular and chemical components to remove the source of injury, clear damaged cells, and initiate tissue healing. Inflammation is essential for infection control and wound repair, preventing negative health outcomes. However, excessive or chronic inflammation can lead to conditions such as atherosclerosis or cancer due to the buildup of harmful agents.

When an infection occurs, the infected cells secrete cytokines, which trigger an increase in the production and release of phagocytes. These immune cells are recruited to the site of injury through chemotaxis and diapedesis (movement across vessel walls). Cytokines stimulate the expression of adhesion molecules and receptors, facilitating the recruitment and binding of phagocytes to the infected area, where they carry out phagocytosis to remove pathogens. This process manifests in the four cardinal signs of inflammation: *rubor* (redness), *tumor* (swelling), *calor* (heat), and *dolor* (pain).[1]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 14.6: Barrier Defenses and Innate Immune Responses is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.7: The Adaptive Immune Response

Innate immunity serves as the body's initial line of defense, offering quick, non-specific protection against pathogens. In contrast, adaptive immunity is more targeted and slower to develop but provides long-lasting protection and memory against specific pathogens (Table 4). Together, these systems work in harmony to ensure comprehensive defense against infections. While innate responses may not entirely stop pathogen growth, they slow it down, allowing the adaptive immune system to strengthen and effectively combat the infection. Within adaptive immunity, responses can be divided into **antibody-mediated** (**humoral**) responses led by B cells and **cell-mediated** responses driven by T cells.

The adaptive immune response is distinguished by its remarkable specificity, allowing it to accurately identify and defend against a vast array of pathogens. This specificity is achieved through receptors on B and T lymphocytes, which can recognize unique antigens. The immune system can generate up to 100 trillion distinct receptors, enabling it to respond to nearly any pathogen. Insights into how the immune system encodes such a diverse array of antibodies and T cell specificities were made possible by advancements in molecular genetics during the 1970s and 1980s.

The first encounter between the immune system and a pathogen is termed the **primary response**. This response tends to be severe as the adaptive immune system takes time to mount an effective defense. In contrast, upon re-exposure to the same pathogen, the **secondary response** occurs, characterized by enhanced speed and strength, often neutralizing the pathogen before it can cause significant damage or symptoms. This rapid response is the basis of immunological memory, which provides lasting protection against recurrent infections.

A key feature of the adaptive immune response is its ability to distinguish between self-antigens, which are present in the body, and foreign antigens associated with potential pathogens. Protective mechanisms during the maturation of T and B cells help prevent them from targeting self-antigens, thus avoiding harmful immune reactions. However, these mechanisms can fail, leading to autoimmune diseases.[1]

Table 4 | *Comparison of Innate and Adaptive Immunity* |

Innate (natural or native)	Adaptive (acquired)
Nonspecific	Specific
Immediate protection	Develops slowly
Limited ability	More effective
Ancient defense system	Recently evolved
Present in invertebrates and vertebrates	Seen only in vertebrates
Responds in the same way to repeat encounters	Responds more efficiently to each successive encounter

Cell-Mediated Immune Responses

The primary orchestrators of the adaptive immune response are lymphocytes, including T and B cells. T cells are particularly crucial as they directly regulate various immune reactions and often influence B cell activity. As a result, many decisions regarding how to combat pathogens are made at the T cell level.

T Cell Receptor

The T cell receptor consists of two chains, each containing two domains (Figure 12). The **variable region** domain, located furthest from the T cell membrane, is named for its variability in amino acid sequences among receptors. In contrast, the **constant region** domain shows less variation. The differences in the variable domains provide the molecular basis for the receptor's ability to recognize a wide range of antigens. The antigen-binding site is formed at the terminal ends of both chains, with the sequences here determining the receptor's specificity. Each T cell produces only one type of receptor, making it specific to a particular antigen.[1]

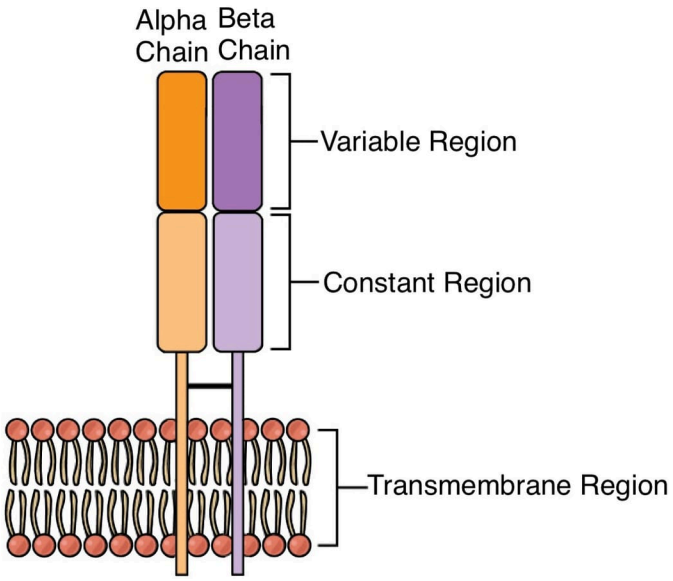


Figure 12 | T Cell Receptor **|** [15] T cell receptors (TCRs) are heterodimeric membrane-bound proteins composed of α and β chains. The antigen-binding site is located in the variable domain of each chain. A constant region links the two chains and contributes to structural stability. The transmembrane region anchors the TCR to the cell surface.

Antigens

Pathogens often display complex antigens that contain numerous **antigenic determinants**, or **epitopes**, which are the specific regions where receptors can bind (Figure 13). These determinants are usually small, comprising six or fewer amino acid residues in protein antigens or one to two sugar units in carbohydrate antigens. Protein antigens are complex molecules that can adopt a variety of three-dimensional shapes, which are crucial for eliciting immune responses against viruses and parasitic worms. The specificity of this immune response arises from the interaction between the shape of the antigen and the complementary configuration of amino acids within the antigen-binding site of immune receptors. This precise fit forms the fundamental chemical basis for the specificity observed in immune reactions. Carbohydrate epitopes tend to have less variability compared to protein ones. Such carbohydrate determinants are frequently found on bacterial cell walls and on red blood cell surfaces, as seen with the **ABO blood group antigens**.[1]

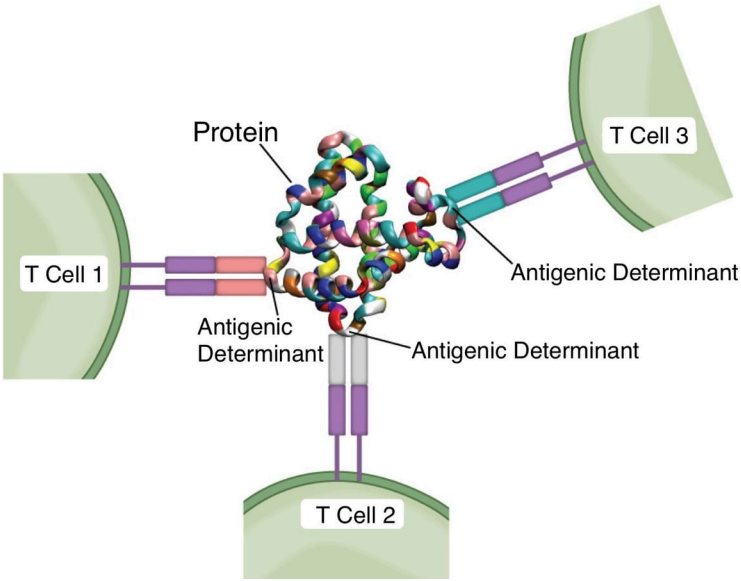


Figure 13 | Antigenic Determinants **|** [16] T cell receptors (TCRs) vary in shape and amino acid sequence, allowing them to bind

with high affinity to specific antigenic determinants. The figure shows three distinct TCRs recognizing different regions of the same protein antigen.

Antigen Processing and Presentation

T cells recognize antigens through specialized cells known as **antigen-presenting cells** (**APCs**) rather than directly engaging with free-floating antigens. APCs internalize antigens and process them into smaller fragments through enzymatic cleavage. These fragments are then displayed on the cell surface bound to MHC molecules. This process, known as **antigen presentation**, allows T cells to identify the antigen-MHC complex (Figure 14).

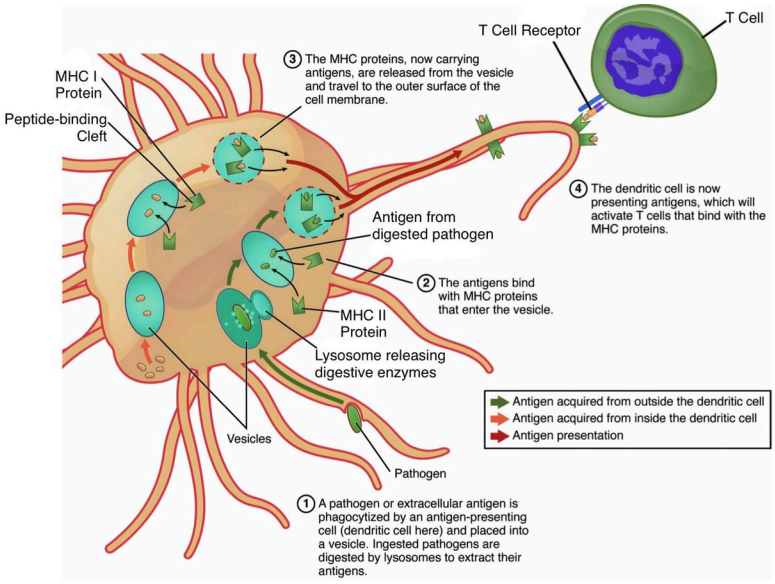


Figure 14 | Antigen Processing and Presentation | [17] Antigen-presenting cells (APCs) engulf extracellular pathogens into vesicles, where lysosomal digestive enzymes break them down. The resulting antigen from the digested pathogen binds within the peptide-binding cleft of MHC class II molecules (green pathway) and is displayed on the cell surface. Intracellular pathogens are processed in the cytosol and loaded onto MHC class I molecules (orange pathway). Both pathways lead to the presentation of antigen-MHC complexes (red pathway), which are recognized by a T cell receptor on a T cell, initiating an immune response.

MHC molecules, **MHC class I** and **MHC class II**, play essential roles in antigen presentation. Although they have different genetic origins, both classes transport processed antigens to the cell surface for T cell recognition. Antigens from various pathogens utilize specific MHC classes and follow distinct intracellular pathways before being displayed. The core mechanism involves enzymatic digestion of antigens, entry into the endomembrane system, and eventual expression on the APC surface for T cell interaction.

Intracellular antigens, typically linked to viruses replicating within host cells and some intracellular parasites or bacteria, are processed in the cytosol. They are then transported to the endoplasmic reticulum, where they bind with MHC class I molecules and are subsequently displayed on the cell surface through transport vesicles. In contrast, extracellular antigens—common to many bacteria, parasites, and fungi—are taken up by receptor-mediated endocytosis into the cell's endomembrane system. Here, they merge with vesicles from the Golgi complex containing MHC class II molecules, enabling the antigen-MHC complex to be presented on the cell surface (Figure 14).

Antigen-presenting Cells

MHC Class I molecules are expressed by virtually all nucleated cells in the body, serving a vital role in immune surveillance. They present endogenous antigens—peptides derived from proteins synthesized within the cell, particularly those from viral infections or malignancies—to activate cytotoxic T cells. This mechanism is critical for the body's defense, as it allows CD8+ T cells to identify and eliminate infected cells across nearly all tissues. If cells lacked MHC Class I, they would be unable to trigger this essential T cell response. The high degree of polymorphism in MHC Class I genes means these molecules are unique to every

individual (except identical twins), thus posing a major hurdle in tissue transplantation. In contrast, class II MHC molecules are found exclusively on "professional" antigen-presenting cells (APCs) like macrophages, dendritic cells, and B cells, which support broader immune functions. Macrophages release cytokines to boost phagocytosis, while dendritic cells transport antigens to lymph nodes, where T cell responses are initiated. B cells also present antigens to T cells, aiding specific antibody responses.[1]

Table 5 | *Cells Expressing MHC Class I and II Markers* |

MHC	Cell type	Phagocytic	Function
Class I	All nucleated cells	No	Stimulates cytotoxic T cell immune response
Class II	Macrophage	Yes	Stimulates phagocytosis and presentation at primary infection site
Class II	Dendritic	Yes	Brings antigens to regional lymph nodes
Class II	B cell	Yes	Internalizes surface Ig and antigen. Stimulates antibody secretion by B cells

T Cell Development and Differentiation

The process by which T cells that could potentially attack the body's own cells are removed is called **T cell tolerance**. Thymocytes start as **double-negative cells** in the thymic cortex, meaning they lack CD4 and CD8 molecules. Here, they undergo **positive selection**, interacting with MHC molecules on cortical epithelial cells to ensure recognition of self MHC molecules. Most thymocytes are eliminated during differentiation, with only around 2 percent surviving to become mature T cells. As they mature, thymocytes express both **CD4** and **CD8 markers** and become **double-positive**. They then migrate to the cortico-medullary junction, where they undergo **negative selection**, encountering self-antigens from throughout the body. Thymocytes that bind strongly to these self-antigens are eliminated via apoptosis. Those that survive negative selection develop into **single-positive T cells**- **CD4+ cells**, which interact with class II MHC, or **CD8+ cells**, which interact with class I MHC (Figure 15).[1]

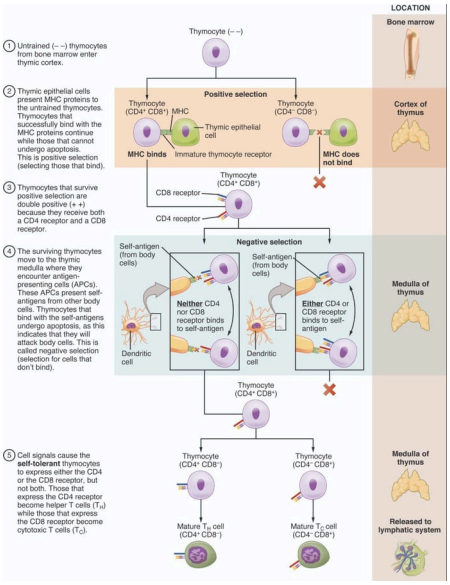


Figure 15 | Differentiation of T Cells within the Thymus | [18] Undifferentiated double negative thymocytes from the bone marrow migrate to the thymus. In the cortex, they mature into double-positive (DP) thymocytes after expressing various receptors. These cells undergo positive selection, where only those with moderate binding of immature thymocyte receptors to MHC molecules survive. Thymocytes that fail to bind appropriately undergo apoptosis. The surviving DP cells then travel to the medulla for negative selection, where those with strong binding of either CD4 or CD8 receptor to self-antigens are eliminated. The remaining self-tolerant thymocytes mature into single-positive (SP) cells, either expressing CD8+ or CD4+ and developing into T helper cells or T cytotoxic cells respectively. These cells are then released to the lymphatic system.

T Cell Types and their Functions

T cells are crucial in directly combating pathogens and orchestrating the adaptive immune response. They can be classified into

various types based on distinctive surface markers, target cells, and the specific pathogens they interact with. This classification reflects their diverse functions in the immune system, as detailed in Table 6. Each T cell type contributes uniquely to immune modulation and pathogen elimination.

Mature T cells express either the CD4 or CD8 marker exclusively. These markers bind to regions on the MHC molecule separate from the antigen-binding site, enabling T cells to establish two key connections: CD4 or CD8 with the MHC molecule, and the T cell receptor with the antigen. CD4+ T cells perform helper functions, while CD8+ T cells are associated with cytotoxic activities (Figure 16).

Helper T Cells

Helper T cells, known as **Th cells** and identified by the CD4 molecule, are crucial in enhancing immune responses through cytokine release (Figure 17). These cells differentiate into distinct classes based not on surface markers but on the specific cytokines they produce. **Th1 cells** secrete cytokines that regulate immune activity and support the development of cells like macrophages and other T cells. In contrast, **Th2 cells** primarily aid B cells, stimulating their differentiation into plasma cells for antibody production—essential for antibody responses to most protein antigens.

Cytotoxic T cells

Cytotoxic T cells, or **Tc cells**, specialize in eliminating infected or cancerous target cells through apoptosis. They use two primary mechanisms: expressing the Fas ligand, which binds to the Fas receptor on the target cell, and releasing perforins and granzymes from their cytoplasmic granules (Figures 18 and 19). During an immune response, the proliferation of Tc cells significantly enhances their numbers, effectively limiting the virus's capacity to cause disease. Notably, each Tc cell can destroy multiple target cells.

Regulatory T Cells

Regulatory T cells, or Tregs, are a recently recognized subset of T cells characterized by the expression of the CD4 marker along with **CD25** and **FOXP3**. They play a critical role in modulating immune responses by regulating the activity of other T cells. This function is vital in preventing excessive clonal expansion during immune responses, which can lead to autoimmune diseases and other health complications.[1]

Table 6 | *Functions of T Cell Types and Their Cytokines* |

T cell	Target	Function	Pathogen	Surface Marker	MHC	Cytokines or mediators
T_c	Infected cells	Cytotoxicity	Intracellular	CD8	Class I	Perforins, granzymes, and fas ligand
T_h1	Macrophage	Helper inducer	Extracellular	CD4	Class II	Interferon-γ and TGF-β
T_h2	B cell	Helper inducer	Extracellular	CD4	Class II	IL-4, IL-6, IL-10, and others
Tregs	T_h cell	Suppressor	None	CD4, CD25	?	TGF-β and IL-10

T Cell Activation

Mature T cells become activated upon recognizing antigens presented with self-MHC molecules. This triggers rapid mitotic division, a process known as **clonal expansion**. Only T cells with receptors specific to the antigen are activated. Once activated, these T cell clones rapidly expand, producing numerous copies equipped with the same receptor specificity. This process begins with stem cells differentiating into T cells, which then mature in the thymus before contributing to the adaptive immune response. During a primary adaptive immune response, the immune system produces two essential types of T cells: effector T cells and memory T cells. Effector T cells work to neutralize threats, release cytokines to modulate immune responses, and provide immediate defense against infections. They are short-lived compared to memory T cells. Memory T cells are long-lasting, remaining in the body for many years, often for a lifetime. These cells are ready for rapid deployment, ensuring that if the same pathogen is encountered again, the T cell response is quick and effective. This rapid secondary response results in a significant increase in effector T cells, which can eliminate the pathogen before it causes noticeable disease symptoms.[1]

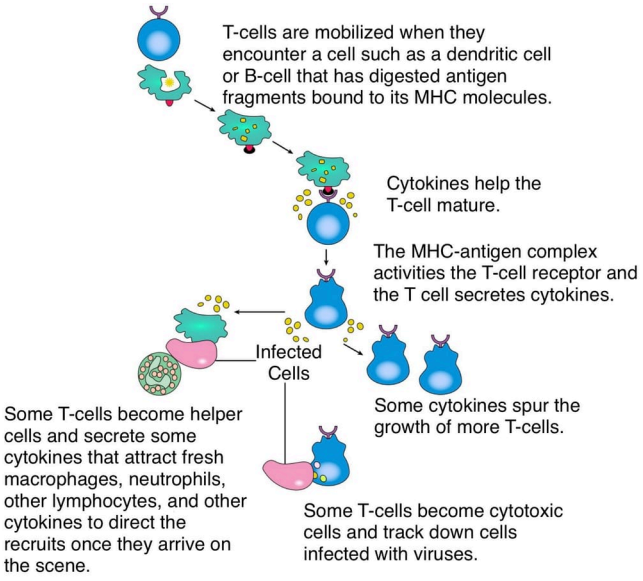


Figure 16 | Activation of a T cell **|** [19] Upon recognizing an antigen fragment presented on an MHC molecule, naïve T cells become activated. This interaction can trigger clonal expansion and differentiation into effector subsets, including cytotoxic T cells (CD8✧) or helper T cells (CD4✧) depending on the MHC class involved.

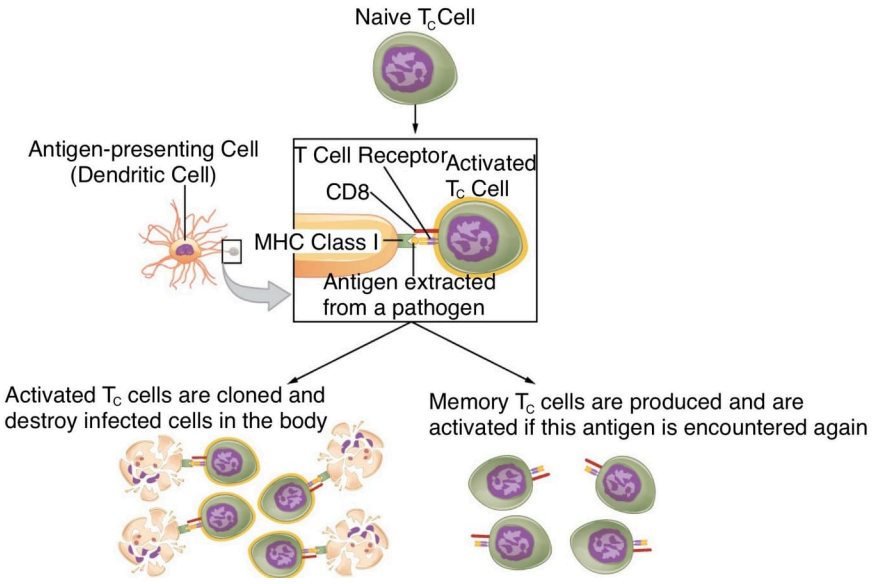


Figure 17 | Helper T cell Activation and Effector Functions | [20] Activation of a naïve T cell by antigen-MHC recognition triggers clonal expansion, producing a population of T cells with identical antigen specificity. Effector T cells carry out immune responses against infected target cells, while a subset differentiates into long-lived memory T cells for rapid response upon re-exposure.

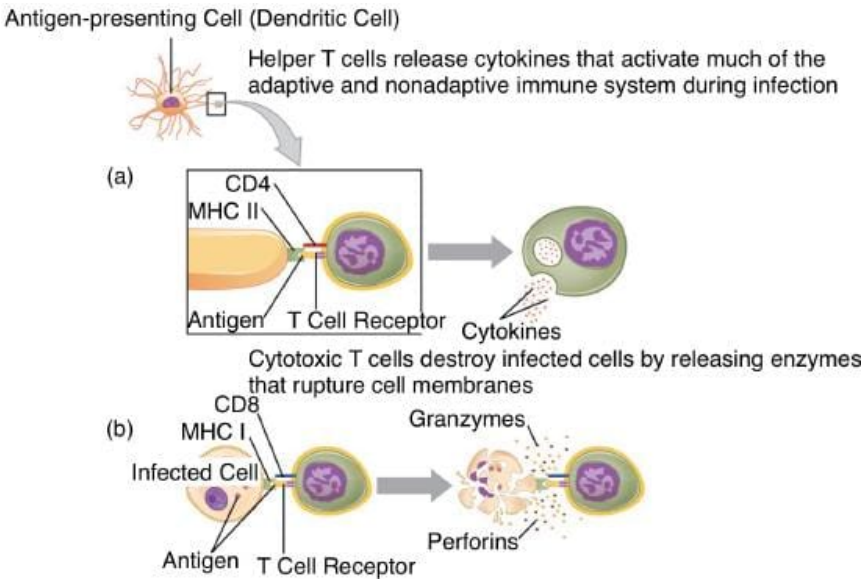


Figure 18 | Clonal Selection and Expansion of T Lymphocytes **|** [21] (a) Helper T cells secrete cytokines that support and regulate the adaptive immune response. (b) Cytotoxic T cells directly eliminate infected cells by releasing perforin and granzymes, inducing target cell apoptosis.

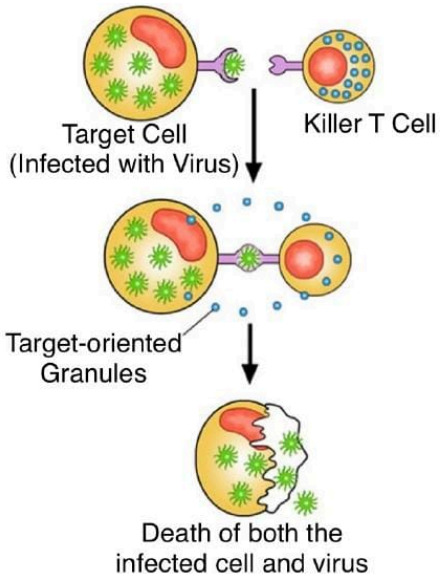


Figure 19 | Effector function of Cytotoxic T cell **|** [22] Cytotoxic T cells bind infected cells and release granules to induce apoptosis.

Overview of Cell-Mediated Immunity

Cell-mediated immunity begins with antigen presentation, where APCs such as dendritic cells engulf and process pathogens, displaying their fragments on MHC molecules. Naïve T cells, specifically CD4+ helper T cells and CD8+ cytotoxic T cells, recognize these antigen-MHC complexes, with CD4+ cells binding to MHC class II and CD8+ cells to MHC class I. Upon activation, CD4+ T cells release cytokines that enhance immune responses, stimulating macrophages, B cells, and cytotoxic T cells. Cytotoxic T cell activation requires not only antigen recognition but also costimulation in the form of cytokines released by the activated helper T cells. Activated CD8+ T cells differentiate into effectors that directly attack infected cells, inducing apoptosis. A small population of T cells become memory cells, allowing for rapid responses upon re-exposure to pathogens (Figures 16 -19). Once the infection is controlled, most effector T cells undergo apoptosis, while memory T cells persist, ensuring long-term immunity.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Antibody-Mediated Immunity and B Lymphocytes

Antibody-mediated immunity, or humoral immunity, is crucial for protecting the host against extracellular and exogenous antigens, including bacterial toxins, polysaccharide capsules, viral infections, and certain malignant cells. This immune response is primarily driven by B lymphocytes, which produce antibodies—soluble forms of B cell receptors. While naïve B cells express surface antibodies, plasma cells secrete antibodies with the same antigen-binding specificity. Humans have five major antibody classes (**IgM**, **IgD**, **IgG**, **IgA**, and **IgE**), each with distinct roles. Unlike T cells, B cells can directly recognize native antigens without relying on MHC molecules or APCs, enabling them to effectively respond to a diverse range of pathogens.

B Cell Differentiation

B cells undergo their differentiation process within the bone marrow, and this journey leads to the generation of an astonishing diversity of up to 100 trillion different B cell clones. This diversity closely parallels the immense range of antigen receptors observed in T cells. While B cell differentiation and tolerance development mechanisms are not as fully elucidated as in T cells, certain critical aspects are well established. **Central tolerance**, for instance, plays a pivotal role. It involves the destruction or inactivation of B cells recognizing self-antigens within the bone marrow. Central tolerance includes clonal deletion, where immature B cells strongly binding to self-antigens undergo apoptosis, eliminating them from the B cell population. Additionally, **clonal anergy** is another mechanism, rendering B cells exposed to soluble antigens in the bone marrow unable to function. **Peripheral tolerance**, on the other hand, arises partly from T cell tolerance. Here, mature B cells exit the bone marrow without encountering self-antigens. Most protein antigens necessitate signals from helper T cells to initiate antibody production. When a B cell binds to a self-antigen but does not receive signals from a nearby helper T cell, it is prompted to undergo apoptosis. It is subsequently eliminated, which exemplifies the regulatory influence exerted by T cells on the adaptive immune response.

Upon activation by antigen binding, B cells differentiate into plasma cells. Plasma cells often migrate from secondary lymphoid organs, where the immune response originates, back to their place of origin—the bone marrow. After a specific period of secreting antibodies, these plasma cells undergo apoptosis, as their primary focus is antibody production. Memory B cells arise from activated B cells and play a crucial role in generating a quicker and more robust secondary immune response, enhancing overall immune defense.

Antibody Structure

Antibodies are crucial glycoproteins in the immune system, composed of two distinct polypeptide chains—**heavy chains** and **light chains**—along with carbohydrate groups. Each antibody consists of two identical heavy chains and two identical light chains, forming a four-chain structure that varies primarily in the heavy chains, though the light chains also contribute to the antigen-binding region. The **Fc** region, formed by the heavy chains, interacts with Fc receptors on immune effector cells, enhancing the immune response (Figure 20). At the opposite end, two identical antigen-binding sites recognize specific antigens.[1]

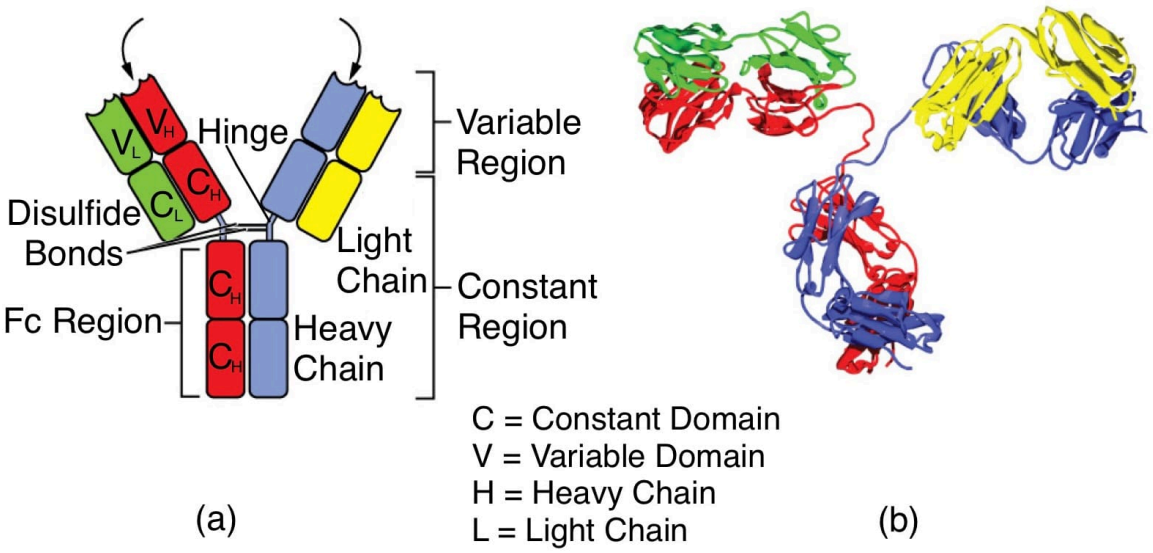


Figure 20 | The Structure of an Antibody **|** [23] Antibodies are quaternary proteins made up of two light chains and two heavy chains. The antigen-binding site is located in the variable domain, formed by the interaction between the light and heavy chains. The constant region, composed only of heavy chains, is responsible for the antibody's effector functions.

B cell and T cell receptors are essential to the adaptive immune system, each serving unique functions in pathogen recognition. B cell receptors, which are surface-bound immunoglobulins on B cells, can directly bind to free antigens or those on pathogens, recognizing extracellular antigens such as the three-dimensional structures of proteins, lipids, carbohydrates, and nucleic acids, leading to antibody production. In contrast, T cell receptors, located on T cells, recognize processed intracellular antigens presented by APCs as linear peptide structures through MHCs (Table 7).

Table 7 | *Comparison of B and T Cell Receptors* |

B Cell Receptor	T Cell Receptor
Membrane bound antibodies	Membrane bound
Recognize extracellular antigens: 3D structures of proteins, lipids, carbohydrates, and nucleic acids	Recognize intracellular antigens: linear structures of peptides
Recognizes antigen (MHC molecule is not required)	Must recognize both antigen and the MHC molecule (cell-associated)

Isotype Switching

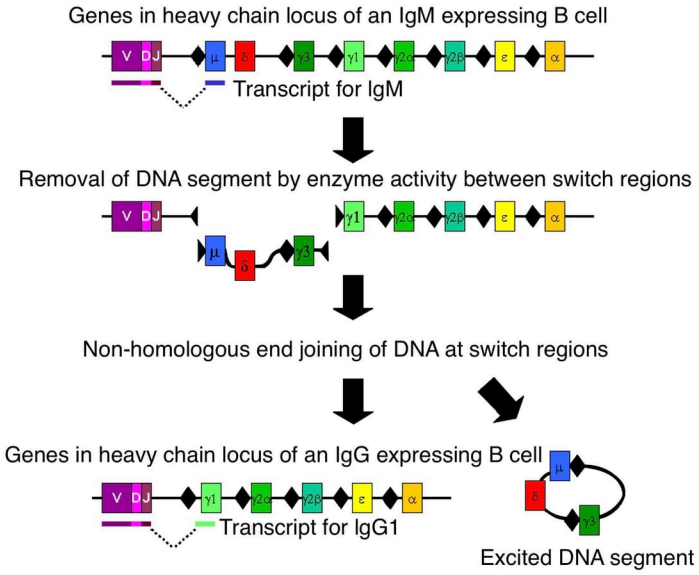


Figure 21 | Isotype Switching | [24] Heavy chain genes are separated by short tandem repeats which are recognized by specific enzymes. In response to cytokine signals, these enzymes excise portions of the DNA, allowing the B cell to produce antibodies with different constant regions and effector functions.

Isotype switching, also known as **class switching**, is a crucial process in the adaptive immune response that allows B cells to produce different classes of antibodies while retaining the same antigen specificity. This occurs after initial activation when a B cell engages with an antigen and receives signals from helper T cells. During isotype switching, the constant region of the antibody heavy chain is altered while keeping the same antigen-binding variable region in both heavy and light chains, enabling the production of various antibody isotypes, such as IgM, IgG, IgA, or IgE.

Isotype switching involves a series of steps following the activation of B cells, primarily occurring in the germinal centers of lymphoid tissues. Initially, a naïve B cell recognizes an antigen and becomes activated, often with the help of helper T cells. Prior to isotype switching, B cells undergo VDJ recombination, where variable (V), diversity (D), and joining (J) gene segments are rearranged to create the variable region of the antibody. After activation, cytokine signaling from helper T cells directs the specific isotype to be produced, such as IgG or IgA. The process of switch recombination then takes place, which rearranges the heavy chain constant region gene segments, allowing the selected constant region to pair with the existing variable region (Figure 21). As a result, the B cell produces the new antibody isotype while retaining the same antigen specificity, enabling a tailored immune response to different pathogens.[25]

Classification of Antibodies and their Functions

Antibodies serve two primary functions within the immune system. Firstly, they can serve as the B cell antigen receptor, enabling B cells to recognize specific antigens. Secondly, antibodies can be secreted, circulating within the body, and binding to pathogens, often marking them for recognition by other immune response elements. Among the five antibody classes, only two can function as antigen receptors for naïve B cells, namely IgM and IgD (Figure 22). Mature B cells express both IgM and IgD on their surface, with both types of antibodies possessing identical antigen specificity. However, only IgM is secreted, and no additional nonreceptor role has been ascribed to IgD.

IgM is composed of five four-chain structures (comprising a total of 20 chains with ten identical antigen-binding sites) and stands as the largest among antibody molecules. It is the initial antibody produced during a primary immune response. Its substantial size and ten antigen-binding sites facilitate effective binding to various bacterial surfaces. IgM excels in interacting with complement proteins and initiating the complement cascade, consistent with its pivotal role in enhancing chemotaxis, opsonization, and cell lysis. Consequently, IgM proves highly efficient in combating bacterial threats during the early stages of a primary antibody response. As the primary response progresses, antibodies generated within B cells can undergo class switching, permitting transformation into IgG, IgA, or IgE. Class switching denotes transitioning from one antibody class to another while

retaining the same specificity and antigen-binding sites. Hence, the resulting antibodies remain specific to the pathogen that initially triggered the IgM response.

IgG, a monomeric antibody, plays a prominent role in late primary immune responses and serves as the predominant antibody during secondary responses within the bloodstream. This dominance results from class switching taking place during primary responses. IgG is a crucial agent in clearing pathogens from the bloodstream and can activate complement proteins, albeit less efficiently than IgM. These attributes make IgG effective in combating extracellular pathogens as it can exit the bloodstream and enter the interstitial fluid.

IgA is present in two forms: a four-chain monomer found in the blood and an eight-chain structure, known as a dimer, located in exocrine gland secretions of mucous membranes, including mucus, saliva, and tears. As the sole antibody capable of exiting the body's interior, the dimeric IgA safeguards body surfaces. Notably, IgA assumes significant importance in newborns, as it is present in maternal breast milk (colostrum), providing defense against infections to the nursing infant.

IgE is primarily recognized for its association with allergic reactions and anaphylactic responses. It is found in the bloodstream at the lowest concentrations among all antibody classes due to its distinct interaction with an IgE-specific Fc receptor situated on the surfaces of mast cells. This interaction imparts an extraordinary specificity to mast cell degranulation. For instance, peanut-specific IgE antibodies will be affixed to their mast cells if an individual has an allergy to peanuts. In such cases, consumption of peanuts triggers mast cell degranulation, often leading to severe allergic manifestations, including anaphylaxis—an intense, systemic allergic reaction with potentially life-threatening consequences.[1, 25]

The Five Immunoglobulin (Ig) Classes

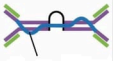
	IgM Pantamer	IgG Monomer	Secretory IgA Dimer	IgE Monomer	IgD Monomer
					
Heavy Chains	μ	γ	α	ε	δ
Number of antigen binding sites	10	2	4	2	2
Molecular Weight (Daltons)	900,000	150,000	385,000	200,000	180,000
Percentage of total antibody in serum	6%	80%	13%	0.002%	1%
Crosses Placenta	No	Yes	No	No	No
Fixes complement	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Fc binds to		Phagocytes		Mast Cells and Basophils	
Function	Main antibody of primary responses, best at fixing complement; the monomer form of IgM serves as the B cell receptor	Main blood antibody of secondary responses, neutralizes toxins, opsonization	Secreted into mucus, tears, saliva, colostrum	Antibody of allergy and antiparasitic activity	B Cell Receptor

Figure 22 | Classification of Antibodies | [26] This figure compares the functional and structural differences in the five major antibody classes—IgM, IgG, IgA, IgE, and IgD— of the immune system.

Activation of B Lymphocytes

For the B cell to become activated, it must receive two distinct signals. First, its surface immunoglobulin must recognize the native antigen, some of which is internalized, processed, and then presented to Th2 cells via class II MHC molecules (Figure 23). Subsequently, the T cell binds to this presentation through its antigen receptor, activating cytokines that diffuse towards the B cell, ultimately completing the activation process. Consequently, the B cell receives signals from both its surface antibody and the T cell via its cytokines, effectively functioning as a professional antigen-presenting cell during this intricate process.

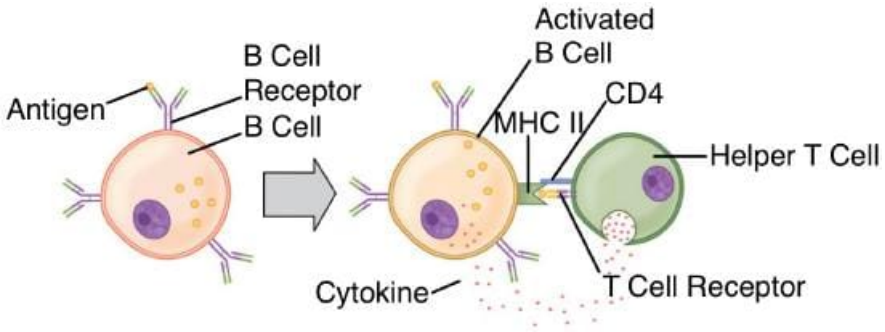


Figure 23 | Activation of B Cell | [27] Activation of B cells begins with the binding of the MHC II receptor on the B cell to the CD4+ receptor on the T helper cell. This interaction triggers the release of cytokines by the T cell, which stimulate B cell activation.

Key players in antibody-mediated immunity include B cells, dendritic cells, and macrophages, which capture and process antigens from pathogens. These antigen fragments are linked with class II MHC proteins, forming an antigen-MHC II complex that is displayed on the surface of APCs to attract helper T cells. When helper T cells bind to these complexes on dendritic cells or macrophages, they become activated, releasing cytokines that drive the differentiation of naïve helper T (Th0) cells into Th2 cells (Figure 23). These Th2 cells, critical to humoral immunity, engage with B cells through T cell receptor/antigen-MHC II interactions, guiding them to respond to the antigen. Although B cells can recognize antigens with their surface antibodies, they require additional cytokine stimulation from helper T cells. This costimulation triggers B cells to proliferate and differentiate into antibody-secreting plasma cells and memory B cells (Figure 24). Cytokines such as IL-4, IL-6, and IL-10 released by Th2 cells, along with IL-6 from B cells, play a vital role in coordinating this immune response, strengthening the body's defenses against pathogens.

Clonal Selection of B Cells

Clonal selection and expansion in B cells closely resemble the process in T cells, where specific B cells are selected to proliferate, as shown in Figure 24. The outcome is the production of plasma cells that secrete antibodies matching the antigenic specificity of the originally selected B cells. During this process, both plasma cells and memory B cells are generated simultaneously, allowing for immediate antibody production and long-term immune memory.[1, 25]

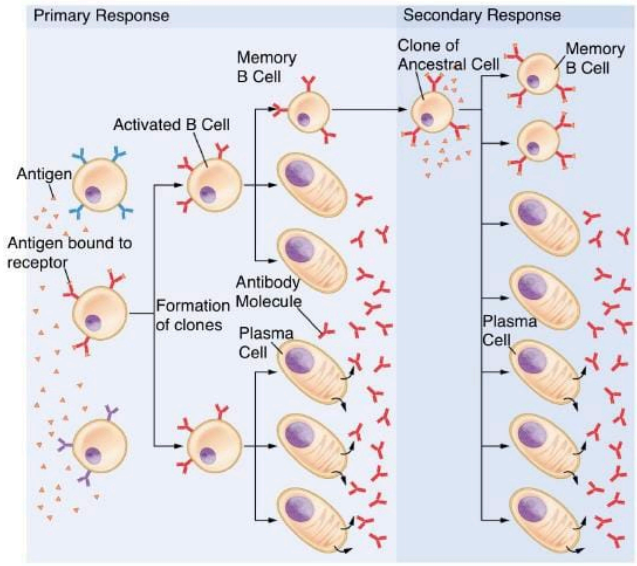


Figure 24 | Clonal Selection of B Cells | [28] This figure illustrates the clonal expansion of B cells during an immune response. Upon activation, B cells differentiate into two major populations: antibody producing plasma cells and memory B cells. Memory B cells remain in the body after the infection and are primed to respond more efficiently upon re-exposure to the same

pathogen, facilitating a faster and stronger secondary immune response.

Roles of Antibodies in Immune Defense

Plasma cells produce large quantities of antibodies that target specific pathogens through several mechanisms. First, antibodies neutralize pathogens by binding to them and blocking their entry into host cells. They also enhance phagocytosis through opsonization, marking pathogens so phagocytes can easily recognize and engulf them (Figure 25). In addition, some antibodies activate the complement system, which triggers pathogen lysis and inflammation, further enhancing the immune response. Antibodies can also agglutinate pathogens, causing them to clump together, making it easier for immune cells to capture and remove them. Another important mechanism is **antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity**, in which antibodies recruit natural killer cells and other immune cells to destroy infected cells directly. Through these mechanisms, antibodies play a comprehensive role in eliminating infections, while memory B cells provide rapid, robust responses if the pathogen is encountered again.

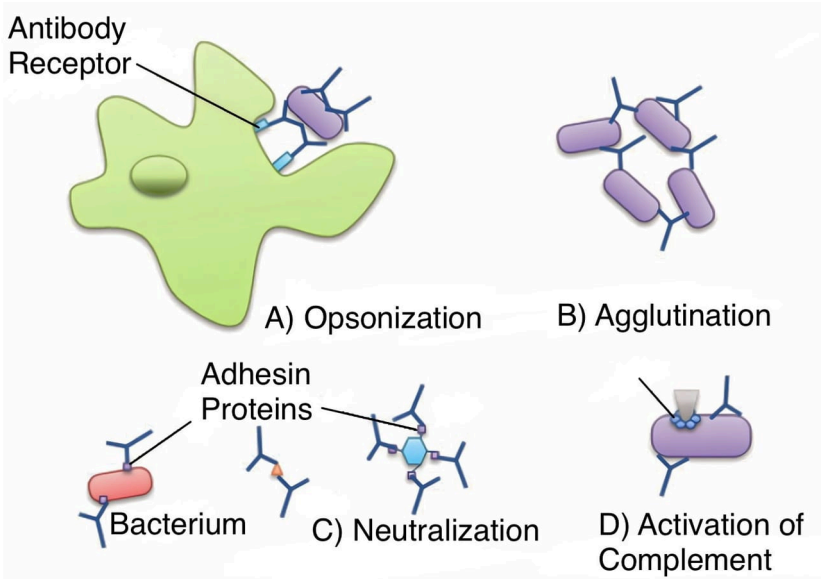


Figure 25 | Roles of Antibodies in Immune Defense | [29] Antibodies defend against pathogens through several mechanisms (1) Antibodies can opsonize the cell surface of pathogens, enhancing phagocytosis by immune cells. (2) In agglutination, antibodies cause pathogens to clump together, facilitating their clearance. (3) Antibodies can bind to pathogens or toxins and neutralize the harmful effects. (4) Antibodies can activate the complement system to promote inflammation, phagocytosis, and direct pathogen destruction.

The classical pathway of complement activation begins when antibodies, typically IgG or IgM, bind to antigens on a pathogen's surface. This antibody-antigen interaction allows the complement system to recognize the pathogen, triggering a cascade of reactions. Key proteins in this cascade cleave other complement proteins, leading to the formation of C3 convertase, which splits C3 into C3a and C3b. C3b attaches to the pathogen, tagging it for phagocytosis (opsonization) and forming C5 convertase. This enzyme initiates the assembly of the MAC, which punctures the pathogen's membrane, causing cell lysis. Additionally, C3a and C5a enhance inflammation, further supporting immune cell recruitment and pathogen clearance (Figure 11).

Primary versus Secondary Responses

The first encounter between the immune system and a pathogen is termed the primary response. This response tends to be severe as the adaptive immune system takes time to mount an effective defense. In contrast, upon re-exposure to the same pathogen, the secondary response occurs, characterized by enhanced speed and strength, often neutralizing the pathogen before it can cause significant damage or symptoms. This rapid response is the basis of immunological memory, which provides lasting protection against recurrent infections.

Primary and secondary immune responses, as they pertain to B cells and antibody production, are essential components of the immune system's defense against pathogens. Antibodies, being easily detectable in blood samples, clearly illustrate these responses (Figure 26). In the primary response, which occurs upon initial exposure to an antigen representing a pathogen, there

is a notable delay of several days. During this time, B cell clones undergo expansion and differentiation, ultimately producing plasma cells. While the production of antibodies is relatively low during this phase, it is sufficient for providing a degree of immune protection. There is no such time delay upon encountering the same antigen for a second time. Instead, the immune system mounts a rapid and robust secondary antibody response. This results in a significantly higher quantity of antibodies being produced. Consequently, the secondary immune response effectively overwhelms the pathogens, often without the individual experiencing noticeable symptoms. Each new encounter triggers another primary response in cases involving different antigens, characterized by lower antibody levels and a time delay before reaching peak effectiveness.

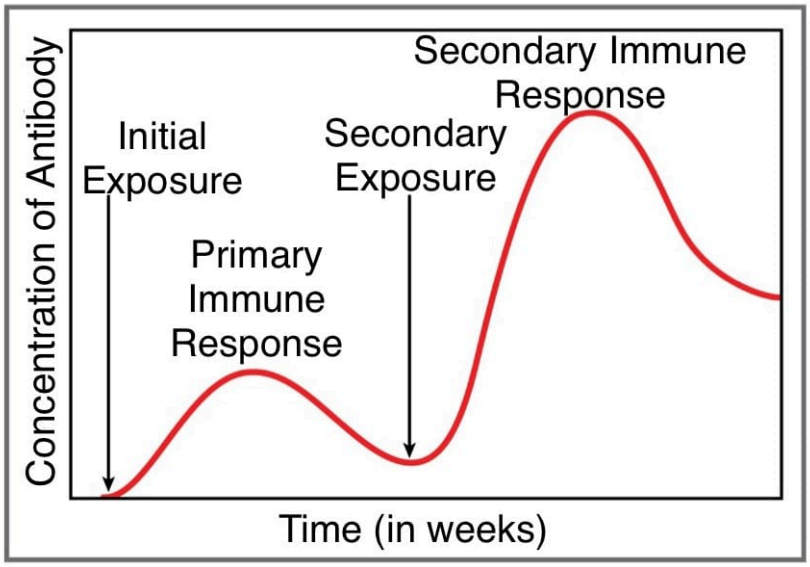


Figure 26 | Primary and Secondary Antibody Responses **|** [30] Antigen A is given once to generate a primary response and later to generate a secondary response. When a different antigen is given for the first time, a new primary response is made.

Active Versus Passive Immunity

Immunity against pathogens, essential for preventing tissue damage, is achieved through either *active* or *passive* approaches. Active immunity involves an individual's own adaptive immune response, providing resistance to infections naturally through exposure to pathogens or artificially via vaccines. Vaccines, made of killed or weakened pathogens, trigger a controlled immune response that builds immunological memory without causing significant illness, offering future protection. The advent of vaccines has led to groundbreaking control of diseases like smallpox, polio, and measles, highlighting their importance in public health.

Table 11 | *Active versus Passive Immunity* |

	Nature	Artificial
Active	Adaptive immune response	Vaccine response
Passive	Trans-placental antibodies/breastfeeding	Immune globulin injections

Natural and Acquired Immunity

Passive immunity is achieved by transferring antibodies to an individual, allowing them to gain immunity without initiating their own active response. Naturally acquired passive immunity occurs during fetal development when IgG antibodies cross the placenta, offering the fetus and newborn temporary protection against infections. Breastfeeding extends this protection as IgA antibodies in breast milk support the newborn's immune defenses. In medical settings, artificially acquired passive immunity is provided by administering antibodies from previously exposed animals, offering rapid but temporary protection without fostering immunological memory, as transferred antibodies degrade over time.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 14.7: The Adaptive Immune Response is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

14.8: References

1. Murphy, K., & Weaver, C. (2017). *Janeway's immunobiology* (9th ed.). Garland Science.
2. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.6 Bone Marrow. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/11cd5e374f86452e82a0270efcf9b20006c54f1d
3. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.7 Location, Structure, and Histology of the Thymus. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/c95c7a3ea1b9ea2fe9e5a89b04f1934942bd209b
4. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.8 Structure and Histology of a Lymph Node. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/d9f9b664217273a2bf5476dbc0faa4da30f70508
5. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.9 Spleen. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/97d7f0ff10bba9f39b746b2bf4878452ea445558
6. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.10 Locations and Histology of the Tonsils. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/68aa4a228261336d73fe90e3f15bb504539fbb44
7. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.11 Mucosa-associated Lymphoid Tissue (MALT) Nodule. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/02a3e13299cf8ec7059498ac7cb531d0fd779b4a
8. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.12 Cooperation between Innate and Adaptive Immune Responses. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/86e277aca20c56d538a49a0684c03063ca1a2f6d
9. Levinson, W. (2020). *Review of medical microbiology and immunology: A guide for students* (16th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.
10. OpenStax. (2016). Phagocytosis: A form of active transport [Image]. In *Anatomy and Physiology* (Version 8.25). Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/85/0309_Phagocytosis.png
11. Marieb, E. N., & Hoehn, K. (2019). *Human anatomy & physiology* (11th ed.). Pearson.
12. Papayannopoulos, V. Neutrophil extracellular traps in immunity and disease. *Nat Rev Immunol* 18, 134–147 (2018). https://doi.org/10.1038/nri.2017.105
13. Cacofonie. (2007). Schematic diagram indicating the complementary activities of cytotoxic T cells and natural killer cells [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/b7/Missing_self.svg
14. Tossh_eng. (2009). The classical and the alternative pathways with the late steps of complement activation [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/3a/Complement_pathways.png
15. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.15 Alpha-beta T Cell Receptor. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/4dfaa6804787ee7e22b513e991566e17093e41c4
16. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.16 Antigenic Determinants. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/b6d7be3aad087e0ebc2e4dc4dac94d929f73d94f
17. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.17 Antigen Processing and Presentation. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/80b14df7f466e9e7885f14546af68a5ad9a01142
18. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.18 Differentiation of T Cells within the Thymus. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax.

https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/8f443571840bcdef5dc1b7e8d134a695a3c822a0

19. Rehua. (2012). T lymphocyte activation pathway [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/db/T_cell_activation.svg

20. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.20 Pathogen Presentation. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/5594300aedbab54ef46ecbd5e0d2660b3fba0d1e

21. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.19 Clonal Selection and Expansion of T Lymphocytes. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/1a4e976aaf6bdb5525663486eee9c8b1912ef8b6

22. Guerin, L. (2022). How a killer T cell destroys a cell infected with viruses [Image]. CK-12 Foundation. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/de/How_a_killer_T_cell_destroys_a_cell_infected_with_viruses.png

23. OpenStax College. (2013). Four chain structure of a generic antibody-IgG2 structures [Image]. In *Anatomy & Physiology*. Connexions. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/ba/2220_Four_Chain_Structure_of_a_Generic_Antibody-IgG2_Structures.jpg

24. Ciar. (2007). Class switch recombination [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/b3/Class_switch_recombination.png

25. Owen, J. A., Punt, J., & Stanford, S. (2019). *Kuby immunology* (8th ed.). W. H. Freeman.

26. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.22 Five Classes of Antibodies. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/fd92be58dabc00d374a8bd080cd5aae550f23505

27. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.25 T and B Cell Binding. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/03d40286081fd051a4e971c8ca4911467e6e7176

28. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.23 Clonal Selection of B Cells. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/05e3c5fcb2a46e4b7b2ba915fd41360e5d69eb22

29. Boone, B. (2013). A diagram of antibody receptor binding to ligand through processes of opsonization, agglutination, neutralization, and activation of complement [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/e4/Antibody_actions.jpg

30. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 21.24 Primary and Secondary Antibody Responses. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/3a6573e580de252fcb13565e3c1ab68526c7f074

This page titled 14.8: References is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15: PHYSIOLOGY OF THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

15.1: Objectives

15.2: Introduction

15.3: Digestive Processes

15.4: Histology of the Alimentary Canal

15.5: Chemical Mediators of Digestion

15.6: Types of Movements in the Digestive Tract

15.7: The Mouth, Pharynx, and Esophagus

15.8: The Stomach

15.9: The Liver, Pancreas, and Gallbladder

15.10: The Small Intestine

15.11: The Large Intestine

15.12: Summary of Digestion and Absorption in the Alimentary Canal

15.13: References

This page titled 15: Physiology of the Digestive System is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

15.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- Sequentially detail the key functions of the digestive system from the oral cavity to the external anal sphincter in the physiological order in which they occur.
- Elaborate on the significant role played by major hormones, paracrine agents, and neurotransmitters within the gastrointestinal system concerning digestive functions.
- Differentiate between slow waves and spike potentials in the gastrointestinal tract and explain their roles in the digestive process.
- Summarize the distinct forms of motility in the gastrointestinal tract, emphasizing their roles in digestion and excretion.
- Outline the successive phases involved in the meal processing and illustrate how they facilitate the movement of ingested food h. J)bolus through the digestive tract.
- Explain the detailed mechanisms involved in the oral processing of food.
- Describe the intricacies of the swallowing process, outlining the physiological mechanisms.
- Summarize the contributory role of the esophagus in the digestion process.
- Detail the structural components of the stomach, including major cell types and their physiological functions.
- Explain the general mechanism underlying gastric acid production and secretion, detailing the potential factors that might increase or decrease acid secretion, inclusive of hormone influences and autonomic nervous system control.
- Expound on each of the three distinct phases that regulate gastric secretion, outlining their individual contributions to digestive functions.
- Discuss the digestion and absorption processes occurring in the stomach.
- Elaborate on the exocrine functions of the pancreas and detail the regulatory processes governing its secretions.
- Describe the structural attributes of the liver and elucidate its major digestive functions.
- Explain the significance and functional implications of the hepatic portal system.
- Outline the regulatory mechanisms governing the secretion and storage of bile.
- Detail the structural components of the small intestine, including major cell types and their physiological functions.
- Describe the principal local enzymes of the digestive tract, including the secreting cells, the stimulus for enzyme production, and the physiological implications of the enzymes.
- Summarize the key local enzymes of the small intestine versus those received from other digestive glands, detailing the cells secreting these, and the resulting physiological impact.
- Compare and contrast the digestive and absorption processes of carbohydrates, lipids, and proteins in different locations within the gastrointestinal system.
- Detail the structural components of the large intestine and their physiological functions.
- Summarize the defecation reflex, describing the neurological and physiological mechanisms underlying the reflex arc.

This page titled 15.1: Objectives is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.2: Introduction

The digestive system encompasses a series of interconnected organs, each playing a significant role in the process of breaking down food and assimilating essential nutrients into the body. Understanding the contributions of each structure helps elucidate the complexity of this system and its efficient functionality.

The digestive process begins in the oral cavity, where food is mechanically broken down via **mastication** and chemically through the action of **salivary amylase**, initiating the breakdown of carbohydrates. The **esophagus** is a muscular tube that facilitates the transport of food from the mouth to the **stomach**, ensuring the unidirectional movement of the **bolus** via **peristaltic waves**. The stomach employs gastric juices, including **hydrochloric acid** and **pepsin**, to break down proteins into smaller peptides and prepare the food for further processing in the small intestine. The **liver**, apart from its role in detoxification and metabolic functions, contributes to digestion by producing **bile**, which is crucial for emulsifying fats and aiding in their digestion and absorption in the small intestine. The **pancreas** is a vital organ that secretes digestive enzymes (lipases, proteases, and amylases) into the **small intestine**, substantially contributing to the breakdown of fats, proteins, and carbohydrates. The small intestine is the primary site for nutrient absorption. It involves intricate processes such as the enzymatic breakdown of macronutrients, facilitated by various enzymes, and the absorption of nutrients into the bloodstream. Although limited in nutrient absorption, the **large intestine** plays a vital role in water reabsorption, the formation of feces, and the fermentation of indigestible substances by gut microbiota. The last stage in the digestive process is where waste products formed in the large intestine are expelled from the body (Figure 1).[1]

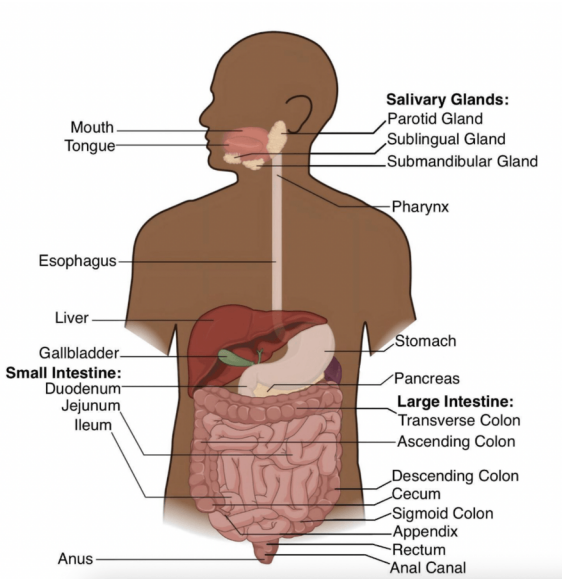


Figure 1 | Components of the Digestive System | [2] This illustration depicts the major organs of the human digestive tract and associated accessory organs. The pathway of food is shown from the mouth through the pharynx and esophagus, into the stomach. Digestion and absorption continue through the small intestine (comprising the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum) and into the large intestine (including the cecum, ascending colon, transverse colon, descending colon, sigmoid colon, rectum, and anal canal), ultimately leading to the Anus. Accessory organs that aid in digestion, also labeled, include the salivary glands (parotid, sublingual, and submandibular), liver, gallbladder, pancreas, and Appendix.

This page titled 15.2: Introduction is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.3: Digestive Processes

The intricate journey of digestion involves six fundamental activities, each contributing to the overall process of converting ingested food into nutrients and waste. The sequence begins with **ingestion**, the initial step where food enters the alimentary canal via the oral cavity (Figure 6). Once inside, the food undergoes mechanical manipulation through mastication or **chewing**, which plays a pivotal role in preparing the food, enhancing its surface area and texture. This process allows the food to be adequately broken down into smaller, manageable portions, generating a suitably sized bolus. It gets thoroughly mixed with saliva, a fluid rich in enzymes designed to initiate the breakdown of carbohydrates and commence limited lipid digestion.

Upon leaving the oral cavity, food enters the esophagus, facilitated by the coordinated effort of the tongue and pharyngeal muscles. This process, known as **swallowing**, marks the final voluntary action until the ultimate phase of defecation and represents a key element of **propulsion** within the digestive system.

Propulsion denotes the orchestrated movement of food materials along the digestive tract. It comprises both voluntary actions, such as swallowing, and involuntary mechanisms, like peristalsis. The peristaltic action, driven by the rhythmic waves of muscular contractions, exerts sufficient force to propel food and liquids into the stomach, regardless of body orientation—even if an individual is positioned in an inverted manner. [3]

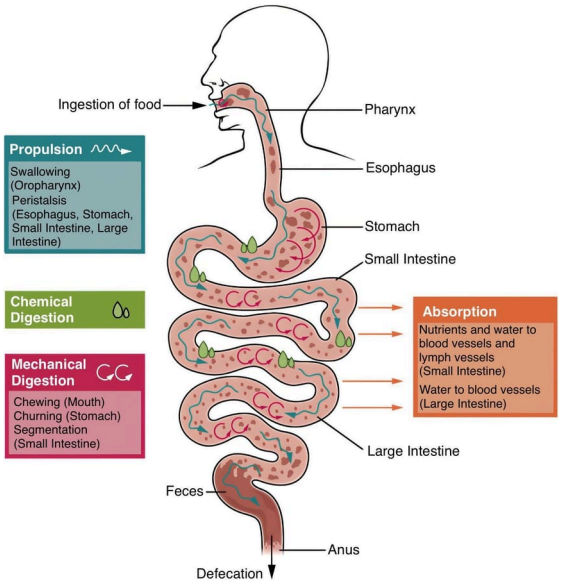


Figure 2 | Digestive Processes | [4] Initially food enters the digestive system through ingestion and is mechanically broken down by chewing. Swallowing and peristalsis propel the food through the esophagus to the stomach, where it undergoes further mechanical digestion via churning, which is a coordinated pattern of muscle contractions. Simultaneously, chemical digestion begins with the action of enzymes and digestive fluids. The processed food is then emptied into the small intestine, where both chemical and mechanical digestion (via segmentation) continue, facilitating nutrient and water absorption. The remaining undigested material progresses to the large intestine, where further water reabsorption and physical digestion occur. Finally, waste is expelled from the body by defecation through the anus.

Digestion includes both mechanical and chemical processes. Mechanical digestion is a purely physical process that does not change the chemical nature of the food. Instead, it makes the food smaller to increase both surface area and mobility. It includes mastication as well as tongue movements that help break food into smaller particles and mix food with saliva. The mechanical churning of food in the stomach serves to further break it apart, exposing more of its surface area to digestive juices and creating an acidic “soup” called **chyme**. **Segmentation**, which occurs mainly in the small intestine, consists of localized contractions of circular muscle of the muscularis layer of the alimentary canal. These contractions isolate small sections of the intestine, moving their contents back and forth while continuously subdividing, breaking up, and mixing the contents.

In chemical digestion, digestive secretions break down complex food molecules into their chemical building blocks. These

secretions vary in composition but typically contain water, various enzymes, and salts. The process is completed in the small intestine.

Food that has been broken down enters the bloodstream through the process of **absorption**, which takes place primarily within the small intestine. Most nutrients are absorbed from the lumen of the alimentary canal into the bloodstream through the epithelial cells that make up the mucosa. Lipids are absorbed into **lacteals** (lymph capillaries) and are transported via the lymphatic vessels to the bloodstream. In **defecation**, the final step in digestion, undigested materials are removed from the body as **feces**.[1]

This page titled 15.3: Digestive Processes is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.4: Histology of the Alimentary Canal

The alimentary tract, a continuous digestive pathway from the mouth to the anus, is uniformly composed of four primary tissue layers. These layers, namely the **mucosa**, **submucosa**, **muscularis**, and **serosa**, distinctly adapt their structural arrangements to cater to specific functions along the length of the alimentary canal (Figure 3).

Mucosa: Positioned closest to the lumen, the mucosa functions as the innermost lining of the alimentary tract. This layer plays a vital role in mucus production and secretion, facilitated by specialized goblet cells within the epithelium. The mucosa encompasses epithelial cells in direct contact with ingested food, along with the **lamina propria**, a connective tissue layer. Furthermore, the mucosa houses a thin layer of smooth muscles known as the **muscularis mucosa**, distinct from the muscularis layer (Figure 4).

Submucosa: Situated just beneath the mucosa, the submucosa, a broad layer of dense connective tissue, serves as a bridge between the mucosa and the underlying muscularis. This layer encompasses essential structures such as blood and lymphatic vessels, enabling the transport of absorbed nutrients. Also found within the submucosa are submucosal glands that release digestive secretions, which are crucial for the digestive process. It functions as a pathway for a network of nerves, the **submucosal plexus**, also called **Meissner's plexus**, that regulates various digestive functions. It is mostly restricted to the stomach and the intestines.

Muscularis: Comprising the third layer, the muscularis, also known as the **muscularis externa**, is primarily responsible for mechanical digestion and peristaltic movement. In the small intestine, it consists of two smooth muscle layers. They are the inner circular and outer longitudinal layers. These muscular contractions facilitate mechanical digestion and the propulsion of food along the digestive tract. In specific areas, such as the mouth and the external anal sphincter, the muscularis is made of skeletal muscle, allowing voluntary control over swallowing and defecation. The stomach is equipped with a third oblique muscle layer, reinforcing its churning function. This layer promotes mechanical digestion. **Auerbach's plexus** (more commonly called the **myenteric plexus**) is situated between the inner circular and outer longitudinal muscle layers throughout the entire gastrointestinal tract.

Serosa: Positioned superficially to the muscularis, the serosa serves as a protective outer covering of the alimentary tract, offering structural support and safeguarding the inner layers. In some parts of the alimentary canal, the serosa is modified to become special structures such as the **greater omentum**.[1]

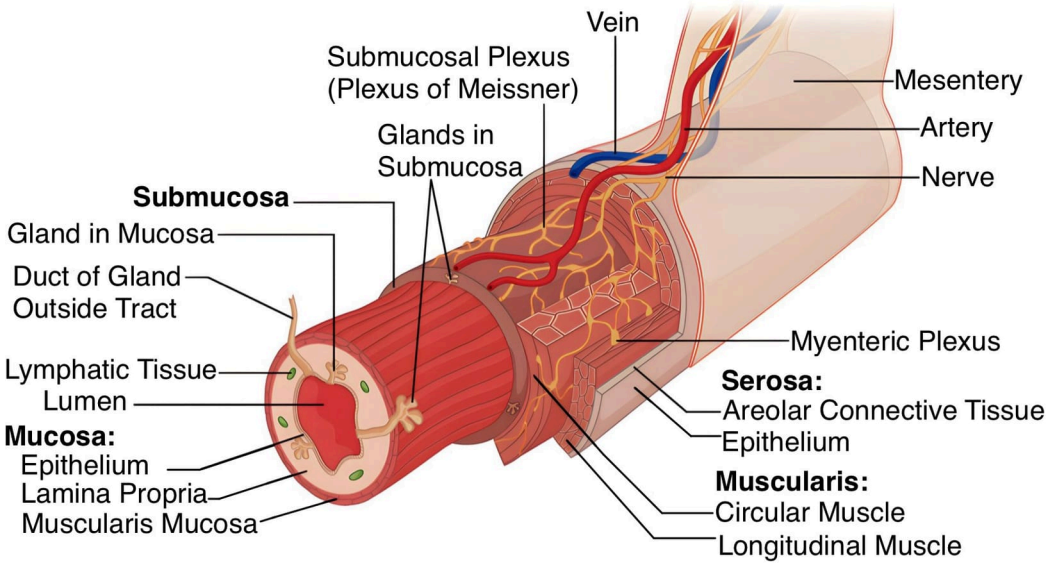


Figure 3 | Histology of the Alimentary Canal | [5] A layer of mesentery covers a plexus of veins and arteries that supply the alimentary canal. The outermost layer, the serosa, faces the blood supply and consists of areolar connective tissue and epithelium. Next, the muscularis externa is composed of an outer longitudinal muscle layer and an inner circular muscle layer.

The myenteric plexus (Auerbach's plexus) is located between these two muscle layers. Beneath this lies the submucosa, which contains blood vessels and glands. Finally, the mucosal layer, which faces the lumen, consists of epithelium, lamina propria (connective tissue), lymphatic tissue, and the muscularis mucosa.

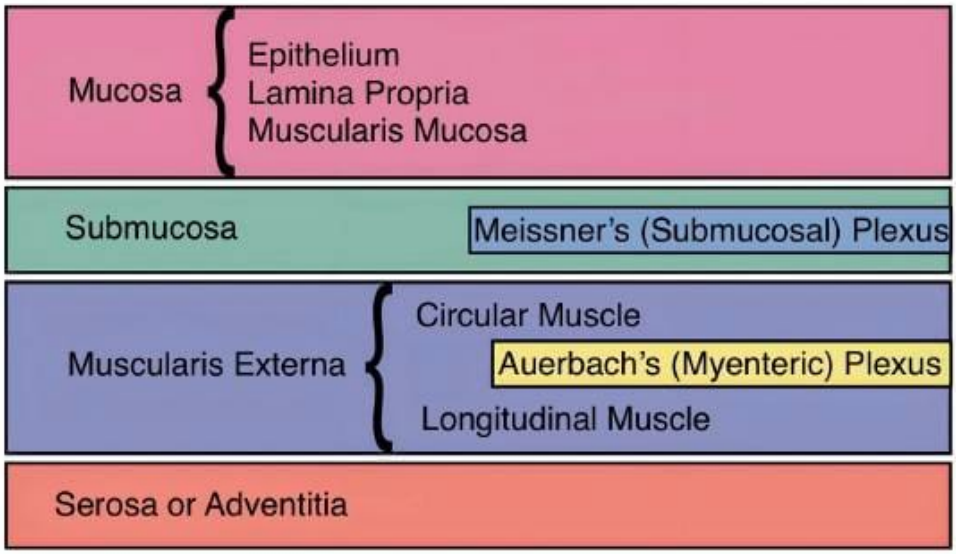


Figure 4 | Organization of the Gastrointestinal Tract | [6]. In order from innermost to outermost, the organization of the gastrointestinal tract begins with the mucosal layer, which includes the epithelium, lamina propria, and muscularis mucosa. This is followed by the submucosa, which contains Meissner's (submucosal) plexus. Next is the muscularis externa, composed of an inner circular muscle layer, the Auerbach's (myenteric) plexus, and an outer longitudinal muscle layer. The outermost layer is the serosa (adventitia).

Nerve Supply

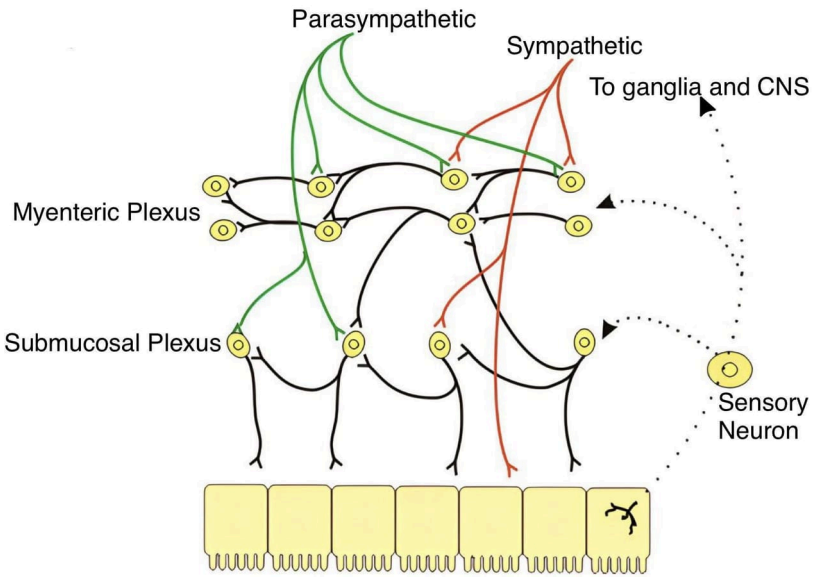


Figure 5 | Neural Control of the Gut Wall | [7] The different neurons of the parasympathetic and sympathetic nervous systems synapse with the myenteric and submucosal plexuses, along with sensory neurons which also synapse with the ganglia and CNS.

Upon the arrival of food in the mouth, the initial sensors detect its presence and relay signals through cranial nerves. The cranial nerves involved in this oral sensory function are V (Trigeminal), VII (Facial), IX (Glossopharyngeal), X (Vagus), XI (Spinal

Accessory), and XII (Hypoglossal).[1]

Intrinsic Innervation: Enteric Nervous System

The enteric nervous system, unique to the gastrointestinal tract, plays a fundamental role in providing intrinsic innervation. With a complex network of approximately 100 million sensory, motor, and interneurons, it spans from the esophagus to the anus. This system is distinct from other peripheral nervous systems. It primarily operates through two key plexuses: The submucosal and myenteric plexuses. The submucosal plexus is found immediately adjacent to the muscularis layer, which is alongside the inner circular smooth muscle layer. This plexus controls digestive secretions and responds quickly to the presence of food, aiding in the breakdown and absorption processes (Figure 3). On the other hand, the myenteric plexus that is found between the circular and longitudinal muscle layers regulates the rhythm and strength of muscular contractions along the alimentary canal, ensuring effective movement and digestion (Figure 5).

Extrinsic Innervation: Autonomic Nervous System

The extrinsic innervation of the alimentary canal is regulated by the autonomic nervous system, encompassing both sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves. Sympathetic activity (T8-L2) reduces digestive function by releasing NE, subsequently decreasing gastrointestinal secretion and motility. Parasympathetic activity increases gastrointestinal secretion and motility by stimulating the enteric nervous system neurons. Such heightened stimulation aids in enhancing digestive functions in preparation for food processing and absorption. Parasympathetic stimulation, mainly mediated by ACh, intensifies digestive activity in the alimentary canal. This activation occurs through long reflexes originating from the CNS and short reflexes within the intrinsic system of the gut.[1]

Smooth Muscle, Slow Wave Potentials, and Action Potentials

The smooth muscle of the digestive tract exhibits a fascinating property - spontaneous and rhythmic depolarization and repolarization cycles known as **slow wave potentials** or basic electrical rhythms. These waves are the product of specialized cells known as **Interstitial Cells of Cajal** (**ICC**) scattered throughout the muscularis externa. ICC, with characteristics of both smooth muscle cells and fibroblast-like cells, boast prominent actin and intermediate filaments but notably lack myosin filaments. They are rich in mitochondria and endoplasmic reticulum for energy production and protein synthesis, featuring abundant caveolae, the small, flask-shaped invaginations found in the plasma membrane, for signal transduction. ICC, functioning as pacemakers, generate rhythmic depolarization. This activity, either continuous or initiated on-demand, is a fundamental aspect of the digestive process. The slow-wave activity initiated by ICC is transmitted via gap junctions to the surrounding smooth muscle cells, which, in turn, actively propagate the slow wave throughout the various layers of muscle in the digestive tract.

The regulation of slow wave initiation and propagation is multifaceted. Mechanical, neural, or hormonal stimuli can influence the movement of the slow wave peak to its threshold point. At this juncture, voltage-gated calcium channels open, leading to the rising phase of an action potential. Following this, there is a potassium efflux, leading to the falling phase of the action potential, which subsequently triggers a contractile response.

The strength of the muscle contraction is determined by the number of action potentials generated. Hence, a greater number of action potentials results in a more robust contraction. The frequency of slow waves is inherently set by the pacemaker cells, whereas the intensity, or strength, relies on the duration that the threshold is maintained. In this orchestrated process, the smooth muscle of the digestive tract, under the influence of slow waves and action potentials, contributes to the effective propulsion and mechanical digestion of ingested food throughout the alimentary canal.[1, 8-9]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 15.4: Histology of the Alimentary Canal is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.5: Chemical Mediators of Digestion

Hormonal Regulation

The digestive process is regulated by a series of hormones secreted by specialized epithelial cells known as **endocrinocytes**. They are located in the mucosal epithelium of the stomach, and the first portion of the small intestine, especially the duodenum and jejunum, secrete these gastrointestinal hormones. They are released into the bloodstream, through which they can reach their target organs.

Gastrin is released by G cells in the antrum and duodenum and is a potent stimulator of gastric acid secretion. It activates parietal cells in the gastric glands, promoting the production and release of hydrochloric acid into the stomach lumen. This acidification of the gastric contents aids in the breakdown of food components and facilitates digestion. Gastrin interacts with histamine-producing **enterochromaffin-like cells**, causing these cells to release histamine. Histamine, in turn, acts synergistically with gastrin to induce the insertion of proton pumps (K^+/H^+-ATPase) into the parietal cell membrane, thereby enhancing gastric acid secretion. Several factors, including the presence of amino acids and small peptides in the stomach, stomach distension, and stimulation from the vagus nerve, trigger gastrin secretion. Somatostatin acts as an inhibitory regulator of gastrin release, playing a crucial role in preventing excessive gastric acid production. It counteracts the effects of gastrin along with other hormones such as insulin, glucagon, and histamine.

Cholecystokinin (**CCK**) is an important hormone involved in the digestive process, primarily originating from the mucosal cells (I cells) within the duodenum. CCK promotes the release of pancreatic enzymes, particularly lipase and protease, crucial for breaking down dietary fats and proteins present in chyme. CCK also plays a pivotal role in inducing the contraction of the **gallbladder**. This contraction is crucial as it enables the release of stored bile into the duodenum, facilitating the emulsification of fats. Additionally, CCK relaxes the **sphincter of Oddi**, a muscular valve controlling bile and pancreatic juice flow into the small intestine.

The presence of fatty acids and amino acids in chyme entering the duodenum acts as a potent stimulus for the release of CCK. As levels of these nutrients decline, the release of CCK is subsequently reduced. Somatostatin, produced by various gastrointestinal cells, including the delta cells of the pancreas, regulates CCK release. This inhibitory role of somatostatin helps to modulate and balance the secretion of CCK, fine-tuning the digestive process to maintain an optimal equilibrium.

Secretin, a hormone produced by S cells in the duodenum, plays a crucial role in stimulating the pancreas and liver to release bicarbonate-rich fluids, which are essential for neutralizing acidic chyme entering from the stomach. Often called "Nature's Antacid," secretin helps create an alkaline environment in the intestines, which is vital for optimal enzyme activity and protects the intestinal lining from acidity. It also enhances bile secretion from the liver, aiding in fat digestion. Additionally, secretin indirectly inhibits acid production in the stomach by stimulating the release of somatostatin, a regulatory hormone that reduces hydrogen ion secretion from parietal cells, thereby maintaining a balanced pH in the digestive system. Its release is triggered by the presence of acidic chyme in the duodenum, especially when the pH drops below 4.5, and is further stimulated by the presence of fatty acids.

Glucose-dependent Insulinotropic Peptide (**GIP**), primarily secreted by cells in the duodenum and proximal jejunum (**K cells**), is named for its role in stimulating insulin release in response to elevated blood glucose levels. GIP plays a crucial role in regulating various aspects of digestion. Its secretion is specifically triggered by the oral intake of glucose and other major nutrients; notably, intravenous glucose administration does not prompt GIP release. In addition to enhancing insulin secretion, GIP suppresses gastric acid production, slows gastric emptying, and reduces gastric motility, thereby helping to manage the rate of nutrient digestion and absorption.

Glucagon-Like Peptide-1 (GLP-1) is an incretin hormone (hormone released by the gut in response to eating) secreted by enteroendocrine L-cells, primarily located in the distal ileum and colon, with lower concentrations in the jejunum. In recent years, its critical role in metabolic regulation has made it a target for type 2 diabetes and obesity therapies. GLP-1 regulates blood glucose through a glucose-dependent mechanism, stimulating pancreatic insulin secretion and suppressing glucagon release following meal ingestion. Beyond glycemic control, GLP-1 delays gastric emptying, which delays nutrient absorption and signals the hypothalamus to reduce appetite and promote satiety. Furthermore, it exerts positive cardiovascular effects, including modest reductions in blood pressure and improved endothelial function.

Motilin is a peptide hormone secreted by specialized enteroendocrine M-cells in the mucosa of the duodenum and proximal jejunum. It serves as the primary hormonal regulator of interdigestive gastrointestinal motility, operating exclusively during periods of fasting. Every 90 to 120 minutes between meals, a cyclical surge of motilin initiates the **Migrating Motor Complex (MMC)**—a distinct pattern of rhythmic, propulsive electrical waves that travel down the stomach and small intestine. The intense muscular contractions triggered are often called "housekeeping contractions." Their essential physiological function is to sweep undigested food remnants, cellular debris, and bacteria down the digestive tract, preventing bacterial overgrowth and preparing the gut for the next meal.

Paracrine Regulation

Somatostatin acts as a potent paracrine regulator within the gastrointestinal tract, exerting highly localized inhibitory control in the immediate vicinity of its release. Synthesized and secreted by specialized **D-cells** in the gastric mucosa, duodenal mucosa, and pancreatic islets, its release is stimulated by luminal acidity (such as acidic chyme) and suppressed by vagal cholinergic input (ACh). Known as the universal endocrine "off-switch," somatostatin curtails gastric acid production via a dual mechanism: it indirectly suppresses the release of pro-secretory gut hormones like gastrin and histamine, and directly binds to parietal cells to inhibit HCl secretion. This feedback loop is vital for preventing mucosal injury, halting excessive acid production, and maintaining optimal luminal homeostasis.

Histamine is a signaling molecule released by enterochromaffin-like cells in the stomach, where it plays a key role in stimulating gastric acid secretion. Upon binding to **H2 receptors** on parietal cells, histamine activates proton pumps, leading to an increase in hydrochloric acid secretion into the stomach lumen and raising gastric acidity. The release of histamine is stimulated by gastrin and ACh, while it is inhibited by somatostatin and prostaglandin E2. Acting as an intermediary, histamine bridges the initial signals from gastrin and ACh with the activation of acid secretion by parietal cells.

Neurotransmitters in Digestive Function

The gastrointestinal tract relies on a complex network of neurotransmitters and neuropeptides to coordinate motility, glandular secretion, and mesenteric blood flow. These chemical messengers operate through excitatory, inhibitory, or specialized modulatory pathways to maintain digestive homeostasis.

ACh serves as the principal neurotransmitter governing the "rest and digest" state, firing from parasympathetic and intrinsic enteric fibers to stimulate muscular contractions and accelerate glandular output. Working in tandem is **serotonin (5-HT)**; synthesized predominantly by mucosal enterochromaffin (EC) cells, 5-HT acts as the primary sensory trigger. When food distends the gut wall or alters luminal pH, 5-HT is released to initiate the peristaltic reflex arc, propagate forward movement, and transmit real-time metabolic data back to the CNS via the vagus nerve. Where intense localized contraction is required, **substance P** is co-released with ACh, simultaneously driving smooth muscle constriction and regulating local inflammatory and pain pathways. Conversely, **NE** handles sympathetic braking. During periods of physical stress, NE halts non-essential digestive functions by relaxing the intestinal walls, shutting down secretions, and constricting local vasculature to redirect blood to skeletal muscle. Within the gut's local circuitry, **Nitric oxide (NO)** works as a potent non-adrenergic, non-cholinergic relaxation agent, enabling sphincters to open and allowing the descending limb of a peristaltic wave to relax ahead of oncoming food. **Dopamine** and **GABA** act as internal modulators within the enteric nerve plexuses, dampening excessive smooth muscle firing, stabilizing motility rhythms, and keeping visceral hypersensitivity in check.

Peptides like g**astrin-releasing peptide (GRP)** provide highly targeted regulation, acting almost exclusively to signal G-cells in the stomach to dump gastrin, which triggers hydrochloric acid production. **Vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP)** relaxes major muscular boundaries like the lower esophageal sphincter to allow smooth passage of contents, suppresses further gastric hydrogen ion secretion to neutralize pH, and stimulates the release of pancreatic bicarbonate to protect the intestinal lining.[1, 8-9, 11]

Enkephalins and endorphins serve as principal inhibitory neuropeptides within the enteric nervous system, acting primarily to suppress gastrointestinal motility and decrease mucosal secretion. While they inhibit the coordinated, propulsive relaxation of longitudinal smooth muscle, they stimulate sustained, tonic contraction of circular smooth muscle and GI sphincters. This dual mechanism markedly delays gastric emptying and brings peristalsis to a halt, while simultaneously inhibiting the active secretion of intestinal fluids and electrolytes into the lumen. This profound antisecretory and antimotility profile forms the physiological basis for using therapeutic opiates to manage severe diarrhea, whereas excessive activation of these pathways naturally precipitates constipation.

During the perioperative period, these pathways are heavily manipulated, as anesthetics and exogenous mu-opioid receptor agonists administered for surgical pain management—such as morphine and fentanyl—mimic endogenous enkephalins. By binding directly to enteric opioid receptors, these drugs blunt mucosal secretory reflexes and disrupt coordinated motor patterns, frequently causing **opioid-induced constipation (OIC)**. Ultimately, alongside the physical manipulation of the intestines and localized inflammatory responses during surgery, this intense opioid-driven inhibition of the enteric neural circuitry stands as a primary contributing factor to **postoperative ileus**, the temporary cessation of bowel motility commonly observed after surgical procedures.[12]

Table 1 | *Neurotransmitters or Neuropeptides and their Functions in the Gastrointestinal System* |

Neurotransmitter/ Neuropeptide	Function in the Gastrointestinal System
Acetylcholine	Increases muscle contractions and secretions, facilitating digestion.
Serotonin	Regulates motility, secretion, and pain perception; signals to the brain about gut conditions, influencing mood and appetite.
Norepinephrine	Reduces motility and secretion during stress by redirecting blood flow from the gut to muscles.
Dopamine	Found in certain enteric neurons; reduces motility and influences blood flow.
Nitric Oxide	Relaxes smooth muscle, promotes blood vessel dilation, reduces motility, and aids peristalsis.
Gastrin-Releasing Peptide	Triggers the release of gastrin from G cells in the stomach.
Substance P	Promotes smooth muscle contraction, increases blood flow, and contributes to pain perception and inflammatory responses.
Vasoactive Intestinal Peptide	Relaxes smooth muscle, stimulates bicarbonate secretion, dilates blood vessels, enhances blood flow and secretion, and regulates stomach acidity.
Gamma-Aminobutyric Acid	Functions as an inhibitory neurotransmitter, reducing smooth muscle contractions to regulate peristalsis, prevent excessive motility, and decrease gut sensitivity.
Enkephalins and Endorphins	Inhibit motility and secretion, slow gastric emptying, reduce intestinal fluid/electrolyte secretion, and contribute to constipation when elevated.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 15.5: Chemical Mediators of Digestion is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.6: Types of Movements in the Digestive Tract

Peristalsis is a wave-like series of muscle contractions and relaxations that moves food and digestive contents along the gastrointestinal tract. When food enters a section of the GI tract, the circular muscles behind the food mass contract, narrowing the tube and pushing the food forward, while the circular muscles in front of the food mass relax, creating a receptive space for it to move into. This coordinated wave-like sequence progresses from one section of the GI tract to the next, with the segment behind the food contracting and the segment ahead relaxing (Figure 6). The longitudinal muscles in front of the food also contract to help shorten the section of the GI tract, assisting in opening up the next area and making it easier for the food to be propelled forward. This peristaltic wave continues along the length of the GI tract, moving food from the esophagus through the stomach, small intestine, and large intestine, eventually leading to the rectum. Besides moving food, peristalsis helps mix digestive contents, aiding in the breakdown of food. Controlled by the enteric nervous system, peristalsis is also influenced by various hormones and neurotransmitters, which modulate the speed and strength of these contractions based on the body's needs. Irritation of the gut's inner lining due to the presence of certain substances or abnormal conditions can also initiate peristalsis. Nerve impulses from the parasympathetic nervous system play a vital role in initiating peristaltic contractions by stimulating the myenteric plexus.

Anesthetics, especially general anesthesia, can decrease gastrointestinal motility by slowing peristalsis, resulting in delayed gastric emptying and a higher risk of aspiration during surgery. To reduce this risk, patients are often advised to fast before receiving anesthesia.[1, 3]

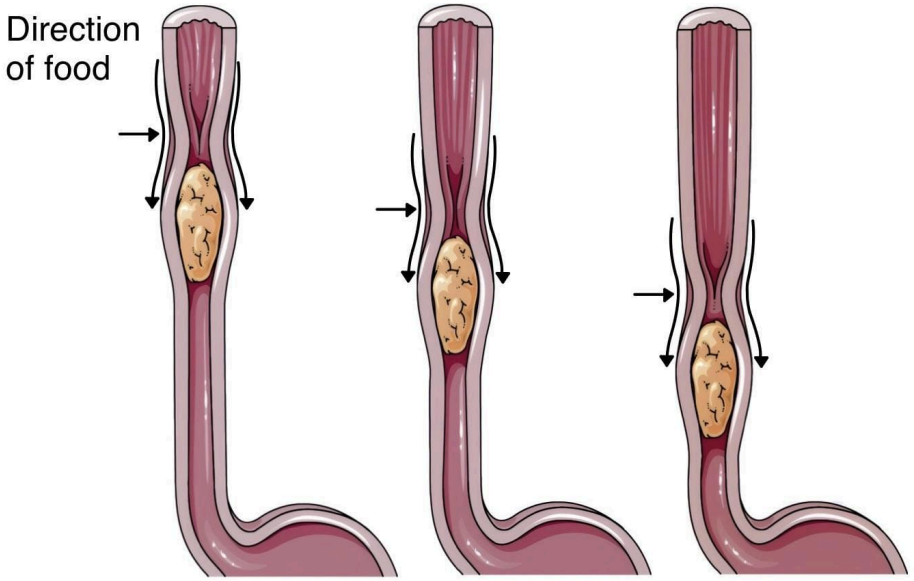


Figure 6 | Peristalsis |10 This figure shows the sequential muscular contractions that move a food bolus down the esophagus toward the stomach. Arrows indicate the direction of muscle contractions and bolus movement during peristalsis.

Segmentation is a type of rhythmic, alternating contraction of the smooth muscle in the intestines, primarily in the small intestine, that serves to mix and churn food rather than propel it forward. This non-propulsive movement helps to break down food particles and ensures efficient contact with digestive enzymes, enhancing digestion. Unlike peristalsis, which moves food along the digestive tract, segmentation involves localized contractions in specific segments of the intestine, creating a back-and-forth motion that helps distribute the contents evenly. This process is regulated by the enteric nervous system, with modulation by hormones such as CCK and gastrin, which increase segmentation in response to food intake. The alternating contractions mix the food with digestive juices, optimizing digestion.

The **Migrating Motor Complex** (**MMC**) is a pattern of cyclical contractions that occurs in the GI tract during fasting, playing a key role in maintaining gut motility and digestive health. It consists of four distinct phases: Phase I, which is characterized by minimal or no contractions, and marks a period of quiescence in the stomach and small intestine; Phase II, which involves short, intermittent contractions that increase in frequency and intensity, helping to clear undigested food particles and secretions; Phase III, the most active phase, marked by strong, rhythmic contractions that travel from the stomach to the small intestine to

sweep debris and undigested food through the digestive tract; and Phase IV, a brief transition period back to Phase I. The MMC originates in the stomach and moves distally along the small intestine, ensuring the intestines are cleared of waste, bacteria, and secretions in preparation for the next meal. This process is regulated by the hormone motilin, which stimulates contractions during Phase III. The MMC ceases with food intake, and the digestive tract shifts to a continuous pattern of motility associated with digestion. Vagotomy disrupts the gastric MMC, while eating or stomach distension interrupts this process.[1, 8]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 15.6: Types of Movements in the Digestive Tract is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.7: The Mouth, Pharynx, and Esophagus

Both mechanical and chemical digestion begins in the mouth. The functions of different digestive structures are summarized below (Table 2).

Table 2 | *Digestive Functions of the Mouth* |

Structure	Action	Outcome
Lips and cheeks	Confine food between teeth	Food is chewed evenly during mastication
Salivary glands	Secrete saliva	Moisten and lubricate the lining of the mouth and pharynx
Tongue's extrinsic muscles	Move tongue sideways and in and out	Manipulate food for chewing Shape food into a bolus Manipulate food for swallowing
Tongue's intrinsic muscles	Change tongue shape	Manipulate food for swallowing
Taste buds	Sense food in mouth and sense taste	Nerve impulses from taste buds are conducted to salivary nuclei in the brain stem and then to salivary glands, stimulating secretion of saliva
Lingual	Secrete lingual lipase	Activated in the stomach Breakdown triglycerides into fatty acids and diglycerides
Teeth	Shred and crush food	Break down solid food into smaller particles for deglutition

Salivary Glands

Saliva is produced by three major salivary glands: the **parotid**, **submandibular**, and **sublingual glands** (Figure 7). The parotid gland is responsible for a considerable portion of serous saliva secretion, while the submandibular gland secretes both mucous and serous saliva. The sublingual gland mainly produces mucous saliva, contributing roughly 10 percent to the overall volume. Together, salivary glands secrete between 800-1500 ml per day of saliva, which plays essential roles in the oral cavity. It facilitates the binding of food particles for easy swallowing, softens dry foods to enhance digestion, and initiates the breakdown of starches using **α-amylase** (**ptyalin**) present in the saliva. Moreover, saliva serves a cleansing role, preventing bacterial growth and decay in the mouth. During sleep, reduced flow of saliva increases the risk of bacterial accumulation in the oral cavity.

The composition of saliva is intricately regulated and varies with the rate of secretion. Lower flow rates of saliva manifest lower osmolarity, reduced sodium, chloride, and bicarbonate, with an increased potassium concentration. However, as saliva moves through the salivary ducts, its composition changes further. At higher flow rates, reaching up to 4 mL per minute, the saliva becomes similar in composition to plasma. Ductal cells actively reabsorb sodium and chloride while secreting potassium and bicarbonate, leading to higher concentrations of these ions than plasma levels. Aldosterone influences these ductal cells, further influencing the hypotonic nature of saliva due to solute reabsorption.

Saliva houses essential enzymes for digestion, particularly α-amylase for carbohydrates and **lingual lipase** for lipids. Its secretion is controlled by both the parasympathetic and sympathetic nervous systems. Parasympathetic activation results in watery, electrolyte-rich saliva, while sympathetic stimulation induces vasoconstriction, reducing its volume. This process leads to the release of viscous, enzyme-rich saliva compared to parasympathetic-stimulated saliva, primarily due to mucin degradation and salivary amylase release.[1]

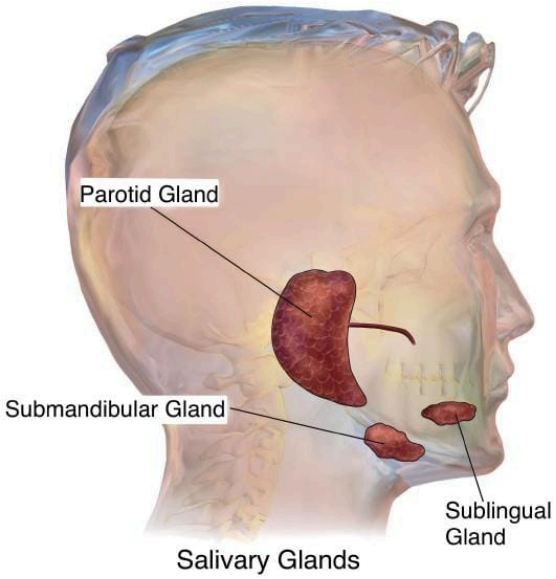


Figure 7 | Salivary Glands | [13] The parotid gland is the largest salivary gland, located just in front of and below each ear. The submandibular gland lies along the lower jaw. The sublingual gland is located beneath the tongue.

The Pharynx

The pharynx, a vital component of both the digestive and respiratory systems, is a muscular conduit extending from the base of the skull to the esophagus and larynx (Figure 8). Functionally, it serves as a crucial intersection for the passage of food and air. Structurally, the pharynx consists of a tube of skeletal muscle enveloped by a mucous membrane. This membranous lining extends from the oral and nasal cavities to the entrance of the esophagus and larynx.

Integral to the swallowing process, the pharynx facilitates the movement of ingested food from the mouth to the esophagus. During this mechanism, muscle contractions occur, momentarily closing off the air passageways to ensure the unobstructed passage of food. Upon swallowing, a complex series of muscular contractions begins. This event is facilitated by the elevation and expansion of the pharynx, coordinated by the actions of both suprahyoid and longitudinal skeletal muscle groups. Once the bolus of food is received, the constrictor muscles of the pharynx contract, propelling the food into the esophagus and setting off the peristaltic wave that pushes the food further down the digestive tract. Simultaneously, the soft palate and uvula reflexively rise, blocking entry into the nasopharynx. The larynx elevates, and the epiglottis descends, effectively sealing the entrance to the trachea. These actions collectively prevent food from accidentally entering the respiratory pathway. Any misdirected food that inadvertently enters the trachea triggers the cough reflex, expelling the food from the trachea and back into the pharynx, avoiding potential complications. Additionally, the pharynx plays a vital role in the articulation of speech sounds by providing a passage for air and vocal sound production, along with its responsibilities in the digestive and respiratory processes.[3]

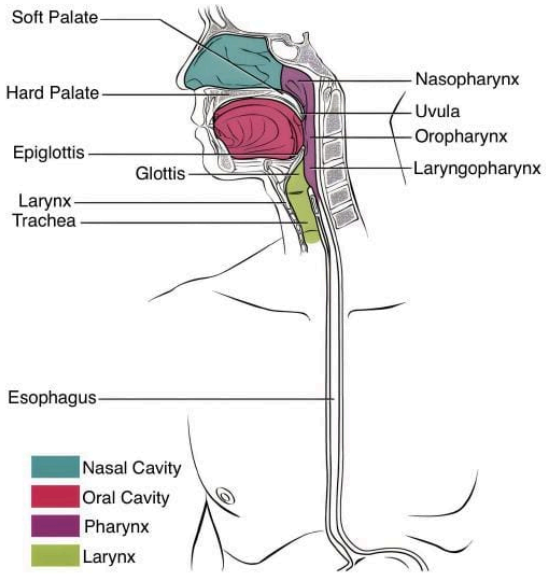


Figure 8 | Pharynx | [14] The pharynx runs from the end of the nasal cavity to the esophagus and the larynx. It is divided into three parts: the nasopharynx, oropharynx, and laryngopharynx. The hard palate separates the oral and nasal cavities. The soft palate, uvula, and epiglottis work to prevent food from entering the nasopharynx and trachea. The larynx, containing the glottis, serves as a passageway for air and plays a role in sound production.

The Esophagus

The esophagus, a muscular tubular structure, serves as the link between the pharynx and the stomach, playing a pivotal role in food transit (Figure 9). Positioned at the junction of the pharynx and the esophagus, the **upper esophageal sphincter**, an extension of the inferior pharyngeal constrictor, regulates the passage of food from the pharynx to the esophagus (Table 3). The journey of food is primarily facilitated by peristaltic movements that originate in the upper esophagus, propelling the ingested bolus toward the stomach. During this process, the esophageal mucosa secretes lubricating substances, aiding the smooth movement of food through the esophagus. As the bolus approaches the terminus of the esophagus, it enters the stomach through the **lower esophageal sphincter**, also known as the **gastroesophageal** or **cardiac sphincter**. This sphincter regulates the passage of food by relaxing to allow entry into the stomach and subsequently contracting to prevent the backflow of stomach acids into the esophagus. The lower esophageal sphincter is complemented by the muscular diaphragm that surrounds it, contributing to the closure of the sphincter during non-swallowing periods. In instances where the lower esophageal sphincter fails to close completely, stomach contents might reflux, moving back into the esophagus, resulting in symptoms like heartburn or the development of **gastroesophageal reflux disease** (**GERD**).[1]

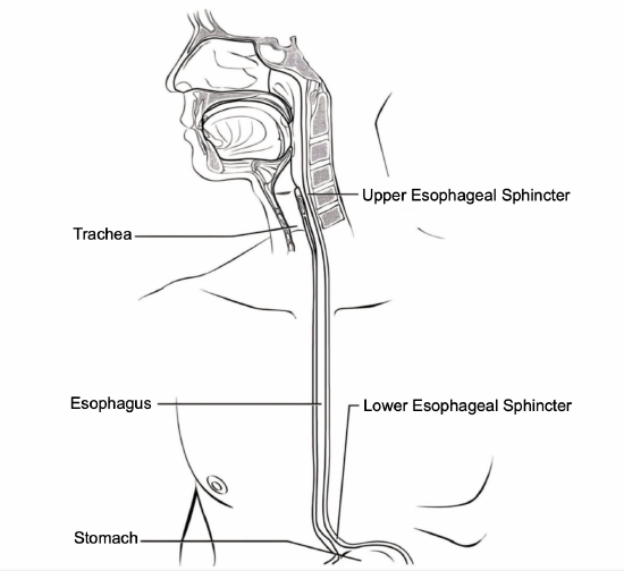


Figure 9 | The Esophagus | [15] The esophagus runs posterior to the trachea and connects to the stomach. The upper esophageal sphincter is located at the junction of the pharynx and the esophagus.The lower esophageal sphincter is more inferiorly at the junction of the esophagus and stomach.

Table 3 | *Digestive Functions of the Esophagus* |

Action	Outcome
Upper esophageal sphincter relaxation	Allows the bolus to move from the laryngopharynx to the esophagus
Peristalsis	Propels the bolus through the esophagus
Lower esophageal relaxation	Allows the bolus to move from the esophagus into the stomach and prevents sphincter relaxation chime from entering the esophagus
Mucus secretion	Lubricates the esophagus, allowing easy passage of the bolus

Deglutition

Deglutition, also known as swallowing, encompasses a multi-phase process involving both voluntary and involuntary movements, transforming food from the mouth into the stomach. Swallowing proceeds through three primary stages—**voluntary**, **pharyngea**l, and **esophageal**—orchestrated by the interplay between various muscles and neural control centers.

The process of deglutition begins with the voluntary, or oral, phase, which is consciously controlled within the oral cavity. Following mastication, the tongue elevates against the hard palate, propelling the food posteriorly toward the oropharynx. During this movement, muscles around the mouth contract to keep the mouth closed. This maintains intraoral pressure and prevents the anterior spillage of food.

Once the bolus contacts and stimulates sensory receptors in the mucosal lining of the oropharynx, the involuntary pharyngeal phase is initiated. Afferent impulses are immediately transmitted to the deglutition center in the medulla oblongata, triggering a rapid, highly coordinated sequence of protective and propulsive reflexes. To protect the respiratory tract, the soft palate and uvula reflexively elevate and tense to seal off the nasopharynx, preventing the nasal reflux of food. Simultaneously, the laryngeal muscles contract to elevate the larynx and trachea. This superior-anterior movement allows the epiglottis to fold downward over the glottis to guard the airway against aspiration, while the vocal cords adduct to provide a secondary physical barrier.

Following airway closure, bolus propulsion is driven by a coordinated, top-to-bottom wave of the pharyngeal wall. **The superior pharyngeal constrictor muscle** located near the nasopharynx initiates this downward propulsion, which is immediately continued by the contraction of the **medial (middle) pharyngeal constrictor muscle**. Finally, the **inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle** contracts to push the bolus through the lower laryngopharynx, culminating in the relaxation of the upper

esophageal sphincter—a muscular extension of the inferior constrictor itself—to allow the bolus safe passage into the esophagus.

Once the bolus enters the esophagus, the esophageal phase begins, characterized by peristalsis. This wave-like series of muscle contractions, regulated by the medulla oblongata, guides the bolus toward the stomach. The circular muscle layer behind the bolus contracts, pushing it forward, while the longitudinal muscle layer shortens, aiding its journey. Esophageal glands concurrently secrete mucus, lubricating the bolus and reducing friction. As the bolus nears the stomach, the esophagus distends, triggering a brief reflex that relaxes the lower esophageal sphincter, permitting the bolus to enter the stomach. The inferior pharyngeal and **esophageal constrictor muscles** are crucial in relaxing this sphincter to allow bolus entry and then contracting to prevent reflux.[3]

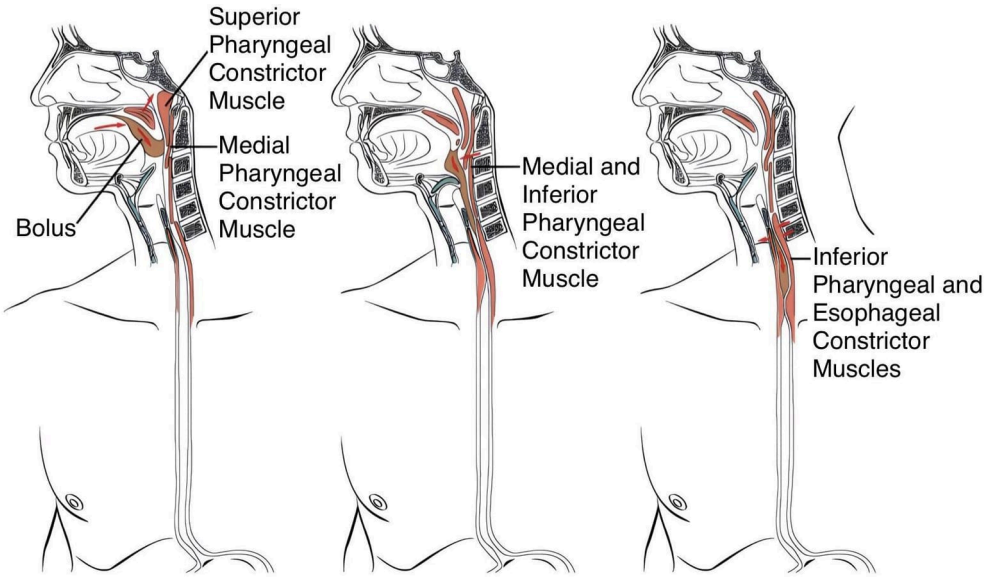


Figure 10 | Deglutition | [16] The chewed food also known as a bolus is moved through the pharynx during swallowing. The superior pharyngeal constrictor muscle located near the nasopharynx, initiates the propulsion of the bolus down the esophageal tract. This is followed by the medial pharyngeal constrictor muscle which continues this action. Both the medial and inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle positioned just above the esophagus directs the bolus to the esophageal sphincter. The inferior pharyngeal and esophageal constrictor muscles relax to release the bolus through the esophagus and contracts to prevent reflux.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 15.7: The Mouth, Pharynx, and Esophagus is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.8: The Stomach

The stomach, positioned between the esophagus and the initial section of the small intestine, the duodenum, is relatively fixed at its esophageal and duodenal connections. At the same time, the rest of the organ displays dynamic and variable movement. Contracting and adjusting its size, the stomach significantly aids the digestive process by mechanical means. Despite its empty size, comparable to the volume of a human fist, the stomach boasts impressive elasticity, stretching to accommodate up to 5 liters of food and fluids—more than 75 times its empty volume—and then reverts to its resting state upon becoming empty.

Functionally, the stomach acts as a temporary reservoir, efficiently managing the rapid intake of meals compared to the slower pace of digestion and absorption within the small intestine. Its role extends to the regulated release of small food quantities into the small intestine, ensuring that digestion proceeds at a manageable pace. In the stomach, various food components intermingle with digestive secretions, undergoing a transformation into chyme through the blending process. Furthermore, the stomach significantly contributes to the chemical digestion of nutrients, initiating the digestion of proteins and triglycerides. However, the stomach does not primarily serve as a site for nutrient absorption, apart from the exceptional absorption of alcohol. Instead, it acts as a mixing and processing unit for the consumed foods, orchestrating the blending and chemical digestion that prepares the ingested food for further processing in the small intestine.

Structure of the Stomach

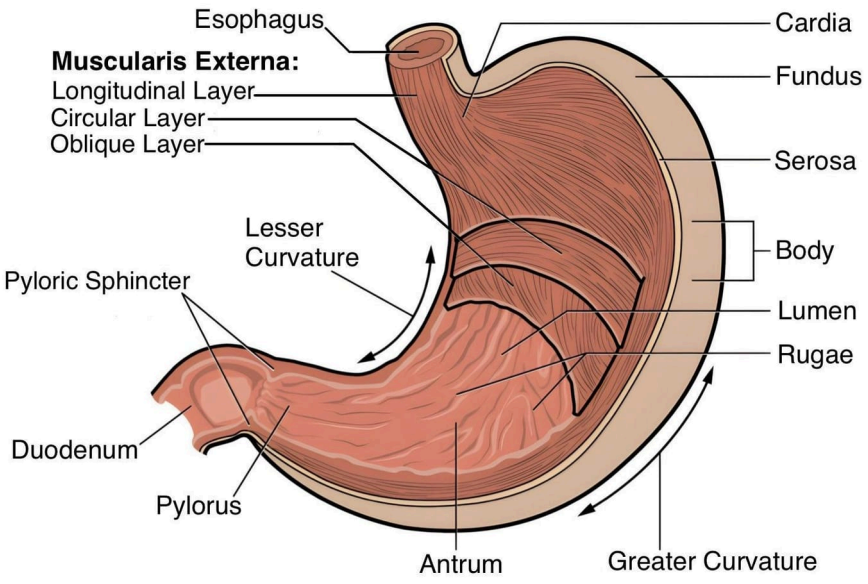


Figure 11 | Stomach | [17] The stomach has four major regions: the cardia, fundus, body, and pylorus. The esophagus connects to the stomach leading to the lesser curvature on the medial side and the greater curvature on the lateral side. Surrounding the stomach wall is the muscularis externa, composed of three layers—outer longitudinal, middle circular, and inner oblique muscles. The food is moved through the stomach to the antrum where it is further mixed and partially digested. At the junction of the stomach and the duodenum is the pylorus which regulates the passage of food into the small intestine.

The stomach consists of four primary regions: the **cardia**, **fundus**, **body**, and **pylorus**, each playing a distinctive role in the digestive process. The cardia, situated at the connection point between the esophagus and the stomach, marks the entryway to the stomach. Positioned beneath the diaphragm, the fundus is a dome-shaped region located above and to the left of the cardia. Subsequent to the fundus is the main part of the stomach, known as the body. Finally, the funnel-shaped pylorus serves as the gateway between the stomach and the duodenum (Figure 11).

Alternatively, the stomach can be functionally characterized by dividing it into proximal (**orad**) and distal (**caudad**) portions. The orad portion, which comprises the fundus and the proximal half of the gastric body, exhibits a highly compliant, relaxed state that coincides with the relaxation of the lower esophageal sphincter. This phenomenon, known as **receptive relaxation**, significantly lowers intraluminal gastric pressure to accommodate the incoming food bolus. This accommodation is mediated by a **vagovagal**

reflex. The reflex is initially triggered by the act of swallowing and is subsequently reinforced as mechanoreceptors detect physical distention in the esophagus and the orad stomach. Efferent pathways of this reflex stimulate enteric inhibitory neurons, which release **nitric oxide** and **vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP)** to induce gastric smooth muscle relaxation. Additionally, the gastrointestinal hormones gastrin and cholecystokinin assist in this process by decreasing contractile tone and further increasing the distensibility of the orad region. Because of this physiological design, the orad region experiences minimal phasic contractile activity, resulting in very limited mixing of food in the upper stomach. Instead, the orad region maintains a sustained, low-intensity tonic contraction that gently and steadily propels the gastric contents toward the caudad region (the distal body and antrum). In contrast to the quiet orad region, the caudad portion undergoes vigorous, phasic peristaltic contractions. These powerful waves of contraction serve to thoroughly grind, shear, and mix the food with acidic gastric juices, transforming the bolus into a semi-liquid mixture called **chyme** before it is emptied into the duodenum.

The epithelial lining comprises surface mucous cells that produce a protective layer of alkaline mucus—the mucosal folding forms numerous **gastric pits**, each constituting a gastric gland responsible for secreting gastric juice. The cardia and pylorus glands consist primarily of mucus-secreting cells. The pyloric antrum glands secrete mucus and hormones, notably gastrin. The larger fundus and body glands, vital for chemical digestion, contain diverse secretory cells, including parietal cells, chief cells, mucous neck cells, and enteroendocrine cells.

Parietal cells, also known as **oxyntic cells**, located in the middle regions of the gastric glands, are highly specialized and secrete hydrochloric acid and intrinsic factor. Hydrochloric acid imparts high acidity (pH 1.5 to 3.5) to the stomach contents, activating the protein-digesting enzyme pepsin. This acidity not only helps denature proteins but also eliminates bacteria. **Intrinsic factor**, a glycoprotein, is essential for vitamin B12 absorption in the small intestine. **Chief cells**, found predominantly in the basal regions of the gastric glands, secrete **pepsinogen**, the inactive precursor of pepsin, the active enzyme. hydrochloric acid is pivotal in converting pepsinogen into pepsin. **Mucous neck cells** in the upper gastric glands produce a thin, acidic mucus distinct from that generated by surface epithelial goblet cells. **Enteroendocrine cells** within the gastric glands release various hormones into the lamina propria's interstitial fluid (Figure 12). These hormones include gastrin, chiefly produced by enteroendocrine G cells. The digestive functions of critical chemical agents secreted by the stomach are summarized in Table 4.1

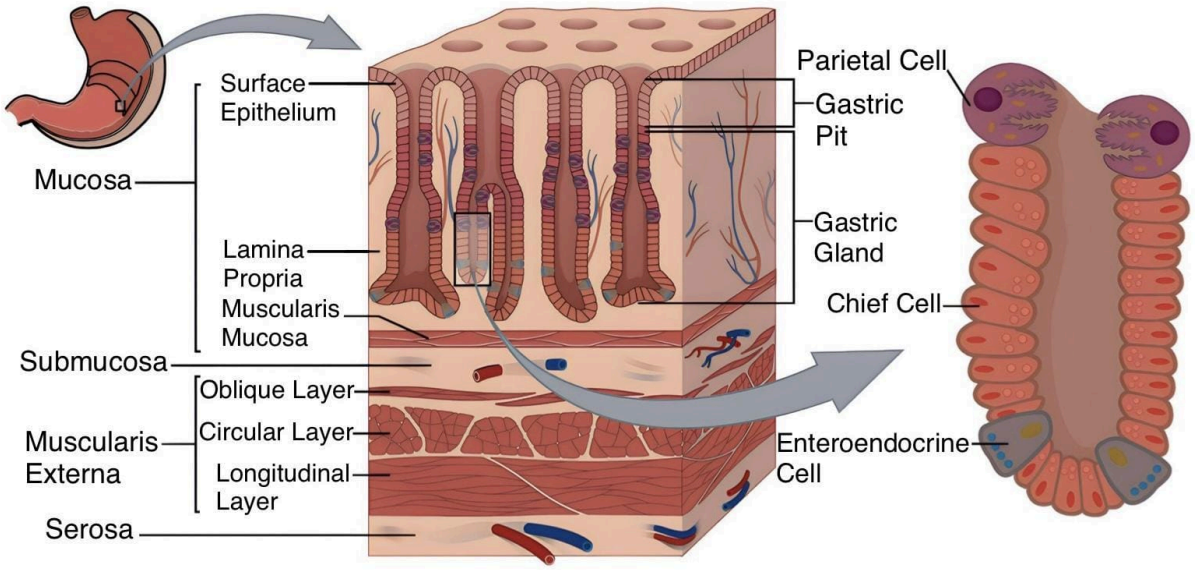


Figure 12 | Histology of the Stomach |[18] The stomach wall is composed of four histological layers: mucosa, submucosa, muscularis externa, and serosa. The innermost layer of the stomach is lined by a surface epithelium that folds into gastric pits. Parietal and enteroendocrine cells are dispersed among the line of chief cells. Just below this lining is a layer of lamina propria and the muscularis mucosa. Additionally, innervation of the mucosal layer can be observed. The submucosal layer is highly vascularized, supporting nutrient and oxygen exchange. Next, the muscularis externa consists of three distinct muscle layers: the oblique layer, circular layer, and longitudinal layer. Finally, the serosa, which also exhibits vascularization, forms the outermost layer.

Table 4 | *Hormones Secreted by the Stomach* |

Hormone	Production Site	Production Stimulus	Target Organ	Action
Gastrin	Stomach mucosa, mainly G cells of the pyloric antrum	Presence of peptides and amino acids in stomach	Stomach	Increases secretion by gastric glands; promotes gastric emptying
Gastrin	Stomach mucosa, mainly G cells of the pyloric antrum	Presence of peptides and amino acids in stomach	Small intestine	Promotes intestinal muscle contraction
Gastrin	Stomach mucosa, mainly G cells of the pyloric antrum	Presence of peptides and amino acids in stomach	Ileocecal valve	Relaxes valve
Gastrin	Stomach mucosa, mainly G cells of the pyloric antrum	Presence of peptides and amino acids in stomach	Large intestine	Triggers mass movements
Ghrelin	Stomach mucosa, mainly fundus	Fasting state (levels increase just prior to meals)	Hypothalamus	Regulates food intake, primarily by stimulating hunger and satiety
Histamine	Stomach mucosa	Presence of food in the stomach	Stomach	Stimulates parietal cells to release HCl
Serotonin	Stomach mucosa	Presence of food in the stomach	Stomach	Contracts stomach muscle
Somatostatin	Mucosa of stomach, especially pyloric antrum; also duodenum	Presence of food in the stomach; sympathetic axon stimulation	Stomach	Restricts all gastric secretions, gastric motility and emptying

Secretion of Hydrogen Ions by the Parietal Cell

The secretion of hydrogen ions by parietal cells is a crucial process within the stomach. Parietal cells are primarily responsible for producing gastric acid. It plays a pivotal role in the digestive process. The hydrogen ions, also referred to as protons, contribute to the highly acidic environment required for various digestive functions.

Carbonic anhydrase activity initiates the formation of carbonic acid by facilitating the combination of carbon dioxide and water. Carbonic acid subsequently dissociates into bicarbonate and hydrogen ions. Parietal cells utilize hydrogen-potassium ATPase to actively pump hydrogen ions into the lumen of the stomach in exchange for potassium ions (Figure 13). Bicarbonate ions generated from carbonic acid dissociation are exchanged with chloride ions on the basolateral surface of the parietal cells through the action of a chloride-bicarbonate exchanger. On the apical surface, chloride ions diffuse passively out of the cell into the lumen of the stomach through chloride channels, facilitated by the concentration gradient. The coordinated exchange and diffusion of ions contribute to hydrochloric acid formation in the stomach lumen rather than inside the parietal cell, where acid production would otherwise damage the cell.

The process of acid secretion is associated with the phenomenon known as the 'alkaline tide.' After the release of hydrochloric acid, bicarbonate ions are transported back into the bloodstream, creating an 'alkaline tide.' This temporary increase in blood pH serves to maintain systemic acid-base balance. The stomach's protective mechanisms, including a mucous layer and bicarbonate secretion, further safeguard the stomach lining from the corrosive effects of the acid.[1]

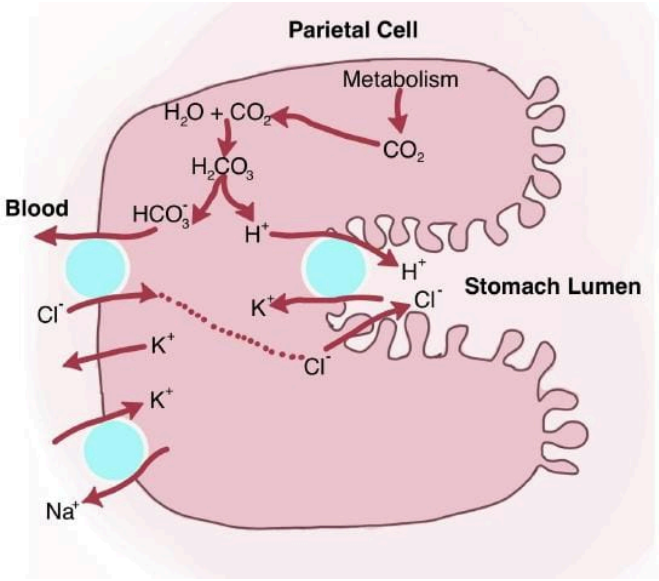


Figure 13 | Production of Hydrochloric Acid by the Parietal Cells | [19] Within the cell, water reacts with CO2 to form carbonic acid H2CO3, which dissociates into H+ and HCO3–. An exchanger on the basolateral side of the parietal cell allows Cl– from the blood in exchange for bicarbonate ions HCO3–. An active transport pump brings K+ back into the parietal cell while secreting H+ from the cell to the lumen. Cl– diffuses passively from the cell to the lumen, and their negative charges balance the positive charges of the secreted H+.

Regulation of Hydrochloric Acid Secretion

Neural signaling, primarily via the vagus nerve, prompts the release of ACh, which binds to muscarinic (M3) receptors on parietal cells, elevating intracellular calcium ion concentrations and directly stimulating hydrogen ion secretion. **Gastrin**, released by G cells in the stomach lining, also directly stimulates parietal cells, influencing hydrogen ion secretion and leading to increased gastric acid production.

Histamine, released by enterochromaffin-like (ECL) cells, acts on H2 receptors located on the basolateral membrane of parietal cells. This receptor is linked to a Gs (stimulatory G protein) that activates adenylate cyclase, increasing cyclic AMP (cAMP) levels. Elevated cAMP activates protein kinases, further stimulating acid secretion. Histamine also potentiates the effects of both ACh and gastrin, significantly augmenting overall hydrogen ion secretion.

P**rostaglandin E (PGE) receptor**, on the other hand, also found on the basolateral membrane, is linked to Gi (an inhibitory G protein) which lowers cAMP levels, thereby exerting an inhibitory effect on acid secretion.

At the apical surface of the parietal cell, the H^+/K^+ ATPase pump, commonly known as the proton pump, actively transports hydrogen ions into the stomach lumen in exchange for potassium ions. This energy-dependent process is the final common pathway for acid secretion. In summary, histamine, acetylcholine, and gastrin receptors primarily upregulate acid secretion through distinct intracellular pathways (cAMP and calcium elevation), while prostaglandins inhibit it, ensuring a tightly balanced and coordinated mechanism essential for proper digestive function (Figure 14).[1]

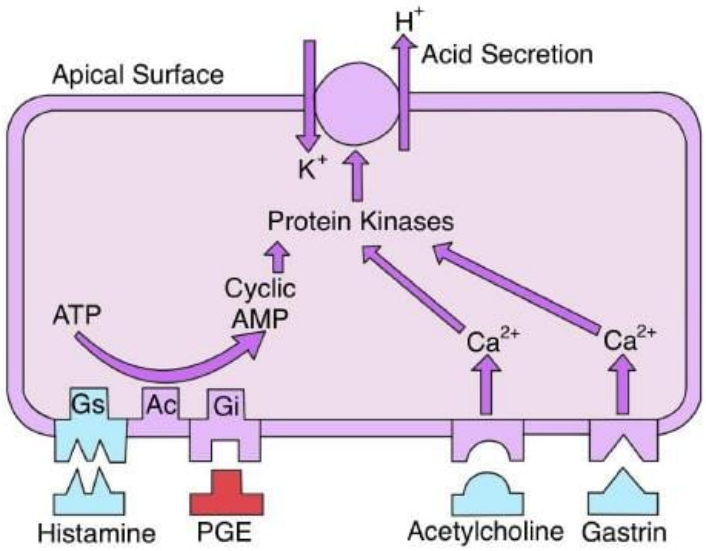


Figure 14 | Agents that stimulate or inhibit hydrogen ion secretion by parietal cells | This figure depicts the mechanisms of gastric acid secretion within a parietal cell in the stomach lining. Parietal cells secrete hydrochloric acid through a process regulated by various receptors on the cell membrane. Three primary receptors—histamine, acetylcholine, and gastrin—are located on the basolateral membrane of the cell. The histamine receptor, linked to a Gs (stimulatory G protein), activates adenylate cyclase, which increases cyclic AMP (cAMP) levels within the cell. This cAMP then activates protein kinases that stimulate the acid secretion process. The prostaglandin E (PGE) receptor, also present on the basolateral membrane, is linked to Gi (an inhibitory G protein) that lowers cAMP levels, exerting an inhibitory effect on acid secretion. Meanwhile, acetylcholine and gastrin receptors increase intracellular calcium (Ca2+) levels, which further activate protein kinases, aiding in acid production. At the apical surface of the cell, an H+/K+ ATPase pump (often called the proton pump) facilitates the secretion of hydrogen ions (H+) into the stomach lumen in exchange for potassium ions (K+). This transport process requires ATP for energy. In this coordinated mechanism, histamine, acetylcholine, and gastrin receptors upregulate acid secretion, while prostaglandins inhibit it, achieving a balance essential for proper digestive function.

The Mucosal Barrier

The mucosa of the stomach faces the potent acidity of gastric juice, which includes enzymes capable of digesting proteins, thus presenting a risk of self-digestion. To prevent this, the stomach is safeguarded by a protective mucosal barrier that consists of several crucial components. Firstly, the stomach wall is coated with a thick layer of mucus rich in bicarbonate. This mucus acts as a physical shield, serving a dual role: it creates a protective layer over the stomach wall and, significantly, the bicarbonate ions in the mucus work to neutralize the highly acidic environment, counteracting the corrosive nature of gastric juice. Secondly, the epithelial cells in the mucosa of the stomach form tight junctions, which function as a barricade, preventing the penetration of gastric juice into deeper tissue layers. These tight junctions act as a barrier to inhibit the acidic contents of the stomach from affecting the underlying tissue. Lastly, the stomach has a self-renewal mechanism that involves the presence of stem cells where the gastric glands meet the gastric pits. These stem cells play a crucial role in maintaining and regenerating the stomach's protective lining. They swiftly replace damaged or shed epithelial mucosal cells, ensuring the stomach's lining is consistently restored and repaired. In a remarkable process, the surface epithelium of the stomach is entirely replaced every 3 to 6 days, ensuring the continual upkeep and defense against self-digestion caused by gastric juices.[1]

Electrical and Mechanical Events within the Stomach

The control of gastric peristalsis relies mainly on myogenic mechanisms. Slow waves originate from a pacemaker area in the upper body of the stomach. The entire stomach contains ICC networks, but the pacemaker region is identified by the highest intrinsic frequency, creating slow wave propagation and subsequent contraction waves. While the fundus is relatively depolarized, the wavefronts from the fundus decelerate, fragment, and stop, indicating that it does not actively engage in peristalsis. Instead, it contributes to vagally mediated accommodation. Yet, phasic pressure waves might be communicated to the fundal cavity.

ICC, dependent on stem cell factor signaling through the **Kit receptor tyrosine kinase**, generates and propagates slow waves.

Slow waves trigger the ICC membrane potential oscillations, further transmitting rhythmically to adjacent smooth muscle cells through gap junctions. This transmission modulates the smooth muscle cell membrane potential in a cyclic pattern that influences excitation-contraction coupling. Neural activity plays a crucial role in maintaining typical gastric motility. Slow waves, stemming from the pacemaker region, develop into ring wavefronts that travel aborally. Once established, the circumferential propagation halts, and the rings propagate longitudinally. Near the terminal antrum, the conduction speed significantly accelerates, particularly contributing to powerful terminal antral contractions. Effective solid gastric emptying results primarily from antral peristalsis, impacted by wave strength, pyloric tone, and duodenal coordination.[1]

Regulation of Gastric Emptying

The regulation of gastric juice secretion involves a complex interplay of neural, hormonal, and reflex mechanisms. It occurs in three distinct phases: the **cephalic**, **gastric**, and **intestinal** phases. Each phase is activated or inhibited in response to specific stimuli, and they can occur simultaneously once gastric secretion begins.

Cephalic Phase: This initial phase, also known as the **reflex phase**, is relatively brief and occurs before food enters the stomach. It is triggered by sensory cues such as the smell, taste, sight, or even the mere thought of food. Receptors in the taste buds send signals to the brain upon food contact with the tongue, prompting increased gastric secretion. This phase primes the stomach for digestion.

Gastric Phase: The gastric phase spans 3 to 4 hours and begins when food enters the stomach, activating local neural and hormonal mechanisms. Distention caused by the arrival of food stimulates stretch receptors, triggering parasympathetic neurons to release ACh, which prompts increased gastric juice secretion. Additionally, partially digested proteins, caffeine, and rising pH levels induce the release of gastrin from enteroendocrine G cells. Gastrin then signals parietal cells to boost the production of hydrochloric acid, crucial for creating an acidic environment essential for protein digestion. Notably, the stomach regulates excessive acid secretion and potential heartburn. When pH levels drop too low, stomach cells halt production of hydrochloric acid and increase mucous secretion, acting as a protective mechanism.

Intestinal Phase: This phase comprises both excitatory and inhibitory components. The duodenum plays a significant role in modulating stomach activity. When the partially digested food fills the duodenum, intestinal mucosal cells release a hormone called intestinal gastrin, further stimulating gastric juice secretion. However, as the intestine distends with chyme, the **enterogastric reflex** kicks in, inhibiting further gastric juice secretion. This reflex not only checks gastric secretions but also closes the pyloric sphincter, preventing additional chyme from entering the duodenum.

The successful transit of chyme into the duodenum at an appropriate pace is crucial. This ensures optimal pH levels for effective enzyme action and adequate time for nutrient absorption. Gastric emptying must strike a balance, allowing nutrient absorption in the small intestine without overwhelming its capacity. Several factors influence this process, including increased orad stomach tone, forceful peristaltic contractions aiding chyme movement, reduced pyloric tone regulating stomach emptying, and the absence of segmental contractions in the intestine.

CCK release in response to fats and proteins slows gastric emptying. CCK increases stomach distensibility, allowing more time for fat and protein digestion and absorption in the small intestine. [1]

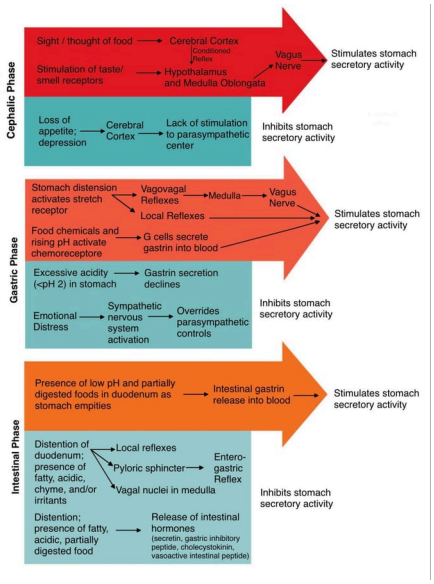


Figure 15 | The Three Phases of Gastric Secretion |[20] In the cephalic phase, the sight or thought of food activates the cerebral cortex and initiates a conditional reflex which sends a signal to the hypothalamus and medulla oblongata. This stimulates the vagus nerve promoting stomach secretory activity. Similarly, the stimulation of taste and smell receptors directly signals the hypothalamus and medulla further stimulating the vagus nerve. Reciprocally, the loss of appetite or depression reduces stimulation of the cerebral cortex. The lack of signaling to the parasympathetic center inhibits gastric activity. In the next phase, the stretch receptors of the stomach are activated which induce the local and vagovagal reflexes. This signals the medulla and stimulates the vagus nerve to increase gastric activity. The rising pH in the stomach activates chemoreceptors which promote G cells to secrete the hormone gastrin into the bloodstream further increasing secretion. In contrast, excess acidity in the stomach decreases gastric secretion. Additionally, emotional distress overrides the parasympathetic system by activating the sympathetic nervous system instead further inhibiting secretory activity. In the intestinal phase, the presence of the partially digested food and low pH in the duodenum stimulates the release of gastrin into the blood which increases stomach secretory activity. However as the duodenum extends and detects the presence of fatty, acidic chyme and irritants, it stimulates local reflexes, enterogastric reflexes, and vagal nuclei which decrease gastric motility and secretion. Additionally, the release of intestinal hormones contributes to the inhibition of gastric activity, helping to regulate the pace of digestion.

Digestive Functions of the Stomach

The stomach serves as a temporary storage site for ingested food, where it is held briefly and mixed with gastric secretions to begin digestion. Specialized cells in the stomach lining release intrinsic factor, a glycoprotein essential for vitamin B12 absorption in the small intestine. Vitamin B12 is necessary for forming mature red blood cells. Through mechanical and enzymatic processes, the stomach converts food into a semi-fluid mixture called chyme. This churning and mixing action, combined with protein breakdown by gastric juices containing hydrochloric acid and pepsin, simplifies food particles, preparing them for further digestion.

The stomach plays a central role in protein digestion by breaking down complex protein molecules into simpler forms. Gradually, it releases chyme into the small intestine, controlling the flow to prevent overwhelming the intestine and allowing efficient digestion and absorption. Although most nutrient absorption occurs in the small intestine, the stomach can absorb certain nonpolar substances, such as alcohol and aspirin. Thus, the stomach is crucial in mechanical and chemical digestion, while ingestion and defecation occur outside its primary functions.

Mechanical Digestion: Upon food entry into the stomach, mixing waves initiate at intervals of approximately 20 seconds, softening and combining the food with gastric juices to form chyme. These mixing waves, a specialized form of peristalsis, start gently and gradually intensify, traveling from the stomach's body toward the pylorus.

The pylorus acts as a filter, holding approximately 30 mL of chyme and permitting only liquids and small food particles to pass through the mostly closed pyloric sphincter. Gastric emptying occurs through rhythmic mixing waves, which release about 3 mL of chyme at a time into the duodenum. This controlled release prevents the small intestine from being overloaded with too

much chyme at once. Feedback signals from both the stomach and the duodenum regulate gastric emptying. Receptors in the duodenum, activated by chyme, inhibit further gastric secretion, ensuring that the duodenum is ready to process the incoming chyme before the stomach releases more. Anesthesia affects the tone of the lower esophageal sphincter and pyloric sphincter. Relaxation of the lower esophageal sphincter under anesthesia can increase the chance of acid reflux, making positioning (such as elevating the head) critical to reduce aspiration risk.

Chemical Digestion: The fundus, a storage area in the stomach, houses undigested food, allowing food to begin mixing with chyme. During this time, the salivary amylase continues digesting carbohydrates until the food encounters the acidic gastric juice. The acidity deactivates salivary amylase as the mixing waves integrate the food with chyme. **Gastric lipase** is an enzyme produced by the chief cells in the stomach that plays a role in the digestion of dietary fats. It specifically targets triglycerides, breaking them down into free fatty acids and monoglycerides. Gastric lipase functions best in the acidic environment of the stomach but has limited capacity compared to **pancreatic lipase**, which does the majority of fat digestion in the small intestine. However, gastric lipase is particularly important in early fat digestion, especially for infants, who rely heavily on milk fats in their diet. Protein digestion begins with the actions of hydrochloric acid and the enzyme pepsin, and in infancy, gastric glands produce **rennin**, an enzyme aiding in milk protein digestion.

Pepsinogen is the precursor or inactive form of the enzyme pepsin. It is secreted by the chief cells in the stomach lining as an inactive zymogen or precursor. It is not functional in its original state and requires a specific conversion to become active pepsin. Upon secretion into the stomach, pepsinogen comes into contact with hydrochloric acid. The acidic environment of the stomach triggers the activation of pepsinogen into its active form, pepsin. Once a small amount of pepsin is formed, pepsin can catalyze the conversion of more pepsinogen into active pepsin. This self-catalyzing process amplifies the amount of active pepsin available for protein digestion. Pepsin is a proteolytic enzyme which breaks down proteins into smaller peptides. It primarily targets peptide bonds in proteins, leading to their hydrolysis and digestion into smaller fragments. Pepsin functions optimally in an acidic environment with a pH ranging from 1.8 to 3.5. Pepsin activity is sensitive to changes in pH. It is reversibly inactivated when exposed to a pH higher than 5.0 and is irreversibly inactivated at pH levels between 7 and 8.

The stomach content is emptied into the duodenum within 2 to 4 hours post-meal. The processing times for different food types vary, with carbohydrates emptying quickest, followed by high-protein foods, and high-fat meals remaining in the stomach longest. Typically, full digestion takes 24 to 72 hours, but the stomach's role in this process is a duration of 2 to 4 hours.

Vomiting, or **emesis**, is the forceful expulsion of stomach contents through the mouth. This reflex is controlled by the vomiting center in the medulla oblongata and can be triggered by a range of stimuli, including stomach irritants, inner ear disturbances (such as motion sickness), certain medications, infections, and psychological factors. The process begins with the relaxation of the lower esophageal sphincter and the contraction of the pyloric sphincter, preventing stomach contents from moving into the intestines. Next, the diaphragm and abdominal muscles contract sharply, increasing abdominal pressure. This pressure forces the stomach contents upward and out through the mouth. Vomiting serves as a protective mechanism to expel harmful substances from the body, but frequent vomiting can lead to dehydration, electrolyte imbalances, and irritation of the esophagus. Many anesthetics increase the risk of postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV). Prophylactic antiemetics are often administered to help reduce these effects, as PONV can disrupt digestion and is uncomfortable for the patient.[1]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 15.8: The Stomach is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.9: The Liver, Pancreas, and Gallbladder

Chemical digestion in the small intestine is facilitated by the coordinated efforts of three accessory digestive organs: the liver, pancreas, and gallbladder (refer to Figure 16). The liver plays a pivotal role in digestion by producing bile and transporting it to the duodenum. Meanwhile, the gallbladder serves as a reservoir, concentrating, storing, and releasing bile when needed. Additionally, the pancreas contributes to the digestive process by generating pancreatic juice, which includes digestive enzymes and bicarbonate ions. This pancreatic juice is then transported to the duodenum, which plays a crucial role in the breakdown of ingested nutrients. Some anesthetics can decrease the secretion of digestive enzymes and bile, slowing digestion. This is particularly relevant in postoperative care, where resumed digestive function is monitored.

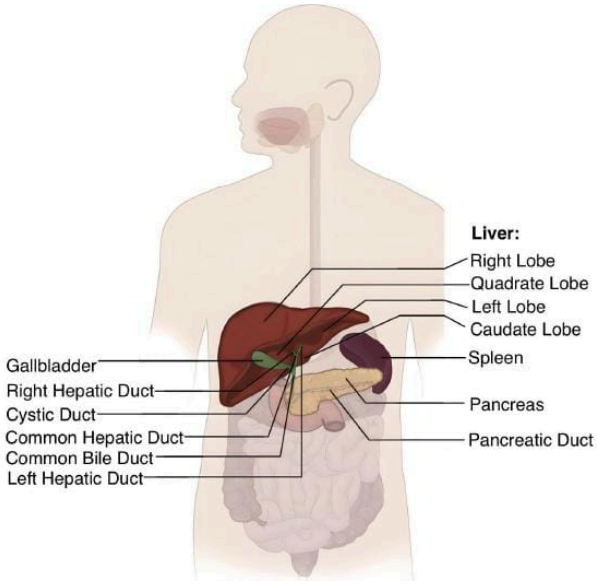


Figure 16 | Accessory Organs | [21] The liver, pancreas, and gallbladder are considered accessory digestive organs, but their roles in the digestive system are vital. Externally, the liver is divided into the right, left, quadrate and caudate lobes. The right and left hepatic ducts merge into the common hepatic bile duct. The common hepatic duct then joins the cystic duct which extends from the gallbladder. This merger then forms the common bile duct. The pancreatic duct found along the pancreas joins the common bile duct.

The Pancreas

The pancreas, a soft and oblong gland, is situated transversely in the retroperitoneum behind the stomach. Its head is snugly positioned within the "c-shaped" curve of the duodenum. The body extends to the left for approximately 15.2 cm (6 in) before tapering into a tail that reaches the hilum of the spleen. This vital organ serves dual functions, encompassing both exocrine activities, involving the secretion of digestive enzymes, and endocrine functions, characterized by the release of hormones into the bloodstream (Figure 17).

The exocrine part of the pancreas arises from small, grape-like clusters of cells called **acini**. These acinar clusters are spread throughout the lobular structure of the pancreas. Acinar cells are crucial for producing enzyme-rich pancreatic juice, which is secreted into small ducts. These ducts merge to form the main pancreatic duct, which ultimately delivers the pancreatic juice into the duodenum to support digestion. Scattered among the acini are endocrine structures known as the **islets of Langerhans**. These cells release hormones pancreatic polypeptide, insulin, glucagon, and somatostatin, each playing a crucial role in the regulation of various physiological processes.[22]

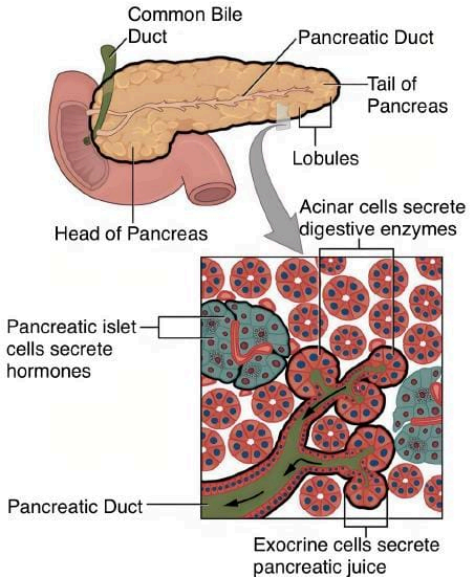


Figure 17 | Exocrine and Endocrine Pancreas | [23] The pancreas is located to the right of the duodenum. The pancreatic duct runs along the pancreas from tail to the head. The acinar cells and pancreatic islet cells are structured into compartments known as lobules. Acinar cells produce digestive enzymes and pancreatic islet cells secrete hormones into the pancreatic duct.

Pancreatic Juice

The pancreas generates over a liter of pancreatic juice each day. This clear fluid primarily consists of water, salts, sodium bicarbonate, and digestive enzymes. The inclusion of sodium bicarbonate imparts slight alkalinity to pancreatic juice, maintaining a pH range between 7.1 to 8.2. This alkalinity serves several crucial functions, such as buffering the acidic gastric juice in chyme, inactivating pepsin from the stomach, and creating an optimal environment for the activity of pH-sensitive digestive enzymes in the small intestine.

Pancreatic enzymes play an active role in the digestion of carbohydrates, proteins, and fats. Notably, the pancreas produces protein-digesting enzymes in their inactive forms to prevent self-digestion. These enzymes undergo activation in the duodenum to avoid the digestion of the pancreas itself, a phenomenon observed in the disease pancreatitis. **Enteropeptidase**, an enzyme in the intestinal brush border, plays a key role in activating **trypsin** from **trypsinogen** of the pancreas. Subsequently, trypsin activates other pancreatic enzymes such as **procarboxypeptidase** and **chymotrypsinogen**, transforming them into their active forms, **carboxypeptidase**, and **chymotrypsin**. In contrast, enzymes responsible for digesting starch (**amylase**), fat (**lipase**), and nucleic acids (**nuclease**) are secreted in their active forms. This precautionary measure ensures that these enzymes do not pose a threat to the pancreas, unlike their protein-digesting counterparts.

Regulation of Pancreatic Secretion

The regulation of pancreatic secretion is a finely orchestrated process involving both hormonal signals and the parasympathetic nervous system. As acidic chyme enters the duodenum, it triggers the release of secretin, which, in turn, prompts duct cells to release bicarbonate-rich pancreatic juice, as depicted in Figure 18. Simultaneously, the presence of proteins and fats in the duodenum stimulates the secretion of CCK. CCK not only stimulates acini to secrete enzyme-rich pancreatic juice but also enhances the activity of secretin. Parasympathetic regulation primarily occurs during the cephalic and gastric phases of gastric secretion, wherein vagal stimulation prompts the secretion of pancreatic juice.[24]

Typically, the pancreas secretes just enough bicarbonate to counterbalance the amount of hydrochloric acid produced in the stomach—the secretion of bicarbonate by the pancreas results in the entry of hydrogen ions into the blood. Consequently, the acidic blood draining from the pancreas neutralizes the alkaline blood draining from the stomach. This intricate balancing act helps maintain the pH of the venous blood flowing to the liver, underscoring the pancreas's crucial role in acid-base homeostasis.

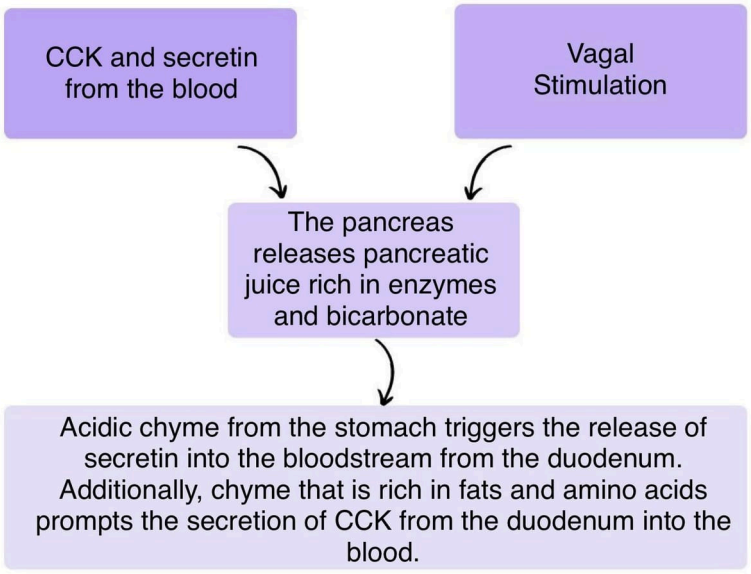


Figure 18 | Regulation of Pancreatic Secretion | [24] The secretion of pancreatic juice is regulated by the interaction of many factors such as acidic chyme, secretin, and cholecystokinin.

The Liver

The liver, weighing approximately three pounds in an adult, is the largest gland in the body. Beyond its role as an accessory digestive organ, the liver is a multifaceted organ with significant involvement in metabolism and regulation. Positioned inferior to the diaphragm in the right upper quadrant of the abdominal cavity, the liver benefits from the protection provided by the surrounding ribs. Its substantial size and diverse functions underscore its importance in maintaining various physiological processes within the body. The liver holds a paramount role in sustaining life by overseeing a wide spectrum of metabolic processes, crucial for eliminating substances that could be harmful if allowed to accumulate. Notably, the liver exhibits the remarkable ability to convert toxic ammonia into non-toxic waste, urea. Serving as the primary gateway for most nutrients absorbed by the digestive tract, the liver plays a pivotal role in processing and regulating the body's nutritional intake. Furthermore, the liver actively contributes to the synthesis of essential components such as plasma proteins, clotting agents, and bile. These products play vital roles in optimizing the absorption of fats, ensuring proper blood coagulation, and facilitating the digestive process.

Blood Supply to the Liver

The liver receives dual blood supplies, one from the **hepatic artery** and the other from the **hepatic portal vein**. The hepatic portal vein is a distinctive arrangement formed by the convergence of veins from the lower esophagus, stomach, pancreas, spleen, and intestines. The entry point for these vessels is the porta hepatis, meaning "gate to the liver." This unique vascular system connecting visceral organs to the liver elucidates why the liver is a common site for the metastasis of cancers originating in the alimentary canal.

The hepatic artery delivers oxygenated blood to the liver, while the hepatic portal vein transports partially deoxygenated blood along with nutrients, drugs, and toxins collected from the visceral organs. In addition to processing bloodborne nutrients and toxins, the liver releases necessary nutrients back into the bloodstream through the **central vein**, which converges with central veins from other lobules to form the **hepatic vein**. This hepatic vein, in turn, joins the inferior vena cava (Figure 19). This intricate network ensures that the liver efficiently regulates and manages the diverse array of substances transported through its dual blood supplies.25

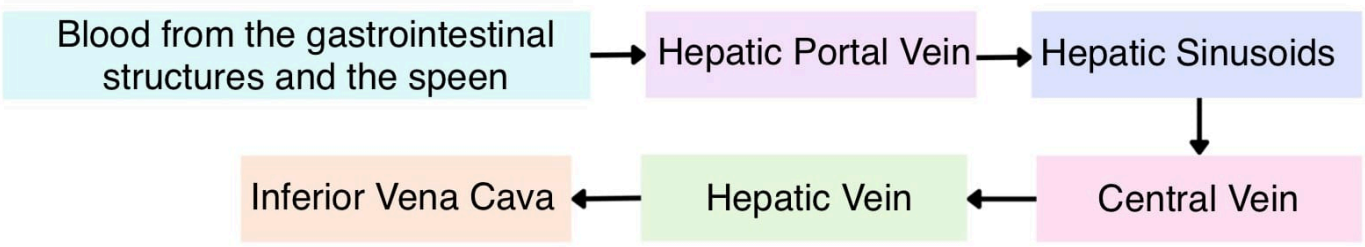


Figure 19 | Hepatic Portal System | [25] The blood from gastrointestinal structures and the spleen flow into the hepatic portal vein. This is passed through the hepatic sinusoid and collected into the central vein. This continues into the hepatic vein and drains into the inferior vena cava.

Microscopic Anatomy of the Liver

Hepatocytes, constituting approximately 80 percent of the liver's volume, are the primary cell types in the liver, playing pivotal roles in its secretory, metabolic, and endocrine functions. Positioned around the fenestrated endothelium of **hepatic sinusoids**, which are open and porous blood capillaries formed by the branching of the nutrient-rich hepatic portal vein and oxygen-rich hepatic artery, hepatocytes have direct access to the blood (Figure 20). Their central location enables them to process nutrients, toxins, and waste materials carried by the blood. During this process, hepatocytes handle various substances, including bilirubin, a bile pigment, which is processed and excreted into the bile canaliculi, the smallest bile ducts. Additionally, proteins, lipids, and carbohydrates are either processed and secreted into the sinusoids or stored within the cells until needed. Within the hepatic sinusoids, there are also star-shaped reticuloendothelial cells known as **Kupffer cells**. These cells are phagocytic in nature, actively removing dead red and white blood cells, bacteria, and other foreign materials that may enter the sinusoids. This intricate cellular interplay in the liver ensures efficient processing, secretion, and detoxification, contributing to the organ's multifaceted functions.

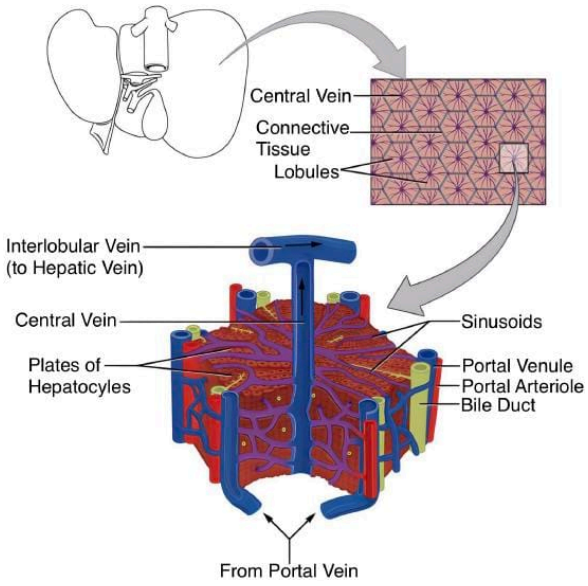


Figure 20 | Microscopic Anatomy of the Liver | [26] At a microscopic level the liver is compartmentalized into lobules with a surrounding layer of connective tissue. Within these lobules is the central vein which drains into the hepatic vein by the interlobular vein. The plates of hepatocytes surround the central vein and between them run hepatic sinusoids. The sinusoids carry blood from the portal system into close contact with hepatocytes for nutrient processing and detoxification. At the periphery of the lobules is the portal triad which includes the portal venule, portal arteriole and bile duct.

Between adjacent hepatocytes, grooves in the cell membranes create space for each **bile canaliculus** (plural = canaliculi). These small ducts serve as conduits for the collection of bile produced by hepatocytes. Bile initially accumulates in these canaliculi and then proceeds into bile ductules, gradually advancing into larger bile ducts. The convergence of these bile ducts gives rise to the **right** and l**eft hepatic ducts**, which further amalgamate and exit the liver as the **common hepatic duct**. Subsequently, this

duct joins forces with the **cystic duct** from the gallbladder, forming the common bile duct through which bile flows into the small intestine (Figure 21). A distinctive feature within the hepatic lobules is the **portal triad**, an arrangement encircling the lobular periphery. This triad comprises three fundamental structures: a bile duct, a branch of the hepatic artery, and a branch of the hepatic portal vein.[1]

Bile

Bile, a vital component for lipid digestion in the small intestine, is a yellowish, yellowish-brown, or yellowish-green alkaline solution with a pH ranging from 7.6 to 8.6. Secreted by hepatocytes in the liver, bile consists of bile salts, bile pigments (bilirubin), bile acids, phospholipids, cholesterol, triglycerides, water, and electrolytes. Its primary function is to emulsify lipids, a process critical for the efficient action of lipid-digesting enzymes. The key players in emulsification are bile salts and phospholipids, featuring both hydrophobic and hydrophilic regions. This molecular arrangement allows them to interact with large lipid molecules and watery chyme, breaking down large lipid globules into smaller fragments of about one μm in diameter, thereby significantly increasing the surface area for enzyme activity. This emulsification process mirrors the action of dish soap on fats mixed with water.

Hepatocytes contribute significantly to bile production, secreting approximately one liter each day. The gallbladder releases bile into the common bile duct as needed. The common bile duct, now carrying bile from both the liver and the gallbladder, joins the pancreatic duct near the duodenum to form the **hepatopancreatic ampulla** (or **ampulla of Vater)**. The combined duct then empties its contents into the duodenum, the first part of the small intestine, through the major duodenal papilla.[27]

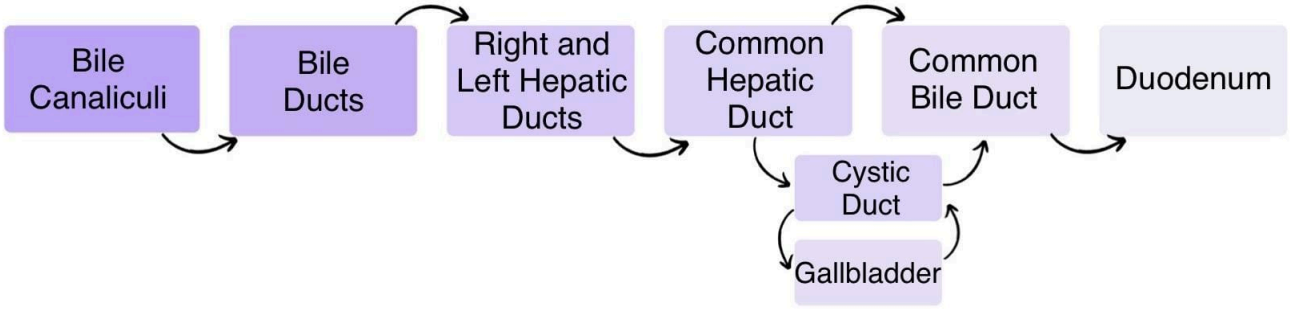


Figure 21 | Circulation of Bile | [27] Bile is secreted into bile canaliculi, drains into bile ducts, then into the right and left hepatic ducts, which form the common hepatic duct. Bile either flows directly to the common bile duct and duodenum, or is stored in the gallbladder via the cystic duct. During digestion, bile is released from the gallbladder back through the cystic duct into the common bile duct and then to the duodenum.

Despite eliminating most bile constituents in feces, bile salts undergo **enterohepatic circulation**, a unique blood vessel arrangement between the small intestine and the liver. In this recycling process, bile salts reach the ileum, are absorbed, and return to the liver through the hepatic portal blood, where hepatocytes excrete them into newly formed bile. Bilirubin, the primary bile pigment, is a byproduct generated when the spleen removes old or damaged red blood cells. Transported to the liver through the splenic vein of the hepatic portal system, breakdown products, including proteins, iron, and bilirubin, undergo recycling in the liver. Bilirubin, responsible for the green color of bile, is eventually transformed into **stercobilin** by intestinal bacteria, imparting a characteristic brown color to stool.

In certain disease states, the absence of bile entering the intestine results in white ('acholic') stool with high-fat content, as fats are not adequately broken down or absorbed. Bile production intensifies in response to fat-rich chyme entering the duodenum, triggered by the gut hormone secretin. Between meals, bile production persists, but it is conserved in concentrated form within the gallbladder. The release of bile from the liver to the gallbladder occurs when the hepatopancreatic ampulla, situated in the duodenum, acts like a valve.[1]

Metabolic Functions of the Liver

The liver stands as a metabolic powerhouse, orchestrating a vast array of biochemical processes crucial for maintaining systemic physiological homeostasis. In carbohydrate metabolism, it serves as the primary hub for blood glucose regulation. Following a meal, the liver takes up excess glucose from the portal circulation to store it as glycogen via glycogenesis. During periods of

fasting, it maintains normoglycemia by releasing glucose back into the bloodstream, achieving this through both the breakdown of stored glycogen (glycogenolysis) and the de novo synthesis of glucose from non-carbohydrate precursors, such as lactate, glycerol, and glucogenic amino acids (gluconeogenesis).

Its role in lipid metabolism is equally vital, encompassing the de novo synthesis of cholesterol, phospholipids, and lipoproteins, as well as the oxidation of fatty acids via mitochondrial beta-oxidation to generate ATP. During prolonged fasting or starvation, the liver converts excess acetyl-CoA into ketone bodies (acetoacetate and beta-hydroxybutyrate), providing an essential alternative fuel source for extrahepatic tissues.

In protein metabolism, the liver is central to the processing of amino acids, utilizing transamination and deamination pathways. It synthesizes critical plasma proteins, including albumin—which maintains oncotic pressure—and essential coagulation factors. Furthermore, the liver plays a critical role in nitrogen homeostasis by detoxifying highly toxic ammonia, a byproduct of protein catabolism, into water-soluble urea through the urea cycle for subsequent renal excretion.

Beyond its synthetic and fuel-regulatory functions, the liver is the body's primary site of biotransformation and detoxification. It utilizes a two-phase enzymatic process (Phase I functionalization and Phase II conjugation) to metabolize endogenous substances, such as hormones and bilirubin, as well as exogenous xenobiotics and pharmaceuticals. This pathway converts lipophilic compounds into hydrophilic metabolites, facilitating their elimination. These processed substances, along with metabolic waste, are then excreted via bile into the gastrointestinal tract or released into the bloodstream for filtration by the kidneys.

Finally, the liver acts as a major reservoir for micronutrients, storing significant reserves of iron (complexed within the intracellular protein ferritin), fat-soluble vitamins (A, D, E, and K), and water-soluble vitamin B12. Additionally, it actively participates in endocrine activation, performing the essential first hydroxylation step required to convert cholecalciferol into biologically active vitamin D. This intricate, interconnected metabolic network underscores the liver's indispensable role in overall human physiology, as summarized in Table 5.

Table 5 | *Metabolism of Nutrients in the Liver* |

Carbohydrate	Protein	Lipid
Glycogenesis	Production of plasma proteins	Synthesis of triglycerides and cholesterol
Glycogenolysis	Production of clotting factors	Lipolysis
Gluconeogenesis	Deamination	
Conversion of fructose and galactose to glucose	Transamination	
	Urea cycle	

As blood, laden with substances from the visceral organs, including gut bacteria, is directed into the liver via the hepatic portal system, the liver employs a protective mechanism against enteric bacteria. This safeguard is facilitated by Kupffer cells. These specialized cells play a crucial role in the removal of enteric bacteria, ensuring the maintenance of a healthy and sterile environment within the liver. Additionally, Kupffer cells contribute to the breakdown of toxins through oxidation reactions, releasing free radicals such as reactive oxygen species. While the accumulation of free radicals can induce cell injury, the liver produces antioxidants, with **glutathione** being a major component as a defense mechanism to protect its cells from free radical-related damage.

Another noteworthy function of the liver is its involvement in calcium regulation. The liver excretes calcium from the body by secreting it into the bile, which then passes into the gut and is subsequently lost in the feces.[1, 3, 9]

The Gallbladder

The gallbladder, measuring approximately 8–10 cm (~3–4 in) in length, is situated in a shallow area on the posterior aspect of the right lobe of the liver. This muscular sac serves as a storage reservoir, concentration chamber, and, upon stimulation, a fuel for bile into the duodenum through the common bile duct. The inner lining of the gallbladder, known as the mucosa, plays a crucial role in absorbing water and ions from bile. This absorption mechanism results in the concentration of bile, often reaching up to 10-fold, before it is released into the duodenum.[29]

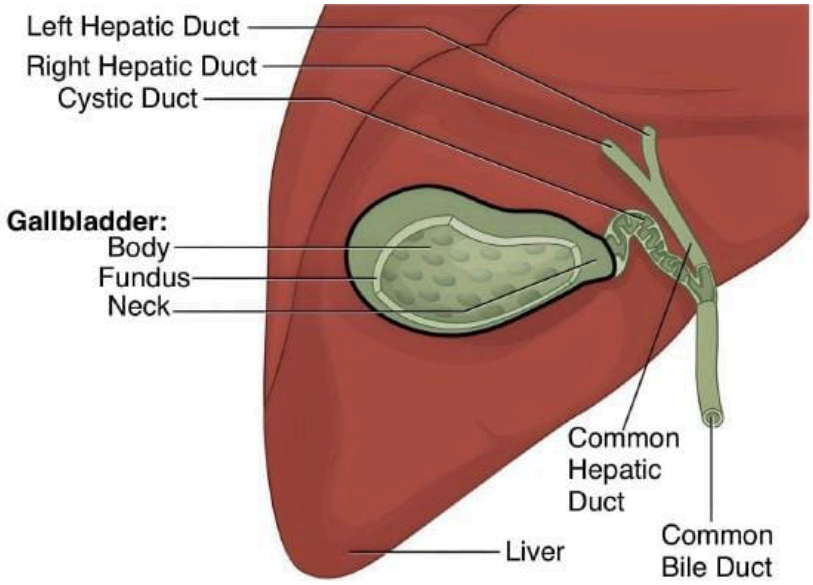


Figure 22 | Gallbladder | [30] The left hepatic duct and right hepatic duct collect bile from the liver and join to form the common hepatic duct.The gallbladder consists of three regions: the fundus (rounded end), body (main chamber), and neck (narrow region connecting to the cystic duct). The gallbladder stores and concentrates bile, and releases it into the two-way cystic duct when it is needed by the small intestine.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 15.9: The Liver, Pancreas, and Gallbladder is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.10: The Small Intestine

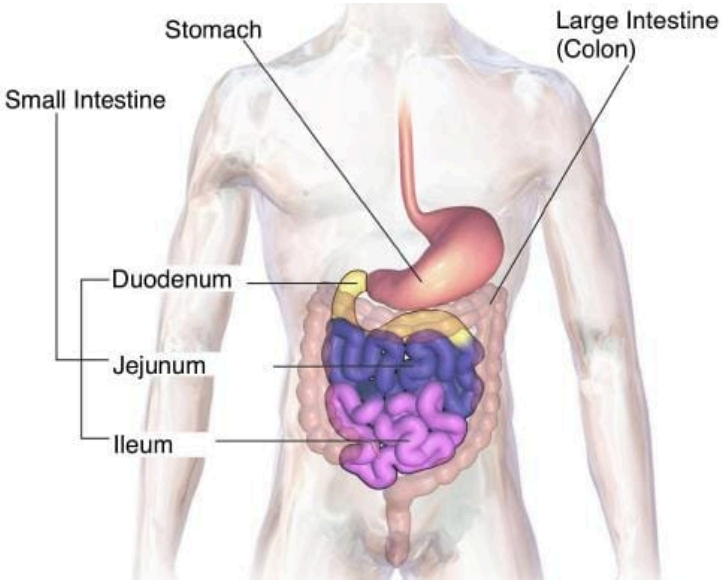


Figure 23 | Small Intestine | [31] The small intestine is located inferior to the stomach. The three regions of the small intestine are the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum. The ileum continues into the large intestine.

The term "intestine," a Latin word signifying "internal," refers to the small and large intestines collectively occupying a substantial portion of the abdominal cavity. These parts form the most massive and extended segments of the alimentary canal. With the exception of ingestion, the small and large bowel undertake all digestive system functions.

Following the release of chyme from the stomach, the small intestine emerges as the primary digestive organ in the body. Not only does it serve as the primary site for most digestion processes, but it also stands as the central hub for virtually all absorption activities. The small intestine, the longest segment of the alimentary canal, measures approximately 3 to 5 meters (20 to 22 feet) in a living person. Interestingly, its length appears doubled in a cadaver due to the loss of muscle tone. The nomenclature "small intestine" reflects its relatively smaller diameter, measuring about 2.54 cm (1 in), compared to the larger 7.62 cm (3 in) diameter of the large intestine.

Beyond its impressive length, the small intestine's efficiency is accentuated by the intricate folds and projections of its lining, providing an expansive surface area. This enormous surface area, approximately 200 m^2, surpasses the skin's surface area by more than 100 times. Such a vast expanse is indispensable for the intricate processes of digestion and absorption that unfold within the small intestine.

The small intestine is divided into three distinct regions, each with unique anatomical and functional characteristics: the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum. The duodenum is the first and shortest segment of the small intestine, originating from the stomach's pyloric sphincter. It spans approximately 25 to 30 centimeters (about 10 to 12 inches) in length. The duodenum is marked by the presence of the duodenal papilla, through which bile and pancreatic secretions enter. It also forms a C-shaped loop around the head of the pancreas. In addition to receiving chyme from the stomach, the duodenum is a crucial site for digestion. Here, bile from the liver and pancreatic enzymes aid in the breakdown of macronutrients.

Following the duodenum, the jejunum is the middle segment of the small intestine. It constitutes most of the small intestine, extending approximately 2.5 meters (about 8 feet). The jejunum is characterized by a thicker wall than the other small intestine segments, with a more prominent vascular network. The primary role of the jejunum is nutrient absorption. It is particularly involved in absorbing carbohydrates and proteins, contributing significantly to the body's nutritional intake.

The ileum forms the terminal part of the small intestine, connecting to the large intestine at the **ileocecal valve**. It spans around 3.5 meters (about 11 feet), making it the longest section among the three. The ileum exhibits a thinner wall and a higher number of lymphoid nodules, contributing to its role in immune surveillance. The ileum continues the absorption of nutrients, mainly the

uptake of bile salts and vitamin B12. It also plays a crucial role in the reabsorption of water and electrolytes.

Histology of the Small Intestine

The small intestine is endowed with specialized structures that significantly enhance its absorptive and digestive functions. Two key features are **villi**, microscopic finger-like projections, and **microvilli**, tiny hair-like structures covering the surface of absorptive cells. Villi are finger-like projections that protrude from the inner lining of the small intestine, specifically from the mucosa. Their purpose is to amplify the surface area available for nutrient absorption. This increased surface area, in turn, facilitates the efficient absorption of digested nutrients into the bloodstream. Each villus contains a network of blood vessels and a central lacteal, a lymphatic capillary. The blood vessels transport absorbed nutrients such as carbohydrates and amino acids to the rest of the body, while the lacteal is instrumental in absorbing dietary fats.[3]

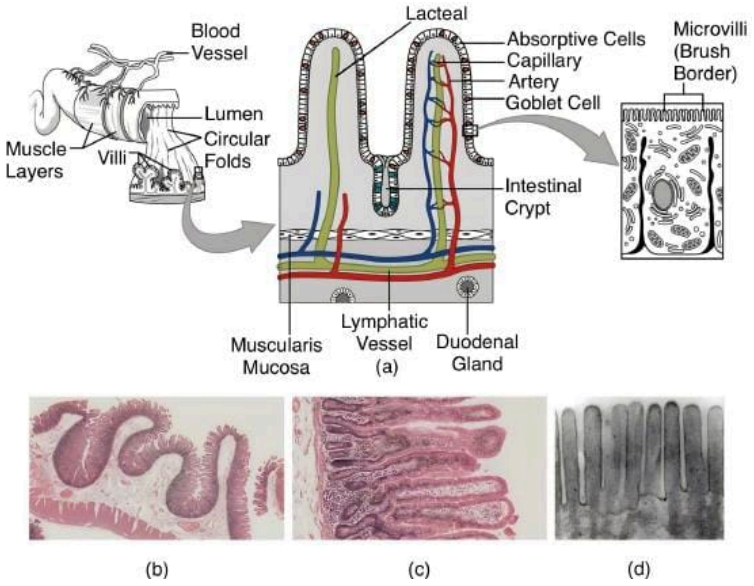


Figure 24 | Histology of the Small Intestine | [32] (a) The absorptive surface of the small intestine is vastly enlarged by the presence of circular folds, villi, and microvilli. (b) Micrograph of the circular folds. (c) Micrograph of the villi. (d) Electron micrograph of the microvilli.

Microvilli are microscopic extensions of the plasma membrane of absorptive cells that cover the surface of villi. This structure forms the "brush border" due to its appearance under a microscope. Microvilli further increase the absorptive surface area and contain enzymes involved in the final stages of digestion. The microvilli play a pivotal role in the absorption of nutrients. They are densely packed with transport proteins that facilitate the uptake of nutrients, such as amino acids, carbohydrates, and electrolytes, into the absorptive cells.

The mucosal surface between the villi reveals intricate features marked by deep crevices, each leading into tubular structures known as **intestinal glands** or **crypts of Lieberkühn** (Figure 24). These glands are formed by cells lining the crevices and play a vital role in the secretion of intestinal juice—a slightly alkaline mixture with a pH ranging from 7.4 to 7.8—composed of water and mucus.

On a daily basis, these intestinal glands contribute to the secretion of approximately 0.95 to 1.9 liters of intestinal juice. This secretion is triggered either by the distention of the small intestine or in response to the irritating effects of chyme on the intestinal mucosa. Notably, this fluid aids in the lubrication and facilitation of digestive processes within the small intestine.

In the submucosa within the duodenum, a distinctive feature is the presence of specialized mucus-secreting glands called **Brunner's glands**. These duodenal glands are unique to the duodenum and contribute to the secretion of bicarbonate-rich alkaline mucus. This alkaline mucus serves as a buffering agent, neutralizing the acidic nature of chyme as it arrives from the stomach. Brunner's glands play a crucial role in creating an optimal environment for subsequent digestive processes in the small intestine. The pancreas contributes pancreatic juice rich in digestive enzymes and bicarbonate ions. This secretion not only aids in the breakdown of macronutrients but also helps in maintaining an optimal pH environment for efficient digestive processes in

the small intestine.

Mechanical Digestion in the Small Intestine

The coordination of contractions associated with small intestinal motility is governed by a phenomenon known as slow wave activity. This process involves rhythmic, spontaneous electrical depolarizations across the smooth muscle cells of the small intestine. These depolarizations generate slow waves, which set the groundwork for subsequent contractions. The duodenum, the initial part of the small intestine, exhibits a relatively higher frequency of slow waves, typically around 12 per minute. The jejunum demonstrates a slightly slower frequency, averaging around ten slow waves per minute. The ileum, which constitutes the terminal segment of the small intestine, experiences a further decrease in slow wave frequency, with an average of around 8 per minute.

In addition to slow wave activity, the initiation of contractions requires the presence of spike potentials. These spike potentials are transient bursts of electrical activity that occur on top of the slow waves. They play a crucial role in surpassing the threshold for muscle contraction and are integral to the generation of peristaltic waves.

The small intestinal motility is closely linked to pancreatic contribution. Pancreatic secretion aids in the breakdown of complex nutrients and contributes to the regulation of the small intestine's motility. Small intestinal motility is intricately regulated by neural and hormonal inputs. The enteric nervous system coordinates local reflexes, while motilin influences the pace and coordination of contractions. These regulatory mechanisms use slow wave activity and spike potentials to maintain optimal motility patterns. Epinephrine inhibits small intestinal motility, potentially contributing to the digestive slowdown during fight-or-flight responses. Motilin plays a key role in coordinating MMCs, rhythmic contractions that aid in cleansing the small intestine between meals. Serotonin and prostaglandins can stimulate small intestinal motility, influencing the contraction patterns. Hormones such as gastrin, CCK, and insulin contribute to the stimulation of small intestinal contractions, facilitating the movement of chyme. Conversely, hormones like secretin and glucagon inhibit small intestinal contractions, playing a role in regulating the overall motility.

The movement of intestinal smooth muscles involves a process known as segmentation, distinct from the peristaltic mixing waves observed in the stomach. Segmentation in the small intestine manifests as incremental back-and-forth shoving of the intestinal contents, facilitated by the rhythmic contraction and relaxation of rings of smooth muscle. Unlike peristalsis, segmentation does not propel chyme forcefully through the tract. Instead, it serves to mix chyme with digestive juices and pushes food particles against the mucosa, facilitating absorption. The duodenum exhibits the most rapid segmentation, occurring at a rate of approximately 12 contractions per minute, while in the ileum, segmentations occur around eight times per minute (Figure 25).

As chyme absorption progresses and the small intestinal wall becomes less distended, the localized segmentation process transitions to transport movements. The duodenal mucosa secretes the hormone motilin, initiating contractions. These complexes commence in the duodenum, propelling chyme through a short section of the small intestine before coming to a temporary halt. Subsequent contractions initiate a bit farther down the intestine, repeating the process of propelling chyme and momentarily stopping. These complexes traverse the small intestine gradually, taking approximately 90 to 120 minutes to reach the end of the ileum. Upon reaching the ileum, the cycle begins again in the duodenum.[33]

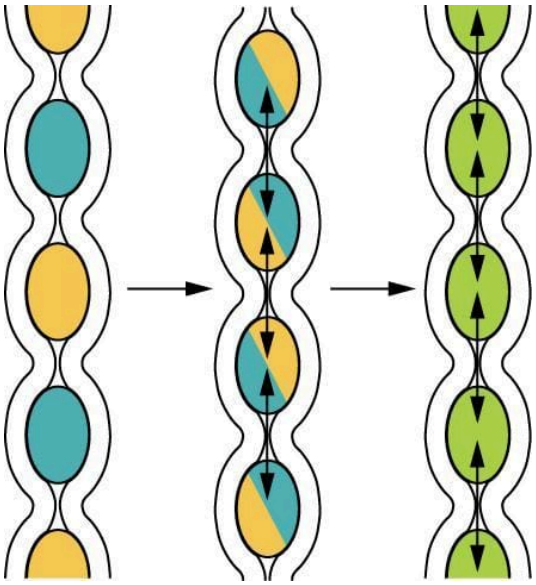


Figure 25 | Segmentation | [34] This illustration depicts the process of segmentation, a type of contraction in the small intestine that involves mixing rather than propelling contents forward. The leftmost part shows large, distinct sections (colored in yellow and blue), which represent different portions of intestinal content before segmentation. The middle section shows alternating contractions of the smooth muscle (indicated by arrows pointing toward each other within sections), dividing the contents into smaller, mixed segments. This mixing allows the content to move back and forth, promoting effective blending of digestive enzymes and nutrients. The rightmost section displays uniformly mixed contents (in green), indicating that the segments have been thoroughly combined. This mixed state ensures that nutrients are more accessible for absorption as they continue along the digestive tract.

The ileocecal valve, functioning as a sphincter, typically maintains a constricted state. However, when motility increases in the ileum, this sphincter relaxes, facilitating the entry of food residue into the initial segment of the large intestine, cecum. The relaxation of the ileocecal sphincter is a regulated process involving both nervous and hormonal control mechanisms. On average, it takes approximately 3 to 5 hours for all chyme to traverse the small intestine, emphasizing the coordinated regulation of sphincter activity and motility for optimal digestive function.

Chemical Digestion and Absorption in the Small Intestine

The small intestine secretes a variety of digestive enzymes. Enteropeptidase, also known as **enterokinase**, is an enzyme produced by the small intestine, specifically by the duodenal mucosa. Its primary role is to activate trypsinogen, an inactive precursor enzyme secreted by the pancreas, into its active form called trypsin. This activation is a crucial step in the digestion of proteins within the small intestine. Trypsin activates other pancreatic zymogens like chymotrypsinogen and procarboxypeptidase. This creates a cascade of enzymatic activations that play a crucial role in breaking down dietary proteins into smaller peptides and amino acids. The activation of trypsinogen by enteropeptidase is a tightly regulated process. It ensures that the activation occurs in the appropriate location (duodenum) and at the right time during the digestive process.

Lactase, Sucrase, and Maltase are brush border enzymes that digest specific disaccharides, lactose, sucrose, and maltose. **Peptidases** are found on the brush border of the microvilli. These enzymes are associated with the absorptive cells of the small intestine's mucosa.

The small intestine serves as a crucial site for the completion of digestion and absorption of major nutrients. While lipids enter the small intestine largely undigested, the primary focus shifts to lipid digestion, a process facilitated by bile and the enzyme pancreatic lipase. The small intestine takes center stage in water absorption through osmosis. The absorptive cells of the small intestine contribute to digestive processes by synthesizing digestive enzymes and embedding them in the plasma membranes of microvilli. This feature distinguishes the small intestine from the stomach, highlighting that enzymatic digestion occurs not only within the lumen but also on the luminal surfaces of mucosal cells.

For optimal chemical digestion, the delivery of chyme from the stomach to the small intestine must occur gradually and in modest amounts. This approach is imperative because chyme exiting the stomach is typically hypertonic. If large quantities were

forcefully introduced into the small intestine, the resulting osmotic water loss from the blood into the intestinal lumen could lead to potentially life-threatening low blood volume. Additionally, the sustained digestion process necessitates an elevation of the low pH characteristic of stomach chyme, alongside the thorough mixing of chyme with bile and pancreatic juices. Both processes demand time, underscoring the importance of carefully controlling the pumping action of the pylorus to prevent the duodenum from being inundated with chyme.

The absorption of nutrients in the small intestine involves five main mechanisms: active transport, passive diffusion, facilitated diffusion, co-transport, and endocytosis. The composition of the cell's plasma membrane, consisting of hydrophobic phospholipids, poses a challenge for water-soluble nutrients. To overcome this, transport molecules embedded in the membrane facilitate the entry of water-soluble nutrients into cells. Tight junctions between epithelial cells in the intestinal mucosa prevent substances from passing between cells. Consequently, the only route for substances to enter blood capillaries is through the apical surfaces of epithelial cells, allowing water-soluble nutrients to enter the capillary blood in the villi. These nutrients then travel to the liver via the hepatic portal vein, ensuring an efficient and controlled absorption process in the small intestine.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Digestion and Absorption of Major Nutrients

Substantial food molecules, such as proteins, lipids, nucleic acids, and starches, necessitate breakdown into smaller subunits to enable absorption through the lining of the alimentary canal. This intricate process is achieved by enzymes through hydrolysis, catalyzing the cleavage of large molecules into their constituent parts. Table 6 encapsulates the multifaceted enzymatic activities crucial for the efficient breakdown of complex nutrients into absorbable forms.[9]

Table 6 | *Digestive Enzymes* |

Enzyme Category	Enzyme Name	Source	Substrate	Product
Salivary Enzymes	Lingual lipase	Lingual glands	Triglycerides	Free fatty acids, and mono and diglycerides
Salivary Enzymes	Salivary amylase	Salivary glands	Polysaccharides	Disaccharides and trisaccharides
Gastric Enzymes	Gastric lipase	Chief cells	Triglycerides	Fatty acids and monoacylglycerides
Gastric Enzymes	Pepsin	Chief cells	Proteins	Peptides
Brush Border Enzymes	Enteropeptidase	Small intestine	Trypsinogen	Trypsin

Enzyme Category	Enzyme Name	Source	Substrate	Product
Brush Border Enzymes	Lactase	Small intestine	Lactose	Glucose and galactose
Brush Border Enzymes	Maltase	Small intestine	Maltose	Glucose
Brush Border Enzymes	Nucleosidase and phosphatases	Small intestine	Nucleotides	Phosphates, nitrogenous bases, and pentoses
Brush Border Enzymes	Peptidases	Small intestine	Aminopeptidase; amino acids at the amino end of peptides Dipeptidase; dipeptides	Aminopeptidase; amino acids at the amino end of peptides Dipeptidase; dipeptides
Pancreatic Enzymes	Carboxypeptidase	Pancreatic acinar cells	Amino acids at the carboxyl end of peptides	Amino acids and peptides
Pancreatic Enzymes	Chymotrypsin	Pancreatic acinar cells	Proteins	Peptides
Pancreatic Enzymes	Elastase	Pancreatic acinar cells	Proteins	Peptides
Pancreatic Enzymes	Nucleases	Pancreatic acinar cells	Ribonuclease; ribonucleic acids Deoxyribonucleic acids	Nucleotides
Pancreatic Enzymes	Pancreatic amylase	Pancreatic acinar cells	Polysaccharides (starches)	⍁-Dextrins, disaccharides (maltose), trisaccharides (maltotriose)
Pancreatic Enzymes	Trypsin	Pancreatic acinar cells	Proteins	Peptides

Enzyme Category	Enzyme Name	Source	Substrate	Product
Pancreatic Enzymes	Pancreatic lipase	Pancreatic acinar cells	Lipids that are emulsified	Monoglycerides and fatty acids

Digestion and Absorption of Carbohydrates

The typical American diet comprises roughly 50 percent carbohydrates. Among the commonly consumed and readily absorbed monosaccharides are glucose, galactose, and fructose. The digestive system is proficient in breaking down various carbohydrates, including the disaccharides sucrose (found in regular table sugar, composed of glucose and fructose), lactose (present in milk, consisting of glucose and galactose), and maltose (common in grains, made up of two glucose units) and polysaccharides, glycogen and starch. Salivary amylase initiates carbohydrate digestion in the mouth, but its activity is inhibited due to the stomach's acidic environment. The pancreas plays a key role in carbohydrate digestion. Pancreatic amylase, released into the small intestine, digests polysaccharides and partially digested carbohydrates (Figure 26). Subsequently, brush border enzymes—sucrase, maltase, and lactase—hydrolyze disaccharides into monosaccharides. Sucrase breaks down sucrose into fructose and glucose, maltase cleaves maltose into two glucose molecules, and lactase digests lactose into glucose and galactose. Although indigestible polysaccharides, such as cellulose, offer no nutritional value, they contribute to dietary fiber, promoting the propulsion of food through the alimentary canal.

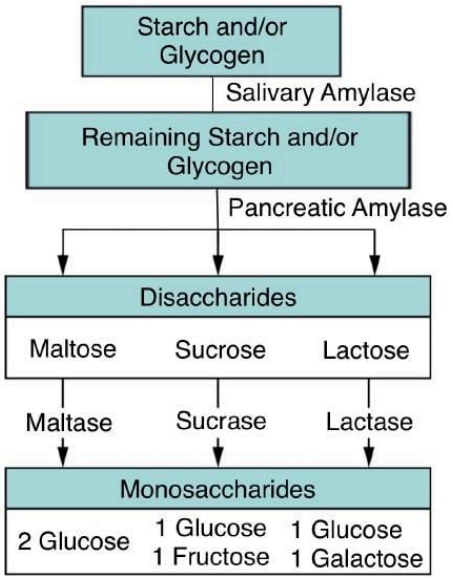


Figure 26 | Carbohydrate Digestion | [35] Carbohydrates are broken down into their monomers in a series of steps. Carbohydrate digestion begins with the breakdown of starch and glycogen by salivary amylase, followed by further hydrolysis by pancreatic amylase. The resulting disaccharides—maltose, sucrose, and lactose—are cleaved into monosaccharides by enzymes (maltase, sucrase, and lactase), producing glucose, fructose, and galactose for absorption.

The absorption of carbohydrates occurs exclusively in the form of monosaccharides, and the small intestine demonstrates remarkable efficiency in this process, with an estimated absorption rate of 120 grams per hour. All dietary carbohydrates that undergo normal digestion are absorbed, while indigestible fibers are excreted in the feces. The monosaccharides glucose and galactose utilize common protein carriers referred to as **sodium-glucose transporters** (**SGLT**) for transport into epithelial cells, employing secondary active transport in conjunction with sodium ions. Subsequently, these monosaccharides exit the cells through facilitated diffusion, gaining entry into capillaries through intercellular clefts. Conversely, fructose, a monosaccharide present in fruit, undergoes absorption and transport solely through facilitated diffusion.[9]

Digestion and Absorption of Proteins

Proteins undergo digestion to reduce them to their fundamental amino acid components. To sustain normal body structures, an average requirement of approximately one gram of protein per pound of body weight is necessary each day. The initial phase of protein digestion unfolds in the stomach, where hydrochloric acid and pepsin collaborate to break down proteins into smaller polypeptides. Subsequently, these polypeptides proceed to the small intestine.

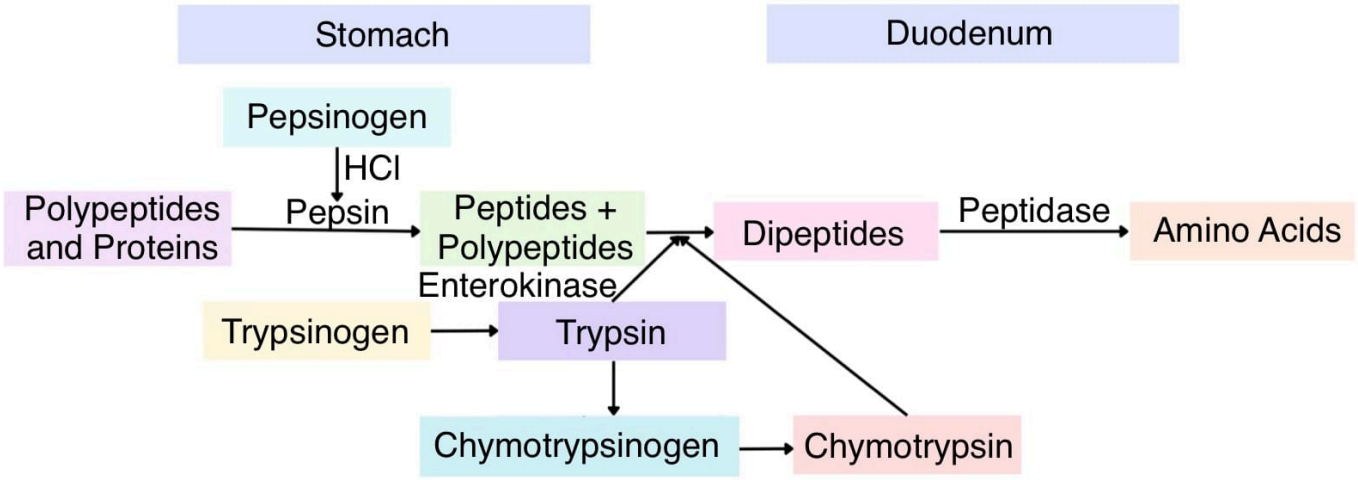


Figure 27 | Digestion of Proteins | In the stomach, proteins are successively broken down into their amino acid components by the activation of pepsinogen into pepsin by hydrochloric acid (HCl). In the duodenum, enterokinase activates trypsinogen into trypsin, which in turn activates chymotrypsinogen into chymotrypsin. Trypsin and chymotrypsin further hydrolyze peptides and polypeptides into dipeptides. Finally, peptidase enzymes break dipeptides into individual amino acids for absorption.

Within the small intestine, the process of chemical digestion continues with the aid of pancreatic enzymes, each specifically targeting bonds within amino acid sequences. Simultaneously, the cells lining the brush border release enzymes such as **aminopeptidase** and **dipeptidase**, further dismantling peptide chains (Figures 27). This breakdown results in the formation of molecules small enough to traverse the intestinal lining and enter the bloodstream (Figure 28).[3, 9]

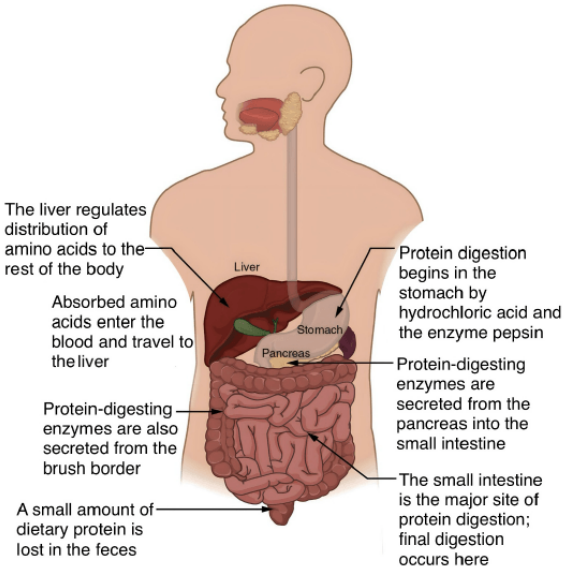


Figure 28 | Digestion and Absorption of Proteins | [36] As shown in the illustration, the breakdown of proteins commences in the stomach and is completed within the small intestine. Essential to this process are the secretions of hydrochloric acid from the stomach, along with a suite of protein-digesting enzymes from the stomach, pancreas, and the small intestine's own lining. Although gastric digestion begins the process, the small intestine is where most significant protein digestion takes place. The

final products, individual amino acids, are then absorbed into the bloodstream. From there, they travel to the liver for either general circulation to supply body tissues or for metabolic processing and storage.

Active transport mechanisms, primarily concentrated in the duodenum and jejunum of the small intestine, play a pivotal role in the absorption of proteins, predominantly in the form of their breakdown products—amino acids. Remarkably, the small intestine achieves the digestion and absorption of almost all (95 to 98 percent) ingested protein. The carriers facilitating amino acid transport exhibit variability, with most being intricately linked to the active transport of sodium ions. Notably, short chains of two amino acids (dipeptides) or three amino acids (tripeptides) are also subject to active transport mechanisms. However, upon entering the absorptive epithelial cells, these peptide chains undergo subsequent breakdown into their constituent amino acids. Following this intracellular process, the liberated amino acids exit the cell and enter the capillary blood through diffusion. This orchestrated sequence ensures the efficient absorption of amino acids from the digestive milieu into the bloodstream.[3]

Digestion and Absorption of Lipids

Dietary fat undergoes limited digestion until it reaches the small intestine, specifically the duodenum. In this segment of the digestive tract, fats are subjected to emulsification facilitated by bile salts. Emulsification is a crucial process involving the fragmentation of large fat molecules into smaller fragments (Figure 29). Bile, originating from the liver and stored in the gallbladder, is released into the duodenum in response to a lipid-rich meal, primarily serving the function of emulsification.

Once fats are emulsified, further digestion ensues with the assistance of pancreatic lipase. As implied by its name, pancreatic lipase is produced in the pancreas and then released into the duodenum through the pancreatic duct. Under the action of pancreatic lipase, fat molecules undergo breakdown into monoglycerides and fatty acids. To facilitate their transport within the lumen of the small intestine, these digestion products bind to a plasma protein, forming a structure known as a **micelle**. This micelle efficiently transports monoglycerides and fatty acids into the intestinal cells, specifically the enterocytes. This orchestrated process ensures the effective absorption of fat components into the enterocytes within the small intestine.

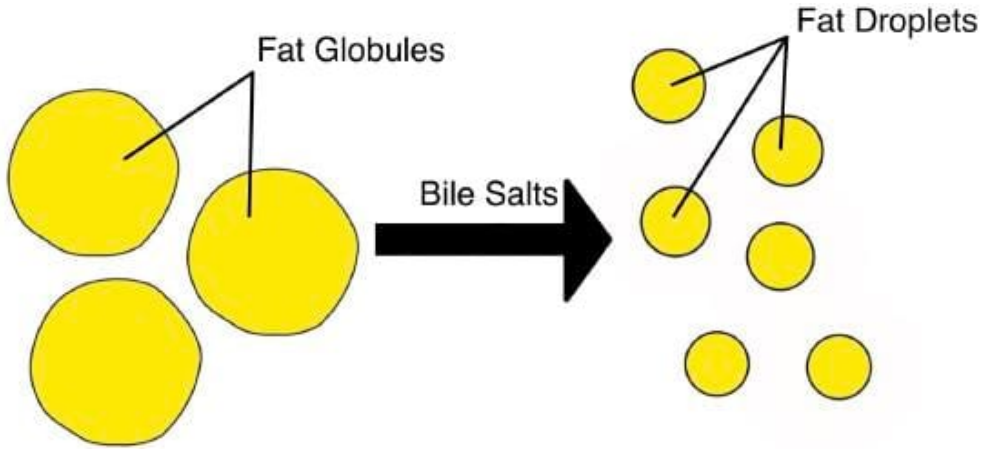


Figure 29 | Digestion of Lipids | Large fat globules are broken down into smaller fat droplets through the action of bile salts.

Once they are inside the enterocyte, fatty acids and monoglycerides undergo reconstruction into triglyceride molecules. These newly formed triglycerides are then bundled together with dietary cholesterol and phospholipids to create particles known as **chylomicrons**, a type of lipoproteins which play a vital role in facilitating the movement of fats and cholesterol within aqueous environments, such as the lymph and blood.

Chylomicrons exit the enterocytes through the process of exocytosis, entering the lymphatic system via lymph capillaries (lacteals) located in the villi of the small intestine (Figure 30). Subsequently, chylomicrons are transported through the lymphatic system and eventually enter the bloodstream. This route through the lymphatics represents the primary pathway through which dietary lipids gain access to the blood. However, a minor fraction of fatty acids, particularly short-chain fatty acids, are absorbed into the hepatic portal system, allowing them to reach the liver directly. Upon entering circulation, chylomicrons undergo the enzyme **lipoprotein lipase** action, releasing some fatty acids into tissues. The remaining chylomicron structure, referred to as a **chylomicron remnant**, is approximately half the size of chylomicrons and relatively rich in cholesterol and cholesteryl esters. These remnants reach hepatocytes, where the liver reutilizes them to convert lipids from chylomicrons into various lipid-containing products. Particularly during periods between meals, fasting, and starvation, the liver exhibits heightened activity in producing lipoproteins to sustain circulating lipid levels.[9]

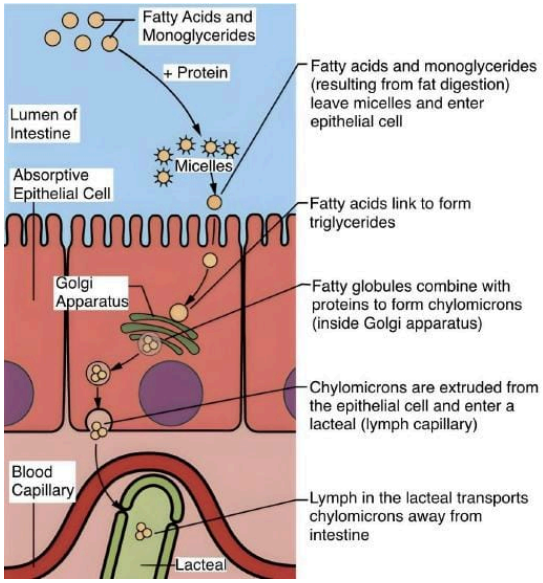


Figure 30 | Lipid Absorption | [37] This diagram illustrates the process of lipid absorption in the small intestine. Fatty acids and monoglycerides, resulting from fat digestion, enter the epithelial cells by micelles. Fatty acids then re-form into triglycerides, which are then combined with proteins in the Golgi apparatus to form chylomicrons. Chylomicrons are then extruded from the epithelial cell and enter a lacteal (lymph capillary), which transports them away from the intestine in the lymph.

Digestion and Absorption of Nucleic Acids

The nucleic acids DNA and RNA are prevalent components in most of the foods. The digestion of these nucleic acids is facilitated by two types of pancreatic nucleases: **deoxyribonuclease**, responsible for digesting DNA, and **ribonuclease**, which digests RNA. The resulting nucleotides from this digestion are further broken down by two intestinal brush border enzymes, **nucleosidase** and **phosphatase**. These enzymes break down nucleotides into pentoses, phosphates, and nitrogenous bases. These smaller components are then absorbed through the wall of the alimentary canal. Table 7 provides the list of large food molecules and their essential subunits.

The products of nucleic acid digestion, including pentose sugars, nitrogenous bases, and phosphate ions, are transported across the villus epithelium through active transport mechanisms facilitated by carriers. Following this transport, these products enter the bloodstream, where the body can further utilize them.[9]

Table 7 | *Macromolecules and their simpler forms* |

Macromolecule	Simpler Form
Carbohydrates	Monosaccharides: glucose, galactose, and fructose
Proteins	Single amino acids, dipeptides, and tripeptides
Triglycerides	Monoglycerides, glycerol, and free fatty acids
Nucleic acids	Pentose sugars, phosphates, and nitrogenous bases

Electrolyte absorption in the small intestine involves both gastrointestinal secretions and ingested foods. Most electrolytes are

absorbed via active transport throughout the small intestine. Co-transport mechanisms result in sodium ion accumulation inside cells, while anti-port mechanisms reduce potassium ion concentration inside cells. To restore the sodium-potassium gradient across the cell membrane, an ATP-dependent sodium-potassium pump pumps sodium out and potassium in. All minerals entering the intestine are generally absorbed except iron and calcium. Ionic iron needed for hemoglobin production is actively transported into mucosal cells. Inside mucosal cells, iron binds to ferritin, creating iron-ferritin complexes for storage. When the body has sufficient iron, most stored iron is lost during the shedding of worn-out epithelial cells. Increased iron uptake occurs during iron deficiency, such as during bleeding. Women experiencing significant iron loss during menstruation have more iron transport proteins in intestinal epithelial cells than men.

The small intestine absorbs naturally occurring vitamins from food and supplements. **Fat-Soluble Vitamins (A, D, E, K)** are absorbed with dietary lipids in micelles through simple diffusion. Most **water-soluble vitamins (B Vitamins, Vitamin C)** are absorbed via simple diffusion, except for vitamin B12. Intrinsic factor, secreted in the stomach, binds to vitamin B12, preventing its digestion. The complex binds to mucosal receptors in the terminal ileum, where it is endocytosed for absorption.[9]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 15.10: The Small Intestine is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.11: The Large Intestine

The large intestine serves as the terminal segment of the alimentary canal. It is categorized into four primary regions: the cecum, the colon, the rectum, and the anus (Figure 31). At the junction between the ileum and the large intestine, the ileocecal valve regulates the passage of chyme from the small intestine into the large intestine. Its key functions encompass the completion of nutrient and water absorption, the synthesis of specific vitamins, the formation of feces, and the ultimate elimination of fecal matter from the body.

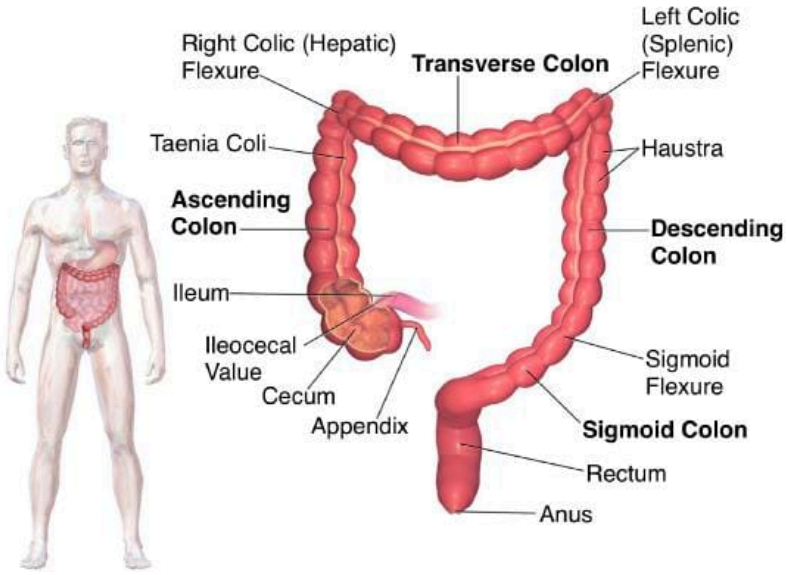


Figure 31 | The Large Intestine | [38] The main parts of the large intestine include the cecum, colon, and rectum. The colon can be further divided into different anatomical regions including, ascending colon, transverse colon, descending colon, and sigmoid colon. The right colic flexure marks the bend between the ascending colon and the transverse colon, while the left colic flexure is the bend between the transverse colon and the descending colon. The sigmoid colon then continues into the rectum, and anal canal. The ileocecal valve marks the junction between the ileum and cecum, regulating the flow of chyme into the large intestine. Attached to the cecum is a small structure known as the appendix. Additionally, three distinct bands of longitudinal muscle run along the colon forming the teniae coli.

Structural Organization of the Large Intestine

The cecum, the initial segment of the large intestine, is a pouch-like structure situated below the ileocecal valve. Measuring approximately 6 cm (2.4 in) in length, it receives contents from the ileum and continues the process of water and salt absorption. Connected to the cecum is the **appendix**, a coiled tube containing lymphoid tissue, suggesting a potential immunologic role. Despite being generally considered vestigial, recent reports propose that the appendix may serve as a bacterial reservoir, offering a survival advantage in diarrheal illness.

The cecum transitions into the colon, where food residue ascends to the right side of the abdomen in the **ascending colon**. At the inferior surface of the liver, the colon bends, forming the **right colic flexure**, transforming into the **transverse colon**. After crossing to the left side of the abdomen, the colon turns sharply downward at the **left colic flexure**, or **splenic flexure**. The **descending colon** runs along the left side of the posterior abdominal wall, entering the pelvis and becoming the S-shaped **sigmoid colon**. The sigmoid colon is located in the retroperitoneum, along with the ascending and descending colon. Food residue then moves into the rectum within the pelvis, positioned near the third sacral vertebra. From there, it reaches the anal canal—the final section of the large intestine—which includes the **internal anal sphincter** composed of smooth muscle and the **external anal sphincter** made of skeletal muscle.[39]

Bacterial Flora

The alimentary canal employs multiple defense mechanisms to ward off potentially harmful bacteria. Lysozyme, defensins, hydrochloric acid, and protein-digesting enzymes work together to eliminate most bacteria entering the canal. However, within the large intestine resides trillions of bacteria collectively known as the **bacterial flora**. These bacteria, encompassing over 700 nonpathogenic commensal species, pose no threat when confined to the gut lumen. Many play crucial roles in chemical digestion, absorption, vitamin synthesis (such as biotin, pantothenic acid, and vitamin K), and contribute to an enhanced immune response.

Digestive Functions of the Large Intestine

The residue of chyme that enters the large intestine contains minimal nutrients, predominantly water, which is gradually reabsorbed during the 12 to 24 hours. In cases of severe inflammatory bowel disease, the removal of the large intestine is a viable option. The large intestine can be removed entirely without significantly impairing digestive functioning. Often, a new fecal pouch can be constructed from the small intestine and attached to the anus. If this is not feasible, an ileostomy can be established by bringing the distal ileum through the abdominal wall, allowing the watery chyme to be collected in a bag-like adhesive appliance.

Mechanical Digestion

In the large intestine, the onset of mechanical digestion occurs as chyme moves from the ileum into the cecum, a process regulated by the ileocecal sphincter. After a meal, peristalsis in the ileum propels chyme into the cecum. As the cecum becomes distended with chyme, contractions of the ileocecal sphincter intensify, marking the initiation of colon movements.

Mechanical digestion in the large intestine involves a combination of three distinct types of movements. The presence of food residues in the colon triggers slow-moving haustral contractions characterized by sluggish segmentation, particularly in the transverse and descending colons. When a haustrum becomes distended with chyme, its muscles contract, propelling the residue into the next haustrum. These contractions occur approximately every 30 minutes, lasting about 1 minute each. Moreover, these movements facilitate the mixing of food residue, aiding the large intestine in water absorption. The second type of movement is peristalsis, which operates at a slower pace in the large intestine compared to more proximal sections of the alimentary canal. The third type involves **mass movements**, robust waves that initiate midway through the transverse colon and rapidly propel contents toward the rectum. Mass movements typically occur three or four times daily, often coinciding with meals or immediately afterward. The gastrocolic reflex, triggered by stomach distension and the breakdown products of digestion in the small intestine, enhances motility, including mass movements, in the colon. Additionally, dietary fibers contribute to stool softening and enhance the power of colonic contractions, optimizing colon activities.

Chemical Digestion

While the glands in the large intestine secrete mucus, they do not release digestive enzymes. Consequently, chemical digestion in the large intestine relies solely on the activity of bacteria within the colon lumen. The bacteria engage in saccharolytic fermentation, breaking down some of the remaining carbohydrates. This process generates gasses like hydrogen, carbon dioxide, and methane, contributing to the formation of **flatus** (gas) in the colon; excessive flatus is known as **flatulence**. On a daily basis, the colon produces up to 1500 mL of flatus, and this production can increase with the consumption of foods rich in otherwise indigestible and complex carbohydrates, such as soluble dietary fiber found in beans.

Absorption, Feces Formation, and Defecation

The alimentary canal can process up to 10 liters of food, liquids, and gastrointestinal secretions daily, with less than one liter reaching the large intestine. The small intestine absorbs about 90 percent of the ingested water (either liquid or solid food). The large intestine absorbs most of the remaining water (Figure 32), a process that converts the liquid chyme residue into semisolid feces (“stool”). Feces are composed of undigested food residues, unabsorbed digested substances, millions of bacteria, old epithelial cells from the GI mucosa, inorganic salts, and enough water to let it pass smoothly out of the body. Of every 500 mL (17 ounces) of food residue that enters the cecum each day, about 150 mL (5 ounces) become feces.[9]

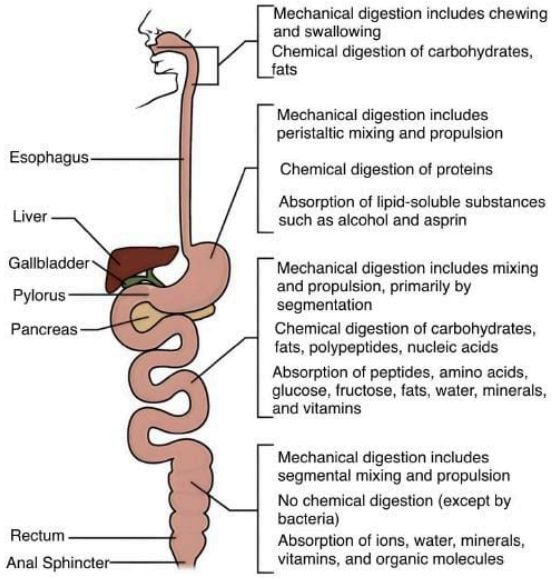


Figure 32 | Digestive Secretions and Absorption of Water | [40] Intake of food and water totals approximately 2000 ml, accompanied by about 1500 ml of salivary secretions. Additional digestive secretions include 1500 ml of gastric juice, 1000 ml of bile from the liver, 1000 ml of pancreatic juice, 2000 ml of intestinal secretions, and 200 ml of colonic mucus. Approximately 7800 ml of water is reabsorbed in the small intestine, 1250 ml in the colon, and about 150 ml is lost in feces.

The **defecation reflex** is a crucial physiological process that facilitates the elimination of feces from the rectum. This reflex is a well-coordinated series of events involving both involuntary and voluntary muscle contractions. The primary aim of the defecation reflex is to empty the rectum while maintaining control over the timing and location of bowel movements. The process initiates with mass movements in the colon, which propel feces into the rectum. This accumulation of fecal material in the rectum stimulates stretch receptors in the rectal wall, triggering the defecation reflex. These receptors send signals to the spinal cord, activating parasympathetic nerves. They enable the contraction of the sigmoid colon and rectum, promoting the movement of feces toward the anus. Simultaneously, the internal anal sphincter, a smooth muscle ring that normally maintains constriction of the anus, relaxes under the influence of the parasympathetic stimulation. This relaxation facilitates the passage of feces from the rectum to the anal canal. The external anal sphincter, composed of skeletal muscle and under voluntary control, may initially contract in response to the reflex (Figure 33). This contraction provides an opportunity for an individual to delay the act of defecation voluntarily.

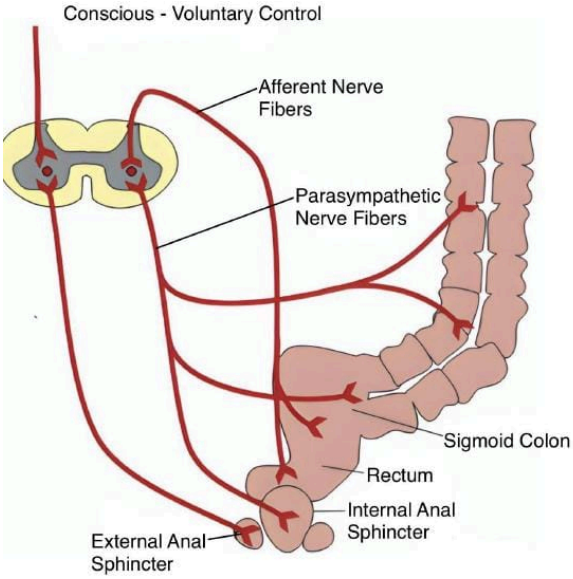


Figure 33 | Defecation Reflex | [41] The defecation reflex involves both conscious voluntary and involuntary contractions. Afferent

nerve fibers transmit sensory signals from the rectum to the spinal cord. Parasympathetic nerve fibers mediate motor signals to the internal anal sphincter and sigmoid colon. The external anal sphincter, allows voluntary regulation of fecal release.

The presence of feces in the anal canal also sends a signal to the brain, providing conscious awareness of the need for defecation. The individual then decides whether to open or keep closed the external anal sphincter voluntarily. If the decision is made to delay defecation, the external anal sphincter remains contracted for a brief period until the reflex contractions subside. Once the individual chooses to defecate, the external anal sphincter relaxes voluntarily, allowing the expulsion of feces.

Fecal elimination involves coordinated contractions of the rectal muscles, culminating in a voluntary procedure known as **Valsalva's maneuver**. During this maneuver, intra-abdominal pressure is increased by contracting the diaphragm and abdominal wall muscles, while simultaneously closing the glottis. This process aids in the expulsion of feces from the rectum.

When defecation is delayed for an extended duration, additional water is absorbed from the fecal material, leading to a firmer consistency. Prolonged delay can contribute to constipation, a condition characterized by infrequent and difficult bowel movements. Conversely, rapid transit through the intestines can hinder water absorption, leading to diarrhea. Infections caused by foodborne pathogens are common culprits of diarrhea.

Several factors, including diet, overall health, and stress, play pivotal roles in determining the frequency of bowel movements. The diversity in the number of bowel movements is considerable among individuals, ranging from two or three per day to three or four per week.[9]

This page titled 15.11: The Large Intestine is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.12: Summary of Digestion and Absorption in the Alimentary Canal

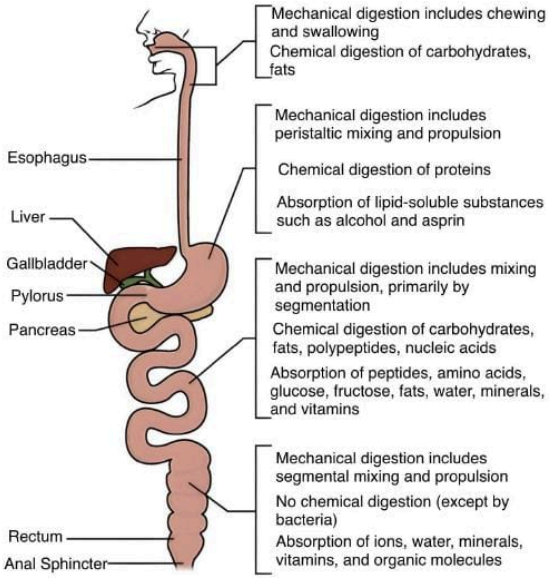


Figure 34 | Digestion and Absorption | [42] The diagram summarizes the mechanical and chemical stages of digestion along the alimentary canal, highlighting key anatomical structures and their roles in the breakdown and processing of ingested food.

The alimentary canal, from the mouth to the anus, is a complex system where the processes of digestion and absorption play critical roles in breaking down ingested food and extracting nutrients for bodily functions.

Mechanical breakdown begins with chewing, while salivary enzymes initiate the chemical digestion of starches. The resultant bolus is formed and swallowed into the esophagus. Peristalsis propels the bolus down to the stomach. Gastric glands secrete gastric juice, primarily containing hydrochloric acid and pepsin, initiating protein digestion. Mechanical churning breaks down food into chyme. Pancreatic enzymes, bile, and intestinal enzymes further digest chyme within the small intestine. Villi and microvilli increase surface area for absorption. The small intestine absorbs about 90% of ingested food, emphasizing its crucial role. Limited digestion occurs due to bacterial activity within the large intestine. Water and electrolytes are absorbed, forming semisolid feces. The defecation reflex signals the elimination of feces. Coordination between different regions of the alimentary canal ensures the efficient processing of ingested material, supporting nutrient absorption and waste elimination.

Absorption of Water

On a daily basis, approximately nine liters of fluid enter the small intestine. Of this, around 2.3 liters come from ingested foods and beverages, while the remainder is contributed by gastrointestinal secretions. About 90 percent of this water is absorbed within the small intestine. The driving force behind water absorption is the concentration gradient. Specifically, the concentration of water is higher in the chyme than in the epithelial cells of the small intestine. Consequently, water moves down its concentration gradient, flowing from the chyme into the cells. This process ensures efficient absorption of the majority of ingested fluids. It is important to note that the remaining water is further absorbed in the colon, completing the absorption process and contributing to the formation of semisolid feces as the residue progresses through the large intestine (Figure 34).[9]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 15.12: Summary of Digestion and Absorption in the Alimentary Canal is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

15.13: References

1. Hall, J. E., & Hall, M. E. (2021). *Guyton and Hall textbook of medical physiology* (14th ed.). Elsevier.

2. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 23.2 Components of the Digestive System. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240603.181933/resources/abe85277d60c52f85be133e1b5ddc40aea009e1c] Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

3. Marieb, E. N., & Hoehn, K. (2019). *Human anatomy & physiology* (11th ed.). Pearson.

4. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). FFigure 23.6 Digestive Processes. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240603.181933/resources/a8fd4c3ee096f086722dbad7b844e1d6fef62b68] Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

5. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 23.3 Layers of the Alimentary Canal. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240603.181933/resources/cfa0a944ef93cbf70c104f57c04cbd286ca74e3b] Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

6. Rehua. (2012, June 6). General organization of the GI tract [Diagram]. Wikimedia Commons. [https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/fb/GI_Organization.svg]

7. Boumphreyfr. (2009, June 3). Illustration of neural control of gut wall by sympathetic, parasympathetic and Enteric Nervous system. Wikimedia Commons. [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Neural_control_gut.png]

8. Barrett, K. E., Barman, S. M., Boitano, S., & Brooks, H. L. (2022). *Ganong's review of medical physiology* (26th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.

9. Boron, W. F., & Boulpaep, E. L. (2017). *Medical physiology: Principles for clinical medicine* (3rd ed.). Elsevier.

10. Smart Servier. (2016). Peristalsis [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/1/18/Digestive_system_-_Peristalsis_3_--_Smart-Servier.png

https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Digestive_system_-_Peristalsis_1_--_Smart-Servier.png

https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Digestive_system_-_Peristalsis_2_--_Smart-Servier.png

11. Auteri, M., Zizzo, M. G., & Serio, R. (2015). GABA and GABA receptors in the gastrointestinal tract: From motility to inflammation. *Neuropharmacology, 88,* 35–45. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuropharm.2014.07.005

12. Cullen, J. M., & Cascella, M. (n.d.). *Physiology, enkephalin*. StatPearls. Retrieved [11/15/2024], from https://www.statpearls.com

13. Blausen.com staff. (2014). Medical gallery of Blausen Medical 2014. WikiJournal of Medicine, 1(2). [https://doi.org/10.15347/wjm/2014.010. ISSN 2002-4436. https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/df/Blausen_0780_SalivaryGlands.png]

14. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 23.12 Pharynx. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240603.181933/resources/8e16aba16630df9f95f3d4cf8a6544d7d249399d]. Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

15. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 23.13 Esophagus . In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240603.181933/resources/1f9dc4ca1bb93d5e0d4c0b95a5daf1029dbac827] Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

16. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 23.14 Deglutition . In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240603.181933/resources/01c4e52cf98957ffa76861e4e36a4bb35d3f8e32] Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

17. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 23.15 Stomach. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240603.181933/resources/5af25f8d997d4e131865ab78ac754796ffcaecfc] Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

18. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 23.16 Histology of the Stomach. OpenStax. Retrieved from [https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240603.181933/resources/6d88b0ea24be4b818870fa0c858c61f370184854] Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

19. Salahalden, M. (2023). Parietal cells of the stomach [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/eb/Parietal_cell_of_the_stomach.jpg

20. Betts, J. G., et al. (2022). Figure 23.17 The Three Phases of Gastric Secretion. OpenStax. Retrieved from https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20240603.181933/resources/84b4d40e2577581f0caa243606a4092a82b32ea5. Licensed under CC BY 4.0.

21. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 23.24 Accessory Organs. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/182e0270dca32d6c112dddd17fb7aef5a9fffa42

22. Pandol, S. J. (2010). *The Exocrine Pancreas*. Morgan & Claypool Life Sciences. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK54133/

23. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 23.26 Exocrine and Endocrine Pancreas. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/65de80fe9396d266a09772aa978551d22566f5d8

24. Chandra R, Liddle RA. Neural and hormonal regulation of pancreatic secretion. Curr Opin Gastroenterol. 2009 Sep;25(5):441-6. doi: 10.1097/MOG.0b013e32832e9c41. PMID: 19535978; PMCID: PMC2838392.

25. Harkins JM, Ahmad B. Anatomy, Abdomen and Pelvis, Portal Venous System (Hepatic Portal System) [Updated 2023 Aug 8]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK554589/

26. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 23.25 Microscopic Anatomy of the Liver. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/d626425e45148eb41c740661057f2b36f0aaef37

27. Hundt M, Basit H, John S. Physiology, Bile Secretion. [Updated 2022 Sep 26]. In: StatPearls [Internet]. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing; 2025 Jan-. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK470209/

28. Trefts E, Gannon M, Wasserman DH. The liver. Curr Biol. 2017 Nov 6;27(21):R1147-R1151. doi: 10.1016/j.cub.2017.09.019. PMID: 29112863; PMCID: PMC5897118.

29. Jones, M. W., Hannoodee, S., & Young, M. (2025). Anatomy, Abdomen and Pelvis: Gallbladder. In *StatPearls*. Treasure Island (FL): StatPearls Publishing.

30. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 23.27 Gallbladder. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/06e02b521c8c634a2768518ea1ddaf1816823aef

31. Blausen.com staff. (2014). Small intestine [Image]. In *Medical gallery of Blausen Medical 2014*. *WikiJournal of Medicine, 1*(2). https://doi.org/10.15347/wjm/2014.010

32. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 23.19 Histology of the Small Intestine. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/8eb3433934b5eb137942d3290028e4dad8332e1d

33. Silverthorn, D. U. (2019). *Human Physiology: An Integrated Approach* (8th ed.). Pearson.

34. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 23.20 Segmentation. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/5d96eb41fcdfc0f7134331cec1795295aa0cb659

35. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 23.29 Carbohydrate Digestion. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/107362a1a09bafad94581b66928ea133539858e0

36. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 23.30 Digestion of Protein. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/ef81412b04c05f890b5387aa17784ae88fa04f22

37. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 23.33 Lipid Absorption. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/ee5d4d78da8a6418debe94999ced693451cd30c0

38. Blausen.com staff. (2014). The large intestine [Image]. In *Medical gallery of Blausen Medical 2014*. *WikiJournal of Medicine, 1*(2). https://doi.org/10.15347/wjm/2014.010 https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/2/2d/Blausen_0604_LargeIntestine2.png

39. Drake, R. L., Vogl, A. W., & Mitchell, A. W. M. (2020). *Gray's Anatomy for Students* (4th ed.). Elsevier.

40. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 23.32 Digestive Secretions and Absorption of Water. In Anatomy and Physiology 2e. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/9435f708b8ca8f90c01ef22fa59df6b19524052f

41. Boumphreyfr. (2009). Voluntary and parasympathetic pathways of defecation reflex [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/bd/Defecation_reflex.png

42. https://openstax.org/books/anatomy-and-physiology-2e/pages/23-7-chemical-digestion-and-absorption-a-closer-look?query=digestive Figure 23.28 Digestion begins in the mouth and continues as food travels through the small intestine. Most absorption occurs in the small intestine.

This page titled 15.13: References is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

16: PHYSIOLOGY OF THE MALE AND FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEMS

16.1: Objectives
16.2: Introduction
16.3: Sexual Differentiation
16.4: Puberty
16.5: Overview of the Male Reproductive System
16.6: Overview of the Female Reproductive System
16.7: References

This page titled 16: Physiology of the Male and Female Reproductive Systems is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

16.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- Identify and name the rudimentary duct systems in the embryo that serve as precursors to the internal sex organs in males and females.
- Outline the hormonal regulation mechanisms governing spermatogenesis, highlighting key hormones involved in the process.
- Differentiate the functions of the interstitial cells of Leydig and Sertoli cells, elucidating their respective roles in the male reproductive system.
- Analyze the linked negative feedback loops controlling interactions among the hypothalamus, anterior pituitary, and gonads, and identify the hormones contributing to negative feedback in these regulatory circuits.
- Describe the physiological components of the normal male sexual response, including the key stages and hormonal influences.
- Outline the normal process of oocyte maturation, encompassing ovulation and fertilization, within the human ovary.
- Explain the involvement of hypothalamic and anterior pituitary hormones in the control of ovarian events and how ovarian hormones contribute to uterine changes during the menstrual cycle.
- Describe the positive feedback loop responsible for maintaining the timing of ovulation in the middle of the menstrual cycle.
- Demonstrate the ability to correlate ovarian events with uterine changes on specific days (day 1, day 7, day 14, and day 25) of the menstrual cycle.
- Investigate the anatomical and hormonal changes leading to menopause, understanding the cessation of reproductive functions in females.

This page titled 16.1: Objectives is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

16.2: Introduction

The initiation of reproductive system development commences shortly following the fertilization of the egg, marking the onset of primordial gonadal formation approximately one-month post-conception. Subsequent to this early phase, reproductive development persists in utero; however, the period between infancy and puberty is characterized by minimal alterations in the reproductive system.

This page titled 16.2: Introduction is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

16.3: Sexual Differentiation

In the embryonic phase, spanning the initial eight weeks, genetic distinctions between males and females are discernible despite their morphological uniformity (Figure 1). Bipotential gonads, capable of evolving into either male or female sexual organs, are linked to the cloaca— an extension of the primitive gut—via **Müllerian ducts** and **Wolffian ducts**. The process of sexual differentiation unfolds through a series of events during this period.

Development of the Sexual Organs in the Embryo and Fetus

Devoid of testosterone, all fertilized eggs would mature into females. Exposure to a sequential series of factors initiated by a singular gene on the Y chromosome is imperative to acquire a male phenotype. This gene, known as the **Sex-determining Region of the Y chromosome** (**SRY**), plays a pivotal role. As females lack the Y chromosome, specifically the SRY gene, the absence of this genetic component designates an individual as female.

In both male and female embryos, a shared cohort of cells retains the potential to differentiate into either male or female gonads (**bipotential**). The SRY gene orchestrates the activation of genes that facilitate **testes** development while concurrently suppressing genes crucial for female development. Within this SRY-triggered cascade, germ cells in the bipotential gonads differentiate into **spermatogonia**. In the absence of SRY, distinct genes are expressed, leading to the formation of **oogonia** and the development of **primordial follicles** in the primitive **ovary**.

Following testes formation, **Leydig cells** commence **testosteron**e secretion which exerts influence on bipotential tissues, directing them to develop into male reproductive structures. For instance, cells with the potential to form either the **glans penis** or the **glans clitoris**, under testosterone exposure, differentiate into the glans penis. In the absence of testosterone, these cells differentiate into the glans clitoris. However, not all tissues within the reproductive tract exhibit bipotentiality. The internal reproductive structures—such as the **uterus**, **uterine tubes**, and part of the **vagina** in females, and the **epididymis**, **ductus deferens**, and **seminal vesicles** in males—originate from one of two rudimentary duct systems in the embryo. Proper reproductive function necessitates the appropriate development of one set of these ducts while the other set undergoes degradation. In males, **Mullerian inhibiting factor** (**MIF**) secreted by **sustentacular cells** triggers the degradation of the female duct, the Müllerian duct. Concurrently, testosterone secretion stimulates the growth of the male reproductive tract, the Wolffian duct (Figure 1). In the absence of MIF, the Müllerian duct will develop. The absence of testosterone leads to the degradation of the Wolffian duct, resulting in the development of a female offspring.[1]

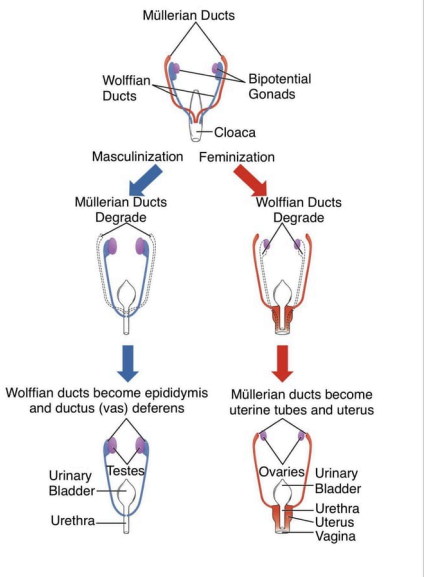


Figure 1 | Sexual Differentiation | [2] Initially, embryos possess bipotential gonads, Wolffian ducts, Müllerian ducts, and a cloaca. Masculinizing signals degrade the Müllerian ducts and the Wolffian ducts differentiate into the epididymis and ductus (vas)

deferens which lead to male internal genitalia with testes, bladder, and urethra. In the absence of these signals (feminization), the Wolffian ducts regress, and the Müllerian ducts develop into the uterine tubes and uterus, forming female internal genitalia including ovaries, uterus, vagina, urinary bladder, and urethra.

This page titled 16.3: Sexual Differentiation is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

16.4: Puberty

Puberty marks the stage of sexual maturity when individuals undergo distinctive physiological changes. While the outcomes of puberty differ between boys and girls, the hormonal orchestration of this process exhibits striking similarities. Additionally, despite individual variations in the timing of these events, the sequential pattern of changes remains predictable for male and female adolescents. Illustrated in Figure 2 is a synchronized release of hormones, including **gonadotropin-releasing hormone** (**GnRH**) from the hypothalamus, **luteinizing hormone** (**LH**) and **follicle-stimulating hormone** (**FSH**) from the anterior pituitary, and either testosterone or **estrogen** from the gonads. This orchestrated hormonal interplay governs the maturation of reproductive systems and the emergence of secondary sex characteristics.

Commencing around the age of eight or nine, the detectable production of LH signifies the onset of puberty. However, the manifestation of physical changes lags behind the release of LH by several years. In pre-pubertal children, a highly sensitive negative feedback system in the hypothalamus and pituitary maintains low GnRH, LH, and FSH production, as even minimal concentrations of androgens or estrogens elicit negative feedback.

Approaching puberty, two significant changes in sensitivity transpire. Firstly, a reduction in sensitivity in the hypothalamus and pituitary to negative feedback necessitates higher concentrations of sex steroid hormones to suppress the production of LH and FSH. Secondly, there is an augmentation in the sensitivity of the gonads to FSH and LH signals, signifying increased responsiveness of adult gonads compared to those of children. These changes contribute to a gradual elevation in LH and FSH levels, fostering the enlargement and maturation of gonads. Consequently, higher levels of sex hormones are secreted, initiating the processes of **spermatogenesis** and **folliculogenesis**.[3]

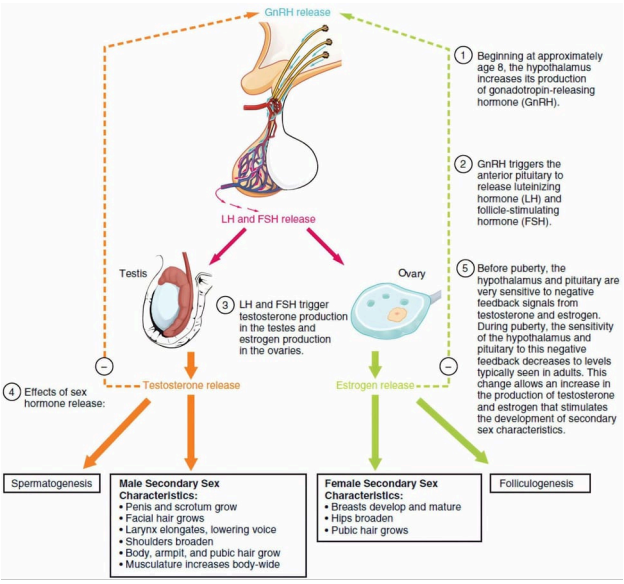


Figure 2 | Hormones of Puberty | [4] Around age eight, the hypothalamus increases the secretion of gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH), which stimulates the anterior pituitary to release luteinizing hormone (LH) and follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH). These hormones act on the gonads—testes in males and ovaries in females—to stimulate the production of testosterone and estrogen, respectively. These sex hormones promote the development of secondary sex characteristics and support spermatogenesis in males and folliculogenesis in females. Before puberty, the hypothalamus and pituitary are highly sensitive to negative feedback from sex hormones, suppressing their production. During puberty, this sensitivity decreases, allowing hormone levels to rise.

The onset of puberty is influenced not only by chronological age but also by various factors, including genetics, environment, and psychological stress. Nutrition emerges as a particularly significant influence, with historical data revealing a substantial impact on the age of **menarche** (the first menstrual cycle) in girls in the United States. Over time, improved and more consistent nutrition has contributed to a notable decrease in the average age of menarche, dropping from approximately 17 years in 1860 to the current age of around 12.75 years as of 1960.[5]

Studies highlight a connection between puberty onset and the amount of stored fat, with a more pronounced effect observed in girls, although it has been documented in both sexes. The relationship between body fat and the hormone **leptin**, secreted by adipocytes, plays a pivotal role in determining the timing of menarche. Notably, lean and highly active individuals, such as gymnasts, often experience a delay in the onset of puberty, underscoring the intricate interplay between nutritional status, physical activity, and the maturation of reproductive processes.[6]

Signs of Puberty

The development and function of secondary sexual characteristics are influenced by variations in sex steroid hormone concentrations between the sexes. Table 1 provides examples of these secondary sexual characteristics.

Table 1 | *Development of the Secondary Sexual Characteristics* |

Male	Female
Increased larynx size and deepening of the voice	Deposition of fat, predominantly in breasts and hips
Increased muscular development	Breast development
Growth of facial, axillary, and pubic hair, and increased growth of body hair	Broadening of the pelvis and growth of axillary and pubic hair

Initiating the sequence, the first discernible change in girls typically involves the development of breast tissue. Subsequently, the growth of axillary and pubic hair follows suit. Around the ages of 9 to 11, a growth spurt ensues, lasting two years or more, during which a girl's height may increase by approximately 3 inches per year. The subsequent milestone in puberty is menarche, marking the onset of menstruation. Conversely, in boys, the commencement of puberty is often heralded by the growth of the testes, succeeded by the growth and pigmentation of the scrotum and the enlargement of the penis. Subsequent phases encompass the growth of hair in areas such as the armpits, pubic region, chest, and face. Testosterone stimulates the growth of the larynx and the thickening and elongation of the vocal folds, resulting in a noticeable deepening of the voice. The advent of the first **ejaculation** typically occurs around the age of 15, albeit with considerable variability among individual boys. Unlike the early growth spurt observed in females, the male growth spurt manifests toward the conclusion of puberty, around the ages of 11 to 13. During this period, a boy's height can experience a substantial increase of up to 4 inches per year. Notably, in certain males, pubertal development may extend into the early 20s, emphasizing the considerable diversity in the duration and timeline of puberty among individuals.[7-8]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 16.4: Puberty is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

16.5: Overview of the Male Reproductive System

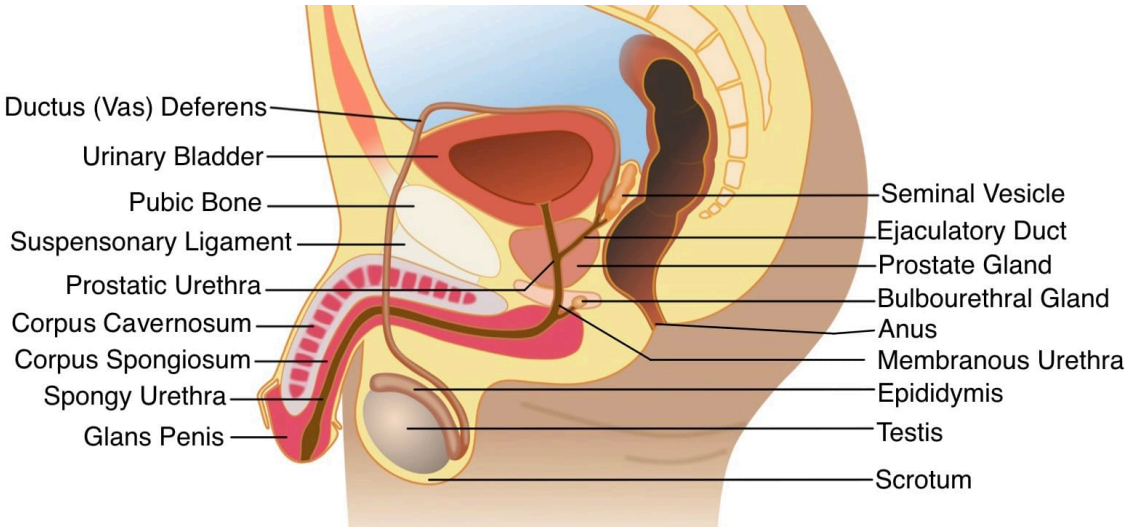


Figure 3 | Male Reproductive System | [9] This sagittal section illustrates the anatomy of the male reproductive system, showing both reproductive and urinary structures. The ductus (vas) deferens transports sperm from the epididymis. The urinary bladder is positioned superior to the prostate gland and the pubic bone. The suspensory ligament supports the penis and maintains position close to the pubic bone. The urethra is divided into three regions. The prostatic urethra runs through the prostate gland and connects to the ejaculatory duct.The membranous urethra passes through the pelvic floor before continuing as the spongy urethra. The spongy urethra is surrounded by the corpus spongiosum and a layer of corpus cavernosum which terminates at the glans penis. The membranous urethra passes through the pelvic floor before continuing as the spongy urethra. The seminal vesicle is located posterior to the urinary bladder and the bulbourethral glands are located inferiorly to the prostate gland. The epididymis stores sperm, which is produced in the testis, both housed within the scrotum. The anus is shown as part of the surrounding anatomy.

In human reproduction, a **gamete** is a specialized sex cell containing 23 chromosomes, precisely half the number in somatic cells. Upon fertilization, the chromosomes from a male gamete, known as a **sperm** or **spermatozoon**, merge with those from a female gamete, termed an **oocyte**. The primary function of the male reproductive system is the production of sperm and their transfer to the female reproductive tract. Central to this process are the paired testes which are responsible for the generation of both sperm and **androgens**, with testosterone being the most significant androgen in humans. Multiple accessory organs and ducts play a crucial role in sperm maturation and facilitate the transport of sperm and other seminal components to the penis, which serves as the conduit for delivering sperm to the female reproductive tract.

The key structures of the male reproductive system encompass the testes, epididymides, penis, and various ducts and glands involved in the production and conveyance of **semen** (Figure 3). Sperms exit the scrotum through the **ductus deferens**, also called the **vas deferens**, bundled together with blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, and nerves in the **spermatic cord** (see Figure 4). Additional contributions to semen are made by the **seminal vesicles** and the **prostate gland**, which contribute fluids that mix with sperm, collectively forming semen.

The Testes

The testes, singularly referred to as the testis, constitute the male gonads or reproductive organs. Notably, the testes remain active and contribute to reproductive processes throughout the entire lifespan of the male, which is in contrast to the female reproductive system, where reproductive age is finite and characterized by a defined period of fertility.

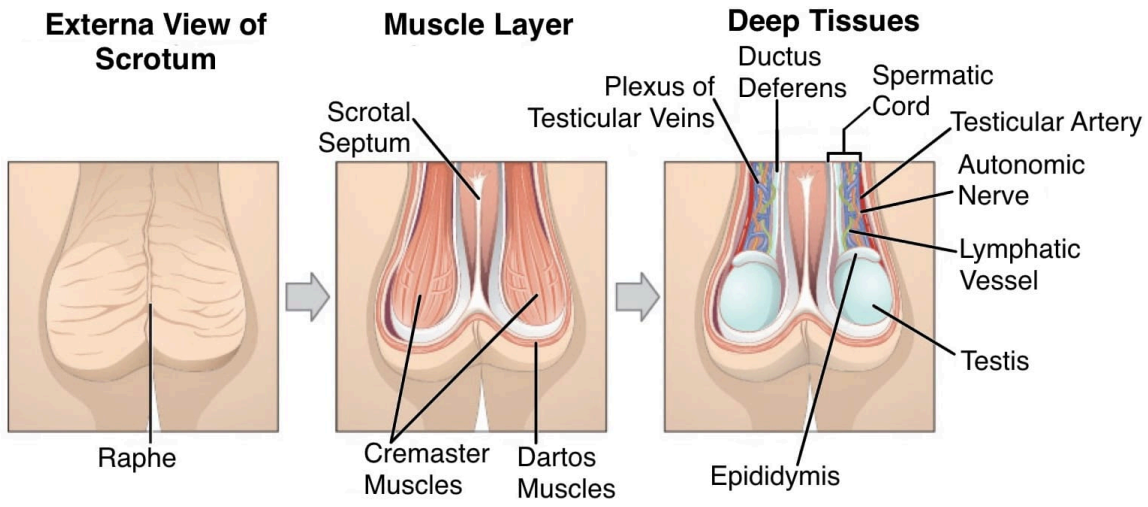


Figure 4 | The Scrotum and Testes | [10] This anterior view shows the structures of the scrotum and testes. The external view shows the raphe which is a visible line on the surface that marks the underlying scrotal septum which divides the scrotum into two compartments. The muscle layer includes the cremaster muscles and the dartos muscles. The deep tissue layer reveals the internal structures, including the testis and epididymis, as well as the ductus deferens. Surrounding these are other structures including the spermatic cord which encloses the plexus of testicular veins, testicular artery, lymphatic vessels, and autonomic nerves.

During the seventh month of the developmental phase of a male fetus, the **descent of the testes** occurs. This process involves the movement of each testis through the abdominal musculature, ultimately descending into the scrotal cavity (Figure 4). The descent of the testes is a developmental milestone in male reproductive anatomy. However, in cases where one or both of the testes fail to complete this descent into the scrotum before birth, a medical condition known as **cryptorchidism** is diagnosed. This condition requires attention and, in some cases, medical intervention to address the proper positioning of the testes within the scrotum, as it is crucial for normal reproductive development and function.

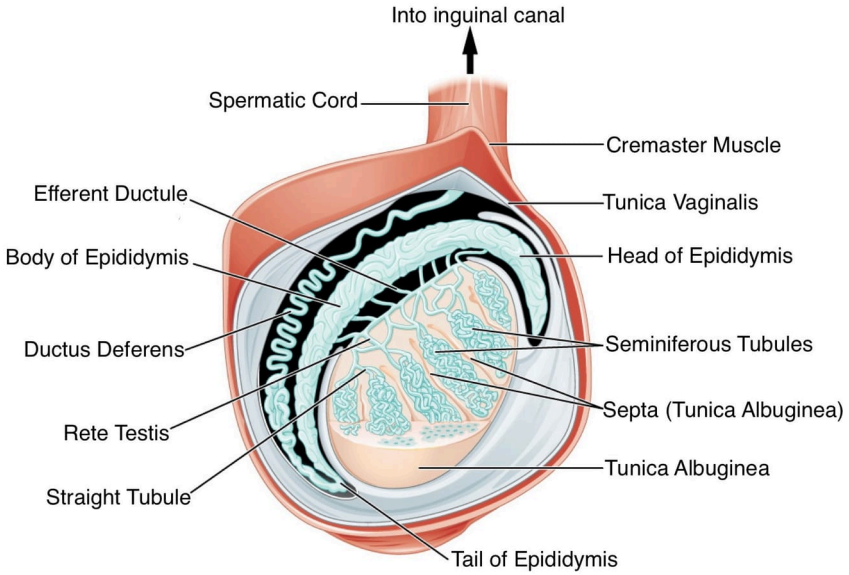


Figure 5 | Anatomy of the Testis | [11] This sagittal view shows the seminiferous tubules, the site of sperm production. The spermatic cord extends into the inguinal canal and contains the ductus deferens. A layer of cremaster muscle surrounds another layer known as the tunica vaginalis which covers the testis. The sperm from the seminiferous tubules move through the straight tubules to the rete testis, and exits via the efferent ductules into the head, body, and tail of the epididymis for maturation and storage. The tunica albuginea is the fibrous capsule enclosing the testis, and its inward folds form the septa.

The primary anatomical components of each testis are the tightly coiled **seminiferous tubules**, forming most of the testicular structure. These tubules play a central role in the production of sperm cells. As sperms undergo development within the seminiferous tubules, they are subsequently released into the lumen. From here, the sperms transition into the **straight tubules**, also called **tubuli recti**, and further progress into an intricate network of tubules termed the **rete testes** (Figure 5).

The journey of sperms continues as they exit the rete testes and the testis itself through approximately 15 to 20 **efferent ductules**. These ductules traverse the **tunica albuginea**, a dense fibrous layer that encases the testis. The efferent ductules serve as conduits for transporting sperms out of the testicular structure.

Interstitial cells, or Leydig cells, are situated in small connective tissue spaces between the tubules. These cells play a pivotal role in the production of testosterone, a key hormone that regulates various aspects of male reproductive physiology and secondary sexual characteristics.

Sertoli Cells

Enveloping all stages of developing sperm cells are elongated and branching Sertoli cells, which function as supporting cells known as sustentacular cells or **sustenocytes**, typically found in epithelial tissue. These specialized cells extend from the peripheral basement membrane of the seminiferous tubules to the lumen, providing essential physical support throughout the sperm development process. Sertoli cells serve multiple crucial roles in supporting spermatogenesis. They secrete signaling molecules such as **androgen-binding protein** and MIF and express receptors for androgens and FSH. They also release a hormone called **inhibin** that acts on the anterior pituitary to inhibit the secretion of FSH release. This regulation ensures proper spermatogenesis and prevents overstimulation of the seminiferous tubules. Furthermore, Sertoli cells facilitate the transfer of nutrients and other essential substances from the blood to the developing sperm cells.

The presence of tight junctions between sustentacular cells gives rise to the **blood-testis barrier**. This barrier serves a dual purpose: it prevents blood-borne substances from reaching the germ cells, ensuring their protected environment, and simultaneously prevents surface antigens on developing germ cells from entering the bloodstream. This barrier is essential in averting an autoimmune response that might be triggered by the release of surface antigens, thus maintaining the integrity and immunological isolation of the developing sperm cells.

Germ Cells

Located along the basement membrane inside the tubule are the stem cells of the testis called **spermatogonia** (singular = **spermatogonium**). They contribute to the ongoing process of spermatogenesis by undergoing sequential divisions, resulting in the formation of **primary** and **secondary spermatocytes**. Subsequent transformations lead to the production of **spermatids**, which ultimately mature into functional sperm cells (Figure 6). The entirety of this developmental cascade, commencing with spermatogonia and culminating in the generation of sperm, is collectively termed spermatogenesis.

Spermatogenesis

Spermatogenesis is an intricate process that begins at puberty and continues throughout a man's life. A complete spermatogenesis cycle, from spermatogonia to fully formed sperm, spans approximately 64 days. The commencement of a new cycle takes place roughly every 16 days, although the synchronization of this timing varies among the seminiferous tubules. Notably, sperm counts, representing the total number of sperm a man produces, gradually decrease after the age of 35. Spermatogenesis commences with the mitotic division of diploid spermatogonia (see Figure 6). Each spermatogonium possesses a complete set of the father's genetic material, comprising 46 chromosomes. As mature gametes need to be haploid (n), containing 23 chromosomes, daughter cells of spermatogonia undergo a second cellular division through the process of meiosis.

The mitotic division of spermatogonia results in two identical diploid cells. One of these cells remains a spermatogonium, while the other transforms into a primary spermatocyte—the subsequent stage in spermatogenesis. Similar to mitosis, DNA is replicated in a primary spermatocyte, and the cell undergoes division to yield two cells with identical chromosomes—these are secondary spermatocytes. Subsequently, the second round of cell division occurs in both secondary spermatocytes, leading to the separation of chromosome pairs and the production of four haploid cells known as spermatids. Although haploid, newly formed spermatids exhibit similarities to earlier stages of spermatogenesis, featuring a round shape, central nucleus, and a significant amount of cytoplasm.

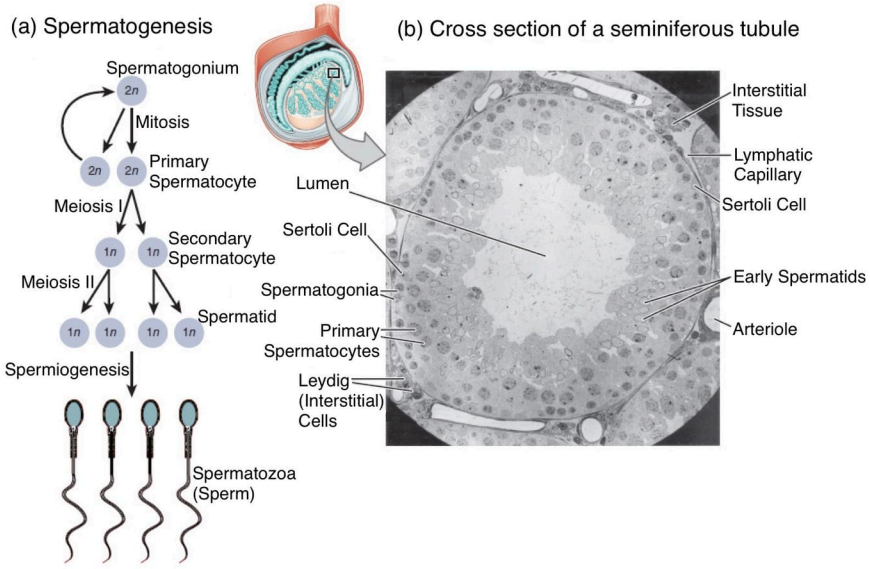


Figure 6 | Spermatogenesis | [12] (a) Mitosis of a spermatogonial stem cell involves a single cell division that results in two identical, diploid daughter cells (spermatogonia to primary spermatocyte). Meiosis has two rounds of cell division: primary spermatocyte to secondary spermatocyte, and then secondary spermatocyte to spermatid. This produces four haploid daughter cells (spermatids). (b) In this electron micrograph of a cross-section of a seminiferous tubule from a rat, the lumen is the light-shaded area in the center of the image. The location of the primary spermatocytes is near the basement membrane, and the early spermatids are approaching the lumen.

The process of **spermiogenesis** transforms these early spermatids, reducing cytoplasm and initiating the formation of the various components of a mature sperm. The final stage of germ cell formation, spermatozoa, or fully formed sperm, is achieved in the portion of the tubule nearest the lumen. Ultimately, sperms are released into the lumen and conveyed through a series of ducts in the testis toward the epididymis for the subsequent phase of sperm maturation.

Approximately 100 to 300 million sperm are produced each day. The sperm cell's head is predominantly covered by a structure called the **acrosome**, resembling a "cap," which contains **hyaluronidase** and proteolytic enzymes crucial for preparing sperm for participation in fertilization (Figure 7). Within the female reproductive tract, a specific process called **capacitation** occurs, involving alterations to the sperm structure, particularly at the acrosome, to facilitate fertilization. These changes include the loss of excess cholesterol within the acrosomal membrane, thinning the membrane, and an increase in permeability to calcium ions, which, through the activation of signal transduction mechanisms, may enhance the activity of the flagellum, allowing for powerful whiplash motion.

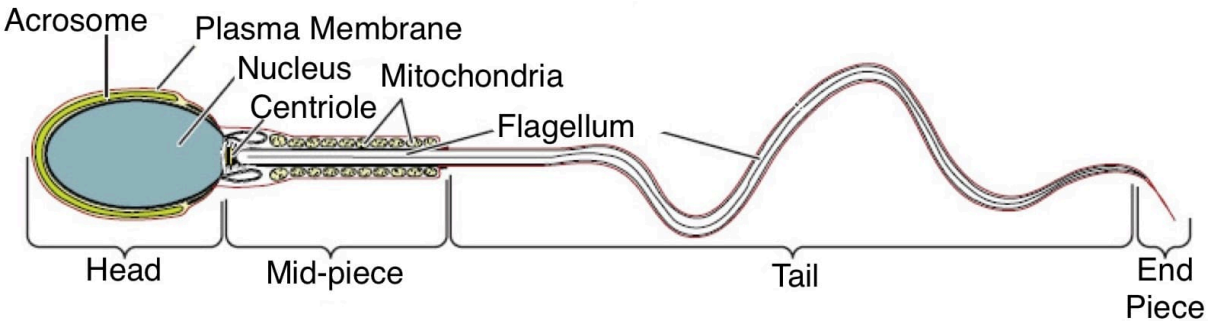


Figure 7 | Sperm Cells | [13] Sperm cells are divided into a head, containing DNA; a mid-piece, containing mitochondria; and a tail, providing motility.

Sperm Transport and the Duct System

For successful fertilization of an egg, sperm undergo a journey starting from the seminiferous tubules within the testes. From there, they move through the epididymis, progressing into the ductus deferens, which concludes as the **ejaculatory duct** upon its union with the duct of the seminal vesicle. At this juncture, sperm encounter secretions from the seminal vesicle, marking an essential phase in the formation of semen.

Starting from the lumen of the seminiferous tubules, the initially immotile sperm find themselves enveloped in testicular fluid, embarking on a journey to the epididymis (plural = epididymides). The epididymis, a coiled tube intricately connected to the testis, serves as a crucial site where newly formed sperm undergo continuous maturation. Despite its tightly coiled state, the epididymis would stretch to approximately 6 meters (20 feet) if extended in a straight line.

Upon entering the head of the epididymis, sperm undergo movement primarily facilitated by the contraction of smooth muscles lining the epididymal tubes. Progressing along the length of the epididymis, sperm continue to mature, gaining the capacity to move independently. The more mature sperm are then stored in the tail of the epididymis until the occurrence of ejaculation. Sperms can be housed in the epididymis for two to three months. The ultimate maturation of sperm transpires within the female reproductive tract as capacitation.

During the process of ejaculation, sperm exit the tail of the epididymis and are propelled by the contraction of smooth muscles towards the ductus deferens. As the ductus deferens are accessible within the scrotum, a surgical method for interrupting sperm delivery, known as **vasectomy**, involves cutting and sealing a small section of the ductus deferens, providing an effective form of male birth control.

Originating from each epididymis, the ductus deferens extend superiorly into the abdominal cavity through the inguinal canal in the abdominal wall. Progressing posteriorly to the pelvic cavity, it concludes posterior to the bladder, which expands in a region termed the **ampulla**, meaning "flask."

The ejaculatory duct, a concise passageway, promptly merges with the duct of the prostate to receive prostatic secretions. This composite structure, now identified as the **urethra**, specifically the **prostatic urethra**, continues its course. It transforms into the **membranous urethra** as it traverses through the body cavity and eventually extends along the length of the penis, where it adopts the name **penile urethra**. The penile urethra culminates at the **glans penis**, ultimately opening to the exterior. This intricate pathway ensures the transport of sperm and the amalgamation of seminal fluids, facilitating their release during ejaculation and the potential for fertilization.

The sperm constitute only about five percent of the final volume of semen, the dense, milky fluid ejaculated by males. The majority of semen is produced by the seminal vesicles and the prostate, both contributing essential components to the overall composition of ejaculated semen.

The Seminal Vesicles

During ejaculation, as sperm traverse through the ampulla of the ductus deferens, they encounter fluid from the corresponding seminal vesicle (Figure 3). The seminal vesicles, which are paired glands, contribute roughly 60 percent of the total semen volume. The fluid from the seminal vesicles is rich in fructose, providing sperm mitochondria with the necessary substrate to generate ATP, facilitating their movement through the female reproductive tract. Additionally, the seminal vesicle fluid contains citric acid as an additional energy source, along with prostaglandins and fibrinogen. The mixture of fluid, now containing both sperm and seminal vesicle secretions, proceeds into the associated ejaculatory duct. The paired ejaculatory ducts serve as conduits for transporting the seminal fluid into the subsequent structure, the prostate gland.

The Prostate Gland

The prostate gland secretes a slightly alkaline liquid, helping to neutralize the acidic environment of the female reproductive tract, which enhances sperm survival. The secretion contains high concentrations of citrate, a key nutrient for sperm metabolism, and zinc, which has antimicrobial properties and plays a role in stabilizing sperm DNA. The fluid is rich in proteins such as **prostate-specific antigen** (**PSA**), which helps liquefy semen, and enzymes like **acid phosphatase**, contributing to its biochemical activity. Other components include small amounts of amino acids, proteins, and lipids, which further support sperm function. The prostate also produces glycoproteins and extracellular vesicles, which are believed to aid in communication between cells and sperm motility. This composition is crucial for the initial coagulation and subsequent decoagulation of semen following ejaculation. The

transient thickening of semen aids in retaining it within the female reproductive tract, providing the necessary time for sperm to utilize the fructose supplied by seminal vesicle secretions. Once the semen regains its fluid state, sperm can progress farther into the female reproductive tract. The prostate gland undergoes a natural enlargement, doubling in size during puberty and gradually enlarging again starting around age 25. While this enlargement typically does not cause issues, abnormal growth can lead to **benign prostatic hyperplasia** (**BPH**), resulting in the constriction of the urethra and various lower urinary tract symptoms. By age 60, around 40 percent of men experience some degree of BPH, and by age 80, this number increases to as much as 80 percent. Treatments for BPH aim to relieve urethral pressure, ranging from medication for mild to moderate symptoms to surgical intervention for severe enlargement.

Prostate cancer, the second most common cancer in men according to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), presents another disorder involving the prostate. Detection methods include medical history, a blood test, and a rectal exam for palpating the prostate and identifying unusual masses. A cancer diagnosis is confirmed through cell biopsy if a mass is detected.

The Bulbourethral Glands

The **bulbourethral glands**, also known as **Cowper's glands**, are paired structures located on either side of the urethra. These glands play a crucial role in male reproductive function by releasing a thick, alkaline fluid. This fluid serves several functions, including lubricating the end of the urethra, neutralizing the pH of the urethra, and cleansing the penile urethra of residual urine. The secretion from these accessory glands is released after the male becomes sexually aroused, typically occurring just before the release of semen. This fluid is commonly referred to as **pre-ejaculate**. It is important to note that, in addition to its lubricating properties, bulbourethral fluid may potentially pick up sperm that is already present in the urethra. As a result, there is a possibility for this fluid to contain sperm and contribute to the risk of pregnancy.

Semen

Semen, the fluid ejaculated during male orgasm, is a complex mixture derived from various reproductive glands. It combines fluids from the seminal vesicles, prostate, and bulbourethral glands, each contributing distinct components to create a unique and essential concoction for reproductive success. Seminal vesicles provide fructose, a vital energy source for sperm motility. Additionally, it contributes vitamins B, C, and E, which are essential for sperm health and function. The prostate gland secretes a milky fluid rich in electrolytes, including sodium, potassium, magnesium, calcium, chloride, and hydrogen phosphate. This fluid also contains polypeptides and proteins crucial for sperm nourishment and viability. Bulbourethral glands release a thick, alkaline fluid that lubricates the urethra, neutralizes its pH, and cleanses residual urine. Semen is slightly alkaline with a pH of around 7.5. The volume of semen ejaculated typically ranges from 2 to 6 milliliters. A healthy ejaculate should contain between 20 million and 200 million sperm. Sperm counts below 20 million are often associated with infertility, emphasizing the significance of an adequate sperm count for successful reproduction.

Hormonal Regulation of Spermatogenesis

Testosterone, a steroid hormone classified as an androgen, plays a crucial role in male physiology, spanning embryonic development to adulthood. Produced primarily by Leydig cells, it originates from cholesterol, which undergoes a series of enzymatic conversions, ultimately leading to the formation of **androstenedione**. Leydig cells contain the necessary enzymes to convert androstenedione into testosterone. Once synthesized, testosterone circulates in the bloodstream and reaches various peripheral tissues. In target tissues such as the prostate, skin, and hair follicles, a portion of testosterone is converted into **dihydrotestosterone** (**DHT**) through the action of the enzyme **5α-reductase**. DHT is a more potent androgen and plays a crucial role in the development of male secondary sexual characteristics. Additionally, testosterone can be aromatized into estrogen in certain peripheral tissues, particularly **estradiol**. Estrogen, though often considered a female sex hormone, also plays important roles in male physiology, including bone health and the regulation of reproductive functions.

In male embryos, testosterone production begins during the seventh week of development, peaking during the second trimester to drive the formation of male reproductive structures such as the prostate gland, seminal vesicles, vas deferens, penis, and scrotum. Testosterone presence or absence determines the development of genital organs, with the hormone facilitating the descent of the testes late in pregnancy. During childhood, testosterone levels remain low, rising significantly at puberty to promote the growth of reproductive and anatomical structures and initiate spermatogenesis (Figure 8). In adulthood, testosterone continues to play a crucial role in supporting spermatogenesis, muscle development, bone maintenance, secondary sexual characteristics, and libido. Daily production averages 6–7 mg, maintaining intratesticular concentrations approximately 100 times higher than those in circulation.[14-15]

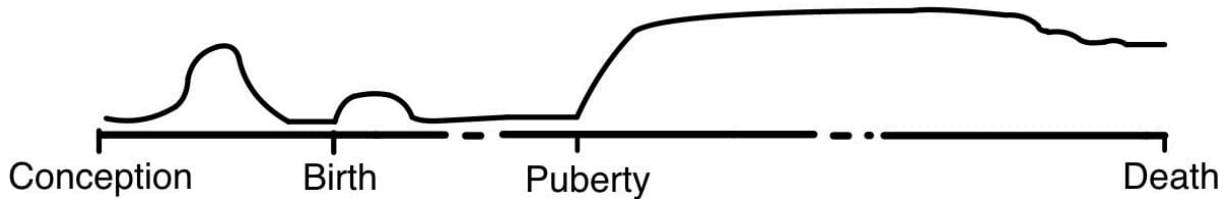


Figure 8 | Patterns of Hormone Exposure in the Male | [16] Patterns of exposure to testosterone in the male includes peaks during fetal development, shortly after birth, and a sustained rise beginning at puberty with a gradual decline in older age.

The precise regulation of testosterone concentrations across the body is essential for the proper functioning of the male reproductive system. This intricate balance is maintained through the complex interplay between the endocrine and reproductive systems, as illustrated in Figure 9.

The regulation of testosterone production by Leydig cells involves the coordination of signals from the hypothalamus and the anterior pituitary. This regulatory process begins with the hypothalamus releasing GnRH, which stimulates the anterior pituitary to release two crucial gonadotropins: LH and FSH. FSH primarily binds to Sertoli cells within the seminiferous tubules, promoting the release of androgen-binding protein that binds to testosterone, facilitating spermatogenesis. FSH also stimulates Sertoli cells to produce inhibin, which inhibits FSH release from the anterior pituitary, subsequently reducing testosterone secretion. LH binds to Leydig cells in the testes, stimulating the production of testosterone.

A negative feedback loop regulates the synthesis and secretion of FSH and LH. Low blood concentrations of testosterone stimulate the hypothalamus to release GnRH, which, in turn, prompts the anterior pituitary to secrete LH. LH stimulates Leydig cells to release testosterone. Once blood testosterone concentrations reach a critical threshold, testosterone binds to androgen receptors on the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary, inhibiting the synthesis and secretion of GnRH, LH, and FSH. When testosterone levels decline, the feedback loop restarts, promoting further testosterone production. This same process, involving FSH and inhibin, controls spermatogenesis.[15]

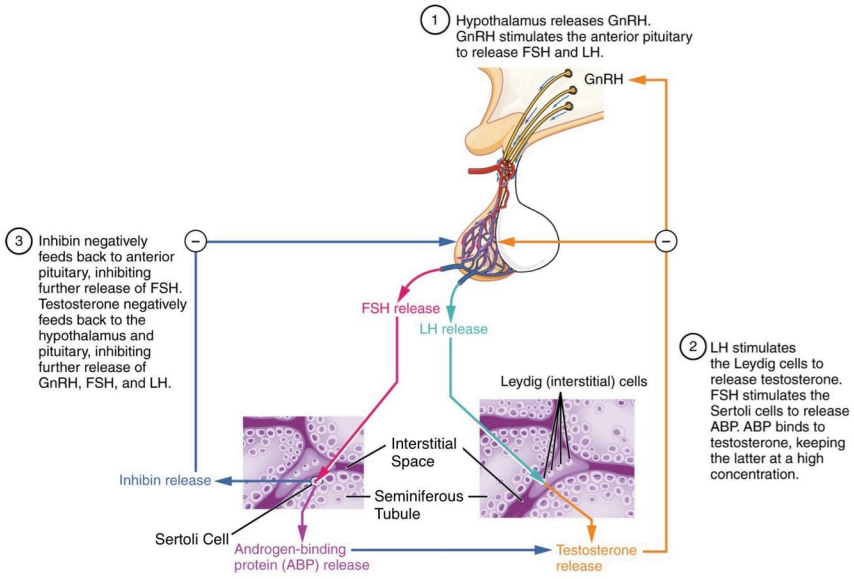


Figure 9 | Hormonal Regulation of Spermatogenesis | [17] The hypothalamus releases GnRH, which stimulates the anterior pituitary to secrete FSH and LH. LH promotes testosterone release from Leydig cells, while FSH stimulates Sertoli cells to produce androgen-binding protein (ABP) and inhibin. Testosterone and inhibin exert negative feedback on the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary to regulate hormone levels.

Male Sexual Response

The male sexual response involves the penis, composed predominantly of erectile tissue organized into **corpora cavernosa** and

corpus spongiosum (Figure 10). In the absence of sexual excitement, the erectile tissues contain minimal blood, keeping the penis small and flaccid. **Erection**, characterized by the hardening of the penis, and ejaculation, the forceful expulsion of semen, are key components of the male sexual act.

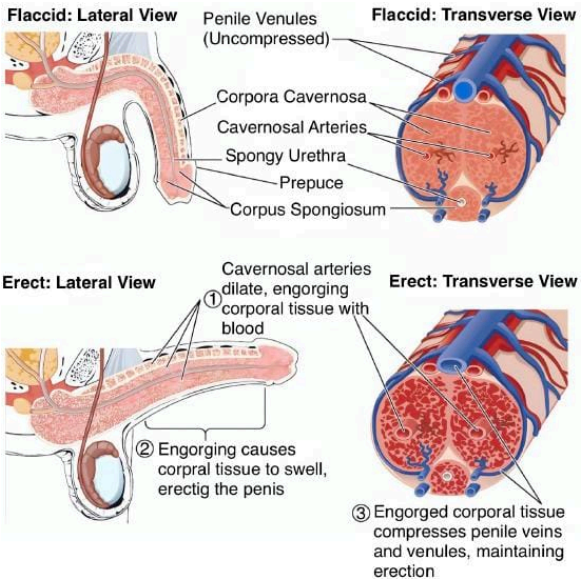


Figure 10 | Cross-Sectional Anatomy of the Penis |[18] Three columns of erectile tissue make up most of the volume of the penis. They are the central corpus spongiosum and lateral corpora cavernosa.

Erection is a complex physiological process that is primarily controlled by the parasympathetic nervous system. Sexual excitement plays a pivotal role in triggering and sustaining an erection, and this process involves intricate neurochemical and vascular mechanisms. Sexual arousal or excitement is initiated by various stimuli, such as sensory cues, thoughts, or emotions, which activate the brain's limbic system and other regions associated with sexual response. Increased sexual excitement leads to an upregulation of parasympathetic nervous system activity. The parasympathetic nervous system releases ACh, which plays a key role in mediating the signals between nerves. Within the erectile tissue of the penis, parasympathetic nerve endings release nitric oxide (NO) which acts as a signaling molecule that triggers a series of molecular events leading to smooth muscle relaxation. NO activates an enzyme called **guanylate cyclase**, which increases the production of **cyclic guanosine monophosphate** (cGMP). Elevated cGMP levels cause smooth muscle cells within the walls of the penile arterioles to relax. As smooth muscle relaxes, there is a decrease in intracellular calcium levels, allowing the arterioles in the erectile tissue to dilate (Figure 11). This vasodilation increases blood flow to the erectile tissue causing its expansion and simultaneously compressing the veins that would normally drain blood away from the penis. This compression results in a reduction of venous return, effectively trapping blood within the erectile tissue. The combination of increased blood flow due to vasodilation and reduced venous outflow due to vein compression results in the filling and engorgement of the erectile tissue. This process manifests as an erection, where the penis becomes firm, enlarged, and capable of penetration. This spinal reflex remains intact even in men with higher spinal cord injuries.[3]

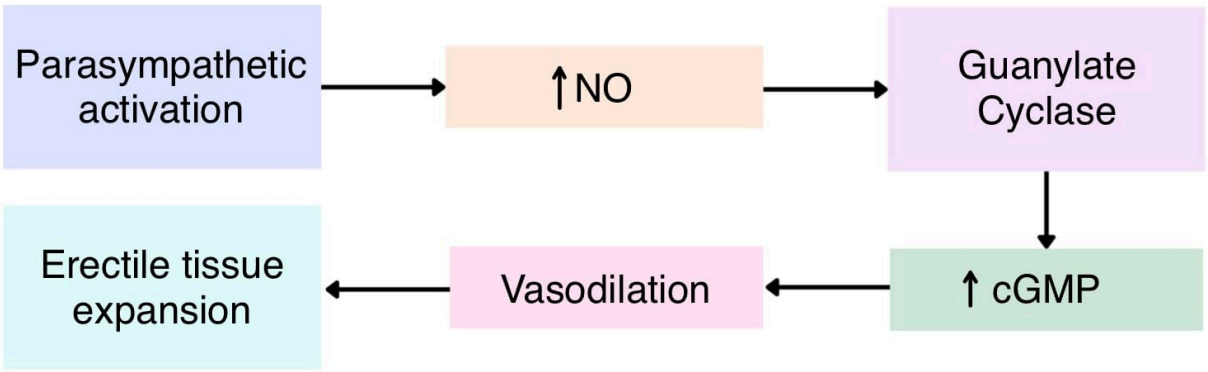


Figure 11 | Physiological Process of Penile Erection | Parasympathetic activation increases nitric oxide (NO) production, which

activates guanylate cyclase. This leads to an increase in cyclic GMP (cGMP), promoting vasodilation and resulting in the expansion of erectile tissue.

Ejaculation, also a spinal reflex, occurs when tactile stimuli intensify excitement to a critical peak. Sympathetic impulses sequentially contract smooth muscles in the prostate, reproductive ducts, and seminal vesicles, delivering prostatic fluid, sperm, and seminal vesicle fluid (semen) into the urethra during the **emission phase**. Skeletal muscles at the penis base contract rhythmically during the **expulsion phase**, forcibly expelling semen through the urethra.The **orgasmic phase**, accompanying the expulsion phase, involves rhythmic contractions, pelvic muscle throbbing, increased cardiovascular and respiratory activity, and heightened emotions. This intense pleasure, marked by release and gratification, characterizes the orgasm. The **resolution phase** follows, with sympathetic vasoconstrictor impulses subsiding the erection. A period of temporary refractoriness ensues before another erection can be triggered.[3, 15]

Erectile dysfunction (**ED**) is a condition where a man struggles to initiate or maintain an erection. The combined prevalence of minimal, moderate, and complete ED increases with age, reaching nearly 70 percent by 70 years. Aging, diabetes, vascular disease, psychiatric disorders, prostate issues, certain drug use, and low testosterone can contribute to interruptions in the vasodilation pathway, leading to erectile difficulties.[19]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 16.5: Overview of the Male Reproductive System is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

16.6: Overview of the Female Reproductive System

The female reproductive system serves the dual purpose of generating gametes and reproductive hormones, akin to the male reproductive system. Distinctively, it assumes the additional responsibilities of nurturing the developing fetus and facilitating its delivery. In contrast to the male reproductive system, the female counterpart is predominantly situated within the pelvic cavity (Figure 12). The female gamete, known as an oocyte, is a key product of this system.

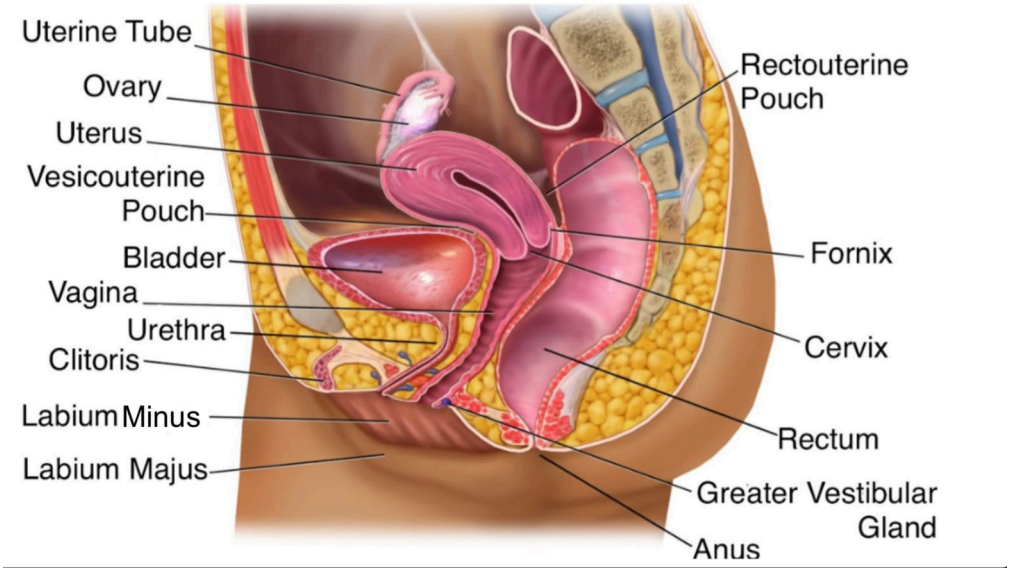


Figure 12 | Female Reproductive System | [20] This figure depicts the major structures of the female reproductive system including the ovaries, uterine tube, uterus, fornix, cervix and vagina. The folding of the peritoneum in the pelvic cavity forms two anatomical spaces which are the vesicouterine and rectouterine pouch. The external female genitalia include the labium minus and majus, clitoris and the greater vestibular gland. The urethra is connected to the urinary bladder. The rectum and anus are part of the digestive system.

The Ovaries

The ovaries are a pair of small, almond-shaped organs fundamental to the female reproductive system, primarily responsible for producing egg cells and secreting sex hormones like estrogen and progesterone. Located within the pelvic cavity, one on either side of the uterus, they are anchored by ligaments such as the ovarian and suspensory ligaments, which also carry their vital blood and nerve supply. Each ovary is encased by a superficial germinal epithelium and a tough, fibrous tunica albuginea beneath it. Functionally, the ovary is divided into two main regions: the outer cortex, which is densely packed with ovarian follicles at different developmental stages, each nurturing an immature egg surrounded by supportive cells; and the inner medulla, a vascularized core composed of loose connective tissue that houses the blood vessels, lymphatics, and nerves entering and exiting the ovary through its hilum.

Ovarian Cycle

The ovarian cycle encompasses a series of anticipated transformations involving the oocytes and ovarian follicles. Typically spanning a 28-day cycle during a woman's reproductive years, it involves two interconnected processes: **oogenesis**, which entails the generation of female gametes, and folliculogenesis, the progression and maturation of ovarian follicles.

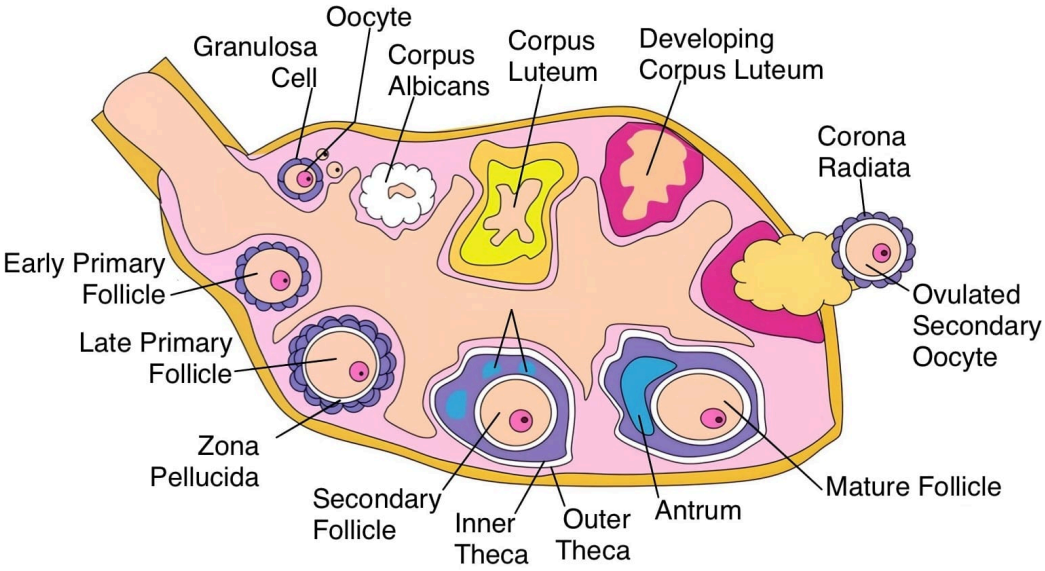


Figure 13 | Schematic Representation of the Nonpregnant Ovarian Cycle | [21] This diagram illustrates the stages of follicular development within the ovary, beginning with the early and late primary follicles, progressing to secondary and mature follicles. Following ovulation, the released secondary oocyte is surrounded by the corona radiata. The ruptured follicle transforms into the corpus luteum, and ultimately the corpus albicans if fertilization does not occur.

Oogenesis

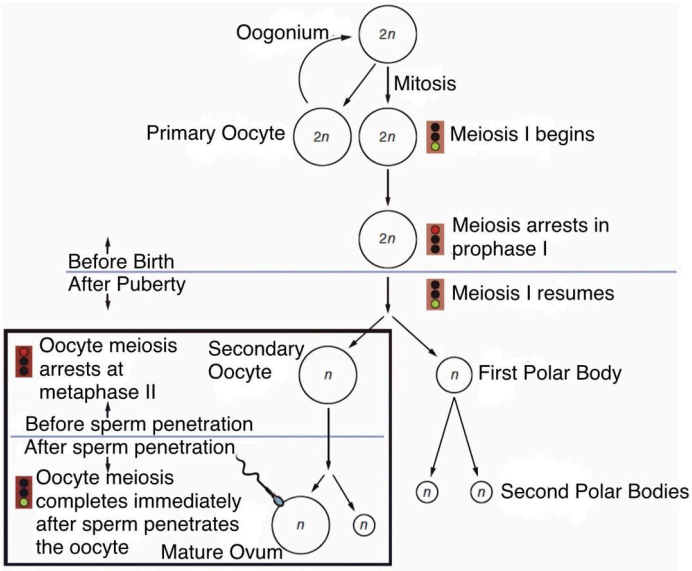


Figure 14 | Oogenesis | [22] The unequal cell division of oogenesis produces one to three polar bodies that later degrade, as well as a single haploid ovum, which is produced only if there is penetration of the secondary oocyte by a sperm cell.

Oogenesis, the process of gametogenesis in females, begins with ovarian stem cells known as **oogonia**, generated during fetal development. Unlike spermatogonia in the testis, all oogonia transform into **primary oocytes** before birth, totaling around four million. These primary oocytes enter a prophase stage of meiosis I and remain arrested until puberty (Figure 14). Over the reproductive lifespan, the number of primary oocytes gradually decreases from one to two million in infancy to approximately 400,000 at puberty, reaching zero by menopause through a process termed **atresia**.

The onset of ovulation, the release of an oocyte from the ovary, signifies the transition from puberty to reproductive maturity in

women. Throughout the reproductive years, ovulation transpires about once every 28 days. A surge in LH just before ovulation prompts the resumption of meiosis in a primary oocyte, leading to the transformation into a secondary oocyte. However, the resulting cell division is unequal, yielding a larger **secondary oocyte** and a smaller **first polar body**, which may or may not complete meiosis before disintegration.

The diploid secondary oocyte, to become an **ovum** (haploid female gamete), requires successful penetration by a sperm. If fertilization occurs, meiosis II resumes, producing a haploid ovum. At the moment of fertilization by a sperm, the ovum transforms into the first diploid cell of the new offspring, known as a **zygote**. Consequently, the ovum serves as a brief, transitional, haploid stage between the diploid oocyte and the diploid zygote.

Folliculogenesis

Ovarian follicles house oocytes along with their supporting cells and progress through a developmental process known as folliculogenesis. This process typically results in the ovulation of a single follicle approximately every 28 days, while numerous other follicles undergo degeneration. This degeneration, known as atresia, can occur at any stage of follicular development. At birth, a female has one to two million oocytes within her ovarian follicles, a number that gradually declines until menopause. Follicles develop through successive stages—primordial, primary, secondary, and tertiary—before ovulation. Shortly prior to ovulation, the oocyte within the follicle matures into a secondary oocyte. This complex process governs the cyclical release of oocytes.

The process of folliculogenesis initiates with primordial follicles in a dormant state, prevalent in newborn females and persisting as the predominant follicle type in the adult ovary. These primordial follicles, characterized by a solitary layer of **granulosa cells** encircling the oocyte, can remain quiescent for years, with some enduring until the approach of menopause. Upon the onset of puberty, a subset of primordial follicles responds to recruitment signals, transitioning into a cohort of immature growing follicles known as primary follicles. Originating with a single layer of granulosa cells, these primary follicles undergo a transformative shift as the granulosa cells transition from a flat or squamous shape to a rounded, cuboidal configuration, increasing in size. Concurrently, granulosa cells in the targeted follicles divide, add an outer layer of connective tissue, incorporate blood vessels and **theca cells**, progressing into secondary follicles.

Within the secondary follicle, the primary oocyte releases a thin acellular membrane, the **zona pellucida**, which assumes a pivotal role in fertilization. Simultaneously, follicular fluid, accumulating between the granulosa cells, consolidates into an **antrum**, constituting a crucial feature of tertiary follicles (Figure 15). Despite reaching the tertiary stage simultaneously, most of these follicles undergo atresia, with approximately 99 percent succumbing at various points in folliculogenesis. The exceptional survivor continues its maturation, culminating in ovulation, where it expels its secondary oocyte, enveloped by multiple layers of granulosa cells, referred to as **corona radiata**, from the ovary. This intricate process governs the selection of a single follicle for ovulation amidst a cohort destined for atresia.

A **Graafian follicle**, also known as a tertiary follicle, is a mature ovarian follicle prepared for ovulation. It features a prominent fluid-filled cavity called the antrum, surrounded by multiple layers of granulosa cells. These cells are supported by two thecal layers: the **theca externa**, a connective tissue layer, and the **theca interna**, a vascular layer that secretes estrogen and **inhibin B**. The secondary oocyte is encircled by a protective crown of granulosa cells called the **corona radiata** and is positioned near the follicle's edge adjacent to the ovarian wall. Surrounding the oocyte is the **zona pellucida**, a glycoprotein-rich layer essential for fertilization, with granulosa cells forming an additional layer over this structure.[3, 14-15]

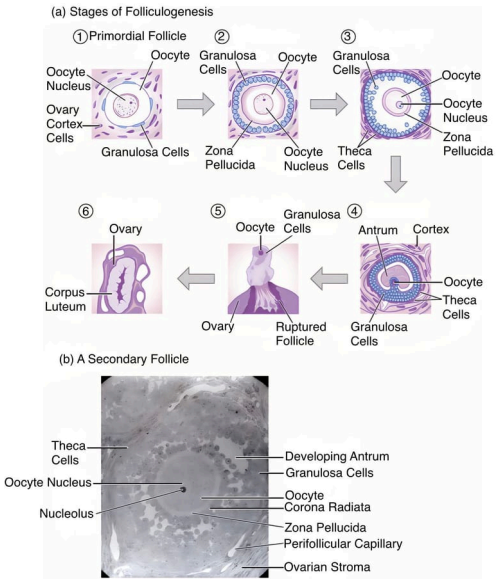


Figure 15 | Folliculogenesis | [23] (a) The maturation of a follicle is shown in a clockwise direction proceeding from the primordial follicles. FSH stimulates the growth of a tertiary follicle, and LH stimulates the production of estrogen by granulosa and theca cells. Once the follicle is mature, it ruptures and releases the oocyte. Cells remaining in the follicle then develop into the corpus luteum. (b) In this electron micrograph of a secondary follicle, the oocyte, theca cells (thecae folliculi), and developing antrum are clearly visible.

Hormonal Regulation of the Ovarian Cycle

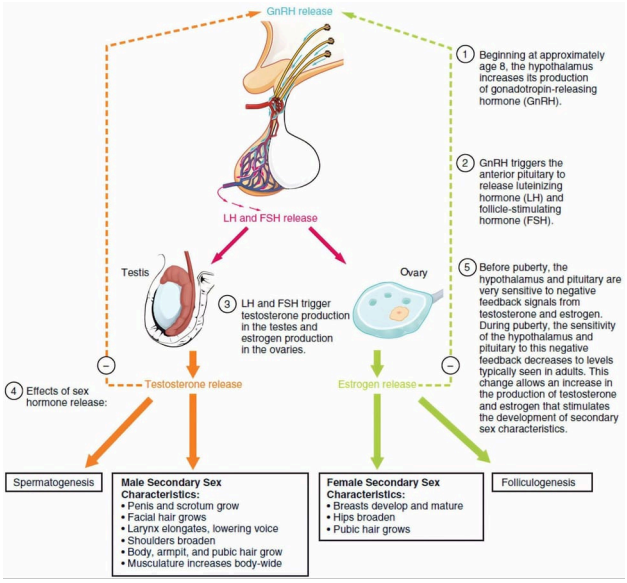


Figure 16 | Hormones of Puberty | [24] During puberty, the release of LH and FSH from the anterior pituitary stimulates the gonads to produce sex hormones in both male and female adolescents.

The progression from a primordial follicle to an early tertiary follicle takes approximately two months in humans. The final phase of this development, involving the maturation of a select group of tertiary follicles and culminating in the ovulation of a secondary oocyte, occurs over approximately 28 days. This complex sequence of events is governed by a hormonal cascade, including GnRH, LH, and FSH, which also play essential roles in regulating the male reproductive system.

Similar to the male reproductive system, the hypothalamus initiates the process by secreting GnRH. GnRH, in turn, prompts the

anterior pituitary to release gonadotropins, specifically FSH and LH. These gonadotropins traverse the bloodstream to reach the ovaries, where they bind to receptors on the granulosa and theca cells of the developing follicles (Figure 16). FSH, aptly named follicle-stimulating hormone, stimulates the growth of the tertiary follicles, resulting in their expansion in diameter. Concurrently, the release of LH stimulates the granulosa and theca cells to produce estradiol, a prominent estrogen. This phase of the ovarian cycle, characterized by the growth of tertiary follicles and the secretion of estrogen, is identified as the **follicular phase**.

Inhibin, secreted by the granulosa cells, inhibits the secretion of FSH to regulate follicular development. High levels of inhibin B during the follicular phase, signal the pituitary to reduce FSH release, preventing excessive stimulation of multiple follicles. After ovulation, **inhibin A** is primarily secreted, contributing to the regulation of FSH and LH.

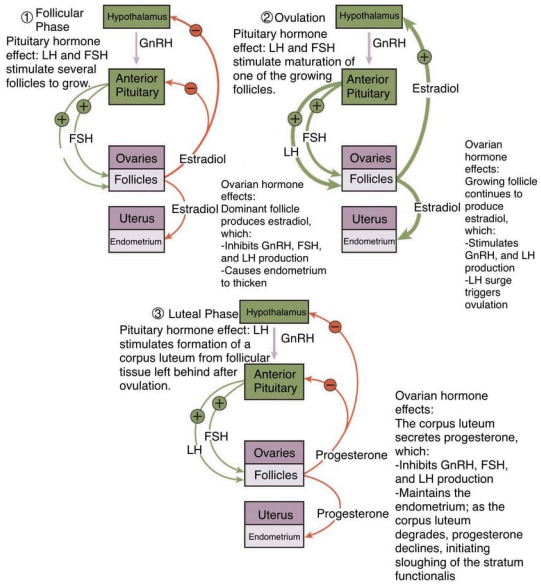


Figure 17 | Hormonal Regulation of Ovulation | [25] The hypothalamus and pituitary gland regulate the ovarian cycle and ovulation. GnRH activates the anterior pituitary to produce LH and FSH, which stimulate the production of estrogen and progesterone by the ovaries.

The number of granulosa and theca cells within a follicle correlates with its size and development, influencing the amount of estrogen it produces in response to LH stimulation. Large, developed follicles produce elevated levels of estrogen, leading to an increase in systemic plasma estrogen concentrations. This surge triggers a classic negative feedback loop, prompting the hypothalamus and pituitary to reduce the production of GnRH, LH, and FSH. The decline in FSH, essential for the survival of large tertiary follicles, results in most of them undergoing atresia.

Typically, only one follicle, the Graafian follicle, survives and releases an oocyte. Factors like size, the number of granulosa cells, and the presence of FSH receptors contribute to a follicle becoming dominant. The dominant follicle, once again secreting estrogen, surpasses the cumulative estrogen production of all developing follicles prior to negative feedback. This high systemic plasma estrogen concentration induces a regulatory shift in the anterior pituitary, leading to a substantial release of LH and FSH into the bloodstream—a unique positive feedback loop at this stage, known as the **LH surge**.

The LH surge triggers ovulation of the dominant follicle, causing changes like the resumption of meiosis in the primary oocyte and the degradation of the polar body resulting from unequal cell division. Proteases break down the follicle's structural proteins, and the pressure from the fluid-filled antrum facilitates the expulsion of the secondary oocyte, surrounded by granulosa cells, into the peritoneal cavity. Simultaneously, the remaining granulosa and theca cells undergo luteinization, transforming the collapsed follicle into the **corpus luteum**. This newly formed endocrine structure produces **progesterone**, crucial for pregnancy establishment and maintenance, along with a small amount of estrogen. Progesterone initiates negative feedback at the hypothalamus and pituitary, suppressing GnRH, LH, and FSH secretion. This post-ovulatory progesterone and estrogen secretion phase is termed the **luteal phase** (Figure 17). If pregnancy does not occur within 10 to 12 days, the corpus luteum ceases hormone production, degrades into the **corpus albicans**, and eventually disintegrates. Reduced progesterone secretion triggers the release of GnRH-mediated FSH and LH, initiating a new follicular phase with the growth of a new cohort of early tertiary follicles and the secretion of estrogen.

Estrogen, a pivotal female sex hormone, exerts diverse physiological effects crucial for the functioning of the female reproductive

system. It fosters increased subcutaneous fat in women, particularly in the hips and thighs before menopause and a shift to abdominal fat deposition post-menopause. Estrogen contributes to skin health by promoting vascularization. It plays a protective role by inhibiting osteoclastic activity, ensuring bone density, and supporting increased growth during puberty. During puberty, estrogen orchestrates changes in the external female sex organs, enhancing the size of the **fallopian tubes**, uterus, and vagina. It also prompts fat deposition in the mons pubis and transforms the vaginal epithelium from a cuboidal to a stratified type. In the endometrium, estrogen drives the proliferation of cells and glands, preparing the uterus for potential pregnancy. Furthermore, estrogen participates in the development of breasts by facilitating fat deposition and contributing to the maturation of stromal cells and ductal structures, essential for lactation readiness.[3, 15, 26]

The Uterine Tubes

The uterine tubes, also known as fallopian tubes or **oviducts**, play a crucial role in facilitating the journey of the oocyte from the ovary to the uterus (Figure 17). These paired tubes are in proximity to the ovaries but are not directly attached. The uterine tube is divided into distinct sections. The **isthmus**, situated at the narrow medial end of each tube, connects to the uterus. The distal **infundibulum**, widening as it extends, features slender, finger-like projections known as **fimbriae**. Fertilization often takes place in the middle region of the tube, referred to as the **ampulla.**

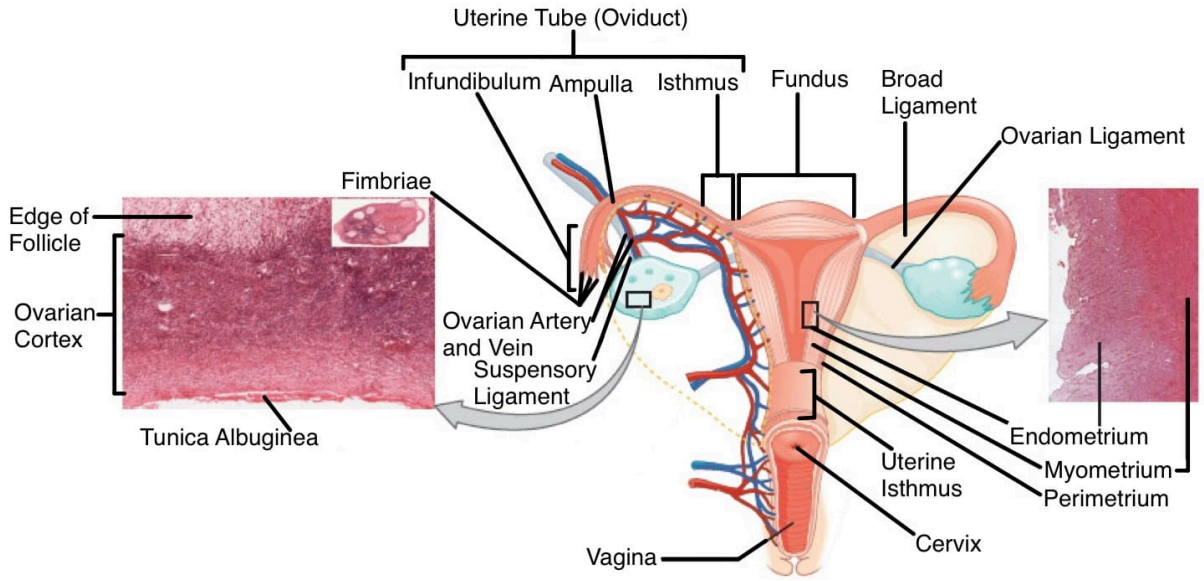


Figure 18 | Ovaries, Uterine Tubes, and Uterus | [27] This anterior view shows the relationship of the ovaries, uterine tubes (oviducts), and uterus. Sperms enter through the vagina, and fertilization of an ovulated oocyte usually occurs in the distal uterine tube.

Following ovulation, the secondary oocyte, accompanied by a few granulosa cells, is released into the peritoneal cavity and received by either the left or right uterine tube. Estrogen-induced contractions of the uterine tube's smooth muscle propel the oocyte toward the uterus. These contractions, occurring every 4 to 8 seconds, coordinate to create a sweeping movement across the ovary and pelvic cavity. Cilia lining of the cells next to the lumen of the uterine tube beat strongly in response to high estrogen concentrations, assisting in pulling the oocyte–granulosa cell complex into the tube. Once inside, muscular contractions and beating cilia gradually move the oocyte toward the uterus. Fertilization typically occurs while the oocyte is traversing the ampulla.

In the event of successful fertilization, the resulting zygote undergoes divisions, eventually reaching the uterus. There, it implants and continues its growth. If fertilization does not occur, the unfertilized egg degrades—either within the uterine tube or the uterus, possibly being shed during the subsequent menstrual period.

The Uterus

The uterus, a vital organ for embryonic nourishment and support, measures approximately 5 cm wide by 7 cm long in a non-pregnant state. Comprising three sections, the **fundus** is superior to the uterine tube opening, the **body** forms the middle section,

and the **cervix** extends inferiorly into the vagina. The cervix produces mucus secretions influenced by high systemic plasma estrogen concentrations, aiding sperm movement in the reproductive tract.

The uterine wall consists of three layers: the serous membrane, **perimetrium**, covers the exterior, the **myometrium** is a thick layer of smooth muscle responsible for contractions, and the **endometrium**, the innermost layer, contains connective tissue lining (lamina propria) covered by epithelial tissue (Figure 18). The endometrium comprises the **stratum basalis** (adjacent to the myometrium, not shedding during menses) and the **stratum functionalis**, which thickens in response to estrogen and progesterone, shedding during menstruation if implantation does not occur.

During the follicular phase, estrogen-secreting tertiary follicles coincide with the thickening of the endometrial stratum functionalis, preparing for potential implantation. The post-ovulatory increase in progesterone maintains a thick stratum functionalis, and if an embryo implants, signals to the corpus luteum sustain progesterone secretion, preserving the endometrium and the pregnancy. Conversely, without implantation, the corpus luteum degrades, leading to the cessation of progesterone and estrogen production. In the absence of progesterone, the endometrium thins, and under prostaglandin influence, spiral arteries constrict and rupture, causing the shedding of blood, endometrial tissue, and white blood cells through the vagina during menstruation.[3, 14-15]

The Menstrual Cycle

There are three phases in the menstrual cycle. These phases involve the shedding, rebuilding, and preparation for implantation of the uterine lining. (Figure 19) The initiation of the menstrual cycle is marked by the first day of menses, termed day one of a woman's period. The cycle length is determined by counting the days between the onset of bleeding in two consecutive cycles. While the average menstrual cycle is 28 days, variations exist among women, ranging typically from 21 to 32 days, and even within the same woman from one cycle to the next.

The granulosa and theca cells of the ovary not only orchestrate the phases of the ovarian cycle but also regulate the three distinct phases of the menstrual cycle: the menses phase, the proliferative phase, and the secretory phase.

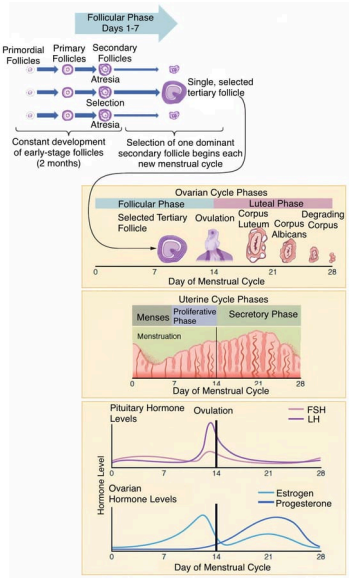


Figure 19 | Hormone Levels in Ovarian and Menstrual Cycles | [28] This figure presents the follicle development, ovarian and uterine cycle phases, and hormone levels over a 28-day menstrual cycle. In the ovarian cycle, multiple early-stage follicles begin to develop, but one dominant secondary follicle is selected early in the follicular phase (days 1–14). Hormone graphs show a mid-cycle LH surge triggering ovulation, rising estrogen in the first half, and elevated progesterone during the luteal phase. Additionally, follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) peaks pre-ovulation. The uterine cycle runs in parallel: menses (shedding of the endometrium) occurs early in the cycle, followed by the proliferative phase (endometrial regrowth, driven by estrogen) and the secretory phase (endometrial thickening and nutrient enrichment, supported by progesterone from the corpus luteum).

Menstruation Phase

During the menstrual phase, the functional layer (functionalis) of the endometrium is shed, marking the days of menstruation. This phase is characterized by low levels of progesterone, FSH, and LH, which trigger the shedding of the stratum functionalis. Menstruation typically lasts about five days but can range from 0 to 7 days or longer. This phase coincides with the early days of the follicular phase in the ovarian cycle. (Figure 19)

Proliferative Phase

Following the cessation of menstrual flow, the proliferative phase commences as the endometrium begins to rebuild. This phase, driven by increased estrogen production from the granulosa and theca cells of the tertiary follicles, stimulates the endometrial lining to proliferate. The rising estrogen levels eventually decrease the release of FSH through negative feedback, resulting in atresia of all but one developing tertiary follicle. Subsequently, positive feedback, induced by the dominant follicle's elevated estrogen production, leads to the LH surge and triggers ovulation, marking the end of both the proliferative phase in the uterus and the follicular phase in the ovary (Figure 19).

Secretory Phase

High estrogen levels prompt the LH surge and enhance uterine tube contractions for oocyte pick-up and transfer. Additionally, estrogen decreases vaginal acidity, promoting a more hospitable environment for sperm. In the ovary, luteinization of the granulosa cells forms the corpus luteum, initiating the progesterone- and estrogen-producing luteal phase of the ovarian cycle. Simultaneously, the secretory phase begins in the uterus, during which the endometrial lining prepares for implantation. Endometrial glands secrete a glycogen-rich fluid over the next 10 to 12 days, nourishing the developing zygote in case of fertilization. The spiral arteries also develop to supply blood to the thickened stratum functionalis. If no pregnancy occurs within approximately 10 to 12 days, the corpus luteum degrades into the corpus albicans, estrogen and progesterone levels fall, the endometrium thins and menses ensue, marking the start of the next cycle (Figure 19).[29]

The Breasts

While situated apart from the other female reproductive organs, the breasts are classified as accessory organs integral to the female reproductive system, primarily serving the purpose of lactation, the process of supplying milk to an infant. External features of the breast include a **nipple** encompassed by a pigmented **areola**, the color of which may intensify during pregnancy. Typically circular, the areola varies in size, ranging from 25 to 100 mm in diameter. Housing small, raised areolar glands, this region secretes lubricating fluid during lactation, safeguarding the nipple from chafing. When a baby nurses, the entire areolar region is taken into the mouth.

Milk production occurs in the **mammary glands**, which are specialized sweat glands. Exiting the breast through the nipple, milk travels via 15 to 20 **lactiferous ducts** that open on the nipple's surface. These ducts extend to **lactiferous sinuses** connected to glandular lobes within the breast, containing clusters of milk-secreting cells called **alveoli** (Figure 20). Alveolar clusters can change in size based on the milk volume. Myoepithelial cells surrounding the alveoli contract when stimulated, propelling milk into the lactiferous sinuses. Suckling by the baby then allows milk to be drawn through the lactiferous ducts. The lobes are surrounded by fat tissue, determining breast size, which varies among individuals and does not impact milk production.

During the menstrual cycle's hormonal fluctuations, breast tissue responds to changing estrogen and progesterone levels, potentially causing swelling and tenderness, notably during the secretory phase. In the case of pregnancy, heightened hormone levels lead to further mammary tissue development and breast enlargement.[30]

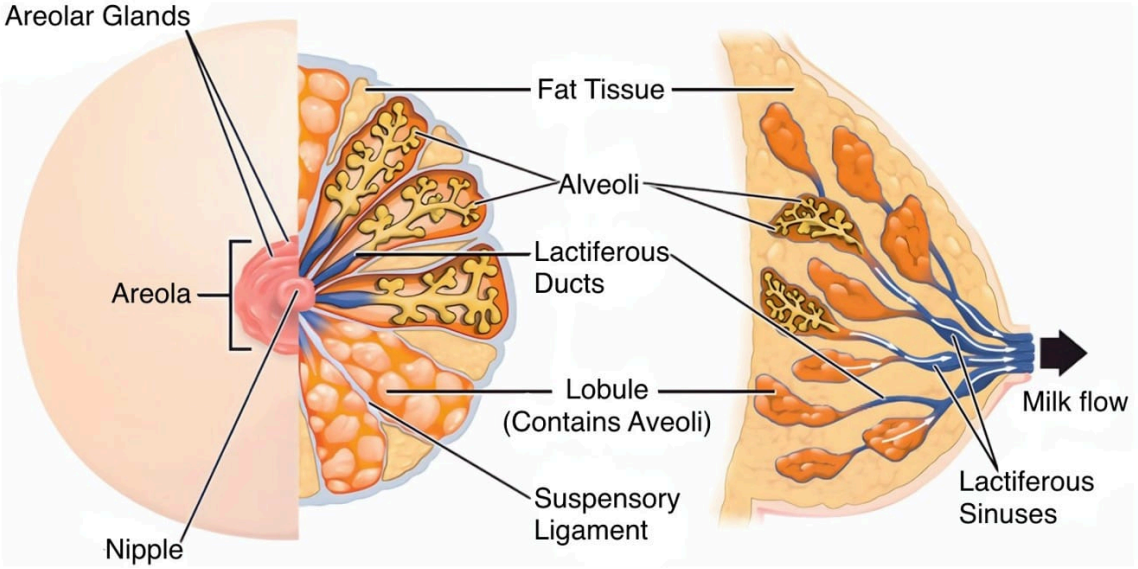


Figure 20 | Anatomy of the Breast | [31] During lactation, milk moves from the alveoli through the lactiferous ducts to the nipple. Surrounding structures include fat tissue, suspensory ligaments (providing structural support), and the areola, which contains areolar glands that lubricate the nipple during breastfeeding.

Hormonal Birth Control

Birth control pills operate within the framework of the negative feedback system regulating ovarian and menstrual cycles to impede ovulation and prevent pregnancy. Typically, they maintain a consistent level of both estrogen and progesterone, which negatively influences the hypothalamus and pituitary, inhibiting the release of FSH and LH. The absence of FSH prevents follicle maturation, and without the LH surge, ovulation is thwarted. Although birth control pills induce some thickening of the endometrial wall through estrogen, it is diminished compared to a natural cycle, reducing the likelihood of supporting implantation.

Certain birth control pills consist of 21 active hormone-containing pills and seven inactive placebos. Hormone levels decline during the placebo week, triggering a lighter-than-normal menstrual flow due to reduced endometrial thickening. Modern variants deliver low-dose estrogens and progesterone throughout the entire cycle, eliminating the need for a menstrual period when taken continuously for 365 days. While some women prefer the reassurance of a monthly period, regular menstruation every 28 days is not medically necessary, and there are no reported adverse effects of not having a menstrual period in a healthy individual.

Crucially, birth control pills must be taken consistently, as even missing one or two pills or being delayed in taking them can disrupt the negative feedback system, increasing FSH and LH levels and potentially leading to ovulation. Following the instructions on the birth control pill package is essential to prevent pregnancy effectively.[32]

Menopause

Female fertility, or the capacity to conceive, reaches its zenith in the twenties and gradually diminishes until age 35. Subsequently, fertility experiences a swifter decline, culminating in **menopause**—the termination of the menstrual cycle due to the depletion of ovarian follicles and associated hormones. Menopause is officially acknowledged after a full year without menstruation, marking the transition to the postmenopausal phase. While the global average age for menopause is 50-52, it can occur in a woman's forties or fifties. Health factors, particularly smoking, may hasten fertility loss and the onset of menopause.

During the menopausal transition (**perimenopause**), characterized by irregular menstrual cycles, inhibin hormone levels decrease, intensifying FSH production. Rising FSH prompts increased follicle growth and estrogen secretion, yet many follicles undergo atresia. Ultimately, this process depletes ovarian follicles, leading to a dramatic decline in estrogen production, primarily responsible for menopausal symptoms.

The early stages of menopause, or perimenopause, involve irregular cycles, reduced progesterone from the corpus luteum,

potential endometrial hyperplasia, uterine fibroids, and irregular bleeding. Symptoms such as hot flashes, night sweats, sleep disturbances, vaginal dryness, mood swings, cognitive difficulties, and hair changes may vary in severity. After menopause, decreased estrogen levels contribute to cardiovascular diseases, as estrogen helps regulate cholesterol. Osteoporosis becomes a concern due to rapid postmenopausal bone density reduction, increasing the risk of fractures.

Hormone therapy (HT), using synthetic estrogens and progestins, can alleviate menopausal symptoms. However, studies, including the Women's Health Initiative in 2002, revealed risks such as a higher breast cancer incidence. Ongoing research assesses the benefits and risks of hormone replacement therapy, with current guidelines recommending it for reducing hot flashes, but in the lowest effective dose and for the shortest duration, with regular pelvic and breast exams for those undergoing HT.[33]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 16.6: Overview of the Female Reproductive System is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

16.7: References

1. Moore, K. L., Persaud, T. V. N., & Torchia, M. G. (2025). *The developing human: Clinically oriented embryology* (12th ed.). Elsevier.

2. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.16 Sexual Differentiation. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/b84ebfb4f4b74ec344782fe4228ce3c04370b6dd

3. Strauss, J. F., III, Barbieri, R. L., Dokras, A., Williams, C. J., & Williams, S. Z. (2023). *Yen & Jaffe's reproductive endocrinology: Physiology, pathophysiology, and clinical management* (9th ed.). Elsevier.

4. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 27.18 Hormones of Puberty. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/7bf1c12f116ccfcbc2ea636193925132a35e6d7a

5. Ojeda, S. R., Dubay, C., & Terasawa, E. (2010). The genetic and molecular architecture of puberty: Lessons from humans and animal models. *Frontiers in Neuroendocrinology*, *31*(3), 329-342.

6. Lifshitz, F. (9th edition). *Pediatric endocrinology*. CRC Press. 2019.

7. Speroff, L., Fritz, M. A., Taylor, H. S., Pal, L., & Seli, E. (2019). *Speroff's Clinical Gynecologic Endocrinology and Infertility* (9th ed.). Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

8. Duggan, A. K., & Stern, J. (2021). Physical Growth and Sexual Maturation of Adolescents. In R. S. Porter et al. (Eds.), *The Merck Manual Professional Version*. Merck Sharp & Dohme Corp.

9. Wumingbai. (2021). Human male reproductive system [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/ea/Human_male_reproductive_system_en.svg

10. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 27.3 The Scrotum and Testes. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/812d4f0375ca23ad5352e2a16b013f50b5a08d83

11. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 27.4 Anatomy of the Testis. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/79fb628b116b4a7c8b7aa8a1a417b8e48aa2ce9a

12. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 27.5 Spermatogenesis. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/b7768deb900fb73aec09dd5853a3c06518f273a6

13. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 27.6 Structure of Sperm. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/63e4c7b77be4e97c88b4c649fbd6c6472cf58466

14. Marieb, E. N., Hoehn, K., Haynes, L. W., & Abbott, M. A. (2025). *Marieb Human Anatomy & Physiology* (12th ed.). Pearson.

15. Hall, J. E., & Hall, M. E. (2020). *Guyton and Hall textbook of medical physiology* (14th ed.). Elsevier.

16. Gillies & McArthur Pharmacol Rev 62:155–198, 2010. https://pharmrev.aspetjournals.org/c...b-figures-data

17. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 27.8 Regulation of Testosterone Production. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/ab9815fbb21573878e43d6f1a5626681264416d2

18. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 27.7 Cross-Sectional Anatomy of the Penis. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/473ce6748c463468fd57ff3c64a0ac92cd986530

19. Campbell, M. F., Wein, A. J., Kavoussi, L. R., Partin, A. W., & Peters, C. A. (2020). *Campbell-Walsh-Wein urology* (12th ed.). Elsevier.

20. Blausen.com staff. (2014). Female reproductive system (sectional view) [Image]. In *Medical gallery of Blausen Medical 2014*. *WikiJournal of Medicine, 1*(2). https://doi.org/10.15347/wjm/2014.010 https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/1/1e/

Blausen_0400_FemaleReproSystem_02b.png

21. Garcia, A. (2020). Oogenesis labeled [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/8/8a/Oogenesis_Labeled.svg

22. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 27.11 Oogenesis. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/cb3a51b134cfa417cf88f924fed1d8731ef8754f

23. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 27.12 Folliculogenesis. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/b192057b57e4b471054c0d5a361f661824607e63

24. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 27.18 Hormones of Puberty. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/7bf1c12f116ccfcbc2ea636193925132a35e6d7a

25. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 27.18 Hormones of Puberty. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/7bf1c12f116ccfcbc2ea636193925132a35e6d7a

26. Plant, T. M., & Zeleznik, A. J. (Eds.). (2014). *Knobil and Neill's physiology of reproduction* (4th ed.). Academic Press.

27. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 27.14 Ovaries, Uterine Tubes, and Uterus. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/d4aecde72c0a387444c2c076069ca64b3347189c

28. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 27.15 Hormone Levels in Ovarian and Menstrual Cycles. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/cdcdf2286ebcf71c2c109cbb44f5965ff258bf5a

29. Hall, J. E., & Guyton, A. C. (2021). The female reproductive system. In *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*(14th ed., pp. 1000-1015). Elsevier.

30. Marieb, E. N., & Hoehn, K. (2022). The female reproductive system and human development. In *Human anatomy & physiology* (12th ed., pp. 1180-1185). Pearson.

31. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 27.17 Anatomy of the Breast. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/39a2aa2df02ffc83ec7b4cc9b3c6baea6eb0fcf7

32. Sherwood, L. (2016). The reproductive system. In *Human physiology: From cells to systems* (9th ed., pp. 780-785). Cengage Learning.

33. Thibodeau, G. A., & Patton, K. T. (2023). The female reproductive system and human development. In *Anatomy & physiology* (10th ed., pp. 1050-1065). Mosby.

This page titled 16.7: References is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17: PHYSIOLOGY OF PREGNANCY

17.1: Objectives

17.2: Introduction

17.3: Fertilization

17.4: Transit of Sperm

17.5: Contact between Sperm and Oocyte

17.6: Zygote

17.7: Pre-implantation Embryonic Development

17.8: Implantation

17.9: Embryonic Membranes

17.10: Embryogenesis

17.11: Development of the Placenta

17.12: Organogenesis

17.13: The Fetal Circulatory System

17.14: Maternal Changes During Pregnancy

17.15: Autotransfusion

17.16: Physiology of Labor

17.17: Adjustments of the Infant at Birth and Postnatal Stages

17.18: Lactation

17.19: References

This page titled 17: Physiology of Pregnancy is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

17.1: Objectives

Learning Objectives

- Summarize the intricacies of fertilization and zygote formation following the fusion of gametes.
- Define capacitation and its role in fertilization.
- Analyze the significance of the acrosomal reaction in fertilization, elucidating its impact on the fusion of gametes.
- Provide an overview of the major steps in embryonic development, emphasizing the stages preceding implantation as distinct phases in early embryogenesis.
- Examine the vital roles played by estrogen, progesterone, and hCG in the maintenance of pregnancy, delving into their individual and collective contributions.
- Summarize the process of placentation, highlighting its essential role in maternal-fetal exchange and pregnancy support.
- Identify the causes and mechanisms underlying morning sickness during pregnancy, offering insights into its triggers and manifestations.
- Enumerate the various contributors to maternal weight gain throughout pregnancy.
- Summarize the metabolic alterations unique to pregnancy, including the physiological changes that impact energy utilization and storage.
- Describe the significant changes experienced by the maternal cardiovascular, respiratory, digestive, renal, skeletal, and integumentary systems during pregnancy, highlighting their adaptive mechanisms.
- Summarize the sequence of events culminating in labor, providing an in-depth understanding of the processes leading to childbirth.
- Identify the three distinct stages of childbirth, elucidating the physiological and anatomical transformations occurring during labor.
- Analyze the key differences between fetal circulation and post-birth circulation, emphasizing the adaptations that occur at birth.
- Summarize the regulatory mechanisms governing lactation, providing insights into the hormonal and physiological aspects of milk production and secretion.

This page titled 17.1: Objectives is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.2: Introduction

Pregnancy is a remarkable physiological process, involving a complex sequence of events within the female body. During this period, a single cell transforms and multiplies into a fully developed organism. This chapter explores the intricate mechanics of pregnancy, highlighting the physiological changes that occur throughout this extraordinary journey.

This page titled 17.2: Introduction is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.3: Fertilization

Fertilization is the merging of a sperm and an ovum, resulting in the formation of a **zygote**. Since both of these reproductive cells are haploid, containing only half of the genetic material, their union produces a diploid cell, the zygote.

This page titled 17.3: Fertilization is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.4: Transit of Sperm

During ejaculation, millions of sperm cells, or spermatozoa, are expelled into the vagina. Immediately upon entering the vagina, they are adversely affected by its acidic environment, with a pH of around 3.8. Additionally, many more may find their path blocked by the dense cervical mucus. Furthermore, once in the uterus, thousands of sperm face destruction by immune cells. Consequently, the large initial number of sperm is substantially reduced as only a few thousand make it to the uterine tubes, the typical site for encountering an oocyte.

The journey of these remaining sperm, thought to be facilitated by uterine contractions, typically spans from 30 minutes to 2 hours. Should they not immediately encounter an oocyte, these sperm can survive within the uterine tubes for another 3 to 5 days. Therefore, fertilization remains possible if sexual intercourse occurs a few days before ovulation. In contrast, an oocyte can only survive independently for about 24 hours following ovulation. Consequently, sexual activity more than a day after ovulation typically will not result in fertilization.

Throughout this journey, fluids within the female reproductive tract (primarily in the uterus and fallopian tubes) initiate a process known as **capacitation**, which prepares the sperm for fertilization. It is a requisite process for sperm to acquire the ability to fertilize an oocyte and typically takes 5–7 hours. During this biochemical process, glycoprotein coatings are removed from the sperm's plasma membrane, and cholesterol is stripped, increasing membrane fluidity and allowing for fusion with the oocyte. A calcium ion influx activates essential proteins and enzymes, resulting in hyperactivation of the sperm's motility with vigorous, whip-like flagellar movements that help it navigate cervical mucus and reach the oocyte. Additionally, the acrosome becomes primed for the acrosome reaction, which releases enzymes needed to penetrate the zona pellucida surrounding the oocyte.

This page titled 17.4: Transit of Sperm is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.5: Contact between Sperm and Oocyte

After ovulation, the secondary oocyte begins its journey through the uterine tube. Along the distal portion of the tube, it encounters capacitated sperm swimming toward it. These sperm are guided by chemical signals emitted by the cells of the corona radiata, the outer layer of follicular cells surrounding the oocyte.

To reach the oocyte, sperm must overcome two protective barriers. First, they navigate through the corona radiata. Next, when they encounter the zona pellucida. The sperm bind to specific receptors within it, initiating the acrosomal reaction. This reaction involves the release of digestive enzymes from the sperm's acrosome, which break down the zona pellucida and the extracellular matrix of the corona radiata. This coordinated effort requires hundreds of sperm, each undergoing the acrosomal reaction and collectively degrading these layers. Eventually, a single sperm successfully breaches the zona pellucida and fuses with the oocyte's plasma membrane, completing this critical step in fertilization.

Upon fusion with the oocyte, two mechanisms are initiated to prevent polyspermy, which is the penetration of the oocyte by more than one sperm. Fertilization by more than one sperm would result in a zygote with an incorrect triploid chromosome number, rendering it incompatible with life.The first mechanism, the **fast block**, initiates an almost immediate change in sodium ion permeability when the first sperm binds to the oocyte. This change depolarizes the oocyte's plasma membrane, effectively preventing the fusion of additional sperm cells. The fast block takes effect promptly and persists for roughly a minute. During this time, the influx of calcium ions following sperm penetration triggers the second mechanism, the **slow block**. This process involves the **cortical reaction**, where cortical granules situated just beneath the oocyte's plasma membrane fuse with the membrane. During this fusion, they release zonal inhibiting proteins and mucopolysaccharides into the space between the plasma membrane and the zona pellucida. The zonal inhibiting proteins serve to release any other sperm attached to the oocyte and deactivate the oocyte's sperm receptors, thereby preventing any further sperm from binding. The mucopolysaccharides then form an impermeable barrier around the emerging zygote, combined with the hardened zona pellucida, collectively termed the **fertilization membrane**. The plasma membrane of the winning sperm, the one capable of binding to the oocyte's receptor, subsequently fuses with the oocyte's plasma membrane.[1]

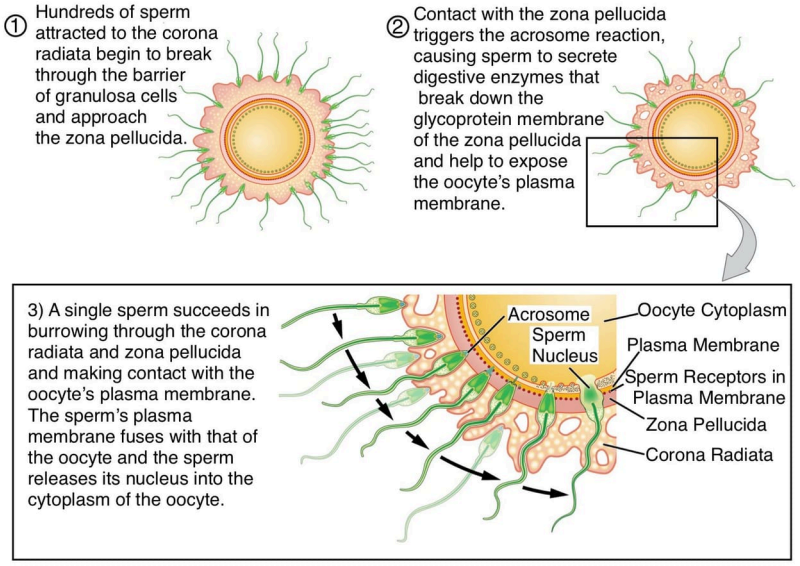


Figure 1 | Process of Fertilization | [2] This diagram illustrates the steps of fertilization. First the hundreds of sperm penetrate the corona radiata to reach the zona pellucida. Next binding to the zona pellucida triggers the acrosome reaction, releasing enzymes to digest the glycoprotein membrane and exposing the oocyte's plasma membrane. Finally a single sperm fuses with the oocyte's plasma membrane, releasing its nucleus into the oocyte's cytoplasm.

This page titled 17.5: Contact between Sperm and Oocyte is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.6: Zygote

After ovulation, the secondary oocyte, released into the fallopian tube, remains arrested in the metaphase of meiosis II until fertilization. Completion of meiosis into a full-fledged ovum only occurs upon fertilization. This meiotic process involves an unequal division of the cytoplasm, with the ovum receiving the majority and the second polar body receiving a smaller portion.

The two haploid nuclei originating from the sperm and ovum are known as **pronuclei**, which undergo decondensation, expansion, and DNA replication in preparation for mitosis. Subsequently, they migrate toward each other, their nuclear envelopes disintegrate, and the male- and female-derived genetic material commingle. This crucial step concludes the fertilization process, resulting in the formation of a single diploid cell, the zygote. The zygote contains the full complement of genetic instructions necessary for the development of a human.

Typically, a woman releases a single oocyte during an ovulation cycle. Nevertheless, two oocytes are released in roughly one percent of cases, and both become fertilized. This leads to the formation of two zygotes that implant and develop, ultimately resulting in the birth of **dizygotic** (**fraternal**) **twins**. Dizygotic twins, resulting from two oocytes fertilized by two different sperm, are no more genetically similar than siblings born at different times. In less frequent instances, a zygote can split into two distinct offspring during early development. This occurrence gives rise to the birth of **monozygotic** (**identica**l) **twins**. The zygote can undergo this division as early as the two-cell stage, although it more commonly occurs during the early blastocyst stage when roughly 70 to 100 cells are present. These two scenarios are distinct from one another. Twins resulting from separation at the two-cell stage have individual placentas, whereas twins emerging from separation at the blastocyst stage share both a placenta and a chorionic cavity.[3]

This page titled 17.6: Zygote is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.7: Pre-implantation Embryonic Development

After fertilization, the zygote and its associated structures, collectively referred to as the **conceptus**, continue their journey toward the uterus, driven by peristaltic movements and the beating cilia. The zygote undergoes five to six rapid mitotic cell divisions during this voyage. These cleavages result in an increased number of cells, although they do not alter the overall size of the conceptus.

Around three days post-fertilization, a 16-cell conceptus arrives in the uterus. The previously loosely arranged cells have now compacted, presenting a more solid appearance. This stage is called the **morula** (meaning "little mulberry"). Upon entering the uterus, the conceptus remains free-floating for several more days. The cells within it continue to divide, forming a cluster of approximately 100 cells. Simultaneously, the conceptus takes in nutritive endometrial secretions known as uterine milk while the uterine lining undergoes thickening. Subsequently, the closely-knit cell cluster begins secreting fluid and organizes itself around a central fluid-filled cavity called the **blastocoel**. At this point, the conceptus is referred to as a **blastocyst**. Within the blastocyst structure, a set of cells differentiates into an **inner cell mass** destined to become the embryo. The outer layer of cells, called **trophoblasts** (trophe, meaning "to feed" or "to nourish"), will develop into the chorionic sac and the fetal portion of the placenta. The placenta serves as the primary organ for nutrient, waste, and gas exchange between the mother and the developing offspring. During this stage, the inner mass of embryonic cells retains totipotency, signifying that each cell possesses the potential to differentiate into any cell type within the human body. This totipotent state is relatively short-lived, lasting only a few days before the cells' destinies are determined as precursors to specific cell lineages. Concurrently, as the blastocyst takes form, the trophoblast releases enzymes that initiate the degradation of the zona pellucida.[4]

This page titled 17.7: Pre-implantation Embryonic Development is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.8: Implantation

At the close of the first week following fertilization, the blastocyst initiates contact with the uterine wall and adheres to it. This attachment is facilitated by the trophoblast cells, marking the commencement of the implantation process. This significant event signifies the conclusion of the pre-embryonic stage of development, as illustrated in Figure 2. Implantation may sometimes be accompanied by minor bleeding.

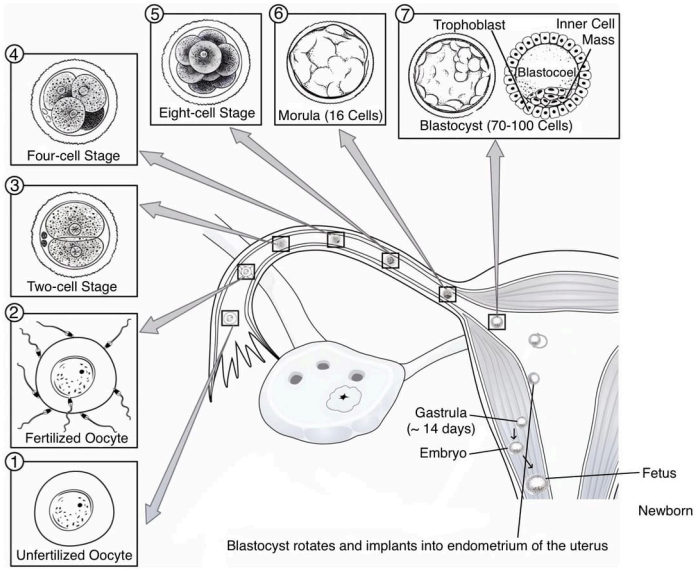


Figure 2 | Pre-Embryonic Development | [5] At first, the unfertilized oocyte fuses with the sperm to form a fertilized oocyte. The zygote then continues through the uterine tube and undergoes several mitotic divisions, developing from the two-cell stage to the four-cell stage, the eight-cell stage, and then into a morula with about 16 cells. The cells continue to divide to reach around 100 cells, forming a blastocyst with an inner cell mass and a layer of trophoblast.

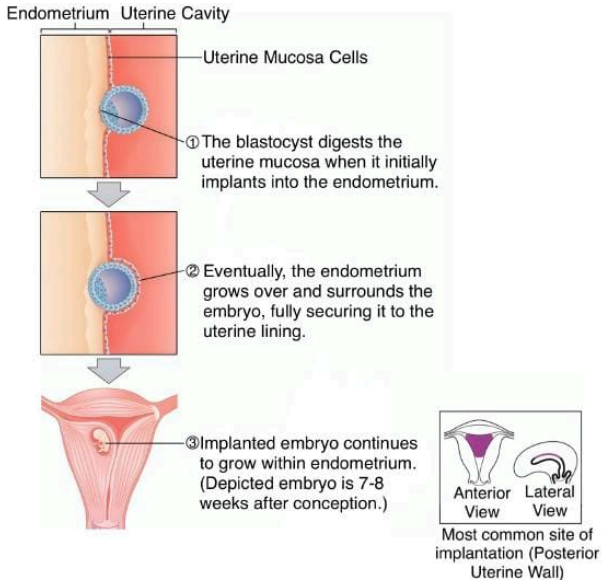


Figure 3 | Implantation | [6] At first the blastocyst arrives at the uterine cavity and digests the uterine mucosa as it implants into the endometrium. The endometrium continues to grow over the embryo, securely embedding it within the uterine lining. The implanted embryo continues to grow within the endometrium as depicted after 7-8 weeks of conception. The most common site

of implantation is the posterior uterine wall, as shown in anterior and lateral views.

Upon successful implantation of the blastocyst, the trophoblast cells undergo fusion, creating the **syncytiotrophoblast**. This multinucleated structure plays a crucial role in digesting endometrial cells, firmly anchoring the blastocyst to the uterine wall. In response to implantation, the uterine mucosa regenerates, encasing the blastocyst. The **cytotrophoblast**, an inner layer of the trophoblast, secretes **human chorionic gonadotropin** (**hCG**). This hormone ensures the survival and enlargement of the corpus luteum, maintaining the production of progesterone and estrogen, which is essential in preventing menstruation and creating a favorable environment for embryonic development. hCG levels rise in the maternal bloodstream and can be detected in urine. This process is essential for maintaining early pregnancy. Implantation typically concludes by the second week, coinciding with the ability to obtain a positive result on at-home urine pregnancy tests.[7]

This page titled 17.8: Implantation is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.9: Embryonic Membranes

In the second week of development, once the blastocyst is securely implanted in the uterine wall, the cells within the blastocyst initiate a process of layer formation. Some of these cells contribute to the creation of **extra embryonic membranes** essential for supporting and safeguarding the developing embryo. These membranes include the **amnion**, **yolk sac**, **allantois**, and **chorion**. Early in this phase, the inner cell mass reorganizes into a two-layered disc of embryonic cells, separated from the trophoblast by the emergence of the **amniotic cavity** (Figure 4). The upper layer of the disc, known as the **epiblast**, extends around the amniotic cavity, giving rise to a membranous structure, the amnion. The amnion begins to fill with amniotic fluid, predominantly composed of a maternal plasma filtrate during the initial stages of development. Subsequently, around the eighth week, as the fetal kidneys become operational, they contribute urine to the amniotic fluid. The amniotic fluid serves a crucial role in protecting the embryo and, later, the fetus from potential trauma and rapid temperature variations. It also enables free movement within the fluid and prepares the developing organism for functions like swallowing and breathing beyond the uterine environment.

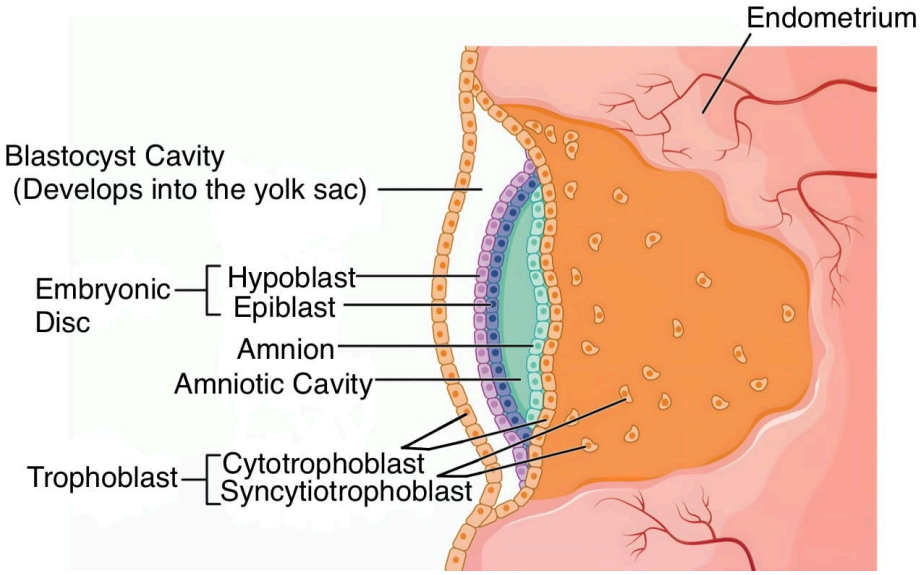


Figure 4 | Implantation of the human blastocyst during early development | [8] The diagram shows the blastocyst making contact with and beginning to embed within the vascularized uterine endometrium. The trophoblast cells differentiate into the inner cytotrophoblast and the invasive outer syncytiotrophoblast, securing the blastocyst. Internally, the embryonic disc, composed of the epiblast and hypoblast, begins to form, along with the amnion, amniotic cavity, and the blastocyst cavity.

On the ventral side of the embryonic disc, opposite the amnion, cells in the lower layer of the embryonic disk, referred to as the **hypoblast**, extend into the blastocyst cavity (Figure 5). This extension gives rise to an essential structure known as the yolk sac, as illustrated in Figure 6.

The yolk sac serves multiple functions during the early weeks of development. It supplies certain nutrients obtained from the trophoblast to support the growing embryo. Moreover, it establishes a primitive blood circulation system to provide the embryo with the necessary resources. This blood circulation process is particularly critical during the second and third weeks of development. The placenta takes on the role of providing nourishment to the embryo by the fourth week, rendering the yolk sac's nutritional contribution less significant. As a result, the yolk sac greatly reduces in size. While its role in nutrition wanes, the yolk sac remains vital for the embryo. It becomes the source of blood cells and germ cells, which are the precursors of gametes (sperm and egg cells).

Around the third week of development, the embryo also forms a structure known as the allantois. This structure originates as a finger-like projection of the yolk sac and eventually evolves into a primitive excretory duct of the embryo. It plays a crucial role in the development of the urinary bladder. The yolk sac and allantois contribute to forming the umbilical cord's outer structure, connecting the embryo to the placenta. Completing the ensemble of extra-embryonic membranes is the chorion, which envelops all other membranes and significantly participates in the development of the placenta.[9]

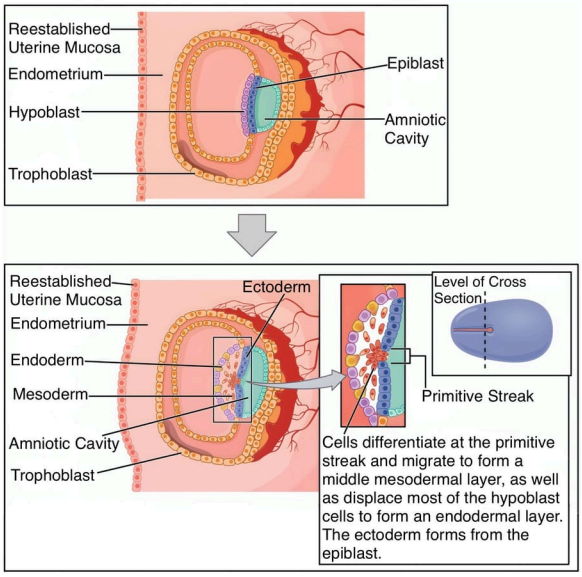


Figure 5 | Gastrulation and the formation of the three-layered embryonic disc | [10] The upper diagram displays a transverse section of the implanted blastocyst, showing the two-layered embryonic disc composed of the epiblast and hypoblast, surrounded by the amniotic cavity and trophoblast within the reestablished uterine mucosa. The lower diagram illustrates the process of gastrulation, where cells from the epiblast migrate through the primitive streak to form the three primary germ layers: the ectoderm (from the epiblast), the mesoderm (a new middle layer), and the endoderm (formed by displacement of hypoblast cells). An inset details cell differentiation and migration at the primitive streak.

This page titled 17.9: Embryonic Membranes is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.10: Embryogenesis

A gastrula is in place around the third week of development, specifically around day 16 to day 21 post-fertilization. The process of **gastrulation** begins where the three primary germ layers, **ectoderm, mesoderm, and endoderm**, are established. This stage marks a transition where cells shift from totipotency to multipotency, enabling differentiation into specialized cell types. Gastrulation starts with the formation of the **primitive streak**, an indentation along the dorsal surface of the epiblast. At the caudal (tail) end of the primitive streak, a growth factor-emitting structure known as the **primitive node** orchestrates cell proliferation and migration. In response to these signals, cells migrate through the primitive streak and extend laterally, forming two distinct layers. The first layer, adjacent to the yolk sac, becomes the endoderm, displacing the hypoblast. The second layer forms the mesoderm, the middle layer. Cells that remain in the epiblast, without migrating through the primitive streak, develop into the ectoderm. At this stage, the embryo measures only a few millimeters in length.

After gastrulation, the ectoderm, mesoderm, and endoderm begin migration and differentiation into specific cell lineages that will form distinct embryonic structures. The ectoderm develops into the central and peripheral nervous systems, sensory organs, epidermis, hair, and nails. The mesoderm gives rise to the skeletal system, muscles, connective tissues, heart, blood vessels, and kidneys, with its cells adopting a more loosely organized structure. Meanwhile, the endoderm generates the epithelial linings of the gastrointestinal tract, liver, pancreas, and lungs. This critical phase lays the foundation for the formation of all major organ systems (Figure 6).[7]

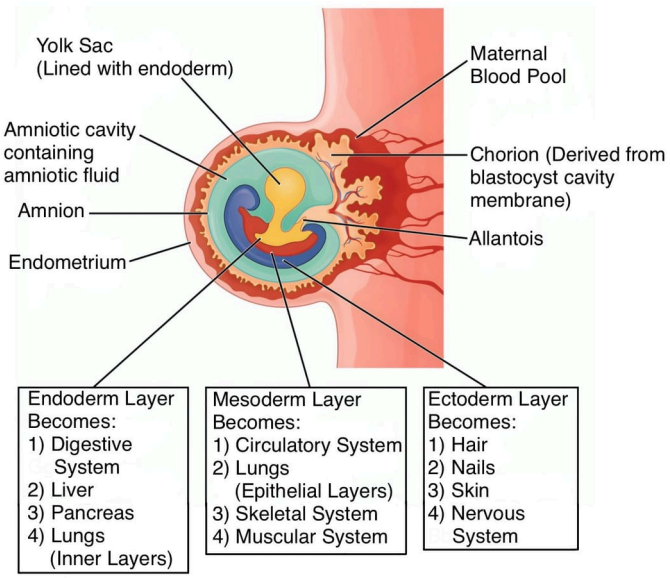


Figure 6 | Embryonic organization and germ layer contributions to organ systems |[11] This cross-section shows the embryo surrounded by extraembryonic membranes (amnion, yolk sac, allantois, chorion) within the endometrium, connected to the maternal blood pool. Boxes below list the major structures that develop from the endoderm, mesoderm, and ectoderm germ layers.

This page titled 17.10: Embryogenesis is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.11: Development of the Placenta

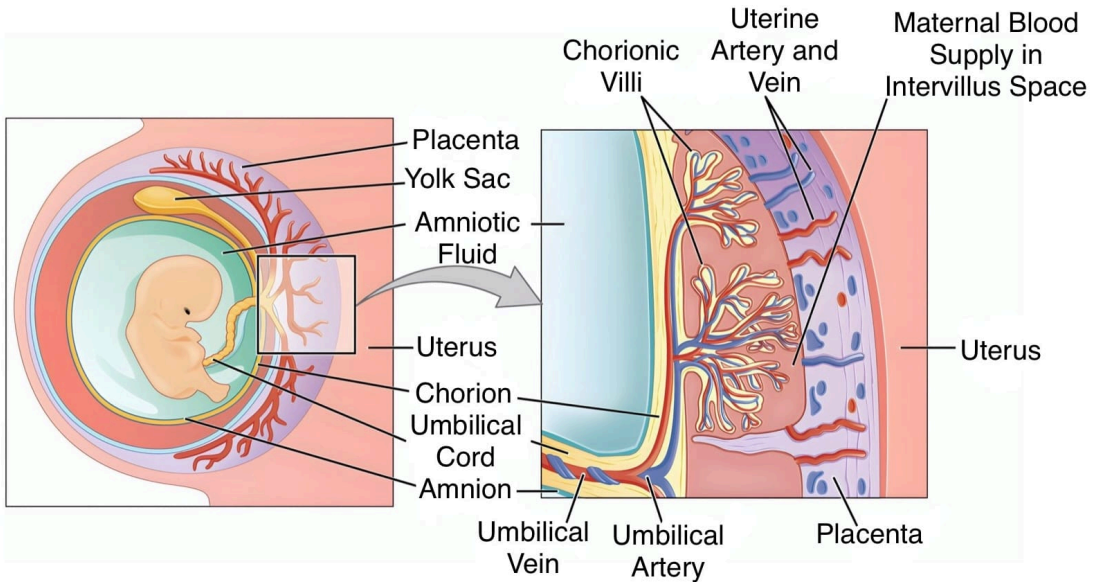


Figure 7 | Overview of fetal development and placental anatomy for maternal-fetal exchange |[12] The left side of the figure presents a cross-section of the uterus, showing the developing fetus, umbilical cord, yolk sac, amnion (containing amniotic fluid), chorion, and placenta. The right side offers a magnified view of the placental-uterine interface, highlighting the chorionic villi, fetal umbilical artery and vein, and the maternal blood supply in the intervillus space, demonstrating the site of nutrient, waste, and gas exchange between mother and fetus.

During the early weeks of development, the endometrium contains **decidual cells** that play a vital role in nourishing the embryo. By the third week, finger-like projections called **chorionic villi**, containing embryonic blood vessels, extend into the maternal endometrium, creating a large surface area for nutrient and gas exchange between the maternal **spiral arteries** and fetal circulation. From weeks 4 to 12, the placenta gradually assumes the role of nourishment, rendering the decidual cells unnecessary.

By the end of the first trimester, the placenta matures into a composite structure formed from both embryonic and maternal tissues. The fetal portion arises from the chorionic villi, while the maternal portion develops from the **decidua basalis**. It connects to the fetus via the umbilical cord, which contains two **umbilical arteries** to remove deoxygenated blood and waste products, and a single **umbilical vein** to deliver oxygen and nutrients from the mother (Figure 7).

The placenta is a multifunctional organ that plays a crucial role in supporting fetal development and maintaining maternal health during pregnancy. It facilitates the transfer of essential nutrients from the mother to the fetus, effectively taking on the role of the fetal gut. Nutrients such as glucose, amino acids, and fatty acids are transported across the placental barrier to support fetal growth. The placenta also functions as the fetal lungs by enabling gas exchange, allowing oxygen to pass from the maternal blood to the fetal blood while removing carbon dioxide from the fetus. In addition, the placenta takes over the role of the fetal kidneys by removing waste metabolites like urea and creatinine from the fetal circulation, which are then excreted by the mother. As an endocrine organ, the placenta synthesizes important hormones such as progesterone, estriol, small amounts of hCG, and **human placental lactogen** (**hPL**), which are essential for maintaining pregnancy, regulating maternal metabolism, and supporting fetal development. The placenta is also involved in metabolic functions, synthesizing glycogen, cholesterol, and fatty acids that are vital for energy storage and cellular growth.

In the non-pregnant state, the total energy requirement is 2,100 kcal/day, which increases to 2,500 kcal/day during advanced pregnancy and 3,000 kcal/day during lactation. The fetus requires blood glucose as a primary energy source, necessitating sustained high post-meal glucose levels for placental transfer. This reduces glycogen deposition in maternal muscles and liver, allowing prolonged glucose circulation in maternal blood. A positive nitrogen balance peaks at the 28th week, with 500 grams of nitrogen retained by the end of pregnancy, equally divided between fetal and maternal gain. Increased appetite and decreased motility enhance nutrient absorption. Hormones such as hCG and placental growth hormone reduce deamination, decreasing

urinary urea while increasing circulating fat. Pregnant individuals are prone to rapid ketosis under stress, such as during labor.[13]

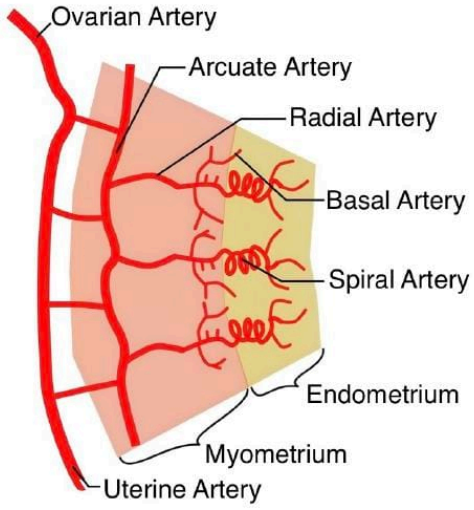


Figure 8 | Arterial vasculature of the uterus | [14] This illustration depicts the hierarchical branching of the uterine artery, originating from the internal iliac artery (not shown). The uterine artery gives rise to arcuate arteries, which encircle the uterus and supply the myometrium. From the arcuate arteries, radial arteries penetrate the myometrium and further branch into basal arteries and spiral arteries, which supply the inner layer of the uterine wall, the endometrium.

The blood supply to the uterine wall is maintained by a complex network of arteries essential for the physiological changes of the female reproductive system. The uterine arteries, originating from the internal iliac arteries, ascend along the uterus's lateral walls as the primary arterial source. These arteries give rise to **arcuate arteries**, which branch into radial arteries that penetrate the myometrium. Upon reaching the endometrium, the radial arteries transition into spiral arteries, characterized by their helical structure (Figure 8). Spiral arteries are critical for both the menstrual cycle and pregnancy. During menstruation, they vascularize the functional layer of the endometrium, while in pregnancy, they undergo extensive remodeling to support optimal blood flow to the placenta, meeting the nutritional needs of the developing fetus. The vascularity of the uterine wall, including the spiral arteries, is regulated by cyclic hormonal changes, adapting to different reproductive phases.[15]

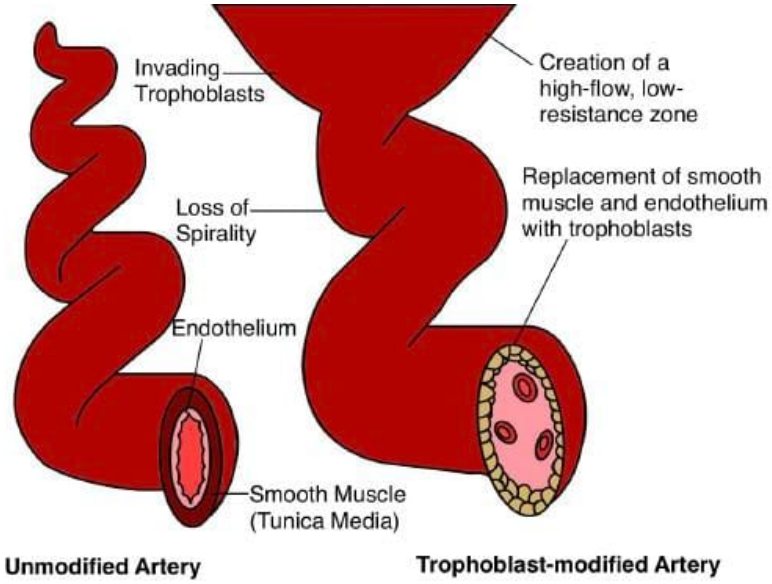


Figure 9 | Remodeling of a maternal spiral artery by invading trophoblasts during pregnancy | [16] The left panel shows an unmodified spiral artery with its typical spirality, endothelium, and smooth muscle (tunica media). The right panel illustrates the

trophoblast-modified artery, demonstrating the loss of spirality and the replacement of smooth muscle and endothelium with invading trophoblasts, leading to the creation of a high-flow, low-resistance zone for optimal placental perfusion.

In cases of **pre-eclampsia**, a condition marked by elevated blood pressure and organ damage, there is a failure in the expected conversion of spiral arteries, which results in persistent narrowness of the arteries, compromising blood flow to the placenta (Figure 9). The consequence of this inadequate blood supply includes intrauterine growth restriction, where the fetus fails to achieve its expected growth potential, which poses serious risks to both maternal and fetal health.

During pregnancy, uterine blood flow increases significantly, reaching around 700 mL/min, equivalent to approximately 10 percent of the total cardiac output. A substantial portion, roughly 80 percent, of this increased uterine blood flow, is directed to the placenta, while the remaining 20 percent serves the myometrium. It is worth noting that the uterine vasculature does not exhibit autoregulation, maintaining a maximal state of dilation under normal circumstances during pregnancy. A drop in uterine blood flow can result from reduced uterine perfusion pressure due to systemic hypotension or physical factors such as **aortocaval compression**, typically linked to vena cava compression when in a supine position, or uterine contractions.

Within the chorionic villi, capillaries function as a filter, removing fetal waste products from the blood while delivering clean, oxygenated blood to the fetus through the umbilical vein. The exchange of essential substances, including oxygen and nutrients, from maternal blood surrounding the villi into the fetal bloodstream occurs through these capillaries. Some substances, such as oxygen, carbon dioxide, and other lipid-soluble compounds, traverse the placenta through simple diffusion. For specific nutrients such as glucose, facilitated diffusion is the preferred route. Amino acids and iron, both in high demand by the developing fetus, are actively transported across the placenta.

It is important to recognize that while maternal and fetal blood components cross the surface of the chorionic villi, direct mixing of maternal and fetal bloodstreams is prevented. Blood cells themselves cannot traverse the placenta. This separation serves multiple vital purposes. Firstly, it safeguards the fetus from the potential reach of the mother's immune cells, which could target and harm the fetus due to the presence of "non-self" antigens. Additionally, it ensures that fetal red blood cells do not enter the maternal circulation, as this could lead to antibody development if the fetal cells carry "non-self" antigens. This mechanism explains why an Rh-negative mother does not produce antibodies that could induce hemolytic disease in her first Rh-positive fetus.

Notably, the placenta permits the passage of lipid-soluble fetotoxic substances, including alcohol, nicotine, barbiturates, antibiotics, specific pathogens, and various other potentially harmful substances that could endanger the developing embryo or fetus. Consequently, pregnant women should exercise caution and avoid exposure to fetotoxic substances.

Anesthesia can affect placental blood flow by influencing maternal cardiovascular function, blood pressure, and uterine tone. General anesthesia may decrease maternal blood pressure and cardiac output due to vasodilation and myocardial depression, reducing placental perfusion and oxygen delivery to the fetus. Hypoventilation during general anesthesia can further compromise oxygen transfer. Regional anesthesia, such as epidural or spinal, may cause maternal hypotension through sympathetic blockade, potentially decreasing uterine blood flow. However, it can also reduce uterine vascular resistance, potentially improving blood flow if blood pressure is maintained. Local anesthetics typically have minimal impact on placental blood flow unless used in high concentrations or inadvertently administered intravascularly. Prolonged reductions in placental blood flow can lead to fetal distress or compromise. To mitigate these effects, maternal blood pressure, oxygenation, and fetal heart rate are closely monitored, and interventions such as fluid administration, vasopressors, and careful anesthetic selection are used to maintain stable placental perfusion and fetal well-being.[17]

This page titled 17.11: Development of the Placenta is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.12: Organogenesis

In the initial eight weeks of gestation, the developing embryo successfully establishes the rudimentary structures of all its organs and tissues derived from the three primary germ layers: ectoderm, mesoderm, and endoderm. This process is aptly named **organogenesis**.

Following gastrulation, the CNS develops through **neurulation**, starting with the thickening of neuroectodermal tissues into the **neural plate**. By the fourth week, these tissues fold upward to form **neural folds**, which converge to create the **neural tube**, positioned atop the notochord. This tube later evolves into the brain and spinal cord, with the notochord becoming the nucleus pulposus of intervertebral discs. Concurrently, somites form on either side of the neural tube, differentiating into the axial skeleton, skeletal muscles, and dermal tissues. By the fifth week, the anterior neural tube expands and subdivides into vesicles that will become the brain.

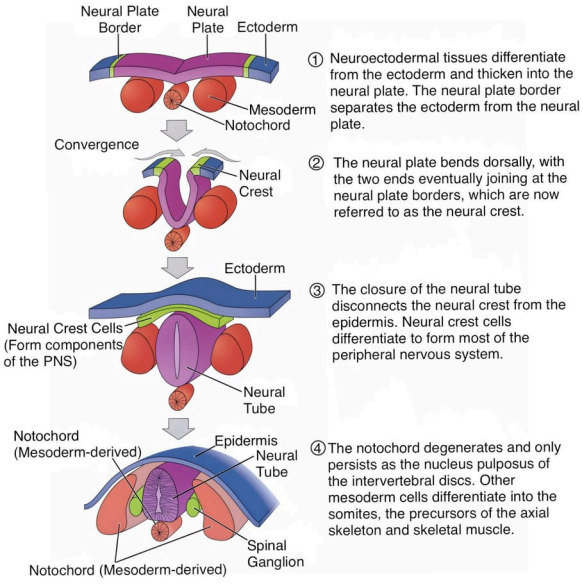


Figure 10 | Neurulation – An establishment of the future central nervous system and skeleton | [18] This step-by-step diagram illustrates the process where neuroectodermal tissues differentiate into the neural plate, which then folds to form the neural folds and eventually converges to create the neural tube. The roles of the notochord and neural crest cells in developing the central nervous system, peripheral nervous system, and axial skeleton are also depicted.

During early development, the embryo undergoes folding to form a C-shaped structure with distinct head and tail regions (Figure 11). Lateral folding and folding at the head and tail partially surround the yolk sac, creating a tube called the primitive gut, lined with endodermal cells. Simultaneously, the amniotic sac envelops the developing embryo.

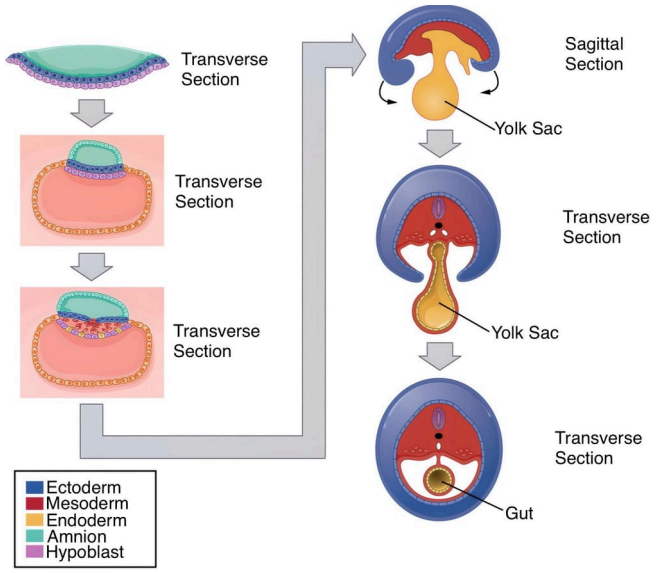


Figure 11 | Embryonic folding and the formation of the primitive gut | [19] This diagram illustrates the process of embryonic folding, showing how the initially flat embryonic disc folds laterally and at the head and tail ends to form a C-shaped structure. This folding also results in the partial surrounding of the yolk sac, leading to the formation of the primitive gut tube, lined with endodermal cells.

Similar to the CNS, the heart in the embryo begins as a tubular structure establishing connections with the chorionic villi through a network of capillaries. The cells within this nascent tubular heart possess remarkable electrical conduction and contraction abilities. While the heart's development initiates in the early part of the fourth week, it only begins pumping embryonic blood about a week later. This delay coincides with the commencement of red blood cell production by the oversized liver. The embryonic liver temporarily undertakes this role until the bone marrow takes over the responsibility of blood cell production.

Over weeks 4 to 5, crucial embryonic developments include the formation of eye pits, the emergence of limb buds, and the establishment of the fundamental components of the pulmonary system. During the sixth week, uncontrolled movements of fetal limbs become observable. Simultaneously, the rapid development of the gastrointestinal system exceeds the available space in the embryonic abdomen, leading to the temporary looping of the intestines into the umbilical cord. Moreover, paddle-shaped hands and feet gradually transform, with the process of apoptosis contributing to the disintegration of tissues between the fingers, eventually giving rise to well-defined fingers and toes.

As development progresses into the seventh week, the facial structure takes on increased complexity, featuring the presence of nostrils, outer ears, and lenses (Figure 12). By the eighth week, the embryonic head is nearly as substantial as the rest of the body, and all the major structures of the brain have taken their rightful place. Although external genitalia are apparent at this stage, distinguishing between male and female embryos remains challenging. Additionally, the embryonic skeleton begins to transform cartilage into bone through ossification.



Figure 12 | Embryo at 7 Weeks | [20] An embryo at the end of seven weeks of development is only 10 mm in length, but its developing eyes, limb buds, and tail are already visible.

From weeks 9 to 12 of fetal development, the brain experiences continued expansion, the body elongates, and the process of ossification advances. The fetus begins to exhibit frequent movements, albeit in a jerky and uncoordinated manner. The role of erythrocyte production, previously managed by the embryonic liver, is gradually assumed by the bone marrow. Additionally, the liver commences the secretion of bile. The fetus actively circulates amniotic fluid by swallowing it and producing urine. By this stage, the eyes are substantially developed, though the eyelids remain fused shut. The fingers and toes commence the formation of nails.

The period spanning weeks 16 to 20 of fetal development is marked by a substantial increase in body weight. The axons of the spinal cord commence the process of myelination, the fetus develops eyelashes, and the previously fused eyelids are now capable of being opened and closed. The lungs initiate the production of surfactant, supporting proper expansion upon birth. For male fetuses, the testes descend into the scrotum near the conclusion of this stage.

Throughout weeks 31 to birth, the fetus continues to accumulate subcutaneous fat, promoting the development of the hypodermis. Simultaneously, the skin undergoes a transformation from red and wrinkled to soft and pink. The previously present lanugo, a silky hair covering, is shed, and the nails extend to the tips of the fingers and toes.[21]

This page titled 17.12: Organogenesis is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.13: The Fetal Circulatory System

During the course of prenatal development, the fetal circulatory system establishes a connection with the placenta via the umbilical cord, ensuring the supply of both oxygen and essential nutrients to the developing fetus. However, this relationship undergoes a significant transformation after birth, when the umbilical cord is severed, necessitating a comprehensive reconfiguration of the newborn's circulatory system.

The heart's initial formation within the embryo involves the development of two parallel tubular structures, derived from mesodermal cells and lined with endothelium. These tubes subsequently fuse as the embryo matures into a fetus. The tubular heart further undergoes folding and differentiation, ultimately giving rise to the four chambers characteristic of a mature heart. The fetal circulatory system retains a distinctive feature not present in the mature cardiovascular system: the inclusion of circulatory shortcuts known as shunts, which permit the redirection of blood, until the moment of childbirth.

The fetal circulatory system features three principal shunts (Figure 13). Although the fetal liver exhibits partial functionality, the fetal lungs remain nonfunctional. The **ductus venosus** is a fetal circulatory structure that connects the umbilical vein to the inferior vena cava, bypassing the fetal liver. This shunt plays a pivotal role in ensuring the efficient supply of oxygenated blood and nutrients from the placenta to the developing fetus. The majority of the oxygenated blood entering the right atrium via the inferior vena cava is then directed toward the left atrium, where it is mixed with deoxygenated blood returning from the superior vena cava, which allows for the optimal oxygenation of fetal tissues.

Consequently, the fetal circulation bypasses the lungs by directing a portion of the blood through the **foramen ovale**, a shunt that establishes a direct connection between the right and left atria, bypassing the pulmonary trunk entirely. When blood is pumped into the right ventricle, it reaches the pulmonary trunk, which then divides into pulmonary arteries. However, a shunt located within the pulmonary artery, the **ductus arteriosus**, diverts some of this blood into the aorta. This mechanism guarantees that only a small volume of oxygenated blood circulates through the developing pulmonary circuit, which has relatively minor metabolic requirements. At this stage, the blood vessels within uninflated fetal lungs present high resistance to flow, prompting blood to preferentially flow into the aorta, characterized by significantly lower resistance. This oxygenated blood subsequently traverses the foramen ovale, entering the left atrium, where it mixes with deoxygenated blood returning from the pulmonary circuit. This blended blood proceeds into the left ventricle, which propels it into the aorta. A portion of this blood travels through the coronary arteries to nourish the myocardium, while another portion flows through the carotid arteries to supply the developing fetal brain.

The descending aorta is responsible for conveying partially oxygenated and partially deoxygenated blood to the lower regions of the fetal body. Eventually, it connects to the umbilical arteries through branches of the internal iliac arteries. This blood, laden with waste products, courses through the fetal circulatory system and subsequently returns to the umbilical cord. As such, the two umbilical arteries carry blood low in oxygen and high in carbon dioxide, as well as fetal waste materials. Upon reaching the placenta, these substances are filtered, with waste diffusing into the maternal circulation.[7]

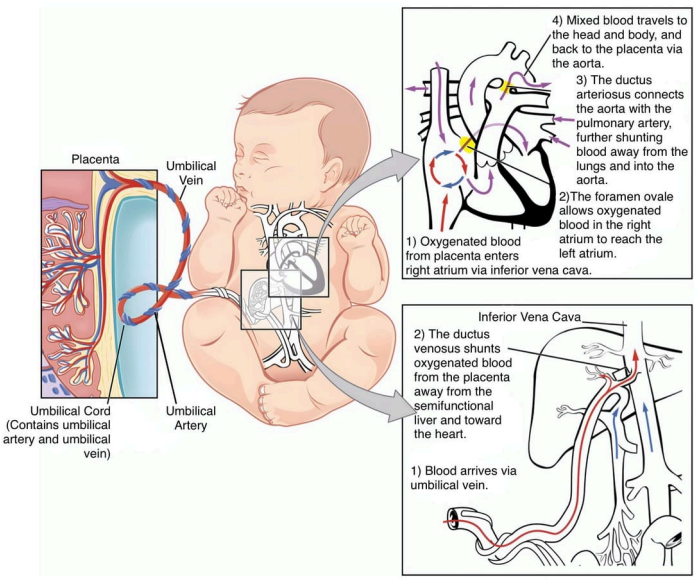


Figure 13 | Fetal circulation and its key shunts | [22] This diagram illustrates the unique circulatory pathway in the fetus, showing oxygenated blood arriving via the umbilical vein and being shunted away from the liver by the ductus venosus. Within the heart, the foramen ovale bypasses the pulmonary circuit, and the ductus arteriosus diverts blood from the pulmonary artery into the aorta, ensuring efficient oxygen delivery to fetal tissues before birth. The umbilical arteries return deoxygenated blood and waste to the placenta.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 17.13: The Fetal Circulatory System is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.14: Maternal Changes During Pregnancy

A full-term pregnancy encompasses approximately 270 days, equivalent to roughly 38.5 weeks, from the moment of conception to the birth of the infant. For practical purposes, healthcare providers often rely on the woman's last menstrual period (LMP) date to establish the estimated due date. This convention is based on a standard assumption that conception typically occurs on the 14th day of the woman's menstrual cycle. As a result, the due date is typically calculated as 284 days, or approximately 40.5 weeks, from the LMP.

This 40-week timeframe is customarily divided into three trimesters, each spanning approximately 13 weeks. Notably, during the second and third trimesters, the pre-pregnancy uterus, which initially approximates the size of a human fist, undergoes substantial growth to accommodate the developing fetus. This growth results in several significant anatomical changes in the expectant mother, which are essential to support and nurture the growing life within her (Figure 14).

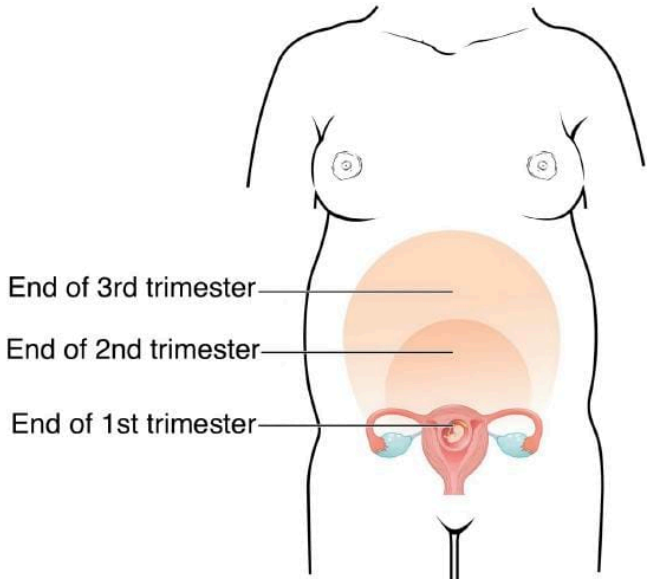


Figure 14 | Changes in uterine dimensions during gestation | [23] This diagram visually represents the remarkable growth of the uterus from its pre-pregnancy size to its expansion by the end of the first, second, and third trimesters, adapting to the developing fetus.

Weight Gain

Profound alterations in maternal anatomy and physiology characterize the second and third trimesters of pregnancy. A prominent anatomical manifestation of pregnancy is the significant enlargement of the abdominal region, accompanied by maternal weight gain. This weight gain is attributable to multiple factors, including the growing fetus, an enlarging uterus, increased amniotic fluid volume, and the expanding placenta. Furthermore, augmented breast tissue and a substantial rise in blood volume also contribute to this overall weight gain (Table 1). Surprisingly, fat storage represents only a portion of this weight gain, accounting for approximately 2.3 kg (5 lbs) in a typical pregnancy. This fat reserve serves as an energy reservoir to meet the heightened metabolic demands of breastfeeding.

During the first trimester, there is no imperative need for the mother to increase her calorie intake to sustain a healthy pregnancy. However, it is common for women to experience a weight gain of approximately 0.45 kg (1 lb) each month during this period. Maternal appetite typically increases as pregnancy progresses into the second and third trimesters. Yet, to effectively support the developing fetus, only an additional 300 calories per day are required. Most women tend to gain around 0.45 kg (1 lb) per week during the later stages of pregnancy. This carefully regulated metabolic adjustment is essential for maternal and fetal well-being, ensuring the healthy growth and development of the unborn child without excessively burdening the mother.

Table 1 | *Contributors to Weight Gain During Pregnancy* |

Component	Weight (lbs)
Fetus	7-8
Placenta and fetal membranes	2-4
Amniotic Fluid	2-3
Breast Tissue	2-3
Blood	4
Fat	3-9
Uterus	2-5
Total	22-36

Changes in Organ Systems During Pregnancy

As the woman's body adapts to pregnancy, characteristic physiologic changes occur throughout the body. In the uterus, smooth muscle contraction and relaxation are tightly regulated, and the balance between cAMP and cGMP signaling pathways plays a crucial role. In early pregnancy, cGMP may contribute to maintaining uterine quiescence (relaxation). Increased levels of cGMP have been associated with reduced myometrial contractility, helping to prevent premature contractions and maintaining a suitable environment for the developing fetus. As a woman approaches term and labor, there is a shift in the balance between cAMP and cGMP. Increased cGMP levels have been reported to enhance the effects of other signaling pathways that promote uterine contractions, contributing to the initiation and progression of labor. After childbirth, cGMP may play a role in the resolution of uterine involution.

Endocrine Changes

Many physiological changes that occur during pregnancy can predominantly be attributed to the intricate interplay of hormones. Key hormonal players in pregnancy, particularly estrogens, progesterone, and hCG, orchestrate a series of critical processes. In the initial stages, estrogen surges, originating from sources like the corpus luteum and, later, the placenta, fostering fetal growth and preparing the uterine lining. As pregnancy progresses, estrogen peaks in the second trimester. In the late third trimester, estrogen, while still elevated, experiences a modest decline. Simultaneously, progesterone rises substantially from the corpus luteum to maintain the uterine lining and prevent premature contractions by decreasing prostaglandin production, and lowering the uterus's sensitivity to oxytocin. Estrogen is initially produced by the corpus luteum during the first 5-6 weeks of pregnancy under the stimulation of hCG, after which the placenta takes over its production using DHEA from the fetus. It plays a vital role in promoting the continuous growth of the uterine myometrium and increased uterine blood flow. Estrogen, in conjunction with progesterone, supports the growth of ductal tissue in the breast and, along with relaxin, helps relax and soften maternal pelvic tissues to accommodate the expanding uterus. Near term, the estrogen-progesterone ratio increases, preparing the body for

labor. Estriol, a form of estrogen excreted in the urine, serves as an important indicator of fetal well-being.

Progesterone is crucial for the establishment and sustenance of the morula and blastocyst, as it maintains the decidual lining of the uterus, providing essential nutrition for the developing fetus. Produced primarily by the placenta, with 90% of it entering maternal circulation, progesterone serves as a major substrate for cortisol and aldosterone synthesis in the fetal adrenal gland.

hCG, detected by pregnancy tests, sees rapid elevation early on, peaking by week 9 of pregnancy at which point the corpus luteum begins to regress, and the placenta assumes its endocrine functions (Figure 15). It is secreted by cytotrophoblasts and can be detected in maternal blood and urine within 8 days of conception. Its primary function is to maintain the corpus luteum beyond its normal lifespan, leading to increased production of progesterone and estrogen by the corpus luteum. Although hCG levels gradually diminish after this peak, they remain detectable throughout pregnancy. It enhances the production of dihydroepiandrostenedione (DHEA) in the fetal adrenal gland, which is used by the placenta to synthesize estrogens, and stimulates testosterone production in the male fetus. hCG receptors are found in the endometrium and myometrium, where they help reduce uterine contractions induced by oxytocin. It also acts as an immunosuppressant to protect the developing fetus.

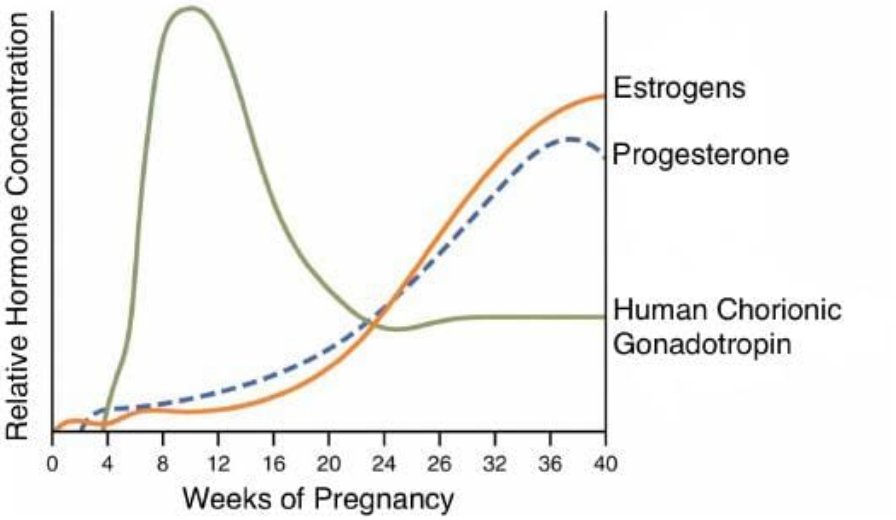


Figure 15 | Estrogen, Progesterone, and Human Chorionic Gonadotropin Levels during Pregnancy | [24] This graph shows the relative concentrations of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), progesterone, and estrogens (total) in maternal circulation from conception to full term (40 weeks of pregnancy). Note the peak of hCG in the first trimester, followed by increasing levels of progesterone and estrogens throughout gestation with a decline in progesterone levels during the very end of pregnancy.

Cortisol contributes to the maturation of fetal organs like the lungs, liver, and various endocrine glands, such as the thyroid and adrenal glands. Simultaneously, they stimulate growth in maternal tissues, resulting in the enlargement of the uterus and the expansion and branching of mammary ducts.

Another hormone, **relaxin**, secreted by the corpus luteum and later by the placenta, plays a vital role in preparing the mother's body for childbirth. It enhances the flexibility of the symphysis pubis joint and pelvic ligaments, allowing the pelvis to accommodate the growing fetus and expand the pelvic outlet for delivery. Relaxin also facilitates cervical dilation during labor.

Furthermore, the anterior pituitary gland enlarges during pregnancy and escalates its hormone production, which leads to elevated levels of TSH, prolactin, and ACTH. TSH, in conjunction with placental hormones, increases the production of thyroid hormones, subsequently elevating the maternal metabolic rate, which can significantly augment the pregnant woman's appetite and give rise to hot flashes. Prolactin stimulates the enlargement of mammary glands in preparation for milk production. ACTH, on the other hand, stimulates maternal cortisol secretion, thereby contributing to fetal protein synthesis. In addition to the pituitary hormones, heightened parathyroid hormone levels trigger the release of calcium from maternal bones, facilitating its utilization by the fetus.

Estrogens further stimulate the production of angiotensinogen in the liver and encourage renin production by the kidneys, resulting in the heightened synthesis of angiotensin II and aldosterone. Although aldosterone secretion increases during pregnancy, clinical manifestations of hyperaldosteronism are typically not observed due to the counteracting influence of

progesterone on aldosterone's renal effects.

Hematologic Changes

Pregnancy represents a unique physiological state characterized by chronic volume overload, leading to profound changes in fluid balance. Total body water, which typically starts at around 6.5 liters, expands to 8.5 liters by the end of pregnancy. At delivery, the fetus, placenta, and amniotic fluid collectively contribute approximately 3.5 liters of water.

One of the most notable physiological adaptations during pregnancy is the significant increase in blood volume. By the time of delivery, blood volume surpasses pre-pregnancy levels by approximately 30%, equivalent to an additional 1 to 2 liters. Plasma volume increases by about 25–40%, while red blood cell volume rises by 18 percent. However, this relative increase in plasma can cause the hematocrit to appear lower, a phenomenon often referred to as **physiologic anemia of pregnancy**. Additionally, leukocyte production is elevated during this time. The expanded blood volume is essential for meeting the heightened nutritional demands of the fetus and ensuring the efficient removal of fetal waste products.

Notably, water retention surpasses sodium retention in pregnancy, which leads to a remarkable 40 to 50 percent increase in plasma volume, accompanied by a decrease in osmolality. As a result, the total plasma protein concentration decreases due to the dilutional impact of the augmented intravascular fluid volume. Simultaneously, RBC volume also experiences an 18 percent increase. However, considering the rise in plasma levels, the concentration of RBCs per mm^3 decreases from 4.5 million to 3.8 million, leading to a reduction in hematocrit levels. This phenomenon contributes to the relative anemia observed during pregnancy. Additionally, the number of leukocytes in the blood increases. Other associated changes include heightened platelet turnover, elevated fibrinogen levels, and an increased tendency for clot formation (hypercoagulability). These changes are part of the body's preparation for labor and delivery and to reduce the risk of excessive bleeding during delivery. There is also an increase in the activity of most clotting factors and enhanced fibrin degradation. Decreased activity of Protein S and increased resistance to Protein C create a pro-thrombotic environment, contributing to **consumption coagulopathy**, also known as **disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)**, where excessive clot formation and fibrin degradation strain the coagulation system. Consequently, there is an elevation in the levels of D-dimers and fibrin degradation products. These changes in the coagulation profile during pregnancy contribute to an increased risk of **deep vein thrombosis** (**DVT**), emphasizing the need for careful monitoring and management of coagulation parameters in pregnant individuals.

The expansion in intravascular fluid volume serves as a critical physiological adaptation to compensate for the expected 300 to 500 mL blood loss associated with vaginal delivery and the average 800-1000 mL blood loss accompanying cesarean section.

Cardiovascular Changes

Pregnancy triggers remarkable cardiovascular adaptations to accommodate the increased physiological demands of the mother and fetus. Cardiac output rises substantially, beginning with a 35% increase by 12 weeks of gestation and stabilizing at 40–50 percent above pre-pregnancy levels for the remainder of pregnancy. Approximately 10 percent of this increased output is directed to the gravid uterus by term. The rise in cardiac output is achieved through two primary mechanisms: a 25–30 percent increase in stroke volume and a 15–25 percent elevation in heart rate. These changes are accompanied by a concurrent decrease in systemic vascular resistance, driven by the placenta's function as an arteriovenous shunt, leading to a reduction in diastolic pressure. Additionally, about 50 percent of pregnant individuals experience reversible cardiac hypertrophy, which may result in conduction changes. Auscultation often reveals a third heart sound (physiological S3) and a split S1 caused by the mitral valve closing slightly earlier than the tricuspid valve.

Labor initiates further increases in cardiac output, with the most significant surge occurring immediately postpartum due to autotransfusion from uterine contraction and the release of aortocaval compression. Postpartum cardiac output may increase by up to 80 percent, posing risks for individuals with preexisting cardiac conditions. Despite these changes, systemic vascular resistance remains low throughout pregnancy, and blood pressure typically does not rise until late gestation. However, aortocaval compression by the growing uterus can impair venous return from the lower body, leading to hypotension and symptoms such as nausea, diaphoresis, and dizziness, collectively known as supine hypotension syndrome. Compensatory mechanisms, such as increased venous pressure below the site of compression and diversion of blood through the paravertebral venous plexuses and azygos vein, help maintain venous return and systemic blood pressure. Reflex increases in sympathetic nervous system activity also contribute to preserving vascular resistance and blood pressure.

Aortocaval compression can significantly affect uterine and placental blood flow. Prolonged maternal hypotension exceeding 10–15 minutes may reduce uterine blood flow, risking progressive fetal acidosis. Additionally, venous compression increases the risk of venous puncture during epidural or spinal anesthesia due to blood redistribution through the internal vertebral venous

plexus. To minimize complications, supine positioning should be avoided during anesthetic administration in the second and third trimesters. Anesthetic techniques that interfere with sympathetic nervous system activity may further compromise compensatory mechanisms, heightening the risk of profound hypotension and compromising maternal and fetal well-being.

Respiratory Changes

During pregnancy, the pulmonary system undergoes a series of physiological adaptations to support the growing fetus and meet increased oxygen demands. Initially, changes occur in the upper respiratory tract, including capillary engorgement in the mucosal lining, often resulting in nasal congestion and nosebleeds, particularly in cold or dry weather. Edema in the vocal cords and arytenoids may also develop, necessitating caution during airway instrumentation. As pregnancy progresses, the growing fetus and uterus displace the diaphragm upward, leading to significant shifts in lung volume dynamics. Functional residual capacity (FRC) and residual volume decrease, while vital capacity, FEV1, and the FEV1-to-forced vital capacity ratio remain unchanged. By the end of pregnancy, FRC is reduced to 80 percent of the non-pregnant value, and in the supine position, it decreases further to 70 percent of its sitting value. Additional factors such as regional anesthesia and obesity can further exacerbate this reduction, creating a compounding effect on diminished FRC.

To compensate for these changes, tidal volume increases by 40 percent, resulting in a 50 percent rise in minute ventilation and enhanced oxygen intake. These adjustments ensure sufficient arterial oxygenation for both the mother and fetus. Expiration and carbon dioxide output also increase, leading to lower maternal blood carbon dioxide levels and mild respiratory alkalosis, which facilitates gas exchange with the placenta. Progesterone plays a critical role in this process by directly influencing the CNS, lowering the set-point for carbon dioxide regulation, and promoting hyperventilation. Maternal carbon dioxide tension (PCO_2) decreases from 40 mm Hg to approximately 32 mm Hg, resulting in compensated respiratory alkalosis characterized by reduced serum PCO_2 and bicarbonate levels. As lung volumes decrease, airway closure phenomena during exhalation may occur, contributing to subtle changes in arterial oxygenation as pregnancy advances. Pregnant women also experience a reduced tolerance for apnea or hypoventilation, highlighting the need to maintain adequate ventilation.

In the later stages of pregnancy, "lightening" occurs as the fetus descends into the pelvis, often alleviating dyspnea and improving maternal respiratory comfort. However, during labor and delivery, the discomfort associated with these processes can lead to further hyperventilation, accentuating the respiratory system's adaptations. These intricate changes ensure the maternal body can effectively meet the oxygen and metabolic demands of pregnancy while preparing for the physiological challenges of delivery.

Table 2 | *Changes in the Pulmonary System during Pregnancy* |

	Value near term compared with non-pregnant state
Minute ventilation	Increased 50%
Tidal volume	Increased 40%
Breathing frequency	Increased 15%
Lung volumes	Decreased 20%
Expiratory reserve volume	Decreased 20%
Residual volume	Decreased 20%
Functional residual capacity	No change
Vital capacity	Decreased 0-5%
Total lung capacity	

	Value near term compared with non-pregnant state
Arterial blood gasses and pH PaO_2 $PaCO_2$ pH	Normal or slightly decreased Decreased 10 mm Hg No change
Oxygen consumption	Increased 20%

Renal Changes

During pregnancy, the urinary system undergoes significant chronological changes to meet the growing physiological demands of the fetus. Early in pregnancy, blood volume and GFR increase significantly, with the GFR rising by approximately 60 percent compared to nonpregnant levels. This elevated GFR results in greater filtration of substances such as glucose and amino acids, sometimes leading to glycosuria and aminoaciduria due to limited tubular reabsorption. Concurrently, the regulation of ADH and thirst adjusts, with a lower set point for both, leading to heightened ADH secretion, increased thirst, and reduced serum osmolality, potentially influenced by hCG, though the exact mechanisms remain unclear.

By the end of the first trimester, normal creatinine levels begin to decline, falling to around 0.7 mg/dL and further decreasing to 0.5–0.6 mg/dL by term. Blood urea nitrogen (BUN) levels also drop. During this period, frequent urination is common, driven by hormonal changes such as the effects of progesterone, which reduces smooth muscle tone in the bladder and ureters. This hormonal effect causes dilation, incomplete bladder emptying, and urine stagnation, increasing the risk of ureteral obstruction, hydronephrosis, and pyelonephritis. Progesterone also promotes natriuresis, leading to sodium loss in the urine. However, this effect is counteracted by heightened renal tubular sodium reabsorption, influenced by aldosterone, estrogen, and deoxycorticosterone. Additionally, the increased GFR contributes to higher urinary excretion of substances, including glucose and critical nutrients like folate and vitamin B12, underscoring the heightened nutritional demands of pregnancy.

As pregnancy progresses, the renal calyces, pelvis, and ureters enlarge further, and urinary excretion of glucose and proteins continues to rise. Mechanical pressure from the growing uterus on the bladder exacerbates urinary frequency, which becomes particularly pronounced at term. This increased frequency is compounded by heightened urine production as the maternal system manages metabolic waste from both the mother and fetus. These changes require a delicate balance to maintain fluid homeostasis and ensure fetal growth and maternal well-being. However, the urinary system's vulnerability during pregnancy is evident, with complications such as urolithiasis occurring in approximately 1 in 200 pregnancies. These intricate physiological adjustments emphasize the dynamic nature of renal function during pregnancy and the importance of monitoring for potential complications.

Digestive Changes

Nausea and vomiting, commonly referred to as "morning sickness," are frequent discomforts during the early stages of pregnancy, affecting approximately 70 percent of women. These symptoms are driven by significant hormonal fluctuations, including increases in estrogen, progesterone, and hCG. This hormonal surge heightens sensitivity to various stimuli, particularly odors, which can easily trigger nausea. Additionally, changes in gastrointestinal motility, such as decreased intestinal peristalsis, contribute to nausea. These symptoms typically begin early in pregnancy, with relief often occurring around the 12th week, though some women experience persistent discomfort beyond the first trimester.

As pregnancy progresses, the fetus begins to rely on glucose as its primary energy source, which is transported across the placenta through facilitated diffusion. Amino acids, on the other hand, are actively transported from maternal to fetal blood because the fetal amino acid concentration is often higher than in maternal blood. This process requires energy (from ATP) to move amino acids against their concentration gradient. Ketones diffuse freely across the placental barrier, providing an

alternative energy source when needed. Pregnancy is characterized as a diabetogenic state due to the effects of placental hormones such as placental lactogen, human growth hormone (somatomammotropin), cortisol, and progesterone, which increase insulin resistance. To meet the elevated metabolic demands, insulin levels rise, along with thyroid hormones that boost the metabolic rate. Other hormones, including PTH, relaxin, aldosterone, TSH, prolactin, ACTH, glucocorticoids, and gastrin, also increase, promoting amino acid mobilization, enhanced calcium regulation, and overall physiological adaptations required for fetal development and maternal well-being.

During the later stages of pregnancy, gastrointestinal changes become more pronounced due to both hormonal and mechanical influences. Progesterone reduces the tone and motility of the GI tract, leading to bloating and constipation. Constipation is exacerbated by mechanical obstruction caused by the enlarging uterus, decreased intestinal motility, and increased water absorption in the intestines. Heartburn, a common discomfort, arises from a combination of increased intra-abdominal pressure from the growing uterus, diminished competence of the lower esophageal sphincter, and delayed gastric emptying. This delayed gastric emptying can be further exacerbated by the onset of labor or the administration of opioids, increasing the risk of pulmonary aspiration in some cases.

Pregnancy also alters biliary function, increasing cholesterol saturation in bile and raising the risk of gallstone formation. Elevated levels of gastrin contribute to increased gastric volume and decreased pH, intensifying digestive discomfort. Additionally, liver enzymes, including aspartate aminotransferase, alanine aminotransferase, lactate dehydrogenase, and alkaline phosphatase, are typically elevated, reflecting the metabolic adaptations required to support maternal and fetal needs.

Metabolic Changes

Pregnancy induces metabolic changes that facilitate the transfer of essential nutrients to the growing fetus. The fetus demands a readily convertible source of energy, leading to sustained high blood glucose levels after meals to facilitate placental transfer. This metabolic demand results in less glycogen being deposited in the maternal muscle and liver, allowing more glucose to circulate for an extended duration in the maternal bloodstream. The positive nitrogen balance peaks at the 28th week, with a total retention of 500 grams by the end of pregnancy, distributed equally between fetal and maternal gains. This period is characterized by an increased appetite and reduced gastrointestinal motility, contributing to improved nutrient absorption. Hormones such as hCG and **placental growth hormone** play a role in decreasing deamination, subsequently reducing urea levels in urine. By the 30th week of pregnancy, approximately 9 pounds of fat are stored, accompanied by an increase in blood fat levels. Notably, pregnant individuals are more susceptible to ketosis under conditions of stress, such as during labor.

Integumentary Changes

During pregnancy, hyperpigmentation manifests as various skin changes, often attributed to increased levels of estrogen. This hormonal influence contributes to the development of spider angiomas on the face, upper chest, and arms, as well as palmar erythema. Estrogen-mediated effects extend to the skin, causing an increase in eccrine sweating and sebum excretion. Additionally, stretching the skin during pregnancy may result in striae gravidarum, commonly known as stretch marks. These dermatological alterations are characteristic responses to the complex hormonal shifts that occur during pregnancy, emphasizing the multifaceted nature of physiological changes in expectant mothers.

Skeletal Changes

During pregnancy, hormonal changes, including increased levels of progesterone and relaxin, initiate adjustments in the maternal musculoskeletal and calcium regulatory systems to support fetal development and prepare the body for childbirth. Early in pregnancy, relaxin and progesterone promote the relaxation of the pubic symphysis and sacroiliac joints, facilitating childbirth biomechanics. This relaxation, however, contributes to lordosis, an excessive inward curvature of the spine, which develops as the center of gravity shifts to remain over the legs. While this adjustment is necessary for maintaining balance, it can result in gait unsteadiness and increased susceptibility to falls, often causing discomfort for expectant mothers.

Simultaneously, total serum calcium levels begin to decline due to reduced serum albumin levels, reaching their lowest point around 34–36 weeks. However, serum-ionized calcium remains constant, maintaining vital physiological functions. Pregnancy is marked by "physiologic hyperparathyroidism," characterized by increased calcium absorption in the gut and reduced renal calcium losses. These adaptations ensure adequate calcium availability without depleting maternal bone density, although the rate of bone turnover and remodeling progressively increases, reaching twice the normal rate by term. Elevated calcium reabsorption in the kidneys and increased levels of 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D further support maternal and fetal calcium needs, ensuring critical skeletal and metabolic development.[25]

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

This page titled 17.14: Maternal Changes During Pregnancy is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.15: Autotransfusion

During labor, the uterus undergoes powerful contractions, leading to the displacement of blood into circulation. In the first stage of labor, there is a notable increase in cardiac output, rising by approximately 20 percent. As labor progresses to the second stage, characterized by the delivery of the baby, the cardiac output experiences a more substantial surge, elevating by around 50 percent. Following the delivery of the placenta, there is a remarkable spike in cardiac output, reaching up to 80 percent above prelabor levels. However, this heightened cardiac output is a transient phenomenon, as it gradually returns to prelabor levels within 48 hours and eventually stabilizes at pre pregnancy levels within 12 to 24 weeks postpartum. These dynamic changes in cardiac output during labor are integral components of the physiological adaptations that support the birthing process.

This page titled 17.15: Autotransfusion is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.16: Physiology of Labor

Childbirth, medically known as **parturition**, typically occurs within a week of a woman's due date, unless it is a multiple pregnancy, which tends to lead to early labor. As pregnancy approaches its final stages, several physiological changes come into play, driven by hormonal triggers that initiate labor. Progesterone, which initially inhibits uterine contractions during the early months of pregnancy, starts to taper off as pregnancy progresses into the seventh month. In contrast, estrogen levels in the mother's bloodstream continue to rise, altering the balance of these hormones. This shift, favoring estrogen over progesterone, renders the myometrium more susceptible to stimuli promoting contractions since progesterone's inhibitory effect diminishes. Furthermore, fetal cortisol levels increase by the eighth month of pregnancy, stimulating the placenta to produce more estrogen, which further counters the uterine-relaxing impact of progesterone. Some women might feel this hormonal shift as weak, irregular peristaltic contractions known as **Braxton Hicks** contractions or false labor. These contractions often subside with rest or adequate hydration.

An indicator of imminent labor, often associated with shorter labor, is the "bloody show." During pregnancy, a mucus plug accumulates in the cervical canal, sealing the entrance to the uterus. Approximately 1-2 days before the onset of true labor, this plug loosens and is expelled, accompanied by a small amount of blood. Simultaneously, the posterior pituitary increases its release of oxytocin, a hormone that triggers uterine contractions. As labor approaches, the myometrium becomes more responsive to oxytocin by producing more receptors for this hormone. Oxytocin then starts to induce stronger, more painful uterine contractions, which, in a positive feedback loop, stimulate the release of prostaglandins **PGF2α** and **PGE2** from fetal membranes. Similar to oxytocin, prostaglandins enhance the strength of uterine contractions. The fetal pituitary also secretes oxytocin, further amplifying prostaglandin production. Given the crucial roles of oxytocin and prostaglandins in initiating and sustaining labor, it is common practice to use synthetic versions of these compounds through intravenous drip to induce labor when it is not progressing as needed. Lastly, the expansion of the myometrium and cervix due to the presence of a full-term fetus in the vertex (head-down) position is recognized as a stimulant for uterine contractions. The culmination of these changes triggers the regular contractions characteristic of true labor, intensifying in strength and frequency over time. The pain experienced during labor is attributed to the hypoxia (oxygen deprivation) of the myometrium during uterine contractions.

Stages of Childbirth

The journey from conception to the onset of labor encompasses distinct phases in the uterine environment. **Phase 0**, marked by a quiescent uterus, is associated with decreased levels of cAMP, cGMP, and MLCK activity, influenced by hormones like progesterone, relaxin, prostacyclin, and nitric oxide. As uterine activation commences in **Phase 1**, there is a notable upregulation of contraction-associated proteins, such as connexin-43, leading to an increase in gap junctions. The myometrial oxytocin receptor experiences a significant 50-fold increase, rendering the uterus responsive to uterotonins like oxytocin. Concurrently, there is dilation and effacement of the cervix, accompanied by cervical softening due to the rearrangement of collagen fibers and glycosaminoglycans. Hormonally, an elevated estrogen to progesterone ratio characterizes this phase. In **Phase 2**, spanning from the delivery of the fetus to the delivery of the placenta, the activated uterus responds to stimuli such as platelet-activating factor, endothelin, and Angiotensin II. Finally, **Phase 3** involves the delivery of the placenta, with oxytocin playing a crucial role in postpartum bleeding and the involution of the uterus (Figure 16).

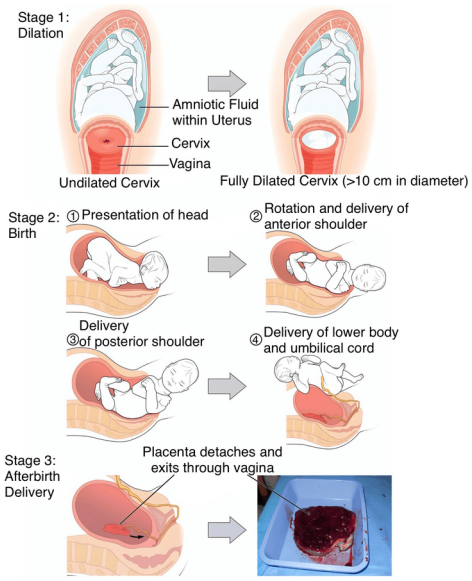


Figure 16 | Phases of labor and delivery | [26] The image outlines the sequential stages of childbirth. Stage 1: Dilation focuses on the crucial transformation of the cervix from undilated to over 10 cm in diameter, allowing passage of the fetal head. Stage 2: Birth details the mechanics of vaginal delivery, commencing with head presentation, followed by the rotation and delivery of the shoulders, and the subsequent emergence of the rest of the body and umbilical cord. Stage 3: Afterbirth Delivery illustrates the final expulsion of the placenta and associated membranes from the uterus following the birth of the newborn.

Cervical Dilation

Full cervical dilation to 10 cm in diameter, wide enough to allow the newborn's head to pass through, is imperative for vaginal birth. The dilation phase, which is the longest, usually spans 6–12 hours. However, this duration can significantly vary, lasting from minutes to hours, even days, depending on whether the mother has previously given birth. Typically, with each successive labor, this stage becomes shorter. The advancement of true labor follows a positive feedback loop. Uterine contractions stretch the cervix, promoting both dilation and effacement (thinning of the cervix). The cervical stretching instigates reflexive uterine contractions, further dilating and thinning the cervix. Additionally, cervical dilation stimulates the pituitary gland to release more oxytocin, intensifying uterine contractions. At the onset of labor, contractions may be sporadic, occurring every 3–30 minutes and lasting 20–40 seconds. However, as this stage nears its end, contractions can become more frequent, happening every 1.5–2 minutes and lasting a full minute.

Each contraction significantly reduces the oxygenated blood supply to the fetus. Therefore, a period of relaxation must follow each contraction. Sustained alterations in the fetal heart rate, either decreases or increases, signify fetal distress, which can result from overly forceful or lengthy contractions, hindering the restoration of oxygenated blood to the fetus. Emergency interventions like vacuum extraction, forceps delivery, or Cesarean section might be necessary in such situations. The amniotic membranes usually rupture at the end of the dilation stage due to the mounting pressure from the fetal head entering the birth canal.

Expulsion Stage

The expulsion stage commences when the fetal head enters the birth canal and concludes with the birth of the newborn. This phase typically spans up to 2 hours but can be shorter or longer, depending partly on the fetal orientation. The vertex presentation, known as the occiput anterior vertex, is the most common and facilitates vaginal birth, as the smallest part of the head, the posterior aspect or occiput, emerges first. In less than 5 percent of childbirth, the baby is in the breech presentation, with the buttocks descending first. Both legs are crossed and oriented downward for complete breech, while in frank breech presentation, the legs are oriented upward. Until the 1960s, vaginal delivery of breech presentations was common, but today, most breech births are managed by Cesarean section.

Vaginal birth significantly stretches the vaginal canal, cervix, and perineum. Traditionally, obstetricians would numb the perineum and perform an episiotomy, which involves making an incision in the posterior vaginal wall and perineum. Nowadays, perineal tears are allowed to occur naturally during birth. Episiotomies and perineal tears require suturing shortly after birth to ensure

optimal healing. Although suturing a jagged perineal tear may be more challenging than suturing an episiotomy, tears generally heal more quickly, with less pain and damage to the surrounding muscles of the vagina and rectum. After the newborn's head is delivered, an obstetrician usually clears mucus from the baby's mouth and nose before their first breath. Subsequently, the rest of the baby's body follows quickly. The umbilical cord is double-clamped, and a cut is made between the clamps, concluding the second stage of childbirth.

Afterbirth

The final stage of childbirth is the delivery of the placenta and associated membranes, often referred to as the afterbirth. Once the newborn is expelled, the myometrium continues contracting, detaching the placenta from the uterine wall, which is then quickly delivered through the vagina. Subsequent uterine contractions help minimize blood loss at the placental site. The delivery of the placenta signifies the onset of the postpartum period, which spans approximately six weeks following childbirth. The mother's body gradually returns to a nonpregnant state during this time. If the placenta does not emerge spontaneously within about 30 minutes, it is considered retained, and an obstetrician may attempt manual removal. Surgical intervention may be required if this proves unsuccessful. The obstetrician must examine the placenta and fetal membranes to ensure their integrity. Fragments of the placenta left in the uterus can lead to postpartum hemorrhage. Uterine contractions persist for several hours after birth, facilitating the return of the uterus to its pre-pregnancy size in a process called **involution**, allowing the mother's abdominal organs to return to their pre-pregnancy positions. Breastfeeding supports this process.[25]

This page titled 17.16: Physiology of Labor is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.17: Adjustments of the Infant at Birth and Postnatal Stages

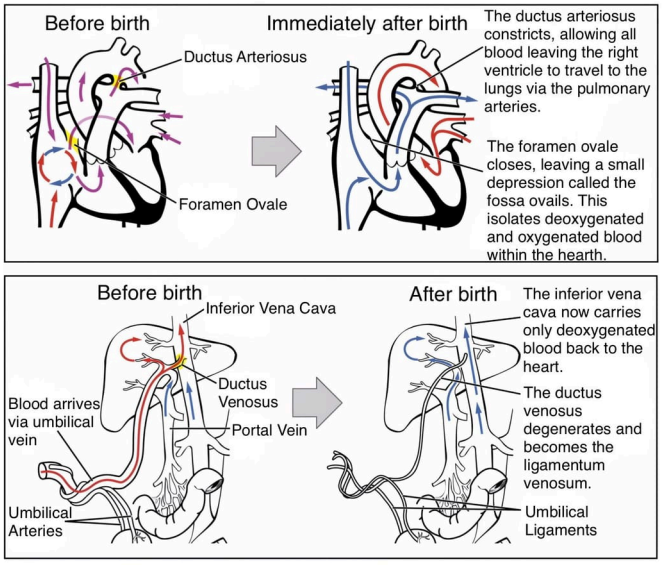


Figure 17 | Changes in the circulatory system at birth | [27] The upper panel illustrates the closure of the ductus arteriosus and foramen ovale, while the lower panel shows the obliteration of the ductus venosus and umbilical vessels, re-routing blood flow to the lungs and liver.

Circulatory Adjustments

After birth, the newborn must rapidly adapt to a new environment. One of the most critical changes is the immediate reconfiguration of the circulatory system. The three fetal shunts close permanently, redirecting blood flow to the lungs and liver (Figure 17). Among these, the ductus venosus, which allows oxygen-rich blood from the umbilical vein to bypass the liver and flow directly into the inferior vena cava during fetal life, becomes obsolete once the umbilical cord is clamped and placental blood flow ceases. Consequently, the ductus venosus collapses and is gradually replaced by fibrous tissue, a process that typically completes within the first week after birth, although full fibrotic remodeling may take longer. The remnants of the ductus venosus form the **ligamentum venosum**, a fibrous structure on the liver's inferior surface. While it serves no functional purpose in adults, the ligamentum venosum remains a marker of this vital fetal circulatory adaptation.

Respiratory Adjustments

The fetus "practices" breathing by inhaling amniotic fluid in utero, although real breathing is not possible within the womb due to the absence of air—several factors prompt newborns to take their first breath at birth. Labor contractions transiently constrict umbilical blood vessels, temporarily reducing oxygenated blood flow and elevating carbon dioxide levels, leading to respiratory center stimulation in the newborn's brain and initiating the first breath. This initial breath plays a crucial role in transitioning from the fetal to the neonatal circulatory pattern. Inflating the lungs results in decreased blood pressure in the pulmonary system, the right atrium, and the ventricle. In response to this pressure change, blood flow briefly reverses direction through the foramen ovale, from the left to the right atrium, occluding the shunt with two flaps of tissue. These flaps typically fuse over the shunt within a year, converting the foramen ovale into the **fossa ovalis**. Increased oxygen concentration leads to the constriction of the ductus arteriosus, ultimately transforming it into the **ligamentum arteriosum**. Closure of the ductus arteriosus ensures that the functional neonatal lungs oxygenate all blood pumped into the pulmonary circuit.

Thermoregulatory Adjustments

The fetus is enveloped in warm amniotic fluid in the womb, maintaining a consistent temperature of around 98.6°F. However, birth exposes newborns to a cooler external environment where they must regulate their body temperature. Newborns face the challenge of maintaining body temperature because they have a higher surface area-to-volume ratio than adults, which means they produce heat more slowly and lose it more rapidly. Newborns also have underdeveloped musculature, making them incapable of generating heat through shivering, and their nervous systems are not fully mature, so they cannot quickly constrict surface blood vessels in response to cold. Additionally, they have limited subcutaneous fat for insulation. However, newborns have a unique mechanism for heat production known as **non-shivering thermogenesis**, which involves the breakdown of brown adipose tissue, or brown fat, distributed over the back, chest, and shoulders. Brown fat differs from white fat as it is highly vascularized and contains specialized mitochondria capable of producing more heat and less ATP than standard mitochondria. Brown fat is automatically activated when exposed to cold, serving as a vital heat regulator in newborns. During fetal development, the placenta releases substances that inhibit brown adipose tissue metabolism, leading to its accumulation in preparation for birth.

Gastrointestinal and Urinary Adjustments

In adults, the gastrointestinal tract houses a rich population of beneficial bacterial flora that aid in digestion, vitamin production, and protection against pathogens. In contrast, the fetal intestine is sterile. The first ingestion of breast milk or formula introduces beneficial bacteria to the neonatal gastrointestinal tract, initiating the establishment of the bacterial flora.[28]

This page titled 17.17: Adjustments of the Infant at Birth and Postnatal Stages is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.18: Lactation

Lactation is a process by which the mammary glands of the postpartum female breast synthesize and release milk in response to infant suckling. Breast milk, considered the ideal source of nutrition and passive immunity for the infant, offers numerous benefits. It stimulates mild uterine contractions that assist in returning the uterus to its pre-pregnancy size, a process known as involution. Additionally, lactation significantly increases the mother's metabolism, aiding in using fat reserves accumulated during pregnancy.

The anterior pituitary hormone prolactin is central to the initiation and maintenance of breast milk supply. Prolactin plays a crucial role in ensuring a continuous milk supply and in mobilizing maternal micronutrients for breast milk production. After giving birth, the baseline prolactin level declines substantially. However, it experiences a brief surge, lasting about an hour, during each feeding session to stimulate milk production for the subsequent feeding. With each prolactin surge, there are slight increases in estrogen and progesterone levels.

When the infant suckles, sensory nerve fibers in the areola trigger a neuroendocrine reflex, this reflex leads to the secretion of milk from specialized cells called lactocytes into small sacs known as alveoli. Simultaneously, the posterior pituitary releases oxytocin, which prompts myoepithelial cells to contract and expel milk from the alveoli. This milk travels through lactiferous ducts, accumulates in lactiferous sinuses, and eventually exits through nipple pores. Astonishingly, the entire process occurs in under one minute, from the infant's initial suckling (the latent period) to the milk's release.

The synthesis of milk under the influence of prolactin evolves over time. Frequent milk removal through breastfeeding or pumping will help maintain elevated prolactin levels for several months. However, even with ongoing breastfeeding, the baseline prolactin level gradually decreases to its pre-pregnancy state. Beyond prolactin and oxytocin, other hormones, such as growth hormone, cortisol, parathyroid hormone, and insulin, also contribute to lactation. These hormones facilitate the transport of maternal amino acids, fatty acids, glucose, and calcium to breast milk, further enhancing its nutritional value for the infant.[29]

This page titled 17.18: Lactation is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

17.19: References

1. Marieb, E. N., & Hoehn, K. (2022). Fertilization and early embryonic development. In *Human anatomy & physiology*(12th ed., pp. 1190-1205). Pearson.

2. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.2 Sperm and the Process of Fertilization. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/104fc054c328beb7d972cf1b1eba4971b810b53c

3. Saladin, K. S. (2024). Fertilization, pregnancy, and embryonic development. In *Anatomy & physiology: The unity of form and function* (11th ed., pp. 1100-1115). McGraw-Hill Education.

4. Sadler, T. W. (2024). Cleavage and blastulation. In *Langman's medical embryology* (14th ed., pp. 45-58). Wolters Kluwer.

5. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.5 Pre-Embryonic Development. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/bf32ce2bdd43df5dc92052915f816e9f912a3b65

6. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.6 Implantation. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/f4ce2f7ee1d6ca72f6092c02388a4c2fff5cb978

7. Moore, K. L., Persaud, T. V. N., & Torchia, M. G. (2020). The first week of human development. In *The developing human: Clinically oriented embryology* (11th ed., pp. 45-60). Elsevier.

8. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.8 Development of the Embryonic Disc. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/0d6b8747da34cced1bee1c457d26d34ba5e36d27

9. Carlson, B. M. (2019). The second week of human development: The bilaminar germ disc and extraembryonic structures. In *Human embryology and developmental biology* (6th ed., pp. 65-80). Elsevier.

10. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.9 Germ Layers. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/9c163e061a5bd0ee52b56aed155ac3083230942a

11. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.10 Fates of Germ Layers in Embryo. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/3bcd40f8fe8ef93b416c7c9d2388f3b99467650 6

12. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.11 Cross-Section of the Placenta. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/bb1057e3821ed5058d0a744b9fedc1bf95b36b94

13. Guyton, A. C., & Hall, J. E. (2021). Physiology of pregnancy and fetal development. In *Guyton and Hall textbook of medical physiology* (14th ed., pp. 1025-1040). Elsevier.

14. Häggström, M. (2010). Arterial vasculature of the non-pregnant uterus [Image]. Wikimedia Commons. Retrieved December 3, 2024, from https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/08/Uterine_arterial_vasculature.svg

15. Drake, R. L., Vogl, A. W., & Mitchell, A. W. M. (2020). Pelvis and perineum. In *Gray's anatomy for students* (4th ed., pp. 450-455). Elsevier.

16. Pandher, S. (c. 2012). *Placenta and amniotic fluid* [PowerPoint slides]. SlideShare. Retrieved from https://www.slideshare.net/shailpandher/placenta-and-amniotic-fluid

17. Gabbe, S. G., Niebyl, J. R., Simpson, J. L., Landon, M. B., Galan, H. L., Jauniaux, E. R. M., & Driscoll, D. A. (2022). Physiology of pregnancy. In *Gabbe's obstetrics: Normal and problem pregnancies* (8th ed., pp. 100-115). Elsevier.

18. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.13 Neurulation. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/10869e065f7133a1cb5821a6139c5f85cd46368d

19. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.14 Embryonic Folding. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/4a7fa2c5af63f94ace36aca2f7cb6bd84b42e2b4

20. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.15 Embryo at 7 Weeks. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/7cdb646fa47fb98847d2b30213828982e62912f2

21. Sadler, T. W. (2024). Organogenesis. In *Langman's medical embryology* (14th ed., pp. 95-150). Wolters Kluwer.

22. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.17 Fetal Circulatory System. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/1ff4d1b44c538f7e77a29b62d33d19332bd6c8f8

23. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.18 Size of Uterus throughout Pregnancy. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/e718d47991c6d285568eff4af498bc564cc2961d

24. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.20 Hormones Initiating Labor. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/be5a1ed3897d9489d381ff07cfe9761da1ab3b2e

25. Cunningham, F. G., Leveno, K. J., Bloom, S. L., Dashe, J. S., Hoffman, B. L., Casey, B. M., & Spong, J. C. (2022). Maternal physiology. In *Williams obstetrics* (26th ed., pp. 119-150). McGraw Hill.

26. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.21 Stages of Childbirth. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/5977156db7fb8d9873006a8d227432c478590b0b

27. Betts, J. G. et al. (2022). Figure 28.22 Neonatal Circulatory System. In *Anatomy and Physiology 2e*. OpenStax. https://openstax.org/apps/archive/20241024.164013/resources/92934570778a921663777dbb98048ac432701e87

28. Kliegman, R. M., St. Geme, J. W., Blum, N. J., Shah, S. S., Tasker, R. C., & Wilson, K. M. (2020). Physiology of the newborn. In *Nelson textbook of pediatrics* (21st ed., pp. 78-95). Elsevier.

29. Blackburn, S. T. (2018). Lactation. In *Maternal, fetal, & neonatal physiology: A clinical perspective* (5th ed., pp. 600-615). Elsevier.

This page titled 17.19: References is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

INDEX

A

acetylcholine
- 2.3.10: Neurotransmitters

ACTH
- 7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus

Action Potential
- 2: Neurophysiology
- 2.3.5: Voltage-gated Sodium and Potassium Ion Channels
- 2.3.6: Action Potential
- 2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission
- 2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential
- 4.2: Introduction

action potentials
- 1.4: Electrical Activity of the Cell Membrane
- 2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential
- 4.3: Sensory Receptors

actionpotential
- 6.4: Skeletal Muscle

active transport
- 1.1: Objectives
- 1.3: Membrane Transport
- 1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport

acute pain
- 4.4: Physiology of Pain

adaptation
- 4.3: Sensory Receptors

ADH
- 7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion
- 7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus

adrenal glands
- 7.15: Adrenal Glands
- 7.4: Endocrine Glands

adrenal medulla
- 5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System

adrenergic
- 5.1: Objectives
- 5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System
- 5.8: Dual Innervation

adrenergic receptors
- 5.9: Autonomic Tone

afferent
- 2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types

aldosterone
- 7.15: Adrenal Glands

amino acids
- 1.3: Membrane Transport
- 1.6.3: Protein Metabolism

amnesia
- 3.9: Memory

amphipathic
- 1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids

anabolic
- 1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions

anabolism
- 1.6: Cellular Metabolism

anaerobic respiration
- 1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism

anatomy
- 1.7: References
- 11: Renal Physiology
- 2.4: References
- 3.11: The Spinal Cord
- 3.14: References
- 4.5: References
- 5.1: Objectives
- 5.11: References
- 6.7: References
- 7.17: References
- 9: The Heart

anemia
- 8.4: Composition of Blood
- 8.8: Erythrocytes

ANS
- 5.2: Introduction
- 5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems
- 5.8: Dual Innervation

antagonistic effect
- 7.8: Target Cell Response

antibodies
- 8.6: Blood Plasma

anticoagulants
- 8.1: Objectives

apoptosis
- 1.5.3: Lysosomes

aqueduct
- 3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal

arachnoid mater
- 3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord

astrocyte
- 2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS

astrocytes
- 2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS

ATP
- 1.1: Objectives
- 1.5.4: Mitochondria
- 1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions
- 1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism
- 1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism
- 3.2: Introduction
- 6.1: Objectives

autocrine
- 7.3: Chemical Signaling

autoimmune
- 7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion

autonomic
- 5: The Autonomic Nervous System
- 5.1: Objectives
- 5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS
- 5.11: References
- 5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
- 5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System
- 5.8: Dual Innervation

autonomic nervous system
- 5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
- 5.7: Short and Long Reflexes

autonomic tone
- 5.9: Autonomic Tone

autonomicnervoussystem
- 5.2: Introduction

autophagy
- 1.5.3: Lysosomes

autoregulation
- 3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain

axon
- 2.3.1: Neurons

axons
- 3.12: Nerves

B

balance
- 3.13: Reflexes

barrier
- 1.2: The Cell Membrane

bilayer
- 1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids

binding proteins
- 7.6: Hormone Transportation

biochemical reactions
- 1.5: The Cytoplasm and Cellular Organelles

biochemistry
- 1.7: References
- 6.7: References

biomembranes
- 1.7: References

blood
- 10: Blood Vessels and Circulation
- 8: The Blood
- 8.2: Introduction
- 8.3: Functions of Blood
- 8.4: Composition of Blood
- 8.5: Characteristics of Blood
- 8.6: Blood Plasma
- 8.8: Erythrocytes

blood cells
- 8.7: Hematopoiesis

blood functions
- 8.1: Objectives

blood plasma
- 8.1: Objectives

blood pressure
- 5.9: Autonomic Tone

blood supply
- 11: Renal Physiology
- 3: The Central Nervous System
- 3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain
- 9: The Heart

blood vessels
- 8.2: Introduction

blood_brain_barrier
- 2.1: Objectives

bloodsupply
- 3.2: Introduction

body function
- 8.3: Functions of Blood

bone
- 6.6: Bone Tissue

bone marrow
8.7: Hematopoiesis
8.9: Leukocytes
bone tissue
6: Physiology of Muscle and Bone Tissues
bones
6.2: Introduction
brain
2.2: Introduction
2.4: References
3: The Central Nervous System
3.1: Objectives
3.10: Sleep
3.14: References
3.2: Introduction
3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord
3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal
3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain
3.8: The Brain
brain communication
2.3.1: Neurons
brain function
3.9: Memory
brain protection
3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord
brain stem
5.7: Short and Long Reflexes
brainstem
3.8: The Brain
5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS

C

calcitriol
7.14: Vitamin D (1,25-Dihydrocholecalciferol)
calcium
6.6: Bone Tissue
calcium absorption
7.13: The Parathyroid Glands
calcium regulation
7.12: The Thyroid Gland
7.13: The Parathyroid Glands
calcium_ions
6.1: Objectives
calciumBalance
7.14: Vitamin D (1,25-Dihydrocholecalciferol)
carbohydrates
1.1: Objectives
1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane
1.6: Cellular Metabolism
1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions
1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism
carbon dioxide
8.8: Erythrocytes
cardiac
6.2: Introduction
9: The Heart
cardiac cycle
9: The Heart
cardiac muscle
6.3: Muscle Tissue
cardiac output
3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain
9: The Heart
cardiacmuscle
5.2: Introduction
cardiovascular
5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems
7.17: References
cardiovascular system
8.2: Introduction
cardiovascularsystem
3.2: Introduction
carrier proteins
1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport
catabolic
1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions
catabolism
1.6: Cellular Metabolism
cell division
1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton
cell junctions
1.5.8: Cell Junctions
cell membrane
1: Cell Physiology
1.2: The Cell Membrane
1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane
1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins
1.3: Membrane Transport
1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport
1.3.3: Vesicular Transport
1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential
2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission
cell mobility
1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton
cell organelles
1.5.7: The Nucleus
cellmembrane
1.1: Objectives
1.7: References
cells
1.5: The Cytoplasm and Cellular Organelles
2.3: Nervous Tissue
cellular architecture
1.5: The Cytoplasm and Cellular Organelles
cellular compartments
1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus
cellular functions
1.5: The Cytoplasm and Cellular Organelles
cellular metabolism
1: Cell Physiology
cellular organelle
1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus
1.5.5: Peroxisome
cellular organelles
1: Cell Physiology
cellular respiration
1.5.4: Mitochondria
cellular responses
7.7: Mechanisms of Hormone Action
7.8: Target Cell Response
cellular_respiration
6.1: Objectives
central nervous system
3.12: Nerves
3.13: Reflexes
3.14: References
4.2: Introduction
central_peripheral_division
2.1: Objectives
centralnervoussystem
3.11: The Spinal Cord
3.2: Introduction
cerebellum
3.8: The Brain
cerebral
3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal
cerebral blood flow
3.1: Objectives
3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain
cerebral circulation
3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain
cerebral hemodynamics
3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain
cerebrospinal fluid
3: The Central Nervous System
3.1: Objectives
3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord
cerebrospinalfluid
3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal
cerebrum
3.8: The Brain
channel proteins
1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins
channels
1.4: Electrical Activity of the Cell Membrane
characteristics
8: The Blood
charge
1.4: Electrical Activity of the Cell Membrane
chemical signaling
7: Endocrine Physiology
7.3: Chemical Signaling
chemoreceptors
4.3: Sensory Receptors
childbirth
7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion
chloride ions
2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential
cholesterol
1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane
7.5: Types of Hormones
cholinergic
5.1: Objectives
5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System
choroid
3.6: Cerebrospinal Fluid
chromatin
1.5.7: The Nucleus
chronic pain
4.4: Physiology of Pain
circadian rhythm
3.10: Sleep
Circadian Rhythms
7.5: Types of Hormones
circulation
3.1: Objectives
3.6: Cerebrospinal Fluid
8.2: Introduction
8.5: Characteristics of Blood
citric acid cycle
1.5.4: Mitochondria

CNS
2: Neurophysiology
2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS
3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord
5.7: Short and Long Reflexes
coagulation process
8.1: Objectives
coenzymes
1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism
cognitive processes
3.8: The Brain
cognitiveintegration
2.2: Introduction
collagen
1.6.3: Protein Metabolism
communication
2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission
comparison
5: The Autonomic Nervous System
composition
8: The Blood
computational
2.3: Nervous Tissue
concentration gradient
1.3.1: Passive Transport
conduction
2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types
conformational changes
2.3.5: Voltage-gated Sodium and Potassium Ion Channels
connective tissue
3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord
8.2: Introduction
connexons
1.5.8: Cell Junctions
consciousness
3.10: Sleep
coordination
3.13: Reflexes
cortex
3.1: Objectives
cortisol
7.15: Adrenal Glands
7.5: Types of Hormones
cranial nerves
3.12: Nerves
5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
craniosacral
5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
csf
3.6: Cerebrospinal Fluid
cytokines
8.7: Hematopoiesis
cytoplasm
1.5: The Cytoplasm and Cellular Organelles
cytoskeleton
1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton

D

deamination
1.6.3: Protein Metabolism
deep sleep
3.10: Sleep
defense mechanisms
8.9: Leukocytes
dendrites
2.3.1: Neurons
depolarization
2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential
2.3.5: Voltage-gated Sodium and Potassium Ion Channels
2.3.6: Action Potential
2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission
2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential
desmosomes
1.5.8: Cell Junctions
detoxification
1.5.5: Peroxisome
diabetes
7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas
7.17: References
dietaryIntake
7.14: Vitamin D (1,25-Dihydrocholecalciferol)
differentiation
3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord
diffusion
1.1: Objectives
1.3.1: Passive Transport
diffusion potential
1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential
digestion
1.5.3: Lysosomes
1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions
digestive organs
5.7: Short and Long Reflexes
digestive system
5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
diseases
8.9: Leukocytes
disorders
7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion
DNA
1.5: The Cytoplasm and Cellular Organelles
1.5.7: The Nucleus
dopamine
2.3.10: Neurotransmitters
dual innervation
5.8: Dual Innervation
dualinnervation
5.1: Objectives
dura mater
3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord
dynamics
3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal

E

ectoderm
3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord
education
5.11: References
effector organs
5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
efferent
5.2: Introduction
electrical
2.3: Nervous Tissue
electrical activity
1: Cell Physiology
electrical changes
2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission
electrical signals
1.4: Electrical Activity of the Cell Membrane
4.2: Introduction
electrocardiogram
9: The Heart
electrochemical gradients
1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport
electrolytes
11: Renal Physiology
3.6: Cerebrospinal Fluid
8.5: Characteristics of Blood
8.6: Blood Plasma
electromagnetic receptors
4.3: Sensory Receptors
electrophysiology
9: The Heart
embryodevelopment
3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord
embryology
3.14: References
embryonic development
3: The Central Nervous System
3.1: Objectives
emotional
5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS
endocrine
7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas
7.2: Introduction
7.3: Chemical Signaling
7.4: Endocrine Glands
7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion
endocrine system
7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion
7.15: Adrenal Glands
7.5: Types of Hormones
endocrinesystem
7.17: References
endocytosis
1.3.3: Vesicular Transport
1.7: References
endoplasmic reticulum
1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum
1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus
1.5.5: Peroxisome
energy
1.6: Cellular Metabolism
1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions
1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism
3.2: Introduction
energy production
1.5.4: Mitochondria
1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism
enzymatic degradation
7.6: Hormone Transportation
enzyme activation
7.7: Mechanisms of Hormone Action

enzymes
1.5.3: Lysosomes
1.5.4: Mitochondria
1.5.5: Peroxisome
1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions
epinephrine
2.3.10: Neurotransmitters
7.15: Adrenal Glands
episodic memory
3.9: Memory
epithelial cells
1.5.8: Cell Junctions
equilibrium potential
1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential
erythrocyte life cycle
8.1: Objectives
erythrocytes
8: The Blood
8.4: Composition of Blood
8.7: Hematopoiesis
8.8: Erythrocytes
erythropoietin
8.7: Hematopoiesis
estrogen
7.8: Target Cell Response
estrogens
7.5: Types of Hormones
eukaryotic cells
1.5: The Cytoplasm and Cellular Organelles
excitation_contraction_coupling
6.1: Objectives
excitationcontractioncoupling
6.4: Skeletal Muscle
excitatory
2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential
exercise
1.6: Cellular Metabolism
exercise physiology
6.7: References
exocytosis
1.3.3: Vesicular Transport
external environment
1.2: The Cell Membrane
extracellular
1.4: Electrical Activity of the Cell Membrane

F

facilitated diffusion
1.3.1: Passive Transport
1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport
FAD
1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism
fatty acids
1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids
1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism
feedback
7.2: Introduction
feedback loops
7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion
fibers
2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types
fight or flight
5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System
filtration
11: Renal Physiology
flow
10: Blood Vessels and Circulation
fluid mosaic model
1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane
fluidity
1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane
fourthventricle
3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal
functions
5.1: Objectives
6.2: Introduction
8: The Blood

G

G protein
2.3.10: Neurotransmitters
gap junctions
1.5.8: Cell Junctions
gas exchange
8.8: Erythrocytes
gasexchange
1.7: References
gate theory of pain
4.1: Objectives
gating mechanism
2.3.5: Voltage-gated Sodium and Potassium Ion Channels
gene transcription
7.7: Mechanisms of Hormone Action
general and special senses
4.1: Objectives
glands
7.2: Introduction
glial
2.3: Nervous Tissue
glial cells
2: Neurophysiology
2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS
2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS
2.4: References
glucagon
7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas
glucocorticoids
7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion
glucose
1.3: Membrane Transport
1.5.4: Mitochondria
1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism
3.2: Introduction
7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas
glucose transporter
1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport
glycerol
1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids
glycolipids
1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane
glycolysis
1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism
1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism
glycoproteins
1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane
goiter
7.12: The Thyroid Gland
Golgi apparatus
1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum
1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus
1.5.3: Lysosomes
1.5.5: Peroxisome
Golgi bodies
1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus
gproteins
7.1: Objectives
graded potential
2.3.6: Action Potential
graded potentials
2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential
graymatter
3.11: The Spinal Cord
growth hormone
7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus

H

Hashimoto's
7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion
health
6.6: Bone Tissue
8.3: Functions of Blood
8.4: Composition of Blood
heart
5.11: References
5.8: Dual Innervation
8.2: Introduction
9: The Heart
heart rate
5.9: Autonomic Tone
hematocrit
8.4: Composition of Blood
hematopoiesis
8: The Blood
8.7: Hematopoiesis
hemoglobin
8.5: Characteristics of Blood
8.8: Erythrocytes
hemostasis
8: The Blood
8.1: Objectives
hippocampus
3.9: Memory
hollow organs
6.5: Smooth Muscle
homeostasis
3.11: The Spinal Cord
5.2: Introduction
5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System
5.7: Short and Long Reflexes
5.8: Dual Innervation
7.13: The Parathyroid Glands
7.15: Adrenal Glands
7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas
7.2: Introduction
7.3: Chemical Signaling
7.6: Hormone Transportation
hooke
1.7: References
hormonal interactions
7.8: Target Cell Response

hormonal reflexes
7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion
hormonal responses
7.7: Mechanisms of Hormone Action
hormone
7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion
hormone imbalances
7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion
hormone production
1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum
hormone receptors
7.7: Mechanisms of Hormone Action
hormone regulation
7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion
7.15: Adrenal Glands
hormone synthesis
7.5: Types of Hormones
hormone transportation
7: Endocrine Physiology
hormones
1.3.3: Vesicular Transport
11: Renal Physiology
7.1: Objectives
7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
7.12: The Thyroid Gland
7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas
7.17: References
7.2: Introduction
7.3: Chemical Signaling
7.4: Endocrine Glands
7.5: Types of Hormones
7.6: Hormone Transportation
7.8: Target Cell Response
8.3: Functions of Blood
8.6: Blood Plasma
human biology
6.7: References
human body
6.3: Muscle Tissue
human cell model
1.5: The Cytoplasm and Cellular Organelles
humanphysiology
7.17: References
hydrogen peroxide
1.5.5: Peroxisome
hydrophilic
1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids
hydrophobic
1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids
hyperalgesia
4.1: Objectives
4.5: References
hyperpolarization
2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential
hypersecretion
7.1: Objectives
7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion
hypertonic
1.3.1: Passive Transport
hyposecretion
7.1: Objectives
7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion
hypothalamus
3.8: The Brain
5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS
7.1: Objectives
7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
7.4: Endocrine Glands
hypothyroidism
7.12: The Thyroid Gland
hypotonic
1.3.1: Passive Transport

I

imbalance
7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion
immune cells
2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS
immune defense
8.7: Hematopoiesis
immune response
1.3.3: Vesicular Transport
8.3: Functions of Blood
immune system
8.6: Blood Plasma
8.9: Leukocytes
inflammation
8.9: Leukocytes
inhibitory
2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential
insomnia
3.10: Sleep
insulin
7.1: Objectives
7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion
7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas
7.4: Endocrine Glands
integration
2.2: Introduction
intercellular communication
1.5.8: Cell Junctions
interleukin1
7.3: Chemical Signaling
intermediate filaments
1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton
internal carotid artery
3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain
internal contents
1.2: The Cell Membrane
interneurons
2.3.1: Neurons
intestines
6.5: Smooth Muscle
intracellular
1.4: Electrical Activity of the Cell Membrane
intracellular transportation
1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton
introduction
10: Blood Vessels and Circulation
2: Neurophysiology
3: The Central Nervous System
5: The Autonomic Nervous System
6: Physiology of Muscle and Bone Tissues
7: Endocrine Physiology
involuntary muscle
6.5: Smooth Muscle
iodine
7.12: The Thyroid Gland
ion channels
1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins
1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential
2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential
2.3.5: Voltage-gated Sodium and Potassium Ion Channels
2.3.6: Action Potential
4.2: Introduction
ion distribution
1: Cell Physiology
ions
1.3: Membrane Transport
1.4: Electrical Activity of the Cell Membrane
2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential
isotonic
1.3.1: Passive Transport

K

ketogenesis
1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism
ketosis
1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism
kidney
11: Renal Physiology
kidneys
8.8: Erythrocytes

L

lateralventricles
3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal
learning
2.2: Introduction
2.3.10: Neurotransmitters
3.9: Memory
learningobjectives
7.1: Objectives
leukocytes
8: The Blood
8.1: Objectives
8.7: Hematopoiesis
8.8: Erythrocytes
8.9: Leukocytes
ligands
1.3.3: Vesicular Transport
lipid bilayer
1.3: Membrane Transport
lipid metabolism
1.5.5: Peroxisome
lipid tails
1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids
lipids
1.1: Objectives
1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane
1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum
1.6: Cellular Metabolism
1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions
1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism
lipolysis
1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism
liver
1.5.5: Peroxisome
lymphocytes
8.9: Leukocytes
lysosome
1.5.3: Lysosomes

M

mechanisms of hormone action
7: Endocrine Physiology

mechanoreceptors
4.3: Sensory Receptors

medical education
8.4: Composition of Blood

medical physiology
6.7: References

melatonin
7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion

membrane
1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids
1.4: Electrical Activity of the Cell Membrane

membrane lipids
1: Cell Physiology

membrane permeability
1.3.1: Passive Transport

membrane potential
1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins
1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential
2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential
2.3.5: Voltage-gated Sodium and Potassium Ion Channels
2.3.6: Action Potential

membrane proteins
1: Cell Physiology

membrane receptor
7.6: Hormone Transportation

membrane receptors
7.7: Mechanisms of Hormone Action

membrane transport
1: Cell Physiology

membranes
1.5.8: Cell Junctions

memory
2.2: Introduction
3: The Central Nervous System
3.1: Objectives
3.14: References
3.8: The Brain
3.9: Memory

meninges
3.11: The Spinal Cord
3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord

mesencephalon
3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord

messengers
7.2: Introduction

metabolic bone diseases
6.7: References

metabolic energy
1.6.3: Protein Metabolism

metabolic regulation
7.5: Types of Hormones

metabolism
1.1: Objectives
1.5.4: Mitochondria
1.6: Cellular Metabolism
1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions
1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism
3.6: Cerebrospinal Fluid
7.12: The Thyroid Gland
7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas
7.4: Endocrine Glands
8.5: Characteristics of Blood

microfilaments
1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton

microglia
2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS

microtubules
1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton

midbrain
3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal

mineral storage
6.2: Introduction

minerals
6.6: Bone Tissue

mitochondrion
1.5.4: Mitochondria

modifying proteins
1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus

modulation
4.4: Physiology of Pain

molecular signaling
7.7: Mechanisms of Hormone Action

motor control
3.14: References

motor nerves
3.12: Nerves

motor neuron
2.4: References
5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems

Motor Neurons
2.3.1: Neurons
3.13: Reflexes
5.7: Short and Long Reflexes

motor response
4.2: Introduction

motor_neuron_components
2.1: Objectives

motorcoordination
6.4: Skeletal Muscle

motorneuron
6.4: Skeletal Muscle

movement
6.2: Introduction
6.3: Muscle Tissue

muscle
6.2: Introduction
6.3: Muscle Tissue

muscle contraction
1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum
6.3: Muscle Tissue
6.5: Smooth Muscle
6.7: References

muscle fibers
1.4: Electrical Activity of the Cell Membrane

muscle tissue
6: Physiology of Muscle and Bone Tissues

muscle_contraction
6.1: Objectives

muscle_tissue
6.1: Objectives

musclecontraction
6.4: Skeletal Muscle

musclefatigue
6.4: Skeletal Muscle

musclefibers
6.4: Skeletal Muscle

myelin
2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS

myelin sheath
2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS

myelin_sheath_formation
2.1: Objectives

myelinated
2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types

N

NAD
1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism

negative feedback
7.13: The Parathyroid Glands

nephron
11: Renal Physiology

Nernst potential
1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential

nerve
2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types

nerve plexuses
3.12: Nerves

nerves
3.12: Nerves

nervous
2.3: Nervous Tissue
5: The Autonomic Nervous System
5.11: References

nervous system
2.3.1: Neurons
4.2: Introduction
5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System

nervous tissue
2: Neurophysiology

nervous_system
2.1: Objectives

nervoussystem
2.2: Introduction
3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord
5.1: Objectives
5.2: Introduction
7.17: References

neural
2.3: Nervous Tissue
5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS
5.11: References

neural_communication
2.1: Objectives

neuralcontrol
6.4: Skeletal Muscle

neuralplate
3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord

neuraltube
3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord

neuroanatomy
3.11: The Spinal Cord
3.12: Nerves
3.14: References
3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord

neuroendocrine
7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
7.3: Chemical Signaling

neurogenesis
2.3.1: Neurons
neuroglia
2.3: Nervous Tissue
neurological plasticity
3.9: Memory
neuromodulation
4.5: References
neuromuscular_junction
6.1: Objectives
neuromuscularjunction
6.4: Skeletal Muscle
neuron
2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential
2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission
2.4: References
neuron cell bodies
2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS
neuronal
2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential
neuronal signaling
2.3.5: Voltage-gated Sodium and Potassium Ion Channels
neurons
1.4: Electrical Activity of the Cell Membrane
2: Neurophysiology
2.3: Nervous Tissue
2.3.1: Neurons
2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS
3.10: Sleep
3.2: Introduction
neuroscience
1.7: References
3.11: The Spinal Cord
3.14: References
3.8: The Brain
4.5: References
neurotransmission
1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins
2.3.6: Action Potential
2.4: References
neurotransmitter
2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission
2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential
5.9: Autonomic Tone
6.4: Skeletal Muscle
7.3: Chemical Signaling
neurotransmitters
2.3.10: Neurotransmitters
3.10: Sleep
3.9: Memory
4.4: Physiology of Pain
5.1: Objectives
5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems
5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System
neutrophils
8.9: Leukocytes
nitrogen balance
1.6.3: Protein Metabolism
nociception
4.4: Physiology of Pain
nociceptors
4.1: Objectives
4.3: Sensory Receptors
4.4: Physiology of Pain
norepinephrine
2.3.10: Neurotransmitters
7.15: Adrenal Glands
nuclear envelope
1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum
1.5.7: The Nucleus
nuclear pores
1.5.7: The Nucleus
nucleus
1.5: The Cytoplasm and Cellular Organelles
1.5.7: The Nucleus
nutrients
1.3: Membrane Transport
1.6: Cellular Metabolism
8.3: Functions of Blood
8.6: Blood Plasma

O

objectives
10: Blood Vessels and Circulation
2: Neurophysiology
3: The Central Nervous System
5: The Autonomic Nervous System
6: Physiology of Muscle and Bone Tissues
7: Endocrine Physiology
oligodendrocytes
2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS
2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS
opioid receptors
4.4: Physiology of Pain
organelle
1.5.3: Lysosomes
organelles
1.1: Objectives
1.5: The Cytoplasm and Cellular Organelles
osmosis
1.3.1: Passive Transport
osteoblast
7.14: Vitamin D (1,25-Dihydrocholecalciferol)
osteoblasts
6.6: Bone Tissue
7.13: The Parathyroid Glands
osteoclast
7.14: Vitamin D (1,25-Dihydrocholecalciferol)
osteoclasts
6.6: Bone Tissue
7.13: The Parathyroid Glands
osteoporosis
7.14: Vitamin D (1,25-Dihydrocholecalciferol)
oxidases
1.5.5: Peroxisome
oxidative phosphorylation
1.5.4: Mitochondria
oxygen
3.2: Introduction
3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain
8.3: Functions of Blood
oxygen transport
8.4: Composition of Blood
8.8: Erythrocytes
oxygen_debt
6.1: Objectives
oxygenation
8.5: Characteristics of Blood
oxytocin
7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus

P

pain
4.4: Physiology of Pain
4.5: References
pain management
4.4: Physiology of Pain
pain processing
4.1: Objectives
pain_management
4.5: References
pancreas
7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas
7.4: Endocrine Glands
paracrine
7.3: Chemical Signaling
parasympathetic
5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS
5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System
5.8: Dual Innervation
parasympathetic division
5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems
5.9: Autonomic Tone
parathyroid glands
7.13: The Parathyroid Glands
parathyroid hormone
7.13: The Parathyroid Glands
parathyroidHormone
7.14: Vitamin D (1,25-Dihydrocholecalciferol)
passive transport
1: Cell Physiology
1.1: Objectives
1.3: Membrane Transport
1.3.1: Passive Transport
pathways
7.2: Introduction
pericardium
9: The Heart
peripheral nerves
2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS
peripheral nervous system
3.12: Nerves
permissive effect
7.8: Target Cell Response
peroxisome
1.5.5: Peroxisome
pH
3.6: Cerebrospinal Fluid
8.5: Characteristics of Blood
phagocytosis
1.3.3: Vesicular Transport
1.5.3: Lysosomes
8.9: Leukocytes
pharmacology
6.7: References
phosphate group
1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids
phospholipid
1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids
phospholipids
1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane

physiological processes
1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport
7.6: Hormone Transportation
physiological responses
5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
5.9: Autonomic Tone
physiology
1.7: References
2.4: References
3.14: References
4.5: References
5.11: References
5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System
6.3: Muscle Tissue
7.15: Adrenal Glands
7.17: References
7.2: Introduction
7.5: Types of Hormones
8.3: Functions of Blood
pia mater
3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord
pinocytosis
1.3.3: Vesicular Transport
pituitary
7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion
pituitary gland
7: Endocrine Physiology
7.4: Endocrine Glands
pituitarygland
7.1: Objectives
7.17: References
plasma
8: The Blood
8.2: Introduction
8.5: Characteristics of Blood
8.6: Blood Plasma
plasma membrane
1: Cell Physiology
1.2: The Cell Membrane
plasma proteins
8.1: Objectives
plasmalemma
1.2: The Cell Membrane
platelets
8: The Blood
8.1: Objectives
8.2: Introduction
8.4: Composition of Blood
8.7: Hematopoiesis
plexus
3.6: Cerebrospinal Fluid
PNS
2: Neurophysiology
2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS
2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS
4.3: Sensory Receptors
polycythemia
8.4: Composition of Blood
postganglionic fibers
5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
postganglionic neuron
5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
postsynaptic
2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission
2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential
potassium ions
1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential
2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential
2.3.6: Action Potential
preganglionic neuron
5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
preganglionic neurons
5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
pressure
10: Blood Vessels and Circulation
presynaptic
2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission
processing proteins
1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus
progesterone
7.8: Target Cell Response
prolactin
7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
Proprioception
3.13: Reflexes
prosencephalon
3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord
protection
6.2: Introduction
protective coverings
3: The Central Nervous System
protective function
1.2: The Cell Membrane
protein synthesis
1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum
1.5.7: The Nucleus
1.6.3: Protein Metabolism
7.12: The Thyroid Gland
proteins
1.1: Objectives
1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane
1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins
1.5.4: Mitochondria
1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton
1.5.8: Cell Junctions
1.6: Cellular Metabolism
1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions
1.6.3: Protein Metabolism
8.6: Blood Plasma
pulmonary
10: Blood Vessels and Circulation

R

rapid eye movement
3.10: Sleep
RBCs
8.8: Erythrocytes
reabsorption
11: Renal Physiology
receptor
7.1: Objectives
receptor activation
3.9: Memory
receptor downregulation
7.8: Target Cell Response
receptor upregulation
7.8: Target Cell Response
receptors
1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins
2.3.10: Neurotransmitters
5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System
5.8: Dual Innervation
recycling
1.5.3: Lysosomes
red blood cells
1.5.7: The Nucleus
8.2: Introduction
references
6: Physiology of Muscle and Bone Tissues
referred_pain
4.5: References
reflex pathways
5.7: Short and Long Reflexes
reflexes
3: The Central Nervous System
3.1: Objectives
3.13: Reflexes
5: The Autonomic Nervous System
5.1: Objectives
5.11: References
regulates passage
1.2: The Cell Membrane
regulation
10: Blood Vessels and Circulation
5: The Autonomic Nervous System
5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS
5.8: Dual Innervation
7.2: Introduction
regulation of hormone secretion
7: Endocrine Physiology
remodeling
6.6: Bone Tissue
repolarization
2.3.5: Voltage-gated Sodium and Potassium Ion Channels
2.3.6: Action Potential
research
2.4: References
5.11: References
resistance
10: Blood Vessels and Circulation
respiration
3.6: Cerebrospinal Fluid
response
2.2: Introduction
resting membrane potential
2: Neurophysiology
resting state
1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential
ribonucleic acid
1.5.7: The Nucleus
ribosome construction
1.5.7: The Nucleus
ribosomes
1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum
rigor_mortis
6.1: Objectives
rough ER
1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum

S

satellite cell
2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS

Schwann cell
2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS
secretion
1.3.3: Vesicular Transport
11: Renal Physiology
selective permeability
1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins
selectively permeable
1.2: The Cell Membrane
1.3: Membrane Transport
semipermeable
1.2: The Cell Membrane
sensation
2.2: Introduction
4.5: References
sensory
5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS
sensory ganglia
2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS
sensory modalities
4.3: Sensory Receptors
sensory nerves
3.12: Nerves
sensory neuron
2.4: References
sensory neurons
2.3.1: Neurons
5.7: Short and Long Reflexes
sensory pathways
3.13: Reflexes
sensory perception
4.2: Introduction
sensory processing
3.8: The Brain
sensory receptors
3.13: Reflexes
4.1: Objectives
4.2: Introduction
4.3: Sensory Receptors
sensory_motor_interneurons
2.1: Objectives
sensory_receptors
4.5: References
sensoryreception
2.2: Introduction
serotonin
2.3.10: Neurotransmitters
serum
8.6: Blood Plasma
signaling
1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins
2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential
5: The Autonomic Nervous System
7.1: Objectives
7.2: Introduction
signaling cascade
7.6: Hormone Transportation
signaling pathways
7.3: Chemical Signaling
7.7: Mechanisms of Hormone Action
signals
2.3: Nervous Tissue
skeletal
6.2: Introduction
Skeletal Muscle
5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems
6: Physiology of Muscle and Bone Tissues
6.3: Muscle Tissue
skeletal system
6.6: Bone Tissue
skeletal_muscle
6.1: Objectives
skeletalmuscles
5.2: Introduction
sleep
3.10: Sleep
sleep stages
3.10: Sleep
smooth
6.2: Introduction
smooth ER
1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum
smooth muscle
6: Physiology of Muscle and Bone Tissues
6.3: Muscle Tissue
6.5: Smooth Muscle
smooth muscle fibers
6.5: Smooth Muscle
smoothmuscle
5.2: Introduction
SNS
5.2: Introduction
5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems
sodium ions
1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport
1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential
2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential
2.3.6: Action Potential
somatic
5.1: Objectives
somatic pain
4.1: Objectives
somatic reflexes
5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems
somatic_autonomic_systems
2.1: Objectives
somaticnervoussystem
5.2: Introduction
somatostatin
7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas
sorting proteins
1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus
spinal cord
3: The Central Nervous System
3.1: Objectives
3.13: Reflexes
3.14: References
3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord
5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
5.7: Short and Long Reflexes
spinal nerves
3.12: Nerves
spinalcord
2.2: Introduction
3.11: The Spinal Cord
3.2: Introduction
3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord
3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal
5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS
spinalnerves
3.11: The Spinal Cord
sports physiology
6.7: References
stem cell differentiation
8.1: Objectives
stem cells
8.7: Hematopoiesis
steroid hormones
7.7: Mechanisms of Hormone Action
stimuli detection
4.2: Introduction
stomach
6.5: Smooth Muscle
stress response
7.15: Adrenal Glands
stroke volume
9: The Heart
structural cohesion
1.5.8: Cell Junctions
structural organization
1.6.3: Protein Metabolism
structural support
1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton
summation
2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential
support
6.6: Bone Tissue
sympathetic
5: The Autonomic Nervous System
5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS
5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System
5.8: Dual Innervation
sympathetic division
5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems
5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
5.9: Autonomic Tone
sympathetic nervous system
5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
synapse
2.3.10: Neurotransmitters
2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission
2.4: References
synapses
2.3.1: Neurons
synaptic transmission
2: Neurophysiology
synaptic_transmission
2.1: Objectives
synergistic effect
7.8: Target Cell Response
system
5.11: References
systemic
10: Blood Vessels and Circulation

systems
5: The Autonomic Nervous System

T

T3
7.12: The Thyroid Gland
T4
7.12: The Thyroid Gland
target cell response
7: Endocrine Physiology
target cells
7.4: Endocrine Glands
temperature
8.5: Characteristics of Blood
testosterone
7.5: Types of Hormones
thalamus
3.1: Objectives
3.13: Reflexes
3.8: The Brain
thermoreceptors
4.3: Sensory Receptors
thoracolumbar system
5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System
threshold
2.3.6: Action Potential
thyroid
7.12: The Thyroid Gland
7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion
thyroid gland
7: Endocrine Physiology
7.13: The Parathyroid Glands
7.4: Endocrine Glands
thyroid hormones
7.6: Hormone Transportation
thyroidfunction
7.17: References
tight junctions
1.5.8: Cell Junctions
tissue
2.3: Nervous Tissue
6.3: Muscle Tissue
6.5: Smooth Muscle
6.6: Bone Tissue
tissue mechanics
6.7: References
tissues
6.2: Introduction
tonicity
1.3.1: Passive Transport
transamination
1.6.3: Protein Metabolism
transduction
4.1: Objectives
transmembrane proteins
4.2: Introduction
transmission
4.1: Objectives
4.4: Physiology of Pain
transport mechanisms
1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins
transport vesicles
1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus
transportation
8.3: Functions of Blood
transporters
1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport
transporting lipids
1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus
triglycerides
1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism
TSH
7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus
tubulin
1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton
typeA
2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types
typeB
2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types
typeC
2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types
types of hormones
7: Endocrine Physiology

U

ultravioletRadiation
7.14: Vitamin D (1,25-Dihydrocholecalciferol)
unipolar_bipolar_multipolar_neurons
2.1: Objectives
unmyelinated
2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types
urea cycle
1.6.3: Protein Metabolism
urinary bladder
6.5: Smooth Muscle
urine
11: Renal Physiology
uterus
6.5: Smooth Muscle

V

vanleeuwenhoek
1.7: References
vascular
10: Blood Vessels and Circulation
vasodilation
5.9: Autonomic Tone
velocity
2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types
ventricles
3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal
3.6: Cerebrospinal Fluid
vertebral artery
3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain
vesicles
1.3.3: Vesicular Transport
1.5.3: Lysosomes
visceral pain
4.1: Objectives
visceral reflexes
5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems
5.7: Short and Long Reflexes
viscosity
8.5: Characteristics of Blood
vitamin D3
7.13: The Parathyroid Glands
vitaminD
7.14: Vitamin D (1,25-Dihydrocholecalciferol)
vitamins
1.6: Cellular Metabolism
voluntary functions
6.3: Muscle Tissue

W

waste management
8.3: Functions of Blood
waste products
1.3: Membrane Transport
water
8.6: Blood Plasma
WBCs
8.4: Composition of Blood
white blood cells
8.2: Introduction
8.9: Leukocytes
whitematter
3.11: The Spinal Cord

This page titled Index is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

GLOSSARY

S

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

This page titled Glossary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

DETAILED LICENSING

Overview

Title: Essentials of Physiology for Nurse Anesthetists (Gopalan)

Webpages: 245

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 83.3% (204 pages)
- Undeclared: 16.7% (41 pages)

By Page

- Essentials of Physiology for Nurse Anesthetists (Gopalan) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Front Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - TitlePage - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - InfoPage - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 1: Cell Physiology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.2: The Cell Membrane - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
        - 1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
        - 1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.3: Membrane Transport - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.3.1: Passive Transport - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.3.3: Vesicular Transport - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.4: Electrical Activity of the Cell Membrane - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.5: The Cytoplasm and Cellular Organelles - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.3: Lysosomes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.4: Mitochondria - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.5: Peroxisome - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.7: The Nucleus - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.8: Cell Junctions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.6: Cellular Metabolism - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.6.3: Protein Metabolism - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.7: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 2: Neurophysiology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.3: Nervous Tissue - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.1: Neurons - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.5: Voltage-gated Sodium and Potassium Ion Channels - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.6: Action Potential - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.10: Neurotransmitters - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.4: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 3: The Central Nervous System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.6: Cerebrospinal Fluid - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.8: The Brain - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.9: Memory - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.10: Sleep - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.11: The Spinal Cord - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.12: Nerves - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.13: Reflexes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.14: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 4: Sensory Physiology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.3: Sensory Receptors - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.4: Physiology of Pain - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.5: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 5: The Autonomic Nervous System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.7: Short and Long Reflexes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.8: Dual Innervation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.9: Autonomic Tone - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.11: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 6: Physiology of Muscle and Bone Tissues - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.3: Muscle Tissue - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.4: Skeletal Muscle - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.5: Smooth Muscle - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.6: Bone Tissue - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.7: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 7: Endocrine Physiology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.3: Chemical Signaling - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.4: Endocrine Glands - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.5: Types of Hormones - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.6: Hormone Transportation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.7: Mechanisms of Hormone Action - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.8: Target Cell Response - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.12: The Thyroid Gland - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.13: The Parathyroid Glands - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.14: Vitamin D (1,25-Dihydrocholecalciferol) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.15: Adrenal Glands - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.17: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 8: The Blood - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.3: Functions of Blood - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.4: Composition of Blood - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.5: Characteristics of Blood - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.6: Blood Plasma - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.7: Hematopoiesis - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.8: Erythrocytes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.9: Leukocytes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.10: Platelets - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.11: Hemostasis - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.12: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 9: The Heart - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.3: Location of the Heart - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.4: The Pericardium - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.5: Layers of the Heart Wall - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.6: External Anatomy of the Heart - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.7: Internal Anatomy of the Heart - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.8: Blood Supply to the Heart - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.9: Cardiac Muscle - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.10: Conduction System of the Heart - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.11: Electrophysiology of Cardiac Pacemaker Cells - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.12: Electrophysiology of Cardiac Contractile Cells - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.13: Electrocardiogram (ECG) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.14: Cardiac Cycle - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.15: Heart Rate, Stroke Volume, and Cardiac Output - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.16: Cardiac Reserve - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.17: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 10: Blood Vessels and Circulation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 10.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.3: Systemic and Pulmonary Circuits - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.4: Vascular Network - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.5: Blood Flow, Blood Pressure, and Resistance - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.6: Measurement of Blood Pressure - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.7: Factors Affecting Blood Flow - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.8: Relationships among Vessels in the Systemic Circuit - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.9: Capillary Exchange - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.10: Venous Return - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.11: Neural Regulation of the Vascular System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.12: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 11: Renal Physiology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.3: External Anatomy of the Kidney - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.4: Internal Anatomy of the Kidney - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.5: Blood Supply to the Kidneys - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.6: Nephrons - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.7: Renal Innervation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.8: Filtration, Reabsorption, and Secretion - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.9: Endocrine and Paracrine Regulation of Kidney Function - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.10: Renal Electrolyte Regulation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.11: Renal Regulation of Nitrogenous Wastes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.12: Elimination of Drugs and Hormones by the Kidneys - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.13: Diuretics - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.14: Physical Characteristics of Urine - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.15: Measurement of Renal Plasma Flow - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.16: Renal Clearance - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.17: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 12: Respiratory Physiology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.3: Respiratory Anatomy - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.4: Mechanics of Breathing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.5: Ventilation and Perfusion - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.6: Gas Exchange - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.7: Transport of Gases - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.8: Control of Breathing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.9: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 13: Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Balance - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.3: Water Content Within the Body - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.4: Fluid Compartments in the Body - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.5: Composition of Body Fluids - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.6: Water Balance - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.7: Electrolyte Balance - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.8: Acid-Base Balance - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.9: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 14: Physiology of the Immune System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.3: Lymphocytes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.4: Primary (Central) Lymphoid Organs and Lymphocyte Development - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.5: Secondary (Peripheral) Lymphoid Organs - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.6: Barrier Defenses and Innate Immune Responses - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.7: The Adaptive Immune Response - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.8: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 15: Physiology of the Digestive System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 15.1: Objectives - *Undeclared*
- 15.2: Introduction - *Undeclared*
- 15.3: Digestive Processes - *Undeclared*
- 15.4: Histology of the Alimentary Canal - *Undeclared*
- 15.5: Chemical Mediators of Digestion - *Undeclared*
- 15.6: Types of Movements in the Digestive Tract - *Undeclared*
- 15.7: The Mouth, Pharynx, and Esophagus - *Undeclared*
- 15.8: The Stomach - *Undeclared*
- 15.9: The Liver, Pancreas, and Gallbladder - *Undeclared*
- 15.10: The Small Intestine - *Undeclared*
- 15.11: The Large Intestine - *Undeclared*
- 15.12: Summary of Digestion and Absorption in the Alimentary Canal - *Undeclared*
- 15.13: References - *Undeclared*

◦ 16: Physiology of the Male and Female Reproductive Systems - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 16.1: Objectives - *Undeclared*
- 16.2: Introduction - *Undeclared*
- 16.3: Sexual Differentiation - *Undeclared*
- 16.4: Puberty - *Undeclared*
- 16.5: Overview of the Male Reproductive System - *Undeclared*
- 16.6: Overview of the Female Reproductive

System - *Undeclared*
- 16.7: References - *Undeclared*
- 17: Physiology of Pregnancy - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 17.1: Objectives - *Undeclared*
  - 17.2: Introduction - *Undeclared*
  - 17.3: Fertilization - *Undeclared*
  - 17.4: Transit of Sperm - *Undeclared*
  - 17.5: Contact between Sperm and Oocyte - *Undeclared*
  - 17.6: Zygote - *Undeclared*
  - 17.7: Pre-implantation Embryonic Development - *Undeclared*
  - 17.8: Implantation - *Undeclared*
  - 17.9: Embryonic Membranes - *Undeclared*
  - 17.10: Embryogenesis - *Undeclared*
  - 17.11: Development of the Placenta - *Undeclared*
  - 17.12: Organogenesis - *Undeclared*
  - 17.13: The Fetal Circulatory System - *Undeclared*
  - 17.14: Maternal Changes During Pregnancy - *Undeclared*
  - 17.15: Autotransfusion - *Undeclared*
  - 17.16: Physiology of Labor - *Undeclared*
  - 17.17: Adjustments of the Infant at Birth and Postnatal Stages - *Undeclared*
  - 17.18: Lactation - *Undeclared*
  - 17.19: References - *Undeclared*
- Back Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Index - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Glossary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Detailed Licensing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*

This page titled Essentials of Physiology for Nurse Anesthetists (Gopalan) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).

DETAILED LICENSING

Overview

Title: Essentials of Physiology for Nurse Anesthetists (Gopalan)

Webpages: 245

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 83.3% (204 pages)
- Undeclared: 16.7% (41 pages)

By Page

- Essentials of Physiology for Nurse Anesthetists (Gopalan) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Front Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - TitlePage - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - InfoPage - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 1: Cell Physiology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.2: The Cell Membrane - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.2.1: Structure and Composition of Cell Membrane - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
        - 1.2.1.1: Membrane Lipids - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
        - 1.2.1.2: Membrane Proteins - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.3: Membrane Transport - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.3.1: Passive Transport - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.3.2: Carrier-mediated Transport - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.3.3: Vesicular Transport - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.4: Electrical Activity of the Cell Membrane - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.4.1: Resting Membrane Potential - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.5: The Cytoplasm and Cellular Organelles - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.1: Endoplasmic Reticulum - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.2: The Golgi Apparatus - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.3: Lysosomes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.4: Mitochondria - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.5: Peroxisome - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.6: The Cytoskeleton - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.7: The Nucleus - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.5.8: Cell Junctions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.6: Cellular Metabolism - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.6.1: Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.6.2: Carbohydrate Metabolism - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.6.3: Protein Metabolism - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 1.6.4: Lipid Metabolism - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.7: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 2: Neurophysiology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.3: Nervous Tissue - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.1: Neurons - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.2: Glial Cells of the CNS - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.3: Glial Cells of the PNS - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.4: Resting Membrane Potential - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.5: Voltage-gated Sodium and Potassium Ion Channels - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.6: Action Potential - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.7: Nerve Fiber Types - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.8: Synaptic Transmission - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.9: Postsynaptic Potential - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
      - 2.3.10: Neurotransmitters - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.4: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 3: The Central Nervous System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.3: Embryonic Development of the Brain and Spinal Cord - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 3.4: Protective Coverings of the Brain and Spinal Cord - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.5: The Ventricles and the Central Canal - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.6: Cerebrospinal Fluid - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.7: Blood Supply to the Brain - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.8: The Brain - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.9: Memory - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.10: Sleep - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.11: The Spinal Cord - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.12: Nerves - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.13: Reflexes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 3.14: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 4: Sensory Physiology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.3: Sensory Receptors - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.4: Physiology of Pain - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 4.5: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 5: The Autonomic Nervous System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.3: Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Systems - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.4: Sympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.5: Parasympathetic Division of the Autonomic Nervous System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.6: Chemical Signaling in the Autonomic Nervous System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.7: Short and Long Reflexes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.8: Dual Innervation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.9: Autonomic Tone - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.10: Hypothalamic Regulation of the ANS - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 5.11: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 6: Physiology of Muscle and Bone Tissues - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.3: Muscle Tissue - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.4: Skeletal Muscle - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.5: Smooth Muscle - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.6: Bone Tissue - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.7: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 7: Endocrine Physiology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.3: Chemical Signaling - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.4: Endocrine Glands - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.5: Types of Hormones - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.6: Hormone Transportation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.7: Mechanisms of Hormone Action - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.8: Target Cell Response - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.9: Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.10: Regulation of Hormone Secretion - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.11: The Pituitary Gland and Hypothalamus - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.12: The Thyroid Gland - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.13: The Parathyroid Glands - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.14: Vitamin D (1,25-Dihydrocholecalciferol) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.15: Adrenal Glands - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.16: The Endocrine Pancreas - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.17: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 8: The Blood - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.3: Functions of Blood - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.4: Composition of Blood - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.5: Characteristics of Blood - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.6: Blood Plasma - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.7: Hematopoiesis - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.8: Erythrocytes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.9: Leukocytes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.10: Platelets - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.11: Hemostasis - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.12: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 9: The Heart - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.3: Location of the Heart - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.4: The Pericardium - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.5: Layers of the Heart Wall - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.6: External Anatomy of the Heart - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.7: Internal Anatomy of the Heart - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.8: Blood Supply to the Heart - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.9: Cardiac Muscle - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.10: Conduction System of the Heart - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.11: Electrophysiology of Cardiac Pacemaker Cells - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.12: Electrophysiology of Cardiac Contractile Cells - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.13: Electrocardiogram (ECG) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.14: Cardiac Cycle - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.15: Heart Rate, Stroke Volume, and Cardiac Output - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.16: Cardiac Reserve - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.17: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 10: Blood Vessels and Circulation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 10.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.3: Systemic and Pulmonary Circuits - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.4: Vascular Network - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.5: Blood Flow, Blood Pressure, and Resistance - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.6: Measurement of Blood Pressure - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.7: Factors Affecting Blood Flow - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.8: Relationships among Vessels in the Systemic Circuit - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.9: Capillary Exchange - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.10: Venous Return - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.11: Neural Regulation of the Vascular System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.12: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 11: Renal Physiology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.3: External Anatomy of the Kidney - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.4: Internal Anatomy of the Kidney - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.5: Blood Supply to the Kidneys - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.6: Nephrons - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.7: Renal Innervation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.8: Filtration, Reabsorption, and Secretion - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.9: Endocrine and Paracrine Regulation of Kidney Function - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.10: Renal Electrolyte Regulation - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.11: Renal Regulation of Nitrogenous Wastes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.12: Elimination of Drugs and Hormones by the Kidneys - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.13: Diuretics - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.14: Physical Characteristics of Urine - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.15: Measurement of Renal Plasma Flow - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.16: Renal Clearance - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.17: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 12: Respiratory Physiology - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.3: Respiratory Anatomy - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.4: Mechanics of Breathing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.5: Ventilation and Perfusion - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.6: Gas Exchange - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.7: Transport of Gases - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.8: Control of Breathing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.9: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 13: Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Balance - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.3: Water Content Within the Body - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.4: Fluid Compartments in the Body - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.5: Composition of Body Fluids - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.6: Water Balance - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.7: Electrolyte Balance - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.8: Acid-Base Balance - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 13.9: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 14: Physiology of the Immune System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.1: Objectives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.2: Introduction - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.3: Lymphocytes - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.4: Primary (Central) Lymphoid Organs and Lymphocyte Development - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.5: Secondary (Peripheral) Lymphoid Organs - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.6: Barrier Defenses and Innate Immune Responses - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.7: The Adaptive Immune Response - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 14.8: References - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

◦ 15: Physiology of the Digestive System - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 15.1: Objectives - *Undeclared*
- 15.2: Introduction - *Undeclared*
- 15.3: Digestive Processes - *Undeclared*
- 15.4: Histology of the Alimentary Canal - *Undeclared*
- 15.5: Chemical Mediators of Digestion - *Undeclared*
- 15.6: Types of Movements in the Digestive Tract - *Undeclared*
- 15.7: The Mouth, Pharynx, and Esophagus - *Undeclared*
- 15.8: The Stomach - *Undeclared*
- 15.9: The Liver, Pancreas, and Gallbladder - *Undeclared*
- 15.10: The Small Intestine - *Undeclared*
- 15.11: The Large Intestine - *Undeclared*
- 15.12: Summary of Digestion and Absorption in the Alimentary Canal - *Undeclared*
- 15.13: References - *Undeclared*

◦ 16: Physiology of the Male and Female Reproductive Systems - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 16.1: Objectives - *Undeclared*
- 16.2: Introduction - *Undeclared*
- 16.3: Sexual Differentiation - *Undeclared*
- 16.4: Puberty - *Undeclared*
- 16.5: Overview of the Male Reproductive System - *Undeclared*
- 16.6: Overview of the Female Reproductive

System - *Undeclared*
- 16.7: References - *Undeclared*
- 17: Physiology of Pregnancy - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 17.1: Objectives - *Undeclared*
  - 17.2: Introduction - *Undeclared*
  - 17.3: Fertilization - *Undeclared*
  - 17.4: Transit of Sperm - *Undeclared*
  - 17.5: Contact between Sperm and Oocyte - *Undeclared*
  - 17.6: Zygote - *Undeclared*
  - 17.7: Pre-implantation Embryonic Development - *Undeclared*
  - 17.8: Implantation - *Undeclared*
  - 17.9: Embryonic Membranes - *Undeclared*
  - 17.10: Embryogenesis - *Undeclared*
  - 17.11: Development of the Placenta - *Undeclared*
  - 17.12: Organogenesis - *Undeclared*
  - 17.13: The Fetal Circulatory System - *Undeclared*
  - 17.14: Maternal Changes During Pregnancy - *Undeclared*
  - 17.15: Autotransfusion - *Undeclared*
  - 17.16: Physiology of Labor - *Undeclared*
  - 17.17: Adjustments of the Infant at Birth and Postnatal Stages - *Undeclared*
  - 17.18: Lactation - *Undeclared*
  - 17.19: References - *Undeclared*
- Back Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Index - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Glossary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Detailed Licensing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*

This page titled Essentials of Physiology for Nurse Anesthetists (Gopalan) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Chaya Gopalan (Consortium of Academic and Research Libraries in Illinois (CARLI)).